



GUIDE
TO THE
FRENCH LANGUAGE;
ESPECIALLY DEVISED
FOR PERSONS WHO WISH TO STUDY THE
ELEMENTS OF THAT LANGUAGE
WITHOUT
THE ASSISTANCE OF A TEACHER.

BY
J. J. P. LE BRETHON.

THE NINTH EDITION,
CORRECTED, ENLARGED, AND IMPROVED;
WITH A KEY TO THE EXERCISES.

ADOLESCENTIAM ALERE JUCUNDUM EST ET LAUDABILE.
CICERO.



LONDON:
PRINTED FOR ROBERT BALDWIN,
47, PATERNOSTER-ROW.

1843.

TC 2109
.L6
1843

LONDON:
Printed by WILLIAM CLOWES and SONS,
Stamford Street.

TO THE LEARNER.*

I SUPPOSE you to be animated with as great a desire to learn the French language as I am to assist you. Before we begin, permit me to ask you a single painful question. Do you know your own language? Do you know the parts of which it is composed,—NOUNS, ARTICLES, ADJECTIVES, PRONOUNS, VERBS, ADVERBS, PREPOSITIONS, CONJUNCTIONS, &c.? Are these terms familiar to you? If you answer NO, then will I say to you, learn them before we go further, for it is ten to one that you and I should not understand each other, or, if we did, it would be with a great deal of difficulty. Besides, you may be excused for not knowing a foreign language; you can hardly be pardoned for being ignorant of your own, especially at a time when so many able persons devote themselves to the teaching of it. Nor do you even want the assistance of a teacher; with a moderate share of understanding and a good grammar, you may learn as much as is necessary for our purpose in the course of a fortnight.

Now I suppose that you have these few requisites, and you wish to make use of this book. Begin at the part called INTRODUCTION À LA LANGUE FRANÇAISE, page 27: compare the French with the English, and endeavour to form some idea of the difference between the two languages: Then translate into French the English exercises, page 62 and the following, the rules of which correspond with the French that you are now reading in the Introduction. If you have a Key, compare it with the French you have written; and, if there be any difference between them, the figures under the words point out to you the rule by which your error is to be rectified. It will be proper during this time that you should peruse the verbs, that the variation in their tenses and persons may by degrees become familiar to you. It is by no means necessary that you should know how to pronounce the words; it will be time enough when you have gone further into the book. When you have read the French as far as page 58, you must get a dictionary† and read some French book.‡

N.B. Persons making use of this book, who have already some

* The Author is not so vain as to wish to give instructions to teachers, or to persons accustomed to the study of languages, but to such persons only as are at a loss how to begin.

† LEVIZAC'S French and English Dictionary, 1 vol. 12mo, will answer the purpose of any beginner.

‡ You might begin with a small Recueil of Contes Moraux, by Wanostrocht: having the English words under the French, it will save you a little time and trou-

TO THE LEARNER.

general notions of the French language, must begin at the part called the SYNTAX, page 190, and write the exercises, page 271.

But, says an Englishman, how shall I learn the pronunciation? Your anxiety is commendable, but it is untimely. You do not wish to speak before you know how to arrange the words grammatically together.

The pronunciation of the French language, which to an Englishman seems the most difficult part of it, is in fact the easiest. I have known many persons who, in seven or eight lessons, have acquired as good a pronunciation of that language as it is possible for a foreigner to acquire, and there are perhaps few people who, with a little attention, would not learn it in twelve or fifteen lessons. If your mind is ambitious of surmounting all the difficulties at once, read the chapter on pronunciation, page 1 and following; but I should deceive you if I were to tell you that you would make yourself perfect in that part by the single assistance of the rules which are contained in it; all that I can say is, that from the repeated experiments which have been made of them they cannot lead you to a bad accent. It is even proper that you should cast your eyes now and then over those rules; they will be of great service to you, when you think fit to apply to pronunciation, whether you have a teacher or not. But let your attention be now chiefly bent upon the Syntax; it is the most difficult part of the French language; and when you have made some progress in it, then will be the time for you to apply to the pronunciation. Knowing the meaning and arrangement of the words which you have to pronounce, you will make more proficiency in one lesson than otherwise you would make in three.

Directions are given in the KEY to parents not accustomed to teach languages, who wish to instruct their children with the assistance of this book how they must proceed.

ble. Then you may read any of the following works, which, I think, you will find both instructive and entertaining; Numa Pompilius, second roi de Rome; Les Incas, ou la destruction de l'empire du Pérou; Gonzalve de Cordoue; Gil Blas; Bélisaire, by Marmontel; Contes Moraux, by ditto; Télémaque; Histoire de Charles XII., roi du Suède, by Voltaire; Histoire de Pierre le Grand, by ditto; Contes et Romans, by ditto; Siècle de Louis XIV., by ditto; Vie de Louis XV., by ditto; Essai sur les Mœurs et l'Esprit de Nations, by ditto;* Voyage du jeune Anacharsis en Grèce, by Barthelemy; † Voyages en Egypte et en Syrie, by Volney; Histoire de Révolutions Romaines de Suède, et de Portugal, by Vertot; Les Œuvres de Jouy; viz., L'Hermitte de la Chaussée d'Antin; Ditto de la Guiane; Ditto en Provence; Guillaume le franc parleur; Les Comédies de Molière; or any other book you may have a mind to read.

* *The style of Voltaire is the easiest and the most free from idioms we have.*

† *This is a charming work; but it requires a little knowledge of ancient history, mythology, and geography, to understand it.*

THE ALPHABET.

THE FRENCH LANGUAGE is composed of *twenty-five* letters, viz.

A	pronounced	<i>ah</i>	like	<i>a</i>	in	art.
B		<i>bay</i>		<i>b</i>		bay.
C		<i>say</i>		<i>s</i>		say.
D		<i>day</i>		<i>d</i>		day.
E		<i>ay</i>		<i>a</i>		ale.
F		<i>f</i>		<i>f</i>		deaf.
G		<i>zhay*</i>		¹		
H		<i>ash</i>		<i>h</i>		ash.
I		<i>ee</i>		<i>i</i>		field.
J		<i>zhee*</i>		¹		
K		<i>kah</i>		<i>c</i>		cart.
L		<i>l</i>		<i>l</i>		ell.
M		<i>m</i>		<i>m</i>		gem.
N		<i>n</i>		<i>n</i>		pen.
O		<i>o</i>		<i>o</i>		old.
P		<i>pay</i>		<i>p</i>		pay.
Q		<i>ku</i>		²		
R		<i>ayr</i>		<i>r</i>		to err.
S		<i>s</i>		<i>s</i>		bless.
T		<i>tay</i>		<i>t</i>		tailor.
U		<i>u</i>		²		
V		<i>vay</i>		<i>v</i>		veil.
X		<i>eeks</i>		<i>x</i>		sir.
Y		<i>ee-grayc</i>				the same sound as <i>i</i> .
Z		<i>zeyd</i>		<i>z</i>		zed.

These are the names by which the letters are called in french; but in that language, as well as in the english, the sound of several of them varies according to their position with other letters, as will appear by the following observations.†

* To give this letter its proper sound, the *h* must be pronounced aspirate.

1 The sound of *g* and *j*, in english, is formed of *dj*; so *general*, *judge*, are pronounced *djeneral*, *djudge*; leave out the sound of *d* in french, and you will have the proper sound.

2 There is no word in the english language in which the sounds of the french *q* and *u* are to be found, and no combination of characters can give an idea of the pronunciation of these two letters. The person who has them to pronounce, must shut his lips quite close, leaving only a small opening in the middle, as if he were going to blow a flute.

† It is perhaps unnecessary to observe, that in a treatise of this kind, the minutest precision must not be expected. There are simple sounds which no combination of characters can exactly express: every person who knows any thing of languages must be sensible of this.

OF VOWELS.

The French reckon *three* sorts of vowels.

The simple, *a, e, î, o, u.*

The compound, *ai, ao, au, ea, eai, eau, ei, eu, eo, oe, ou.*

The nasal, *am, an, em, en, im, in, aim, ain, ein, om, on, um, un.*

OF SIMPLE VOWELS.

a, e, î, o, u.

1 Each of these letters has *two* sounds common to both languages ;

		<i>English words in which the same sound is found.</i>	
One short, as a	in <i>patte,</i>	paw,	a in <i>pat.</i>
é	<i>bête,</i> marked thus ' 1	beet,	e <i>bet.</i>
i	<i>fixe,</i>	fixed,	i <i>fix.</i>
o	<i>hotte,</i>	dorser,	o <i>hot.</i>
u	<i>mur,</i>	wall,	u see note 2.
The other long, as â	in <i>pâte,</i>	paste,	a in <i>pal.</i>
ê	<i>bête,</i>	beast,	e <i>bear.</i>
î	<i>fil,</i>	might do,	i <i>field.</i>
ô	<i>hôte,</i>	landlord,	o <i>hope.</i>
û	<i>mûr,</i>	ripe,	u see note 2 and 3.

N. B. The beauty of french pronunciation depends upon a clear and distinct articulation of these five letters.

2 To the two sorts of *e* abovementioned, must be added *e* mute, as in

<i>cela,</i>	that, pronounced	<i>sla.</i>
<i>demande,</i>	requires,	<i>dmand.</i>
<i>des mesures,</i>	measures,	<i>daymsur.</i>

This *e*, as you see, has no sound, but it generally affects the sound of the *penultima*, by rendering it longer, if it be a vowel, or by giving a sound to the consonant which, without it, would be silent; for ex.

é in <i>aimé,</i>	mascul.	loved, is pronoun. <i>aymay,</i> like é	} short.
i <i>joli,</i>		pretty, <i>zhollî,</i> 4	
u <i>vu,</i>		seen, <i>vu,</i> u	
é in <i>aimée,</i>	femin.	loved, is pronoun. <i>aymaye,</i> like ê	} long
i <i>jolie,</i>		pretty, <i>zholee,</i> ê	
u <i>vue,</i>		seen, <i>vû,</i> û	
<i>petit,</i>	mascul.	little, is pronoun. <i>ptî,</i> see note 4.	
<i>grand,</i>		great, <i>gran.</i>	
<i>pris,</i>		taken, <i>pree.</i>	
but <i>petite,</i>	femin.	little, is pronoun. <i>ptît.</i>	
<i>grande,</i>		great, <i>grand.</i>	
<i>prise,</i>		taken, <i>preez.</i>	
In <i>un bon chien,</i>		a good dog, the <i>n</i> has only a <i>half</i> sound.	
In <i>une bonne chienne,</i>		a good bitch, the <i>n</i> has a <i>full</i> sound. 5	

N. B. *e* mute is distinguished from the two others, by its not being accented; it is never pronounced at the end of words, but when *e* begins a word, it is always sounded whether it be accented or not.

3 A vowel with a circumflex is pronounced as long again as it would be without it.

4 Sound the letter *i* as sharp as you can, sharper, if possible, than *y* in *pretty*.

5 To give *n* its full articulation, you first press the tip of the tongue against the root of the lower teeth, then raise it up quickly to the roof of the mouth. In the pronunciation of the above nasal vowels, the articulation of *n* must end, when the tip of the tongue is at the root of the lower teeth, without any motion towards the roof of the mouth; this is what is here meant by a *half* sound.

OF SIMPLE VOWELS.

In the monosyllables, *je, me, te, le, se, ce, de, ne, que*, this *e* has sometimes a *weak guttural* sound, similar to that of *e* in *daughter, sister*, because the consonant can not be pronounced without a feeble articulation of a vowel; but it is always *dropt* in conversation and in familiar reading, when it can be done without embarrassing the pronunciation. The manner in which this is effected is easy. With the *last syllable* of the preceding word, *pronounce the consonant to which e mute belongs, and the e, thus unsupported, will remain silent; ex.*

Quand me ferez-vous le plaisir de me prêter ce livre que je vous ai demandé?

pronounce, *kam fraye vool playzeer daym pray tays livr kayzh voozayd manday!*

But there must not be any pause between the words, and the junction must be as smooth as possible.

Observe only, that a *syllable ending in e mute, can not attract the consonant* of another *e mute*, without giving to the first *e* a gentle guttural sound, like that of *e* in *daughter*, so as to render the pronunciation easy; ex.

Je ne puis pas vous le dire, puis que je ne le sais pas.

pron. *zhen puee paw vool deer, pueesk zhen lay say paw.*

But carefully avoid pronouncing it like an accented *é*, for there is not any pronunciation more ridiculous.*

Among the simple vowels is also reckoned *y*, which however does not increase their number, since its sound is the same as that of *i*. The peculiar use of this letter is to divide the syllable in which it is found, into two distinct syllables; it is equivalent to *ii*; as,

<i>pays,</i>	country,	pron.	<i>pay-ee.</i>
<i>citoyen,</i>	citizen,		<i>citywoy-eeyen.</i>
<i>soyons,</i>	let us be,		<i>swoy-econ.</i>
<i>joyeux,</i>	joyful,		<i>zhwoy-ee-ugh.</i>

Except in the words derived from the greek and latin, where *y* is kept to shew the etymology of the word, and is pronounced like one *i* only; as,

<i>Egypte,</i>	Egypt,	<i>ay-zheept.</i>
<i>tyrannie,</i>	tyranny,	<i>teerannee.</i>
<i>étymologie,</i>	etymology,	<i>ayteemolozhee.</i>
<i>mythologie,</i>	mythology,	<i>meetolozhee.</i>

* In the pronouncing of this *e* consists much of the neatness and elegance of a true french accent. In the southern provinces of France, especially in *Guienne* and *Gascogne*, they pronounce it like the acute or short *é*, which gives them that affected pronunciation, so much ridiculed by the rest of the inhabitants of France, under the name of *accent gascon*. For this reason a foreigner will sooner understand a native of *Bordeaux*, than a native of *Paris*, and may often understand the former, without being able to understand the latter, though if he understands the latter, he will undoubtedly understand the former. It is the frequent dropping of this *e* which makes a foreigner believe that the French speak fast, for, in reality, the French, taken in general, do not pronounce their words faster than other people do; but by dropping this letter, they link two, three, or four words together, and so go quicker through a sentence than a foreigner does, who gives a full sound to every *e* he meets with. Foreigners should pay particular attention to this, as nothing is more difficult to get rid of than a bad accent.

OF COMPOUND VOWELS

ai, ao, au, ea, eai, eau, ei, eo, eu, oe, ou.

This sort of vowel is formed by the association of several simple vowels, which produce together, a sound different from that which they produce separately.

- 5 *ai, eai,* } sounded like *é* short, i. e. *ay*; as,
- | | | | |
|--|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| | <i>j'ai,</i> | I have, pronounce | <i>zhay.</i> |
| | <i>je mangeai,</i> | I ate, | <i>zhmanzhay.</i> |
- 6 *ais, aie, aient, eais, eaiant,* } sounded like *ê* long, i. e. *aye*; as,
- | | | | |
|--|-----------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| | <i>j'avais,</i> | I had, | <i>zhavaye.</i> |
| | <i>j'aie,</i> | I may have. | <i>zh'ae'y.</i> |
| | <i>ils aient,</i> | they may have, | <i>eel-z-aye.</i> |
| | <i>je mangeais,</i> | I was eating, | <i>zhmanzhaye.</i> |
| | <i>ils nageaient,</i> | they were swimming, | <i>eel nazhaye.</i> |
- ao*, found only in *aouît*, august; *taon*, oxfly; *faon*, fawn; *paon*, peacock.
pronounced *oow,* *ton,* *fan,* *pan,* (see nasal vowels.)
- 7 *au, eau,* } final, sound like *o* short, or *au*, in *laurel*; as,
- | | | | |
|--|--------------|-------|------------|
| | <i>eau,</i> | water | <i>o.</i> |
| | <i>peau,</i> | skin, | <i>po.</i> |
- 8 *au, eau,* } followed by a consonant in the same word, sounded like *ô*
long, or *au* in *hautboy*; as,
- | | | | |
|--|----------------|----------|--------------|
| | <i>eaux,</i> | waters, | <i>ô.</i> |
| | <i>autant,</i> | as much, | <i>ôtan.</i> |
- 9 *ea*, the *e* has no sound, but gives *g* the soft sound of *j*, or *zh*; as,
- | | | | |
|--|----------------|-------|----------------|
| | <i>jean,</i> | john, | <i>zhan.</i> |
| | <i>mangea,</i> | ate, | <i>manzha.</i> |
- 10 *ei*, pronounced like *ei* in *reign*; or *ai* in *rain*; as,
- | | | | |
|--|---------------|-------|--------------|
| | <i>reine,</i> | queen | <i>rain.</i> |
| | <i>peine,</i> | pain, | <i>pain.</i> |
- 11 *eo*, in *geo*, the *e* has no sound, but softens that of *g* into *zh*; as,
- | | | | |
|--|----------------|---------|------------------|
| | <i>george,</i> | george, | <i>zhorz.</i> |
| | <i>gêlier,</i> | jailer, | <i>zhôleeay.</i> |
- 12 *eu*, the nearest idea which I can give of *eu*, is that of *e*, in *her*, agreeably to Walker's pronunciation of that word, viz. *hur*.
- | | | | |
|--|-------------|---------|-------------|
| | <i>feu,</i> | fire, | <i>feu.</i> |
| | <i>peu,</i> | little, | <i>peu.</i> |
- N. B. *e* has no sound in the monosyllables,
eu, eus, eut, eâmes, êtes, eurent, eusse, had; pronounce *u, û, u, ûm, ût, ur, uss.*
- 13 *oe*, pronounced *e*; the *o* having no sound; and the words in which it was found formerly being now generally spelled without it; as,
- | | | | |
|--|----------------|--------|--------------|
| | <i>cœur,</i> | heart, | <i>keur.</i> |
| | <i>œuvres,</i> | works, | <i>œvr.</i> |
- 14 *ou*, pronounced like *oo* in *cook, book, look*; as,
- | | | | |
|--|--------------|-------|-------------|
| | <i>coup,</i> | blow, | <i>koo.</i> |
| | <i>bout,</i> | end, | <i>boo.</i> |
- 15 N. B. If one of the vowels is *accented*, or marked over with two dots (¨), the vowels form distinct syllables, and are pronounced separately; as,
- | | | | |
|--|-----------------|----------------|------------------|
| | <i>fléau,</i> | scourge, | <i>flay-o.</i> |
| | <i>naïveté.</i> | ingenuousness, | <i>na-ivtay.</i> |

OF NASAL VOWELS.

am, an, em, en, im, in, aim, ain, ein, om on, um, un.

am,
an,
em,
en,
ent, } have all the same sound, that of *en* in *encore*, or *an* in *want*, ob- 16
serving to give the *n* only a half sound; See note 5.

<i>ambition,</i>	ambition,	<i>anbiseeon.</i>
<i>empire,</i>	empire,	<i>anpeer.</i>
<i>enfant,</i>	child,	<i>anfan.</i>
<i>anglais,</i>	english,	<i>anglaye.</i>
<i>vengeance,</i>	revenge,	<i>vanzhance.</i>
<i>ornement,</i>	ornament,	<i>ornayman.</i>

en has the sound of *en* in *when*, giving *n* only a half sound; See note 5. 17

1. In foreign names; as,

<i>mentor,</i>	mentor,	<i>mentor.</i>
----------------	---------	----------------

2. At the end of words; as,

<i>examen,</i>	examination,	<i>egzamen.</i>
<i>bien,</i>	well,	<i>beeyen.</i>
<i>entretien,</i>	conversation,	<i>antrayt-yen.</i>

N. B. *ent* has no sound at the end of the third person plural of 18
verbs; as,

im,
in,
aim,
ain,
ein, } have all the same sound, a sound similar to that of *in* in *fine*, 19
giving *n* only a half sound; See note 5.

<i>ils eurent,</i>	they had,	<i>eel-z-ur.</i>
<i>ils furent,</i>	they were,	<i>eel fur.</i>
<i>ils aimèrent,</i>	they loved,	<i>eel-z-aymayr.</i>

<i>imparfait,</i>	imperfect,	<i>ineparfay.</i>
<i>infini,</i>	infinite,	<i>inefini.</i>
<i>cousin,</i>	cousin, <i>masc.</i>	<i>coozine.</i>
<i>fin,</i>	end,	<i>fine.</i>
<i>faim,</i>	hunger,	<i>fine.</i>
<i>pain,</i>	bread,	<i>pine.</i>
<i>sein,</i>	bosom,	<i>sine.</i>

But if *in*, either in the first or last syllable of a word, is followed by a 20
vowel, it is sounded like the english preposition *in*; as,

<i>inaccessible,</i>	inaccessible,	<i>inaksessible.</i>
<i>inutile,</i>	useless,	<i>inutil.</i>
<i>fine,</i>	fine,	<i>fin.</i>
<i>cousine,</i>	cousin, <i>femin.</i>	<i>coozin.</i>
<i>badine,</i>	playful,	<i>bad-in.</i>

om,
on,
oon, } are sounded like *on* in *wont*, observing always to give *n* only a 21
half sound; See note 5.

<i>compter,</i>	to count,	<i>contay.</i>
<i>doujon,</i>	dungeon,	<i>don-zhon.</i>
<i>pigeon,</i>	pigeon,	<i>peezhon.</i>
<i>mangeons,</i>	let us eat,	<i>man-zhon.</i>

N. B. The English are apt to open their mouths too much in pronouncing *on*, by
which means, instead of sounding it like *on* in *wont*, they sound it like *an* in *want*.
They should guard against this.

um,
un,
un, } have all the same sound; but no exact idea can be given of it, 22
unless it be that of *un* in *fungus*; observing not to give *n* its
full sound; See note 5.

<i>parfum,</i>	perfume,	<i>parfun.</i>
<i>chacun,</i>	each,	<i>shalc-un.</i>
<i>à jeun,</i>	fasting,	<i>azhun.</i>

OF DIPHTHONGS.

23 Diphthongs are a union of several vowels, which, though they produce different sounds, are pronounced at the same breath;

<i>ia</i> , sounded like	<i>ya</i> in yard. ex.	<i>fiacre</i> ,	hackney-coach,	<i>feeyacr.</i>
<i>ie</i> ,	<i>ye</i> ye.	<i>piéd</i> ,	foot,	<i>pee-ay.</i>
<i>io</i> ,	<i>yo</i> york.	<i>fiote</i> ,	vial,	<i>feool.</i>
<i>iau</i> ,	<i>yo</i> yoke.	<i>miauler</i> ,	to mew,	<i>meeolay.</i>
<i>ieu</i> ,		<i>dieu</i> ,	god,	<i>dee-ugh.</i>
<i>iou</i> ,	<i>you</i> you.	<i>chiourme</i> ,	a galley crew,	<i>sheeoom.</i>
<i>iant</i> ,	<i>yan</i> ,	<i>priant</i> ,	praying,	<i>preeyan.</i>
<i>ient</i> ,		<i>patient</i> ,	patient,	<i>paucceeyan.</i>
<i>ien</i> ,	<i>yen</i> ,	<i>bien</i> ,	well,	<i>beeeyen.</i>
<i>ion</i> ,	<i>yon</i> ,	<i>action</i> ,	action,	<i>akseeeyon.</i>
<i>oe</i> ,	<i>whay</i> whey.	<i>boète</i> ,	box,	<i>bwheyt.</i>
<i>oue</i> ,		<i>foët</i> ,	whip,	<i>fwheyt.</i>
<i>oi</i> ,	6 <i>woa</i> ,	<i>moi, toi</i> ,	I, thou,	<i>mwoa, twoa.</i>
<i>oi</i> ,		<i>bourgeois</i> ,	burgess,	<i>boorzhwou.</i>
<i>oin</i> ,		<i>soin</i> ,	care,	<i>swoin.</i>
<i>ouan</i> ,		<i>louange</i> ,	praise,	<i>lwanzh.</i>
<i>ouen</i> ,	<i>wan</i> want.	<i>rouen</i> ,	rouen,	<i>rwan.</i>
<i>oua</i> ,	<i>wa</i> water.	<i>louage</i> ,	hiring,	<i>lwazh.</i>
<i>oui</i> ,	<i>wi</i> without.	<i>oui, réjoui</i> ,	yes, rejoiced,	<i>we, rayzhwee.</i>
<i>ua</i> ,	In pronouncing this <i>u</i> shut your lips as direct- ed in note 2.	<i>nuage</i> ,	cloud,	<i>nuazh.</i>
<i>ue</i> ,		<i>écuelle</i> ,	porringer,	<i>aykuayl.</i>
<i>ui</i> ,		<i>lui, fruit</i> ,	him, fruit,	<i>lui, frui, no. 4.</i>
<i>uin</i> ,		<i>juin</i> ,	june,	<i>zhwine.</i>

6 To remove the embarrassment which learners find in the pronunciation of *oi*, which is sometimes pronounced like the diphthong *oi*, and sometimes like the compound vowel *ai*, in words which are entirely similar, I have through all this work spelled with *oi* the words which are pronounced *woa*, and with *ai*, those which are pronounced *ay*. It will perhaps be argued that this is contrary to the opinion of the french academy. I respect the opinion of the french academy, as much as any man can do, when it is consonant to reason; but the opinion of no man, let his rank and talents be ever so eminent, nor of any corporation of men, however pompous their appellation may be, can be put in competition with reason. Now is it reasonable that two sounds so very different should be expressed by one sign; exposing the learner to innumerable mistakes, when by the mere change of a single letter, another sign can so easily be formed, which removes every difficulty? The following words, for instance, are given to a foreigner to pronounce, or even to a native of France, who never heard them pronounced before:

François, danois, suédois, chinois, bourgeois, chamois, foi, paroisse, perçoit, &c.
François, anglois, hollandois, japonois, bougeois, charmois, foible, puroisse, perçoit, &c.

The stranger is told how to pronounce the words in the first line; he pronounces them well; he goes on confidently to the second line, naturally thinking that the same letters ought to produce the same sound: what must his astonishment be, when he is told that *oi* in the words contained in the second line is pronounced quite differently from what it is in the words contained in the first, the first being pronounced *woa*, and the second *ay*; and how much greater will his surprise be still, when he finds that even in the same word such as *voyois, croyois, &c.* (see rule 4) *oi* has two different sounds, the first syllable being pronounced *woa* and the second *ay*. And have you no means, the stranger will say, of removing this insuperable difficulty? Yes, we have, and a very easy one too; you have only to change *o* into *a* in the words which are to be pronounced *ay*, and the whole difficulty will vanish; but the french academy do not approve of it. Oh! never mind the french academy, the stranger will say. Nor do the French, it seems, mind it much, for these great censors of the language have the mortification to see that, in almost every book now printed in France, this diphthong is spelled contrary to their arrogant and unreasonable decision. In vain they will say that *ai* does not express the exact sound that we wish to express; if it removes a great difficulty, if nothing better is offered, if it is the best representative of this sound that we can find, and is a sign which nobody can mistake, we must be satisfied with it, till the french academy deign to favour us with a better.—(See *Dictionnaire Philosophique*, art. A.)

OF CONSONANTS.

General Rules.

The french language admits of *two* modes of pronunciation : one for *poetry* and *oratory*, the other for *conversation*.

In repeating *verses*, and in *oratorical* discourses, the *final consonant* ²⁴ of a word is generally *sounded*, when the word which follows it begins with a *vowel*, or *h* *mute* ; as,

*D'un pinceau délicat, l'artifice agréable,
Du plus affreux objet, fait un objet aimable.
Des dons extérieurs l'uniformité lasse,
Mais l'esprit a toujours une nouvelle grâce.*

The above lines must be read in the following manner ;

*Dun paineso daylika lartifice agrayable,
Dupluz-affreu-z-obzhay fay-t-un-obzhay-t-aymable.
Day don-z-extayrieur luniformitay lass,
May layspri-t-a toozhoor-z-un noovayl grass.*

In *conversation*, the ear alone being consulted, opinions greatly differ. ²⁵ Some are for sounding the final consonant of every word, when the word which follows it begins with a vowel ; others, and this seems to be the opinion of the best informed persons, maintain that the final consonant of a word should be sounded on the initial vowel of the next, only when the two words are so connected that the second word is necessary to complete the sense ; such as,

Article and noun ;

<i>un enfant,</i>	a child,	<i>u-n-anfan.</i>
<i>cet hiver,</i>	this winter,	<i>s-t-eevayr.</i>
<i>à son âge,</i>	at his age,	<i>à so-n-âzh.</i>
<i>les artifices,</i>	the artifices,	<i>lay-z-artifiss.</i>
<i>des hommes,</i>	of men,	<i>day-z-om.</i>

Adjective before the noun ;

<i>bon ouvrage,</i>	good work,	<i>bo-n-ooorazh.</i>
<i>grand espace,</i>	great space,	<i>gran-t-ayspass</i>
<i>petit homme,</i>	little man,	<i>pti-t-om. (7)</i>
<i>gros oiseau,</i>	large bird,	<i>grô-z-owyzo.</i>
<i>beaux habits,</i>	fine clothes,	<i>bô-z-abee.</i>

Pronoun with the verb, and verb with the pronoun ;

<i>il est,</i>	he is,	<i>i-ll-aye.</i>
<i>est-il ?</i>	is he ?	<i>aye-t-il ?</i>
<i>sont-elles ?</i>	are they ?	<i>son-t-ell ?</i>
<i>nous avons,</i>	we have,	<i>noo-z-avon.</i>
<i>vous en avez,</i>	you have some,	<i>voo-z-an-avaye</i>
<i>les ont-ils ?</i>	have they got them ?	<i>lay-z-on-t-eel ?</i>

Preposition with the noun, pronoun, or verb that follows it ;

<i>sans amis,</i>	without friends,	<i>san-z-amee.</i>
<i>avec elle,</i>	with her,	<i>avayk-ell.</i>
<i>en allant,</i>	in going,	<i>an-allan.</i>
<i>chez eux,</i>	to their house,	<i>shay-z-igh.</i>
<i>après avoir,</i>	after having,	<i>apray-z-avoar</i>

Adverb before the adjective or participle ;

<i>bien honnête,</i>	very honest.	<i>beeeyen-onayt</i>
<i>plus habile,</i>	more clever,	<i>plu-z-ah-bill.</i>
<i>très aimable,</i>	very lovely,	<i>tray-z-aymable</i>
<i>fort utile,</i>	very useful,	<i>for-t-utill.</i>
<i>trop ignorant,</i>	too ignorant,	<i>tro-p-inyoran.</i>

N. B. There are a few other instances in which a final consonant may be sounded on the following vowel, but they can hardly be reduced

(7) We sound the final consonant of an adjective upon a noun, but not the final consonant of a noun upon an adjective ; so, though *petit enfant*, is pronounced *pti-t-anfan.*
enfant aimable could not be pronounced *anfan-t-aymable*, but *anfan aymable*.

OF CONSONANTS.

General Rules.

to rules, as it chiefly depends on the number of letters of the same sound that follow one another. The surest way for a foreigner is to confine himself to the general rules which apply to nine-tenths of the words the final consonant of which is to be sounded on the following vowel. The rest must be learned from the conversation of well informed persons.*

26 The foregoing instances excepted, the *final consonant* of words, in general, *has no sound* in french. See the *particular rules* for consonants under their respective heads.

* As in music, it is the diversity of sounds that produces melody; so it is with languages. The union of the final consonant of some words, to the initial vowel of the word which follows them, being done to disencumber the language of too great a number of monosyllables, and to render it more melodious by a greater variety of sounds; the rule given by some persons, that every word ending with a consonant should be joined to the following word, when it begins with a vowel, is totally erroneous, and produces the very effect which this union is intended to remove. It is true, that in reading verses, the final consonant is generally joined to the following vowel, to preserve the measure of the verse; and, in public speeches, the consonants are also often sounded at the end of words, to give a stronger impulsion to the air, and to be heard at a greater distance; but in familiar reading, and in conversation, this is carefully avoided by all unaffected people.

If any authority be necessary to support what I advance here, I trust that of *l'abbé d'Olivet*, one of the most distinguished members of the french academy, will be sufficient to convince every man of candour, since it implies the opinion of the most enlightened part of that body. This philosophical grammarian, in his treatise on french prosody, (a work which has been, and ever will be the admiration of the learned,) before he speaks of the effect which certain nasal terminations have in repeating verses, remarks, *art. 3. parag. 5*

Je commence par dire que cette observation ne regarde point ceux qui écrivent en prose, car la prose souffre les hiatus† pourvu qu'ils ne soient, ni trop rudes, ni trop fréquents. Ils contribuent même à donner au discours un certain air naturel, et nous voyons en effet que la conversation des honnêtes gens est pleine d'hiatus volontaires qui sont tellement autorisés par l'usage, que si l'on parloit autrement, cela seroit d'un pédant, ou d'un provincial. Par exemple, lorsqu'un acteur récite ces vers de la première scène d'Athalie, Je viens — célébrer avec vous la fameuse journée, &c. Pensez-vous être saint ? il prononce comme s'il y avoit ; célébré-r-avec vous — pensez-vous-z-être. Mais dans la simple conversation, l'usage veut qu'on prononce comme s'il y avoit, célébré avec vous — pensez-vous être, &c. And art. 2, he says — On le croira si l'on veut ; au moins est-il certain qu'au théâtre ce n'est pas chose rare qu'un acteur, et surtout une actrice dont les talents sont admirés fasse adopter un mauvais accent, une prononciation irrégulière, d'où naissent insensiblement des traditions locales qui se perpétuent, si personne n'est attentif à les combattre. These are the words of a man, for whose opinions the french academy had the greatest deference; a man who, at their request, had made this subject one of his particular studies, and who had consulted upon it, as he himself declares, all the men of taste and learning with whom he was acquainted; and they never were contradicted, but by persons, who, being fond of appearing singular, affect in conversation the emphatic tone of the stage, without considering whether they are speaking prose or verse, (most of the french plays are in verse,) or by those who, looking upon singularity as an accomplishment, mimic their ridiculous affectation.

Dans une nation qui est une par rapport au gouvernement, il ne peut y avoir dans sa manière de parler qu'un usage légitime, celui de la cour et des gens de lettres, à qui elle doit des encouragements; tout autre usage qui s'en écarte dans la prononciation, dans les terminaisons, ou de quelqu'autre façon que ce puisse être, ne fait ni une langue, ou un idiôme à part, ni un dialecte de la langue nationale; c'est un patois abandonné à la populace des provinces, et chaque province a le sien. Girard *synon. franç. art. Langue, Langage, &c*

† By hiatus is meant a broken sound.

PRONUNCIATION

OF CONSONANTS.

Particular Rules.

B

b is sounded at the end of proper names; as,

<i>job,</i>	job, pronounce	<i>zhob.</i>
<i>jacob,</i>	jacob,	<i>zhakob.</i>

At the end of common names *b* is found only in

<i>plomb,</i>	lead, pron.	<i>plon.</i>
<i>radoub,</i>	refitting,	<i>radoob.</i>

C

This letter has two sounds common to both languages.

- | | | |
|--|------------|---------------|
| 1. That of <i>k</i> as in <i>case</i> , | pronounced | <i>kase.</i> |
| 2. That of <i>s</i> as in <i>cease</i> , | | <i>sease.</i> |

c before *a, o, u,* has the sound of *k.*

<i>ca, ka,</i>	<i>car,</i>	for,	<i>kar.</i>
<i>co, ko,</i>	<i>cour,</i>	yard,	<i>koor.</i>
<i>cu, ku,</i>	<i>culotte,</i>	breeches,	<i>kulot.</i> (<i>u</i> , see note 2.)

c before *e, i,* or before *a, o, u,* with a cedilla, this mark (*ç*) under it, has the sound of *s*; as,

<i>ça, sa,</i>	<i>façade,</i>	front,	<i>fasad.</i>
<i>ee, se,</i>	<i>ceder,</i>	to yield,	<i>sayday.</i>
<i>ci, si,</i>	<i>ceci,</i>	this,	<i>scec.</i> (<i>i</i> , see note 4.)
<i>ço, so,</i>	<i>garçon,</i>	boy,	<i>garson.</i>
<i>çu, su,</i>	<i>reçu,</i>	received,	<i>rsu.</i> (<i>u</i> , see note 2.)

c final is generally sounded, and has the sound of *k*; as,

<i>avec,</i>	with,	<i>avayk.</i>
<i>public,</i>	public,	<i>publeek.</i> (<i>u</i> , see note 2.)

except the following words, in which *c* final has no sound;

broc, porc, cleric, un marc, blanc, franc, jonc, tronc, almanac, estomac, tabac.

a jug, pork, clerk, 8 ounces, white, frank, rush, trunk, almanack, stomach, tobacco.
 pron. *bro, por, clayr, mar, blan, fran,* zhon, trov, almana, aystoma, taba.*

cc, before *e, i*; the first *c* has the sound of *k*, the second that of *s*; as,

<i>succès,</i>	success,	<i>suksaye.</i>
<i>accident,</i>	accident,	<i>akseedan.</i>

Before *a, o, u*; *cc* have only one sound, that of *k*; as,

<i>accabler,</i>	to crush,	<i>akablay.</i>
<i>accomplir,</i>	to accomplish,	<i>akonpleer.</i>
<i>accuser,</i>	to accuse,	<i>akusay.</i> (<i>u</i> , see note 2.)

ch, generally pronounced *sh*; as,

<i>chirurgien,</i>	surgeon,	<i>sheeruzheyen.</i>
<i>architecte,</i>	architect,	<i>arsheetayct.</i>

ch has the sound of *k* in the following words;

<i>christ,</i>	<i>chrétien,</i>	<i>choriste,</i>	<i>archange,</i>	<i>orchestre,</i>	<i>chronique,</i>	<i>chronologie.</i>
<i>christ,</i>	<i>christian,</i>	<i>chorister,</i>	<i>archangel,</i>	<i>orchestre,</i>	<i>chronicle,</i>	<i>chronology.</i>
pron. <i>kree,</i>	<i>krayleeyen,</i>	<i>koreest,</i>	<i>arkanzh,</i>	<i>orkaystr,</i>	<i>kronceek,</i>	<i>kronolozhee.</i>

D

d final has no sound; as,

<i>froid,</i>	cold,	<i>frwoy.</i>
<i>chaud,</i>	hot,	<i>show.</i>

except at the end of a word which is pronounced at the *same breath* with another word beginning with a *vowel*, then *d* has the sound of *t*; as,

<i>apprend-il?</i>	does he learn?	<i>apran-t-eei?</i>
<i>quand il vient.</i>	when he comes,	<i>kan-t-eel veyen.</i>

d, or even *dd,* in the body of a word, is sounded: as,

<i>adjectif,</i>	adjective,	<i>adjecteef.</i>
<i>addition,</i>	addition,	<i>addeesecon.</i>

* *c*, in the adjectives *blanc* and *franc*, followed by a noun beginning with a vowel, has the sound of *k*; as, *Du blanc au noir*, pronounce *du blan-k-o-noir*. *Franc étourdi*, pron. *fran-k-aytoordee*. (*i*, see note 4.)

OF CONSONANTS

F

f final is generally sounded; as,

	<i>chef,</i>	chief,	<i>shayf.</i>
	<i>nerf,</i>	sinew,	<i>nayrf.</i>
	<i>bœuf,</i>	ox,	<i>bugf.</i>
	<i>œuf,</i>	egg,	<i>ugf.</i>
except in	<i>clef,</i>	key,	<i>clay.</i>
	<i>bœufs,</i>	oxen,	<i>bûgh.</i>
	<i>œufs,</i>	eggs,	<i>ûgh.</i>

and if pronounced at *one breath* with a word beginning with a *consonant*;

<i>chef d'œuvre,</i>	master-piece,	<i>shaydeugvre.</i>
<i>nerf de bœuf,</i>	cow-skin, a rod,	<i>nayr d bugf.</i>
<i>bœuf salé,</i>	salt beef,	<i>bugh salay.</i>
<i>œuf frais,</i>	new egg,	<i>ugh fraye.</i>

f is sounded in *neuf* at the end of a sentence; as,

<i>j'en ai neuf,</i>	I have got nine,	<i>zhan-ay nugf. (eu, s. rule 12.,</i>
<i>un habit neuf,</i>	a new suit,	<i>un-abee nugf.</i>

joined to a noun beginning with a consonant, *f* has no sound; as,

<i>neuf livres,</i>	nine livres,	<i>nugh leavr. (eu, see rule 12.)</i>
<i>dix neuf sous,</i>	nineteen pence,	<i>dees nugh soo.</i>

joined to a noun beginning with a vowel, *f* has the sound of *v*; as,

<i>neuf écus.</i>	nine crowns,	<i>nugh-v-aykû. (u, see n. 2.)</i>
<i>vingt neuf hommes,</i>	twenty-nine men,	<i>vyngt nugf-v-om.</i>

G

g final has no sound; as,

	<i>long,</i>	long,	<i>lon. (on, see rule 21.)</i>
	<i>sang,</i>	blood,	<i>san, } (an, see rule 16.)</i>
	<i>rang,</i>	rank,	<i>ran,</i>
except in	<i>long accès,</i>	long fit,	<i>long-aksey.</i>
	<i>sang et eau,</i>	blood and water,	<i>sank-ay o.</i>
	<i>de rang en rang,</i>	from rank to rank,	<i>drank-an ran.</i>

g before *e, i,* has the soft sound of *zh,* or *s* in *pleasure,* or *z* in *azure.*

<i>ge, zhay,</i>	<i>général,</i>	general,	<i>zhaynayral.</i>
<i>gi, zhee,</i>	<i>gigot,</i>	leg of mutton,	<i>zhwego.</i>

g before *a, o, u,* has the hard sound of *g* in *god*; a sound nearly similar to that of *k*; as,

<i>ga, ka,</i>	<i>garçon,</i>	boy,	<i>karson. (on, see rule 21.)</i>
<i>go, ko,</i>	<i>gorge,</i>	throat,	<i>korzh.</i>
<i>gu, k,</i>	<i>guérir,</i>	to cure,	<i>kayreer.</i>

N. B. *gu* form only *one sound,* that of *g hard,* or *k*; as,

<i>guérir,</i>	to cure,	<i>kayreer.</i>
<i>guerre,</i>	war,	<i>kayrr.</i>
<i>guide,</i>	guide,	<i>keed.</i>

except the following words, in which *gu* have each a *distinct sound*;

<i>aiguille,</i>	<i>aiguillon,</i>	<i>ayguiser,</i>	<i>arguer,</i>	<i>ciguë,</i>	<i>aiguë,</i>	<i>ambiguë,</i>	<i>ambiguité.</i>
needle,	sting,	to whet,	to argue,	hemlock,	sharp,	ambiguous,	ambiguity.
pron. <i>aygueell,</i>	<i>aygueellon,</i>	<i>ayguesay,</i>	<i>arguay,</i>	<i>seegû,</i>	<i>aygû,</i>	<i>anbecgû,</i>	<i>ambeeguetay</i>

gna, sound *gnyâ,* }
gné, *gnyé,* } observing to sound the *n* as much as possible
gni, *gnyi,* } through the nose; as,
gno, *gnyo,* }

<i>campagnard,</i>	countryman,	<i>kanpagnyar.</i>
<i>accompagné,</i>	accompanied,	<i>akonpagnay.</i>
<i>compagnie,</i>	company,	<i>kompagnee.</i>
<i>ignorant</i>	ignorant,	<i>eeignyoran.</i>

OF CONSONANTS

H

There are *two* sorts of *h* both in french and in english ; the one *aspirate*, which requires an effort of the breath ; as,

<i>héros,</i>	hero,	<i>hayrow.</i>
<i>hasard,</i>	hazard.	<i>hazar.</i>

the other *mute*, which has no sound, and serves only to shew the etymology of the word ; as,

<i>honneur,</i>	honour,	<i>onhur. (eu, see rule 12.)</i>
<i>histoire,</i>	history,	<i>eestwoyvr.</i>

N. B. These two sorts of *h* are often embarrassing to the learner ; they are marked in dictionaries, but one should always bear some characteristic mark in writing. The *h* mute that occurs through the subjoined exercises will be preceded by an apostrophe.

ch, pronounced *sh* ; as,

<i>chat,</i>	cat,	<i>sha. (see c.)</i>
<i>chose,</i>	thing,	<i>shoz.</i>

ph, pronounced *f* ; as,

<i>phrase,</i>	sentence,	<i>fraz.</i>
<i>philosophie,</i>	philosopher,	<i>feelosaf.</i>

rh, sounded *r* ; as,

<i>rhétorique,</i>	rhetoric,	<i>raytoreeck.</i>
<i>rhume,</i>	cold,	<i>rhugm. (u, see note 2.)</i>

th, sounded *t* ; as,

<i>thomas,</i>	thomas,	<i>tomaw.</i>
<i>méthode,</i>	method,	<i>maytod.</i>

J

j, pronounced *zh*, or like *s* in *pleasure, leisure*, or *z* in *azure* ; as,

<i>jardin,</i>	garden,	<i>zhardine. (in, see rule 19.)</i>
<i>jour.</i>	day,	<i>zhour.</i>

K

k, the same sound in french as in english ; as,

<i>kan,</i>	kan,	<i>kan. (an, see rule 16.)</i>
<i>stockholm,</i>	stockholm,	<i>stokolm.</i>

L

l final is generally sounded ; as,

<i>sel,</i>	salt,	<i>sayl.</i>
<i>fil,</i>	thread,	<i>feel. (i, see note 4.)</i>
<i>cheval,</i>	horse,	<i>shval.</i>

except *baril, chenil, couil, fusil, fenil, fils, gril, outil, percil, sourcil, soûl.*
barrel, kennel, ticking, gun, hayloft, son, gridiron, tool, parsley, eyebrow, drunk.
pron. baree, shnee, kootee, fusee, fnee, fee, gree, ootee, persee, soorsee, soo.

l. In the pronouns *il, ils*, some sound the *l* in all instances ; others sound it only when it is followed by a *vowel* ; opinions being divided, *l* in *il, ils*, followed by a *consonant*, may either be pronounced or dropt ; as,

<i>il a,</i>	he has,	<i>eel-a.</i>
<i>il dit,</i>	he says,	<i>eel dec, or ee dec. (i, s. n. 4.)</i>
<i>ils ont,</i>	they have,	<i>eel-z-on, or ee-z-on.</i>
<i>ils disent,</i>	they say,	<i>eel deez, or ee deez.</i>

In conversation *l* is not sounded in

<i>quelque,</i>	some,	<i>kayk.</i>
<i>quelqu'un,</i>	somebody,	<i>kaykun.</i>

ll, in general are both sounded the same as in english ; as,

<i>allégorie,</i>	allegory,	<i>al-laygoree.</i>
<i>illustre,</i>	illustrious,	<i>il-lustr. (u, see note 2.)</i>

But *ll* preceded by *i* in the middle, and at the end of words, must

OF CONSONANTS.

be sounded like *ill* in the word *million*; as,

	<i>meilleur,</i>	better,	<i>meythur.</i>
	<i>bouteille</i>	bottle,	<i>booteyll.</i>
	<i>famille,</i>	family,	<i>famcell.</i>
also <i>il</i> in	<i>bataille,</i>	battle,	<i>batavill.</i>
	<i>avril,</i>	april,	<i>arveell.</i>
	<i>péril,</i>	peril,	<i>payreell.</i>
	<i>babil,</i>	prattling,	<i>babeel.</i>
	<i>travail,</i>	labour,	<i>travaüll.</i>
	<i>soleil,</i>	sun,	<i>soleyll.</i>
	<i>gentil homme,</i>	nobleman,	<i>zhunteellom.</i>

} and all words
ending in *ail*.

except the following words, in which one *l* only is sounded;

<i>argille,</i>	<i>canomille,</i>	<i>distille,</i>	<i>imbécille,</i>	<i>mille,</i>	<i>ville,</i>	<i>pupille,</i>	<i>tranquille.</i>
clay,	camomile,	distil,	imbecile,	thousand,	town,	pupil,	quiet
pron. <i>ar-heel,</i>	<i>kanomeel,</i>	<i>deesteel,</i>	<i>inebayceel,</i>	<i>meel,</i>	<i>veel,</i>	<i>pupeel,</i>	<i>trankeel.</i>

M

m, at the end of a word, and in the first syllable of words beginning with *com*, has only the half sound of *n*. See note 5.

<i>faim,</i>	hunger,	<i>fine.</i> (<i>in</i> , see rule 19.)
<i>nom,</i>	name,	<i>non.</i> (<i>on</i> , see rule 21.)
<i>compliment,</i>	compliment,	<i>compleeman.</i> (<i>an</i> , rule 16.)

m has no sound in

<i>damner,</i>	to damn,	<i>dawnay</i> ; and derivatives.
<i>solemnel,</i>	solemn,	<i>solanel.</i>
<i>automne,</i>	autumn,	<i>ôton.</i>

but *m* has a full sound in

<i>automnal,</i>	autumnal,	<i>ôtomnal.</i>
<i>amnistie,</i>	amnesty,	<i>anneestee.</i>
<i>calomnie,</i>	slander,	<i>calomnee.</i>
<i>hymne,</i>	hymn,	<i>hecmm.</i>
<i>indemniser,</i>	to indemnify,	<i>inedanneesay.</i>
<i>indemnité,</i>	indemnification,	<i>inedanneetay.</i>
<i>agamemnon,</i>	agamemnon,	<i>agamemnon.</i>
<i>somnambule,</i>	sleep-walker,	<i>somnanbul.</i> (see note 2.)

mm, only one sound; as,

<i>homme,</i>	man,	<i>om.</i>
<i>femme,</i>	woman,	<i>fan.</i>

except in the first syllable of the words beginning with *imm*; as,

<i>immortel,</i>	immortal,	<i>im-mortayl.</i>
<i>immense,</i>	immense,	<i>im-manss.</i>

N

What has been said of *m* may be applied to *n*.

n, at the end of a word, or in the first syllable of words beginning with *con*, has only a half sound. See note 5.

<i>pain,</i>	bread,	<i>pine.</i>	} (<i>in</i> , s. rule 19.)
<i>vin,</i>	wine,	<i>vine.</i>	
<i>condition,</i>	condition,	<i>condeeseon.</i>	

nn, only one sounded.

<i>année,</i>	year,	<i>anaye.</i>
<i>connaître,</i>	to know,	<i>conaytr.</i>

except the following words, in which *nn* are both sounded;

<i>annotation,</i>	annotation,	<i>an-notasscon.</i>
<i>annuel,</i>	annual,	<i>an-nael</i> ; and derivatives.
<i>annuler,</i>	to annul,	<i>an-nulay</i>
<i>inné,</i>	innate,	<i>in-nay.</i>
<i>innover,</i>	to innovate,	<i>in-notay</i> ; and derivatives.

OF CONSONANTS.

P

p final is not sounded, even when it is followed by a vowel; as
un loup, a wolf, *un loo.* (*u*, see note 2.)
ce drap est bon, this cloth is good, *sdra aye bon.*
 except in *cap,* cap, *cap.*
cep, stock of a vine, *sapp.*

p in *trop* and *beaucoup*, joined to a word beginning with a vowel, is sounded; as,

trop entêté, too obstinate, *tro-p-antaytay.*
beaucoup étudié, much studied, *bokoo-p-aytudeey.*

followed by a word beginning with a consonant, *p* has no sound; as,

trop stupide, too stupid, *tro stupeed.* (*u*, see n. 2.)
beaucoup d'affaires, much business, *bokoo daffayr.*

p is sounded in

baptismal, sceptique, septembre, septentrion, accepter, excepter, dompter.
baptismal, sceptick, september, north, to accept, to except, to subdue.
 pron. *bataym, saypteck, sayptanbr, sayptantreeon, aksayptay, eksayptay, domptay.*

but *p* is not sounded in

baptême, compte, exempt, prompt, manuscript, symptôme, sept, sculpteur, temp
baptism, account, exempt, quick, manuscript, symptom, seven, sculptor, time
 pron. *bataym, cont, egzan, pron, manuscree, sinetôm, sayt, skulter, tan.*

pp, one only sounded;

apparence, appearance, *aparanss.*
appartenir, to belong, *apartneer.*

ph, sounded *f*; as,

sphère, sphere, *sfayr.*
philosophie, philosophy, *feelosofee.*

Q

q final is found only in *coq* and *cinq*;
q is scuded, and has the sound of *k* in

coq, cock, *colk.*
coq à l'âne, idle tale, *cok a lawn.*

but it is not sounded in

coq d'inde, turkey-cock, *co dynd.* (*in*, see rule 19.)

q in *cinq* substantive, is sounded *k*; as,

un cinq de pique, a five of spades, *un synk dpeeck.*
à cinq pour cent, at five per cent, *a synk poor san.*
trois et deux font cinq, three and two are five, *troa-z-ay dugh fon synk.*

in *cinq*, prefixed to a noun, and pronounced at the same breath with it, *q* is sounded if the noun begins with a vowel or *h* mute; as,

cinq hommes, five men, *synk om.* (*in*, s. rule 19.)
vingt cinq écus, twenty-five crowns, *vyngt synk aykû.*

if the noun to which *cinq* is prefixed, begins with a consonant, *q* is not sounded; as,

cinq garçons, five boys, *sine karson.*
cinq filles, five girls, *sine feell.* } (*in*, s. rule 19.)

qu has only one sound, that of *k*; as,

qui, who, *kee.* (*i*, see note 4.)
quatre, four, *katr.*
qualité, quality, *kalectay.*
marquis, marquis, *markee.*

except the following words, in which *qu* are pronounced *kw*: as in english:

aquatique, équateur, quadrature, quadruple, quadrupède, quadragenaire, quarto.
aquatic, equator, quadrature, quadruple, quadruped, forty years old, quarto.
 pron. *akwateek, aykwater, kwadratur, kwadruple, kwadrupayd, kwadrashaynayr, kwarto.*

OF CONSONANTS.

R

r is sounded at the end of *all words*; as,

<i>car</i> ,	for, because,	<i>kar</i> .
<i>pour</i> ,	for,	<i>pocr</i> .
<i>parvenir</i> ,	to arrive,	<i>parvneer</i> .

except the words ending in *er* or *ier*, of more than one syllable, in which the *r* has no sound, but it gives to *e* the sound of *é short*, i. e. *ay*; as

<i>aimer</i> ,	to love,	<i>aymay</i> .
<i>écolier</i> ,	scholar,	<i>aykoleeay</i> .
and in <i>monsieur</i> ,	sir,	<i>moseugh</i> .

r is not sounded in *notre*, *votre*, *quatre*, joined to a noun beginning with a consonant; as,

<i>notre maison</i> ,	our house,	<i>not mayzon</i> . (<i>on</i> , rule 21.)
<i>votre chapeau</i> ,	your hat,	<i>rot shapo</i> .
<i>quatre livres</i> ,	four livres,	<i>kat leerr</i> .

but *r* is sounded when *notre*, *votre*, *quatre*, are joined to a noun beginning with a vowel; as,

<i>notre ami</i> ,	our friend,	<i>notr-amee</i> .
<i>votre honneur</i> ,	your honour,	<i>rot-r-onhur</i> . (<i>eu</i> , see rule 12.)
<i>quatre écus</i> ,	four crowns,	<i>katr-aykû</i> .
and in <i>notre père</i> ,	our father,	<i>notr-payr</i> , lord's prayer.
<i>notre dame</i> ,	our lady,	<i>notr-dam</i> , virgin mary.

r is always sounded in

<i>le nôtre</i> ,	ours,	<i>hnwtr</i> .
<i>le vôtre</i> ,	yours,	<i>kwtr</i> .

rr, only one is sounded; as,

<i>arriver</i> ,	to arrive,	<i>areevay</i> .
<i>arroser</i> ,	to water,	<i>arozay</i> .

except in the first syllable of the words beginning with *irr*; as,

<i>irrégulier</i> ,	irregular,	<i>ir-rayguleeay</i> .
<i>irréprochable</i> ,	irreproachable,	<i>ir-rayproshabl</i> .

S

This letter has *two* sounds common to both languages, the first *hard* or *aspirate*, like *c soft*; as,

<i>somme</i> ,	sum,	<i>sum</i> .
----------------	------	--------------

the other *soft* or *liquid*; like *z*; as,

<i>rose</i> ,	rose,	<i>roze</i> .
---------------	-------	---------------

s, at the beginning of a word, or in the body of a word, when it is preceded or followed by a *consonant*, is always pronounced *hard* or *aspirate*, as,

<i>salut</i> ,	safety,	<i>salu</i> . (<i>u</i> , see note 2.)
<i>souper</i> ,	supper,	<i>soopay</i> .
<i>personne</i> ,	nobody,	<i>payrson</i> .

s, between *two vowels* in the *body* of a word, or at the *end* of a word, which is to be pronounced at the *same breath* with another word beginning with a *vowel*, has the sound of *z*; as,

<i>raison</i> ,	reason,	<i>rayzon</i> . (<i>on</i> , see rule 21.)
<i>plaisir</i> ,	pleasure,	<i>playzeer</i> .
<i>trois heures</i> ,	three hours,	<i>troa-z-hur</i> .
<i>mes enfants</i> ,	my children,	<i>may-z-anfan</i> . (<i>an</i> , rule 16.)

in other instances, *s final* has no sound; but renders the syllable *long*;

<i>trouvas tu?</i>	didst thou find?	<i>troovaw tu?</i> (<i>u</i> , see n. 2.)
<i>tes amis</i> ,	thy friends,	<i>tayz-amee</i> .
<i>revenus</i> ,	returned,	<i>rayrnû</i> . (see note 2.)

except at the end of *greek* and *latin* names which have been adopted

OF CONSONANTS.

in the french language ; as,

	<i>pâris,</i>	paris, <i>the trojan,</i>	<i>pawreess.</i>
	<i>vênus,</i>	venus,	<i>vaynus.</i>
	<i>mars,</i>	mars,	<i>mars.</i>
also in	<i>as,</i>	ace,	<i>ass.</i>
	<i>ris,</i>	screw,	<i>veess.</i>
	<i>lis,</i>	lily,	<i>leess.</i>
	<i>aloès,</i>	aloes,	<i>aloays.</i>
but not in	<i>mars,</i>	march,	<i>mar</i>
	<i>fleur de lis,</i>	flower de luce,	<i>fluhr úlee.</i>

ss have only one sound, but always *aspirate* ; as,

<i>assurer,</i>	to assure,	<i>asuray.</i> (<i>u</i> , see note 2.)
<i>ressentir,</i>	to resent,	<i>rsunteer</i>

sc before *e, i*, have only one sound, that of *s aspirate* ; as,

<i>sceptique,</i>	sceptick,	<i>sayptceck.</i>
<i>science,</i>	science,	<i>seeanss.</i>

sc before *a, o, u, l, r*, have the sound of *sk* ; as,

<i>scandale,</i>	scandal,	<i>skandal.</i>
<i>gascon,</i>	gascon,	<i>kaskon.</i>
<i>scorbut,</i>	scurvy,	<i>skorbu.</i> (<i>u</i> , see note 2.)
<i>sculpteur,</i>	sculptor,	<i>skultur.</i>
<i>esclave,</i>	slave,	<i>aysklar.</i>
<i>scrupule,</i>	scruple,	<i>skrupul.</i> (<i>u</i> , see note 2.)

T

t has *two* sounds, both found in *satiety*, pronounced *saciety*.

t at the beginning of words has the same sound in french as in english,

<i>table,</i>	table,	<i>tabl.</i>
<i>timidité,</i>	timidity,	<i>teemcedetay.</i>

in the body of a word *t* followed by *i*, has generally the sound of *c* ;

<i>patience,</i>	patience,	<i>pawceeanss.</i>
<i>action,</i>	action,	<i>akceeon.</i>

except the following words, in which *t* retains its own sound ;

<i>bastion, question, partie, matière, étions, étiez,</i>	<i>sortions, sortiez, entier.</i>
pron. <i>basteeon, kaysteeon, partee, matecayr, ayteeon, ayteeaye, sorteeon, sorteeaye, anteeay</i>	<i>entièrement, chrétien, chrétienté, soutien, entretien, il retient.</i>
<i>entièrement, chrétien, christendom, support, maintenance, he retains.</i>	
pron. <i>anteeayrman, crayteeeyen, krayteeantay, sooteeyen, antrayteeeyen, il rayteeeyen.</i>	

and the words *ending* in *tié*, and *tier* ; as,

<i>amitié,</i>	friendship,	<i>ameeteey.</i>
<i>châtier,</i>	to chastise,	<i>shawteeay.</i>

t final is not sounded ; as,

<i>tout,</i>	all,	<i>too.</i>
<i>il est,</i>	it is,	<i>eel aye.</i>
<i>fait,</i>	done,	<i>fay.</i>
except in <i>est, ouest,</i>	east, west,	<i>ayst, west.</i>
<i>lest, dot</i>	ballast, dower,	<i>layst, dot.</i>
<i>brut, correct,</i>	rough, correct,	<i>brut, corrayct.</i>
<i>un fat, un sot,</i>	a fop, a fool,	<i>un fat, un sot.</i>
<i>pact, exact,</i>	pact, exact,	<i>pact, egzact.</i>

and when it ends a word which must be pronounced at the *same breath* with another word beginning with a *vowel* ; as,

<i>est-elle?</i>	is she?	<i>aye-t-ell?</i>
<i>tout à fait,</i>	quite,	<i>too-t-afay.</i> (see gen. rule.)
but never in <i>et,</i>	and, (<i>conjunction</i>)	<i>ay.</i>

OF CONSONANTS.

t is sounded in *sept, huit*, substantives ; as,

<i>un sept,</i>	a seven,	<i>un sayt.</i> (u, see note 2.)
<i>un huit,</i>	an eight,	<i>un hueet.</i>

in *sept, huit, vingt, cent*, joined to a noun, *t* is sounded when the noun which follows it begins with a *vowel* ; as,

<i>sept enfans,</i>	seven children,	<i>sayt-anfan:</i>
<i>huit amis,</i>	eight friends,	<i>hueet-amee.</i> (see gen. rule.)

if the noun begins with a *consonant*, *t* has no sound ; as,

<i>sept navires,</i>	seven ships,	<i>say navveer.</i>
<i>cent chevaux,</i>	a hundred horses,	<i>san shrô.</i>

tt, only one sounded ; as,

<i>attirer,</i>	to attract,	<i>ateeray.</i>
<i>frotter,</i>	to rub,	<i>frotay.</i>

V

v has the same sound in french as in english ; as,

<i>vanité,</i>	vanity,	<i>vaneetay.</i>
<i>vivacité,</i>	vivacity,	<i>veevaccetay</i>

X

This letter has *three* sounds, viz. *gz, ks*, and *z*.

In the first syllable of a word *x* followed by a *vowel*, is sounded *gz* ; as,

<i>exemple,</i>	example,	<i>egzample.</i>
<i>exister,</i>	to exist,	<i>egzeestay.</i>

followed by a *consonant*, it is sounded *ks* ; as,

<i>excès,</i>	excess,	<i>ayksaye.</i>
<i>exposer,</i>	to expose,	<i>ayksposay.</i>

x is also sounded *ks* in

<i>sex, axe,</i>	sex, axle,	<i>sayks, aks.</i>
<i>fluxion,</i>	fluxion,	<i>flukseon.</i> (u, see note 2.)
<i>axiome,</i>	axiom,	<i>akseeom.</i>
<i>stix, phœnix,</i>	stix, phœnix,	<i>steeks, fayneeks.</i>
<i>index, pollux,</i>	index, pollux,	<i>inedeks, polluks.</i>
<i>alexandre,</i>	alexander,	<i>alayksandr.</i>

x has the sound of *s aspirate* in

<i>six, dix,</i>	six, ten,	<i>sees, dees.</i>
<i>dix sept,</i>	seventeen,	<i>deessayt.</i>
<i>soixante,</i>	sixty,	<i>soassant.</i>

x final generally has no sound ; it only renders the syllable *long* ; as,

<i>beaux,</i>	fine,	<i>bô.</i>
<i>lieux,</i>	places,	<i>leeugh.</i>

except when it ends a word which is pronounced at the *same breath* with another word beginning with a *vowel*, then it is sounded *z* ; as,

<i>six amis,</i>	six friends,	<i>see-z-amee.</i>
<i>beaux yeux,</i>	fine eyes,	<i>bô-z-yeugh.</i> (general rule.)

and when it is followed by *ième*, or *ièment* ; as,

<i>deuxième,</i>	second,	<i>dugh-iem.</i>
<i>sixième,</i>	sixthly,	<i>seezemman.</i>

Z

z has the same sound in french as in english ; as.

<i>zèle,</i>	zeal,	<i>zayl.</i>
--------------	-------	--------------

z final has no sound ; but renders the syllable *long*.

<i>vous avez,</i>	you have,	<i>too-z-avaye.</i>
<i>vous parlez,</i>	you speak,	<i>too parlaye.</i>

except in *chez*, at one's house, followed by a *vowel* ; as,

<i>chez elle,</i>	at her house,	<i>shay-z-ell.</i>
-------------------	---------------	--------------------

OR

PRONUNCIATION OF SYLLABLES.

BY PROSODY is meant the manner of pronouncing each syllable regularly, *i. e.* according to what each syllable taken separately requires.

It is certain that some diversity must be observed in the pronunciation of syllables, otherwise the language would be perfect monotony; there are then divers inflexions of the voice, some which raise the tone, some which lower it, and this is what grammarians call *prosodical accent*.*

GENERAL RULES.

I. The penultima vowel of all words ending with *e* mute, is long; as, *pensée*, thought; *armée*, army; *je tie*, I tie; *je me fie*, I trust myself; *joie*, joy; *j'envoie*, I send; *je loue*, I praise; *il joue*, he plays; *je nûe*, I shadow; *la rue*, the street; *de la morûe*, cod-fish, &c. But if, in these words, the *e* mute were changed into a masculine *é*, then the penultima would become short; as *tier*, to tie; *louer*, to praise; *ûer*, to shadow.

II. When a vowel ends a syllable, and is followed by another vowel, which is not *e* mute, that syllable is short; as *créé*, created; *féal*, trusty; *action*, action; *hâir*, to hate; *doûé*, endowed; *tûer*, to kill.

III. Every syllable ending with any consonant but *s*, *x*, or *z*, is short; as, *sac*, sack; *lac*, lake; *sél*, salt; *éventûil*, fan; *fûim*, hunger; *parfûm*, perfume; *sên*, bosom; *soûn*, care; *garçon*, boy; *cap*, cape; *nectâr*, nectar; *pôt*, pot; *sört*, fate, &c.

IV. Every syllable ending with *s*, *x*, or *z*, is long; *des sacs*, sacks; *des sêls*, salts; *des pôts*, pots; *mon fils*, my son; *la paix*, peace; *la voix*, the voice; *le nez*, the nose.

V. Between two vowels, the last of which is mute, the letter *s* or *x* lengthens the penultima; as, *extâse*, extasy; *diocèse*, diocese; *il pèse*, he weighs; *betûse*, foolishness; *franchûse*, candour; *rose*, rose; *épouse*, spouse; *rûse*, cunning; *reclûse*, recluse; *aise*, glad; *thèse*, thesis; *vâse*, vessel.

And it then generally happens, that the antepenultima becomes short; as *il s'extâsie*, he falls into extasy; *pésée*, weighing; *épousée*, married, &c. for the french prosody requires that the penultima be strong, if the final is mute, and that the penultima be weak, if the voice rests upon the final.

VI. An *s* or an *x* sounded, preceded by a vowel, and followed by a consonant, always renders the syllable short; as, *jâspe*, jasper; *mâsque*, mask; *âstre*, star; *burlésque*, burlesque; *funêste*, fatal; *pâte*, track; *rîsque*, risk; *pôte*, post; *brûsque*, abrupt; *juste*, just; *bârbe*, beard; *bârque*, bark; *berceau*, cradle; *infirme*, infirm.

But when there are two *rr*, if the two together form only an indivisible sound, the syllable is always long; as, *arrêt*, arrest; *bârre*, bar; *bisârre*, whimsical; *tonnêrre*, thunder; *éclôrre*, to be hatching, &c.

VII. When the nasal vowels *am*, *an*, *em*, *en*, *im*, *in*, *aim*, *ain*, *ein*, *om*, *on*, *um*, *un*, are followed by a consonant, which is neither *m* nor *n*, and which begins another syllable, they are long; as, *ainsi*, thus; *jâmbe*, leg; *jâmbon*, ham; *crâinte*, fear; *trêm-bler*, to tremble; *peindre*, to paint; *joindre*, to join; *tomber*, to fall; *humble*, humble, &c.

If *m* or *n* be doubled, it renders the syllable short to which the first of the doubled consonant belongs; as, *hônme*, man; *fêmme*, woman; *épigrâmmme*, epigram; *qu'il prenne*, let him take; *consônne*, consonant; *persônne*, person, nobody.

PARTICULAR RULES.

A

A, the first letter of the alphabet, is long; as, *un petit â*, a little *a*; *il ne sait ni â ni b*, he knows neither *a* nor *b*.

Â, the preposition, is short; as, *je suis à Paris*, I am at Paris; *j'écris à Rome*, I write to Rome; as is also *a* in the third person singular of the verb *avoir*, to have; *il à de beaux livres*, he has fine books; *il à été*, he has been; *il à parlé*, he has spoken.

At the beginning of a word *a* is long, in *acre*, sour; *âge*, age; *âme*, soul; *âne*, ass; *âpre*, harsh; *ârrhes*, earnest money; *âs*, ace, &c.

* This mark (˘) is intended to show that the syllable is long; this other (˘) that it is short; and the doubtful syllables are marked with a grave accent, thus (˘).

OF SYLLABLES.

These instances excepted, *a* is short, whether it makes a syllable of itself; as in *apôtre*, apostle; or is followed by a double consonant, as in *apprendre*, to learn; or by two consonants which are different, as in *altéré*, altered; *argument*, argument.

At the end of a word *a* is very short in the preterite and future tenses of verbs; as, *il aimâ*, he loved; *il chantâ*, he sung; *il aimerâ*, he will love; *il chanterâ*, he will sing. In the articles *là*, the; *mâ*, my; *tû*, thy; *sû*, his. In the adverbs *çà*, here; *là*, there; *déjà*, already. A little more stress is laid upon the *a*, in substantives borrowed from foreign languages; as, *sofâ*, sofa; *duplicatâ*, duplicate, &c.

ABE, always short; as, *arâbe*, arabian; except *astrolâbe*, astrolabe; *crâbe*, crab.

ABLE, short in all adjectives; as, *aimâble*, amiable; *capâble*, capable, &c. long in most substantives; as, *câble*, cable; *fâble*, fable; *sâble*, sand; and in these verbs, *on m'ac-câble*, I am overwhelmed; *je m'ensâble*, I stick in the sand; *il hâble*, he brags.

ABRE, always long; as, *sâbre*, sabre; *il se câbre*, he rears; also in the masculine termination; *se câbrer*, to rear; *delâbré*, in tatters.

AC, always short; as *sâc*, sack; *lâc*, lake; *trictâc*, back-gammon. See III. Gen. Rule.

ACE, long, in *grâce*, favor; *espâce*, space; *lâcer*, to lace; *délâcer*, to unlace.

These words excepted; *ace* is short; as, *glâce*, ice, looking-glass; *préface*, preface.

ACHE, long, in *lâche*, coward; *tâche*, task; *relâche*, relaxation; *je mâche*, I chew.† As also in the masculine terminations *mâcher*, to chew; *relâcher*, to relax, &c.

In all other instances ACHE is short; as, *tâche*, a spot; *moustâche*, whisker; *vâche*, cow; *il se câche*, he conceals himself; *il arrâche*, he pulls out, &c.

ACLE, long, in *il râcle*, he scrapes; *il débâcle*, the ice is breaking; these two words excepted, ACLE is doubtful; as, *orâcle*, oracle; *mirâcle*, miracle; *obstacle*, obstacle.

ACRE, long, in *âcre*, tart; but short in all other words; as, *diâcre*, deacon; *fiâcre*, hackney-coach; *âcre*, an acre; *sâcre du roi*, the king's coronation.

ADE, always short, as, *sérénâde*, serenade; *cascâde*, cascade; *fâde*, tasteless; *il persûde*, he persuades; *il s'évâde*, he makes his escape.

ADRE, short in *lâdre*, leprous; but long in *câdre*, frame; *escâdre*, squadron; even when the word ends with *e* mascul. as, *mâdré*, speckled; *encâdrer*, to frame.

ADE, APHE, always short; as, *carâfe*, decanter; *épitâphe*, epitaph; *agrâffe*, clasp.

AFRE, AFFRE, long, in *âfre*, fright; *bâfre*, gluttony; short in all other instances; as, *balâfre*, gash; *sâfre*, ravenous.

AFLE, long; as, *râfle*, a royal pair at dice; *j'êrâfle*, I scratch; and the same quantity is preserved when *e* final is short; as, *râfler*, to sweep away; *êrâfler*, to scratch slightly.

AGE, long in the word *âge*, age; but so short in all the rest that we dwell a little upon the penultima; *partâge*, division; *avantâge*, advantage, &c.

AGNE, always short, except in the verb *gâgner*, to gain; *je gâgne*, I gain.

AGUE, always short, *bâgue*, ring; *dâgue*, dagger; *vâgue*, wave, vague.

AI, a false diphthong, which produces only a simple sound. When it has the sound of *ê* long, it is doubtful; as, *vrâi*, true; *essâi*, essay; but it is short when the sound approaches to that of *ê* short; as *j'âi*, I have; *je chantâi*, I sang.

AIE, always long; as, *hâie*, hedge; *plâie*, wound; *vrâie*, true. See I. Gen. Rule.

AYE, short; as, *vous âyez*, you may have; *vous pâyez*, you pay; *vous bêgâyez*, you stammer. See II. General Rule.

The reason of this difference between AIE and AYE is, that AIE makes only one syllable, and that Y, which is equivalent to *î*, dividing the word into two syllables, these words are pronounced as if they were spelt *ai-iez*, *pai-iez*, *bégai-iez*, the first syllable of which is pronounced like *ê* short. (See *ai*, compound vowel.)

AIGNE, always short; as, *chatâigne*, chestnut; *je dâigne*, I deign; *il se bâigne*, he is bathing; *on le sâigne*, they are bleeding him.

AIGRE, always short; as, *âigre*, tart; *mâigre*, lean; *vinâigre*, vinegar, &c.

AIL. General Rule. When a word ends with *l* liquid, the syllable is short; as, *éventâil*, fan; *gouvernâil*, rudder; the *a* being the only vowel which is heard in the penultima, and the *i* serving only to soften the sound of the following consonant. This is also the case in the three following paragraphs.

† Formerly written *lasche*, *tasche*, with a mute *s*, to show that they are long. This is now supplied by a circumflex accent, and it should not be omitted over these words, as the pronunciation of a word sometimes alters its meaning.

OF SYLLABLES.

AILLE, short in *medaille*, medal; and in the following verbs; *je détaille*, I retail; *j'émaille*, I enamel; *je travaille*, I work; but it is long in all other words; as, *je raille*, I jeer; *il bâille*, he yawns; *il braille*, he brawls; *il rimaille*, he makes poor verses.

AILLET, **AILLIER**, short; as, *mâillet*, mallet; *pâillet*, pale coloured; *jâillir*, to spout; *assâillir*, to assault.

AILLON, short in *médaillon*, medallion; *batâillon*, battalion; *nous émâillons*, we enamel; *détâillons*, let us detail; *travâillons*, let us work. These words excepted, **AILLON** is long; as, *hâillon*, tattered clothes; *bâillon*, gag; *nous tâillons*, we cut, &c.

AIM, **AİN**. See III. and VII. General Rules.

AIME. This termination is found only in the verb *aïmer*, to love; which is short as, *j'aïme*, I love; *tu aïmes*, thou lovest, &c.

AINE, long, in *hâine*, hatred; *châine*, chain; *gâine*, sheath; *je trâine*, I draw, and their derivatives. These instances excepted, **AINE** is short; as, *capitâine*, captain; *fontâine*, fountain; *semâine*, week; *lâine*, wool.

AIR, **AIRE**. The first is doubtful in the singular; as, *l'air*, the air; *châir*, flesh; *éclair*, lightning, &c. The second is long; as, *une pâire*, a pair; *la châire*, the pulpit.

AIS, **AIX**, **AISE**, **AISSE**, all long; as, *palâis*, palace; *j'avâis*, I had; *j'étais*, I was; *un françâis*, a frenchman; *pâix*, peace; *fournâise*, furnace; *câisse*, chest.

AIT, **AITE**, both short; as, *lâit*, milk; *uttrâit*, charm; *retrâite*, retreat, &c. except *il plâit*, he pleases; *il nâit*, it springs; *il repâit*, he feeds; *le fâite*, the summit.

AITRE, always long; *trâitre*, traitor; *mâitre*, master; and other terminations of the same sound, though spelt differently; as, *parâitre*, or *parâître*, to appear, &c.

ALE, **ALLE**, always short; *cigâle*, cicada; *scandâle*, scandal; *une mâlle*, a trunk; *une bâlle*, a ball; except *hâle*, sunburning; *pâle*, pale; *un mâle*, a male; *un râle*, a rail; and the derivatives of these words, though the final syllable be masculine; as, *hâlé*, parched by the sun; *râler*, to rattle; *pâir*, to grow pale; *pâleur*, paleness.

AM, **AN**. See III. and VII. General Rules.

AME, always short; *dâme*, lady; *râme*, oar, ream, &c. except in the following words; *âme*, soul; *infâme*, infamous; *blâme*, blame; *il se pâme*, he swoons; *un brâme*, a bra-min; and in all the preterite tenses of verbs; as, *nous aimâmes*, we loved; *nous chantâmes*, we sang; *nous parlâmes*, we spoke; *nous jouâmes*, we played, &c.

ANE, **ANNE**, always short; as, *cabâne*, cottage; *orgâne*, organ, &c. except *âne*, ass; *crâne*, skull; *les mânes*, the manes; *de la mâne*, manna; *une mâne*, a basket.

ANT. See III. General Rule. **N. B.** In the word *comptant* there is a difference; when a participle, it is long; as, *je me suis trompé en comptant l'argent*, I made a mistake in counting the money; and it is short when used as a substantive or adverb; as, *il a du comptant*, he has ready money; *payer comptant*, to pay in ready money.

AP, always short; as, *câp*, cape. See III. General Rule.

APE, **APPE**, always short; *pâpe*, pope; *trâpe*, trap; *grâpe*, a bunch; *on frâppe*, somebody knocks; except *râpe*, a rasp; and *râper*, to rasp, in which it is long.

APRE; *câpre*, caper; *âpre*, tart; the only two words of this termination, are long.

AQUE, always short, except *pâques*, easter; and *Jâques*, James.

AR, always short; as, *câr*, for; *nectâr*, nectar. See III. General Rule.

ARBE. General Rule. Every syllable which finishes with *r*, and is followed by another syllable beginning with a consonant, is short; as, *barbe*, beard; *barque*, bark; *bêrceau*, cradle; *infirme*, infirm; *ordre*, order, &c.

ARE, long; as, *barbare*, barbarous; *je prépâre*, I prepare; but when the last syllable is not mute, **ARE** is short; as, *égâré*, strayed; *prépârant*, preparing; *barbârie*, barbary.

ARRE. General Rule. Whatever vowel precedes two *rr*, if the two together form only one sound, the syllable is long; as, *arrêt*, arrest; *barre*, bar; *tonnêre*, thunder, &c.

ARI, **ARIE**, always short; as, *mâri*, husband; *pâri*, wager; *Mârie*, Mary; *barbârie*, barbary; except, *hourvâri*, uproar; *mâri*, sorry; *équârri*, squared.

AS, commonly long, as there are few words terminated in this manner in which the *a* is not sounded very open, whether the *s* be pronounced; as in *Pâllas*, Pallas; *âs*, ace; or whether it be mute, as in *tâs*, heap; *tu âs*, thou hast; *tu aimâs*, thou loveâst.

ASE, always long; as, *bâse*, basis; *Pegâse*, Pegasus; *emphâse*, emphasis; *extâse*, extasy; *râser*, to shave; *jâser*, to chatter. See V. General Rule.

ASPE, General Rule. An *s* sounded, preceded by a vowel, and followed by a consonant, always renders the syllable short; as, *masque*, mask. See VI. General Rule.

OF SYLLABLES.

ASSE, short; except in the substantives *bässe*, base; *cässe*, cassia; *classe*, class; *échasses*, stilts; *pässe*, pass; *nässe*, bow-net; *tässe*, cup; *chässe*, shrine; *mässe*, mass; in the feminine adjectives *bässe*, low, base; *grässe*, fat; *lässe*, weary; and in the following verbs; *il aimässe*, he collects; *il enchässe*, he inches; *il cassé*, he breaks; *il passe*, he passes; *il compasse*, he measures; with their compounds.

All these words retain their quantity, even when the termination, instead of being mute, is masculine; as, *châssis*, sash; *câsser*, to break; *pâsser*, to pass.

Add to these the first and second persons singular, and the third person plural of verbs, terminated in *âsse*, *âsses*, *âssent*, in the subjunctive; as, *j'aimässe*, I might love; *tu aimâsses*, thou mightest love; *ils aimâssent*, they might love.

AT, long in the substantives *bât*, a pack-saddle; *mât*, mast; *appât*, bait; *dégât*, havock; and in the third person singular of the perfect of the subjunctive *il aimât*, he might love; *il chantât*, he might sing; *il parlât*, he might speak, &c.*

In all other substantives, in adjectives, and in the present of the indicative, AT is short; as, *avoçât*, counsellor; *éclât*, splendour; *plât*, flat, a dish; *on se bät*, people fight.

ATE, always short, except in *hâte*, haste; *pâte*, dough; *il gâte*, he spoils; *il mâte*, he masts; *il démâte*, he dismasts; and in the second person plural of the preterite tenses of verbs, terminated in *âtes*; as, *vous aimâtes*, you loved; *vous parlâtes*, you spoke.

ATRE, short in *quâtre*, four; and in *bâtre*, to beat, with its derivatives, *abâtre*, to pull down; *combâtre*, to fight, &c.

These instances excepted, ATRE is always long; as, *idolâtre*, idolatrous; *théâtre*, theatre; *opiniâtre*, obstinate; *emplâtre*, plaster, &c.

AU, compound vowel. When this vowel forms a syllable which is followed by a mute termination, it is long; as, *auge*, through; *autre*, other; *âune*, ell; *pâume*, tennis.

It is also long when in the last syllable of a word it is followed by a consonant; as, *haut*, high; *chaud*, hot; *châux*, lime; *faux*, false; except *Pâul*, Paul.

But AU is doubtful when it precedes a masculine syllable; as, *aubade*, serenade; *audace*, audacity; *automne*, autumn; *augmenter*, to increase; *auteur*, author; and when it is final; as, *joyâu*, jewel; *coteâu*, hillock; *couteâu*, knife.

AVE, short in *râve*, radish; *câve*, cellar; *on pâve*, they are paving; but oftener long; as, *entrâve*, shackles; *grâve*, grave, serious.

But when *v* instead of being followed by *e* mute, is followed by a masculine syllable, the preceding syllable is short; as, *grâvier*, gravel; *aggrâver*, to aggravate.

TRAVE preceding its substantive is short; as, *un brâve homme*, a well-behaved man; but long when it comes after it; as, *un homme brâve*, a brave or courageous man.

AVRE, always long; as, *havre*, harbour; *cadâvre*, corpse.

AX, AXE, always short; as, *Ajâx*, Ajax; *thorâx*, thorax; *borâx*, borax; *âxe*, axle; *tâxe*, tax; *parallâxe*, parallax.

E

The French distinguish three sorts of *e*, which express different sounds; the difference of which is perceived in *fermeté*, firmness; *honnêteté*, honesty.

The first *e* in each of these words, is long, the second mute, and the third short.

E mute is also called feminine; the others are called masculine.

There is no accent over *e* mute, the short requires an acute accent, and the long a grave, or a circumflex, but it is found sometimes without any of these signs, as appears in the first syllable of the word *fermeté*.

With respect to *e* mute, it is sufficient to know that it never begins a word, and that it is seldom found in several consecutive syllables; for if it is found in some compound words, such as *revenir*, to return; *redevenir*, to become again; *entretenir*, to entertain; at least this never happens at the end of a word; thus the *e* which is mute or feminine in the penultima of the infinitive of verbs; as, *appeler*, to call; *peser*, to weigh; *mener*, to lead; *devoir*, to owe; *concevoir*, to conceive, becomes masculine, or is changed into the diphthong *oi*, in the tenses which end with *e* mute; *j'appèle*, I call; *il pèse*, he weighs; *il mène*, he leads; *ils doivent*, they owe; *ils conçoivent*, &c.

For the same reason, though we make *e* mute in *chapelain*, chaplain; *chandelier*, candlestick; *celui-ci*, this; *j'aime*, I love; *je chante*, I sing; we sound it in *chapelle*, chapel; *chandëlle*, candle; *cëlle*, that; *aimë-je*, do I love? *chantë-je*, do I sing?

For such is the genius of the french language, that the penultima be strong, if the final is mute, and that the penultima be weak, if the voice rests upon the final.

* Formerly spelt with an *s* mute, to show that they are long; as, *bast*, mast, *il aimast*, *vous aimastes*, &c. This is now supplied by a circumflex accent, *bât*, *mât*, &c.

OF SYLLABLES.

EBLE, EBRE, EC, ECE, always short; as, *hëble*, wallwort; *funëbre*, mournful; *bëc*, bill; *nëce*, niece.

ECHE, long and very open in *bëche*, spade; *lëche*, thin slice; *grëche*, noisy; *pëche*, fishing; *pëche*, peach; *il empëche*, he prevents; *il dépëche*, he dispatches; *il prêche*, he preaches. Short in *calëche*, calash; *flëche*, arrow; *mëche*, match; *crëche*, crib; *sëche*, dry, the cuttle-fish; *brëche*, breach; *on pëche*, people sin.

ECLE, ECT, ECTE, DRE, EDE, EDER, all short; as, *sicële*, age; *respëct*, respect; *insëcte*, insect; *cëdre*, cedar; *remëde*, remedy; *cëder*, to yield; *possëder*, to possess, &c.

E'E. General Rule. The penultima vowel of all words ending with *e* mute, is long; as, *pensëe*, thought; *armëe*, army; *je lïe*, I tie. See I. General Rule.

E'É. General Rule. When a vowel ends a syllable, and is followed by another vowel which is not *e* mute, that syllable is short; as, *crëé*, created; *fëal*, trusty; *action*, action; *hëir*, to hate; *tëer*, to kill, &c. See II. General Rule.

EF, EFFE; the first is short; as, *chëf*, chief; *brëf*, brief, short. The second long; as, *grëffe*, graft, the rolls; *je grëffe*, I graft.

EFFLE, long, in *nëfle*, medlar; short in *trëfle*, trefoil, club.

EGE, EGLE. The first long; as, *sacrëlege*, sacrilegious; *collëge*, college; *siëge*, seat, siege. The other short; as, *rëgle*, rule; *sëigle*, rye, &c.

EGNE, EIGNE. The first is doubtful; as, *rëgne*, reign; *duëgne*, duenna. The other is short; as, *pëigne*, comb; *ensëigne*, sign; *qu'il fëigne*, let him pretend.

EGEE, EGUE, short; as, *nëgre*, negro; *intëgre*, upright; *bëgue*, a stammerer; *collëgue*, colleague; *il allëgue*, he alleges, &c.

EIL, EILLE, short; as, *solëil*, sun; *sommëil*, sleep; *abëille*, bee; *boutëille*, bottle; the only exceptions are, *viëille*, old woman; *viëillard*, old man; *viëillesse*, old age.

EIN, EINT. See III. and VII. General Rules.

EINE, short; as, *vëine*, vein; *pëine*, pain; the only exception is *rëine*, queen.

EINTE, always long; as, *attëinte*, stroke; *fëinte*, feint.

EL, always short; as, *sël*, salt; *crüel*, cruel, &c. See III. General Rule.

ELE, ELLE, long in *zële*, zeal; *poële*, frying pan; *frële*, frail; *pële mële*, confusedly; *grële*, hail; *il se fële*, it cracks; *la brëbis bële*, the sheep bleats.

These instances excepted, ELE, ELLE, is always short; as, *modële*, model; *fidële*, faithful; *rebëlle*, rebellious; *sël*, mortal, &c.

EM, EN. See III. and VII. General Rules; and sound the final consonant in *itëm*, item; *Bëthlëëm*, Bethlehem; *amën*, amen; *himën*, hymen; *examën*, examination.

EME, doubtful in *crëme*, cream; short in *je sëme*, I sow; *il sëme*, he sows; and long in all other words; as, *baptëme*, baptism; *diadëme*, diadem; *mëme*, even, &c.

ENE, long in *chëne*, oak; *cëne*, the lord's supper; *sëcne*, scene; *gëne*, rack; *alëne*, awl; *rëne*, rein; *frëne*, ash-tree; *arëne*, area; *pëne*, the bolt of a lock; and in the proper names, *Athënes*, Athens; *Diogënes*, Diogenes; *Mëcëne*, Mæcenas, &c. but short in *phënomëne*, phenomenon; *ëbëne*, ebony; *ëtrenne*, new year's gift; *qu'il prënnë*, let him take; *qu'il viënnë*, let him come; and in all words in which the consonant is doubled.

EPE, EPRE, always long; as, *guëpe*, wasp; *crëpe*, crape; *vëpres*, vespers; except *lëpre*, leprosy.

EPTÉ, EPTRE, ECTRE, always short; as, *prëcëpte*, precept; *il accëpte*, he accepts; *sëcëtre* sceptre; *spëctre*, spectre.

EQUE, ECQUE, always short; as, *grëcque*, greek; *bibliothëque*, library; *obsëaues*, funeral, &c. except *ëvëque*, bishop; *archevëque*, archbishop.

ER is short in *Jupitër*, Jupiter; *Lucifër*, Lucifer; *ëthër*, æther; *chër*, dear; *cancër*, cancer; *patër*, the lord's prayer; *mugistër*, a country schoolmaster; *fratër*, a surgeon's apprentice; and long in *fër*, iron; *enfër*, hell; *lëgër*, light; *mër*, sea; *amër*, bitter; *hivër*, winter; but it is doubtful in the infinitive of verbs when the *r* is sounded with the following vowel, as is always the case in repeating verses.

ERBE, ERCE, ERSE, ERCHE, ERCLE, ERDE, ERDRE, all short. See the General Rule under ARBE.

ERD, ERT, doubtful: as, *concërt*, concert; *ouvërt*, open; *dësërt*, desert, wilderness; *il përd*, he loses; *le vërd*, green, &c.

OF SYLLABLES.

ERE, doubtful; as, *chimère*, chimera; *père*, father; *sincère*, sincere; *il espère*, he hopes, &c. but long in the third person plural of the perfect tense of verbs; as, *ils allèrent*, they went; *ils parlèrent*, they spoke; *ils chantèrent*, they sang, &c.

ERGE, ERGUE, ERLE, ERME, ERNE, ERPE, all short. See ARBE, General Rule.

ERR, always long when agreeably to the general rule, the two *rr* form only one indivisible sound; as in *guerre*, war; *tonnerre*, thunder; *nous verrons*, we shall see; short when the two *rr* are pronounced separately; as, *erreur*, error; *terreur*, terror, &c.

ERTE, ERTRE, ERVE, all short. See ARBE. General Rule.

ESSE, long in *confesse*, confession; *presse*, press; *compresse*, compress; *expresse*, express; *cesse*, ceasing; *on s'empresse*, they are eager; *il professe*, he professes.

These instances excepted, ESSE is short; as, *tendresse*, tenderness; *paresse*, laziness; *carresse*, caress; *jeunesse*, youth, &c.

ESQUE, ESTE, ESTRE. See VI. General Rule.

ET, long in *arrêt*, a decree; *benêt*, a simpleton; *forêt*, forest; *genêt*, broom; *prêt*, ready; *aprêt*, preparation; *acquêt*, acquisition; *intérêt*, interest; *il est*, he is.*

These instances excepted, ET is short; as, *cadêt*, younger, junior; *bidêt*, pony; *êt*, and; *sujet*, subject; *brochêt*, pike, &c.

ETE, long in *bête*, beast; *fête*, feast; *arbalète*, a cross-bow; *boîte*, box; *tempête*, tempest; *quête*, quest; *conquête*, conquest; *enquête*, inquest; *requête*, request, petition; *arrête*, fish-bone; *crête*, crest, a coxcomb; *tête*, head; in all other instances, ETE is short; and the *t* is doubled; as, *tablette*, shelf, memorandum-book; *houlette*, crook; unless the etymology forbids doubling it, as, *prophète*, prophet; *poète*, poet.

Honnête is short when placed before a noun; as, *un honnête homme*, an honest man; it is long when placed after; as, *un homme honnête*, a civil man.

Vous êtes, the second person plural of the present tense of *être*, is either long or short, as the poet chooses.

ETRE, long in *être*, a being, to be; *salpêtre*, saltpetre; *ancêtre*, ancestor; *fenêtre*, window; *prêtre*, priest; *champêtre*, rural; *hêtre*, beech; *guêtres*, spatterdashes.

In all other instances ETRE is short, and *t* is doubled, unless the etymology prevents it; as, *diamètre*, diameter; *il pénètre*, he penetrates; *lettre*, letter; *mettre*, to put.

EU, compound vowel, short in the singular, *fêu*, fire; *bleu*, blue; *jêu*, game, sport; *vêu*, vow; *nevêu*, nephew, &c.

EVE, long in *trêve*, truce; *la grève*, the sea-shore; *il rêve*, he dreams; and the penultima of the verb *rêver*, remains long in all its tenses; as, *rêver*, to dream; *je rêvai*, I dreamt; but EVE is doubtful in *fève*, bean; *brève*, brief, short; *il achève*, he finishes; *il crève*, it bursts; *il se lève*, he rises; and the penultima of these verbs is mute, if it be followed by a masculine syllable; as, *achever*, to finish; *il se levait*, he was rising.

EUF, short; as, *veuf*, widower; *neuf*, new; *un œuf*, an egg; *un bœuf*, an ox.

N. B. The *f* is pronounced in all these words, in the singular, but not in the plural, except in *veufs*, widowers.

EUIL, short; as, *seuil*, threshold; *fautéuil*, arm-chair, &c. See III. General Rule.

EULE, long in *meûle*, grinding-stone, mill-stone. This excepted, EULE is short; as, *sêule*, single, alone; *guêule*, the name given to the mouth of beasts and fishes.

EUNE, long in *jeûne*, fasting; and short in *jeûne*, young.

EUR, EURE. The first is short in the singular; *odèur*, odour; *pèur*, fear; *majèur*, of age; and long in the plural *odèurs*, odours; but the second is doubtful, *i. e.*

If EURE ends a word pronounced at the same breath with another word, it is short; as, *la majèure partie*, the major part; *une hêure entière*, a whole hour. If there is no word after it, to be pronounced at the same breath with it, it is long; as, *cette fille est majèure*, that girl is of age; *j'attends depuis une hêure*, I have been waiting for an hour.

EVRE, doubtful; *lèvre*, lip; *chèvre*, goat; *lièvre*, hare; *orfèvre*, gold or silver-smith.

EUX, EUSE, long; *deux*, two; *précieus*, *précieuse*, precious; *crêuser*, to dig, &c.

EX, always short; as, *exemple*, example; *extirper*, to extirpate; *sêxe*, sex, &c.

* All these words, as well as those in the two following paragraphs, were formerly spelt with a mute *s*, which is now suppressed, and supplied by a circumflex, except in *est*, the third person singular of the present tense of *être*. in which *s* is still retained.

OF SYLLABLES.

I

An observation which may have already been made, but which will appear more obvious by reading the rules on the three remaining vowels, is, that the number of short syllables is much greater than of long; therefore, in order to abbreviate this treatise, those terminations will be omitted which are short without exception.

IDRE, long in *hidre*, written *hydre*, for the sake of the etymology, *hydra*; *cïdre*, *cider*.

IE, diphthong, doubtful; as, *miel*, honey; *fiel*, gall; *fièr*, proud; *amitié*, friendship; *sarriere*, quarry; *poussiere*, dust; *mien*, mine; *tièn*, thine; *dièu*, god.

IE, dissyllable, long; as, *viè*, life; *saisiè*, seizure; *il prie*, he begs. See I. Gen. Rule.

IEN, when a dissyllable, the two syllables are short; as, *tièn*, tie; *Paristen*, Parisian; when a diphthong, the syllable is doubtful; as, *le mien*, mine; *rien*, nothing, &c.

IGE, doubtful; *fige*, stalk; *prodige*, prodigy; *litige*, litigation; *vestige*, footstep; *je m'oblige*, I bind myself; *il s'afflige*, he afflicts himself.

But IGE is short in the tenses of these verbs which do not end with *e* mute, as *s'obliger*, to bind one's self; *affligé*, afflicted.

ILE, long in *île*, island; *huile*, oil; *stîle*, stile; *tuîle*, tile; *presqu'île*, peninsula.

IM, IN. See III. and VII. General Rules.

IME, long in *abîme*, abyss; *dîme*, tythe; and in the first person plural of the preterite tense of verbs; as, *nous vîmes*, we saw; *nous répondîmes*, we answered.

ION, short; as, *action*, action; *passion*, passion. See II. General Rule.

IRE, doubtful, *empire*, empire; *écrire*, to write; *il soupire*, he sighs; long in the third person plural of the perfect tense of verbs; *ils punirent*, they punished; *ils firent*, short before a masculine termination; as, *soupirer*, to sigh; *désirer*, to wish, &c.

ISE, long; as, *remise*, coach-house; *surprise*, surprise; *j'épuise*, I exhaust; *ils disent*, they say; *qu'ils lisent*, let them read.

ISSE, always short; as, *saucisse*, sausage; *réglisse*, liquorice; except in the perfect of the subjunctive; as, *je fissè*, I might do; *ils punissent*, they might punish, &c.

IT, long only in the third person singular of the perfect of the subjunctive; as, *il dit*, he might say; *il fit*, he might do; *il punit*, he might punish, &c.*

ITE, long in *benite*, blessed; *gîte*, the seat of a hare; *vîte*, quick; and in the second person of the perfect of verbs; as, *vous fîtes*, you did; *vous vîtes*, you saw, &c.

ITRE, long in *épître*, epistle; *huître*, oyster; *registre*, register; but if *registre* is spelt with *s*, the *i* is short.

IVE, long in the adjective feminine, formed from the masculine in *if*; as, *tardive*, late; *captive*, captive; *juive*, jewess, &c.

IVRE, long in *vivres*, victuals; short in *vivre*, to live; *un livre*, a book, &c.

O

O, always short when it begins a word; as, *occasion*, occasion; *odeur*, odour, &c. except *os*, bone; *oser*, to dare; *osier*, osier; *ôter*, to take away; *otage*, hostage; as likewise in *hôte*, host, landlord; though we say *hôtel*, hotel, and *hôtellerie*, an inn.

OBE, long in *globe*, globe; and *lobe*, lobe; in every other instance OBE is short; as, *robe*, robe, gown; *il dérobe*, he robs.

ODE, long in the verb *rôder*, to ramble; *je rôde*, I ramble; short in all other instances; as, *mode*, mode, fashion; *antipode*, antipodes; *période*, period, &c.

OGE, always short; as, *éloge*, praise; *horloge*, clock; *on déroge*, they derogate.

OI, diphthong, doubtful at the end of a word; as, *moi*, me; *roi*, king; *foi*, faith; *emploi*, employment; short at the beginning; as, *mousson*, harvest; *moitié*, half.

OIE, long; as, *joie*, joy; *soie*, silk; *qu'il voie*, let him see, &c.

OIENT, termination of the third person plural of the imperfect of verbs, is long; as, *ils avoient*, they had; *ils chantoient*, they sang, &c. whilst the third person singular of the same tense spelt OIT, is short; as, *il avoit*, he had; *il chantoit*, he sang, &c.

OIN. See III. and VII. General Rules.

OIR, OIRE, the first is doubtful; as, *espoir*, hope; *devoir*, duty, &c. the second long; as, *boire*, to drink; *gloire*, glory; *mémoire*, memory, &c.

* Formerly written *fist*, *dist*, *punit*, with a mute *s*, now supplied by a circumflex.

OF SYLLABLES.

ois, always long; whether it be a diphthong, as in *fôis*, time; *bourgeois*, burghess; *Danois*, Dane; *Suédois*, Swede, &c. or whether it be used instead of the compound vowel AI, as *j'étois*, or *j'étais*, I was; *un François*, or *un Français*, a Frenchman, &c.

oise, oisse, oitre, oivre, all long; as, *framboise*, raspberry; *paroisse*, parish; *cloître*, cloister; *poivre*, pepper, &c.

oit, short; as, *il boit*, he drinks; except *il croît*, he grows; and when it is used instead of the compound vowel AI; as, *il parait*, or *il paraît*, it appears.

ole, always short; as, *obole*, obole; *idole*, idol; *boussôle*, sea compass; except *drôle*, facetious; *pôle*, pole; *geôle*, jail; *môle*, mole, pier; *rôle*, a list, the part of an actor; *contrôle*, control; *enjôler*, to wheedle, to decoy; *enrôler*, to enlist, and the tenses derived from these verbs; *il contrôle*, he controls; *ils enrôlent*, they enlist, &c.

om, on. See III. and VII. General Rules.

ome, one, long; as, *atome*, atom; *axiome*, axiom; *phantôme*, phantom; *trône*, throne, &c. except *Rôme*, Rome; and the words in which the consonant is doubled, which follow the general rule; as, *somme*, sum; *pomme*, apple; *consonne*, consonant.

ons, always long; as, *nous aimons*, we love; *fonds*, land, funds; *maisons*, houses; *ponts*, bridges, &c. See IV. General Rule.

or, always short; as, *castor*, beaver; *butor*, bittern, a blockhead; *encor*, yet, still; *effort*, effort; but when OR is followed by S, it is long; as, *hors*, out; *alors*, then; *le corps*, the body; *les trésors*, the treasures. See IV. General Rule.

ore, long; as, *aurôre*, aurora; *je déploré*, I lament; but observe that the penultima of the verbs which have only one R, and which is long in the present of the indicative; as, *je décôre*, I decorate; *il s'évapore*, it evaporates; becomes short if the termination is masculine; as, *décôrer*, to decorate; *évapôré*, evaporated, and that it remains long in tenses in which the R is doubled; as, *il s'évapôrrait*, it would evaporate, &c.

os, ose, long; as, *ôs*, bone; *prôpos*, discourse; *à prôpos*, timely; *dose*, dose; *chôse*, thing; *il ose*, he dares. See IV. and V. General Rules.

osse, long; as, *grösse*, big; *fösse*, pit; *il endorse*, he endorses; even when the final is masculine; as, *grösseur*, bigness; *grössesse*, pregnancy; *fössé*, ditch.

ot, long in *impôt*, tax; *tôt*, soon; *dépôt*, deposit; *entrepôt*, store-house; *supôt*, a subservient agent; *rôt*, roast meat; *prévôt*, provost, sheriff.*

ote, long in *hôte*, host, landlord; *côte*, coast, rib; *maltôte*, exaction of taxes; *j'ôte*, I take away; likewise when the final is masculine; as, *côté*, side; *ôté*, taken away.†

otre. There are only three words of this termination, viz. *apôtre*, apostle; *notre*, our, ours; *votre*, your, yours.

As to the first it is always long; but the two others are doubtful; not that their measure is arbitrary, for it depends upon the place which they keep in the sentence.

Notre and *Votre* are short, when like an article they are prefixed to a substantive, *i. e.* when used for *our*, *your*; and long when they themselves are preceded by an article, and used as pronouns, *i. e.* when used for *ours*, *yours*; so we say, *je suis votre serviteur*, I am your servant; *et moi le vôtre*, I am yours. *C'est-là votre opinion, mais la nôtre est que*, &c. that is your opinion, but ours is that, &c. *Les nôtres sont excellents, mais les vôtres ne valent rien*, ours are excellent, but yours are good for nothing.

If the final be mute, as in this sentence, *je suis le vôtre*, after which my ear expects nothing more, then the voice wants a support, and not finding it in the final *re*, it takes it in the penultima *vo*; but in this other, *je suis votre serviteur*, where after *votre* I necessarily expect a substantive, between which and *votre* there can be no intermission, this substantive is destined to support my voice, and I pass quickly over *votre*.

Perhaps there is not in the french prosody a principle more extensive than this. A doubtful syllable which is made short in the body of the sentence, is made long if it comes at the end.

Sometimes even in conversation as well as in oratory, a long syllable becomes short, by the transposition of the word; for we say, *un homme honnête*, a civil man; *un homme brâce*, a brave or courageous man; but we say, *un honnête homme*, an honest man; *un brâce homme*, a well-behaved man; these instances have already been mentioned, (See E) but can so important rules be recalled too often?

* Formerly spelt with an s mute, *impost*, *rost*, *suppost*, to show that the syllable is long, this is now supplied by a circumflex.

† Formerly spelt *hoste*, *coste*, and when a syllable was to be pronounced short, the consonant was doubled; as, *hotte*, dorser; *cotte*, petticoat, &c.

OF SYLLABLES.

OUORE, OUE, long; as, *poûdre*, powder; *moûdre*, to grind; *résoûdre*, to resolve, &c. *boûe*, dirt; *joûe*, cheek; *il loue*, he praises, &c. but when ou is followed by a masculine syllable, instead of a feminine termination, it is short; as, *poûdré*, powdered; *moûlu*, ground; *roûé*, broken on the wheel; *loûé*, praised, &c.

OUILLE, long in *roûille*, rust; *il déroûille*, he gets off the rust; *il embrouille*, he embroils; *il débrouille*, he unravels; but OUIL is short when it is followed by a masculine syllable; as, *broûillon*, bad paper or writing; *broûillé*, daubed; *roûillé*, rusty, &c.

OULE, long in *moûle*, mould, muscle; *la foûle*, the crowd; *il foûle*, he presses, he tramples; *il roûle*, he rolls; *il s'écroûle*, it falls down; *il se soûle*, he gets drunk.

OURE, OURRE, the first is doubtful; as, *bravoûre*, bravery; the second is long; as, *de la bourre*, cow hair; *qu'il couûre*, let him run; but if ou, instead of being followed by a mute, is followed by a masculine syllable, then ou is short, notwithstanding the general rule under ARRE; as, *coûrrier*, messenger; *boûrrade*, thrust, &c. as likewise in the future and in the conditional tenses of verbs spelt with *rr*, in which the two *rr* are sounded separately; as, *je moûrrai*, I shall die; *je couûrai*, I shall run; *je moûrrais*, &c.

OUSE, long; as, *époûse*, bride; *qu'elle couise*, let her sew. See V. General Rule.

OUSSE, long in *je pouûsse*, I push; short in all other instances; as, *je touûsse*, I cough; *couûssin*, cushion; *poûssin*, young chick, &c.

OUT, long in *août*, august; *coût*, cost; *goût*, taste; *moût*, must, new wine.

OUTE, long in *absouûte*, absolution; *joûte*, tilt; *croûte*, crust; *voûte*, vault; *il coûte*, it costs; *il broûte*, it grazes; *je goûte*, I taste; *j'ajoûte*, I add; but ou is generally short, when the syllable which follows it is masculine; as, *ajoûter*, to add; *coûté*, cost, &c.

OUTRE, long in *pouûtre*, beam; and in *couûtre*, coulter, ploughshare; short in all other instances; as, *loûtre*, otter; *ouûtre*, *en ouûtre*, besides, &c.

U

UCHE, long; as, *bûche*, a log of wood; *rûche*, hive; *on débûche*, they dislodge, &c. but u is short, if the final is masculine; as, *bûcher*, pile; *débûché*, dislodged, &c.

UE, diphthong, found only in the word *écûelle*, porringer, is short.

UE, dissyllable, always long; as, *tûe*, sight; *tortûe*, tortoise, &c. See I. Gen. Rule.

UGE, doubtful when the final is mute; as, *déluge*, deluge; *refûge*, refuge; short, when the final is masculine; as, *jûger*, to judge; *refûgier*, to take refuge, &c.

UI, diphthong, short before a masculine syllable; as, *bûisson*, bush; *cûisine*, kitchen; *rûisseau*, rivulet, &c.

UIE, long; as, *pluûe*, rain; *truûe*, sow; *il s'ennuûe*, he grows tired. See I. Gen. Rule.

ULE, long in the verb *brûler*, to burn; *je brûle*, I burn; *tu brûles*, thou burnest, &c.

UM, UN. See III. and VII. General Rules.

UMES, long; as, *nous fûmes*, we were; *nous pouûmes*, we could; *nous reçûmes*, we received; *nous aperçûmes*, we perceived, &c.

URE, always long; as, *augûre*, omen; *verdûre*, grass; *parjûre*, perjurer, perjury; *on assûre*, they assure; *ils fûrent*, they were; but u is short if the final is masculine; as, *augûrer*, to conjecture; *parjûrer*, to perjure; *assûré*, assured.

USE, always long; as, *mûse*, muse; *excûse*, excuse; *rûse*, cunning; see V. General Rule; we also say, *rûsé*, cunning; but in the other words in which the final is masculine, u is short; as *excûser*, to excuse; *refûsé*, refused, &c.

UCE, USSE, the first of these two terminations is confined to nouns, and always short; as, *pûce*, flea; *astûce*, craft, &c. the second is confined to verbs, and is always long; as, *je fûsse*, I were; *je pouûsse*, I might; *ils fûssent*, they might be; except *Prûsse*, Prussia; and *Rûsse*, a Russian; substantives in which USSE is short.

UT, short in all substantives; as, *le bût*, the end; *un débût*, a beginning; except in *fût*, a cask; *un affût*, a gun carriage; short in the third person of the perfect tense of the indicative of verbs; as, *il fût*, he was; *il vécut*, he lived; long in the same person and tense in the subjunctive; as, *il fut*, he might be; *il vécut*, he might live, &c.

UTE, UTES, short in all substantives; *brûte*, brute, rough, &c. except *flûte*, flute; always long in verbs: *vous fûtes*, you were; *vous lûtes*, you read; *vous reçûtes*, you received; *vous aperçûtes*, you perceived, &c.

It is not perhaps unnecessary to inform such readers as might be discouraged by the multiplicity, or by the prolixity of these rules, that it is not requisite, in order to speak french with propriety, that they should be observed with a scrupulous nicety, which few persons, if any, do, but he certainly speaks best who deviates the least from them

HOMONYMOUS, OR EQUIVOCAL WORDS,

THE MEANING OF WHICH IS DETERMINED BY THE ACCENT.

Àcre, tart.	Àcre, acre.
Alène, awl.	Halène, breath.
Bâiller, to gape.	Bâiller, to give.
Bât, pack-saddle.	Il bât, he beats.
Bâteleur, mountebank.	Bâtelier, waterman.
Beauté, beauty.	Bôté, booted.
Bête, beast.	Bette, beet.
Boîte, box.	Il boîte, he goes lame.
Bond, rebound.	Bôn, good.
Châir, flesh.	Chër, dear.
Châsse, shrine.	Châsse, hunting.
Clâir, clear.	Clêrc, clerk.
Côrps, body.	{ Cör, hunting horn.
Côte, rib.	{ Cör, a corn.
Côte, coast.	{ Côtte, petticoat.
Cuire, to boil or roast.	Cüir, leather.
Faite, summit.	{ Faîte, done.
Fête, feast.	Faît, done, fact.
Faix, burthen.	La foi, faith.
Le foie, the liver.	Un fouët, a rod, a whip.
Une fois, once.	Forêt, gimblet.
Forêt, forest.	Une goutte, a drop.
Je goûte, I taste.	Je grave, I engrave.
Grave, grave.	Hâlle, market.
Hâlle, scorching of the sun.	Hôte, host, landlord.
Hôte, host, landlord.	Jeune, fast.
Jeune, fast.	Lâc, noose.
Lâcs, noose.	Lâme, the soul.
Lâme, the soul.	Lêgs, legacy.
Lêgs, legacy.	Lâs, lily.
Lâs, lily.	Mâitre, master.
Mâitre, master.	Mâle, male.
Mâle, male.	Mâsse, stock.
Mâsse, stock.	Mât, mast.
Mât, mast.	Mâtin, mastiff.
Mâtin, mastiff.	Mois, month.
Mois, month.	Mûr, ripe.
Mûr, ripe.	Il n'est, it is not.
Il n'est, it is not.	Il naît, it springs.
Il naît, it springs.	Pâte, paste.
Pâte, paste.	Paimè, palm.
Paimè, palm.	Pêcheur, fisherman.
Pêcheur, fisherman.	Pêcher, to fish.
Pêcher, to fish.	Pêcher, peach-tree.
Pêcher, peach-tree.	Pène, bolt.
Pène, bolt.	Rôt, roast meat.
Rôt, roast meat.	Sâs, sieve.
Sâs, sieve.	Scène, scene.
Scène, scene.	La Scène, the communion
La Scène, the communion	Sûr, sûre, sure, certain.
Sûr, sûre, sure, certain.	Tâche, task.
Tâche, task.	Tâcher, to endeavour.
Tâcher, to endeavour.	Tête, head.
Tête, head.	Vêrs, verse.
Vêrs, verse.	Vêrs, towards.
Vêrs, towards.	Vêrre, glass.
Vêrre, glass.	{ Vêr, worm.
	{ Vêrd, green.

INTRODUCTION

*An introduction*À LA
to the

LANGUE FRANÇAISE.

*language**french.* ^{16*}

PREMIÈRE PARTIE.

First part.

LA LANGUE FRANÇAISE est composée des mêmes lettres ou
*The language french*¹⁶ *is composed of the same letters or*
 caractères que la langue anglaise¹⁶, excepté le W; mais la pro-
characters as the english, except the w; but the pro-
 nonciation de ces lettres, n'est pas toujours la même dans ces
nunciation of these ⁵⁵ *is not always the same in these*
 deux langues; elles se prononcent en français:

two or in both languages; they are pronounced in french:
 A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M,
ah, bay, say, day, ay, f, zhay, ash, ee, zhee, kah, l, m,
 N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.
n, o, pay, †, ayr, s, tay, †, vay, eeks, eegrays, zeyd.

LA LANGUE FRANÇAISE¹⁶, ainsi que la langue anglaise¹⁶, est aussi
as well as *is also*
 composée de NEUF sortes de mots qu'on⁴⁵ appelle
*composed of nine sorts of words which people call, or are called*⁴⁶
 communément les parties d'oraison; ces mots sont,
commonly the parts of speech; these words are,

Le NOM, <i>the noun.</i>	l'ARTICLE, <i>the article.</i>	l'ADJECTIF, <i>the adjective.</i>
le PRONOM, <i>the pronoun.</i>	le VERBE, <i>the verb.</i>	l'ADVERBE, <i>the adverb.</i>
la PRÉPOSITION, <i>the preposition.</i>	la CONJONCTION, <i>the conjunction.</i>	l'INTERJECTION, <i>the interjection.</i>

* The figures at the top of the words indicate the rule to which the different sorts of words that compose the language are subject. The learner will do well to refer to these rules until they are familiar to him. They will be found at page 32, and in the following pages.

N. B. The english words are here placed literally under the french. It will require very little knowledge of the english language to arrange them in the grammatical order which they require. The person who is not capable of doing that, must study his own language, before he attempts to learn French. † See note 2, page 1.

CHAP. I.

DU NOM.

Of the noun.

TOUT MOT qui sert à exprimer l'* idée d'* une substance, soit
Every word which serves to express the idea of a substance, either
 réelle, comme, *homme, femme, cheval, maison, soleil, lune*; ou idéale,
real, as, man, woman, horse, house, sun, moon; or ideal,
 comme, *dieu, ciel, honneur, vice, vertu, s' appelle NOM.*
as, god, heaven, honour, vice, virtue, is called a noun.

De ces mots appelés NOMS, (quelques uns) ne conviennent qu'*
Of these words called nouns, some —† belong only
 à une seule personne, ou à une seule chose; comme, *Jean, Jaques,*
to a single person, or to a single thing; as, john, james,
Voltaire, Shakespeare, Londres, Paris, France, Angleterre, la Seine,
voltaire, shakespeare, london, paris, france, england, the seine,
 les *Alpes, &c.* et ces noms s'* appellent *noms propres.*
the alps, &c. and these nouns are called names proper.¹⁶

D'* autres conviennent à tous les êtres de la même espèce;
Some others belong to all —† beings of the same kind;
 comme, *homme, femme, enfant, cheval, vache, oiseau, maison, ville,*
as, man, woman, child, horse, cow, bird, house, city,
campagne, arbre, &c. et ceux-ci s' appellent *noms communs.*
country, tree, &c. and these are called names common.¹⁶

Dans cette dernière classe (on comprend) les noms com-
In this last class (we⁴⁶ include or are included⁴⁸) the nouns com-
 posés d' idées abstraites¹⁶; comme, *dieu, ciel, âme, vice, vertu,*
pounded of ideas abstract: as, god, heaven, soul, vice, virtue,
amour, désir, honneur, plaisir, et autres semblables.
love, desire, honour, pleasure, and such like.

Il faut considérer dans les⁷ noms, le *genre*, et le *nombre*.
It is necessary to consider in —† nouns the gender, and the number.

Il n'y a en français que *deux genres*; le *MASCULIN*, et le *FÉMININ*.
There — are in french only two genders; the masculine, and the feminine.

Par *MASCULIN* (on veut⁴⁶ dire) le *genre mâle*¹⁶; comme, *homme,*
By masculine (we mean or is meant⁴⁸) the gender male; as, man,
coq, cheval, taureau, chien, chat, bétier, bouc, cerf, &c.
cock, horse, bull, dog, he cat, ram, he goat, stag, &c.

Par *FÉMININ* (on veut⁴⁶ dire) le *genre femelle*¹⁶; comme, *femme,*
By feminine (we mean or is meant⁴⁸) the gender female; as, woman,
poule, jument, vache, chienne, chatte, brebis, chèvre, biche, &c.
hen, mare, cow, bitch, she cat, ewe, she goat, hind, &c.

* When the monosyllables *le, de, ne, se, je, me, te, la, que,* are followed by a vowel or a *h* mute, the vowel, *e, a,* is left out, and an apostrophe, this mark ('), put in its place.

† The words marked under with a dash, this mark (—), are not expressed in english.

DU NOM.

Les noms des autres êtres vivants¹⁶ dont le sexe n' est
 The names of the other beings living (of which) the sex ⁵⁵ is
 pas connu, (ainsi que) des êtres inanimés¹⁶ qu' (on⁴⁶ appelle)
 not known, (as well as) of the beings inanimate which (people call or are called⁴⁸)
 communément choses, et qui sont de (ce que)
 commonly things, and which are of (that which or what⁴⁰)
 les Anglais appellent le GENRE NEUTRE, appartiennent en français
 the english call gender neuter,¹⁶ belong in french
 à l' un ou à l' autre de ces deux genres.
 to the one or to the other of these two genders.

(Il y a) en français comme en anglais, deux nombres; le SINGULIER,
 There are in french as in english, two numbers; the singular,
 quand on ne parle que d' un être; comme, un¹ homme, une
 when we — speak only of one being; as, a man, a
 femme, une¹ maison; le PLURIER, quand on parle de plusieurs êtres;
 woman, a house; plural,* we⁴⁶ of several beings;
 comme, des¹ hommes, des¹ femmes, des¹ maisons.
 as, some men, some women, some houses.

Remarquez que le nombre *plurier*²⁵ se forme en français comme en
 Remark that is formed in as in
 anglais, en ajoutant *s* au *singulier*; une¹ maison, des¹ maisons.
 by adding *s* to the a house, some houses.

Excepté premièrement; les noms qui (se terminent) en *s* ou en
 Except, first; the nouns which (terminate or end) in *s* or
x dont le *plurier* ne diffère point du *singulier*; ainsi on⁴⁶ dit:
 x of which — differs not from the so we say:
 mon *fil*s, mes *fil*s; un *pois*, des *pois*; une *noix*, des *noix*, &c.
 my son, my sons; a pea, some peas; a nut, some nuts, &c.

Secondement; les noms dont le *singulier* (se termine) en *u*, qui
 Secondly; the of which ends in *u*, which
 demandent un *x* (au lieu) d' une *s* pour signe du *plurier*; comme,
 require an *x* instead of an *s* for the sign of the as,
 un *couteau*, des *couteaux*; le¹ *jeu*, les¹ *jeux*; *lieu*, *lieux*, &c.
 a knife, some knives the game, the games; place, places, &c.

Troisièmement; les noms dont le *singulier* (se termine) en *al*,
 Thirdly; of which ends in *al*,
ail, qui changent *l*, ou *il*, en *ux* pour le *plurier*; comme, *mal*, *maux*
 ail, which change *l*, or *il*, into *ux* for as, evil, evils,
cheval, *chevaux*; *général*, *généraux*; *travail*, *travaux*, &c.
 horse, horses; general, generals; work, works, &c.

* This word you will generally see in other grammars spelled *pluriel*; but as it is pronounced *plurier*, the same as *singulier*, I have thought it proper to spell it as it is pronounced, that it might be more easily remembered.

CHAP. II.

DE L' ARTICLE.

Of the article.

Comme le même nom peut exprimer des⁸ idées différentes, on⁴⁶
As the same noun may express N. B. ideas different,¹⁶ we
 a adopté des⁸ signes pour désigner chacune de ces idées.
have adopted N. B. signs to denote each of these ideas.

Ces signes se nomment en grammaire ARTICLE; mais comme ils
These are called in grammar but as they
 varient avec nos idées, les⁷ grammairiens ne s'accordent pas sur le
vary with our — grammarians — agree not on
 nombre, ni sur le nom qu' on doit donner à chaque signe en particulier.
nor name which we ought to give to each sign in particular.

Cet accord n'est nullement nécessaire, il suffit d' en²⁴ savoir l'usage.
This agreement ⁵⁵ is (by no means) necessary, it suffices to of them know the use.

(On verra) dans ce traité que j' ai augmenté le nombre des
(It will be seen⁴⁷) in this treatise that I have increased of the
 signes appelés ARTICLE, parceque cela m'²⁵ a paru nécessaire
called because that to me has appeared necessary
 pour diminuer celui⁴⁴ des règles; ainsi, j' appelle ARTICLE des⁸ mots
to diminish that of the rules; so, I call —N. B. words
 que (les uns) appellent PRONOMS, que d'autres appellent ADJECTIFS;
which some call pronouns, which others adjectives;
 et je les²⁴ appelle ainsi, parceque ces mots sont tous destinés au
and I them call so, because these are all destined to the
 même usage, et que les mêmes règles sont communes à tous.
same use, and that rules common

(Afin qu') on⁴⁶ pût retenir ces signes plus aisément;
That people might retain these more easily;
 je leur²⁵ ai donné des⁸ noms analogues à la
I to them have given —N. B. names analogous to the
 fonction qu' ils font dans la phrase; ainsi, j' appelle
office which they perform in the sentence; so, I call
 LE, LA, LES; DU, de LA, DES; AU, à LA, AUX, article
THE; of or from THE; to or at THE,
défini¹⁶, parcequ' on⁴⁶ (se sert) de ces signes pour désigner que
definite, because we use — these signs to denote that
 le nom qui les²⁴ suit, est employé dans un sens défini¹⁶;
noun which them follows, is used in a sense definite;
 comme, Apportez LE¹ pain, LA¹ viande, LES¹ habits.
as, bring the bread, the meat, the clothes.

J' appelle DU, de LA, DES, article *partitif*¹⁶, parceque ces signes
I call SOME, partitive, because these
 s'emploient à désigner une *portion* de la substance, dont on
are used to denote a portion of the substance, (of which) we¹⁶

DE L'ARTICLE.

parle ; comme, *Donnez-moi* DU¹ *pain*, de LA¹ *viande*, DES¹ *habits*.
 speak ; as, give me some bread, some meat, some clothes.

J' appelle UN, UNE, et tous les autres nombres article *numéral*,
 I call (A, AN, ONE,) and all the other numbers numeral,¹⁶
 lorsque ces signes s' emploient à *nombrer* les objets dont on
 when these are used to number objects of which we
 parle ; comme, UN¹ *pain* ; UNE¹ *armée*.
 speak ; as, a, or one loaf ; an army or one army.

J' appelle CE, CETTE, CES, article *démonstratif*,¹⁶
 THIS, THAT ; THIS, THAT ; THESE, THOSE, demonstrative,
 parceque c' est au moyen de ces signes qu' on⁴⁶ *indique*
 because it is by the means of these that we point out
 le lieu où est l' objet dont on parle ; comme,
 the place where is the object of which we speak, or spoken of ; as,
 CE¹ *pain*, CETTE¹ *viande*, CES¹ *habits*.
 this or that bread, this or that meat, these or those clothes.

J' appelle MON, MA, MES ; TON, TA, TES ; SON, SA, SES ;
 MY ; THY ; HIS, or HER, or ITS ;
 NOTRE, NOS ; VOTRE, VOS ; LEUR, LEURS, article *possessif*,¹⁶
 OUR ; YOUR ; THEIR ; possessive,
 parceque ces signes s' emploient à désigner la *possession* de l' objet
 because these are used to denote possession of
 dont on parle ; comme, MON¹ *pain*, TA¹ *viande*, SES¹ *habits*.
 of which as, my bread, thy meat, his or her clothes.*

* Some will perhaps be surprised to find under the head ARTICLE, words which have so long been consecrated to the class of pronouns. Though they certainly partake of the nature of pronouns, by denoting the persons, they in reality are articles, used for the same purposes, in similar instances, and subject to the same rules as those words generally known by the name of article. If it be objected, that when I say *My book*, the word *My* is a pronoun, since it is the same as if I said, *the book of Me*. I answer, that as you cannot change the nature of these words without substituting an article in their place, they are as much articles as pronouns ; and if they have no affinity at all to the syntax of pronouns (especially in french) and their affinity to the syntax of articles is so great, that the rules which are applicable to one, are applicable to all ; why should not words, which have so great an analogy to each other, be set in one point of view, rather than send the learner from chapter to chapter for what he may, and ought to find in the same page ?

"The genuine PRONOUN," says Harris, "always stands by itself, assuming the power of a noun, and supplying its place ; the genuine ARTICLE never stands by itself, but appears at all times associated to something else, requiring a noun for its support, as much as attributives or adjectives."—*Hermes*, page 73.

Also l'abbé d'Olivet : j'ai dit, en premier lieu que l'ARTICLE est un *adjectif* ; et si je n'avois pas craint d'entasser trop de choses à la fois, j'aurois volontiers ajouté que cet *adjectif* est tiré de la classe des *pronoms*. Quand il précède un substantif on le nomme ARTICLE ; La *pièce nouvelle se joue demain* ; et quand il précède ou suit un verbe, *Je la verrai, Voyez-la*, on l' appelle PRONOUN ; mais d'ailleurs n'est-ce pas une chose qui convient à la plupart des *pronoms adjectifs* d'être mis avant le NOM à l'exclusion de l'ARTICLE et avec la même propriété, comme quand je dis, ce *papier*, cette *plume* ; mon *frère*, votre *sœur*, &c. *Essais de Grammaire*, chap. 2.

CHAP. III.

DE L'ARTICLE, ET DU NOM.

Of the and of the

RÈGLES GÉNÉRALES.
Rules general.¹⁶

1. Nous avons* vu† qu' (il y a) en français *We have* seen † - (there are) - -*
 DEUX GENRES, le¹ masculin et le¹ féminin ; *two—, - - and - - ;*
 qu' (il y a) DEUX NOMBRES, † le¹ singulier *that (—) —, † - -*
 et le¹ pluriel ; et nous avons vu§ que l' *and - - ; - - - - § - - the*
 ARTICLE est un signe qu' on⁴⁶ met avant un¹ *- is a sign which we put before -*
 NOM, pour désigner l'idée qu' on⁴⁶ veut exprimer *- , to denote the idea - we wish to*
 par ce nom ; (à présent) (souvenez-vous) *express by that - ; now remember*
 que ce¹ signe appelé ARTICLE, doit toujours *that this - called - must always*
 être du¹ MÊME GENRE et du MÊME NOMBRE *be (of the) same - - - - -*
 que le¹ NOM qui le²⁴ suit ; exemple, *as - - which follows it ; example,*

SINGULIER.

PLURIER.

singular. plural.

MASCULIN.	FÉMININ.	MASC. et FÉMIN.	—, —, — and —.
LE père,	LA mère,	LES enfants,	the father, the mother, the children.
DU père,	de LA mère,	DES enfants,	of the —, of the —, of the —.
AU père,	à LA mère,	AUX enfants,	to the —, to the —, to the —.
UN père,	UNE mère,		a or one —, a or one —.
CE père,	CETTE mère,	CES enfants,	(this, that, —,) (this, that —,) (these,
MON père,	MA mère,	MES enfants,	my —, my —, my —. [those —.)
TON père,	TA mère,	TES enfants,	thy —, thy —, thy —.
SON père,	SA mère,	SES enfants,	(his, her —,) (his, her —,) (his, her —,)
NOTRE père,	NOTRE mère,	NOS enfants,	our —, our —, our —.
VOTRE père,	VOTRE mère,	VOS enfants,	your —, your —, your —.
LEUR père,	LEUR mère,	LEURS enfants,	their —, their —, their —.
DU pain,	de LA viande,	DES habits,	some bread, some meat, some clothes.

2. Nous (venons de voir) ¶ que l'ARTICLE *We (have just seen) that - -*
 doit toujours être du¹ MÊME GENRE, et *must always be (- -) — —, -*
 du³ MÊME NOMBRE que le¹ NOM qui le²⁴ suit ; *(- -) - - as - - which follows it ;*

* The english words which express the meaning of the french are placed in the margin. The words that have been frequently repeated, or which are the same in both languages, are left out, and a dash, this mark (—), put in their places, that the learner may have an opportunity to exercise his recollection.

† Page 28.

‡ Page 29.

§ Page 30.

¶ I have frequently been asked if, having only one word to express both HIS and HER, we do not often commit mistakes in the use of that word. No, we never do ; because this sign always refers to a noun mentioned before, the gender of which we know ; So, when I say, *Mon frère a perdu son couteau, My brother has lost his knife ;* I know by *Son* that it is the knife belonging to *my brother*. *Ma sœur a perdu son couteau, My sister has lost her knife ;* I know by this *Son* that it is the knife belonging to *my sister*. But suppose a gentleman and a lady sat at table, and both let their knives fall ; and a person said to a servant, *Ramassez son couteau,* meaning the knife of the lady, which knife would the servant pick up ? Indeed he would not know, but a Frenchman would not express himself thus ; He would say : *Ramassez le couteau de monsieur, Pick up the gentleman's knife ;* or, *Ramassez le couteau de madame, Pick up the lady's knife,* by which all ambiguity would be avoided.

¶ Rule 1.

DE L'ARTICLE ET DU NOM.

cependant, comme la¹ langue française¹⁰ demande une¹ certaine MÉLODIE dans la¹ liaison des¹ mots, et que la¹ rencontre de DEUX VOYELLES dans de¹⁰ petits mots tels que l'² ARTICLE, produit un son dés-agréable à l' oreille; lorsque le¹ NOM qui suit l' ARTICLE est SINGULIER, et qu' il commence par une¹ VOYELLE, ou par une³ H muette, on⁴⁰ emploie

L' au lieu de LE,	LA;	THE;	— instead of —, —;
de L' „ „ DU, de LA;	of, from	THE;	— — — — —;
à L' „ „ AU, à LA;	to, at	THE;	— — — — —;
CET „ „ CE;	THIS OR THAT;		— — — — —;
MON „ „ MA;	MY;		— — — — —;
TON „ „ TA;	THY;		— — — — —;
SON „ „ SA;	HIS, HER, ITS;		— — — — —;

sans considerer le GENRE du nom qui le²⁴ suit; exemple,

MASCULIN.		FÉMININ		
L' âge,	L' idée,	L' heure.		the age, the idea, the hour.
de L' âge, de L' idée,	de L' heure.			of the —, of the —, of the —.
à L' âge, à L' idée,	à L' heure.			to the —, to the —, to the —.
CET âge, CETTE idée,	CETTE heure.			this or that —, this, that —, this, that —.
MON âge, MON idée,	MON heure.			my —, my —, my —.
TON âge, TON idée,	TON heure.			thy —, thy —, thy —.
SON âge, SON idée,	SON heure.			his or her —, his, her —, his, her —

3. L' article se *repete* en français avant tous les noms, suivant le genre et le nombre de chaque nom, quoique ces noms soient dans la même phrase, et que l' article ne soit pas répété en anglais; ex.

Le père, LA mère, et LES enfants sont ici.	— — — is repeated — — before
Je vous ²⁴ apporte DU pain, de LA viande, de L' argent, et DES habits.	all — — (agreeably to) — — and — — of each —, though these — are in — same sentence, — — — — is not repeated in —; ex.
Il a invité MON frère, MA sœur, t MES cousins.*	— —, — —, and — — are here.
	I you ²⁴ bring some bread, some meat, some money, — some clothes.
	He has — my brother, my sister, and my cousins.*

* Observe that two of the signs called ARTICLE cannot be used before the same noun; so we say LE bras, the arm; LA main, the hand, LA dame, the lady, UNE dame, a lady; MADAME, my lady, madam, Mrs.; DES dames, some ladies; MESdames, ladies; UNE demoiselle, a young lady; DES demoiselles, some young ladies; MESdemoiselles, ladies; but we do not say, LE non bras; LA ma main; LA madame; UNE madame; DES mesdames; LA mademoiselle; UNE mademoiselle; DES mesdemoiselles; because each of these signs fixing the proper meaning of the noun, renders another sign superfluous.

N. B. From this rule must be excepted the words MONSIEUR and MESSIEURS, which, though they are compounded of the noun SIEUR, and of the article MON, MES, will in some instances admit of the other articles; for we say: LE monsieur, the gentleman; UN monsieur, a gentleman; CE monsieur, this gentleman, &c. LES messieurs, the gentlemen; CES messieurs, these gentlemen; NOS messieurs, our gentlemen. These few singularities will be learnt by custom.

INTRODUCTION
DE L'ARTICLE ET DU NOM.

RÈGLES PARTICULIÈRES.
*Rules particular.*¹⁶

Cas où l'on⁴⁶ fait usage de l'article.
Instances (in which) we⁴⁶ make use of the article.

4. L'article étant un signe destiné à annoncer l'idée du nom qui le²⁴ suit, ce signe serait superflu avant les noms qui, n'appartenant qu'à un seul être, présentent d'eux mêmes une idée fixe¹⁶; c'est pour cette raison que les noms de personnes et de villes s'emploient, en français comme en anglais, sans article; ainsi, nous disons;

J'ai vu Voltaire, Paris, Londres.

Je parle de Voltaire, de Paris, de Lond.

Je préfère Locke à Volt. Paris à Lond.

— being a sign intended to denote - idea (of the) - - follows it²⁴, - (would be) superfluous - - - which belonging only to one being, present of themselves a — fixed; it is for this reason that - names of persons - of towns are used, in french as in english, without -; so, we say;

I have seen —, —, London.

I speak of —, —, —.

I prefer — to —, — to —.

5. Cette règle qui devrait s'étendre à tous les noms dont l'idée ne peut changer, n'est pas générale en français, comme elle l'est en anglais, puisque les noms de pays demandent l'article défini¹⁶ LE, LA, LES; DU, de LA, DES; AU, à LA, AUX, de même que les noms communs¹⁶, ainsi, (quoi qu') on dise sans article;

J'ai vu Paris, Londres;

il faut dire avec l'article,

J'ai vu LE Portugal, LA France, L'Espagne, L'Angleterre.

Je parle DU Portugal, de LA France, de L'Espagne, de L'Angleterre.

Je préfère L'Angleterre AU Portugal, LA France à L'Espagne.

This rule which ought to extend to all — (of which) - - cannot change is not general —, as it is —, since - names of countries require — — le, la, les; du, de la, des; au, à la, aux, the same as - names common, so, though we⁴⁶ say without —; I have seen Paris, London; we must say with —,

I have seen the —, the —, the Spain, the England.

I speak of the —, of the —, of the —, of the —.

I prefer the — to the —, the — to the —.

6. Mais les noms¹⁶ de pays perdent l'article, quand ils viennent après les verbes qui désignent demeurer, aller, venir, lorsque ces verbes sont accompagnés de la préposition EN ou DE; car on dit:

Je viens DE France, d'Italie.

Je vais EN Hollande, EN Angleterre.

J'ai demeuré EN Espagne, EN Portugal.

Et cette règle même a encore des exceptions qu'on verra dans la dernière partie, et que je n'ai pas voulu rapporter ici, de peur d'embarrasser les commençants.⁷ (Il n'y a que) l'usage, qui puisse rendre ces variations familières.

But — - countries lose —, when they come after - verbs - denote dwelling, going, coming, when — are attended by - - en or de; for we⁴⁶ say:

I come from —, from Italy.

I (go or am going) to —, to —.

I have lived in Spain, in —.

And this rule even has still some — which we shall see in the last - - - have not (been willing) to mention -, for fear - embarrassing - beginners.⁷ (It is only) - custom which can render these — —.

DE L'ARTICLE ET DU NOM.

7. Tous les noms communs¹⁶ employés¹³ dans un sens général¹⁶ où ils n'ont point d'article en anglais; comme, BREAD IS GOOD; ou dans un sens particulier¹⁶ où ils ont l'article THE; comme, the BREAD WHICH I EAT IS GOOD, demandent l'article défini¹⁶ LE, LA, LES; DU, de LA, DES; AU, à LA, AUX; ex.

Sens général¹⁶; *J' aime LE pain, LA viande, LES (pommes de terre.)*

Sens particulier¹⁶; *J' aime LE pain, LA viande, LES (pommes de terre) que vous m²⁵ avez donnés.*

Sens général; *Je parle DU pain, de LA viande, DES (pommes de terre.)*

Sens particulier; *Je parle DU pain, de LA viande, DES (pommes de terre) que nous avons achetés.*

Sens général; *Je préfère LE fruit AU pain, à LA viande, AUX (pommes de terre.)*

Sens particul. *Je préfère LE fruit que j'ai à souper, AU pain, à LA viande, et AUX (pommes de terre) que j'avais à dîner.*

8. Si on veut ne désigner qu'une portion de la substance dont on⁴⁶ parle, il faut employer avant le nom, un des signes partitifs¹⁶ DU, de LA, DES, exprimés¹³ en anglais par SOME; mais il est bon d'observer que le signe some s'omet très souvent, et que les signes DU, de LA, DES, doivent toujours s'exprimer.

Il paraît que ce signe est le même que celui⁴⁴ de l'article défini¹⁶ OF THE, régi par le mot PORTION sous-entendu, et que nous avons été obligés d'admettre faute d'un autre signe pour désigner cette idée; ainsi, quand je dis;

Il m²⁵ a donné DU pain, de LA viande, DES (pommes de terre);

c' est comme si je disais;

Il m⁵⁵ a donné une portion DU pain, de LA viande, DES (pommes de terre.)

9. Cette règle a DEUX EXCEPTIONS. La première est que les signes partitifs¹⁶ DU, de LA, DES, étant les mêmes que ceux de l'article défini¹⁶ OF THE;

All - names common¹⁶ used in a sense - (in which) they have not any - in english; as, BREAD IS GOOD; or in a - particular (in which) - have - - THE; as, the BREAD WHICH I EAT IS GOOD, require the - definite le, la, les; du, de la, des; au, à la, aux; ex.

- -; I like bread, meat, (apples of the earth, i. e.

potatoes.) - -; - - the -, the -, the -, which you m²⁵ have given.

- -; I speak of -, of -, of -.

- -; - - of the -, of the -, of the - which we have bought.

- -; - prefer fruit to -, to -, to -.

- -; - - the - -

I have at -, to the -, to the -, - to the - which I had at dinner.

If we wish to denote only a portion of - - (of which) we⁴³ speak, we must use before - -, one (of the) signs partitive du, de la, des, expressed - - by SOME; but it is proper to observe that - - SOME is left out very often, - - - - du, de la, des, must always be expressed.

It appears that this - is - same - that⁴⁴ of - - - OF THE governed by - word portion understood, - which we - been obliged to admit (for want) of another - to denote this idea; so, when I say:

He m²⁵ has given some -, some -, some -;

it is as if - said;

He m²⁵ has - a portion of -, of -, of -.

This rule has two exceptions.

- first is that - - partitive du, de la, des, being - same as those of the - definitive OF THE;

quand un nom employé dans un sens partitif¹⁶ est régi par un autre nom, il ne faut pas employer DU, de LA, DES, qui rendraient l'idée particulière et désigneraient OF THE; il faut employer seulement DE avant le nom; ainsi, il faut dire;

Il m²⁵ a donné un morceau DE pain, une livre DE viande; Non, un morceau DU pain, une livre de LA viande.

J'ai une grande quantité DE (pommes de terre;) Non, DES pommes de terre.

N. B. On doit comprendre dans cette règle les mots suivants¹⁶ qui prennent DE avant le nom qui les²⁴ suit, quand ce nom est employé dans un sens partitif¹⁶;

ASSEZ; ex. assez DE pain.

BEAUCOUP; { beaucoup DE viande.
 { beaucoup DE gens.

TANT { tant d'argent.
 { tant DE pommes de terre.

AUTANT; { autant DE pain.
 { autant DE gens.

PLUS; plus DE viande.

MOINS; moins d'argent.

TROP; { trop DE peine.
 { trop d'enfants.

PEU; peu DE pain.

GUÈRE; guère d'habits.

PAS, { pas d'argent.

POINT; { point d'amis.

JAMAIS; jamais DE repos.

when a noun used in a —
— is governed by another —, we
must not use du, de la, des, which
(would make) - idea - - (would
denote) OF THE; we must use only
de before - —; so, we must say;

*He me²⁵ has given a piece of —,
a pound of —; not, a piece (of the)
—, - — of the —.*

*I have a great quantity of —;
not, (of the) —.*

*We⁴⁶ must include in this
rule - words following which take de
before - — - follows them, when - -
is used in - — partitive;*

Enough; ex. enough of bread.

Much, } much - meat;

Many; } many - people.

So much, } so much - money;

So many; } so many - potatoes.

As much, } as much - bread;

As many; } as many - people.

More; more - meat.

Less; less - money.

Too much, } too much - trouble

Too many; } too many - children

Little, few; little —.

Little, few; few - clothes.

No, not; { not - money;

 { not - friends.

Never; never - rest.

10. La seconde exception est que si le nom employé dans un sens partitif¹⁶ est accompagné d'un adjectif, et que cet adjectif précède le nom, au lieu des signes DU, de LA, DES, avant le nom, on met DE avant l'adjectif, sans considérer le genre ou le nombre du nom qui le²⁴ suit, et ce DE avant l'adjectif, désigne la même idée que les signes DU, de LA, DES, avant le nom; ex.

Voici DE bon pain, d'excellente viande, DE jeunes (pommes de terre.)

Mais si le nom précède l'adjectif,* il faut revenir, aux signes DU, de LA, DES, et on⁴⁶ doit dire;

Voici DU³ pain frais,¹⁶ de LA⁸ viande excellente,¹⁶ DES³ (pommes de terre) rôties.

— second — is that if - noun
used in a sense partitive is
attended by an adjective, and that this
precedes —, instead (of the) — du, de
la, des, before — —, we⁴⁶ use de before
— —, without considering — or —
— (of the) - which — it,²⁴ - this de -
— —, denotes - same idea as -
— du, de la, des, — - —; —.

*(Here is) some good —, some — —,
some young potatoes.*

*But if — precedes —, we
must return to the — du, de la, des,
and we⁴⁶ must say;*

*(Here is) — — new, — —
excellent, — — roasted*

* See rules 16 and 17.

DE PLUSIEURS NOMS ENSEMBLE.

11. Quelquefois plusieurs noms (se rencontrent dans la même phrase, ayant une espèce de rapport ensemble; comme, quand je dis; *Le livre de PIERRE*; ces mots de PIERRE ajoutés à livre, servent, outre l'idée de livre, à donner celle de possession.

Sometimes several — meet in - same sentence, having a kind of reference together; as, when I say; The — of Peter; these - of Peter added to -, serve, besides - idea of -, to give that of possession.

Les Anglais ont plusieurs manières de placer ces noms en rapport.

The English have several ways of placing these nouns in reference.

Quelquefois ils les²⁴ placent dans l'ordre que les idées considérées séparément se²⁴ présentent à l'esprit; comme, *The BOOK of PETER*; *The PEN of the MASTER*; *The CROWN of the KING*.

Sometimes they them²⁴ place in the order that - - considered separately themselves present to - mind; as, - - - -; - - - -; - - - -.

Quelquefois ils renversent l'ordre des mots, et placent le nom du possesseur avant celui⁴⁴ de la chose possédée; comme, *PETER'S BOOK*; *the MASTER'S PEN*; *the KING'S CROWN*.

— - reverse — - of the words, — - - name of the possessor before that of - thing possessed; as, — -; — - — -; — -

D'autres fois enfin, ils donnent à (l'un) de ces noms la propriété d'un adjectif, et le²⁴ placent avant la chose qu'il désigne; *The STREET-DOOR*; *LONDON-PORTER*; *a GOLD-WATCH*; *SILK-STOCKINGS*.

At other times in short, - give to - - nouns - property of an adjective, - it — - - thing which it denotes; - - -; — -; - - -; — -.

Les Français au contraire n'ont qu'une manière de placer ensemble ces noms; Ils placent invariablement le premier, le nom qui est le *sujet du⁷ discours*, et ces deux noms s'unissent ensemble par le moyen des signes DE, DU, de LA, DES, suivant que le nom est ou propre ou commun, défini ou partitif; ainsi, dans cet² exemple; *PETER'S BOOK*: le sujet du⁷ discours étant *a BOOK*, et (non pas) *PETER*, on doit commencer la phrase par *livre*, et dire: *Le livre, Demande, le livre de qui? Réponse, de Pierre*. Dans cet autre; *The MASTER'S PEN*; le *sujet du⁷ discours* étant *a PEN*; on doit commencer la phrase par *PEN*, et on doit dire; *La plume, D. la plume de qui? R. du maître*.

The French on the contrary have only one way of placing together - nouns; They - invariably - first, - - which is - subject (of the) discourse, - - two - are united - by - means (of the) signs -, -, - -, -, according as - - is either proper or common, definite or partitive; so, in this -; - -; the subject (of the)⁷ discourse being - -, and not - we¹⁶ must begin - sentence by —, - say: The -, Query, - - of whom? Ans. of Peter. In - other; - - -; - - (of the) — being a -, we must begin - by -, - we must say; the pen, Q. - - of whom? A. of the master.

Et dans ces autres phrases: *The STREET-DOOR*; *LONDON-BEER*; *a GOLD-WATCH*;

- - - o her sentences: The — —; — -; - - -;

DE PLUSIEURS NOMS ENSEMBLE.

SILK-STOCKINGS; le sujet du⁷ discours —; — (of the) —
 étant DOOR, BEER, WATCH, STOCKINGS, being —, —, —, —,
 ces mots doivent se placer les premiers, these - must be placed - first,
 et on doit dire: we must say:

La¹ porte DE LA¹ rue.

De la⁸ biere DE Londres.

Une¹ montre d'or. Des⁸ bas DE soie.

- door of - street.

Some beer of London.

- watch of gold. - stockings of silk.

12. (Il y a) des⁸ cas où l'^{*} on ne pour- (There are) - instances (in which) -
 rait pas changer ainsi l'ordre des mots en could not change so -- (of the) - in
 anglais, sans changer aussi l'idée qu' on english, without - also -- which we⁴⁶
 veut exprimer; par exemple, si, au lieu wish to express; for —, if, instead
 de dire; a WINE-GLASS; a WATER-POT; of saying; — — —: — — —;
 on disait, a GLASS of WINE; a POT of we said, -- of -; -- of
 WATER; on⁴⁵ exprimerait une idée (tout —; we should express an -
 à fait) différente⁴⁶; cependant ces noms quite different; yet these nouns
 demandent cet ordre en français, mais require this order in french, but
 au lieu de les²⁴ unir par les signes DE, DU, instead of them uniting by -- de, du,
 de LA, DES, on les²⁴ unit par la pré- de la, des, we them²⁴ unite by - pre-
 position À. Ceci arrive quand on position à. This happens when we⁴⁶
 veut désigner l'usage, et non la possession wish to denote - use, - - -
 de la chose dont on parle; ex. --- (of which) we speak; ex.

Un verre À vin. Un pot À eau.

Une cuiller À thé. Des⁸ armes À feu.

Un sac À poudre. Un moulin À vent.†

- A glass fit for wine. - pot fit for water.

- spoon fit for tea. - arms fit to fire with

A bag fit for powder. A mill to be [turned by the wind.†

* When ON comes after the conjunctions ET, SI, OU, or any word ending in OU or ON, or between QUE and a verb beginning with CON or COM, the letter L' is generally placed before ON, to soften the sound of these words which otherwise would be disagreeable; so we say; *C'est un pays où L'on vit à bon marché*; it is a country where people live cheap: *On apprend plus facilement les choses que L'on comprend, que celles que L'on ne comprend pas*; people learn more easily the things which they understand, than those which they do not understand: *où on vit, &c. qu'on comprend, &c.* would be harsh to the ear. But if these words were followed by LE, LA, LES, L' must not be added to ON, as it would then cause the same discordance which it is intended to remove; so we say; *Si ON le savait*, not, *Si L'ON le savait*; if people knew it. *On estimerait davantage la science, si ON la connaissait*, not, *si L'ON la connaissait*; people would esteem learning more, if they were acquainted with it.

N. B. Some authors make frequent use of this L' without any necessity.

† This rule is not without some exceptions; for we say; *un pot DE chambre*; a chamber-pot. *Une fille DE chambre*; a chamber-maid. *Un bonnet DE nuit*; a night-cap. *Un mouchoir DE poche*; a pocket-handkerchief. *Un cheval DE carosse*, a coach-horse, &c. These few exceptions will be learnt by reading, and in conversation.

N. B. Many of these compound names are expressed by a single word in french; as Coach-man, *Cocher*; Foot-man, *Laquais*; Fisher-man, *Pêcheur*; Fish-market, *Poissonnerie*; Fish-bone, *Arête*; Water-fall, *Cascade*; Counting-house, *Comptoir*; Coach-house, *Remise*; Arm-chair, *Fauteuil*, &c. These expressions are all found in the dictionaries, and will be learnt by reading.

CHAP. IV.

DES ADJECTIFS.

Quelquefois on⁴⁶ veut désigner les qualités des personnes, ou des choses dont on⁴⁶ parle ; comme quand je dis :

*Un*¹ BON mari, *Une*¹ BELLE femme,
*De*¹⁰ JOLIS enfants, *Des fruits* MÛRS ;¹⁶
les mots *bon, belle, jolis, mûrs*, qui servent à désigner la qualité des substances dont je parle, s'appellent ADJECTIFS.

Sometimes we⁴⁶ wish to denote qualities (of the) - or (-) things (of which) we⁴⁶ speak ; as when I say :

A good husband, A fine woman, Some pretty children, Fruits ripe ; the words good, fine, pretty, ripe, -- serve to denote - quality (of the) - (of which) - speak, are called -.

13. L'adjectif doit être du MÊME GENRE et du MÊME NOMBRE que le nom qu' il qualifie.

- - must be (of the) same gender and (-) - number as which it qualifies.

Le féminin d' un adjectif se forme en ajoutant *e muet* au masculin ; ex.

Voilà un JOLI garçon ; il est bien HABILLÉ.

Voilà une JOLIE fille ; elle est très bien HABILLÉE.

- feminine of an - is formed by adding e mute to the - ; ex.

(That is) a pretty boy ; he is well dressed.

(-) a pretty girl ; she - very well dressed.

Excepté les adjectifs qui (se terminent) en *e muet*, qui sont les mêmes pour (les deux) genres ; ex.

Un JEUNE homme AIMABLE.¹⁶
*Une*¹ JEUNE femme AIMABLE.¹⁶

Except - - that end in e mute, which are the same for both - ; ex.

- young man amiable.
- - woman -.

Excepté aussi les adjectifs qui (se terminent) en *x*, lesquels changent *x* en *se* pour le féminin ; ex.

Mon frère est PARESSEUX.
Ma sœur est PARESSEUSE.

- also - - that end in x, which change x into se for - - ; ex.

My brother is lazy.
My sister - lazy.

Le pluriel des adjectifs se forme de la même manière que celui des noms, en ajoutant *s* ou *x* au singulier ; ex.

Une JOLIE fille. *De*¹⁰ JOLIES filles.
Un BEAU chapeau. *De* BEAUX chapeaux.

- plural (of the) - is formed in - same manner as that (of the) -, by adding s or x (to the) - ; ex.

A pretty girl. Some - - .
A fine hat. Some fine hats.

14. Quand un adjectif qualifie plusieurs noms du MÊME genre, il doit être du MÊME genre que ces noms, et PLURIER ; ex.

Mon père et mon frère sont OCCUPÉS.
Ma mère et ma sœur sont OCCUPÉES.

When an - qualifies several - (of the) same - it must be (-) - - as those - , - - ; ex.

My father - - brother are busy.
My mother - - sister - - .

15. Si un adjectif qualifie plusieurs noms de genres différents,¹⁶ l' adjectif doit être MASCULIN¹⁶ et PLURIER ; ex.

Mon père et ma mère sont OCCUPÉS.

If - - qualifies several - of - different, - - must be masculine - - ; ex - - and - - - .

DES ADJECTIFS.

16. En anglais les adjectifs se placent ordinairement AVANT le nom; en français ils se placent APRÈS le nom; ex.

Un habit ROUGE. Un chapeau NOIR.
Une table RONDE. Un bâton ROMPU.

In english - - are placed generally before -, in french they are placed after - - ; ex. A coat red. - hat black. A table round. - stick broken.

17. De cette règle on doit excepter les adjectifs, (BEAU, BEL, BELLE;) (BON, BONNE;) GRAND; (GROS, GROSSE;) JEUNE; JOLI; MAUVAIS; MÉCHANT; MEILLEUR; MÊME; MOINDRE; PETIT; PLUSIEURS; TOUT; (VIEUX, VIEILLE;) qui se placent ordinairement avant le nom; car on dit:

Un BON mari. Une BELLE femme.
De JOLIS enfants. Un GROS arbre.
Une PETITE maison. Un GRAND jardin.

From this — we⁴⁶ must except - (fine, handsome;) good; (great, large, tall;) big; young; pretty; bad; wicked; better; same; less; (little, small;) several; (all, whole;) old; which are placed generally before - - ; for we say: - - husband. - - woman. Some - children. - big tree. - small house. - large garden.

Les mêmes mots qui servent à qualifier les noms, servent aussi au moyen des adverbes, à en²⁴ comparer les qualités.

- same — which serve to qualify - —, - also (by the) means (of the) - to (of them) compare - —.

Quand on compare ensemble deux substances, la qualité d'une de ces substances est ou supérieure, ou inférieure, ou égale à la qualité de l'autre; et ceci s'appelle COMPARATIF; ou la qualité d'une de ces substances est (au dessus de) toutes les autres; et ceci s'appelle SUPERLATIF.

When we compare together two substances, - — of one of these — is either superior, or inferior, or equal to - — of the other; and this is called comparative; or the — of one of these — is above all the others; — this is called superlative.

18. Le comparatif de *supériorité* se forme en mettant PLUS avant l'adjectif; ex.

Mon frère est PLUS grand QUE vous.

The — of superiority is formed by putting plus before - — ; ex. - - is (more tall or taller) than - -.

19. Le comparatif de *infériorité* se forme par MOINS, ou PAS SI avant l'adjectif; ex.

Mon frère est MOINS grand ou n'est PAS SI grand QUE vous.

The — of inferiority is formed by moins or pas si — the — ; ex. My — is less tall, or is not so tall as —.

20. Le comparatif de *égalité* se forme en mettant AUSSI avant l'adjectif; ex.

Mon frère est AUSSI grand QUE vous.

The — of equality is formed by putting aussi before - — ; ex. My — is as tall as —

21. Le *superlatif* se forme en ajoutant l'article aux particules comparatives¹⁶ PLUS, MOINS; ex.

Mon frère est LE PLUS grand.
Ma sœur est LA MOINS grande.¹³
Vos enfants sont LES PLUS grands.¹³
MON meilleur ami. SA PLUS belle robe.

The — is formed by adding the — (to the) — — plus, moins; ex. My — is the most tall, or - tallest. My — is the least tall. Your - are - most tall, or - tallest. - best friend. Her finest gown.

CHAP. V.

DES PRONOMS.

Comme il serait souvent ennuyeux de répéter les mêmes noms, on⁴⁶ a adopté certains petits mots pour représenter ces noms, et que pour cette raison on⁴⁶ a appelés PRONOMS ; ainsi, quand je dis : JE ou MOI ; ces mots JE ou MOI représentent mon nom ; TU, TOI ; NOUS ; VOUS ; IL, LUI ; ILS, EUX ; ELLE, ELLES, représentent les noms de quelques autres personnes.

As it would be often tedious to — the same -, we⁴⁶ have adopted certain small words to represent these —, - which for this reason we⁴⁶ have called —; so, when I say : I or me ; these — I or me — - name ; thou, thee, (we, us ;) you ; he, him ; they, them ; (she, her ;) (they, them,) — - names of some other persons.

On⁴⁶ distingue les pronoms en PERSONNELS, RELATIFS, POSSESSIFS, DÉMONSTRATIFS, INDÉFINIS.

We⁴⁶ distinguish the — into personal, relative, possessive, demonstrative, indefinite.

DES PRONOMS PERSONNELS¹⁶.

Les pronoms PERSONNELS¹⁶ sont ceux de ces mots qui tiennent ordinairement la place des personnes.

The — —¹⁶ are such of these - which keep usually - - of —, or are used instead of —.

On distingue en grammaire trois personnes. La première personne est celle qui parle ; comme, JE suis, NOUS sommes ; la seconde personne est celle à qui on parle ; comme, TU es, VOUS êtes ; et la troisième personne est celle dont on parle ; comme, IL est, ELLE est ; ILS sont, ELLES sont ; mais chacune de ces personnes est représentée par plusieurs mots différents¹⁶.

We distinguish in — three persons. The first person is that who speaks ; as, I am, we are ; - second - - - to whom we speak ; as, thou art, you are ; - - third — - - (of whom) we speak ; as he is, she - ; they are, they - ; but each - these — is represented by several - different¹⁶.

Les pronoms qui représentent la première personne sont JE, MOI* ; ME, MOI* ; NOUS.

The — which represent - first — are I ; me* ; (we, us.)*

Ceux qui représentent la seconde sont TU, TOI* ; TE, TOI* ; VOUS.

Those which — the second are thou ; thee* ; you.*

Ceux qui représentent la troisième sont IL, LUI* ; ILS, EUX* ; LE, LUI* ; LES, LEUR* ; pour le *mas* ; ELLE, ELLES ; LA, LUI* ; LES, LEUR* ; pour le *fém* ; mais ces mots ne (s'emploient) pas indifféremment l'un pour l'autre.

Those which — the third are he ; they* ; him* ; them* ; for the — ; she, they ; her* ; them* ; for the - ; but these - (are used) not indiscriminately the one for the other.*

Pour rendre ce sujet plus clair, il me²⁴ semble nécessaire de diviser ces pronoms en *nominatifs* ou agents du verbe, et en *objets* du verbe.

To render this subject more clear, it (to me²⁴) seems necessary to divide these — into — or agents (of the) verb, and into objects (- -) —.

* These two words are expressed by the same word in english, but they are not used indiscriminately in french, as will appear by the following rules.

DES PRONOMS PERSONNELS.

Par *nominatifs* ou agents du verbe, je (veux dire) les mots qui dirigent l'action du verbe; et par *objets* du verbe, les mots qui en²⁴ reçoivent l'action; ainsi, dans cette phrase, JE VOUS²⁴ aime; JE est le *nominatif* ou agent du verbe aime, et VOUS en²⁴ est l'*objet*; et dans cette autre, VOUS²⁴ M' aimez; VOUS est le *nominatif* du verbe aimez; et ME en²⁴ est l'*objet*.

By — or — (of the) - I mean - words which direct the - (of the) - ; - by objects (of the) -, . - which (of it²⁴) receive - - ; so, in this sentence, I you²⁴ love, I is - - or - (of the) - love, - you (of it²⁴) is - - ; - - this other, you me love; you is - — (of the) - love; - me (of it²⁴) is - —

Les pronoms *nominatifs*¹⁶ sont pour la première personne, JE, MOI, *singulier*; NOUS, *plurier*; pour la seconde personne, TU, TOI, *singulier*; VOUS, *plurier*; pour la troisième au masculin, IL, LUI, *singulier*; ILS, EUX, *plurier*; pour la troisième au féminin, ELLE, *singulier*; ELLES, *plurier*; mais les mots JE ou MOI; TU ou TOI; IL ou LUI; ILS ou EUX, (ne s'emploient pas) indifféremment l'un pour l'autre.

The — nominative¹⁶ are for - first — I, singular; we, plural; - - second — thou, singular; you, plural; - - third (in the) masculine, he, singular; they, plural; - - third (in the) feminine, she, singular; they, plural; but - - je or moi; tu or toi; il or lui; ils or eux, (are not used) indiscriminately the one for the other.

22. JE, TU, IL, ILS, s'emploient (toutes les fois qu') il y a dans la phrase un verbe qui peut s'accorder avec ces pronoms; ex. JE suis, TU es, IL est, ILS sont.

Je, tu, il, ils, are used whenever there is in - sentence a - which may agree with - — ; - I am, thou art, he is, they are.

23. MOI, TOI, LUI, EUX, s'emploient lorsque ces mots sont joints à un autre substantif pour nominatif du même verbe, ou lorsque le verbe est sous-entendu; ex. Qui est là? MOI. Ce n'est pas MOI qui ai fait cela; c'est LUI. Vous et MOI nous irons. TOI et LUI vous resterez. Ce sont EUX qui me²⁵ l'²⁹ ont dit.

Moi, toi, lui, eux, are used when these - are joined to another — for — (of the) same —, or when - - is understood; ex. Who is there? I. It is not I who have done that; it is he. You - I will go. Thou - he shall stay. It is they - me it²⁹ have told.

N. B. NOUS, VOUS, ELLE, ELLES, étant invariablement les mêmes dans tous les⁷ cas, ne présentent aucune difficulté.

N. B. Nous, vous, elle, elles, being invariably - same in all instances, present no difficulty.

Les pronoms *objets* du verbe sont pour la première personne ME, MOI, *sing*; NOUS, *plur*; pour la seconde personne TE, TOI, *singul*; VOUS, *plur*; pour la troisième personne au masculin, LE, LUI, *singul*; LES, LEUR, EUX, *plur*; pour la troisième personne au féminin LA, LUI, ELLE, *singul*; LES, LEUR, ELLES, *plur*; mais ces mots ne s'emploient pas indifféremment.

The — — (of the) — are for - first — me, singular; us, plural; - - — — thee, singular; you, plural; - - third - in the masculine, him, him singular; them, plural; - - — — (in the) feminine her, singular; them, them plural; but these — are used not indiscriminately.

DES PRONOMS PERSONNELS.

Les pronoms *objets* du verbe se placent tantôt *avant*, et tantôt *après* le verbe ; et le choix de ces mots dépend de la *place* que ces pronoms occupent dans la phrase.

The — — (of the) — are placed sometimes before, -- after -- ; - choice of - — depends on - place - - - keep in - sentence.

24. Prenez pour règle générale¹⁶ que les pronoms objets du verbe, se placent en français *avant* le verbe qui les²⁴ régit ; dans ces cas *ME* s'exprime par *ME*, et *THEE* par *TE* ; ainsi on dit :

Take for rule — that - — - (of the) -, are placed in — before - — which -²⁴ governs ; - these instances - is expressed - me, - — by te ; so we say :

- Il ME voit.* ME voit-il ?
- Il TE voit.* TE voit-il ?
- Il LE voit.* LE voit-il ?
- Il LA voit.* LA voit-il ?
- Il NOUS voit.* NOUS voit-il ?
- Il VOUS voit.* VOUS voit-il ?
- Il LES voit.* LES voit-il ?
- Il ne ME voit pas.* Ne ME voit-il pas ?
- Il ne TE voit pas.* Ne TE voit-il pas ?
- Il ne LE voit pas.* Ne LE voit-il pas ?
- Il ne LA voit pas.* Ne LA voit-il pas ?
- Il ne NOUS voit pas.* Ne NOUS voit-il pas ?
- Il ne VOUS voit pas.* Ne VOUS voit-il pas ?
- Il ne LES voit pas.* Ne LES voit-il pas ?

- He me sees.* Me sees he ? †
- thee -. Thee - - ?
- him -. Him - - ?
- her -. Her - - ?
- us -. Us - - ?
- you -. You - - ?
- them -. Them - - ?
- He me sees not.* Me sees he not ? ‡
- thee - -. Thee - - - ?
- him - -. Him - - - ?
- her - -. Her - - - ?
- us - -. Us - - - ?
- you - -. You - - - ?
- them - -. Them - - - ?

25. Observez seulement que si le verbe qui régit ces pronoms est composé d'un des verbes auxiliaires¹⁶ *AVOIR* ou *ÊTRE*, et d'un participe passé¹⁶, les pronoms se placent *avant* le verbe *auxiliaire*¹⁶, non entre le verbe *auxiliaire* et le participe ; ainsi on dit :

Observe only that if - — - governs - - is compounded - - (- -) - auxiliary¹⁶ have or be, and - - participle past¹⁶, - — are placed before - - —, not between - - - - - ; so we say :

- Il M' a vu.* M' a-t-il vu ?
- Il T' a vu.* T' a-t-il vu ?
- Il L' a vu.* L' a-t-il vu ?
- Il L' a vue.* L' a-t-il vue ?
- Il NOUS a vus.* NOUS a-t-il vus ?
- Il VOUS a vus.* VOUS a-t-il vus ?
- Il LES a vus.* LES a-t-il vus ?
- Il ne M' a pas vu.* Ne M' a-t-il pas vu ?
- Il ne T' a pas vu.* Ne T' a-t-il pas vu ?
- Il ne L' a pas vu.* Ne L' a-t-il pas vu ?
- Il ne L' a pas vue.* Ne L' a-t-il pas vue ?
- Il ne NOUS a pas vus.* Ne NOUS a-t-il pas vus ?
- Il ne VOUS a pas vus.* Ne VOUS a-t-il pas vus ?
- Il ne LES a pas vus.* Ne LES a-t-il pas vus ?

- He me has seen.* Me has he - ? §
- thee - -. Thee - - - ?
- him - -. Him - - - ?
- her - -. Her - - - ?
- us - -. Us - - - ?
- you - -. You - - - ?
- them - -. Them - - - ?
- He me has not seen.* Me has he - - ? ||
- thee - - -. Thee - - - ?
- him - - -. Him - - - ?
- her - - -. Her - - - ?
- us - - -. Us - - - ?
- you - - -. You - - - ?
- them - - -. Them - - - ?

* The letter (t) has not any meaning here, it is added only to soften the pronunciation.

† Proper english, Does he see me, &c.

‡ Does he not see me ? &c.

§ Proper english, Has he seen me, &c.

|| Has he not seen me ? &c.

DES PRONOMS PERSONNELS.

26. Cette règle est sujette¹³ à deux exceptions; la première¹³ est que si on⁴⁶ commande, les pronoms se placent après le verbe; alors on⁴⁶ exprime ME par MOI, et THEE par TOI.

This rule is liable to two —; - first is that if we⁴⁶ command, --- are placed after —; then we⁴⁶ express — by moi, and — by toi.

27. Mais si le verbe défend, les pronoms rentrent dans la règle générale¹⁶, et se placent avant le verbe; alors ME s'exprime par ME, et THEE par TE; ex.

But if — forbids, — are returned into —, —, — are placed before —; then — is expressed by me, — by te; ex.

Commandement.²⁶

Défense.²⁷

Regarde-MOI.

Ne ME regarde pas.

Regarde-TOI.

Ne TE regarde pas.

Regardez-NOUS.

Ne NOUS regardez pas.

Regardez-VOUS.

Ne VOUS regardez pas.

Regardons-LE.

Ne LE regardons pas.

Regardons-LA.

Ne LA regardons pas.

Regardons-LES.

Ne LES regardons pas.

Commanding

Forbidding.

Look at me,

Me look at not.

— - thyself,

Thyself - - .

— - us,

Us - - .

— - yourself.

Yourself - - .

Let us look at him, Him let us not look -.

- - - her,

Her - - - .

- - - them.

Them - - - .

28. Les pronoms ne sont pas toujours régis¹³ par les verbes; ils sont souvent régis par une préposition qui les²⁴ unit au verbe qui les²⁴ accompagne; alors le pronom étant l'objet de la préposition, et non l'objet du verbe, il se place après la préposition; et ME s'exprime par MOI; THEE par TOI; HIM par LUI; HER par ELLE; THEM par EUX; masc.; par ELLES; fém.; ex.

The — a e not always governed by the —; they are often — - - - which them²⁴ unites (to the) — — them²⁴ attends; then — being the object of the —, — not — (of the) —, it is placed after —; — is expressed by moi; — by toi; — by lui; — by elle; — by eux; —; by elles, —; ex.

Viens à MOI. Assieds-toi (près de) MOI.

Come to me. Sit thyself by me.

Nous parlions de TOI. Allons avec LUI.

- were speaking - thee. Let us go - him

Je ne puis pas y aller sans ELLE.

I cannot go there without her.

Avez-vous pensé à EUX, mas.; à ELLES f. ?

Have you thought of them ?

29. S'il arrive que plusieurs pronoms soient régis par le même verbe, ils se placent ensemble dans l'ordre qui suit;

If it happens that several — are governed by - same —, they are placed together in - order — follows .

Les pronoms de la première personne ME, NOUS; ceux de la seconde TE, VOUS; et celui de la troisième SE, se placent avant TOUTS les autres pronoms; LE, LA, LES, se placent avant LUI, LEUR, Y, EN; LUI, LEUR, avant Y, EN; et Y avant EN.

The — - - first —

me, nous; those - - — te,

vous; - that - - third se; are

placed before ALL - other —;

le, la, les, - - - lui,

leur, y, en; lui, leur, — y,

en; - y — en.

Excepté, lorsqu' on emploie MOI, TOI, au lieu de ME, TE; car alors MOI, TOI, se placent après les autres pronoms.

Except, when we use moi, toi, instead of me, te; for then moi, toi, are placed after - other —.

Et lorsque MOI ou TOI rencontrent le pronom EN, ils se changent en M', T', et se placent avant EN. Toutes ces variations se font pour la⁷ mélodie; ex.

And when moi or toi meet - — en, - are changed into m' t', - are placed — en. All these — are made for⁷ melody; ex.

DES PRONOMS PERSONNELS.

Pronoms AVANT le verbe, règle 24 et 25.

Pronoms APRES le verbe, règle 26.

PREMIÈRE PERSONNE.

<i>Il ME LE donna ;</i>	<i>Heme him or it* gave.</i>	<i>Donnez-LE-MOI ;</i>	<i>Give it or him* me</i>
<i>Il ME LA donna ;</i>	<i>- - her or it* -.</i>	<i>Donnez-LA-MOI ;</i>	<i>- it or her* -.</i>
<i>Il ME LES donna ;</i>	<i>- - them -.</i>	<i>Donnez-LES-MOI ;</i>	<i>- them -.</i>
<i>Il M' EN donna ;</i>	<i>- me some -.</i>	<i>Donnez-M' EN ;</i>	<i>- me some.</i>
<i>Il NOUS LE donna ;</i>	<i>- us him or it* -.</i>	<i>Donnez-NOUS-LE ;</i>	<i>- us, him or it.</i>
<i>Il NOUS LA donna ;</i>	<i>- - her or it* -.</i>	<i>Donnez-NOUS-LA ;</i>	<i>- - her or it.</i>
<i>Il NOUS LES donna ;</i>	<i>- - them -.</i>	<i>Donnez-NOUS-LES ;</i>	<i>- - them.</i>
<i>Il NOUS EN donna ;</i>	<i>- - some -.</i>	<i>Donnez-NOUS-EN ;</i>	<i>- - some.</i>
<i>Il M' Y a envoyé ;</i>	<i>- me there has sent.</i>	<i>Envoyez-Y-MOI ;</i>	<i>Send there me.</i>
<i>Il ME L' Y a envoyé ;</i>	<i>- - it - - -.</i>	<i>Envoyez-L' -Y-MOI ;</i>	<i>- it - -.</i>
<i>Il ME LES Y a envoyés ;</i>	<i>- - them - - -.</i>	<i>Envoyez-LES-Y-MOI ;</i>	<i>- them - -.</i>
<i>Il M' Y EN a envoyé ;</i>	<i>- - - some - -.</i>	<i>Envoyez-Y-EN-MOI ;</i>	<i>- - - some -.</i>
<i>Il NOUS Y a envoyés ;</i>	<i>- us - - -.</i>	<i>Envoyez-NOUS-Y ;</i>	<i>- - -.</i>
<i>Il NOUS L' Y a envoyé ;</i>	<i>- - it - - -.</i>	<i>Envoyez-NOUS-L' -Y ;</i>	<i>- - it -.</i>
<i>Il NOUS LES Y a envoyés ;</i>	<i>- - them - - -.</i>	<i>Envoyez-NOUS-LES-Y ;</i>	<i>- - them -.</i>
<i>Il NOUS Y EN a envoyé ;</i>	<i>- - - some - -.</i>	<i>Envoyez-NOUS-Y-EN ;</i>	<i>- - - (some.)</i>

SECONDE PERSONNE.

<i>Il TE LE donna ,</i>	<i>He thee him or it* -.</i>	<i>Représente-LE-TOI ;</i>	<i>Represent it (to thee.)</i>
<i>Il TE LA donna ,</i>	<i>- - her or it* -.</i>	<i>Représente-LA-TOI ;</i>	<i>- her or it* (- -.)</i>
<i>Il TE LES donna ;</i>	<i>- - them -.</i>	<i>Représente-LES-TOI ;</i>	<i>- them (- -.)</i>
<i>Il T' EN donna ;</i>	<i>- thee some -.</i>	<i>Représente-T' EN ;</i>	<i>- thee (of it.)</i>
<i>Il VOUS LE donna ;</i>	<i>- you him or it -.</i>	<i>Représentez-VOUS-LE ;</i>	<i>- yourself him or it.</i>
<i>Il VOUS LA donna ;</i>	<i>- - her or it* -.</i>	<i>Représentez-VOUS-LA ;</i>	<i>- - her or it.</i>
<i>Il VOUS LES donna ;</i>	<i>- - them -.</i>	<i>Représentez-VOUS-LES ;</i>	<i>- - them.</i>
<i>Il VOUS EN donna ;</i>	<i>- - some -.</i>	<i>Représentez-VOUS-EN ;</i>	<i>- - (of it.)</i>
<i>Il T' Y a envoyé ;</i>	<i>- thee there has sent.</i>		
<i>Il TE L' Y a envoye ;</i>	<i>- - it - - -.</i>		
<i>Il TE LES Y a envoyés ;</i>	<i>- - them - - -.</i>		
<i>Il T' Y EN a envoyé ;</i>	<i>- - there some - -.</i>		
<i>Il VOUS Y a envoyé ;</i>	<i>- you - - -.</i>	<i>Transportez-VOUS-Y ;</i>	<i>Carry yourself there.</i>
<i>Il VOUS L' Y a envoyé ;</i>	<i>- - it - - -.</i>		
<i>Il VOUS LES Y a envoyés ;</i>	<i>- - them - - -.</i>		
<i>Il VOUS Y EN a envoyé ;</i>	<i>- - - some - -.</i>	<i>Informez-VOUS-Y-EN ;</i>	<i>Enquire-there (of it.)</i>

TROISIÈME PERSONNE.

<i>Il SE LE rappelle ;</i>	<i>He to himself it recalls.</i>		
<i>Il SE LA rappelle ;</i>	<i>- - - her or it* -.</i>		
<i>Il SE LES rappelle ;</i>	<i>- - - them -.</i>		
<i>Il S' EN repent ;</i>	<i>- himself (of it) repents.</i>		
<i>Il S' Y applique ;</i>	<i>- - (to it) applies.</i>		
<i>Il LE LUI a donné ;</i>	<i>- it (to him or her) - -.</i>	<i>Donnez-LE-LUI ;</i>	<i>Give it (to him or her.)</i>
<i>Il LA LUI a donnée ;</i>	<i>- it, her* (- -) - given.</i>	<i>Donnez-LA-LUI ;</i>	<i>- it or her* (- - -.)</i>
<i>Il LES LUI a donnés ;</i>	<i>- them (- -) -.</i>	<i>Donnez-LES-LUI ;</i>	<i>- them (- - -.)</i>
<i>Il LE LEUR a donné ;</i>	<i>- it, him (to them) - -.</i>	<i>Donnez-LE-LEUR ;</i>	<i>- - (to them.)</i>
<i>Il LA LEUR a donnée ;</i>	<i>- her or it* (- -) - -.</i>	<i>Donnez-LA-LEUR ;</i>	<i>- it or her (- -)</i>
<i>Il LES LEUR a donnés ;</i>	<i>- them (- -) - -.</i>	<i>Donnez-LES-LEUR ;</i>	<i>- (- -.)</i>
<i>Il L' EN avertit ;</i>	<i>- him (of it) warned,</i>	<i>Avertissez-L' EN ;</i>	<i>Warn him (of it.)</i>
<i>Il LES EN avertit ;</i>	<i>- them (of it) -.</i>	<i>Avertissez-LES-EN ;</i>	<i>- them (- -.)</i>
<i>Il L' Y envoya ;</i>	<i>- him there sent ;</i>	<i>Envoyez-L' Y ;</i>	<i>Send him or it there</i>
<i>Il LES Y envoya ;</i>	<i>- them - -.</i>	<i>Envoyez-LES-Y ;</i>	<i>- them -.</i>
<i>Il LE LUI Y envoya ;</i>	<i>- - (to him or her) - -.</i>	<i>Envoyez-LE-LUI-Y ;</i>	<i>- - - (to him or her) -.</i>
<i>Il LA LUI Y envoya ;</i>	<i>- - (- -) - -.</i>	<i>Envoyez-LA-LUI-Y ;</i>	<i>- her or it (- -) -.</i>
<i>Il LES LUI Y envoya ;</i>	<i>- - (- -) - -.</i>	<i>Envoyez-LES-LUI-Y ;</i>	<i>- (- -) -.</i>
<i>Il LE LEUR Y envoya ;</i>	<i>- it (to them) - -.</i>	<i>Envoyez-LE-LEUR-Y ;</i>	<i>- it or him (- -)</i>
<i>Il LA LEUR Y envoya ;</i>	<i>- it or her (- -) - -.</i>	<i>Envoyez-LA-LEUR-Y ;</i>	<i>- her or it* (- -) -.</i>
<i>Il LES LEUR Y envoya ;</i>	<i>- them (- -) - -.</i>	<i>Envoyez-LES-LEUR-Y ;</i>	<i>- them (- -) -.</i>
<i>Il LUI EN envoya ;</i>	<i>- (to him or her) - -.</i>	<i>Envoyez-LUI-EN ;</i>	<i>- (to him) some.</i>
<i>Il LEUR EN envoya ;</i>	<i>- (- -) - -.</i>	<i>Envoyez-LEUR-EN ;</i>	<i>- (- -) -.</i>
<i>Il LUI Y EN envoya ;</i>	<i>- (- -) - -.</i>	<i>Envoyez-LUI-Y-EN ;</i>	<i>- (to him) there -.</i>
<i>Il LEUR Y EN envoya ;</i>	<i>- (- -) - -.</i>	<i>Envoyez-LEUR-Y-EN ;</i>	<i>- (- -) - -.</i>
<i>Il Y EN envoya ;</i>	<i>- - - -.</i>	<i>Envoyez-Y-EN ;</i>	<i>- - -.</i>

* See 30th rule.

DES PRONOMS PERSONNELS.

30. Comme (il n' y a) en français que deux genres, le MASCULIN et le FÉMININ, les pronoms *IT, THEY, THEM* qui (se rapportent) aux⁷ choses, et qui sont du genre NEUTRE⁶ en anglais, (s'expriment) par *IL, ELLE, ILS, ELLES; LE, LA, LES*, de même que si on parlait des⁷ personnes; ainsi on dit; en parlant d'un homme ou d'un habit;

IL est bien fait;

Je vous LE²⁴ montrerai.

En parlant d'une femme ou d'une fleur;

ELLE est belle; Regardez-LA²⁵.

As (there are) in french only two genders, the — and the —, the —, -, - which

refer to⁷ things, and which are (of the) — neuter —, are expressed by il, elle, ils, elles;

le, la, les, the same as if we⁴⁶ spoke of⁷ —; so we say; in speaking - - man or - - coat;

He or it is well made.

I you²⁹ it or him (will shew.)

--- woman --- flower;

She or it is fine; look at her or it.

Remarquez que les mots *LE, LA, LES, pronoms*, sont précisément les mêmes que *LE, LA, LES, article*; mais il est aisé de ne pas les²⁴ confondre. *LE, LA, LES, article* est toujours suivi d'un nom; *LE, LA, LES, pronom* est toujours précédé ou suivi d'un verbe; ainsi, dans cette phrase;

Voici LE père, LA mère, et LES enfants;
LE, LA, LES est article.

Et dans ces autres; *Je LE²⁴ vois, je LA²⁴ vois, je LES²⁴ vois;*

Voyez-LE²⁵, voyez-LA²⁵, voyez-LES²⁵;
LE, LA, LES est pronom.

Remark that — words le, la, les, —, are precisely the same as le, la, les, —; but it is easy to not them²⁴ confound. Le, la, les, —, is always followed by a noun; le, la, les — is always preceded or followed by a —; so, in this sentence;

(Here is) —, - mother, - - children; le, la, les is an article.

And - these others; I him see, - her -, - them -;

See him, - her, - them;
le, la, les is a —.

31. Les pronoms *HE, SHE, THEY, HIM, HER, THEM* s'emploient quelquefois sans rapport à un nom exprimé dans la phrase, mais avec rapport aux mots *MAN, WOMAN, ou PEOPLE* sous-entendus; alors *HE, HIM* s'expriment par *CELUI*; *SHE, HER* par *CELLE*; *THEY, THEM*, par *CEUX*; ex.

CELUI à qui, c'est à dire, L'HOMME à qui personne ne plaît, est plus malheureux que CELUI qui, i. e., que L'HOMME qui ne plaît à personne.

The — HE, SHE, THEY, HIM, HER, THEM, are used sometimes without reference to a — expressed in the —, but with — (to the) words MAN, WOMAN, - PEOPLE understood; then HE, HIM are expressed by celui; SHE, HER by celle; THEY, THEM, by ceux; ex.

He to whom, i. e., - man to whom nobody pleases, is more unhappy than he who, i. e., than the man who pleases nobody.

CELLE qui, c'est à dire, LA FEMME qui refuse un mari, n'est pas toujours sûre d'en trouver un autre.

She who, i. e., - woman who refuses a husband, is not always sure of finding another.

CEUX qui, c'est à dire, LES GENS qui paraissent heureux, ne le²⁴ sont pas toujours.

They who, i. e., - people who appear happy, so are not always.

DES PRONOMS RELATIFS.

Le mot RELATIF signifie qui a rapport. *The - - means which has reference.*

Quoique tous les pronoms par leur nature soient *relatifs*, c'est à dire aient du rapport à quelque substantif exprimé ou sous-entendu, on⁴⁶ a donné à (ceux-ci) 'e nom de relatifs, (à l' exclusion) des autres, parcequ' ils servent plutôt à rappeler l'idée des êtres dont on⁴⁶ a parlé, qu' à les²⁴ représenter.

Though all the pronouns by their nature be relative, i. e. have some reference to some — expressed or —, people⁴⁶ have given to these the name of —, exclusively (of the) others, because they — rather to recall - idea (- -) beings of which we have spoken, than to them²⁴ represent.

Les pronoms relatifs¹⁶ sont QUI, QUE, DONT, QUOI, QUEL, LEQUEL ; en anglais *WHO, WHOM, WHOSE, THAT, WHICH, WHAT.*

The — relative are qui, que, dont, quoi, quel, lequel ; in english, —, —, —, —, —, —.

Ces mots semblent ne présenter aucune difficulté, cependant, comme le même mot est représenté par plusieurs mots différents¹⁶ dans (les deux) langues ; ils embarrassent souvent les commençants ; ainsi faites attention aux règles suivantes.

These — seem - (to present) any difficulty, yet, as - same word is represented by several —¹⁶ in both languages ; they embarrass often the beginners ; so pay — (to the) — following.

32. Quand *WHO, THAT, WHICH*, sont le *nominatif* d'un verbe, ils s'expriment par *QUI* ;

When —, —, —, are the — of a —, they are expressed by qui ;

Quand *WHOM, THAT, WHICH*, sont l'objet d'un verbe, ils s'expriment par *QUE** ;

When —, —, —, are the — of a —, they are expressed by que ;*

WHOSE, of WHOM, of WHICH, s'expriment par *DONT*.

—, of —, of — are expressed by dont.

N. B. *QUI, QUE, DONT* ne connaissent ni genre ni nombre ; c' est à dire, se disent également des⁷ personnes et des choses, d'un ou de plusieurs ; ainsi on dit ;

N. B. Qui, que, dont, know neither — nor — ; that is to say, are said both of⁷ — and of⁷ things, of one or - several ; so we say :

L'homme QUI, le cheval QUI, le carrosse QUI est à la porte.

The man who, - horse that, - couch which is at - door.

L'homme QUE, le cheval QUE, le carrosse QUE nous avons rencontré.

The — whom, the — that, the — which - have met.

L'homme DONT, le cheval DONT, le carrosse DONT je vous²⁵ ai parlé.

- — (of whom,) - — (of which) - (of which) - (to you²⁵) have spoken.

* Persons not versed in grammatical terms are often at a loss to distinguish the object from the *nominative*, i. e. when to express *THAT, WHICH* by *QUI*, and when by *QUE*. To these I will observe, that *THAT, WHICH* are the *nominative*, and expressed by *QUI*, when they are followed immediately by a verb ; as,

The coach *THAT* or *WHICH* is at the door ; *Le carrosse QUI est à la porte.* *THAT, WHICH* are the *object* of the verb, and expressed by *QUE*, when, between them and the verb, there is a noun or a pronoun which is the *nominative* of the verb ; as, The coach *THAT* or *WHICH* we have met ; *Le carrosse QUE nous avons rencontré.*

DES PRONOMS RELATIFS.

33. Quelquefois *WHOM*, *WHICH*, sont régis par une préposition, et non par un verbe; alors ils s'expriment,

WHOM par *QUI*, pour (les deux) genres et (les deux) nombres;

WHICH par *LEQUEL*, *LAQUELLE*, *LESQUELS*, *LESQUELLES*.

From *WHICH* par *DUQUEL*, *DE LAQUELLE*, *DESQUELS*, *DESQUELLES*.

To, at *WHICH* par *AUQUEL*, *À LAQUELLE*, *AUXQUELS*, *AUXQUELLES*, suivant le genre et le nombre du nom auquel ils (se rapportent); ainsi on dit;

Voici les gens avec QUI j'ai dîné.

Le cheval sur LEQUEL je suis venu.

La chaise dans LAQUELLE j'étais.

Les chevaux AUXQUELS je l'ai donné.

Sometimes —, —, are governed by a —, and not a —; then they are expressed,

— by qui, for both

—, and both —;

— by lequel, laquelle,

lesquels, lesquelles.

From —, by duquel, de laquelle, desquels, desquelles.

To, at — by auquel, à laquelle, auxquels, auxquelles, (agreeably to) the — and the — (of the) — to which they refer; so we say;

(Here are) — people with whom — — dined.

— horse on which — am come or — came.

— chaise in which — was.

— horses to which — it²⁵ have given.

34. *WHO*, *WHOM*, *WHOSE* s'emploient quelquefois sans rapport à un nom exprimé, mais par rapport au mot *PERSON* sous-entendu. Ces mots peuvent alors (se tourner) par *WHAT PERSON*, *QUELLE PERSONNE*, et s'expriment par *QUI*; ex.

QUI vous²⁵ a dit cela? (c'est à dire,)
QUELLE PERSONNE vous²⁵ a dit cela?

Je ne sais QUI vous (voulez dire); (c'est à dire) *QUELLE PERSONNE vous (voulez dire).*

À *QUI* ou à *QUELLE PERSONNE* est cette maison?

De *QUI* ou de *QUELLE PERSONNE* est-elle fille?

Dans les phrases interrogatives¹⁶, *WHICH* demande trois distinctions.

35. Quelquefois *WHICH* se joint comme un adjectif au nom qui le²⁴ suit, c'est à dire sans le secours des⁷ prépositions; comme, *WHICH man?* *WHICH carriage?* *WHICH horses?* alors *WHICH* s'exprime par *QUEL*, *QUELLE*, *QUELS*, *QUELLES*, suivant le genre et le nombre du nom qui le²⁴ suit; ex.

De QUEL homme parlez-vous?

Dans QUELLE voiture (mettrai-je) ceci?

À QUELS chevaux le²⁴ (donnerai-je)?

—, —, —

are used — without reference to a — expressed, but with — (to the) word

— understood. These words

may then (be turned) into —

—, quelle personne, and are expressed by qui; ex.

Who you²⁵ has told that? i. e. what — —²⁵ — —?

I know not whom — mean, i. e. what — —

—.

To whom or — what — belongs that house, (or whose house is that?)

Of whom or — what — is she daughter? whose daughter — —?

In — sentences interrogative¹⁶ — requires three distinctions.

Sometimes — is joined

like an — (to the) — which follows it,²⁴ i. e., without the help (of the) —;

as, — —? —

—? — —? then —

is expressed by quel, quelle, quels, quelles (agreeably to) — — and — — (of —) — — follows it²⁴; ex.

Of which man speak you?

In which — (shall I put) this?

To which horses it (shall I give?)

DES PRONOMS RELATIFS.

36. Quelquefois *WHICH* se joint comme un substantif au nom qui le²⁴ suit, par le moyen d'une préposition; comme, *WHICH of these men? WHICH of the carriages?* ou il s'emploie sans être suivi d'un nom, mais par rapport à un nom dont on a déjà fait mention; comme, *It is one of these men; WHICH is it?* alors

WHICH s'exprime par *leQUEL, laQUELLE, lesQUELS, lesQUELLES*;

Of, from WHICH par *duQUEL, de laQUELLE, desQUELS, desQUELLES*;

To, at WHICH par *auQUEL, à laQUELLE, auxQUELS, auxQUELLES*, (c'est à dire) l'article défini¹⁶ *le, la, les; du, de la, des; au, à la, aux*, suivant le genre et le nombre du nom, s'ajoute aux mots *QUEL, QUELLE, QUELS, QUELLES*, comme s'ils étaient eux-mêmes des⁸ noms; ex.

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| <i>DUQUEL de ces hommes parlez-vous?</i> | (Of which) - - - speak you? |
| <i>LEQUEL est le plus grand?</i> | Which is - most tall, or - tallest? |
| <i>LAQUELLE des voitures préférez-vous?</i> | Which (- -) carriages prefer you? |
| <i>LAQUELLE est la plus belle?</i> | Which - - most fine, or - finest? |
| <i>LESQUELS de ces chevaux aurons-nous?</i> | Which of these - (shall have) we? |
| <i>LESQUELS sont les meilleurs?</i> | Which are the best? |

37. Quelquefois le relatif *WHICH* renferme le mot *THAT* ou *THOSE* sous-entendu, comme, quand, en réponse à cette question; *WHICH horse shall I ride?* Je dis, *Ride WHICH you will*, c'est à dire, *THAT WHICH you will; WHICH* dans ce sens s'exprime par *CELUI QUE, mas.; CELLE QUE, fém.; CEUX QUE, masc. pl.; CELLES QUE, fém. plur.*; suivant le genre et le nombre du nom auquel il (se rapporte); ex.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <i>Lequel de ces chevaux monterai-je?</i> | <i>Which - - - (shall ride) I?</i> |
| <i>Montez CELUI qu' il vous²⁴ plaira?</i> | <i>Ride which, i. e. that which - please.</i> |
| <i>Dans quelle voiture mettrai-je ceci?</i> | <i>In which carriage (shall put) I this?</i> |
| <i>Mettez-le dans CELLE QUE je vous ai dit.</i> | <i>Put it in which, i. e. that which - - - told.</i> |
| <i>Auxquels des garçons le donnerai-je?</i> | <i>(To which) (- -) boys it²⁴ (shall give) I?</i> |
| <i>Donnez-le²³ à CEUX QUE vous voudrez.</i> | <i>Give it to which, i. e. those which - will.</i> |

WHAT, (de même que) *WHICH*, demande trois distinctions.

—, (as well as) —, requires three distinctions.

DES PRONOMS RELATIFS.

38. Quelquefois *WHAT* se joint comme un adjectif au nom qui le suit ; alors il s'exprime par *QUEL*, *QUELLE*, *QUELS*, *QUELLES* de la même manière que *WHICH* ; ex.

De QUEL homme, de QUELLE voiture, de QUELS chevaux parlez-vous ?

Sometimes — is joined like — (to the) — follows it²⁴ ; then it is expressed by quel, quelle, quels, quelles, in the same manner as — ; ex.

Of what —, - what carriage, - what horses speak — ?

39. Quelquefois *WHAT* s'emploie absolument, c'est à dire, sans rapport à un nom exprimé, mais avec rapport au mot *THING* sous-entendu ; alors *WHAT* peut se tourner par *WHAT THING*, et s'exprime par *QUE*, ou par *QUOI*.

WHAT s'exprime par *QUE*, quand il est l'objet d'un verbe ; comme,

QUE dites-vous ? QUE faites-vous ?

WHAT s'exprime par *QUOI*, quand il est régi par une préposition ; comme,

De QUOI parle-t-il ? à QUOI pensez-vous ?

Ou employé comme interjection ; ex.

QUOI ! vous n'êtes pas encore levé.

— — is used absolutely, i. e., without reference - — expressed, but with — (to the) - — understood ; then — may be turned into — —, - is expressed by que, or by quoi.

— is expressed - que, when it is - object - - - ; as,

What say — ? - do — ?

— is expressed - quoi, — - governed - - - ; as,

Of what speaks - ? To what think - ?

Or used as an interjection ; ex.

What ! — are not yet up.

40. *WHAT* s'emploie quelquefois au lieu des mots *THAT*, *WHICH* ; comme, quand on dit ; *Do WHAT is just* ; c'est à dire, *THAT WHICH is just* ; alors *WHAT* s'exprime par *CE QUI*, quand il est le *nominatif* d'un verbe, et par *CE QUE*, quand il en²⁴ est l'objet ; ex.

Faites CE QUI est juste.

CE QUE je vous²⁴ dis est vrai.

Mais quand *WHAT* dans le sens de *THAT WHICH* est régi par les prépositions *OF*, *TO*, (il faut) considérer si la préposition vient *avant* ou *après* *WHAT* ; car, *OF WHAT* s'exprime par *de CE QUI*, *nomin.* ; par *de CE QUE*, *objet* ; ex.

Parlez de CE QUI vous²⁴ regarde.

— is used — in - stead (of the) — —, — ; as, when we⁴⁶ say ; — — — ; that is to say, — — — ; then

— is expressed by ce qui, when

it is — of —, - - ce

que, — it (of it²⁴) is — ; ex.

Do that which or what - just.

That which or what - - say - true.

But when — in - sense -

— — - governed by —

-, -, (it is necessary) (to -) whether -

— comes before or after — ;

for, - — is expressed by de ce qui,

— ; by de ce que, — ; ex.

Speak of what, i. e. of that which - concerns.

WHAT OF, s'exprime par *CE DONT* ;

CE DONT je parle ne vous regarde pas.

TO WHAT s'exprime par *à CE QUI*, *à CE QUE* ; comme,

(Appliquez-vous) à CE QUI est utile.

WHAT TO s'exprime par *CE à QUOI* ; comme,

CE à QUOI il s'applique n'est pas utile.

— -, is expressed by ce dont ;

-(of)which) - - or what - speak of - - not

- - - — by à ce qui,

à ce que ; as,

Apply to that which or what - useful.

*— - is expressed by ce à **

quoi ; as,

--to which - applies or what - - to - not -

DES PRONOMS POSSESSIFS.

On appelle pronoms POSSESSIFS¹⁶ certains mots qu' on⁴⁸ emploie à désigner la possession des objets dont on⁴⁶ parle. *We⁴⁶ call — possessive certain — which are used⁴⁸ to denote — (of the) . (of which) we⁴⁶ speak.*

Les pronoms POSSESSIFS¹⁶ sont, MIEN, TIEN, SIEN, pour le *masc.* MIENNE, TIENNE, SIENNE, *fém.* NÔTRE, VÔTRE, LEUR, servent pour (les deux) genres.

The — — are, Mine, thine, his or hers, for — —. Mine, thine, his or hers, —. Ours, yours, theirs, serve for both genders.

N. B. Les pronoms POSSESSIFS¹⁶ sont toujours précédés¹³ de l'article défini¹⁵ *le, la, les ; du, de la, des ; au, à la, aux,* de même que s'ils étaient des noms ; ainsi on⁴⁶ dit ; *N. B. The — — are always preceded by — — le, la, les ; du, de la, des ; au, à la, aux, the same as if they were nouns so we⁴⁶ say,*

Le MIEN, la MIENNE, les MIENS, les MIENNES.

N. B. The — — are

always preceded by — — le, la, les ; du, de la, des ; au, à la, aux, the same as if they were nouns so we⁴⁶ say,

Du MIEN, de la MIENNE, des MIENS, des MIENNES.

Mine.

Au MIEN, à la MIENNE, aux MIENS, aux MIENNES.

Of mine.

Le TIEN, la TIENNE les TIENS, les TIENNES.

To mine.

Du TIEN, de la TIENNE, des TIENS, des TIENNES.

Thine.

Au TIEN, à la TIENNE, aux TIENS, aux TIENNES.

Of thine.

Le SIEN, la SIENNE, les SIENS, les SIENNES.

To thine.

Du SIEN, de la SIENNE, des SIENS, des SIENNES.

His, Hers.

Au SIEN, à la SIENNE, aux SIENS, aux SIENNES.

Of his, of hers

To his, to hers.

Ours.

Of ours.

Yours.

Theirs.

41. Les pronoms POSSESSIFS¹⁶ s'accordent en genre et en nombre avec le nom qu'ils représentent ; ex.

The — — agree

in gender - in number with — which - represent ; ex.

Votre cheval est meilleur que LE MIEN ; c'est à dire, que MON CHEVAL.

Your horse is better than mine ; i. e., than my —.

Ma maison est mieux située que LA SIENNE ; c'est à dire, que SA MAISON.

My house - better situated than his ; i. e., than his —.

Je préfère cette situation à LA LEUR.

I prefer this situation to theirs.

Vous avez pris mes gants, et moi, j'ai pris LES VÔTRES.

- have taken - gloves, - I have

— yours.

Mêlez-vous²⁶ de vos affaires, et ne vous²⁷ mêlez pas DES NÔTRES.

Meddle yourself²⁶ with your —, - yourself²⁷ meddle not with ours.

DES PRONOMS POSSESSIFS.

42. Les Anglais emploient les pronoms POSSESSIFS¹⁶ *MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS, OURS, YOURS, THEIRS*, dans des cas où les Français font usage des pronoms personnels¹⁶ *MOI, TOI, LUI, ELLE, NOUS, VOUS, EUX, ELLES*; c'est lorsque ces pronoms (se rencontrent) avec le verbe *To be*, ÊTRE, employé dans le sens du verbe *To belong*, APPARTENIR; car alors *MINE* s'exprime par à *MOI*; *THINE*, par à *TOI*; *HIS*, par à *LUI*; *HERS*, par à *ELLE*; *OURS*, par à *NOUS*; *YOURS*, par à *VOUS*; *THEIRS*, par à *EUX*, masculin; par à *ELLES*, féminin; ex.

*Ce cheval est-il*⁵² à VOUS?

Oui, il est à MOI.

Je pensais qu' il était à VOTRE frère.

*Qui vous*²⁵ a dit qu' il était à LUI?

Ne savez-vous pas que tout ce qui est ici est à MOI?

Je pense que ces livres sont à EUX.

Ils ne sont pas à EUX; *ils sont* à NOUS.

The English use - —

— mine, thine, his,

hers, ours, yours, theirs, in some - (in which) - — make use (of the)

— — moi, toi, lui,

elle, nous, vous, eux, elles;

it is when - — meet

with - — TO BE, être, used

in the sense (of the) - - -

—; for then - is expressed

by à moi; —, *by* à toi;

his, *by* à lui; hers, *by* à elle;

ours, *by* à nous; yours, *by* à

vous; theirs, *by* à eux, —;

by à elles, —; ex.

*This horse is it*⁵² yours i. e. to you?

Yes, it is mine i. e. to me.

I thought - it was to your brother.

Who - has told that it was his?

Know - not that all that which is here is mine?

- think - - - are to them i. e. theirs.

They are not theirs; - - ours.

43. Les Anglais font encore usage des pronoms POSSESSIFS¹⁶ *MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS, OURS, YOURS, THEIRS*, dans un autre cas où les Français emploient l'article possessif *MES, TES, SES, NOS, VOS, LEURS*; c' est dans ces sortes d'idiomes; *A friend* OF *MINE*; *A book* OF *YOURS*; dans ces cas *MINE* s'exprime par *MES*; *THINE*, par *TES*; *HIS* ou *HERS*, par *SES*; *OURS*, par *NOS*; *YOURS*, par *VOS*; *THEIRS*, par *LEURS*, qui, suivant les règles sur l'article, se placent avant le nom; ex.

Un de vos amis est venu ici.

Un de ses enfants est mort.

*Un de nos voisins me*²⁵ l'a dit.

J'ai rencontré un de leurs valets.

The — make still use (of the)

— — mine, thine,

his, hers, ours, yours, theirs,

in another instance (in which) - —

use - — — mes, tes,

ses, nos, vos, leurs; *it is* -

- kinds of idioms; *A friend* of mine;

A book of yours; - - - *MINE*

is expressed by mes; *THINE*, - tes;

HIS or *HERS*, *by* ses; *OURS*, -

nos; *YOURS*, - vos; *THEIRS*,

- leurs, -, (agreeably to) - - on

the —, are placed before - -; ex.

*One of your friends** is come here.

One of his children† is dead.

One of our neighbours‡ - it has told.

I have met one of their servants.§

* Or, a friend of yours.

† Or, a child of his.

‡ Or, a neighbour of ours.

§ Or, a servant of theirs.

§ Or, a

DES PRONOMS DÉMONSTRATIFS.

On appelle pronoms DÉMONSTRATIFS¹⁵ certains mots qui servent à indiquer les objets dont on parle.

*We*⁴⁵ call — demonstrative certain — which — to (point out) — (of which) *we*⁴⁵ speak.

Ces pronoms sont CELUI, CELLE; CEUX, CELLES, formés des pronoms *personnels*¹⁵ ⁴⁶LUI, ELLE, EUX, ELLES, auxquels on ajoute CE.

These — - celui, celle; (*this, that*;) ceux, celles; (*these, those,*) formed (--) — lui, elle, eux, elles, (to which) *we*⁴⁵ add *ce*.

44. Les pronoms DÉMONSTRATIFS, de même que les autres pronoms, s'accordent en genre et en nombre avec le nom qu'ils représentent; ex.

The — —, *the same as* - other —, agree in — and — with — which they represent; ex.

Ce cheval vaut mieux que CELUI, (c'est à dire) *le CHEVAL que vous avez vendu*.

This - is better than that, (i. e.,) the horse which - have sold.

Cette maison est mieux située que CELLE, (c'est à dire) *la MAISON où je demeure*.

This - is better situated than that, i. e., — house (in which) - live.

Vos livres sont plus amusants que CEUX de votre sœur.

- books are more entertaining than those - - -.

Les rues de Paris ne sont pas si larges, ni si commodes que CELLES de Londres.

The streets - — are not so broad, nor so commodious as those - London.

N. B. Les mots *THIS*, *THESE*; *THAT*, *THOSE*, indiquent une distinction locale¹⁵ que les mots *CELUI*, *CELLE*, *CEUX*, *CELLES* ne désignent pas; (c'est pourquoi) lorsqu'on⁴⁵ veut marquer cette distinction en français, (il faut) ajouter aux mots *CELUI*, *CELLE*, *CEUX*, *CELLES*, la particule adverbiale¹⁶ *CI* pour désigner un objet proche, et *LÀ* pour désigner un objet éloigné; ex.

N. B. *The* — this, these; that, those, (point out) — local¹⁵ which - - celui, celle, ceux, celles denote not; therefore when *we*⁴⁵ wish (to shew) that — —, (it is necessary) (to adà) (to the) — celui, celle, ceux, celles, — adverbial¹⁶ (ci, here,) to denote - object near, - (là, there,) - — — (far off); ex.

Ce cheval-CI vaut mieux que CELUI-LÀ.

This — here is better - that there.

Cette maison-LÀ est mieux située que CELLE-CI.

That - there is better situated than this here.

Ces livres-CI sont plus amusants que CEUX-LÀ.

These — here are more — than those there.

Ces rues-LÀ sont plus larges que CELLES-CI.

Those - there are broader - these here.

45. *CECI*, *CELA* se trouvent aussi dans la classe des pronoms DÉMONSTRATIFS¹⁵. Ces mots représentent le substantif *CHOSE* sous-entendu, et peuvent se tourner par *CETTE CHOSE-CI*, *CETTE CHOSE-LÀ*; ainsi quand je dis :

(*Ceci, this*;) (*cela, that*;) are found - - class (of the) — —.

CECI est bon; c'est comme si je disais, *CETTE CHOSE-CI est bonne*.

These — — — thing understood, - may be turned into this thing, that thing; so when - - : *This is good*; it is (the same) as if - said this thing - good.

CELA est mauvais; c'est à dire, *CETTE CHOSE-LÀ est mauvaise*.

That - bad; i. e. that thing - -.

DES PRONOMS INDÉFINIS.

Les pronoms INDÉFINIS sont des⁸ mots qui servent (ainsi que) les autres pronoms à désigner les objets, mais d'une manière indéterminée¹³; comme quand je dis :

ON vient; QUELQU' UN vient;

Ces mots ON, QUELQU' UN, (bien qu') ils (se rapportent) à quelque personne, ne désignent personne en particulier.

Les pronoms INDÉFINIS¹⁶ sont (en assez grand nombre,) comme on le²⁴ verra dans la seconde partie de ce traité; mais je ne parlerai ici que du pronom ON, le plus usité de tous.

46. ON désigne *quelqu' un, quelque personne*, et représente les mots ONE, WE, THEY, PEOPLE, employés dans un sens indéfini; ainsi, quand je dis: ON vient; c'est comme si je disais, QUELQU'UN vient.

47. Les Anglais ont une autre manière indéfinie¹⁶ de s²⁴ exprimer, au moyen du pronom indéfini¹⁶ IT, que les Français expriment par ON; ex.

ON dit; ON croit; ON rapporte.

48. Les expressions passives¹⁶ étant contraires au génie de la langue française, on y²⁴ supplée au moyen du pronom ON; ainsi, au lieu de dire comme les Anglais; J'AI ÉTÉ DIT que des nouvelles ONT ÉTÉ reçues; les Français disent;

ON m' a dit qu' ON a reçu des nouvelles.

Voilà ce qui rend l'usage du pronom ON si fréquent, que vous trouverez (peu de²⁴N.B.) pages où ce petit mot (ne se²⁴ présente) à vos yeux.

Remarquez que ON est toujours *nominatif* du verbe, et que, quoiqu' il représente souvent les mots WE, THEY, PEOPLE, qui sont du nombre pluriel¹⁶, il demande toujours le verbe à la troisième personne au *singulier*, comme on le²⁴ voit dans ces exemples;

ON vient; ON dit; ON croit;

ON pense; ON rapporte; ON a reçu, &c.

The — indefinite are ⁸ N.B. —
— — like other —

to denote —, but in a —

indeterminate¹⁶; as when I say:

People come; Somebody comes;

These — people, somebody, though they refer to some —, denote not (any body) in particular.

The — — are (rather numerous,) as we²⁴ it (shall see — — part of this treatise; but

I (will speak) here only (of the) - On, most used of all.

On denotes somebody, some person, - represents — — ONE, WE, THEY, PEOPLE, used - a —

—; so, when I say: one comes; it is (the same) as - said, somebody —.

The English have another way — to themselves —, (by the) means (- -)

— — IT, which the French express by On; ex.

It is said; - is believed; - is reported.

The expressions passive being contrary to the genius of — —, we them supply (by the) - (of the) - On,

so, instead of saying like — —;

I have been told that news has been received; — — say;

One - - told - - - received²⁴N.B. news.

(It is) that which renders - - (of the).

On so frequent, that you (will find) few pages (in which) this small -

(itself will not present) - - eyes.

Remark that On is always nominative (of the) —, —, though it

represents often — WE, THEY,

PEOPLE, which are (of the) — —, it requires always — in - third

— (in the) — as we it²⁴ see these —,

People come; — say, - believe; - think; — report; - have received.

CHAP. VI.

DES VERBES.

Le VERBE est un mot dont l'usage est de désigner l'existence, ou l'action des êtres qui sont le sujet de nos pensées.

The verb is — (of which) - use - to denote —, or — (of the) beings that are — of our thoughts.

L'existence; comme, JE suis, j'existe.
L'action; comme, JE parle, JE chante, JE marche, JE bois, JE mange, &c.

The —; as, I am, I exist.
—; as, I speak, I sing,
- walk, - drink, - eat, &c.

Toute action demande un agent, c'est à dire, un être pour produire cette action, et cet agent s'appelle en grammaire le nominatif du verbe.

Every — requires agent, that is to say, - being to produce —,
- this — is called in grammar - (of the) —.

Nous avons vu page 41, qu' (il y a) trois personnes, dont la première est celle qui parle; la seconde celle à qui on parle, et la troisième celle dont on parle.

We have seen - 41, that (there are) three —, (of which) - first - that who speaks; - — that to whom we speak, - - third - (of whom) - —.

49. Le verbe doit être du même nombre et de la même personne que le nominatif, et ceci s'appelle en grammaire accord du verbe avec son nominatif; ex.

The — must be (of the) same — of - same — as - —, - this is called in — agreement (of the) — with its —; ex

J'apprends; TU apprends; IL apprend; ELLE apprend.

I learn; thou learnest; he learns she learns.

MON FRÈRE apprend; MA SŒUR apprend.

- brother learns; - sister learns.

NOUS apprenons; VOUS apprenez.

- learn; - learn.

ILS OU ELLES apprennent; MES FRÈRES apprennent; MES SŒURS apprennent.

- learn; - brothers learn; - sisters learn.

Le nominatif du verbe se place tantôt avant, et tantôt après le verbe.

The — (- -) — is placed sometimes before, - — after - —.

50. Dans les phrases qui ne sont pas interrogatives, le nominatif se place avant le verbe; ex.

In - sentences which are not interrogative, - — is placed before - —; ex.

J'apprends bien; TU apprends bien;

I learn well; - learnest well;

IL apprend bien; ELLE apprend bien.

- learns -; - learns —.

MON FRÈRE apprend bien; MA SŒUR apprend bien.

— — well; - — —.

NOUS apprenons bien; VOUS apprenez bien.

- learn -; - learn well.

ILS apprennent bien; ELLES apprennent bien.

- learn -; - learn well.

MES FRÈRES apprennent bien; MES SŒURS apprennent bien.

- — — well; - — — well.

DES VERBES.

Mais quand la phrase est *interrogative*, c' est à dire, quand on fait une question, (il faut) considérer si le nominatif du verbe est un NOM ou un PRONOM.

51. Si, quand on⁴⁶ fait une *question*, le nominatif du verbe est un PRONOM *personnel*¹⁶, ou le pronom *indéfini*¹⁶ ON ou CE, ces pronoms se placent en français comme en anglais *après* le verbe; ex. *Apprends-JE* bien? Apprends-TU bien? Apprend-IL bien? Apprend-ELLE bien? Apprenons-NOUS? Apprenez-VOUS bien? Apprennent-ILS? Apprennent-ELLES bien? Que dit-ON? Est-CE là tout?*

52. Si, dans une phrase *interrogative*¹⁶, le nominatif du verbe est un NOM, on place ce nom *avant* le verbe, de même que si la phrase n'était pas interrogative; mais pour marquer qu' on fait une *question*, on ajoute après le verbe un des pronoms *personnels*¹⁶ IL, ELLE, ILS, ou ELLES, suivant le *genre* et le *nombre* du nom qui est le nominatif du verbe; ex. *Votre FRÈRE apprend-IL* bien? Votre SŒUR apprend-ELLE bien? Vos FRÈRES apprennent-ILS bien? Vos SŒURS apprennent-ELLES bien?*

CHAP. VII.

DES ADVERBES.

Nous avons vu page 55, que le verbe est un mot qui sert à exprimer une *action*; mais comme la *même action* peut se faire de *différentes*¹³ *manières*, on⁴⁶ a adopté certains mots auxquels on⁴⁶ a donné le nom d' ADVERBE, pour exprimer la manière dont se fait cette action; comme, *Je marche VITE; Tu marches LENTEMENT. Nous parlons BIEN; Vous parlez MAL.*

* When the English ask a question, they are obliged to have recourse to the signs *do, does, did*; as, *Do I learn well? Doest thou learn well? Does he learn well? Does your brother learn well? Does your sister learn well? Do we learn well? Do you learn well? Do they learn well? Do your brothers learn well? Do your sisters learn well? Did I learn well? &c.*; the French, as you see, do not require any signs, and when these signs occur in english, they must be left out in french.

DES ADVERBES.

Les mots VITE, LENTEMENT, BIEN, — fast, slowly, well,
MAL sont des⁸ ADVERBES. badly are -⁸N.B. adverbs

53. L'adverbe, étant (à l'égard du) — being (with respect to the)
verbe ce que l'adjectif est à l'égard du — what¹⁰ — is — —
nom, c'est à dire, exprimant quelque —, i. e. expressing some
circonstance du verbe, doit se placer im- — (of the) —, must be placed
médiatement après le verbe; ex. — after —; ex.
Je vis HIER votre sœur. — saw yesterday —.
Elle parle TRÈS BIEN français. — speaks very well french.
Elle aime FORT la⁷ lecture. — likes much *I* reading.

54. Les adverbes se placent souvent en — — are placed often in
anglais, indifféremment avant ou après le —, indiscriminately before or after -
verbe; comme, I OFTEN see him, or I —; as, - often - -, or -
see him OFTEN. I VERY SELDOM speak to — often. - very seldom - -
him, or I speak to him VERY SELDOM; —, or - - - - very seldom;
en français, tous ces adverbes doivent in —, all these — must
se placer après le verbe; ex. be placed after - —; ex.
Je (me promene) SOUVENT seul. — walk often alone.
Je vais RAREMENT à la ville. — go seldom to town.
Je vais TOUJOURS à la campagne. — go always into - country.

55. Les adverbes négatifs sont NE-PAS; The — negative are no, not;
NE-POINT; NE-PLUS; NE-JAMAIS; NE- no, not; no more; never; but
GUÈRE; NE-NULLEMENT; NE se place little; by no means; ne is placed
toujours avant le verbe, et PAS, POINT, — before - —, - pas, point,
PLUS, JAMAIS, GUÈRE, NULLEMENT, com- plus, jamais, guère, nullement,
me les autres adverbes, se placent im- like - other —, are placed
médiatement après le verbe; ex. immediately after - —; ex.
Je NE l²⁴ aime PAS OR POINT. — her²⁴ love not.
Je NE veux PLUS la²⁴ voir. — will no more her²⁴ see.
Je NE lui²⁴ parlerai JAMAIS. — (to her)²⁴ (will speak) never.
Je N' y²⁴ consens NULLEMENT. — (to it²⁴) consent (by no means.)
Vous N' y²⁴ avez GUÈRE pensé. — (of it) have (very little) thought.

CHAP. VIII.

DES PRÉPOSITIONS.

Les PRÉPOSITIONS sont des⁸ mots The — are -⁸N.B. words
qui servent à exprimer le rapport que which — to express - relation -
plusieurs mots de la même phrase ont several - of - same sentence have
les uns aux autres; comme quand je dis; the one (to the) other; as when I say;
Je viens DE Londres. — come from London.
Je vais À Bath AVEC ma sœur. — (am going) to — with - sister.
Je passerai CHEZ votre mère. — (will call) upon - —.
Je ne partirai pas SANS vous²⁴ voir. — will not set out without - seeing.

Les mots DE, À, AVEC, CHEZ, SANS, - - de, à, avec, chez, sans,
sont des⁸ PRÉPOSITIONS qui servent are -⁸N.B. — — —

DES PRÉPOSITIONS.

à exprimer le rapport qu' (il y a) entre le verbe qui les²⁴ précède, et le substantif qui les²⁴ suit, et à les²⁴ unir ensemble.

56. Les prépositions se placent souvent en anglais indifféremment *avant* ou *après* le substantif qu'elles régissent ; comme,

WITH *whom were you?* or, *Whom were you WITH?*
 OF *what do you speak?* or, *What do you speak OF?*

En français, les prépositions se placent toujours *avant* le mot qu'elles régissent ; ex.

AVEC *qui était-il?* DE *quoi parlez-vous?*

— - relation - (there is) between
 - - - them²⁴ precedes, - - -
 - them follows, - to - unite together

— are placed often⁵⁴
 - - indiscriminately - or -
 - - which they govern ; as,
 With whom - - ? or,
 Whom - - with ?
 Of what - - - ? or,
 What - - - of ?

In —, — are placed
 always⁵⁴ - - - which - govern ; ex.
 With whom was - ? Of what speak

CHAP. IX.

DES CONJONCTIONS.

Nous voyons page 57, que les prépositions servent à unir plusieurs mots ensemble pour en former une phrase ; les CONJONCTIONS servent à unir plusieurs phrases en une, et à exprimer le rapport qu'elles ont entre elles ; comme, quand je dis :

J'irai à la ville, s'il fait beau tems.
Nous partirons QUAND vous voudrez.
Je n'irai pas (À MOINS QUE) vous ne veniez avec moi.

Les mots SI, QUAND, À MOINS QUE sont des⁸ CONJONCTIONS.

We see - 57, that - —
 — to unite several - together,
 to (of them) form - sentence ; -
 — - to unite several
 sentences in one, - to — -
 relation which - - between them ; as
 when I say :
 - (shall go) to town, if it is fine weather
 - (shall set out) when - like.
 - (will go) not unless -
 come with me.
 - - si, quand, à moins que
 are — ⁸ N.B. —.

Vous verrez dans la dernière partie de cet ouvrage, une liste des conjonctions avec leurs différents usages.

- (will see) in - last part -
 this work, - list (of the) —
 with their various uses.

The learner having read the rules so far, must read them over again if he does not understand them well. But as he must now have some general idea of the difference in the construction, or arrangement of words in the two languages, he should try at the same time, to translate the following exercises into french. This will be the means of impressing the rules on his mind. If the exercise on each rule is found too long, he has no need to write any more than to be convinced that he understands it, and dwell only on such parts as seem to him the most difficult. If his time is not entirely taken up with these exercises, he should now peruse the verbs, that he may be able to go on without interruption when he comes to the exercises on the verbs, which he cannot write with ease or advantage before he has a general knowledge of the conjugations.

AN
INTRODUCTION
TO
FRENCH GRAMMAR

PART II.

EXERCISES

ON THE

RULES

CONTAINED IN THE FIRST PART.*

THE FRENCH LANGUAGE, as we have seen before, is like the english, composed of NINE different sorts of words, commonly known by the names of

NOUN,	PRONOUN,	PREPOSITION,
ARTICLE,	VERB,	CONJUNCTION,
ADJECTIVE,	ADVERB,	INTERJECTION.

* The rules of syntax are too *numerous*, too full of *exceptions*, and *exceptions of exceptions* to be retained, or even understood all at once by tender or slow minds. The following exercises, upon the fundamental rules only, are intended to give a general idea of the language. The learner may write them whilst he is perusing the verbs, after which he may pass to the other exercises, which include every thing that can be reduced into rules in the french language.

CHAP. I.

NOUN.

EVERY WORD is called a NOUN which names a *being*, either REAL, as *sun, moon, earth, man, house, tree*; or IDEAL, as, *god, heaven, honour, &c.*

Nouns are distinguished into *proper* and *common*.

A noun *proper*, or *proper* name, is the CHRISTIAN or FAMILY name of a PERSON; as, *John, James, Voltaire, Shakespear*: of a RIVER; as, the *Thames, the Mersey*: of a PLACE; as, *Paris, London*: of a COUNTY; as, *Middlesex, Lancashire*: of a COUNTRY; as, *England, France, &c.*

Nouns *common*, or *common* names, are the names of beings in general, of which we know several; as, *man, woman, child, house, tree, river, city, country, horse, cow, sheep, dog, &c.*

N. B. In this class are comprised the abstract names of *virtue, vice, pleasure, pain, love, desire, fear, hatred, glory, honour*, and such like.

Two things are to be considered in nouns; the *gender* and the *number*. The *gender* is the distinction between the *sexes*.

All nouns in french are either *masculine* or *feminine*.

By *masculine* is meant the *male being*; as, *man, horse, bull, dog*.

By *feminine* is meant the *female being*; as, *woman, mare, cow, bitch*.

The names of beings whose sex is unknown, and of those *inanimate* beings, called *things*, which are of the *neuter gender* in english, are either *masculine* or *feminine* in french, as custom has fixed it.*

There are *two* numbers, the *singular* and the *plural*.

A noun is *singular* when we speak of *one being only*; as, a book, *un livre*; a house, *une maison*; a tree, *un arbre*; a ship, *un navire, &c.*

A noun is *plural* when we speak of *more than one*.

N. B. The plural is generally formed in french as in english, by adding *s* to the singular; as, *des livres*, books; *des maisons*, houses; *des arbres*, trees; *des navires*, ships, &c.

Except the nouns ending in *s* or *x* in the singular, which are the same in the plural: as, *mon fils*, my son; *mes fils*, my sons; *une brebis*, a sheep; *des brebis*, sheep; *une noix*, a nut; *des noix*, nuts; *une voix*, a voice; *des voix*, voices.

Except also the nouns ending in *u*, which take *x* instead of *s* for the sign of the plural number; as, *chapeau*, hat; *chapeaux*, hats; *jeu*, game; *jeux*, games, &c.

And the nouns ending in *al, ail*, which change *l* or *il* into *ux* for the plural; as, *mal*, evil; *maux*, evils; *cheval*, horse; *chevaux*, horses; *général*, general; *généraux*, generals; *travail*, labour; *travaux*, labours.

* The gender of these nouns is known by the *termination*; rules are given in the syntax how to discriminate it; until then, in the introductory exercises, the nouns *masculine* will be marked *m.*, the *feminine* will be marked *f.*

CHAP. II.

ARTICLE.

The same noun admitting different meanings, as for example; *THE bread, THE wine; SOME bread, SOME wine; THIS bread, THAT wine; MY bread, THY bread, HIS bread; MY wine, &c.* it was necessary to adopt some signs which would fix its proper meaning.

These signs, called ARTICLE, are various, and generally receive their appellation from the office which they perform in the sentence. They are called in this treatise,

DEFINITE, that which *defines* the object; as, *THE bread, THE wine.*

PARTITIVE, that which denotes *a portion* of the object; as, *SOME bread, SOME wine.*

NUMERAL, that which *numbers* the objects; as, *A OR ONE shilling.**

DEMONSTRATIVE, that which *points out* the object; as, *THIS OR THAT bread, THESE OR THOSE clothes.*

POSSESSIVE, that which expresses the *possession* of the object; as, *MY bread, THY bread, HIS bread, HER bread, OUR bread, YOUR bread, THEIR bread; MY wine, THY wine, HIS wine, &c.**

The signs called ARTICLE, are declined in french as follows:

		SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
		1	2	3
		<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>
DEFINIT.	<i>THE;</i>	LE,	LA,	LES.
<i>Of, from</i>	<i>THE;</i>	DU,	de LA,	DES.
<i>To, at</i>	<i>THE;</i>	AU,	à LA,	AUX.
PARIT.	<i>SOME;</i>	DU,	à LA,	DES.
NUMERAL	<i>A, AN;</i>	UN,	UNE,	
DEMONS.	<i>THIS, THAT;</i>	CE,	CETTE,*	
	<i>THESE, THOSE;</i>	CES.
POSSESS.	<i>MY;</i>	MON,	MA,*	MES.
	<i>THY;</i>	TON,	TA,	TES.
	<i>HIS, HER, ITS;</i>	SON,	SA,	SES.
	<i>OUR;</i>	NOTRE,	NOTRE,	NOS.
	<i>YOUR;</i>	VOTRE,	VOTRE,	VOS.
	<i>THEIR;</i>	LEUR,	LEUR,	LEURS

* See note* page 31, to which might be added all the NUMBERS, and the words CHAQUE, *each*; TOUT, *every*; PLUSIEURS, *several*; which exclude the article from the noun, and have the same property as the words generally known by the name of ARTICLE.

ARTICLE and NOUN.

GENERAL RULES.

1 The signs called ARTICLE are never used without a NOUN after them, and they must be of the same GENDER and NUMBER as that noun; this, in grammar, is called agreement of the article with the noun; *ex.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.					
1			2			3		
Masculine.			Feminine.			Masculine and Feminine.		
<i>The</i>	LE	<i>Père.</i>	<i>the</i>	LA	<i>Mère.</i>	<i>the</i>	LES	<i>Enfants.</i>
<i>of The</i>	FATHER. DU	<i>Père.</i>	<i>of the</i>	MOTHER. de LA	<i>Mère.</i>	<i>of the</i>	CHILDREN. DES	<i>Enfants.</i>
<i>to The</i>	AU	<i>Père.</i>	<i>to the</i>	à LA	<i>Mère.</i>	<i>to the</i>	AUX	<i>Enfants.</i>
<i>A</i>	UN	<i>Père.</i>	<i>a</i>	UNE	<i>Mère.</i>			
<i>The</i>	LE	<i>Pain.</i>	<i>the</i>	LA	<i>Viande.</i>	<i>the</i>	LES	<i>Habits.</i>
<i>of The</i>	BREAD. DU	<i>Pain.</i>	<i>of the</i>	MEAT. de LA	<i>Viande.</i>	<i>of the</i>	CLOTHES. DES	<i>Habits.</i>
<i>to The</i>	AU	<i>Pain.</i>	<i>to the</i>	à LA	<i>Viande.</i>	<i>to the</i>	AUX	<i>Habits.</i>
<i>Some</i>	DU	<i>Pain.</i>	<i>some</i>	de LA	<i>Viande.</i>	<i>some</i>	DES	<i>Habits.</i>
<i>This</i>	CE	<i>Pain.</i>	<i>this</i>	CETTE	<i>Viande.</i>	<i>these</i>	CES	<i>Habits.</i>
<i>That</i>			<i>that</i>			<i>those</i>		
<i>My</i>	FATHER. MON	<i>ère.</i>	<i>my</i>	MOTHER. MA	<i>Mère.</i>	<i>my</i>	CHILDREN. MES	<i>Enfants.</i>
<i>of My</i>	FATHER. de MON	<i>ère.</i>	<i>of my</i>	MOTHER. de MA	<i>Mère.</i>	<i>of my</i>	CHILDREN. de MES	<i>Enfants.</i>
<i>to My</i>	à MON	<i>ère.</i>	<i>to my</i>	à MA	<i>Mère.</i>	<i>to my</i>	à MES	<i>Enfants.</i>
<i>My</i>	BREAD. MON	<i>Pain.</i>	<i>my</i>	MEAT. MA	<i>Viande.</i>	<i>my</i>	CLOTHES. MES	<i>Habits.</i>
<i>of My</i>	BREAD. de MON	<i>Pain.</i>	<i>of my</i>	MEAT. de MA	<i>Viande.</i>	<i>of my</i>	CLOTHES. de MES	<i>Habits.</i>
<i>to My</i>	à MON	<i>Pain.</i>	<i>to my</i>	à MA	<i>Viande.</i>	<i>to my</i>	à MES	<i>Habits.</i>
<i>Thy</i>	BREAD. TON	<i>Pain.</i>	<i>thy</i>	MEAT. TA	<i>Viande.</i>	<i>thy</i>	CLOTHES. TES	<i>Habits.</i>
<i>His</i>	BREAD. SON	<i>Pain.</i>	<i>his</i>	MEAT. SA	<i>Viande.</i>	<i>his</i>	CLOTHES. SES	<i>Habits.</i>
<i>Her</i>	BREAD. SON	<i>Pain.</i>	<i>her</i>	MEAT. SA	<i>Viande.</i>	<i>her</i>	CLOTHES. SES	<i>Habits.</i>
<i>Our</i>	NOTRE	<i>Pain.</i>	<i>our</i>	NOTRE	<i>Viande.</i>	<i>our</i>	NOS	<i>Habits.</i>
<i>Your</i>	VOTRE	<i>Pain.</i>	<i>your</i>	VOTRE	<i>Viande.</i>	<i>your</i>	VOS	<i>Habits.</i>
<i>Their</i>	LEUR	<i>Pain.</i>	<i>their</i>	LEUR	<i>Viande.</i>	<i>their</i>	LEURS	<i>Habits.</i>

EXERCISE.

The father, the mother, the children. The good nature of the father,
*père, mère, enfants. * bon naturel m.*

the tenderness of the mother, the civility of the children. Speak to the
** tendresse f. * civilité f. Parlez*

father, tell it to the mother, give it to the children. The brother, the
dites-le donnez-le frère,

* Before you prefix an article to a noun, never omit to consider,

1 Whether the noun which follows the article is *masculine* or *feminine*;

2 Whether it is *singular* or *plural*.

If the noun which follows the article is *masc. sing.* use the signs contained in the 1 column.

If the noun which follows the article is *fem. sing.* use the signs contained in the 2 column.

If the noun which follows the article is *plural*, whether *masculine* or *feminine*, use the signs contained in the 3 column.

† Observe also, that if the noun is *singular* in *english*, it must be *singular* in *french*, and if it is *plural* in *english*, it must be made *plural* in *french*, agreeably to the rules, page 60.

ARTICLE and NOUN.

sister, *the* cousins. *The* complaisance of *the* brother, *the* modesty
sœur, *cousins.* * *complaisance* f. * *modestie* f
of *the* sister, *the* kindness of *the* cousins. *The* horse, *the* cow, *the*
* *bonté* f. *cheval,* *vache,*
dogs. *The* bridle of *the* horse, *the* horns of *the* cow, *the* ears of *the*
chiens. * *bride* f. *cornes* *oreilles*
dogs. Bring it to *the* horse, give it to *the* cow, leave it to *the* dogs.
Apportez-le *donnez-le* *laissez-le*
The nose, *the* mouth, *the* eyes. *The* tip of *the* nose, *the* size of
* *nez,* m. *bouche,* f. *yeux.* * *bout* m. *grandeur* f.
the mouth, *the* beauty of *the* eyes. A glass, a spoon, a knife, a
becuté f. * *verre,* m. *cuiller,* f. *couteau,* m.
fork. Some wine, some beer, some glasses. *This* dinner, *this*
fourchette. f. * *vin,* m. *bière,* f. * *dîner,* m.
table, *these* dishes. *That* cheese, *that* bottle, *those* apples. *My* arm,
table, f. *plats.* *fromage,* m. *bouteille,* f. *pommes.* † *bras,* m.
my hand, *my* feet. *His* hat, *his* shirt, *his* stockings. *Her* apron,
* *main,* f. * *pieds.* † *chapeau,* m. * *chemise,* f. * *bas.* * *tablier,* m.
her gown, *her* scissors. *Our* garden, *our* house, *our* fields. *Your*
* *robe,* f. * *ciseaux.* *jardin,* m. *maison,* f. *champs.*
umbrella, *your* watch, *your* gloves. *Their* coach, *their* servants.
parapluie, m. *montre,* f. *gants.* *carrosse,* m. *domestiques.*

If the noun which follows the article is SINGULAR, and begins with a ²
VOWEL, or H mute, † whether it is MASCULINE or FEMININE, use

L'	LE,	LA ; as,	The	L'	Enfant.	m.	L'	Histoire.	f.
de L'	DU,	de LA ;	of The	de L'	Enfant.		de L'	Histoire.	
à L'	AU,	à LA ;	to The	à L'	Enfant.		à L'	Histoire.	
CET	CE ;	This or That	HISTORY.	CET	Enfant.		CETTE	Histoire.	
MON	MA ;	My		MON	Enfant		MON	Histoire.	
TON	TA ;	Thy		TON	Enfant.		TON	Histoire.	
SON	SA :	His or Her		SON	Enfant.		SON	Histoire.	

EXERCISE.

The air. *The* water. *My* slate. *Her* writing. *His* school. *Her*
² *air.* ² *eau.* ² *ardoise.* ² *écriture.* ² *école.* ²
school. *This* man. *That* child. *This* tree. *That* bird. *The* ornament
² *'homme.* *enfant.* *arbre.* *oiseau.* *ornement*
of *the* mind. *The* history of *the* year. *The* wing of *the* bird. *He*
esprit. ² *'histoire* *année.* *aile* *Il*
sacrificed *his* honour to *the* interest of *the* state. *She* has lost *the*
sacrificé *'honneur* *intérêt* *état.* *Elle a perdu*
affection of *her* friend. *Her* obstinacy is *the* cause of *his* inconstancy.
affection ² *ami.* *opiniâtreté* *est* ¹ *cause* f. *inconstance.*

* See note * page 62. † See note * page 33.

‡ The h mute is marked in these exercises with an apostrophe, this mark ' , before it.

ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

3 *The signs called ARTICLE must be repeated before every noun in french agreeably to the gender and number of each noun, though the nouns are in the same sentence, and though the article is not repeated in english; as,*

The father, mother and children are (gone out.)

LE père, LA mère et LES enfants sont sortis, i. e. *the father, the &c.*

Some bread, meat, money and clothes.

Du pain, de LA viande, de L'argent et DES habits, i. e. *some bread, &c.*

EXERCISE.

Bring *the* bread and butter^s; *the* tea and coffee^s; *some* milk or
 Apportez ¹ pain m. et beurre; m. thé m. café; m. ¹ lait m. ou
 cream^s; *a* cup and saucer^s; *a* knife and fork^s; *some* bread and
 crème; f. tasse f. soucoupe; f. couteau m. fourchette; f.
 cheese^s; *the* dishes and plates^s; *the* beans and bacon^s; *the* pepper
 fromage; m. ¹ plat † assiette; † fève † lard; m. poivre m.
 and salt^s. *My* brother and sister^s are (gone out.) *His* father and
 sel. m. ¹ frère saur sont sortis. —*
 mother^s are dead. She has lost *her* friends and relations^s.
 sont morts. Elle a perdu ami † parent. †

PARTICULAR RULES.

4 *The names of PERSONS and PLACES are used in french, as in english, without article; ex.*

I like	Voltaire,	J'aime	Voltaire,
	London.		Londres.
I speak of	Voltaire,	Je parle DE	Voltaire,
	of London.		DE Londres.
I prefer it to	Voltaire,	Je le préfère À	Voltaire,
	to London.		À Londres.

Observe that DE and À which are prefixed to Voltaire, Londres, are not articles; they are prepositions used to unite the noun to the verb.

EXERCISE.

I have read almost all *the*¹ works of Voltaire and 'Rousseau.
 J'ai lu presque toutes œuvres ¹ (a)
 I am reading now *the*¹ adventures of Telemachus the son of Ulysses
 Je —* lis à présent aventures Télémaque —* fils † Ulysse
 and Penelope. Have you ever been in London? Yes, I have, i. e., been.
 (a) Pénélope. Avez - vous jamais été à Oui, j'y ai été
 Is it as large as Paris? London is much larger than Paris.
 Est-il aussi grand que est beaucoup plus grand que
 London is *the*¹ largest city in Europe. Have you seen Naples? No;
 plus grande ville f. de l' vu Non;
 I have been at Florence and Rome, but I have not⁵⁵ been at Naples.
 ai été à (a) mais je n'ai pas été

* A dash, this mark (—), under a word shews that the word is not expressed in french agreeably to rules which will be seen in the last part of this work.

† See note † page 62.

(a) The preposition must be repeated before every noun in french, in the same way as the article.
 † See note * page 29

ARTICLE and NOUN.

But the names of COUNTRIES and PROVINCES which are used without an article in english, require in french one of the signs LE, LA, LES; DU, de LA, DES; AU, à LA, AUX, agreeably to the gender and number of the noun; as,

I like	Portugal,	J'aime	LE Portugal,
	France,		LA France,
	England.		L' Angleterre.
I speak of	Portugal,	Je parle	DU Portugal,
	of France, &c.		de LA France, &c.
I prefer it to	Portugal,	Je le préfère	AU Portugal,
	to France, &c.		à LA France, &c.

EXERCISE.

Italy⁵ is the garden of Europe⁵. France⁵ is also a fine country; ²Italie* est jardin m. ²Europe.† France f. est aussi beau pays; m.
 it lies between Spain⁵, Italy, Switzerland, Germany⁵, Holland⁵,
 elle (est située) entre Espagne, ⁵ Suisse, f. ⁵ Allemagne, Hollande, f.
 and England⁵. Spain, with all the gold of Mexico⁵ and Peru⁵, is
 et Angleterre. ⁵ avec tout ² or ⁵ Méridique m. (a) Pérou, m. n'est
 not⁵⁵ so rich as France. Brazil⁵ belongs to Portugal, Mexico to
 pas si riche que ⁵ Brésil m. appartient ⁵ m. ⁵
 Spain, Canada⁵ to England, Martinique⁵ and Guadeloupe⁵ to France.
⁵ Canada m. ⁵ Martinique f. Guadeloupe f. ⁵

Observe however that the names of COUNTRIES are used without the article in french, when they come after verbs denoting dwelling or movement, such as TO BE IN, TO LIVE IN, TO GO TO, TO COME FROM; In these instances, IN, TO are expressed by EN, and FROM by DE; as,

He is	in	France.	Il est	EN	France,
	in	England.		EN	Angleterre.
He is going to	France,	Il va	EN	France,	
	to	England.		EN	Angleterre.
He comes	from	France,	Il vient	DE	France,
	from	England.		D'	Angleterre.

EXERCISE.

My brother lives in Switzerland and my sister in France. I intend
 demeure ⁶ ⁶ J' (ai dessein)
 to go to France and Italy, (as soon) as the war is over. I come
 d' aller ⁶ ⁶ (a) aussitôt que ¹ guerre f. sera finie. Je viens
 from Portugal, and I (am going) to Holland and England. Have you
⁶ Je vais ⁶ ⁶ (a) Avez - vous
 ever been to Spain? No; I (am going) to Turkey and to Greece,
 jamais été ⁶ Non; Je vais ⁶ Turquie ⁶ Grèce,
 whence I (will pass) into Spain. I would rather go to Italy.
 (d' où) je passerai en ⁶ J' aimerais mieux aller ⁶

* The figures at the top of the words or under the words, indicate the number of the paragraph where the rule concerning that word is to be found; if you do not perfectly recollect the rule, never omit to look for it, and read it every time with the example.

† The parts of the world follow the same rules as the names of countries.

ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

THE; LE, LA, LES, DU, de LA, DES; AU, à LA, AUX.

7 All common names used in a GENERAL sense; as, BREAD is good; or in a PARTICULAR sense; as, the BREAD which I eat is good, must have before them one of the definite signs LE, LA, LES; DU, de LA, DES; AU, à LA, AUX, agreeably to the gender and number of the noun; ex.

GENERAL sense, no article in english before the noun.

I like bread,	J'aime LE pain,
meat,	LA viande,
money,	L' argent,
clothes.	LES habits.

I speak of bread,	Je parle DU pain,
of meat, of clothes.	de LA viande, DES habits.

I prefer it to bread, to meat, &c. Je le préfère AU pain, à LA viande, &c.

PARTICULAR sense, in english THE before the noun.

I like the bread	} I have.	J'aime LE pain	} que j'ai.
the meat		LA viande	
the money		L' argent	
the clothes		LES habits	

I speak of the bread & meat I have. Je parle DU pain et de LA viande que j'ai.
I prefer it to the bread & meat he has. Je le préfère AU pain et à LA viande qu'il a.

EXERCISE.

Gold⁷ and silver⁷ are precious, but ⁷iron and steel⁷ are more useful.
²or * ²argent sont précieux, mais ⁷fer m. ²acier sont plus utiles.

The gold and silver of Peru are purer¹⁸ than that of ⁵Europe.
³ Pérou m. sont (plus purs) que celui ²

Modesty⁷ and virtue are preferable to beauty and ⁷riches. I prefer
¹ modestie f. ³vertu f. sont préférables ⁷beauté f. (a)richesse. Je préfère
the modesty and virtue of your sister, to the beauty and ³riches of your
¹ ³ de ¹ (a)

cousin. Peace⁷ and plenty⁷ make men⁷ happy. (Let us preserve) the
¹ cousine. ¹paix f. ²abondance rendent hommes heureux. ¹conservons

peace and plenty which we enjoy. Patience and perseverance are
³ dont nous jouissons. ⁷patience f. ⁷persévérance f. sont

necessary to happiness. I admire the patience and perseverance of
¹ nécessaires ⁷bonheur. m. J'admire ¹ f. ³ f.

your brother. Pride⁷ and vanity are generally the cause of the mis-
²orgueil ⁷vanité f. ordinairement ¹ cause f. ¹ mal-

fortunes of men. (Let us go) into the garden to see if the fruit is
¹heur ⁷homme. allons dans ¹ jardin m. — voir si ¹ fruit m. est

ripe. Which fruit do you⁵¹ like best? Gooseberries or strawber-
¹mir. Quel — aimez - vous le mieux? ⁷groseille ou ⁷fraise?

ries? I do not⁵⁵ like gooseberries; I like cherries and peaches.
Je — n' aime pas ⁷ J' aime ⁷cerise ⁷pêche.

Children generally like fruit. I prefer milk⁷ and cheese to fruit.
¹enfant ⁷ en général aiment ⁷ Je préfère lait m. ⁷fromage m. ⁷

* The figures annexed to the words indicate the rule which that word requires.

ARTICLE and NOUN.

OF expressed by DE ; not by du, de la, des.

Observe that the preposition OF before a noun used in a GENERAL sense, preceded by another noun, used in a PARTITIVE sense, cannot be expressed by du, de la, des, which would render the expression particular and mean OF THE, it must be expressed by DE only, without any regard to gender or number ; as,

He gave me a pound of bread,	Il me donna une livre	DE pain,
a piece of meat,	un morceau	DE viande,
a bag of money,	un sac	D'* argent,
a heap of clothes.	un tas	D' habits.

Not, Une livre DU pain ; Un morceau de LA viande, &c. which would mean a pound of the bread ; a piece of the meat, &c.

N. B. In this rule must be included the following words, which, though they have no sign after them in english, require the connective particle DE to unite them to the noun which follows them :

ASSEZ, enough ;	as,	assez	DE pain.
BEAUCOUP, much, many ;		beaucoup	DE viande.
COMBIEN, how much, how many ;		combien	D' argent.
TANT, so much, so many ;		tant	D' habits.
AUTANT, as much, as many ;		autant	DE pain.
PLUS, more ;		plus	DE viande.
MOINS, less ;		moins	D' argent.
TROP, too much, too many ;		trop	D' habits.
PEU,	} little, few ;	peu	DE pain.
GUÈRE, †		guère	DE viande.
PAS, POINT, no, not ;		pas, or point,	D' argent.
JAMAIS, never ;		jamais	D' habits.

Not, assez DU pain, &c., which would mean enough of the bread, &c.

EXERCISE.

I have bought a pair of boots, and two pairs of shoes. Drink a
J'ai acheté ¹ paire f. ² botte, deux ³ soulier. Buvez ⁴
 glass of wine. Have a little patience⁵. This is (a day) of rest.
verre m vin. Ayez un peu N.B. C' est (aujourd'hui jour)⁶ repos.
 I have many things⁷ to do. I have no money⁸, and I have very
beaucoup chose^{N.B.} à faire. Je n'ai pas argent^{N.B.} j' ai très
 few friends⁹. You have more property¹⁰ than I have. I have not¹¹
peu ami. N.B. avez plus bien ^{N.B.} que moi — Je n'ai pas
 (so many) friends¹² as you. Your friends have (as much) interest¹³ as
tant N.B. que ont autant crédit ^{N.B.} que
 mine. Give me little wine¹⁴ and much water¹⁵. You give me¹⁶
les miens. Donnez-moi peu N.B. eau. N.B. Vous me¹⁷ donnez
 (too much) wine¹⁸ ; you do not¹⁹ give me²⁰ water enough²¹. I never
trop N.B. vous — ne me²² donnez pas assez. N.B. Je ne²³
 drink wine²⁴ without putting a (good deal) of water²⁵ (into it²⁶).
bois jamais N.B. sans y²⁷ mettre — beaucoup N.B. —.

* See note * p. 23. † Observe that GUÈRE is used only in negative sentences.

9 If you want to express only a part of the substance of which you are speaking; as **SOME BREAD, SOME MEAT, &c.** use before the noun one of the *partitive signs* **DU, de LA, DES,** agreeably to gender and number. These signs are the same as those of the *definite article* **OF THE;** as,

He gave me some bread,	<i>Il me donna</i> DU pain,
some meat,	de LA viande,
some money,	de L' argent,
some clothes.	DES habits.

i. e. a portion of the bread, of the meat, of the money, of the clothes.

N. B. The sign **SOME** is often understood in english, before such nouns as bread, meat, money, &c., but the sign which represents it in french, cannot be omitted; and it must be repeated before every noun; as,

He gave me bread, meat, money, clothes; *i. e.* some bread, some meat.
Il me donna **DU** pain, de **LA** viande, de **L'** argent, **DES** habits.

EXERCISE.

The dinner is on the table. Will you have meat^{N.B.} or fish^{N.B.}?
dîner m. est sur *f. Voulez-vous — viande f. ou poisson m.?*

Will you have *some* beef and cabbage; *some* mutton and turnips? I
— *beuf m. ³choux; plur. mouton m. ³navet? Je*

(shall eat) *some* fish and potatoes. Bring me *some* salt and pepper.
mangerai ³(pommes de terre.) Apportez-moi sel m. ³poivre. m.

What will you drink? Will you have beer⁹, or cider⁹? I (will drink)
Que voulez-vous boire? — bière, f. ou cidre m.? Je boirai

some wine and water³. Put *some* bread and cheese, on the table.
vin m. ²eau. Mettez pain m. ³fromage, m. sur f.

Except. **SOME, ANY** expressed by **DE;** not by **du, de la, des.**

10 The *partitive signs* **DU, de LA, DES,** require the noun immediately after them; therefore if a noun used in a *partitive sense* is preceded by an **ADJECTIVE,** use **DE** before that adjective, for both genders and numbers, instead of **du, de la, des,** before the noun; as,

He gave me very good bread,	<i>Il me donna</i> DE très bon pain,
excellent meat,	D' excellente viande,
fine clothes.	DE beaux habits.

EXERCISE.

(This is) ¹⁰excellent wine, but (that is) ¹⁰very bad beer. Have you any
Voici excellent vin, mais voilà très mauvaise bière. Avez-vous ¹⁰

good beer in France? No; but we have ¹⁰good wine and good brandy.
bonne bière en Non; nous avons bon ¹⁰bonne (eau de vie.)

Good small beer is better than bad wine. You must have fine
¹⁰bonne petite bière est meilleure que ¹⁰mauvais devez avoir ¹⁰beau

fruit in France. Yes; we have very fine fruit. (Are there) any large trees
en Oui; avons ¹⁰très beau Y a-t-il ¹⁰grands arbre

in your garden? No; (There are only) young trees. Have you not
dans ¹jardin? Non; (il n'y a que) ¹⁰jeunes N'avez-vous pas

better pens to lend me? I have good pens, but bad¹⁰ ink.
¹⁰meilleures plume à me²⁴ prêter ²⁴? J'ai ¹⁰bonnes mais mauvaise encre,

ARTICLE and NOUN.

How to place TWO NOUNS together.

When TWO NOUNS come together, the French always place first the noun which is the subject of discourse, with DU, de LA, DES, DE, or À, before the second noun, agreeably to the sense in which it is used; as,

Peter's book,	Le livre DE Pierre.	} DE, 4th rule, PRO- per names.
i. e. the book of Peter.		
Some London beer,	De la bière DE Londres.	} DU, de LA, 7th rule, particular sense.
i. e. Some beer of London.		
The master's pen,	La plume DU maître.	} DU, de LA, 7th rule, particular sense.
i. e. the pen of the master.		
The street door,	La porte de LA rue.	} DE, OF, 8th rule, general sense.
i. e. the door of the street.		
A gold watch,	Une montre D' or.	} DE, OF, 8th rule, general sense.
i. e. a watch of gold.		
Some silk stockings,	Des bas DE soie.	} DE, OF, 8th rule, general sense.
i. e. Some stockings of silk.		

EXERCISE.

Where is William's⁴ hat? Have you seen Mary's⁴ apron?
 Où est Guillaume chapeau m.? Avez-vous vu Marie tablier m.?

Will you drink a glass of Port⁴ wine⁸? Nature's⁷ voice⁷ proclaims
 Voulez-vous boire verre m. vin? Nature f. voix f. proclame

god's⁴ power⁷. Ignorance⁷ is the mother of error⁷. Have you seen my
 dieu pouvoir. m. Ignorance mère erreur. vu

father's horse⁷? I (will wait for you²⁴) at the garden gate⁷, or (at the)
 cheval? Je (vous²⁴ attendrai) à jardin m. porte, f. ou au

corner of my sister's house⁷. Shut the kitchen door⁷, and open the
 coin m. maison. f. Fermez cuisine f. porte, f. ouvrez

parlour⁷ window. Bring my gold⁸ watch, and clean my silver⁸ buckles.
 salle f. fenêtre. f. Apportez¹ or montre, f. nettoyez¹ argent boucle.

Sometimes however the order of the words could not be changed in
 english in the above manner, without changing also their meaning; for
 ex. A WINE glass, AN INK bottle, A TEA spoon, could not be changed into
 A glass of WINE, A bottle of INK, A spoon of TEA; yet the nouns require
 this order in french; but instead of DE between the two nouns, we use À.

N. B. This is done when the first noun denotes the use of the other; as,

A wine glass, i. e. a glass used for wine. Un verre à vin.
 A tea spoon, i. e. a spoon used for tea. Une cuiller à thé.

EXERCISE.

Give me the wine¹² bottle, and the water¹² pot. Put some wine¹²
 Donnez-moi vin bouteille, f. eau pot. m. Mettez

glasses on the table. Bring the tea¹² board and the coffee¹² cups.
 verre sur table. f. Apportez thé cabaret m. café tasse.

There is no powder⁸ in my powder¹² bag. (Let us go) and sit
 Il n'y a pas poudre^{N.B.} dans sac. m. Allons — (nous asseoir)

in the dining¹² room. Have you any fire¹² arms in your house?
 dans dîner chambre. f. Avez feu arme maison f.?

ADJECTIVE.

AN ADJECTIVE is a word joined to a noun, to denote some *quality* or *circumstance* belonging to that noun; as, *good* BREAD, *bad* MEAT, &c.

13 The ADJECTIVE must be of the same GENDER and NUMBER as the noun which it qualifies.

An adjective is made feminine by adding E mute to the masculine; as,
 (That is) a pretty boy. *Voilà un JOLI garçon.*
 (This is) a pretty girl. *Voici une JOLIE fille.*
 He is well dressed. *Il est bien HABILLÉ.*
 She is very well dressed. *Elle est très bien HABILLÉE.*

Except the adjectives ending in E mute, which are of both genders; as,
 Un JEUNE homme AIMABLE. An amiable young man.
 Une JEUNE femme AIMABLE. An amiable young woman.

And the adjectives in X, which change X into SE for the feminine; as,
 Mon frère est PARESSEUX. My brother is lazy
 Ma sœur est PARESSEUSE. My sister is lazy.

The PLURAL number of adjectives is formed like that of nouns, by adding S or X to the singular; see nouns, page 60. ex.

Une JOLIE fille. A pretty girl. Un BEAU chapeau. A fine hat.
 De JOLIES filles. Pretty girls. De BEAUX chapeaux. Fine hats.

N. B. A past PARTICIPLE used to qualify a NOUN, or coming after the verb to BE to express an action or the state of the NOUN, follows the same rules as an adjective; ex.

My brother is gone out. *Mon frère est SORTI.*
 My sister is gone out. *Ma sœur est SORTIE.*

EXERCISE.

Your brother is *diligent*; your sister is *diligent*¹³; your brothers are
 est *diligent*; * 1 sont
*diligent*¹³; your sisters are *diligent*¹³. Your father is *esteemed*; your mo-
 * 1 * estimé;
 ther is *esteemed*¹³; your sons are *esteemed*; your daughters are *esteemed*.
 * 1 fils 13* 1 fille 13*
 That boy is very *civil*; that girl is very *civil*; these gentlemen are
 1 très civil; 1 * 1 messieurs
 very *civil*; these ladies are very *civil*¹³. Our man servant is *lazy*; *
 * 1 dame * valet paresseux;
 our maid servant is *lazy*¹³; our men servants are *lazy*¹³; our maid servants
 — servante * 1 — * 1 —
 are *lazy*¹³. My son is very *young*; my daughter is very *young*; my
 * très jeune; 1
 sons are very *young*; my daughters are very *young*. Your cousin is
 * 1 cousine f.
 very *amiable*; she is *officious*¹³ and *complaisant*¹³.
 aimable; elle officieux* complaisant.*

* The masculine singular only of adjectives is here given; the learner must make the adjective of the gender and number which the noun requires, agreeably to the above rules.

ADJECTIVE.

If an adjective qualifies SEVERAL nouns SINGULAR of the SAME gender, that adjective must be of the SAME gender as those nouns, and PLURAL, as Her father and her uncle are angry. *Son père et son oncle sont FÂCHÉS.* Her mother and her aunt are angry. *Sa mère et sa tante sont FÂCHÉES.*

But if the nouns are of DIFFERENT genders, the adjective must be of the MASCULINE gender, and in the PLURAL number; as, Her father and mother are angry. *Son père et sa mère sont FÂCHÉS.*

EXERCISE.

My mother and sister are ready. His daughter and his niece are civil and obliging. Her son and daughter are dead. The horse and the cow have escaped. The gate and the door were open. The man and the woman were gone. I found a glass and a bottle broken.

1 *et* *3* *sont prêt.* *14* *1* *fille* *nièce*
civil *and obliging.* *Her son and daughter are dead.* *The horse and*
*civil*¹⁴ *obligeant.*¹⁴ *1* *fil*³ *mort.** *cheval*
*the cow have escaped.*¹⁵ *The gate and the door were open.*¹⁴ *The*
*vache (se sont) échappé.** *1* *barrière f.* *porte f. étaient ouvert.**
man and the woman were gone. *I found a glass and a bottle broken.*
étaient parti.* *Je trouvai* *verre m.* *bouteille f. cassé.**

Adjectives are generally placed in english BEFORE the NOUN; in french they are placed AFTER the NOUN; as,

A red coat. A round table. A new house.
 Un habit ROUGE. Une table RONDE. Une maison NEUVE.

Except these adjectives, which are generally placed BEFORE the NOUN; 17

PREMIER, 1st; SECOND, 2d; and all the adjectives of NUMBER.

BEAU, BEL, m. } fine,	MAUVAIS, bad.	
BELLE, fem. } handsome.	MÉCHANT, wicked.	
BON, m. BONNE, f. good.	MEILLEUR, better.	
GRAND, great, large.	MOINDRE, less.	
GROS, m. GROSSE, f. big.	PETIT, little, small.	
JEUNE, young.	TOUT, all, whole.	
JOLI, pretty.	VIEUX, m. VIEILLE, f. old; †	
A good husband.	A handsome woman.	A pretty little bird.
Un BON mari.	Une BELLE femme.	Un JOLI PETIT oiseau.

EXERCISE.

England is a fruitful country. The english¹⁶ nation has made several useful¹⁶ discoveries. Your sister is a charming¹⁶ woman. She has the most engaging¹⁶ manners.⁷ Does she⁵¹ know the french¹⁶ language?[?]

5 *Angleterre est* *1* *fertile*¹⁶ *pays. m.* *1* *anglais*¹³ *nation f. a fait* *plusieurs*[†]
*utile*¹³ *découverte.* *est* *1* *charmant*¹³ *femme.* *Elle a* *1*
*plus engageant*¹³ *manières. f.* — *sait - elle*⁵¹ *1* *français*¹³ *langue f. ?*
 I have met her near the white¹⁶ house. She lives in a small¹⁷
Je ¹²³ *ai* *rencontrée* ²³ *(près de)* *1* *blanche maison. f.* *demeure dans* ¹³
 house in a large garden. It is an old¹⁷ house, and (there is) a bad¹⁷ road
maison f. *1* ¹⁷ *jardin. m.* *C' est* *1* *vieille* *il y a* *chemin m.*
 to go (to it) but it is the best¹⁷ situation in this neighbourhood.
*pour y*²⁴ *aller* ²⁴ *mais c' est* *1* *meilleu*¹³ *f. dans* *1* *voisinage. m.*

* A participle used to qualify a noun, follows the same rule as an adjective; 13^r N^B.

† Add to them MÊME, same, and PLUSIEURS, several, which also come before the noun.

ADJECTIVE.

COMPARISON of ADJECTIVES.

The same words which serve to *qualify* nouns, serve also by the means of *certain* ADVERBS to COMPARE their qualities.

18 The comparative of SUPERIORITY, MORE before the adjective, or R or ER added to it, is formed in french by PLUS* before the adjective; as,
I am more strong, or stronger than you. *Je suis PLUS fort QUE vous.*

19 The comparative of INFERIORITY, LESS, or NOT SO before the adjective, is formed by MOINS†, or PAS SI before the adjective; as,
I am less strong than you. *Je suis MOINS fort QUE vous.*
I am not so strong as you. *Je ne suis PAS SI fort QUE vous.*

20 The comparative of EQUALITY, formed by AS before the adjective is formed in french by AUSSI before the adjective; as,
I am as strong as you. *Je suis AUSSI fort QUE vous.*

21 The superlative MOST or LEAST before the adjective, or ST or EST added to it, is formed by adding LE, LA, LES, to the comparative words PLUS, MOINS, agreeably to the gender and number of the noun; as,
My brother is the strongest. *Mon frère est LE PLUS fort.*
My sister is the least strong. *Ma sœur est LA MOINS forte.*

EXERCISE.

The country is more pleasant than the town. My horse is younger
¹ campagne f. est ¹⁸ agréable que ¹ ville. f. ¹ cheval ^{jeune} ¹⁸
and runs faster than yours. That¹ house is larger¹⁸ and more
court vite ¹⁸ le vôtre. maison-là f. grand ¹³ ¹⁹
convenient than this⁴⁴, but this⁴⁴ is better built. You write better
commode celle-ci, celle-ci (b) bâti.¹³ écrivez (b)
than I do, because you have ¹⁰better pens. Vice⁷ is less dangerous
moi —, parceque (b) plume. f. Vice m. ¹⁹ dangereux
than hypocrisy⁷. She is not so handsome as her sister, but she is more
²hypocrisie. Elle n'est pas ¹⁹ belle ¹⁹ sœur, elle est
amiable. She is as rich as you. She is the handsomest woman in
aimable. ²⁰ riche ²⁰ ¹ belle ²¹ (c)
the town. Her father is the proudest²¹ man that I have ever known.
ville. f. orgueilleux¹⁶ que aie (d) jamais connu.

* Except MEILLEUR, better; PIRE, worse; adjectives, } which are comparative of
MIEUX, better; PIS, worse; adverbs, } themselves.

† Except MOINDRE, less; adjective, }

(b) Beginners are apt to mistake the words MEILLEUR & MIEUX, which are both expressed by BETTER.

MEILLEUR, better, is the comparative of BON, good, an adjective, and is added to nouns; as,

My pen is good, yours is better. *Ma plume est BONNE, la vôtre est MEILLEURE.*
MIEUX, better, is the comparative of BIEN, well, an adverb, and is added to verbs; as,
I write well, but you write better. *J' écris BIEN, mais vous écrivez MIEUX.*

(c) IN, after a superlative, is expressed in french in the same manner as OF; ex.
She is the finest woman in the town. *C' est la plus belle femme de LA ville.*

(d) QUI, QUE, DONT, after a superlative require the verb in the subjunctive; as,
She is the finest woman I have ever seen. *C' est la plus belle femme que j' AIE jamais vue.*

CHAP. V.
PRONOUN.

A PRONOUN is a word used to *represent* a NOUN; as when I say, I, instead of naming my *own name*, THOU, YOU, HE, SHE, IT, THEY, instead of naming that of *another being*.

There are various sorts of pronouns, generally known by the names of PERSONAL, RELATIVE, POSSESSIVE, DEMONSTRATIVE, INDEFINITE.

OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS are either *agents* or *nominatives* of VERBS, or they are *objects*.

The *nominat.* are, I, THOU, HE, SHE, IT, WE, YE, YOU, THEY.
The *objects* are, ME, THEE, HIM, HER, IT, US, YOU, THEM.

OF AGENTS or NOMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

When I, THOU, HE, SHE, IT, WE, YOU, THEY, are the nominative of a verb, i. e. when there is before or after them, a verb of the same number and person that agrees with them, they are, 22

I.	JE.	HE, IT.	IL.
THOU.	TU.	THEY, mas.	ILS.
WE.	NOUS.	SHE, IT.	ELLE.
YOU.	VOUS.	THEY, fem.	ELLES.

N. B. The nominative pronouns keep the same place in the sentence in french as in english; ex.

I have. *thou* hast. *he* has, &c. have I? hast *thou*? has *he*? &c.
J'ai. TU as. IL a, &c. Ai-JE? AS-TU? A-t-IL? &c.

EXERCISE.

I speak. *Thou* writest. *He* plays. *She* sings. *We* walk. *You* dance.
parle. *écris.* *joue.* *chante.* *marchons.* *dansez.*
They study. Have *you* done? Is *he* come? Are *they* gone?
étudiant. *Avez fini?* *Est venu?* *Sont partis?*

If I, THOU, HE, SHE, WE, YOU, THEY, have not a verb to agree with them, or if they are joined to another substantive,* they are, 23

I.	MOI.	HE.	LUI.
THOU.	TOI.	THEY, mas.	EUX.
WE.	NOUS.	SHE, IT.	ELLE.
YOU.	VOUS.	THEY, fem.	ELLES. ex.

It is I who have done that. C'est MOI qui ai fait cela.
He and I have done that. LUI et MOI nous avons fait cela.
You and they have done that. VOUS et EUX vous avez fait cela.

EXERCISE.

Who has done that? It is not⁵⁵ I; it is *he*. It was neither
Qui a fait cela? *Ce n'est pas* ²³ *c' est* ²³ *Ce n'était ni*
he nor I, it was either *you* or *they*. *He* and *I* were together.
²³ *ni* ²³ *c' était* *ou* ²³ ²³ ²³ (*nous étions*) *ensemble.*
I can do that better than *he*. You can not do it²⁴ better than I.
²² *puis faire cela* (b) *que* ²³ *ne pouvez pas* *le*²⁴ *faire* (b) ²³

* By substantive is meant here every word which either names or represents a substance

AN INTRODUCTION

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

OF OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

A TABLE shewing how the OBJECTIVE pronouns are expressed, according to the PLACE which they keep with the VERB.

		Before the verb. 24, 25, 27, rules.	After the verb. 26 rule.	After a preposition. 28 rule.
ME,	}	ME.	MOI.	MOI.
to ME.				
THEE,	}	TE.	TOI.	TOI
to THEE.				
HIMSELF, HERSELF, ITSELF, THEMSELVES.	}	SE.		SOI.
		Whether before or after the verb, 24, 25, 26, 27 rules.		
US,	}	NOUS.		NOUS.
to US.				
YOU,	}	VOUS.		VOUS
to YOU.				
HIM, IT; mas.	}	LE.		LUI.
HER, IT; fem.				
THEM.		LES.		{ EUX, m. ELLES, f.
to HIM, to HER.	}	LUI.		
to THEM.				
of, from, for, with	{ IT, THEM.	}	EN.	
to, at, in, by	{ IT, THEM.			
		Y. (e)		

This table shews in one point of view all the rules concerning the OBJECTIVE pronouns.

These pronouns, as you see in the table above, are sometimes governed by verbs, and sometimes by prepositions.

When the objective pronouns are governed by a verb, they are placed invariably before that verb. See rules 24, 25 and 27.

Except when the verb commands, for then the pronouns must be placed after the verb, and MOI, TOI must be used, instead of ME, TE. See rule 26.

If the pronouns are governed by a preposition, they are then independent of the verb, and must be placed after the preposition. See rule 28.

(e) EN, Y, are also adverbs of place, used, EN for THENCE; Y for THERE, THITHER, and they follow the same rules as the pronouns.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

The ORDER which the OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS keep with the VERB.

GENERAL RULE.

24

When the PRONOUNS ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER, IT, THEM, are governed by a verb, the pronouns ME, TE, NOUS, VOUS, LE, LA, LES, LUI, LEUR, EN, Y, which represent them, must be placed immediately BEFORE that verb; ex.

He sees <i>me</i> .	<i>Il ME voit.</i>	literally he <i>me</i>	} sees.
<i>thee</i> .	<i>Il TE voit.</i>	he <i>thee</i>	
<i>us</i> .	<i>Il NOUS voit.</i>	he <i>us</i>	
<i>you</i> .	<i>Il VOUS voit.</i>	he <i>you</i>	
<i>him, or it</i> .	<i>Il LE voit.</i>	he <i>him, or it</i>	
<i>her, or it</i> .	<i>Il LA voit.</i>	he <i>her, or it</i>	
<i>them</i> .	<i>Il LES voit.</i>	he <i>them</i>	} sees he?
Does he see <i>me</i> ?	ME <i>voit-il?</i>	<i>me</i>	
<i>thee</i> ?	TE <i>voit-il?</i>	<i>thee</i>	
<i>us</i> ?	NOUS <i>voit-il?</i>	<i>us</i>	
<i>you</i> ?	VOUS <i>voit-il?</i>	<i>you</i>	
<i>him, or it</i> ?	LE <i>voit-il?</i>	<i>him, or it</i>	
<i>her, or it</i> ?	LA <i>voit-il?</i>	<i>her, or it</i>	
<i>them</i> ?	LES <i>voit-il?</i>	<i>them</i>	

He does not see <i>me</i> ; &c.	<i>Il ne ME voit pas.</i>	he <i>me</i> sees not.
Does he not see <i>me</i> ? &c.	Ne ME <i>voit-il pas?</i>	<i>me</i> sees he not?
Does he not see <i>thee</i> ? &c.	Ne TE <i>voit-il pas?</i>	<i>thee</i> sees he not?

EXERCISE.

I see <i>you</i> .	I see <i>him</i> .	I see <i>her</i> .	I see <i>them</i> .	Do you ⁵¹ see <i>me</i> ?
<small>vois 24</small>	<small>24</small>	<small>24</small>	<small>24</small>	<small>— voyez - vous 24</small>
Do you see <i>us</i> ?	Do you see <i>him</i> ?	Do you see <i>her</i> ?	Do you see	
<small>— 51 24</small>	<small>— 51 24</small>	<small>— 51 24</small>	<small>— 51</small>	
<i>them</i> ?	I do not ⁵⁵ know <i>you</i> .	I do not know <i>him</i> .	I do not know	
<small>24</small>	<small>— ne connais pas 24</small>	<small>— 55 21</small>	<small>— 55</small>	
<i>her</i> .	I do not know <i>them</i> .	Do you ⁵¹ not know <i>mè</i> ?	Do you	
<small>24</small>	<small>— 55 24</small>	<small>— ne connaissez-vous pas 24?</small>	<small>— 51</small>	
not know <i>us</i> ?	Do you not know <i>him</i> ?	Do you not know <i>her</i> ?		
<small>55 24?</small>	<small>— 55 24?</small>	<small>— 55 24</small>		
Do you not know <i>them</i> ?	I meet <i>them</i> sometimes, but I do not ⁵			
<small>— 55 24?</small>	<small>rencontre 24 quelquefois,</small>	<small>— ne</small>		
speak (to <i>them</i>).	Have you seen your mother lately?	I saw <i>her</i>		
<small>parle pas — leur 24.</small>	<small>Avez vu</small>	<small>depuis peu? vis 24</small>		
yesterday.	Did she ⁵¹ bring <i>you</i> any thing?	She brought <i>me</i> a		
<small>hier.</small>	<small>— apporta-t-elle 24 quelque chose?</small>	<small>— apporta 24</small>		
nèw book.	Did you ⁵¹ tell <i>her</i> that I wished to see <i>her</i> ?			
<small>nouveau livre. m.</small>	<small>— dites-vous lui 24 que</small>	<small>souhaitais — voir la 24?</small>		
I told <i>her</i> that we (should go) to see <i>her</i> on sunday.	What did			
<small>dis lui 24 que</small>	<small>irions — voir la 24 — dimanche.</small>	<small>Que</small>		
she ⁵¹ say to <i>you</i> ?	She told <i>me</i> that she (would be) glad to see <i>us</i>			
<small>dit-elle — 24</small>	<small>dit 24 qu'</small>	<small>serait (bier aise) de voir 24</small>		

The ORDER which the OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS keep with the VERB.

GENERAL RULE.

25 If the OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER, IT, THEM are governed by a verb compounded of the auxiliary verbs HAVE, or BE; and of a participle past, the pronouns ME, TE, NOUS, VOUS, LE, LA, LES, LUI, LEUR, EN, Y, which represent them, must be placed BEFORE the auxiliary verb; not between the auxiliary and the participle; as,

He has seen <i>me</i> .	<i>Il M'*</i> a vu.	literally he me	} has seen.
<i>thee</i> .	<i>Il T'</i> a vu.	he thee	
<i>him, or it</i> .	<i>Il L'</i> a vu.	he <i>him, or it</i>	
<i>her, or it</i> .	<i>Il L'</i> a vue.	he <i>her, or it</i>	
<i>us</i> .	<i>Il NOUS</i> a vus.	he us	
<i>you</i> .	<i>Il VOUS</i> a vus.	he you	} has he seen?
<i>them</i> .	<i>Il LES</i> a vus.	he them	
Has he seen <i>me</i> ?	<i>M'</i> † a-t-il vu?	<i>me</i>	
<i>thee</i> ?	<i>T'</i> a-t-il vu?	<i>thee</i>	
<i>him, or it</i> ?	<i>L'</i> a-t-il vu?	<i>him, or it</i>	
<i>her, or it</i> ?	<i>L'</i> a-t-il vue?	<i>her, or it</i>	
<i>us</i> ?	<i>NOUS</i> a-t-il vus?	<i>us</i>	
<i>you</i> ?	<i>VOUS</i> a-t-il vus?	<i>you</i>	
<i>them</i> ?	<i>LES</i> a-t-il vus?	<i>them</i>	
He has not seen <i>me</i> ; &c.	<i>Il ne M'a pas vu.</i>	he <i>me</i> has not seen.	
Has he not seen <i>me</i> ? &c.	<i>Ne M'a-t-il pas vu?</i>	<i>me</i> has he not seen?	

EXERCISE.

I have seen *you*. *ai vu* ²⁵ I have seen *him*. *vu* ^{25*} I have seen *her*. *vue* ^{25*} I have seen *them*. *vus* ²⁵ Have you seen *me*? *Avez-vous vu* ^{25*?} Have you seen *us*? *vus* ^{25?} Have you seen *him*? ^{25*?} Have you seen *her*? *vue* ^{25*?} Have you seen *them*? *vus* ^{25?} Where have you seen *him*? ^{25*?} I have met *him* at the door. *rencontré* ^{25*} à porte. f. *avait vue* ^{25*} (coming out) of the house. He has kept *me* all this while. *sortir* ¹ maison. f. *retenu* ²⁵ tout ¹ tems. m. — have told *him*²⁵ that I wanted to go. *aurais dit lui † que voulais, — (m'en aller.)* I have told *him*²⁵ that you had forbid *me* to stop. *avez défendu* ²⁵ de m'arrêter. I have heard *you*. *entendus* ²⁵ Had you never⁵⁵ seen *him* before? *ne aviez - vous jamais* I had met *him* once or twice, but I had never⁵⁵ spoken (to *him*), and he had never⁵⁵ spoken (to *me*). *vu le^{25*} auparavant? avais rencontré le^{25*} une ou deux fois, mais ne avais jamais parlé — lui²⁵ ne avait jamais —* ²⁵ I have written (to *him*) this morning, but he has not⁵⁵ yet answered *me*. *écrit — lui²⁵ ¹ matin, m. ne a pas encore (fait réponse) ²⁵.*

* See note * page 28

† See note * page 43

‡ See note (f) page 79.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

The ORDER which the OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS keep with the VERB.

EXCEPTIONS.

1st Exception. When the OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS ME, THEE, US, YOU, 26

HIM, HER, IT, THEM are governed by the IMPERATIVE of a verb used in a COMMANDING sense, i. e. without a negation, the pronouns which represent them, are placed immediately AFTER the verb;

In these instances ME is expressed by MOI, and THEE by TOI.

But if the IMPERATIVE is used in a FORBIDDING sense, i. e. if it is attended by a negation, the pronouns must be placed immediately BEFORE the verb, agreeably to the general rule; 27

Then ME is expressed by ME, and THEE by TE; ex.

Imperative COMMANDING, 26 rule.

Imperative FORBIDDING, 27 rule.

Look at me.

Regarde-MOI.

Ne ME

} regarde pas.

thyself.

TOI.

Ne TE

} regardez pas.

Look at us.

Regardez-NOUS.

Ne NOUS

VOUS.

Ne VOUS

} regardons pas.

yourself.

Regardons-LE.

Ne LE

LA.

Ne LA

} regardons pas.

Let us look at him, or it.
her, or it.

th'm.

LES.

Ne LES

} Do not look at me.

EXERCISE.

Speak to me.

Do not⁵⁵ speak to me.

Do not interrupt me. Warm

Parlez — ²⁶

— ne pas — ²⁷

— ⁵⁵ interrompez ²⁷ Chauffe

thyself a little.
²⁶ un peu.

Do not warm thyself (so much).
— ⁵⁵ ²⁷ tant.

Write to her. Do
Ecrivez — lui²⁶. —

not write to her.
⁵⁵ — ²⁷

Send it (to him.)
Envoyez-le²⁶ — lui²⁶

Do not send it to him.
— ⁵⁵ le²⁷ — lui²⁷.

2d Exception. The OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS are not always governed by 28

verbs, they are sometimes governed by a preposition which some verbs require to be united to the substantive* that follows them; then the pronoun being the object of the preposition, and not the object of the verb, it is placed after the preposition, and we express

ME,	by	MOI.	US,	by	NOUS.
THEE,	by	TOI.	YOU,	by	VOUS.
HIM,	by	LUI.	THEM, m.	by	EUX.
HER,	by	ELLE.	THEM, fem.	by	ELLES; ex.

Was he speaking of me? Parlait-il de MOI?
I will not go with him. Je n' irai pas avec LUI.
He is come without her. Il est venu sans ELLE.
He applied to them. Il s'adressa à EUX, m. à ELLES, f.†

EXERCISE.

Come to me. I do not⁵⁵ care for thee. I went to her, and she
Viens à ²³ — ne me soucie pas de ²³ allai ²³ et

sent me to him. I will not go with them. I am tired of them.
envoya ²⁴ ²³ — ⁵⁵ irai avec ²³ ennuyé d' ²³

Have you thought of me? I always⁵⁴ think of you.
Avez pensé à ²³ toujours pense à ²³

* See note * page 73. † This is more fully explained in the third part of this work.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

The ORDER which SEVERAL OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS keep TOGETHER.

29

When SEVERAL OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS are governed by the same verb they must be placed TOGETHER in the following order :

Before the verb, 24, 25 rules. After the verb, 26 rule. Whether bef. or aft. the verb ; 24, 25, 26, 27 rules.

ME	} bef. LE LA, LES, Y, EN.	LE,	} bef. MOI TOI.	ME,	} bef. EN.
NOUS,		LA,		TE,	
TE,		LES,			
VOUS,		Y,			
SE,					

Whether before or after the verb, 24, 25, 26, 27 rules.

LE,	} bef. LUI, LEUR, Y, EN.
LA,	
LES,	

LUI,	} bef. Y, EN.
LEUR,	

Y,	bef. EN.*
----	-----------

* Having uniformly observed that the arrangement of several pronouns together is one of those rules which learners find the greatest difficulty to attain, I have given examples shewing how several pronouns are placed together in all possible instances, by the means of which errors may always be rectified.

BEFORE the verb, 24, 25 rules. AFTER the verb, 26 rule.

FIRST PERSON.

IMPERATIVE COMMANDING.

He gave him or it to me.	Il ME LE donna.	Donnez-LE-MOI.
He gave her or it to me.	Il ME LA donna.	Donnez-LA-MOI.
He gave them to me.	Il ME LES donna.	Donnez-LES-MOI.
He gave me some.	Il M' EN donna.	Donnez-M' EN.
He gave him or it to us.	Il NOUS LE donna.	Donnez-NOUS-LE.
He gave her or it to us	Il NOUS LA donna.	Donnez-NOUS-LA.
He gave them to us.	Il NOUS LES donna.	Donnez-NOUS-LES.
He gave us some.	Il NOUS EN donna.	Donnez-NOUS-EN.
He sent me there.	Il M' Y envoya.	Envoyez-Y-MOI.
He sent him, her, or it to me there.	Il ME L' Y envoya.	Envoyez-L' Y-MOI.
He sent them to me there.	Il ME LES Y envoya.	Envoyez-LES-Y-MOI.
He sent me some there.	Il M' Y EN envoya.	Envoyez-Y-EN-MOI.
He sent us there.	Il NOUS Y envoya.	Envoyez-NOUS-Y.
He sent him, her, or it to us there.	Il NOUS L' Y envoya.	Envoyez-NOUS-L' Y.
He sent them to us there.	Il NOUS LES Y envoya.	Envoyez-NOUS-LES-Y.
He sent some to us there.	Il NOUS Y EN envoya.	Envoyez-NOUS-Y-EN.

Give it me, &c. Send me there, &c.

SECOND PERSON.

He gave him or it to thee.	Il TE LE donna.	Représente-LE-TOI.
He gave her or it to thee.	Il TE LA donna.	Représente-LA-TOI.
He gave them to thee.	Il TE LES donna.	Représente-LES-TOI.
He gave thee some.	Il T' EN donna.	Représente-T' EN.
He gave him or it to you.	Il VOUS LE donna.	Représentez-VOUS-LE.
He gave her or it to you.	Il VOUS LA donna.	Représentez-VOUS-LA.
He gave them to you.	Il VOUS LES donna.	Représentez-VOUS-LES.
He gave you some.	Il VOUS EN donna.	Représentez-VOUS-EN.
He sent thee there.	Il T' Y envoya.	
He sent him, her, or it to thee there.	Il TE L' Y envoya.	
He sent them to thee there	Il TE LES Y envoya.	
He sent some to thee there.	Il T' Y EN envoya.	
He sent you there.	Il VOUS Y envoya.	Transportez-VOUS-Y.
He sent him, her, or it to you there.	Il VOUS L' Y envoya.	
He sent them to you there.	Il VOUS LES Y envoya.	
He sent some to you there.	Il VOUS Y EN envoya.	Informez-VOUS-Y-EN.

Represent it to thee, &c.

THIRD PERSON.

He recalls him or it to himself.	Il SE LE rappelle.
He recalls her or it to himself.	Il SE LA rappelle.
He recalls them to himself.	Il SE LES rappelle.
He repents of it, of them.	Il S' EN repent.
He applies himself to it to them.	Il S' Y applique.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

The ORDER which SEVERAL OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS keep TOGETHER.

BEFORE the verb, 24, 25 rules. AFTER the verb, 26 rule.

THIRD PERSON.

He has given <i>him</i> or <i>it</i> to <i>him</i> , to <i>her</i> .	Il LE LUI a donné.	Donnez-LE-LUI.	Give it him, &c. Send it to him there, &c.
He has given <i>her</i> or <i>it</i> to <i>him</i> , to <i>her</i> .	Il LA LUI a donné.	Donnez-LA-LUI.	
He has given <i>them</i> to <i>him</i> , to <i>her</i> .	Il LES LUI a donnés.	Donnez-LES-LUI.	
He has given <i>him</i> or <i>it</i> to <i>them</i> .	Il LE LEUR a donné.	Donnez-LE-LEUR.	
He has given <i>her</i> or <i>it</i> to <i>them</i> .	Il LA LEUR a donnée.	Donnez-LA-LEUR.	
He has given <i>them</i> to <i>them</i> .	Il LES LEUR a donnés.	Donnez-LES-LEUR.	
He warned <i>him</i> , or <i>her</i> of <i>it</i> .	Il L' EN avertit.	Avertissez-L' EN.	
He warned <i>them</i> of <i>it</i> .	Il LES EN avertit.	Avertissez-LES-EN.	
He sent <i>him</i> , <i>her</i> or <i>it</i> there.	Il L' Y envoya.	Envoyez-L' Y.	
He sent <i>them</i> there.	Il LES Y envoya.	Envoyez-LES-Y.	
He sent <i>him</i> or <i>it</i> to <i>him</i> , to <i>her</i> there.	Il LE LUI Y envoya.	Envoyez-LE-LUI-Y.*	
He sent <i>her</i> or <i>it</i> to <i>him</i> , to <i>her</i> there.	Il LA LUI Y envoya.	Envoyez-LA-LUI-Y.	
He sent <i>them</i> to <i>him</i> , to <i>her</i> there.	Il LES LUI Y envoya.	Envoyez-LES-LUI-Y.	
He sent <i>him</i> or <i>it</i> to <i>them</i> there.	Il LE LEUR Y envoya.	Envoyez-LE-LEUR-Y.	
He sent <i>her</i> or <i>it</i> to <i>them</i> there.	Il LA LEUR Y envoya.	Envoyez-LA-LEUR-Y.	
He sent <i>them</i> to <i>them</i> there.	Il LES LEUR Y envoya.	Envoyez-LES-LEUR-Y.	
He sent <i>some</i> to <i>him</i> , to <i>her</i> .	Il LUI EN envoya.	Envoyez-LUI-EN.	
He sent <i>some</i> to <i>them</i> , or <i>them</i> <i>some</i> .	Il LEUR EN envoya.	Envoyez-LEUR-EN.	
He sent <i>some</i> to <i>him</i> , to <i>her</i> there.	Il LUI Y EN envoya.	Envoyez-LUI-Y-EN.	
He sent <i>some</i> to <i>them</i> there.	Il LEUR Y EN envoya.	Envoyez-LEUR-Y-EN.	
He sent <i>some</i> (g) there.	Il Y EN envoya.	Envoyez-Y-EN.	

EXERCISE.

I have brought *you* the book which I had promised *you*. Where
 ai apporté²⁵ livre m. que²⁵ avais promis²⁵ Où
 is it? Shew *it*²⁹ *me*. I (will shew) *it*²⁴ *you* (by and by.) Will you give
 est-il? Montrez-le²⁶ montrerai le²⁹ tantôt. Voulez donner
*it*²⁴ *me*? Give *it*²⁶ *me*. I can not give *it*²⁴ *you*. It does not belong
 le²⁹? Donnez-le²⁹ ne puis pas donner le²⁹ Il — n' est pas
 to *me*. I (will lend) *it*²⁴ *you*. When will you²¹ lend *it*²⁴ *me*?
 à²³ prêterai le²⁹ Quand — prêterez-vous le²⁹?
 Lend *it*²⁹ *me* now. I (will return) *it*²⁴ to *you* (to-morrow). I (will lend)
 Prêtez-le²³ à présent. rendrai le —²⁹ demain. prêterai
*it*²⁴ *you* next¹⁶ week⁷. I (shall be) in the country then. I (will send)
 le²⁹ prochaine semaine. f. serai à campagne f. alors. enverrai
 them to *you* there. You will not find (any body) to bring them
 24 — 29 y 29 — ne trouverez personne pour apporter 24
 to *me* there. I (will take) them to *you* there myself. Has she given
 — 29 y 29 porterai 24 — 29 29 moi-même. A-t-elle donné
*him*²⁵ any money? No; she has lent *him*²⁵ a guinea. Tell *her*²⁶
 (f) 9 argent? Non; prêté (f) 1 guinée. f. Dites (f)
 not to lend *him*²⁴ any more, for he will never return *it*²⁴ *her*.
 de ne pas prêter (f) (g)²⁹ davantage, car — ne⁵⁵ rendra jamais le (f)²⁹

* LUI Y is grammatical, but *i, i*, at the end of a sentence do not sound well, therefore, instead of Y for *there*, use LA, and say LUI là instead of LUI Y.

(f) When a verb governs two substantives, either nouns or pronouns, one of them has a preposition expressed or understood, but the preposition is generally understood before the pronoun which represents the person. In these instances *HIM, HER*, must be expressed by LUI, and *THEM* by LEUR, the same as when *to* is prefixed to them; ex.

I will send *him* money, *i. e.* money to *him*; Je LUI enverrai de l' argent; not L'enverrai.

I have offered *them* some, *i. e.* some to *them*; Je LEUR EN ai offert; not je LES EN ai offert.

(g) *SOME, ANY*, implying of *it, of them*, understood after *them*, are expressed by EN

30 As there are only two genders in french, the masculine and the feminine, the NEUTER PRONOUNS *IT, THEY, THEM* must be expressed by *IL, ELLE, ILS, ELLES*; *LE, LA, LES*, the same as *HE, SHE, THEY*; *HIM, HER, THEM*, masculine or feminine, agreeably to the gender of the noun which they represent; so we say:

Of a man or a tree.
IL est grand; je LE vois. He or it is tall; I see him, or it.
 Of a woman or a flower;
ELLE est belle; regardez-LA. She or it is fine; look at her, or it. (h)
 Of men or trees;
ILS sont ici; je LES ai vus. They are here; I have seen them.
 Of women or flowers;
ELLES sont belles; je LES admire. They are fine; I admire them.

EXERCISE.

You have a fine hat. *Il* is new. I can not wear *it*²⁴. *It* is
 avez ¹ beau chapeau. m. ³⁰ est neuf. ne saurais porter ³⁰(h) ³⁰
 too small. (Here is) another; try *it*²⁵. This watch has cost me
 trop petit. En voici un autre; essayez ³⁰(h) ¹ montre. a coûté ²⁵
 a (good deal) of money⁸, but *it* is not⁵⁵ good; *It* does not go well.
 — beaucoup argent,^{N.B.} ³⁰n'est pas bonne; ³⁰ — ne va pas bien.
 Get *it*²⁶ mended. Give *it*³⁰ me. (That is) a good house; *it*
 Faites ³⁰(h) raccommoder. Donnez (h) ²⁶ Voilà ¹ bonne maison; f. ³⁰
 is well built, but *it* is not well situated. *It* is too near the road. If
 bien bâti,¹³ ³⁰ bien situé ¹³. ³⁰ trop près de route. f. Si
it was mine,⁴² I (would sell) *it*²⁴. Eat some of these grapes;
³⁰ était (à moi) vendrais ³⁰(h) Mangez (quelques-uns) ¹ raisins; m
 they are good. I (would rather have) apples, if they were ripe.
³⁰ bon. ¹³ J' aimerais mieux — ⁹pommes, f. ³⁰ étaient mûr.¹³
It is not the time for apples. Is *it* astonishing that they are
 (i) n'est pas tems m. des (i) étonnant qu' ³⁰ne soient
 not⁵⁵ ripe? *It* (would be) an astonishing thing if they were.
 pas ¹³ (i) serait étonnante ¹⁶ chose f. qu' ³⁰le fussent.

(h) Learners are sometimes embarrassed how to discriminate *IT* the object from *IT* the agent or nominative, i. e. when to express *IT* by *IL, ELLE*, and when by *LE, LA*.

IT is the agent, and expressed by *IL, ELLE*, agreeably to the gender of the noun to which it relates, when, if you were speaking of a person, you would use *HE* or *SHE*; as, *HE* or *IT* is come. *IL est venu. SHE* or *IT* will fall. *ELLE tombera.*

IT is the object, and expressed by *LE, LA*, agreeably to the gender of the noun, when, if you were speaking of a person, you would use *HIM* or *HER*; as,

I see *HIM* or *IT*. *JE LE vois.* I know *HER* or *IT*. *JE LA connais.*

(i) *IT* is often used in an impersonal sense, i. e. without reference to any substantive mentioned in the sentence; as, *IT* is glorious, shameful, necessary, &c.

In these instances, *IT* is always expressed by *IL*, or by *CE*.

IT is expressed by *IL*, if the verb is followed by an adjective without a substantive; as, *IT* is glorious, shameful, necessary. *IL est glorieux, honteux, nécessaire, &c.*

IT is expressed by *CE*, when the verb is followed by a substantive, either with or without an adjective; as,

IT is I. *IT* is he. *IT* is she. *IT* is you. *IT* is your brother. *IT* is a shameful thing
 C'est moi. C'est lui. C'est elle. C'est vous. C'est votre frère. C'est une chose honteuse.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

HE, SHE, THEY, HIM, HER, THEM, are sometimes used without relation to any noun expressed before them, but imply the words **MAN, WOMAN, or PEOPLE** understood; as,

He who is honest is esteemed; i. e. *the man* who is honest is &c.
Do you know her whom I love? i. e. *the woman* whom I love?

In this sense they are expressed;

HE, HIM; } by **CELUI.** **SHE, HER;** } by **CELLE.** **THEY, THEM;** } by **CEUX;** as,

He who is honest is esteemed. **CELUI** qui est honnête est estimé.
Do you know her whom I love? **Connaissez-vous** **CELLE** que j'aime?

N. B. **CELUI, CELLE, CEUX,** and the relative **QUI, QUE, DONT** which attends them, must not be separated, as the corresponding words sometimes are in English; they must be placed **TOGETHER;** as,

He knows men but little *who* relies on their promises.

CELUI QUI compte sur les promesses des hommes ne les connaît guère;
 i. e. *He who* relies on the promises of men knows them but little (k).

EXERCISE.

He who can live dishonoured does not deserve to live. **He** who
³¹ qui peut vivre déshonoré — ⁵⁵ mérite de ³¹

betrays a friend is unworthy of friendship. **He** can not be happy
 trahit ami m. indigne amitié. ³¹ ne saurait — être heureux

*whose*³¹ happiness depends on others. **Do not**⁵⁵ trust *him* who
 dont N.B. bonheur m. dépend des autres. — Ne vous fiez pas à ³¹

has deceived you. **She** (of whom) you speak (will come) (by and by.)
 trompé ²⁵ ³¹ dont parlez viendra tantôt.

She is not come (of whom³¹) you (were speaking.) **Do you**⁵¹ know *her*
³¹ est ⁵⁵ venue N.B. parliez. — Connaissez-vous ³¹

(of whom) we (are speaking?) **They** who prefer ³¹ riches to ² honour
 parlons? ³¹ préfèrent richesses ² honneur

are contemptible. **They** are mistaken *who*³¹ think that riches make
 méprisable¹⁹. ³¹ — se trompent N.B. pensent que ⁷ rendent

men⁷ happy. **Do you**⁵¹ know that gentleman? **He** is a physician.
 homme heureux. — Connaissez-vous ¹ monsieur? (1) médecin.

(That is) his wife. **She** is a fine woman. **They** are ¹⁰very honest people.
 Voilà ¹ femme. (1) belle femme. (1) très honnêtes gens.

(k) We may also say without changing the order of the words;

CELUI-LÀ ne connaît guère les hommes **QUI** compte sur leurs promesses;

or **C'EST** ne connaître guère les hommes **QUE DE** compter sur leurs promesses;

but these two modes of expression are more adapted to oratory than to conversation.

(l) **HE, SHE, THEY,** coming with the verb **BE** followed by a substantive, are generally expressed by **CE**, though the noun to which they refer has been mentioned before; as,

He is a merchant.

C'est un négociant.

She is a milliner.

C'est une marchande de modes.

They are great rogues.

Ce sont de grands fripons.

N. B. If the substantive which follows the verb denotes *trade or profession*, **HE, SHE, THEY,** may be expressed by **IL, ELLE, ILS, ELLES,** but the *article* must be left out; as,

IL est négociant.

ELLE est marchande de modes.

But the learner will do well, in these instances, to use **CE** until he has seen the second part of this book, in which this is more fully explained.

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

WHO, WHOM, WHOSE, THAT, WHICH, WHAT.
 QUI, QUE, DONT, QUOI, QUEL, LEQUEL.

32 When WHO, WHOM, WHOSE, THAT, WHICH, come after one or several substantives which they particularize, they are expressed,

Nomin.	WHO,	} QUI.	The man who	} comes.	L' homme	} QUI	} vient.
	THAT,		The horse that		Le cheval		
	WHICH;		The chaise which		La chaise		
Object.	WHOM,	} QUE. (m)	The man whom	} I see.	L' homme	} QUE	} je vois.
	THAT,		The horse which		Le cheval		
	WHICH;		The coach that		Le carrosse		
Possess.	WHOSE,	} DONT.	The man of whom	} I speak.	L' homme	} DONT	} je parle.
	Of WHOM,		The horse of which		Le cheval		
	Of WHICH;		The chaise of which		La chaise		

N. B. QUI, QUE, DONT must be placed immediately AFTER the noun to which they relate; as,

Is the ship arrived which was expected? } i. e. the ship which was
 Le NAVIRE QU'on attendait est-il³² arrivé? } expected, is it⁵² arrived?

EXERCISE.

Do you⁵¹ know the master who teaches me french? The scholars
 — Connaissez-vous maître ³² enseigne ²⁴ français m. ? écoliers m.
 whom you have recommended to me are very diligent. (This is)
³² avez recommandés — ²⁵ sont très ¹³. Voici
 the person of whom I (was speaking.) Have you seen the ships that³²
¹ personne f. ³² parlais. vu ¹ navire (m)
 (are just) (come in?) You have bought a book which³² is very dear.
 vient d'arriver? acheté livre m. (m) est très cher.
 The book which³² you have bought is very dear. The book of which³²
 (m)
 you speak is very dear. That house is sold which³² you wanted to buy.
 parlez ¹ maison f. vendue N.B. vouliez — acheter
 The ladies you want to see are here. The gentleman is gone who³²
 dame (n) voulez voir ici. monsieur parti N.B.
 has brought you a letter. He has lost all the money he had.
 apporté ²⁵ ¹ lettre. f. perdu tout ² argent(n) avait.

(m) Persons not versed in grammatical terms, are often at a loss to distinguish the object from the nominative, i. e. when to express THAT, WHICH by QUI, and when by QUE.

To these I will observe, that THAT, WHICH are the nominative, and expressed by QUI, when they are followed immediately by a verb; as,

The coach that or which is at the door. Le carrosse QUI est à la porte.

THAT, WHICH are the object of the verb, and expressed by QUE, when, between them and the verb, there is a noun or pronoun which is the nominative of the verb; as,

The coach that or which we have met. Le carrosse QUE nous avons rencontré.

(n) The distinctive pronouns WHOM, THAT, WHICH are often left out in english; as, The man I saw; for the man whom I saw; but the corresponding words QUI, QUE, DONT must always be expressed in french; as,

The man I saw, i. e. whom I saw. L' homme QUE je vis.

The wine we drank, i. e. which we drank. Le vin QUE nous bûmes.

The woman I speak of, i. e. of whom I speak. La femme DONT je parle.

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

After any preposition *but OF*, or a preposition synonymous to it,

WHOM is expressed by *QUI* for both genders and numbers.

		Masc. SING.	Fem.	Masc. PLUR.	Fem.
<i>WHICH</i>	by	le QUEL,	la QUELLE,	les QUELS,	les QUELLES;
From <i>WHICH</i>	by	du QUEL,	de la QUELLE,	des QUELS,	des QUELLES;
To, at <i>WHICH</i>	by	au QUEL,	à la QUELLE,	aux QUELS,	aux QUELLES;

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun to which it relates; as,

The man with whom	} I came.	L' homme avec QUI	} je vins.
The horse on which		Le cheval sur LEQUEL	
The chaise in which		La chaise dans LAQUELLE	
The man from whom	} this fell.	L' homme de QUI	} ceci tomba.
The horse from which		Le cheval du QUEL	
The man to whom	} he gave it.	L' homme à QUI	} il le donna.
The horse to which		Le cheval au QUEL	

EXERCISE

You know the lady to whom I have spoken. The study to which
Connaissez dame ³³ *ai parlé.* ² *étude f.* ³³

he applies is not very useful. The chair on which you sit is
s'applique est ⁵⁵ *très utile.* *chaise f. sur* ³³ *(êtes assis)*

broken¹³. The coach in which I came was overturned. The people
rompu, N.B. *carrosse m. dans* ³³ *vins fut renversé.* *gens m.*

with whom I was were very civil. (This is) the stick with which
avec ³³ *étais étaient civil¹³.* *Voici* *bâton m.* ³³

he struck me. Where is the horse to which you have given the corn?
frappa ²⁴ *Où* ³³ *avez donné* ² *avoine?*

WHO, WHOM, WHOSE used absolutely, i. e. without reference to any **34**
 noun mentioned before, imply the word *PERSON* understood.

WHO, WHOM are then expressed by *QUI*; as,

Who is there? i. e. what person is there? *QUI est là?*

I know *whom* you love, i. e. what person, &c. *Je sais QUI vous aimez.*

WHOSE is expressed by *DE QUI*, when it is used for *OF* WHAT PERSON;
 and by *À QUI*, when it is used for *TO* WHAT PERSON; as,

Whose daughter is she?

i. e. (of what person) is she the daughter? } *DE QUI est-elle fille?*

Whose house is that?

i. e. (to what person) does that house belong? } *À QUI est cette maison?*

EXERCISE.

Whom did you send? *Whom* have you found? *Whom* did you
³⁴ *avez* ⁵¹ *envoyé?* ³⁴ *avez* *trouvé?* ³⁴ *avez*

speak to⁵⁶? I know *whom* you are speaking of⁵⁵. *Whose* hat
parlé à ? *sais* ³⁴ *— parlez de* ³⁴ *chapeau m.*

is this? *Whose* coach is that? I do not know *whose* it is.
est ¹ *?* ³⁴ *carrosse m.* ¹ *!* *— ne sais pas* ³⁴ ³⁰

Whose son is he? *Whose* wife is she? *Whose* relations are they?
³⁴ *fil* *?* *femme* *?* ³⁴ *parent* *sont - ils ?*

In an INTERROGATIVE sentence WHICH requires THREE distinctions.

WHICH INTERROGATIVE is either joined to the noun like an adjective, i. e. without the help of a preposition; as,

WHICH man? WHICH carriage? WHICH horses?

Or, like a substantive, joined to it by the preposition OF; as,

WHICH OF the men? WHICH OF the carriages? WHICH OF my horses?

Or like a pronoun used absolutely after the noun; as,

It is one of these men; WHICH is it?

35 WHICH INTERROGATIVE joined like an adjective, i. e. without a preposition, to the noun to which it relates, is

	Masc. SING.	Fem.	Masc. PLUR.	Fem.
Of, from WHICH;	le QUEL,	la QUELLE,	les QUELS,	les QUELLES;
To, at WHICH;	à QUEL,	à QUELLE,	à QUELS,	à QUELLES;

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun; as,

Which man	} will you have?	QUEL homme	} voulez-vous?
Which carriage		QUELLE voiture	
Which horses		QUELS chevaux	

36 WHICH INTERROGATIVE joined by a preposition to the noun to which it relates, or coming after it absolutely, i. e. without a noun, is

	Masc. SING.	Fem.	Masc. PLUR.	Fem.
Of, from WHICH;	le QUEL,	la QUELLE,	les QUELS,	les QUELLES;
To, at WHICH;	du QUEL,	de la QUELLE,	des QUELS,	des QUELLES;
	au QUEL,	à la QUELLE,	aux QUELS,	aux QUELLES;

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun; as,

Which of these men	} will you	LEQUEL de ces hommes	} voulez-vous?
Which of the coaches		LAQUELLE des voitures	
Which of my horses		LESQUELS de mes chevaux	
Which is the tallest?		LEQUEL est le plus haut?	
Which is the finest?		LAQUELLE est la plus belle?	
Which are the best?		LESQUELS sont les meilleurs?	

37 WHICH sometimes implies the DEMONSTRATIVE pronoun THAT or THOSE understood, this demonstrative word can not be omitted in french, and WHICH, as including the two words, is expressed by

CELUI QUE m.	} THAT which;	CEUX QUE m.	} THOSE which;
CELLE QUE f.		CELLES QUE f.	

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun to which it relates; as,
Which of these horses shall I ride? Lequel de ces chevaux monterai-je?
Ride which you will, i. e. that which Montez CELUI que vous voudrez.

EXERCISE.

Which book shall I read? Which of these books shall I read?
³⁵ livre m. — ⁵¹ lirai-je⁵¹? ³⁶ 1 ⁵¹ ?

Read which you please. Which pen shall I make use of³⁶?
 Lisez ³⁷ il vous plaira. ³⁵ plumef. — ⁵¹ me servirai-je de?

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

Which of these pens shall I⁵¹ make use of? Use *which* you will.
³⁵ * 1 — *me servirai-je* ⁵⁶? *Servez-vous de* ³⁷ *voudrez.*

Which boy shall I⁵¹ give this to? *Which* of the boys shall I give
³⁵ *garçon.* — *donnerai-je ceci* ⁵⁶? ³⁶ * 1 ⁵¹

this to? Give it to *which* you like. *Which* lady is the handsomest?
⁵⁶? *Donnez-le* ³⁷ *voudrez.* ³⁵ *dame est belle* ²¹ ?

Which of these ladies is the handsomest? *Which* ladies do you
³⁶ 1 ²¹ ³⁵ — ⁵¹

speak of⁵⁵? To *which* do you⁵¹ give the preference? *Which*
*parlez-vous*⁵¹ ? ³⁶ — *donnez-vous*⁵¹ *préférence f.!*

fruit do you⁵¹ like best? *Which* of these fruits do you like best?
fruit m. — *aimez-vous le mieux?* * 1 — ?

Which is the ripest? Eat of *which* you like. *Which* road shall
*est mûr*²¹? *Mangez* *voudrez.* *route f.* —

we go by⁵⁵? *Which* of these roads shall we go by⁵⁵? *Which*
⁵¹ *irons par?* 1 ⁵¹ *par?*

house shall we⁵¹ go to? *Which* is the best¹³? Go to *which*
maison f. — *irons-nous* ⁵⁶? *meilleur?* *Allez à*

you choose. *Which* door must I go through? *Which* of these
voudrez. *porte f. faut-il que je passe par*⁵⁶ ?

doors must I go through? Go through *which* you please.
par ⁵⁶ ? *Passez par* *il vous plaira.*

WHAT requires the same distinction as WHICH.

WHAT FOLLOWED by a noun, or RELATING to a noun mentioned before, is expressed in the same manner as WHICH; 38

	Masc. SING.	Fem.	Masc. PLUR.	Fem.	
Of, from	WHAT;	QUEL,	QUELLE,	QUELS,	QUELLES;
To, at	WHAT;	deQUEL,	deQUELLE,	deQUELS,	deQUELLES;
	WHAT;	à QUEL,	à QUELLE,	à QUELS,	à QUELLES;

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun; as,

<i>What</i> man	} will you have?	QUEL homme	} voulez-vous?
<i>What</i> carriage		QUELLE voiture	
<i>What</i> horses		QUELS chevaux	

It is my opinion, *what* is yours? *C'est mon opinion, QUELLE est la vôtre?*

EXERCISE.

What man has he employed? *What* language do you⁵¹ like best?
³⁸ *a-t-il employé ?* ³⁸ *langue f.* — *aimez-vous le mieux ?*

What study do you⁵¹ apply to⁵⁵? *What* sort of books do
³⁸ *étude f.* — *vous*²⁴ *appliquez-vous* ⁵¹ ? ³⁸ *sorte f.* ⁸ *livre* —

you⁵¹ read? To *what* use shall I put it²⁴? *What* news
*lisez-vous*⁵¹ ? ³⁸ *usage m.* — ⁵¹ *mettrai-je*⁵¹ *le ?* ³⁸ *nouvelle f.*

are you⁵¹ speaking of? *What* is your sentiment? *What* is yours⁴¹?
 — *parlez-vous*⁵¹ ⁵⁶ ? ³⁸ *est* *sentiment m.?* ³⁸ *le vôtre ?*

* WHICH may here be either singular or plural, agreeably to the number that is meant

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

39 *WHAT* used ABSOLUTELY, i. e. without reference to a noun mentioned, implies the word thing understood, and is expressed by *QUE* or by *QUOI*.

WHAT is expressed by *QUE*, when it is the object of a verb ; as,

What are you doing there? *QUE faites-vous là ?*

I do not know *what* to say to her. *Je ne sais QUE lui dire.*

WHAT is expressed by *QUOI*, when it is governed by a preposition, or used as an interjection ; ex.

What do you meddle with⁵⁶? *De⁵⁶ QUOI vous²⁴ melez-vous⁵¹ ?*

What! you have not done yet. *QUOI ! vous n'avez pas encore fini.*

EXERCISE.

What do you want? *What* do you think of that? *What* shall
₃₉ — ₅₁ *cherchez ?* ₃₉ — ₅₁ *pensez de cela ?* ₃₉ —

I do with this? Do you know *what* this is made of? *What*
₅₁ *ferai de ceci ?* — ₅₁ *savez* ₃₉ *ceci* *fait* ₅₆ ? ₃₉

is it good for⁵⁶? I do not know *what* you (are talking) about.
il bon à ? — ₅₅ *sais* ₃₉ *parlez* *de* ₅₆.

What! are you not gone yet⁵³? *What*! you do not answer me.
₃₉ — ₅₅ *parti* *encore ?* ₃₉ — ₅₅ *repondez* ₂₄.

40 *WHAT* sometimes implies the DEMONSTRATIVE pronoun *THAT*, and the distinctive *WHICH* ; it is then expressed,

Nom. *WHAT*, *CE QUI* ; Always do *what* is right ; i. e. *that which* is right.
Faites toujours CE QUI est juste.

Obj. *WHAT*, *CE QUE* ; *What* I say is true ; i. e. *that which* I say is true.
(m) CE QUE je dis est vrai.

But with the prepositions *OF*, *TO*, or any preposition that is synonymous to them, it is necessary to consider whether the preposition comes before or after *WHAT* ; for,

Of *WHAT* is *de CE QUI*, } I speak *OF what* is true ; i. e. *OF that which*
de CE QUE ; } *Je parle de CE QUI est vrai.*

WHAT of is *CE DONT* ; as, *What* he speaks *OF* is not true ; i. e. *that OF which*
CE DONT il parle n'est pas vrai.

To *WHAT* is *à CE QUI*, } You do not apply *TO what* is useful ; *TO that which*
à CE QUE ; } *Vous ne vous appliquez pas à CE QUI est utile.*

WHAT to is *CE à QUOI* ; as, *What* you apply *TO* is not useful ; *that TO which*
CE à QUOI vous vous appliquez n'est pas utile.

EXERCISE.

Say *what* is true, and do *what* is just. *What*⁴⁰ we do hastily
Dites ⁴⁰ *est vrai, et faites* ⁴⁰ *juste.* (m) *faisons* (*à la hâte*)

is often imperfect. Shew me *what*⁴⁰ you have done. Pay attention to
souvent imparfait. *Montrez* ²⁶ (m) *fait.* *Faites attention*

*what*⁴⁰ I say to you. Are you sure of *what*⁴⁰ you say? It is *what* you
 (m) *dis* — ²⁴ *Etes* *sûr* (m) *dites ?* *C'est* ⁴⁰

may be sure of. I would not⁵⁵ trust to *what*⁴⁰ he proposes. *What*
pouvez être ⁵⁶ *ne voudrais pas* *me fier* (m) *propose.* ⁴³

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

you trust to is very uncertain. He complains of *what*⁴⁰ he has
vous vous fiez ⁵⁶ *est très incertain.* *se plaint* (m) a
 suffered. *What* he complains of is right. They attribute it to *what*⁴⁰
souffert. ⁴⁰ *se plaint* ⁵⁶ *juste.* *attribuent le*²⁴ (m)
 I have told you. *What* they attribute it to has never³⁵ happened.
dît ²⁵ ⁴⁰ ²⁴ *n'est jamais arrivé.*

POSSESSIVE PRONOUN.

		Masc. SING.	Fem.	Masc: PLUR.	Fem.
	MINE.	le MIEN,	la MIENNE,	les MIENS,	les MIENNES.
Of, from	MINE.	du MIEN,	de la MIENNE,	des MIENS,	des MIENNES.
To, at	MINE.	au MIEN,	à la MIENNE,	aux MIENS,	aux MIENNES.
	THINE.	le TIEN,	la TIENNE,	les TIENS,	les TIENNES.
	HIS. HERS.	} le SIEN,	la SIENNE,	les SIENS,	les SIENNES.
	OURS.				
	YOURS.	le VÔTRE,	la VÔTRE,	les VÔTRES,	les VÔTRES.
	THEIRS.	le LEUR,	la LEUR,	les LEURS,	les LEURS.

The POSSESSIVE pronouns le MIEN, le TIEN, le SIEN, &c. must be of **41**
 the same gender and number as the noun which they represent; as,

Your horse is better than *hers*, i. e. *her horse*.

Votre cheval est meilleur que le SIEN.

My house is not so fine as *his*, i. e. *his house*.

Ma maison n'est pas si belle que la SIENNE.

Your histories are prettier than *his*, i. e. *his histories*.

Vos histoires sont plus jolies que les SIENNES.

EXERCISE.

Why do not⁵⁵ you⁵¹ eat your cake? Your brother has eaten *his*.
Pourquoi — ne mangez-vous pas ¹ *gâteau m.?* ¹ *a mangé* ⁴¹

My sister has not eaten *hers*. I (will eat) *mine* (by and by). Your
a ⁵⁵ ⁴¹ *mangerai* ⁴¹ *tantôt.* ¹

lesson is shorter¹⁸ than *mine*, but (I shall know) *mine* before you
leçon f. *court*¹³ ⁴¹ *mais* *saurai* ⁴¹ *avant que*

know *yours*. It is not⁵⁵ your business, it is *his*. My books are
sachiez ⁴¹ *Ce n'est pas* ¹ *affaire f.*, *c'est* ⁴¹ *livre m. sont*

finer¹⁸ than *yours* and *his*. They are not finer than *mine*. Have
beaux ⁴¹ ⁴¹ ³⁰ ⁵⁵ ¹⁸ ⁴¹

you cleaned my boots? *Yours* and *mine* are clean¹³, but *his* are not.
décrotté ¹ *botte f.?* ⁴¹ ⁴¹ *décrotté,* ⁴¹ *ne le sont pas.*

The POSSESSIVE words MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS, OURS, YOURS,
 THEIRS, do not always represent a noun mentioned before them; they
 often come with the verb BE used in the sense of BELONG, instead of
 the PERSONAL pronouns ME, THEE, HIM, HER, US, YOU, THEM; as
 for example, This book is MINE, i. e. belongs to ME; in this sense
 MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS, OURS, YOURS, THEIRS, are expressed by **42**

POSSESSIVE PRONOUN.

à MOI, à TOI, à LUI, à ELLE, à NOUS, à VOUS, à EUX, *m.* à ELLES, *f. as*,
 This book is *mine*. *Ce livre est à MOI*; *i. e.* belongs to *me*.
 is *thine*. *est à TOI*; to *thee*.
 is *his*. *est à LUI*; to *him*.
 is *hers*. *est à ELLE*; to *her*.
 is *ours*. *est à NOUS*; to *us*.
 is *yours*. *est à VOUS*; to *you*.
 is *theirs*. *est à EUX*; *m.* à ELLES; *f.* to *them*.

EXERCISE.

This stick is *mine*, and this umbrella is *his*. It³⁰ is neither
¹ bâton *m.* ⁴² ¹ parapluie *m.* ⁴² *n' est ni*
yours nor *his*, it is *hers*. Is this horse⁵² *yours*? It is not *mine*;
⁴² ⁿⁱ ⁴² ³⁰ ⁴² *Ce cheval est-il*⁵² ⁴² ? ³⁰ ⁵⁵ ⁴²
 it is my cousin's. If it was *yours*, what would you⁵¹ do (with it)?
⁸⁰ (o) ³⁰ ⁴² ³⁹ — *feriez - vous*⁵¹ ^{en}²⁴ ?
 If it was *mine*, I (would sell) it²⁴. I wish it was *ours*.
³⁰ ⁴² *vendrais* ³⁰ (h) *souhaiterais qu'* ³⁰ *fût* ⁴².

43

The POSSESSIVE pronouns *MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS, OURS, YOURS, THEIRS*, by an idiom peculiar to the english language, are sometimes joined to the noun to which they relate by the preposition *OF*; as A FRIEND *OF MINE*; A BOOK *OF YOURS*; *this* POSSESSIVE pronoun can not be expressed by the POSSESSIVE pronoun in french; it must be expressed by the possessive ARTICLE *MES, TES, SES, NOS, VOS, LEURS*, placed BEFORE the noun, which must always be PLURAL in french; as,

A friend of <i>mine</i> .	<i>un de MES amis</i> ;	<i>i. e.</i> one of <i>my</i>	} friends.
of <i>thine</i> .	<i>un de TES amis</i> ;	one of <i>thy</i>	
of <i>his</i> .	<i>un de SES amis</i> ;	one of <i>his</i>	
of <i>hers</i> .	<i>un de SES amis</i> ;	one of <i>her</i>	
of <i>ours</i> .	<i>un de NOS amis</i> ;	one of <i>our</i>	
of <i>yours</i> .	<i>un de VOS amis</i> ;	one of <i>your</i>	
of <i>theirs</i> .	<i>un de LEURS amis</i> ;	one of <i>their</i>	

EXERCISE.

(This is) a relation of *mine*. He is a cousin of *ours*. A brother of
Voici ¹ parent *m.* ⁴³ (1) *est* ⁴³
mine has married a sister of *his*. (That is) a child of *theirs*. I have
⁴³ ^a *épousé* ¹ ⁴³ *Voilà* *enfant* *m.* ⁴²
 seen to-day a scholar of *yours*. I (shall dine) to-morrow with
vu (*aujourd'hui*) *écolier* *m.* ⁴³ *dînerai* *demain* *avec*
 a friend of *ours*. I have found a book of *yours* amongst *mine*.
⁴³ ⁴³ *trouvé* *livre* *m.* ⁴³ *parmi* ⁴¹
 It³⁰ is not *mine*; it is my brother's. It is a friend's of *mine*.
n' est pas ⁴² ³⁰ (o) ⁸⁰ (o) ⁴³

(o) The possession denoted in english by adding *s* to the noun, is expressed in french by *à* before it; as, It is my father's. *Il est à mon père*; Not, *il est de mon père*.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN.

	Masc. SING.	Fem.		Masc. PLUR.	Fem.
THIS,	} CELUI;	CELLE.	THESE,	} CEUX;	CELLES.
THAT;			THOSE;		

The DEMONSTRATIVE pronouns CELUI, CELLE, CEUX, CELLES must be of ⁴⁴ the same gender and number as the noun which they represent; as, He has eaten his apple and *that* of his brother; i. e. *the apple* of, &c. *Il a mangé sa pomme et CELLE de son frère.*

EXERCISE.

She has spoiled her hat and *that* of her brother. He has torn
a gâté ¹ *chapeau m.* ⁴⁴ ¹ *déchiré*
 my gown and *that* of my sister. Bring my shoes and *those* of my
¹ *robe f.* ⁴⁴ *Apportez* ¹ *souliers m.* ⁴⁴
 mother. (Look at) these¹ guineas and *those* which³² he has given us.
Regardez (p) *guinées f.* ⁴⁴ (m) *a données.* ²⁵

N. B. The DEMONSTRATIVE words THIS, THESE; THAT, THOSE imply a local distinction which CELUI, CELLE, CEUX, CELLES do not express; if you wish to make that distinction in french, you must add to these pronouns the adverbs CI, here; and LÀ, there; thus,

THIS; CELUI-ci, CELLE-ci. THESE; CEUX-ci, CELLES-ci.
 THAT; CELUI-là, CELLE-là. THOSE; CEUX-là, CELLES-là; as,

This horse is better than that;

Ce cheval-ci est meilleur que CELUI-là; i. e. this horse here—that there.

EXERCISE.

That¹ horse is young, and *this*⁴⁴ is old, but I prefer *this*⁴⁴ to
 (p) *cheval-là est jeune,* N.B. *vieux, mais préfère* N.B.
*that*⁴⁴. These¹ girls dance much better than *those*⁴⁴.
 N.B. (p) *filles-ci dansent beaucoup* (b) N.B.

If THIS, THAT are not followed by a noun, nor relate to a noun ⁴⁵ mentioned, they imply the word THING understood, and are expressed,

THIS by CECI; THAT, by CELA; as,

This is good, i. e. this thing is good. CECI est bon.

That is better, i. e. that thing is better. CELA est meilleur.

EXERCISE.

Take this. Leave *that*. Have you seen *this*. *That* is very pretty.
Prenez ⁴⁵ *Laissez* ⁴⁵ *vu* ⁴⁵ ⁴⁵ *très joli.*

(p) The demonstrative words THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE, have three different properties.

If THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE are followed by a noun, they have the property of a demonstrative article, and are expressed by CE, CETTE, CES; as,

This bread, that meat, those clothes. Ce pain, CETTE viande, CES habits. See rule 1.

If THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE do not point out a noun after them, but represent one mentioned before, they are pronouns, and are expressed by CELUI, CELLE, CEUX, CELLES, agreeably to the gender and number of the noun which they represent (rule 44.); as,

He has eaten his apple & that of his brother. Il a mangé sa pomme & CELLE de son frère.

If THIS, THAT do not point out a noun after them, nor represent one mentioned before, they may be considered as substantives, and are expressed THIS by CECI, THAT by CELA.

This is good, but that is better. CECI est bon, mais CELA est meilleur. (rule 45.)

46 *ONE, WE, THEY, PEOPLE, used in an indefinite sense, i. e. not relating to any particular person, are expressed by ON.*

N. B. Observe that ON is always the nominative of a verb, and though it represents WE, THEY, PEOPLE, which are plural, it requires the verb in the THIRD PERSON SINGULAR; as,

*One says, } ON dit; i. e. one says.
They say, people say.*

EXERCISE.

*People are never⁵⁵ so happy nor so miserable as they imagine.
⁴⁶ n'est jamais si heureux ni malheureux qu' ⁴⁶ s'imagine.*

*They say that we (are going) to have peace. They say so; but can
⁴⁶ dit que nous allons - avoir ⁷paix. f. ⁴⁶ le²⁴; peut*

*one believe it, when they (are making) such preparations for war?
⁴⁶ croire le²⁴, quand ⁴⁶ fait tant de préparatif pour guerre f.?*

47 *The following and other like INDEFINITE EXPRESSIONS, are also expressed in french by ON, with the verb in its active sense.*

N. B. The verb is rendered active by leaving out the auxiliary verb BE, and making the participle into a verb of the same tense and person as the auxiliary verb is; ex.

*It was said. ON disait; i. e. one said.
It is reported. ON rapporte; one reports.*

EXERCISE.

*It is thought that (there will be) a war. It is said that hostilities
⁴⁷ pense qu' il y aura - guerre. ⁴⁷ dit que ⁷hostilités*

*have already begun. It is supposed that the two fleets have met.
ont déjà commencé. ⁴⁷ s'imagine que deux flotte se sont rencontrées.*

48 *The english PASSIVE VERBS used indefinitely, require the active signification in french, with ON for nominative; but observe that by adding ON to the sentence, the substantive,* which is the nominative of the verb in english, becomes its object in french; as,*

*I have been told that news has been received; turn this sentence thus,
One has told me that one has received news.
ON m²⁵ a dit qu' ON a reçu des nouvelles.*

EXERCISE.

*We have been told that you were married. I have been told so
⁴⁸ dit que étiez marié. ⁴⁸ le²⁴*

*too, but that is not true. I was advised to do it. I have not
aussi, cela n'est pas vrai. ⁴⁸ avait conseillé de faire le²⁴. ⁴⁸ ne a pas*

*been permitted to do it. Do you⁵¹ know what is said of you?
⁴⁸ permis de ²⁴ - savez - vous⁵¹ ⁴⁰ ⁴⁸ dit de ²⁸?*

*What can be said of me? It is said that great news is
³⁹ peut ⁴⁸ dire ²⁸? ⁴⁷ - dit que ¹⁰grandes nouvelles ⁴³*

*expected. Have the letters been received which were expected?
attend. ⁴⁸ lettre ⁴⁸ reçu ³² ⁴⁸ attendait?*

* By substantive is here meant every word which either names or represents a substance.

CHAP. VI.

VERB.

A VERB is a word which expresses either *being* or *acting*.

Being; as, I AM; I EXIST; THOU ART; HE IS; MY BROTHER IS; WE ARE, &c.

Acting; as, I SPEAK; I BLAME; I WALK; I DRINK; I SING, &c.

Every *action* requires an *agent*, i. e. a being to *perform* that action; this *agent*, in grammar, is called the *nominative* of the verb.

The VERB *must be of the same NUMBER and PERSON as the agent or nominative*; this is called *AGREEMENT of the verb with its NOMINATIVE*; ex.

49

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	
1p. I sing.	Je CHANTE.	Nous CHANTONS.	} we, you, they sing.
2p. Thou singest.	Tu CHANTES.	Vous CHANTEZ.	
3p. He sings.	Il CHANTE.	Ils CHANTENT.	
She sings.	Elle CHANTE.	Elles CHANTENT.	
My brother sings.	Mon frère CHANTE.	Mes frères CHANTENT.	
My sister sings.	Ma sœur CHANTE.	Mes sœurs CHANTENT.	

EXERCISE.

I speak. Thou playest. He walks. She dances. My brother
parler. jouer. marcher. danser.

stays. My sister forgets. We blame. You study. They look. My
rester. oublier. blâmer. étudier. regarder.

brothers call or (*are calling*.*). My sisters dispute or (*are disputing*.*)
appeler. disputer.

In a DECLARATIVE sentence, i. e. when a question is not asked, the NOMINATIVE of the verb is placed in french, as in english, BEFORE the verb; as,

50

I sing.	Je CHANTE.	Nous CHANTONS.	} we, you, they sing.
Thou singest.	Tu CHANTES.	Vous CHANTEZ.	
He sings.	Il CHANTE.	Ils CHANTENT.	
She sings.	Elle CHANTE.	Elles CHANTENT.	
My brother sings.	Mon frère CHANTE.	Mes frères CHANTENT.	
My sister sings.	Ma sœur CHANTE.	Mes sœurs CHANTENT.	

EXERCISE.

I speak⁴⁹ french. Thou speakest french. He speaks french. She
parler français. parler⁴⁹ parler⁴⁹

speaks french. My brother speaks french. My sister speaks french.
parler⁴⁹ parler⁴⁹ parler⁴⁹

We speak french. You speak french. They speak french. My bro-
parler⁴⁹ parler⁴⁹ parler⁴⁹

thers speak french. My sisters speak french. They speak it very well.
parler⁴⁹ parler⁴⁹ parler le²⁴ très bien.

But when the sentence is INTERROGATIVE, i. e. when a QUESTION is asked, it is necessary to consider whether the NOMINATIVE of the verb is a NOUN or a PRONOUN.

* These two modes of expression are rendered in the same manner in french. See the conjugations, page 112 and following.

VERB.

51 *If, when a QUESTION is asked, the NOMINATIVE of the verb is one of the pronouns JE, TU, IL, ELLE, NOUS, VOUS, ILS, ELLES, ON or CE, these pronouns are placed in french, as the corresponding words are in english, immediately AFTER the verb; as,*

Do (q) <i>I</i> sing well?	<i>Chante - JE bien ?</i>	i. e. sing <i>I</i> well?
Doest <i>thou</i> sing well?	<i>Chantes - TU bien ?</i>	singest <i>thou</i> well?
Does <i>he</i> sing well?	<i>Chante-t*-IL bien ?</i>	sings <i>he</i> well?
Does <i>she</i> sing well?	<i>Chante-t*-ELLE bien ?</i>	sings <i>she</i> well?
Do <i>we</i> sing well?	<i>Chantons-NOUS bien ?</i>	sing <i>we</i> well?
Do <i>you</i> sing well?	<i>Chantez - VOUS bien ?</i>	sing <i>you</i> well?
Do <i>they</i> sing well?	<i>Chantent-ILS bien ?</i>	sing <i>they</i> well?
Do <i>they</i> sing well?	<i>Chantent-ELLES bien ?</i>	sing <i>they</i> well?

EXERCISE.

Do *I* speak⁴⁹ french well⁵³? Doest *thou* speak french well? Does
 (q) ⁵¹ parler français bien† ? (q) ⁵¹ parler⁴⁹ ⁵³ ? (q)
he speak french well? Does *she* speak french well? Do *we* speak french
⁵¹ parler⁴⁹ ⁵³ ? ⁵¹ parler⁴⁹ ⁵³ ? ⁵¹ parler⁴⁹
 well? Do *you* speak french well? Do *they* speak french well?
⁵³ ? ⁵¹ parler⁴⁹ ⁵³ ? ⁵¹ parler⁴⁹ ⁵³ ?

52 *If, when we ask a QUESTION, the NOMINATIVE of the verb is a NOUN, that noun is placed BEFORE the verb in french, the same as when the sentence is not interrogative; but to shew that a QUESTION is ASKED, one of the personal pronouns IL, ELLE, ILS, ELLES, agreeably to the GENDER and NUMBER of the noun, is placed immediately AFTER the VERB; as,*

Does <i>my</i> brother sing	<i>Mon frère chante-t-IL bien ?</i>	i. e. <i>my</i> b. sings <i>he</i> ?
Does <i>my</i> sister sing	<i>Ma sœur chante-t-ELLE bien ?</i>	<i>my</i> s. sings <i>she</i>
Do <i>my</i> brothers sing	<i>Mes frères chantent-ILS bien ?</i>	<i>my</i> b. sing <i>they</i>
Do <i>my</i> sisters sing	<i>Mes sœurs chantent-ELLES bien ?</i>	<i>my</i> s. sing <i>they</i>

EXERCISE.

Does *my* brother speak⁴⁹ french well⁵³? Does *my* sister speak french
 (q) ⁵² parler français bien† ? (q) ⁵² parler⁴⁹
 well? Do *my* brothers speak french well? Do *my* sisters speak
⁵³ ? (q) ⁵² parler⁴⁹ ⁵³ ? (q) ⁵² parler⁴⁹
 french well? Does your *son* go to school now? Does your *daughter*
⁵³ ? (q) ⁵² va à l'école à présent ? ⁵²
 go to school now? Do your *sons* go to school now? Do your
 va ? (q) ⁵² vont ?
daughters go to school now? Do the *boys*⁵² make any progress?
⁵² vont ? (q) *garçons* font ⁵ progrès plus.
 Do the *girls*⁵² make any progress? Is all your *family*⁵² well?
 filles ⁹ ? se porte toute *famille* f. ?

(q) The auxiliary words *do, did, shall, will, should, would, may, might* are not expressed in french; their meaning is implied in the termination of the verb.

* When *IL, ELLE, ON* come after a verb ending with a vowel, - t - is placed between these pronouns and the verb to soften the pronunciation.

† Place the adverb *bien* before *français*; thus, *bien français*. See 53 rule.

CHAP. VII.

ADVERB

An ADVERB is a word added to a verb to denote the manner in which an action is performed; as, *I walk* FAST; *He walks* SLOWLY; *you write* WELL; *she writes* BADLY; the words *FAST*, *SLOWLY*, *WELL*, *BADLY*, which denote the manner in which the action of the verbs *WALK* and *WRITE* is performed, are ADVERBS.

The ADVERB being to the verb what the ADJECTIVE is to the noun, *i. e.* expressing some circumstance of the verb, must be placed immediately after the verb which it modifies; as,

I saw your sister yesterday. *Je vis* HIER votre sœur.
 She speaks french very well. *Elle parle* TRÈS BIEN français.
 I will come to see her soon. *Je viendrai* BIENTÔT la voir.*

EXERCISE.

You read french very well. I wish to learn it²⁴ (very much.)
lisez français m. très bien⁵³. *souhaite* - *apprendre* ³⁰ fort⁵³.
 You will soon⁵³ know it²⁴, if you read the rules attentively⁵³. I (will do)
 - *bientôt saurez* ³⁰, *lisez* règles attentivement. *ferai*
 what you have recommended to me carefully⁵³. We (shall go) into
⁴⁰ *recommandé* - ²⁵ *soigneusement*. *irons* à
 the country to-morrow. I hope you (will come) to see us often⁵³.
campagne f. *demain*⁵³. *espère* que *viendrez* - *voir* ²⁴ souvent.

Some ADVERBS may be placed in english either BEFORE or AFTER the verb which they modify; as, I OFTEN see him, or I see him OFTEN. I VERY SELDOM speak to him, or I speak to him VERY SELDOM; but the adverbs which represent them in french, must always be placed AFTER the verb; as,

I often see him. *Je le vois* SOUVENT.
 I sometimes meet her. *Je la rencontre* QUELQUEFOIS.
 I seldom speak to them. *Je leur parle* RAREMENT.

EXERCISE.

You always⁵⁴ walk alone. I seldom⁵⁴ go to town. I generally
Vous toujours vous promenez seul. *rarement* vais à la ville. *ordinairement*
 go into the country. I often⁵⁴ think of you. You seldom⁵⁴ come
vais à *campagne* f, *souvent* pense à ²⁹ *rarement* venez
 to see us now. I sometimes think that you soon⁵⁴ (will forget)
 - *voir* ²⁴ à présent. *quelquefois*⁵⁴ pense que *bientôt* oublierez
 us. You certainly⁵⁴ can not think so. I sincerely⁵⁴ wish that
²⁴ *certainement* pouvez ⁵⁵ penser le²⁴ *sincèrement* souhaite que
 you may succeed. I heartily⁵⁴ wish you the same.
puissiez réussir. *de bon cœur* souhaite ²⁴ la même chose.

* The perspicuity of a sentence often depends on the placing of the adverbs. These sentences for example; *J'aime* BEAUCOUP à lire, and *J'aime* à lire BEAUCOUP, though formed of the same words, by changing the place of the adverb *beaucoup*, express two different ideas. *J'aime* BEAUCOUP à lire; means, I am fond of reading; *J'aime* à lire BEAUCOUP; means, I like to read a great deal.

ADVERB.

55 The NEGATIVE adverbs

NO, NOT, are NE—PAS, NE—POINT
 NO MORE, } NE—PLUS.
 NOT ANY MORE; }
 NEVER; NE—JAMAIS.
 BUT LITTLE, } NE—GUÈRE.
 VERY LITTLE; }
 BY NO MEANS; NE—NULLEMENT.

NE is always placed BEFORE the verb, and PAS, POINT, PLUS, JAMAIS, GUÈRE, NULLEMENT are placed immediately AFTER the verb; as,

I do not like that woman. Je n'aime pas cette femme.
 I have never liked her. Je ne l'ai jamais aimée.
 I will not speak to her any more. Je ne lui parlerai plus.

EXERCISE.

Do not you⁵¹ know that man? Have you never seen him before?
 - 55 connaissez 2 'homme? Avez 51 55 vu 25 auparavant?
 Were you not in his company yesterday? I know him but little.
 étiez 51 55 à 1 compagnie f. hier⁵³ ? connais 24 55
 I do not wish to see him any more. I by no means consent (to it.)
 - 55 souhaite - 24 55 53 consens y²⁴.

CHAP. VIII.

PREPOSITION.

PREPOSITIONS are words which serve to connect other words together, in order to form a sentence; as,

I am going to London WITH my father.

The words TO, WITH, which connect the substantives, London, father to the verb GO, are called PREPOSITIONS.

56 The PREPOSITIONS may often be placed in english either BEFORE or AFTER the substantive which they govern; as,

WITH whom were you, or whom were you WITH? OF what do you speak, or what do you speak OF? In french the PREPOSITIONS must always be placed BEFORE the substantive which they govern; as,

With whom were you? } AVEC qui étiez-vous?
 or whom were you with? }
 To whom did you speak? } À qui avez-vous parlé?
 or whom did you speak to? }
 Of what are you speaking? } DE quoi parlez-vous?
 or what are you speaking of? }

EXERCISE.

What country do you come from? What people did you come
 38 pays m. - 51 venez de⁵⁶ ? 38 gens f. êtes 51 venu
 with? What news do you speak of? Which road shall
 avec⁵⁶? 38 nouvelles f. 51 parlez de⁵⁶? 35 chemin m. -
 we go by⁵⁶? Which of these houses shall we go to? What
 51 irons par? 36 1 maisons f. - 51 irons à⁵⁶? 39
 are you laughing at? It is what you may depend upon.
 51 riez de⁵⁶? C' est 39 pouvez compter sur⁵⁶.

EXERCISE on the FOUR conjugations ER, IR, OIR, RE ;

And RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE on the foregoing rules.*

VERBS in *er*. †

AFFIRMATIVELY. I like⁴⁹ wine. Thou askest⁴⁹ for beer. He
aimer † *vin* m. *demander* † - ⁹*bière* f.
 gives⁴⁹ me water. We are looking⁴⁹ for flowers. You go⁴⁹ to see
donner † ²⁴ ⁹*eau*. (r) *chercher* † - ⁹*fleur*. *aller* † - *voir*
 them. They are looking⁴⁹ at us.—I was helping⁴⁹ him. He
²⁴ (r) *regarder* † - ²⁴. (r) *aider* † *lui*²⁴.
 was disturbing me. We were studying our lessons. You were
*troubler*⁴⁹ ²⁴ (r) *étudier*⁴⁹ ¹ *leçon*.
 singing a song. They were playing in the corner.—I brought⁴⁹
chanter ¹ *chanson*. f. *jouer* *dans* *coin*. m. *apporter* †
 him²⁴ a book. He admired it²⁴ much. We invited them to stay.
 (f) *livre*. m. *admirer* ³⁰ (h) *beaucoup*. *inviter* ²⁴ à *rester*.
 You went away too soon. They arrived in time.—I shall dine⁴⁹
Vous vous en aller - *trop tôt* *arriver* à *tems*. (q) *dîner*
 with you. He will send it²⁴ me. We will accompany you. You
avec ²⁸. (q) *envoyer* † ²⁹ *accompagner* ²⁴
 will sup with us. They will bring it²⁴ to them.—I should like⁴⁹
souper ²⁸. *apporter* - ²⁹. (q) *aimer*
 to see it²⁴. He would give it you, if you asked him²⁴ for it²⁹.
 à *voir* le. (q) *donner* ²⁴ ²⁹, *si* *demandiez* (f) - le.
 We should stay with you, if we had time. You would avoid his
rester ²⁸, *avons* ⁷*tems*. m. *éviter* ¹
 company, if you knew him. They would pay them, if they had
compagnie, f. *connaissiez* ²⁴. *payer* ²⁴, *avaient*
 money. They would lend them²⁴ some, if they asked them²⁴ for it²⁹.
⁹*argent*. *prêter* (f) (g) ²⁹, *demandaient* (f) - le.

INTERROGATIVELY. Do I speak⁴⁹ too fast? Doest thou advise me
 (q) ⁵¹ *parler* *trop vite*? (q) ⁵¹ *conseiller* ²⁴
 to do it²⁴? Does he converse well? Do we spend (too much)
de faire le? (q) ⁵¹ *converser* *bien*? ⁵¹ *dépenser* *trop*
 money⁹? Do you live in town now? Do they call us?
argent^{N.B.}? ⁵¹ *demeurer* à *la ville* f. à *présent*? ⁵¹ *appeller* ²⁴?
 Was I striking too hard? Was he speaking french? Were we
 (r) ⁵¹ *frapper*⁴⁹ *trop fort*? ⁵¹ *parler* *français*? (r) ⁵¹
 going too far? Were you eating fruit? Were they scolding you?
aller *trop loin*? ⁵¹ *manger* ⁹*fruit* m.? ⁵¹ *gronder* ²⁴?
 —Did I hurt⁴⁹ him? Did he shut the door? Did we
 (q) ⁵¹ *blessé* ²⁴? ⁵¹ *fermer* ¹ *porte* f.? ⁵¹

* The learner must peruse the verbs before he writes these exercises.

† Make the same difference in the verbs which are here given, as is marked in *italic* characters in the verb *BLAMER*, page 112, agreeably to *tense*, *number*, and *person*.‡ See the irregular verb *ENVOYER*, page 117.(r) Do not express the auxiliary words *be*, *am*, *art*, *is*, *are*, *was*, *wast*, *were*, when they are followed by the present participle in *ing*. Consider them only as signs which indicate the tense in which the verb which follows them must be in french.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE *on the foregoing rules.*VERBS in *er*.

gain any thing? *Did* you invite them? *Did* they insult you?
gagner quelque chose ? (q) inviter 24 ? insulter 24

—*Shall* I begin⁴⁹ it²⁴ again? *Will* he bring it with him?
(q) 51 recommencer le — ? (q) apporter 24 23

Shall we divide it amongst us? *Will* you think of me? *Will*
partager 24 entre 28 ? penser à 28 ?

they take it²⁴ along with them? —*Should* I lend it him²⁹, it
emporter le — avec 28 ? (q) 51 prêter 24 (f),

he asked me for it? *Would* he stay with us, if we asked him?
demandait 24 — 29 ? (q) rester avec 28, en priions 24

Should we dance, if it was not so late? *Would* you shew it²⁴ me,
(q) danser, (i) était 55 si tard ? (q) montrer 39,

if I called at (your house)? *Would* they change it, if I sent it
passais chez vous ? (q) changer 24, si renvoyais

back to them? *Would* they forgive me, if I begged their pardon?
— — 29 ? pardonner 24, demandais leur 24 pardon ?

NEGATIVELY. I do not blame you. He does not deny it. We
(q) 55 blâmer 49 24 (q) 55 nier 24

do not breakfast so soon. You do not give me money⁸ enough.
55 déjeuner 49 si tôt. 55 donner 24 argent^{N.B.} assez.

They do not cost (so much.)—I was not touching it. He was
55 coûter tant. (r) 55 toucher 49 y 24.

not taking it away. We were not disputing. You were not listening
emporter le 24 — (r) disputer 49. écouter

to me. They were not looking at you.—I did not speak to
— 24 regarder — 24. (q) 55 parler 49

her. She did not look at me. We did not shew it to them.
24 regarder — 24 montrer 24 29

You did not eat any²⁴. They did not invite us.—I shall not stay⁴⁹
manger (g) inviter 24 (q) 55 rester*

long. He will not incommode you. We shall not play to-night.
long tems. (q) incommoder 24 jouer ce soir.

You will not fail to ask for it²⁴. They will not shew it²⁴ you.
manquer de demander — le. montrer 29

I should not like⁴⁹ to go there. He would not borrow money⁸, if he
(q) 55 aimer à aller y 24. (q) emprunter argent^{N.B.}, s'

had any²⁴. We should not despise others, if we had no pride⁸.
avait (g) mépriser les autres, si n'avions pas orgueil^{N.B.}

You would never pardon him, if you knew what he has done.
55 pardonner lui 24, saviez 40 fait

They would not blame me, if they knew the pains I have taken.
blâmer 24, savaient peines (n) prises.

NEGATIVELY and INTERROGATIVELY. Do I not begin⁴⁹ right?
(q) 51 55 commencer bien ?

Does she not dance well? Do we not incommode you? Do you
(q) 51 55 danser bien ? 51 57 incommoder 24 ? 51

* See note *, page 110.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE *on the foregoing rules.*VERBS in *er*.

- not breakfast this morning? *Do they not deserve it?—Was I*
⁵³ *déjeuner* ¹ *matin m. ?* ⁵¹ *mériter* *le²⁴ ? (r)* ⁵¹
- not relating it right? *Was he not shaking the table? Were we not*
⁵³ *raconter* ²⁴ *bien ?* ⁵¹ *remuer* *table f. ? (r)* ⁵¹
- walking too fast? *Were you not speaking to me? Were they not*
marcher trop vite ? ⁵¹ *parler* *— 24 ?* ⁵¹
- asking you for it²⁹?—*Did I not shut the door? Did he not give*
demander ²⁴ *— le ? (q)* ⁵¹ ⁵⁵ *fermer* *porte f. ?* ⁵¹ *donner*
- her²⁴ some? *Did we not stay too long? Did you not encourage*
^(f) ^(g)²⁹ ? ⁵¹ *rester trop long tems ?* ⁵¹ *encourager*
- hem? *Did they not accompany you?—Shall I not bring it²⁴ you?*
²⁴ ? ⁵¹ *accompagner* ²⁴ ? ^{(q) ⁵¹ ⁵⁵ *apporter le* ²⁹ ?}
- Will he not marry her? Shall we not sing a song? Will you not*
^{(q) ⁵¹ *épouser* ²⁴ ? ⁵¹ *chanter* *chanson f. ?* ⁵⁵}
- grant him²⁴ that favour? *Will they not refuse it²⁴ me?—Would not*
accorder (f) ¹ *grâce f. ?* *refuser le* ²⁹ ? ^{(q) ⁵⁵}
- that book cost less in London than here? *Would not your father*
⁵² *coûter moins à Londres qu' ici ? (q)* ⁵⁵ ⁵²
- send him to France, if he was older? *Would he not go himself,*
*envoyer** ²⁴ ⁶ *était âgé¹⁸ ? (q)* ⁵¹ *aller† lui-même,*
- if he had time? *Would not your sister go with him, if he went?*
avait ⁷ *tems m. ? (q)* ⁵² *aller†* ²⁸ , *s' il y allait ?*

VERBS in *ir. ‡*

- REGULAR. *I am finishing the work I had begun. He is building*
^(r) *finir* ² *ouvrage (n)* *avais commencé.* ^(r) *bâtir*
- a new¹⁶ house. *We are demolishing ours. You are embellishing it²⁴*
neuve maison. f. (r) démolir ⁴¹ *embellir* ³⁰
- much. *They are filling it²⁴ with furniture.—I was reflecting on*
beaucoup. *remplir* ³⁰ *de meubles.* ^(r) *réfléchir* *à*
- what I have to do. *He was languishing in misery. We were*
⁴⁰ *à faire.* *languir* *dans* *misère. f.* ^(r)
- warning them of the danger. *You were not applauding what they*
avertir ²⁴ *danger. m.* ⁵⁵ *applaudir* *à* ⁴⁰
- have done. *Were they not betraying us?—I punished him severely.*
fait. ^(r) ⁵¹ ⁵⁵ *trahir* ²⁴ ? *punir* ²⁴ *sévèrement.*
- Did he not accomplish his purpose? Did we not obey your orders?*
^{(q) ⁵¹ ⁵⁵ *accomplir* *dessein m. ? (q)* ⁵¹ *obéir à* ¹ *ordre ?*}
- You *did* not choose a good colour. *They matched them as well as*
^(q) ⁵⁵ *choisir* *bonne couleur. f.* *assortir* ²⁴ *aussi bien qu'*
- they could.—*I will banish him from my house. That will rejoice*
parent. ^(q) *bannir* ²⁴ *de* ¹ ⁴⁵ *réjouir*
- us (very much.) *We will bless you (as long) as we live. You*
²⁴ *beaucoup.* *bénir* ²⁴ *tant que vivrons.*

* See the irregular verb ENVOYER, page 117.

† See ALLER, page 116.

‡ See page 118 the regular verb FINIR, and make the same difference in these verbs.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE *on the foregoing rules.*VERBS in *ir.*

REGULAR. *will* fill what you can find. That *will* not impoverish
emplir ⁴⁰ *pourez* trouver. *appauvrir*
 them much.—I *would* cure him, if I could. You *would* finish
²⁴ *beaucoup.* (q) *guérir* ²⁴, *si* *pouvais.* *finir*
 at once our misfortunes. We *would* abolish it, if we could. You
tout d'un coup ¹ *malheur.* *abolir* ²⁴, *pouvions.*
would divert them much. Your brothers *would* succeed better, if
divertir ²⁴ ¹ *réussir* (b),
 they were more careful. *Will* this tree⁵² blossom this year? *Did*
étaient *soigneur.* (q) ² *arbre m. fleurir* ¹ *année f.?* (q)
 it³⁰ blossom last¹⁶ year? Young trees seldom⁵⁴ blossom two years
⁵¹ *fleurir* *dernière* ⁷ ? ⁷ *Jeunes* *rarement* *fleurir* *deux*
 together. *Do* the fruits ripen well? *Do* they⁵¹ not often⁵⁴ wither on
 (de suite.) (q) ⁵² *m. mûrir* ? ³⁰ *souvent* *se flétrir* à
 the tree? *Do* they⁵¹ not commonly⁵⁴ (grow rotten)? (Here are) several
² ? (q) ³⁰ *ordinairement* *pouvoir* ? *Voici* *plusieurs*
 sorts of fruit; choose which you like best. Fill† your basket
sorte f. ⁹ ; *choisir*† ³⁷ *aimer le mieux.* *Remplir* *corbeille f*
 (with it.) Enjoy it while it *will* last. We *will* supply you
*en*²⁵. *Jouir* † *en*²⁶ *pendant que* ³⁰ *durer.* *fournir* ²⁴
 with pears and apples, as fast as they *will* ripen. The children
 — ⁹ *poire f.* ⁹ *pomme f., aussi vite qu'* ³⁰ *mûrir.* *enfant m.*
will rejoice (very much,) for they are very⁵⁴ fond of fruit, and it
se rejouir *beaucoup,* *car* — *beaucoup aimer* — *fruit,* ³⁰
 is growing dearer every day. I hope that they *will* obey you, for
 — *encherir* — *tous les jours.* *espérer qu'* *obéir* ²⁴, *car*
 children who disobey their parents seldom⁵⁴ succeed:
⁷ ⁵² *désobéir* à ¹ *parent* *rarement* *réussir.*

IRREGULAR. I *am* perusing this book. Does it⁵¹ belong to you?
 (r) *parcourir** ¹ *livre. m.* (q) ³⁰ *appartenir** — ²⁴ ?
 It belongs to a friend of mine. Run† fast. Why do not you run
³⁰ *appartenir** ⁴³ *Courir vite.* *Pourquoi* ⁵⁵ *courir*
 faster? We are running as hard as we can. For whom are
vite ¹⁸ ? (r) *courir* ²⁰ *vite* ²⁰ *pouvons.* *Pour* ³⁴ (r)
 you gathering these flowers? We are gathering them for your
cueillir ¹ *fleur* ? *cueillir* ²⁴ *pour*
 mother. I *will* offer them to her, that she *may* remember me.
offrir ²⁴ — ²⁹, *afin qu'* *se souvenir de* ²⁸
 Does not your mother hate me? Why *should* she hate you?
 (q) ⁵² *haïr* ²⁴ ? ⁵¹ *haïr* ²⁴ ?
 Because she never comes to see us. He maintains that he has not
Parceque ⁵⁵ *venir* — *voir* ²⁴. *soutenir* *qu'* ⁵⁵
 done it, but I firmly⁵⁴ believe that he lies. Was your sister asleep,
fait ²⁵, *fermement crois* *qu'* *mentir.* (r) ⁵² *dormir,*
 when we set out? They came in as we were going out.
quand *partir* — ? *entrer* — *comme* (r) *sortir* —

* See the table of the irregular verbs in *ir*, p. 120.

† 2d person imperative

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE *on the foregoing rules.*VERBS *in ir.*

IRREGULAR. They *were* running to us, when we discovered
accourir vers ²³, *découvrir*

them. I came yesterday to see you, but you were not in. I went out
²⁴ *venir pour* ²⁴, *étiez* ⁵⁵ *y*²⁴. *sortir* -

early in the morning, and I *did* not return till late. I met
de bon - - *matin, m.* (q) *ne** *revenir que** *tard.* *rencontrer*

your father, and he consented to every thing that I proposed to
consentir à tout ce que proposer

him. *Did* my father offer you any money? He offered me all
²⁴ (q) ⁵² *offrir* ²⁴ ⁹ *argent ?* *offrir* ²⁴ *tout*

the money that I should want. We went out (as soon) as the
dont aurais besoin. *sortir* - *aussitôt que*

dinner was over. You *did* not set out so soon as you intended.
diner m. fut fini. *partir* - *si tôt que* (*aviez dessein.*)

They detained us a good while at the inn. At what time *will*
retenir ²⁴ - *long tems à* ² *auberge.* *à* ³⁸ *heure f.* (q)

you set out to-morrow? We *shall* set out as soon as we are
partir - *demain ?* (q) *partir* - *aussitôt que serons*

ready. When *will* you return? We *shall* not return before the
*prêt*¹³. *Quand revenir ?* ⁵⁵ *revenir avant*

end of next¹⁶ week. *Shall* I help you to a glass of wine?
fin f. prochaine ⁷*semaine. f.* *servir* ²⁴ - *verre m.* ⁸ *vin ?*

Help yourself first. I *will* help myself after you. I *will*
*Servir vous*²⁶ *le premier.* *servir me*²⁴ *après* ²⁸

never consent (to it.) You grow more ceremonious every day.
⁵⁵ *consentir y* ²⁴. *devenir* *cérémonieux* *touts les jours.*

Why *do* you not come to see us oftener? Why *does* not
Pourquoi ⁵⁵ *venir* - *voir* ²⁴ *souvent* ¹⁸ ?

your sister come with you? When *will* your brother return from
⁵² *venir avec* ²³ ? ⁵² *revenir de*

his journey? *Will* he not set out as soon as he hears that
voyage m. ? ⁵⁵ *partir* - *aussitôt qu'* *apprendra que*

you are going (to be married?) *Will* your mother consent to your
aller vous marier ? ⁵² *consentir*

marriage? *Will* she not obtain your father's consent? If I were.
mariage ? ⁵⁵ *obtenir* ¹¹ *consentement m. ?* *étais*

in your place, I *would* not go out so soon. *Would* my brother
à place, (q) ⁵⁵ *sortir* - *si tôt.* (q) ⁵²

obtain that place, if he asked for it²⁴? *Should* the children go
obtenir ¹ *place, f.* *demandait* - ³⁰ (h) ? ⁵² *sortir*

out, if it was fine weather? It is too late; they *would* not
 -, *s' il faisait beau tems ?* (i) *trop tard ;* ⁵⁵

return in time for supper. They would not remember it²⁴.
revenir à tems pour souper. ⁵⁵ *se souvenir en*²⁹.

They *would* soon²⁴ feel the want (of it.)
bientôt sentir besoin m. en ²⁴.

* *Ne que*, without *pas*, expresses *not till*.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE *on the foregoing rules.*VERBS in *oir*.*

Does that man²³ owe you any thing? He owes me a
 (q) ² homme devoir ²⁴ quelque chose ? devoir ²⁴ -
 (great deal) of money. (How much) does he owe you? I do not
 beaucoup ⁸ argent. m. Combien devoir ²⁴ ? ⁵⁵
 know exactly; but I can get nothing from him. You should tell
 savoir au juste; ne pouvoir tirer rien de ²⁸ devoir (s) dire
 him²⁴ that you want it. You should get him arrested. He is
 (f) que avez besoin en²⁴. (s) faire ²⁴ arrêter. devoir (t)
 to pay me part (of it) in a day or two. If you receive it²⁴
 - payer ²⁴ une partie ²⁴ en ²⁹ dans jour m. ou deux. recevoir ³⁰
 to-morrow, will you lend me eighteen or twenty pounds? I
 demain, vouloir prêter ²⁴ dix huit ou vingt livres sterling?
 can not⁵⁵ lend you (so much.) I can lend you²⁴ ten or twelve
 pouvoir prêter ²⁴ tant. pouvoir prêter vous en²⁹ dix douze.
 Lend me what you can. Were we not to take a walk this
 Prêter ²⁶ ⁴⁰ pouvez. Devoir (t) ⁵⁵ - faire un tour de promenade ⁴
 evening? Yes, we were; but the master will not let me (go out)
 soir m. ? Oui, le devoir (t); vouloir laisser ²⁴ sortir
 before I have said my lesson. Can you say it²⁴ now? I do
 (avant que) aie dit ¹ leçon. f. Pouvoir dire ³⁰ à présent ?
 not know whether I can say it²⁴ or not; but I knew it²⁴, when
 savoir si pouvoir dire ³⁰ ou non; savais ³⁰, quand
 I came in. You do not know it²⁴ yet. I shall know it²⁴ in a little⁹
 suis entré. savoir ³⁰ encore. savoir ³⁰ en - peu^{N.B.}
 time. I can say it²⁴ now. I see your sister who is coming
 tems. pouvoir dire ³⁰ à présent. voir ³² (r) venir
 to help us. We do not see her often, but we sometimes hear
 - aider ²⁴ voir ²⁴ souvent, quelquefois ⁵⁴ recevoir
 (from her.) You shall see her to-morrow, if you will, for I
 (de ses nouvelles.) voir ²⁴ demain, vouloir, car
 know that she intends to call upon you. If you will believe me,
 savoir qu' (a dessein) de passer chez ²⁸ vouloir croire ²⁴,
 we will go. I think that it will rain soon. If it rains, do
 s'en aller. penser pleuvoir bientôt. pleuvoir,
 you know what we will do? We will sit down under that large
 savoir ⁴⁰ ferons ? s'asseoir sous (p) gros¹⁷
 tree, until the rain is over. I can not⁵⁵ stay. I do not
 arbre m. (jusqu' à ce que) pluie f. soit passée. pouvoir rester.
 know what I must do. It will not rain much. It is only a shower.
 savoir ⁴⁰ devoir faire. pleuvoir Ce n'est qu' ¹ ondée. f.

* See the table of verbs in *oir*, page 134, 135.

(s) Should, denoting duty, or the necessity of doing a thing, is expressed by the conditional of DEVOIR; as, You should or ought to do it. Vous DEVRIEZ le faire.

(t) The present tense of the verb BE, *am, art, is, are*, and the imperfect *was, were*, followed by the infinitive of a verb, are expressed by the same tenses of DEVOIR; as, I am to go there. Je DOIS y aller. I was to go there. Je DEVAIS y aller.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE on the foregoing rules.

VERBS in *re*.*

What *are* you doing there? I *am* waiting for my brother
³⁹ (r) ⁵¹ faire là ? (r) attendre -

He *is* learning his lesson in the garden. If you see him,
 (r) apprendre ¹ leçon f. dans jardin. m. voir ²¹,

tell him²⁶ that I *am* waiting for him here. I hear you. Why
 dire (f) que attendre ²⁴ ici, entendre ²⁴. Pourquoi

do you interrupt¹ me so often? Do you pretend to know that better
 (q) interrompre ²⁴ si souvent? prétendre - savoir ⁴⁵ (b)

than I do? I *will* not interrupt you (any more.) These people
 que ²³ - ? (q) ne interrompre ²⁴ plus ⁵⁵ ¹ gens

sell ¹⁰very bad¹⁷ wine. They sell it²⁴ very dear. I never drink
 vendre très mauvais vin. m. vendre ³⁰ cher. ⁵⁵ boire

wine⁹, when they⁴⁶ sell it²⁴ so dear. Do you hear that man?
 vin N.B., quand N.B. vendre ³⁰ si (q) entendre ² ?

He *is* speaking to us. I hear him, but I *do* not understand what
 (r) parler - ²⁴, entendre ²⁴, comprendre ⁴⁰

he says. I *was* answering your letter, when I heard that you were
 dire. (r) répondre à lettre, quand (ai appris) que étiez

in town. You surprise us quite, for we *did* not expect you
 en ville. surprendre ²⁴ (tout à fait,) car (q) attendre ²⁴

so soon. I came down as soon as I heard you. If I return
 is tôt. descendre - aussitôt que entendre ²⁴. rendre

them²⁴ their goods, *will* they return me my money? They *would*
 (f) marchandise, rendre ²⁴ ² argent ?

not return you one half (of it.) I *would* lose the whole rather
 rendre ²⁴ la moitié ²⁴ en ²⁰. perdre tout m. plutôt

than submit to such terms. What *are* you learning now?
 que (de me soumettre) à ¹⁰telles conditions. ³⁹ (r) apprendre à présent ?

I *am* learning mathematicks. Do you understand them well? I
 apprendre ⁷ mathématiques. entendre ²⁴ bien ?

understand them pretty well. If you take ⁹ pains, you *will* make
 entendre ²⁴ assez bien. prendre de la peine, faire

great¹⁷ progress in a short⁸ time. Does your sister learn ⁷music
¹⁰ progrès en - peu N.B. (q) ⁵² apprendre musique

still ⁵³? No; she *is* learning french⁷ and geography. Do you read
 encore ? Non ; (r) apprendre français m. ⁷géographie. f. (q) lire

french¹⁶ books now? I *am* reading Marmontel's tales. I *do* not
⁹livre à présent ? (r) lire ¹¹ ⁷contes.

like tales. I like plays. Do you translate any book? I translate
 aimer ⁷ ⁷comédies. traduire quelque ? traduire

english¹⁶ histories into french. I pity you much. Why *do* you
 anglais ¹³ ⁹histoire f. en français. plaindre ²⁴ fort. Pourquoi

pity me? Because you are losing your time, and you displease all
 plaindre ²⁴ ? Parceque (r) perdre terns, et que déplaire à tout¹³

your friends. I *do* not fear them. I *do* not depend upon them.
¹ ami. m. craindre ²⁴. dépendre d' ²⁸.

* See the table of verbs in *re*, p. 146, 147, 148.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE *on the foregoing rules.*

VERBS in re.

I *will* do what I think proper. That man *is* always⁵⁴ laughing.
faire ⁴⁰ *croire* à propos. ² (r) *toujours* *rire*.

Do you know what he *is* laughing at? He *does* not know it²⁴
savoir ³⁹ (r) *rire* *de* ⁵³? ⁵⁵ *savoir* *le*

himself. Let us drink* your friend's health. What *shall* we drink?
lui-même. - - *boire* à ¹¹ ⁷santé. f. ³⁹ (q) *boire*?

Drink a glass of wine. I *will* drink a glass of beer. I *will* not
Boire † *verre* m. ⁸ (q) *boire* ⁸ *bière.* ⁵⁵

permit you to do that. Promise me not to do it²⁴. Well! I
permettre ²⁴ *de faire* ⁴⁵ *Promettre* † ²⁹ *de ne pas* *faire* *le.* *Eh bien!*

promise it to you. You always promise, but you seldom⁵⁴ keep
promettre ²⁴ - ²⁹ *toujours*⁵⁴ *promettre,* *mais* *rarement* *tenir*

your word. I *do* not believe what he says. Why *do* not you
parole. ⁵⁵ *croire* ⁴⁰ *dire.* *Pourquoi* ⁵⁵ ⁵¹

believe him? Do you mean to say that he lies? I *do* not say
croire ²⁴ ? ⁵¹ *vouloir* - *dire* *qu'* *mentir* ? ⁵⁵ *dire*

so; I only⁵⁴ say that people often⁵⁴ promise what they⁴⁵ do not
cela; *seulement.* *dire* *que* ⁴⁵ N.B. *souvent* *promettre* ⁴⁰ N.B. ⁵⁵

intend to perform. What *are* you sewing there? I *am* making a
avoir *dessein* *de faire.* ³⁹ (r) *coudre* *là* ? (r) *faire* ¹

gown for a sister of mine. For which of your sisters *are* you
robe f. *pour* ⁴³ ³⁶ ¹ (r)

making it²⁴? For the youngest. You *are* always⁵⁴ doing and undoing the
faire ³⁰ ? *jeune* ²¹ *toujours* *faire* *défaire* ¹

same thing over again. Put out one of these candles. Put† these
même *chose* f. - - *Eteindre* † *une* (p) *chandelles.* f. *Remettre* (p)

books into their places again. Why *do* you not pay attention to
livre à ¹ - *Pourquoi* *faire* *attention*

what I say to you? Will the master permit us to (go out)
⁴⁰ *dire* - ²⁴ ? ⁵² *permettre* ²⁴ *de* *sortir*

to-day? I *do* not know; ask it²⁵ him²⁹. He *will* not live long,
aujourd'hui ? *savoir;* *demander* *le* (f). *vivre* (long *tems*)

if he drinks (so much.) Yet, he appears to enjoy good health.
si *boire* *tant.* *Cependant,* *paraître* - *jouir* *d'une* *bonne* *santé.* f.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Have you seen my mother? I have seen her, but I have not spoken
voir ? *voir* † ²⁵ , *parler*

to her. Has your sister done what she had promised me to do?
²⁵ ⁵² *faire* ⁴⁰ *avait* *promettre* ²⁵ *de faire* ?

Why has she not done it? Has your father forbid her to do
Pourquoi ⁵⁵ *faire* ²⁵ ? ⁵² *défendre* *lui*²⁵ *de faire*

it²⁴? Has your brother been where I had told him? Has he
⁵² *être* *où* *avais* *dire* *lui*²⁵ ?

received the letter which³² my sister has sent him²⁵? Have you read
recevoir *lettre* f. (m) *envoyer* † (f) ? *lire* †

* 1st person imperative. † 2nd person imperative. ‡ This participle must be feminine

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE *on the foregoing rules.*

COMPOUND TENSES.

it²⁵? Has your father bought the horse which³² I had recommended
³⁰ (h)? ⁵² acheter (m) ⁵⁵ avais recommander
 to him²⁵? Has he tried it? Has my mother brought any body
 (f)? ⁵² essayer ²⁵? ⁵² amener ⁵⁵ quelqu' un
 with her? Are your brothers gone out? Have your sisters
 avec ²³? ⁵² sortir plur. - ⁵²
 finished the work they had begun? They would not have done
 finir ouvrage (n) avaient commencer? ⁵⁵ faire
 it so soon, if they had not been compelled (to it.) I have met
²⁵ si tôt, avaient ⁵⁵ forcées y ²⁵. rencontrer
 a man on (horseback) who has asked me the way to (your house.
 à cheval demander ²⁵ chemin m. chez vous ²³.

REFLECTIVE VERBS.†

AFFIRMAT. I am getting up. He is washing himself. We
 (r) se lever - (r) se laver ²⁴
 are dressing ourselves. You are amusing yourselves. They are
 (r) s'habiller ²⁴ s'amuser ²⁴
 getting ready to (go out). I was getting up, when you called me.
 s'apprêter - à sortir - (r) se lever -, quand appeler ²⁴
 He was warming himself in the parlour. We were conversing by
 se chauffer ²⁴ dans salle f. (r) s'entretenir près
 the fire. You were (making merry). They were laughing at us.
 du feu. se divertir. se moquer de ²³.

INTERROG. Do I get up too late? Does that man (run away)?
 (q) ⁵¹ se lever - trop tard? (q) ² ⁵² s'enfuir?
 Does your bird³² (grow tame)? Do we warm ourselves
 (q) oiseau m. s'apprivoiser? ⁵¹ se chauffer ²⁴
 (too much)? How do you do? How does your sister do?
 trop? Comment ⁵¹ se porter? ⁵² se porter?
 Was I coming too near? Was he hiding himself? Did we
 (r) s'approcher près? se cacher ²⁴? Did we ⁵¹
 expose ourselves (too much)? Were you inquiring after them?
 s'exposer ²⁴ trop? s'informer d' ²³?

NEGATIV. I do not care for him. He does not mistrust them.
 (q) ⁵⁵ se soucier de ²³ (q) ⁵⁵ se méfier de ²³
 We do not repent (of it²⁰). You do not rise early enough. They
 se repentir en²⁴. se lever assez matin.
 do not meddle with his affairs. I did not stop. He did not
 se mêler de l'affaire. (q) s'arrêter. ⁵⁵
 undress himself. We did not sit down. You did not awake in
 se déshabiller ²⁴ s'asseoir - s'éveiller à
 time. I did not expect that they⁴⁵ would have called me up so soon.
 tems. s'attendre N.B. (q) éveiller ²⁵ - si tôt.

† See the reflexive verb *se blâmer*, p. 114.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE *on the foregoing rules.*

REFLECTIVE VERBS.

INTERR. *and* NEGAT. *An*: I not mistaken? *Does* he not apply to
 (r) ⁵¹ ⁵⁵ *se tromper* ? (q) ⁵¹ ⁵⁵ *s'appliquer*
 study? Do we not walk to-day? Why do not you (make
^{étude}? ⁵¹ *se promener* aujourd'hui? Pourquoi ⁵⁵ ⁵¹ *se*
 haste)? Why do not you (get ready)? Do you not rejoice (at the)
^{dépêcher}? ⁵¹ *s'apprêter* ? ⁵¹ *se réjouir* des
 good¹³ news we have received? Do you not remember what I
¹⁷ *nouvelles f. (n.)* *reçues* ? *se souvenir de* ⁴⁰
 have told you? No; I do not remember it²⁹. I do not recollect it²⁹.
^{dî}: ²⁵ *se souvenir* en²⁴. *se rappeler* le²⁴

COMPOUND TENSES.

AFFIR. I have (gone to bed) late. Thou hast soon (fallen asleep).
 * ^{se coucher} tard. * ^{bientôt} ^{s'endormir}. †
 He has awoke early. We have (got up) before you. You have
 * ^{s'éveiller de bon matin}. * ^{se lever} † avant ²⁸ *
 hurried yourself (too much). They have dressed themselves in haste.
^{se presser} † trop †. * ^{s'habiller} † à la hâte.

INTER. Have I (gone away) too soon? Hast thou bathed lately?
 * ⁵¹ ^{s'en aller} † trop tôt ? * ⁵¹ ^{se baigner depuis peu} ?
 Has he amused himself well? Have we undressed ourselves
 * ⁵¹ ^{s'amuser} bien †? * ⁵¹ ^{se déshabiller} †
 too soon? Have you been well since I saw you? Have
^{tôt} ? * ⁵¹ ^{se porter} † depuis que n'ai vu ²⁵ ? *
 they stopped too long? Have they (got ready) in time?
⁵¹ ^{s'arrêter} † trop long tems †? * ⁵¹ ^{s'apprêter} † à tems ?

NEGAT. I have not been well to-day. Thou hast not complained (of it).
 * ⁵⁵ ^{se porter} † * ⁵⁵ ^{se plaindre} en ²⁹
 He has not perceived it much. We have not walked long.
 * ⁵⁵ ^{s'apercevoir} en²⁹ † * ⁵⁵ ^{se promener} † long tems.
 You have not rested enough. They have not (sat down) a moment.
 * ⁵⁵ ^{se reposer} † assez. † * ⁵⁵ ^{s'asseoir} † un moment.

INTER *and* NEGAT. Have I not (made haste) enough? Hast thou
 * ⁵¹ ⁵⁵ ^{se dépêcher} † assez † ? * ⁵¹
 not (caught cold)? Has she not married too young? Have we
⁵⁵ ^{s'enrhumer} ? * ⁵¹ ⁵⁵ ^{se marier} † jeune ? * ⁵¹
 not mistaken the way? Have you not inquired after them?
⁵⁵ ^{se méprendre} † de chemin ? * ⁵¹ ⁵⁵ ^{s'informer} † d' ²⁸ † ?
 Have they not applied to you? Have they not (been mistaken)?
 * ⁵¹ ⁵⁵ ^{s'adresser} † ²⁸ ? * ⁵¹ ⁵⁵ ^{se tromper} † ?

* In the compound tenses of the verbs that are made reflective, the auxiliary verb HAVE can never be expressed by the verb AVOIR; it must be expressed by the same tense and person of the auxiliary verb ÊTRE to BE. See the compound tenses of the reflective verb BLÂMER, page 115.

† This participle must agree in gender and number with the nominative of the verb. See SYNTAX, Rule 158.

‡ This adverb must be placed before the participle in french. See SYNTAX, Rule 183.

105

THE
CONJUGATIONS
OR
ACCIDENCE OF VERBS.

A VERB, as has been seen, page 91, is a word which expresses either *being* or *acting*.

As the same action may be performed in *different manners*, at *different times*, and by *different persons*, it was found necessary to *modify* or *vary* the same word, so as to denote the MANNER in which an action is done, the TIME in which it is done, and the PERSON or PERSONS by whom it is done, and this is what grammarians call *conjugation*.

The MANNERS of acting, in grammar called MODES or MOODS, are *four*; INFINITIVE, IMPERATIVE, INDICATIVE, SUBJUNCTIVE, or CONJUNCTIVE.

The TIMES, in grammar called TENSES, are properly *three* only; PAST, PRESENT, and FUTURE; but, in order to express time with more precision, these are again divided into other tenses, the use of which will be seen in the syntax of verbs.

The PERSONS who act in a verb are generally *three* for each number.

1. The *person* or persons *who speak*; as, *I* BLAME; *we* BLAME.
2. The *person* or persons *spoken to*; as, *thou* BLAMEST; *you* BLAME.
3. The *person*, persons, or things *spoken of*; as, *He, she, my brother, my sister* BLAMES; *they, my brothers, my sisters* BLAME.

The *modifications* or *variations* by which these moods, tenses, and persons are known, *differ*, according to the different languages.

In english, the difference is shewn by the means of certain *signs* prefixed to the verb; as, *do* BLAME; *did* BLAME; *shall* or *will* BLAME; *should* or *would* BLAME; *may* BLAME, *might* BLAME.

In french, it is made by *changing the last syllable* of the word; as, *Je* BLÂM *e*, *Tu* BLÂM *es*, *il* BLÂM *e*, *Nous* BLÂM *ons*, *vous* BLÂM *ez*, *ils* BLÂM *ent*; *Je* BLÂM *ais*; *Je* BLÂM *ai*; *Je* BLÂMER *ais*, &c.*

This *variation* in the *tenses* and *persons*, simple as it is, because it is nearly uniform, is nevertheless found embarrassing by some persons.

The difficulty lies chiefly in the *present* and *perfect* tenses of the *indicative* and *subjunctive* moods, and in the *imperative*.

In order to remove it as much as possible, I have placed *in one point of view*, the tenses which are either *similar* or partly similar, or *formed from one another*, that, by perceiving at once the similarity or the difference, the learner's mind may be more easily impressed with it.

* The signs by which these inflections or variations are made, not being the same in all verbs, the conjugations must also be various.

The number of them is not exactly fixed, and varies in almost every grammar. Some fix it at *four*, some at *six*, some at *ten*, some at *eleven*, some at *twelve*.

It appears to me that their number must either be limited to *four*, or extended to *twelve*.

As amongst such a number of conjugations, out of which there will still be a great number of irregular verbs, it is very difficult for learners to distinguish of what conjugation a verb is; and as the infinitive of all the french verbs ends in one of these terminations ER, IR, OIR, RE, the only signs by which each different conjugation may be discriminated, I have thought it more simple to fix their number at *four*.

All verbs which may be conjugated after the same manner as one of these four, are called *regular*.

Those verbs which can not be conjugated like one of these four, are called *irregular*, and set in an alphabetical order after the regular, so that the learner can never be mistaken as to the manner of conjugating any verb which he may have need of, by paying attention to the termination of the infinitive only,

INFINITIVE MOOD OR MANNER

To HAVE. *AVoir*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

have. *aie, sing. ayez, plur.**
 Let us have. *ayons.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Present tense.	I have	<i>J'</i> †	<i>ai</i> ⁵ . †	<i>J'</i>	<i>aie</i> ⁶ .	have, may have.
	<i>Thou</i> hast.	<i>Tu</i>	<i>as</i> ²⁶ .	<i>Tu</i>	<i>aies</i> .	
	<i>He</i> has.	<i>Il</i>	<i>a</i> .	<i>Il</i>	<i>ait</i> ²⁶ .	
Imperfect tense.	<i>We</i> have.	<i>Nous</i> ²⁵	<i>AV ons</i> ²⁶ .	<i>Nous</i>	<i>ayons</i> ⁴ .	had, might have.
	<i>You</i> have.	<i>Vous</i>	<i>AV ez</i> ²⁶ .	<i>Vous</i>	<i>ayez</i> .	
	<i>They</i> have.	<i>Ils</i>	<i>ont</i> ²⁶ .	<i>Ils</i>	<i>aient</i> ⁶ .	
	<i>I</i> had.	<i>J'</i>	<i>AV ais</i> ⁵ .	<i>J'</i>	<i>eusse</i> ² .	
	<i>Thou</i> hadst.	<i>Tu</i>	<i>AV ais</i> . §	<i>Tu</i>	<i>eusses</i> ²³ .	
Perfect tense.	<i>He</i> had.	<i>Il</i>	<i>AV ait</i> ²⁶ .	<i>Il</i>	<i>eût</i> ²⁶ .	had, might have.
	<i>We</i> had.	<i>Nous</i> ²⁵	<i>AV ions</i> .	<i>Nous</i>	<i>eussions</i> .	
	<i>You</i> had.	<i>Vous</i>	<i>AV iez</i> .	<i>Vous</i>	<i>eussiez</i> .	
	<i>They</i> had.	<i>Ils</i>	<i>AV aient</i> ⁶ .	<i>Ils</i>	<i>eussent</i> ¹⁸ .	
	<i>I</i> had.	<i>J'</i> †	<i>eus</i> ¹² .	<i>J'</i>	<i>eusse</i> ² .	
Future positive.	<i>Thou</i> hadst.	<i>Tu</i>	<i>eus</i> .	<i>Tu</i>	<i>eusses</i> ²³ .	had, might have.
	<i>He</i> had.	<i>Il</i>	<i>eût</i> ²⁶ .	<i>Il</i>	<i>eût</i> ²⁶ .	
	<i>We</i> had.	<i>Nous</i> ²⁵	<i>eûmes</i> .	<i>Nous</i>	<i>eussions</i> .	
	<i>You</i> had.	<i>Vous</i>	<i>eûtes</i> ²⁶ .	<i>Vous</i>	<i>eussiez</i> .	
	<i>They</i> had.	<i>Ils</i>	<i>eurent</i> ¹⁸ .	<i>Ils</i>	<i>eussent</i> ¹⁸ .	
Future conditional.	<i>I</i> shall or will have.	<i>J'</i>	<i>aurai</i> ⁵ .	<i>J'</i>	<i>eusse</i> ² .	had, might have.
	<i>Thou</i> shalt, wilt have.	<i>Tu</i>	<i>auras</i> ²⁶ .	<i>Tu</i>	<i>eusses</i> ²³ .	
	<i>He</i> shall, will have.	<i>Il</i>	<i>aura</i> .	<i>Il</i>	<i>eût</i> ²⁶ .	
	<i>We</i> shall, will have.	<i>Nous</i> ²⁵	<i>aurons</i> .	<i>Nous</i>	<i>eussions</i> .	
	<i>You</i> shall, will have.	<i>Vous</i>	<i>aurez</i> .	<i>Vous</i>	<i>eussiez</i> .	
Fut. conditional.	<i>They</i> shall, will have.	<i>Ils</i>	<i>auront</i> ²⁶ .	<i>Ils</i>	<i>eussent</i> ¹⁸ .	had, might have.
	<i>I</i> should, wld. have.	<i>J'</i>	<i>aurais</i> ⁶ .	<i>J'</i>	<i>eusse</i> ² .	
	<i>Thou</i> shd. wld. have.	<i>Tu</i>	<i>aurais</i> . §	<i>Tu</i>	<i>eusses</i> ²³ .	
	<i>He</i> shd. wld. have.	<i>Il</i>	<i>aurait</i> ²⁶ .	<i>Il</i>	<i>eût</i> ²⁶ .	
	<i>We</i> shd. wld. have.	<i>Nous</i> ²⁵	<i>aurions</i> .	<i>Nous</i>	<i>eussions</i> .	
<i>You</i> shd. wld. have.	<i>Vous</i>	<i>auriez</i> .	<i>Vous</i>	<i>eussiez</i> .		
<i>They</i> shd. wld. have.	<i>Ils</i>	<i>auraient</i> ⁶ .	<i>Ils</i>	<i>eussent</i> ¹⁸ .		

GERUND, or present participle.

having. *ayant.*

PARTICIPLE past.

*eu. had.**The same verb conjugated Interrogatively.*

Have I?	<i>ai-je</i> ⁵¹ ?	<i>AVONS-nous</i> ⁵¹ ?	have we? &c.
Hast thou?	<i>as-tu</i> ⁵¹ ?	<i>AVEZ-vous</i> ⁵¹ ?	
Has he?	<i>a-t-il</i> ⁵¹ ?	<i>ont-ils</i> ⁵¹ ?	
Has she?	<i>a-t-elle</i> ⁵¹ ?	<i>ont-elles</i> ⁵¹ ?	
Has my brother?	<i>mon frère a-t-il</i> ⁵² ?	<i>mes frères ont-ils</i> ⁵² ?	
Has my sister?	<i>ma sœur a-t-elle</i> ⁵² ?	<i>mes sœurs ont-elles</i> ⁵² ?	

* The plural is generally used instead of the singular, though speaking to a single person.

† See note * page 23. ‡ These figures refer to the pronunciation, see page 4.

§ See note 6, page 6. || See, syntax of verbs, the distinction between *avais* and *eus*

AUXILIARY VERB *AVOIR*.

The same verb *AVOIR* conjugated negatively.

INFINITIVE.

Not to HAVE *Ne pas AVOIR.*

IMPERATIVE.

Have *not.* *N' aie, or N' ayez* } *pas. †*
 Let us *not* have. *N' ayons*

INDICATIVE.

I have *not.* *Je n' ai⁵*
 Thou hast *not.* *Tu n' as*
 He has *not.* *Il n' a*
 We } *Nous n' avons²⁶* } *pas. †*
 You } have *not.* *Vous n' avez*
 They } *Ils n' ont²³*

I } *Je n' avais⁶*
 Thou } *Tu n' avais*
 He } had *not.* *Il n' avait²³* } *pas.*
 We } *Nous n' avions*
 You } *Vous n' aviez*
 They } *Ils n' avaient⁶*

I } *Je n' eus²⁶*
 Thou } *Tu n' eus*
 He } had *not.* *Il n' eut²³* } *pas.*
 We } *Nous n' eûmes*
 You } *Vous n' eûtes*
 They } *Ils n' eurent¹⁸*

I } *Je n' aurai⁵*
 Thou } *Tu n' auras*
 He } shall, will *Il n' aura*
 We } *not* have. *Nous n' aurons* } *pas.*
 You } *Vous n' aurez*
 They } *Ils n' auront²⁶*

I } *Je n' aurais⁶*
 Thou } *Tu n' aurais*
 He } shld. wld. *Il n' aurait*
 We } *not* have. *Nous n' aurions* } *pas.*
 You } *Vous n' auriez*
 They } *Ils n' auraient⁶*

SUBJUNCTIVE

Je n' aie⁶
Tu n' aies
Il n' ait²⁵ } *pas*
Nous n' ayons
Vous n' ayez
Ils n' aient¹⁸

may *not* have.

Je n' eusse
Tu n' eusses
Il n' eût²³ } *pas.*
Nous n' eussions
Vous n' eussiez
Ils n' eussent¹⁸

might *not* have

GERUND.

not having. *N' ayant pas.*

PARTICIPLE.

pas eu. *Not had.*

The same verb conjugated negatively and interrogatively.

Have I } *N' ai-je⁵¹* }
 Hast thou } *not?* *N' as-tu⁵¹* } *pas?*
 Has he } *N' a-t-il⁵¹* }
 Has she } *N' a-t-elle* }
 Has *not* my brother? *mon frère n' a-t-il⁵² pas?* *Mes frères n' ont-ils pas?*
 Has *not* my sister? *ma sœur n' a-t-elle⁵² pas?* *Mes sœurs n' ont-elles pas?*

* See note * page 28. † See the negative adverbs, rule 55, page 94.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

To BE. *ETre*.

IMPERATIVE.

be. sois, *sing.* soyez, *plur.**
 Let us be. soyons.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	<i>I</i> am.	<i>Je</i> ³ †suis ²³ .	<i>Je</i> ³ sois ²³ .	be, <i>may</i> be.
	<i>Thou</i> art.	<i>Tu</i> es ²⁶ .	<i>Tu</i> sois ²⁶ .	
	<i>He</i> is.	<i>Il</i> est ²⁶ .	<i>Il</i> soit ²⁶ .	
Imperfect tense.	<i>We</i> are.	<i>Nous</i> sommes.	<i>Nous</i> soyons ⁴ .	
	<i>You</i> are.	<i>Vous</i> êtes ²⁶ .	<i>Vous</i> soyez.	
	<i>They</i> are.	<i>Ils</i> sont ²⁶ .	<i>Ils</i> soient ¹⁸ .	
	<i>I</i> was.	<i>J'</i> ét ais ⁶ .		
	<i>Thou</i> wast.	<i>Tu</i> ét ais.		
Perfect tense.	<i>He</i> was.	<i>Il</i> ét ait ²⁶ .		were, <i>might</i> be.
	<i>We</i> were.	<i>Nous</i> ét ions ²⁶ .		
	<i>You</i> were.	<i>Vous</i> ét iez.		
	<i>They</i> were.	<i>Ils</i> ét aient ⁶ .		
	<i>I</i> was.	<i>Je</i> ³ †fus ²⁶ .	<i>Je</i> ³ fusse ² .	
Future positive.	<i>Thou</i> wast.	<i>Tu</i> fus. †	<i>Tu</i> fusses ²⁶ .	
	<i>He</i> was.	<i>Il</i> fut ²⁶ .	<i>Il</i> fût ²⁶ .	
	<i>We</i> were.	<i>Nous</i> fûmes.	<i>Nous</i> fussions.	
	<i>You</i> were.	<i>Vous</i> fûtes ²⁶ .	<i>Vous</i> fussiez.	
	<i>They</i> were.	<i>Ils</i> furent ¹⁸ .	<i>Ils</i> fussent ¹⁶ .	
Fut. conditional.	<i>I</i> shall or will be.	<i>Je</i> ³ serai ⁵ .		
	<i>Thou</i> shalt, will be.	<i>Tu</i> seras ²⁶ .		
	<i>He</i> shall, will be.	<i>Il</i> sera.		
	<i>We</i> shall, will be.	<i>Nous</i> serons.		
	<i>You</i> shall, will be.	<i>Vous</i> serez ²⁶ .		
	<i>They</i> shall, will be.	<i>Ils</i> seront ²⁶ .		
	<i>I</i> should, wld. be.	<i>Je</i> ³ serais ⁶ .		
	<i>Thou</i> shd. wld. be.	<i>Tu</i> serais.		
	<i>He</i> shd. wld. be.	<i>Il</i> serait ²⁶ .		
	<i>We</i> shd. wld. be.	<i>Nous</i> serions.		
	<i>You</i> shd. wld. be.	<i>Vous</i> seriez.		
	<i>They</i> shd. wld. be.	<i>Ils</i> seraient ⁶ .		

GERUND, or present *participle*.

PARTICIPLE past.

being. ét ant.

été. been.

The same verb conjugated Interrogatively.

Am <i>I</i> ?	suis- <i>je</i> ⁵¹ ?	sommes- <i>nous</i> ⁵¹ ?	are we ? &c.
Art <i>thou</i> ?	es- <i>tu</i> ⁵¹ ?	etes <i>vous</i> ⁵¹ ?	
Is <i>he</i> ?	est- <i>il</i> ⁵¹ ?	sont- <i>ils</i> ⁵¹ ?	
Is <i>she</i> ?	est- <i>elle</i> ⁵¹ ?	sont- <i>elles</i> ⁵¹ ?	
Is <i>my</i> brother ?	mon frère est- <i>il</i> ⁵² ?	Mes frères sont- <i>ils</i> ⁵² ?	
Is <i>my</i> sister ?	ma sœur est- <i>elle</i> ⁵² ?	Mes sœurs sont- <i>elles</i> ⁵² ?	

* The plural is generally used instead of the singular, though speaking to a single person
 † See note 2, page 1. ‡ See, syntax of verbs, the distinction between *étais* and *fus*

The same verb ÊTRE conjugated negatively.

INFINITIVE.

not to BE. *Ne pas ÊTRE.*

IMPERATIVE.

Be *not.* *Ne sois, or ne soyez* } *pas.*
 Let us *not* be. *ne soyons*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

I am <i>not.</i>	Je ³ <i>ne suis</i>	} <i>pas.</i>	Je ³ <i>ne sois</i> ²³	} <i>pas³.</i>	} <i>may not be.</i>
Thou art <i>not.</i>	Tu <i>n' es</i> ²⁵		Tu <i>ne sois</i>		
He is <i>not.</i>	Il <i>n' est</i> ²⁶		Il <i>ne soit</i> ²³		
We } <i>are not.</i>	Nous <i>ne sommes</i>		Nous <i>ne soyons</i>		
You } <i>are not.</i>	Vous <i>n' êtes</i>		Vous <i>ne soyez</i>		
They } <i>are not.</i>	Ils <i>ne sont</i> ²⁶	Ils <i>ne soient</i> ¹⁸			
I } <i>was not.</i>	Je ³ <i>n' étais</i> ⁶	} <i>pas.</i>			
Thou } <i>was not.</i>	Tu <i>n' étais</i> [*]				
He } <i>was not.</i>	Il <i>n' était</i> ²⁶				
We } <i>was not.</i>	Nous <i>n' étions</i>				
You } <i>was not.</i>	Vous <i>n' étiez</i>				
They } <i>was not.</i>	Ils <i>n' étaient</i> ⁶				
I } <i>was not.</i>	Je ³ <i>ne fus</i>	} <i>pas.</i>	Je ³ <i>ne fusse</i>	} <i>pas.</i>	} <i>might not be.</i>
Thou } <i>was not.</i>	Tu <i>ne fus</i> [*]		Tu <i>ne fusses</i>		
He } <i>was not.</i>	Il <i>ne fut</i> ²⁵		Il <i>ne fût</i> ²⁶		
We } <i>was not.</i>	Nous <i>ne fûmes</i>		Nous <i>ne fussions</i>		
You } <i>was not.</i>	Vous <i>ne fûtes</i>		Vous <i>ne fussiez</i>		
They } <i>was not.</i>	Ils <i>ne furent</i> ¹⁸	Ils <i>ne fussent</i> ¹⁸			
I } <i>shall, will</i>	Je ³ <i>ne serai</i> ⁵	} <i>pas.</i>			
Thou } <i>shall, will</i>	Tu <i>ne seras</i>				
He } <i>shall, will</i>	Il <i>ne sera</i>				
We } <i>shall, will</i>	Nous <i>ne serons</i>				
You } <i>shall, will</i>	Vous <i>ne serez</i>				
They } <i>shall, will</i>	Ils <i>ne seront</i> ²⁶				
I } <i>shld. wld.</i>	Je ³ <i>ne serais</i> ⁶	} <i>pas.</i>			
Thou } <i>shld. wld.</i>	Tu <i>ne serais</i>				
He } <i>shld. wld.</i>	Il <i>ne serait</i>				
We } <i>shld. wld.</i>	Nous <i>ne serions</i>				
You } <i>shld. wld.</i>	Vous <i>ne seriez</i>				
They } <i>shld. wld.</i>	Ils <i>ne seraient</i> ⁶				

GERUND.

PARTICIPLE

being *not.* *N'étant pas.* *pas été* *Not been*

The same verb conjugated negatively and interrogatively.

Am I } <i>not?</i>	<i>ne suis-je</i>	} <i>pas?</i>	<i>ne sommes-nous</i>	} <i>pas?</i>
Art thou } <i>not?</i>	<i>N' es-tu</i>		<i>N' êtes-vous</i>	
Is he } <i>not?</i>	<i>N' est-il</i>	} <i>pas?</i>	<i>ne sont-ils</i>	} <i>pas?</i>
Is she } <i>not?</i>	<i>N' est-elle</i>		<i>ne sont-elles</i>	
Is not my brother?	mon frère <i>n'est-il pas?</i>		mes frères <i>ne sont-ils pas?</i>	
Is not my sister?	ma sœur <i>n'est-elle pas?</i>		mes sœurs <i>ne sont-elles pas?</i>	

* See, syntax, rule 140, the distinction between *avais* and *eus*; *étais* and *fus*.

A TABLE shewing in one point of view, the difference between the

		ER.			IR.		
		INFINIT.	GERUND	PARTIC.	INFINIT.	GERUND	PART.
		BLÂM <i>er.</i>	<i>ant.</i>	<i>é.</i>	FIN <i>ir.</i>	<i>issant.</i>	<i>i.</i>
		INDICAT.	IMPERAT.	SUBJUNCT.	INDICAT.	IMPERAT.	SUBJUNCT.
Present tense.	<i>Je</i> BLÂM	<i>e.</i>		<i>e.</i>	FIN <i>is.</i>		<i>isse.</i>
	<i>Tu</i>	<i>es.</i>	<i>e.</i>	<i>es.</i>	<i>is.</i>	<i>is.</i>	<i>isses.</i>
	<i>Il</i>	<i>e.</i>		<i>e.</i>	<i>it.</i>		<i>isse.</i>
	<i>Nous</i>	<i>ons.</i>	<i>ons.</i>	<i>ions.</i>	<i>issons.</i>	<i>issons.</i>	<i>issions.</i>
	<i>Vous</i>	<i>ez.</i>	<i>ez.</i>	<i>iez.</i>	<i>issez.</i>	<i>issez.</i>	<i>issiez.</i>
	<i>Ils</i>	<i>ent.</i>		<i>ent.</i>	<i>issent.</i>		<i>issent.</i>
Imperfect tense.	<i>Je</i> BLÂM	<i>ais.†</i>			FIN <i>issais.†</i>		
	<i>Tu</i>	<i>ais.</i>			<i>issais.</i>		
	<i>Il</i>	<i>ait.</i>			<i>issait.</i>		
	<i>Nous</i>	<i>ions.</i>			<i>issions.</i>		
	<i>Vous</i>	<i>iez.</i>			<i>issiez.</i>		
	<i>Ils</i>	<i>aient.</i>			<i>issaient.</i>		
Perfect tense.	<i>Je</i> BLÂM	<i>ai.</i>		<i>asse.</i>	FIN <i>is.</i>		<i>isse.</i>
	<i>Tu</i>	<i>as.</i>		<i>asses.</i>	<i>is.</i>		<i>isses.</i>
	<i>Il</i>	<i>a.</i>		<i>ât.</i>	<i>it.</i>		<i>ît.</i>
	<i>Nous</i>	<i>âmes.</i>		<i>assions.</i>	<i>îmes.</i>		<i>issions.</i>
	<i>Vous</i>	<i>âtes.</i>		<i>assiez.</i>	<i>îtes.</i>		<i>issiez.</i>
	<i>Ils</i>	<i>èrent.</i>		<i>assent.</i>	<i>irent.</i>		<i>issent.</i>
Future positive.	<i>Je</i> BLÂMER	<i>ai.</i>			FINIR <i>ai.</i>		
	<i>Tu</i>	<i>as.</i>			<i>as.</i>		
	<i>Il</i>	<i>a.</i>			<i>a.</i>		
	<i>Nous</i>	<i>ons.</i>			<i>ons.</i>		
	<i>Vous</i>	<i>ez.</i>			<i>ez.</i>		
	<i>Ils</i>	<i>ont.</i>			<i>ont.</i>		
Fut. conditional.	<i>Je</i> BLÂMER	<i>ais.†</i>			FINIR <i>ais.†</i>		
	<i>Tu</i>	<i>ais.</i>			<i>ais.</i>		
	<i>Il</i>	<i>ait.</i>			<i>ait.</i>		
	<i>Nous</i>	<i>ions.</i>			<i>ions.</i>		
	<i>Vous</i>	<i>iez.</i>			<i>iez.</i>		
	<i>Ils</i>	<i>aient.</i>			<i>aient.</i>		

* After the same manner as BLÂMER are conjugated *all* the verbs the infinitive of which ends in *ER*, (about 2700 in number) except ALLER and ENVOYER. Observe only, that in the verbs in *ger*, as, CHANGER, MANGER, SONGER, the *e* is retained before *a*, *o*, in order to soften the sound of *g*; so instead of saying CHANGONS, MANGONS, SONGONS; CHANGEAIS, MANGAIS, SONGAIS; we say, CHANGEONS, MANGEONS, SONGEONS; CHANGEAIS, MANGEAIS, &c.

After the same manner as FINIR are conjugated about 220 verbs in *ir*, both *primitive* and *compound*.

Compound verbs are those whose signification changes by the means of a preposition prefixed to them; as, *déflourir*, to lose the blossom; *refleurir*, to blossom again; which are conjugated like their primitive *fleurir*, to blossom: *défaire*, to undo; *refaire*, to do again; which are conjugated like their primitive *faire*, to do.

* These are the *only signs* by which it can be known to what conjugation a verb belongs. By marked in *italic*, *i. e.* those ending in *er* after BLÂM *er*, those in *ir* after FIN *ir*, those in *oir* after I is impossible for any person to commit errors which he is not himself able to rectify.

or conjugations, and how the tenses of a verb proceed from one another.

OIR.

RE.

	INFINIT.	GERUND	PARTIC.
DEV	<i>oir.</i>	<i>ant.</i>	DÙ.
	INDICAT.	IMPERAT.	SUBJUNCT.
	Dois.		Doive.
	Dois.	Dois.	Doives.
	Doit.		Doive.
DEV	<i>ons.</i>	<i>ons.</i>	<i>ions.</i>
	<i>ez.</i>	<i>ez.</i>	<i>iez.</i>
	doivent.		doivent.
DEV	<i>ais.†</i>		
	<i>ais.</i>		
	<i>ait.</i>		
	<i>ions.</i>		
	<i>iez.</i>		
	<i>aient.</i>		
	Dus.		Dusse.
	Dus.		Dusses.
	Dut.		Dût.
	Dûmes		Dussions.
	Dûtes		Dussiez.
	Durent.		Dussent.
DEV	<i>rai.</i>		
	<i>ras.</i>		
	<i>ra.</i>		
	<i>rons.</i>		
	<i>rez.</i>		
	<i>ront.</i>		
DEV	<i>rais.†</i>		
	<i>rais.</i>		
	<i>rait.</i>		
	<i>rions.</i>		
	<i>riez.</i>		
	<i>raient.</i>		

	INFINIT.	GERUND	PARTIC.
ATTEND	<i>re.</i>	<i>ant.</i>	<i>u.</i>
	INDICAT.	IMPERAT.	SUBJUNCT.
ATTEND	<i>s.</i>		<i>e.</i>
	<i>s.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>es.</i>
ATTEND			<i>e.</i>
	<i>ons.</i>	<i>ons.</i>	<i>ions.</i>
	<i>ez.</i>	<i>ez.</i>	<i>iez.</i>
	<i>ent.</i>		<i>ent.</i>
ATTEND	<i>ais.†</i>		
	<i>ais.</i>		
	<i>ait.</i>		
	<i>ions.</i>		
	<i>iez.</i>		
	<i>aient.</i>		
ATTEND	<i>is.</i>		<i>isse.</i>
	<i>is.</i>		<i>isses.</i>
	<i>it.</i>		<i>ît.</i>
	<i>îmes.</i>		<i>issions.</i>
	<i>îtes.</i>		<i>issiez.</i>
	<i>irent.</i>		<i>issent.</i>
ATTENDR	<i>ai.</i>		
	<i>as.</i>		
	<i>a.</i>		
	<i>ons.</i>		
	<i>ez.</i>		
	<i>ont.</i>		
ATTENDR	<i>ais.†</i>		
	<i>ais.</i>		
	<i>ait.</i>		
	<i>ions.</i>		
	<i>iez.</i>		
	<i>aient.</i>		

After the same manner as DEVOIR are conjugated REDEVOIR, PERCEVOIR, APERCEVOIR, S'APERCEVOIR, CONCEVOIR, RECEVOIR.

N. B. This verb is not regular; if it is found here amongst the regular, it is because its termination requires a conjugation of its own. The words which are irregular are printed wholly in roman characters; the regular are the italic terminations added to the capital letters.

After the same manner as ATTENDRE are conjugated BATRE, ABATRE, COMBATRE, DEBATRE, RABATRE, REBATRE, FENDRE, DÉFENDRE, DESCENDRE, CONDESCENDRE, FONDRE, CONFONDRE, REFONDRE, MORFONDRE, ROMPRE, CORROMPRE, INTERROMPRE, PONDRE, RÉPONDRE, CORRESPONDRE, RÉPANDRE, MORDRE, DÉMORDRE, TENDRE, ÉTENDRE, ENTENDRE, PRÉTENDRE, RENDRE, PENDRE, DÉPENDRE, VENDRE, PERDRE, TORDRE, RETORDRE, TONDRE.

paying attention to the termination of the infinitive, and altering the same number of letters as are here in *oir*, and those in *re* after ATT ND *re*, and with the assistance of the tables of the irregular verbs, it

† See note 6, page 6.

INFINITE MOOD

To BLAME. BLÂM *er*.

IMPERATIVE.

blame. BLÂM *e, sing.* BLÂM *ez, plur.*
 let us blame. BLÂM *ons.*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	<i>I</i> blame, or <i>am</i> blaming.	<i>Je</i> ³ BLÂM <i>e</i> ² .	<i>Je</i> ³ BLÂM <i>e</i> ² .	blame, may blame.
	<i>Thou</i> blamest, <i>art</i>	<i>Tu</i> BLÂM <i>es</i> ²⁶ .	<i>Tu</i> BLÂM <i>es</i> ²⁶ .	
	<i>He</i> blames, or <i>is</i>	<i>Il</i> BLÂM <i>e</i> .	<i>Il</i> BLÂM <i>e</i> .	
Imperfect tense.	<i>We</i> } blame, are	<i>Nous</i> BLÂM <i>ons.</i>	<i>Nous</i> BLÂM <i>ions.</i>	blamed, might blame.
	<i>You</i> } blaming.*	<i>Vous</i> BLÂM <i>ez.</i>	<i>Vous</i> BLÂM <i>iez.</i>	
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> ²⁵ BLÂM <i>ent</i> ¹⁸ .	<i>Ils</i> ²⁶ BLÂM <i>ent</i> ¹⁸ .	
Perfect tense.	<i>I</i> } was	<i>Je</i> ³ BLÂM <i>ais</i> ⁶ .	<i>Je</i> ³ BLÂM <i>asse</i> ²	blamed, might blame.
	<i>Thou</i> } blaming.*	<i>Tu</i> BLÂM <i>ais.</i>	<i>Tu</i> BLÂM <i>asses.</i>	
	<i>He</i> } were	<i>Il</i> BLÂM <i>ait</i> ²⁶ .	<i>Il</i> BLÂM <i>ât</i> ²⁶ .	
Future positive.	<i>We</i> } were	<i>Nous</i> BLÂM <i>ions.</i>	<i>Nous</i> BLÂM <i>assions.</i>	blamed, might blame.
	<i>You</i> } blaming.	<i>Vous</i> BLÂM <i>iez.</i>	<i>Vous</i> BLÂM <i>assiez.</i>	
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> ²⁶ BLÂM <i>aient</i> ⁹ .	<i>Ils</i> ²⁶ BLÂM <i>assent</i> ¹⁸ .	
Fut. conditional.	<i>I</i> } shall, will	<i>Je</i> ³ BLÂM <i>ai</i> ⁵ .	<i>Je</i> ³ BLÂM <i>asse</i> ²	blamed, might blame.
	<i>Thou</i> } blame, or	<i>Tu</i> BLÂM <i>as</i> ²⁶ .	<i>Tu</i> BLÂM <i>asses.</i>	
	<i>He</i> } did blame.	<i>Il</i> BLÂM <i>a.</i>	<i>Il</i> BLÂM <i>ât</i> ²⁶ .	
Fut. conditional.	<i>We</i> } should, would	<i>Nous</i> BLÂM <i>âmes.</i>	<i>Nous</i> BLÂM <i>assions.</i>	blamed, might blame.
	<i>You</i> } blame, or	<i>Vous</i> BLÂM <i>âtes.</i>	<i>Vous</i> BLÂM <i>assiez.</i>	
	<i>They</i> } be blaming.	<i>Ils</i> ²⁶ BLÂM <i>èrent</i> ¹⁸ .	<i>Ils</i> ²⁶ BLÂM <i>assent</i> ¹⁸ .	
Fut. conditional.	<i>I</i> } shall, will	<i>Je</i> ³ BLÂMER <i>ai</i> ⁵ .	<i>Je</i> ³ BLÂMER <i>asse</i> ²	blamed, might blame.
	<i>Thou</i> } blame, or	<i>Tu</i> BLÂMER <i>as</i> ²⁶ .	<i>Tu</i> BLÂMER <i>asses.</i>	
	<i>He</i> } did blame.	<i>Il</i> BLÂMER <i>a.</i>	<i>Il</i> BLÂMER <i>ât</i> ²⁶ .	
Fut. conditional.	<i>We</i> } should, would	<i>Nous</i> BLÂMER <i>ions.</i>	<i>Nous</i> BLÂMER <i>assions.</i>	blamed, might blame.
	<i>You</i> } blame, or	<i>Vous</i> BLÂMER <i>iez.</i>	<i>Vous</i> BLÂMER <i>assiez.</i>	
	<i>They</i> } be blaming.	<i>Ils</i> ²⁶ BLÂMER <i>oient</i> ²⁶ .	<i>Ils</i> ²⁶ BLÂMER <i>assent</i> ¹⁸ .	

GERUND.

PARTICIPLE

blaming.		BLÂM <i>ant.</i>	BLÂM <i>é.</i>	blamed.
Interrogatively.	Negatively.		Interrogativ. and Negativ.	
BLÂME- <i>je</i> ?	<i>do I</i> blame?	<i>Je ne</i> BLÂME	<i>Ne</i> BLÂME- <i>je</i>	<i>do I</i> not blame?
BLÂMES- <i>tu</i> ?	<i>do I</i> blame?	<i>Tu ne</i> BLÂMES	<i>Ne</i> BLÂMES- <i>tu</i>	} <i>pas</i> ?
BLÂME- <i>t-il</i> ?	<i>do I</i> blame?	<i>il ne</i> BLÂME	<i>Ne</i> BLÂME- <i>t-il</i>	
BLÂMONS- <i>nous</i>	<i>do I</i> blame?	<i>Nous ne</i> BLÂMONS	<i>Ne</i> BLÂMONS- <i>nous</i>	
BLÂMEZ- <i>vous</i> ?	<i>do I</i> blame?	<i>Vous ne</i> BLÂMEZ	<i>Ne</i> BLÂMEZ- <i>vous</i>	
BLÂMENT- <i>ils</i> ?	<i>do I</i> blame?	<i>ils ne</i> BLÂMENT	<i>Ne</i> BLÂMENT- <i>ils</i>	

N. B. After the same manner as BLÂMER conjugate all the verbs, the infinite of which ends in ER, except ALLER and ENVOYER, p. 116, 117.†

* Never say *je suis blâmant, tu es blâmant, il'est blâmant, j' étais blâmant, &c.* See note (r) p. 95.
 † See note * page 110.

Compound tenses of the verb *BLÂMER*,

Formed by adding the participle *BLÂMÉ* to the auxiliary *AVOIR*.

INFINITIVE COMPOUND.

To have blamed.

Avoir *BLÂMÉ*.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres. compound.</i>	I have } Thou hast } He has } We } You } They }	}blamed.	J' ai	}BLÂMÉ.*	J' aie	}BLÂMÉ.	}may have blamed.
			Tu as		Tu aies		
			Il a		Il ait		
			Nous avons		Nous ayons		
			Vous avez		Vous ayez		
Ils ont	Ils aient.						

<i>Imperf. compound.</i>	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }	}had blamed.	J' avais	}BLÂMÉ.		}BLÂMÉ.	}might have blamed.
			Tu avais				
			Il avait				
			Nous avions				
			Vous aviez				
Ils avaient							

<i>Perf. compound.</i>	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }	}had blamed.	J' eus	}BLÂMÉ.	J' eusse	}BLÂMÉ.	}might have blamed.
			Tu eus		Tu eusses		
			Il eut		Il eût		
			Nous eûmes		Nous eussions		
			Vous eûtes		Vous eussiez		
Ils eurent	Ils eussent						

<i>Future compound.</i>	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }	}shall, will }have blamed.	J' aurai	}BLÂMÉ.		}BLÂMÉ.	}might have blamed.
			Tu auras				
			Il aura				
			Nous aurons				
			Vous aurez				
Ils auront							

<i>Condit. compound.</i>	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }	}should, wld. }have blamed.	J' aurais	}BLÂMÉ.		}BLÂMÉ.	}might have blamed.
			Tu aurais				
			Il aurait				
			Nous aurions				
			Vous auriez				
Ils auraient							

GERUND.

PARTICIPLE

having blamed. *ayant* *BLÂMÉ*.

eu *BLÂMÉ*. had blamed.

<i>Interrogatively.</i>		<i>Negatively.</i>		<i>Interrogatively and Negatively.</i>	
Ai-je } As-tu } A-t-il } Avons-nous } Avez-vous } Ont-ils }	}BLÂMÉ?	Je n'ai	}pas BLÂMÉ.	N'ai-je	}pas BLÂMÉ?
		Tu n'as		N'as-tu	
		Il n'a		N'a-t-il	
		Nous n'avons		N'avons-nous	
		Vous n'avez		N'avez-vous	
Ils n'ont	N'ont-ils				

* See, syntax of verbs, the rules on the *past participle*.

The verb **BLAMER** made reflectively.*

INFINITIVE.

To BLAME oneself.

SE BLÂMER.

IMPERATIVE.

Commanding 26 rule, page 77.

blame thyself. blâm e - TOI.
yourself. blâm ez - VOUS.

let us blame ourselves. blâm ons-NOUS.

Forbidding 27 rule, page 77.

NE TE blâm e } pas
NE VOUS blâm ez }
NE NOUS blâm ons }

INDICATIVE.

I Thou He We You They	} blame	myself. Je ^s ME blâm e.
		thyself. Tu TE blâm es.
		himself. Il SE blâm e.
		ourselves. Nous NOUS blâm ons.
		yourselves. Vous VOUS blâm ez.
		themselves. Ils SE blâm ent.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Je ^s ME blâm e.	} may blame myself.
Tu TE blâm es.	
Il SE blâm e.	
Nous NOUS blâm ions.	
Vous VOUS blâm iez.	
Ils SE blâm ent.	

I Thou He We You They	} was blaming.	myself. Je ME blâm ais.
		thyself. Tu TE blâm ais.
		himself. Il SE blâm ait.
		ourselves. Nous NOUS blâm ions.
		yourselves. Vous VOUS blâm iez.
		themselves. Ils SE blâm aient

I Thou He We You They	} blamed	myself. Je ME blâm ai	} might blame myself.
		thyself. Tu TE blâm as.	
		himself. Il SE blâm a.	
		ourselves. Nous NOUS blâm âmes	
		yourselves. Vous VOUS blâm âtes.	
		themselves. Ils SE blâm èrent.	

I Thou He We You They	} shall will blame.	myself. Je ME blâmer ai.
		thyself. Tu TE blâmer as.
		himself. Il SE blâmer a.
		ourselves. Nous NOUS blâmer ons.
		yourselves. Vous VOUS blâmer ez.
		themselves. Ils SE blâmer ont.

I Thou He We You They	} shd. wd. blame	myself. Je ME blâmer ais.
		thyself. Tu TE blâmer ais.
		himself. Il SE blâmer ait.
		ourselves. Nous NOUS blâmer ions.
		yourselves. Vous VOUS blâmer iez.
		themselves. Ils SE blâmer aient.

Interrogatively.

Negatively

Interrogatively and Negatively.

ME blâme-je ?	Je ne ME blâme	} pas.	NE ME blâme-je	} pas ?
TE blâmes-tu ?	Tu ne TE blâmes		NE TE blâmes-tu	
SE blâme-t-il ?	Il ne SE blâme		NE SE blâme-t-il	
NOUS blâmons-nous ?	Nous ne NOUS blâmons pas.		NE NOUS blâmons-nous pas ?	
VOUS blâmez-vous ?	Vous ne VOUS blâmez pas.		NE VOUS blâmez-vous pas ?	
SE blâment-ils ?	Ils ne SE blâment pas.		NE SE blâment-ils pas ?	

* Sometimes it happens that the agent or person who acts is also the object, i. e. acts upon himself, as when I say ; I blame myself ; Thou preparest thyself ; He distinguishes himself ; We wash ourselves ; You dress yourself ; They expose themselves &c by which

Compound tenses of the reflexive verb SE BLÂMER, formed by adding the participle BLÂMÉ, to the auxiliary verb ÊTRE.

INFINITIVE COMPOUND.

To have blamed oneself.

s'être BLÂMÉ.

INDICATIVE.

I	} have blamed	myself.	Je ^s	ME	suis	} BLÂMÉ, m. ‡ée. f.	
Thou		thyself.	Tu	T ^{*s}	es		
He		himself.	Il	s'	est		
We		ourselves.	Nous	NOUS	sommes		
You		yourselves.	Vous	VOUS	êtes		
They	themselves.	Ils	SE	sont	} BLÂMÉS, m. ées. f.		
I	} had blamed	myself.	Je	M'		étais	} BLÂMÉ, m. ée. f.
Thou		thyself.	Tu	T'		étais	
He		himself.	Il	s'		était	
We		ourselves.	Nous	NOUS		étions	
You		yourselves.	Vous	VOUS	étiez		
They	themselves.	Ils	s'	étaient	} BLÂMÉS, m. ées. f.		
I	} had blamed	myself.	Je	ME		fus	} BLÂMÉ, m. ée. f.
Thou		thyself.	Tu	TE		fus	
He		himself.	Il	SE		fut	
We		ourselves.	Nous	NOUS		fûmes	
You		yourselves.	Vous	VOUS	fûtes		
They	themselves.	Ils	SE	furent	} BLÂMÉS, m. ées. f.		
I	} sh. will have bla	myself.	Je	ME		serai	} BLÂMÉ, m. ée. f.
Thou		thyself.	Tu	TE		seras	
He		himself.	Il	SE		sera	
We		ourselves.	Nous	NOUS		serons	
You		yourselves.	Vous	VOUS	sererez		
They	themselves.	Ils	SE	seront	} BLÂMÉS, m. ées. f.		
I	} have blam	myself.	Je	ME		serais	} BLÂMÉ, m. ée. f.
Thou		thyself.	Tu	TE		serais	
He		himself.	Il	SE		serait	
We		ourselves.	Nous	NOUS		serions	
You		yourselves.	Vous	VOUS	seriez		
They	themselves.	Ils	SE	seraient	} BLÂMÉS, m. ées. f.		

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Je ^s	ME	sois	} BLÂMÉ. may have blamed.
Tu	TE	sois	
Il	SE	soit	
Nous	NOUS	soyons	
Vous	VOUS	soyez	
Ils	SE	soient	} BLÂME. might have blamed.

BLÂMÉ. may have blamed.

BLÂME. might have blamed.

Interrogatively.		Negatively.		Interrogatively and Negative y.	
ME suis-je	} BLÂMÉ?	Je ne ME suis	} pas BLÂMÉ.	NE ME suis-je	} pas BLÂMÉ?
T' es-tu		Tu ne T' es		NE T' es-tu	
s' est-il		il ne s' est		NE s' est-il	
NOUS sommes-nous	} BLÂMÉS	Nous ne NOUS sommes p	} BLÂMÉS	NE NOUS sommes-nous p	} BLÂMÉS
VOUS êtes-vous		vous ne VOUS êtes pas		NE VOUS êtes-vous pas	
SE sont-ils		ils ne SE sont pas		NE SE sont-ils pas	

you see that the person who is the agent, performs the action on himself, and consequently is also the object. These verbs the French call réfléchis, i. e. reflexive, or reflected, because the energy of the verb returns to its agent. They differ in nothing from the other verbs, but in requiring an OBJECTIVE pronoun of the same number and person as the agent, or nominative, and in having their compound tenses formed with the auxiliary ÊTRE, instead of the auxiliary AVOIR.

N. B. These verbs are known in the dictionaries by having SE before their infinitive.

* See note * page 28.

† See, syntax of verbs, the rules on the past participle.

		INFINITIVE.				
		To go.	ALLer.			
		IMPERATIVE.				
		GO.	va, <i>sing.</i>	ALL ez, <i>plur.</i>		
		Let us go.		ALL ons.		
		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		
Present tense.	<i>I</i>	go, or <i>am</i> ^{going}	<i>Je</i> ³ vais ⁶ .	<i>J'</i>	aille.	GO, may go.
	<i>Thou</i>	goest, <i>art</i>	<i>Tu</i> vas ²³ .	<i>Tu</i>	ailles.	
	<i>He</i>	goes, or <i>is</i> ^{going}	<i>Il</i> va.	<i>Il</i>	aille.	
	<i>We</i>	} go, or are going.	<i>Nous</i> ALL ons.	<i>Nous</i> ALL ions.		
	<i>You</i>		<i>Vous</i> ALL ez.	<i>Vous</i> ALL iez.		
<i>They</i>	<i>Ils</i> vont ²³ .		<i>Ils</i> aillent ¹⁸ .			
Imperfect tense.	<i>I</i>	} was going. were going.	<i>J'</i> ALL ais ⁶ .			went, might go.
	<i>Thou</i>		<i>Tu</i> ALL ais.			
	<i>He</i>		<i>Il</i> ALL ait ²³			
	<i>We</i>		<i>Nous</i> ALL ions.			
	<i>You</i>		<i>Vous</i> ALL iez.			
Perfect tense.	<i>I</i>	} went, or did go.	<i>J'</i> ALL ai ⁵ .†	<i>J'</i>	ALL asse ² .	went, might go.
	<i>Thou</i>		<i>Tu</i> ALL as ²⁶ .	<i>Tu</i>	ALL asses.	
	<i>He</i>		<i>Il</i> ALL a.	<i>Il</i>	ALL ât ²⁶ .	
	<i>We</i>		<i>Nous</i> ALL âmes.	<i>Nous</i>	ALL assions.	
	<i>You</i>		<i>Vous</i> ALL âtes.	<i>Vous</i>	ALL assiez.	
<i>They</i>	<i>Ils</i> ALL èrent ¹² .	<i>Ils</i>	ALL assent.			
Future positive.	<i>I</i>	} shall, will go, or be going.	<i>J'</i> irai ⁵			went, might go.
	<i>Thou</i>		<i>Tu</i> iras ²⁶ .			
	<i>He</i>		<i>Il</i> ira.			
	<i>We</i>		<i>Nous</i> irons.			
	<i>You</i>		<i>Vous</i> irez.			
<i>They</i>	<i>Ils</i> iront ²⁶ .					
Fut. conditional.	<i>I</i>	} should, wd. go, or be going.	<i>J'</i> irais ⁶ .			went, might go.
	<i>Thou</i>		<i>Tu</i> irais.			
	<i>He</i>		<i>Il</i> irait ²³ .			
	<i>We</i>		<i>Nous</i> irions.			
	<i>You</i>		<i>Vous</i> iriez.			
<i>They</i>	<i>Ils</i> iraient ⁶					
		GERUND.		PARTICIPLE.		
		going.	ALL ant.	ALL é.	Gone.	

N. B. ALLER, to go, requires a place mentioned after it; as,
Je VAIS à la maison, à la ville, &c. I am going home, to town, &c.
 If no place is mentioned, we make the verb reflective as follows:

* A verb is called *irregular*, when all its tenses and persons cannot be formed from the infinitive, by changing only the last syllable, as you see in the verb *BLAMER*.

In order to render the difference more obvious, the tenses or persons which are formed regularly from the infinitive, have their terminations printed in *italic* characters, the words which are *irregular* are printed *wholly* in *roman*.

† *Fus, Fus, Fut; Fâmes, Fâtes, Furent*, the perfect tense of *ETRE*, is often used instead of *Allai, Allas, Alla; Allâmes, Allâtes, Allèrent*, the perfect of *ALLER*; as, *J' allai or je fus en France l' année dernière; I went to France last year. I would prefer allai to fus.*

INFINITIVE.

To go away. S'en ALL er.

IMPERATIVE.

Commanding rule 26, p. 77. Forbidding rule 27, page 77
 GO away, or } va-T-en, sing. } do not go
 be gone, } ALLEZ-VOUS-en, pl. } away.
 let us go away, ALLONS-NOUS-en. } NE VOUS en ALLEZ pas.
 NE NOUS en ALLONS pas. let us not go.

INDICATIVE.

I go, or am } *going* } Je m'en vais
 Thou goest, art } *going away* } Tu t'en vas.
 He goes, or is } *going away* } Il s'en va.
 We } go, are } Nous NOUS en ALLONS.
 You } going away. } Vous VOUS en ALLEZ.
 They } going away. } Ils s'en vont.
 I was going away. Je m'én ALLAIS.
 I went away. Je m'en ALLAI.
 I shll, will go away. Je m'en IRAI.
 I shd, wld go away. Je m'en IRAIS.
 I am not going away. Je ne m'en vais pas, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Je m'en aille.
 Tu t'en ailles.
 Il s'en aille.
 Nous NOUS en ALLIONS.
 Vous VOUS en ALLIEZ.
 Ils s'en aillent.

-finan 05 1700

Compound tenses, formed by adding the participle ALLÉ to the auxiliary verb ÊTRE.

I have } Je m'en suis ALLÉ.
 Thou hast } Tu t'en es ALLÉ.
 He has } Il s'en est ALLÉ.
 We have } Nous NOUS en sommes ALLÉS.
 You have } Vous VOUS en êtes ALLÉS.
 They have } Ils s' en sont ALLÉS.

ENVOYER. To SEND.

The sole irregularity of this verb is in the *future* and in the *conditional*, the other tenses being formed regularly in the same manner as BLÂMER.

INFINITIVE.

To SEND. ENVOY er.

INDICATIVE.

Pres. I send. J' ENVOYE.
 Imp. I did send. J' ENVOYais.
 Perf. I sent. J' ENVOYai, &c.
 Futu. I } J' envèrai^s.
 Thou } Tu envèras.
 He } shall, or } Il envèra.
 We } will send. } Nous envèrons.
 You } Vous envèrez.
 They } Ils envèront²⁶.
 Cond. I } J' envèrais^e.
 Thou } Tu envèrais.
 He } shld, or } Il envèrait²⁶
 We } wld send. } Nous envèrions.
 You } Vous envèriez.
 They } Ils envèraient^e.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

J' ENVOYE, &c.
 J' ENVOYASSE, &c

Conjugate in the same manner, RENVOY er, to Send back, to Dismiss.

INFINITIVE.

To FINISH. FIN *ir*.

IMPERATIVE.

finish. FIN *is, sing.* FIN *issez, plur.*
 let us finish. FIN *issons.*

INDICATIVE.

Present tense.
I finish, or am
Thou finishest, art
He finishes, or is
We } finish, or
You } are finishing.
They }

finishing.
*Je*³ FIN *is*²⁶.
Tu FIN *is*.
Il FIN *it*²⁶.
Nous FIN *issons*.
Vous FIN *issez*.
Ils FIN *issent*¹⁸.

Imperfect tense.
I }
Thou } was finishing.
He }
We }
You } were finishing.
They }

*Je*³ FIN *issais*⁶.
Tu FIN *issais*.
Il FIN *issait*²⁶.
Nous FIN *issions*.
Vous FIN *issiez*.
Ils FIN *issaient*⁶.

Perfect tense.
I }
Thou } finished,
He } did finish.
We }
You }
They }

*Je*³ FIN *is*²⁶.
Tu FIN *is*.
Il FIN *it*²³.
Nous FIN *îmes*.
Vous FIN *îtes*.
Ils FIN *irent*¹³.

Future positive.
I }
Thou } shall, will
He } finish,
We } be finishing.
You }
They }

*Je*³ FINIR *ai*⁵.
Tu FINIR *as*.
Il FINIR *a*.
Nous FINIR *ons*
Vous FINIR *ez*.
Ils FINIR *ont*⁰.

Fut. conditional.
I }
Thou } should, would
He } finish,
We } be finishing.
You }
They }

*Je*³ FINIR *ais*⁹.
Tu FINIR *ais*.
Il FINIR *ait*²⁶.
Nous FINIR *ions*.
Vous FINIR *iez*.
Ils FINIR *aient*⁹.

GERUND.

finishing. FIN *issant*.

Interrogatively. Negatively.
 FINIS-*je* ? } do I fin?
 FINIS-*tu* ? }
 FINIT-*il* ? }
 FINISSONS-*nous* ? NOUS ne FINISSONS }
 FINISSEZ - *vous* ? VOUS ne FINISSEZ }
 FINISSENT-*ils* ? ILS ne FINISSENT }
 pas.

I do not finish.

PARTICIPLE.

FIN *i*. finished.

Interrogatively and Negat.
 Ne FINIS-*je* }
 Ne FINIS-*tu* } pas?
 Ne FINIT-*il* }
 Ne FINISSONS-*nous* p.
 Ne FINISSEZ - *vous* p.
 Ne FINISSENT-*ils* pas }
 do I not finish?

After the same manner as FINIR, are conjugated the following verbs,
s'Abatardir, to degenerate. Abolir, to abolish. Aboutir, to end.
s'Abêtir, to grow stupid. Abonnir, to better. *s'Abrutir*, to become stupid.
 Accomplir

finish, may finish.
 finished, might finish.

- Accomplir, to accomplish.
 Accourir, to shorten.
 s'Accroupir, to sit squat.
 Adoucir, to soften.
 Affadir, to render tasteless.
 Affermir, to strengthen.
 Affaiblir, to weaken.
 Affranchir, to free.
 Agir, to act.
 Agrandir, to enlarge.
 Aguerrire, to inure to war.
 Aigrir, to exasperate.
 Alentir, to slacken.
 Amaigrir, to grow lean.
 Ameublir, to make moveable.
 Amoindrir, to lessen.
 Amollir, to soften.
 Amortir, to redeem.
 Anéantir, to annihilate.
 Anoblir, to ennoble.
 Appauvrir, to impoverish.
 Appesantir, to make heavy.
 Applanir, to level.
 Applatir, to flatten.
 Applaudir, to applaud.
 Approfondir, to fathom.
 Asservir, to enslave.
 Assortir, to match.
 Assoupir, to make drowsy.
 Assouplir, to supple.
 Assourdir, to deafen.
 Assouvir, to glut, to satiate.
 Assujettir, to subdue.
 Attendrir, to move to pity.
 Atterrir, to approach the land.
 Avertir, to warn.
 Avilir, to revile, to debase.
 Bannir, to banish.
 Bâtir, to build.
 Bénir, to bless.
 Blanchir, to whiten.
 Blémir, to grow pale.
 Bleuir, to make blue.
 Blondir, to grow fair.
 se Blottir, to lie squat.
 Bondir, to skip.
 Brandir, to brandish.
 Brouir, to blast.
 Brunir, to burnish.
 Candir, to candy.
 Chérir, to cherish.
 Choisir, to choose.
 Clapir, to squat, to clap.
 Compatir, to compassionate.
 Convertir, to convert.
 Crépir, to roughcast.
 Croupir, to stagnate.
 Débrutir, to take the roughness.
 Définir, to define.
 Défleurer, to lose the blossom.
 Dégarnir, to disgarnish.
 Dégourdir, to warm a little.
 Déguerpir, to move off.
 Démolir, to demolish.
 Dépérir, to decay.
 Dépouir, to unpolish.
 Déroïdir, to take off stiffness.
- Dérougir, to take off redness.
 Désobéir, to disobey.
 se Dessaisir, to give up.
 Désunir, to disunite.
 Divertir, to divert.
 Durcir, to harden.
 Eblouir, to dazzle.
 Eclaircir, to brighten.
 Elargir, to widen.
 Embellir, to embellish.
 Emplir, to fill.
 Encherir, to grow dearer.
 Endurcir, to harden.
 Enforcir, to grow strong.
 Enfouir, to bury.
 Enhardir, to embolden.
 Engloutir, to swallow up.
 Engourdir, to benumb.
 Enlaidir, to grow ugly.
 s'Enorgueillir, to grow proud.
 Enrichir, to enrich.
 Ensevelir, to put in a shroud.
 Envahir, to invade.
 Epaissir, to thicken.
 Epanouir, the bud opening.
 Equarrir, to square.
 Etablir, to establish.
 Etourdir, to stun.
 Etrécir, to narrow.
 s'Evanouir, to faint.
 Farcir, to stuff.
 Fléchir, to bend, to move.
 Flétrir, to wither.
 Fleurir, to blossom, to flourish.
 Fourir, to dig.
 Fourbir, to furbish.
 Fournir, to supply.
 Franchir, to leap over.
 Frémir, to shudder.
 se Froïdir, to grow cold.
 Garantir, to warrant.
 Garnir, to furnish.
 Gémir, to groan.
 Grandir, to grow tall.
 Grossir, to grow big.
 Guérir, to cure.
 Hennir, to neigh.
 Investir, to invest.
 Jaillir, to spout out.
 Jaunir, to grow yellow.
 Jouir, to enjoy.
 Languir, to languish.
 Meurtrir, to bruise.
 Moisir, to grow mouldy.
 Mollir, to grow soft.
 Mugir, to low.
 Munir, to store.
 Mûrir, to ripen.
 Nantir, to give security.
 Noircir, to blacken.
 Nourrir, to feed.
 Obéir, to obey.
 Obscurcir, to obscure.
 Ourdir, to warp.
 Pâlisir, to grow pale.
 Parfournir, to make up.
 Pâtir, to suffer.
- Périr, to perish.
 Pervertir, to pervert.
 Pétrir, to knead.
 Polir, to polish.
 Poursir, to grow rotten.
 Prémunir, to provide.
 Punir, to punish.
 Raccourcir, to shorten.
 Racornir, to make tough.
 Radoucir, to soften.
 Raffermer, to strengthen again.
 Ratraichir, to refresh.
 Ragrandir, to enlarge again.
 Rajouir, to grow young again.
 Ralentir, to slacken.
 Ramoïtir, to moisten.
 Ramollir, to soften.
 Rancir, to grow rancid.
 Ravilir, to debase.
 Ravir, to ravish, to delight.
 Rebâtir, to build again.
 Reblanchir, to whiten again.
 Rebondir, to rebound.
 Réfléchir, to reflect.
 Refleurir, to blossom again.
 Refroidir, to cool.
 Régir, to rule, to govern.
 Rejaillir, to spurt up.
 Réjouir, to rejoice.
 Rembrunir, to darken.
 Remplir, to fill again.
 Renchérir, to grow dearer.
 Rendurcir, to make harder.
 Renhardir, to grow bold again.
 Répartir, to distribute equally.
 Repolir, to polish again.
 Résaisir, to seize again.
 Resplendir, to shine.
 Ressortir, to resort.
 Retentir, to resound.
 Rétrécir, to straiten.
 Reverdir, to grow green again.
 Réunir, to reunite.
 Réussir, to succeed.
 Rôtir, to roast.
 Rougir, to blush.
 Rouir, to steep.
 Roussir, to make reddish.
 Rugir, to roar.
 Saillir, to gush out.
 Saisir, to seize.
 Sâlisir, to soil.
 Sévir, to exercise severity.
 Subir, to undergo.
 Subvertir, to subvert.
 se Tapir, to squat.
 Tarir, to drain.
 Ternir, to tarnish.
 Terrir, to land.
 Trahir, to betray.
 Transir, to chill.
 Travestir, to disguise.
 Unir, to unite.
 Verdîr, to grow green.
 Vernir, to varnish.
 Vieillir, to grow old.
 Vomir, to vomit.

The IRREGULAR verbs belonging to this conjugation are,

s' <i>Abstenir</i> , to abstain.....	like <i>VENIR</i> .	<i>Obtenir</i> , to obtain.....	like <i>VENIR</i> .
<i>Accourir</i> , to run to.....	like <i>COURIR</i> .	<i>Offrir</i> , to offer.....	like <i>OUVRIR</i> .
<i>Accueillir</i> , to welcome.....	like <i>CUEILLIR</i> .	<i>OUVRIR</i> , to open.....	page 127.
<i>Appartenir</i> , to belong.....	like <i>VENIR</i> .	<i>Parcourir</i> , to over-run.....	like <i>COURIR</i> .
<i>AQUERIR</i> , to acquire.....	page 121.	<i>Partir</i> , to set out.....	} like <i>SENTIR</i> .
<i>BOUILLIR</i> , to boil.....	page 122.	<i>Pressentir</i> , to have a foresight.....	
<i>Concourir</i> , to concur.....	like <i>COURIR</i> .	<i>Parvenir</i> , to attain.....	} like <i>VENIR</i> .
<i>Conquérir</i> , to conquer.....	like <i>AQUERIR</i> .	<i>Prévenir</i> , to prevent.....	
<i>Consentir</i> , to consent.....	like <i>SENTIR</i> .	<i>Provenir</i> , to proceed.....	} like <i>VENIR</i> .
<i>Contenir</i> , to contain.....	} like <i>VENIR</i> .	<i>Querir</i> , to fetch.†.....	
<i>Contrevenir</i> , to contravene.....		<i>Recourir</i> , to have recourse to.....	like <i>COURIR</i> .
<i>Convénir</i> , to agree.....	like <i>VENIR</i> .	<i>Recouvrir</i> , to cover again.....	like <i>OUVRIR</i> .
<i>COURIR</i> , to run.....	page 123.	<i>Recueillir</i> , to collect.....	like <i>CUEILLIR</i> .
<i>Couvrir</i> , to cover.....	like <i>OUVRIR</i> .	<i>Redevenir</i> , to become again.....	like <i>VENIR</i> .
<i>CUEILLIR</i> , to gather.....	page 124.	se <i>Rendormir</i> , to sleep again.....	} like <i>SENTIR</i> .
<i>Décourir</i> , to discover.....	like <i>OUVRIR</i> .	<i>Repartir</i> , to set out again ..	
<i>Démentir</i> , to give the lie ...	} like <i>SENTIR</i> .	se <i>Repentir</i> , to repent.....	
se <i>Départir</i> , to give up.....		<i>Requérir</i> , to require.....	like <i>AQUÉRIR</i> .
<i>Désservir</i> , to take off the.....	} like <i>VENIR</i> .	<i>Ressentir</i> , to resent.....	} like <i>SENTIR</i> .
<i>Détenir</i> , to detain..[dishes.]		<i>Ressortir</i> , to go out again....	
<i>Devenir</i> , to become.....	like <i>VENIR</i> .	<i>Ressouvenir</i> , to remember....	} like <i>VENIR</i> .
se <i>Dévêtir</i> , to undress.....	like <i>REVÊTIR</i> .	<i>Retenir</i> , to retain.....	
<i>Disconvenir</i> , to disagree.....	like <i>VENIR</i> .	<i>Revenir</i> , to return.....	} like <i>VENIR</i> .
<i>Discourir</i> , to discourse.....	like <i>COURIR</i> .	<i>REVÊTIR</i> , to invest.....	
<i>Dormir</i> , to sleep.....	} like <i>SENTIR</i> .	<i>Secourir</i> , to succour.....	like <i>COURIR</i> .
<i>Endormir</i> , to lull asleep.....		<i>SENTIR</i> , to feel, to smell.....	page 129.
s' <i>Endormir</i> , to fall asleep...}	} like <i>VENIR</i> .	<i>Servir</i> , to serve, to use.....	} like <i>SENTIR</i> .
<i>Encourir</i> , to incur.....		<i>Sortir</i> , to go out.....	
s' <i>Enfuir</i> , to run away.....	like <i>FUIR</i> .	<i>Souffrir</i> , to suffer.....	like <i>OUVRIR</i> .
<i>Entretenir</i> , to keep up.....	like <i>VENIR</i> .	<i>Soutenir</i> , to maintain.....	} like <i>VENIR</i> .
<i>Entr'ouvrir</i> , to open a little ..	like <i>OUVRIR</i> .	se <i>Souvenir</i> , to remember ..	
<i>FUIR</i> , to flee, to shun, to avoid.	} like <i>VENIR</i> .	<i>Subvenir</i> , to afford.....	} like <i>VENIR</i> .
<i>Haïr</i> , to hate.†.....		<i>Survénir</i> , to befall.....	
<i>Intervenir</i> , to intervene.....	like <i>VENIR</i> .	<i>Tenir</i> , to hold.....	} like <i>VENIR</i> .
<i>Maintenir</i> , to maintain.....	like <i>SENTIR</i> .	<i>TRESSAILLIR</i> , to start....	
<i>Mentir</i> , to lie.....	like <i>SENTIR</i> .	<i>VENIR</i> , to come.....	page 131.
<i>MOURIR</i> , to die.....	page 126.	<i>Vêtir</i> , to clothe.....	like <i>REVÊTIR</i> .

* Several of these irregular verbs having a similarity in their conjugation, as, for example, the verbs in *tir*, which are all but two (*vêtir* and *revêtir*) conjugated like *SENTIR*, the verbs in *enir* which are conjugated like *VENIR*; I have conjugated only one verb of each termination, as a model for the others; and all the verbs which may be conjugated in the same manner as that verb are found under it.

† *HAIR* is regular only in the *first*, *second*, and *third* persons singular of the *present* of the *indicative*, and in the *second* person singular of the *imperative*, where *ai* are pronounced in *one* syllable,

Je <i>haïs</i> .	I hate.	pronounce	<i>haye</i> .
Tu <i>haïs</i> .	Thou hatest.		<i>haye</i> .
Il <i>haït</i> .	He hates.		<i>hay</i> .

in the other tenses and persons *ai* are pronounced in *two* distinct syllables, and the *i* is marked over with *two* dots,

Nous <i>haïssons</i> .	We hate.	pronounce	<i>ha-ïsson</i> .
Vous <i>haïssez</i> .	You hate.		<i>ha-ïssay</i> .
Ils <i>haïssent</i> .	They hate.		<i>ha-ïss</i> .
Je <i>haïssais</i> .	I did hate.		<i>ha-ïssaye</i> .
Je <i>haïis</i> .	I hated.		<i>ha-ee</i> .
Je <i>haïrai</i> .	I shall hate.		<i>ha-ee-ray</i> .
Je <i>haïrais</i> .	I should hate, &c. like <i>FIN IR</i> .		

‡ Used only in the *infinitive* after *Aller* and *Envoyer*: as,
Aller querir, to go and fetch. *Envoyer querir*, to send for.

INFINITIVE.
To ACQUIRE. *AQUÉRir.

IMPERATIVE.
acquire. Aquiers, *sing.* AQUÉR ez, *plur.*
Let us acquire. AQUÉR ons.

	<i>INDICATIVE.</i>	<i>SUBJUNCTIVE.</i>	
Present tense.	<i>I</i> acquire, or <i>am</i>	<i>J</i> *aquiers.	<i>J</i> *aquièrè.
	<i>Thou</i> acquirest, <i>art</i>	<i>Tu</i> aquiers.	<i>Tu</i> aquièrès.
	<i>He</i> acquires, or <i>is</i>	<i>Il</i> aquiert ²⁵ .	<i>Il</i> aquièrè.
	<i>We</i> } acquire,	<i>Nous</i> aquér ons.	<i>Nous</i> aquér ions.
	<i>You</i> } are acquiring.	<i>Vous</i> aquér ez.	<i>Vous</i> aquér iez.
Ir perfect tense.	<i>I</i> } was acquiring.	<i>J</i> *aquérais ⁶ .	acquire, <i>may</i> acquire.
	<i>Thou</i> } was acquiring.	<i>Tu</i> aquér ais.	
	<i>He</i> } was acquiring.	<i>Il</i> aquér ait ²⁵ .	
	<i>We</i> } were acquiring.	<i>Nous</i> aquér ions.	
	<i>You</i> } were acquiring.	<i>Vous</i> aquér iez.	
Perfect tense.	<i>I</i> } acquired,	<i>J</i> *aquis. †	acquired, <i>might</i> acquire.
	<i>Thou</i> } did acquire.	<i>Tu</i> aquis.	
	<i>He</i> } did acquire.	<i>Il</i> aquit ²⁵ .	
	<i>We</i> } did acquire.	<i>Nous</i> aquîmes.	
	<i>You</i> } did acquire.	<i>Vous</i> aquîtes.	
Future positive.	<i>I</i> } shall, will	<i>J</i> *aquer rai ⁵ . †	acquired, <i>might</i> acquire.
	<i>Thou</i> } shall, will	<i>Tu</i> aquer ras.	
	<i>He</i> } shall, will	<i>Il</i> aquer ra.	
	<i>We</i> } be acquiring.	<i>Nous</i> aquer rons.	
	<i>You</i> } be acquiring.	<i>Vous</i> aquer rez.	
Fut. conditional	<i>I</i> } should, would	<i>J</i> *aquer rais ⁶ . †	acquired, <i>might</i> acquire.
	<i>Thou</i> } should, would	<i>Tu</i> aquer rais.	
	<i>He</i> } should, would	<i>Il</i> aquer rait ²⁵ .	
	<i>We</i> } be acquiring.	<i>Nous</i> aquer rions.	
	<i>You</i> } be acquiring.	<i>Vous</i> aquer riez.	
	<i>They</i> } be acquiring.	<i>Il</i> s aquer raient ⁶ .	

GERUND. *PARTICIPLE.*
Acquiring. AQUÉR ant. aquis. Acquired.

Conjugate in the same manner,

REQUÉRir, to require, and CONQUÉRir, to conquer.

N. B. CONQUÉR *ir* is used only in the *infinitive*, in the *gerund* CONQUÉRant, in the *participle* CONQUIS, and in the *perfect*

<i>Je</i> conquis.	<i>I</i> conquered.	<i>Je</i> conquisse.	might conq.
<i>Tu</i> conquis.	<i>Thou</i> conqueredst.	<i>Tu</i> conquisses.	
<i>Il</i> conquît.	<i>He</i> conquered.	<i>Il</i> conquît.	
<i>Nous</i> conquîmes, &c.	<i>We</i> conquered.	<i>Nous</i> conquissions.	

• See *qu*, page 13.

† See note 4, page 2.

‡ These two *rr* must be sounded distinctly; in order to do it, lay a stress on the first *r*

INFINITIVE.

To BOIL. BOUILLir.

IMPERATIVE.

Boil. bous, *sing.* BOUILL *ez plur.*
 Let us boil. BOUILL *ons.*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	<i>I</i> boil, or <i>am</i> boiling.	<i>Je</i> ^s ¹⁴ bous ²⁶ .	<i>Je</i> bouill <i>e.</i>	boil, <i>may</i> boil.
	<i>Thou</i> boilest, <i>art</i> boiling.	<i>Tu</i> bous.	<i>Tu</i> bouill <i>es.</i>	
	<i>He</i> boils, or <i>is</i> boiling.	<i>Il</i> bout ²⁶ .	<i>Il</i> bouill <i>e.</i>	
	<i>We</i> } boil, or <i>You</i> } are boiling.	<i>Nous</i> bouill <i>ons.</i>	<i>Nous</i> bouill <i>ions.</i>	
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Vous</i> bouill <i>ez.</i>	<i>Vous</i> bouill <i>iez.</i>	
Imperfect tense.	<i>I</i> } was boiling.	<i>Je</i> ¹⁴ bouill <i>ais</i> ⁶ .		boiled, <i>might</i> boil.
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> bouill <i>ais.</i>		
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> bouill <i>ait</i> ²⁶ .		
	<i>We</i> } were boiling.	<i>Nous</i> bouill <i>ions.</i>		
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> bouill <i>iez.</i>		
Perfect tense	<i>I</i> } boiled, <i>did</i> boil.	<i>Je</i> ¹⁴ bouill <i>is</i> ²⁶ .	<i>Je</i> bouill <i>isse</i> ² .	
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> bouill <i>is.</i>	<i>Tu</i> bouill <i>isses.</i>	
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> bouill <i>it</i> ²⁶ .	<i>Il</i> bouill <i>ît</i> ²⁶ .	
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> bouill <i>îmes.</i>	<i>Nous</i> bouill <i>issions.</i>	
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> bouill <i>îtes.</i>	<i>Vous</i> bouill <i>issiez.</i>	
Future positive.	<i>I</i> } shall, will boil, <i>be</i> boiling.	<i>Je</i> ¹⁴ bouillir <i>ai</i> ⁵ .		
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> bouillir <i>as.</i>		
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> bouillir <i>a.</i>		
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> bouillir <i>ons.</i>		
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> bouillir <i>ez.</i>		
Fut. conditional.	<i>I</i> } should, would boil, <i>be</i> boiling.	<i>Je</i> ¹⁴ bouillir <i>ais</i> ⁶ .		
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> bouillir <i>ais.</i>		
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> bouillir <i>ait</i> ²⁶ .		
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> bouillir <i>ions.</i>		
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> bouillir <i>iez.</i>		
<i>They</i> }	<i> Ils </i> bouillir <i>aient</i> ⁶ .			

GERUND.

Boiling.

BOUILL *ant.*

PARTICIPLE.

BOUILL *i.* Boiled.

N. B. To BOIL, used in an *active* sense, *i. e.* followed by an *object*, is not expressed by *bouillir*, but by *faire bouillir*; as,

<i>I</i> } boil, or <i>Thou</i> } am boiling	} water, meat, &c.	<i>Je</i> fais bouillir	} de l'eau, de la viande,
<i>He</i> }		<i>Tu</i> fais bouillir	
<i>We</i> } boil, or <i>are</i> <i>You</i> } boiling.		<i>Il</i> fait bouillir	
<i>They</i> }		<i>Nous</i> faisons bouillir	
		<i>Vous</i> faites bouillir	
		<i>Ils</i> font bouillir	

I have } boiled, or *been* boiling. *J' ai* } fait bouillir, &c.
Thou hast }

And so on, by adding the infinitive BOUILLIR to the verb *faire*. See FAIRE.

INFINITIVE.

To RUN. ¹⁴COUR *ir.*

IMPERATIVE.

run. COUR *s, sing.* COUR *ez, plur.*
Let us run. COUR *ons.*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	I run, or <i>am</i> Thou runnest, <i>art</i> He runs, or <i>is</i> We } You } They }	running. run, or are running.	Je ^s ¹⁴ cour <i>s²⁶.</i>	Je ¹⁴ cour <i>e.</i>	run, may run.
			Tu cour <i>s.</i>	Tu cour <i>es.</i>	
Imperfect tense.	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }	was running. were running.	Il cour <i>t²⁶.</i>	Il cour <i>e.</i>	
			Nous cour <i>ons.</i>	Nous cour <i>ions.</i>	
			Vous cour <i>ez.</i>	Vous cour <i>iez.</i>	
			Ils cour <i>ent¹⁸.</i>	Ils cour <i>ent¹⁸.</i>	
			Je ¹⁴ cour <i>ais⁶.</i>	Tu cour <i>ais.</i>	
Perfect tense.	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }	ran, did run.	Il cour <i>ait²⁶.</i>	Nous cour <i>ions.</i>	
			Nous cour <i>ions.</i>	Vous cour <i>iez.</i>	
			Ils cour <i>aient⁶.</i>	Ils cour <i>aient⁶.</i>	
			Je ¹⁴ cour <i>us²⁶.</i>	Tu cour <i>us.</i>	
			Tu cour <i>us.</i>	Il cour <i>ut²⁶.</i>	
Future positive.	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }	shall, will run, be running.	Nous cour <i>umes.</i>	Je ¹⁴ cour <i>usse².</i>	ran, might run.
			Vous cour <i>etes.</i>	Tu cour <i>usses.</i>	
			Ils cour <i>urent¹⁸.</i>	Il cour <i>ut²⁶.</i>	
			Je ¹⁴ cour <i>rai⁵.*</i>	Nous cour <i>ussions.</i>	
			Tu cour <i>ras.</i>	Vous cour <i>ussiez.</i>	
Fut. conditional.	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }	should, would run be running.	Ils cour <i>urent¹⁸.</i>	Ils cour <i>ussent.</i>	
			Je ¹⁴ cour <i>rais⁶.*</i>	Tu cour <i>rais.</i>	
			Tu cour <i>rais.</i>	Il cour <i>rait²⁶.</i>	
			Il cour <i>rait²⁶.</i>	Nous cour <i>rions.</i>	
			Nous cour <i>rions.</i>	Vous cour <i>riez.</i>	

GERUND.

PARTICIPLE.

running. COUR *ant.*

COUR *u.* RUN.

After the same manner as COURIR, conjugate

ACCOURIR. to run to.	PARCOURIR. to peruse, to overrun.
CONCOURIR. to concur.	RECOURIR. { to run again, to have
DISCOURIR. to discourse.	{ recourse to.
ENCOURIR. to incur.	SECOURIR. to succour, to relieve.

N. B. The compound tenses of ACCOURIR are formed with either *Avoir* or *Etre*; as,
I have run, J' ai accouru, or Je suis accouru.
Thou hast run, Tu as accouru, Tu es accouru.
He has run, Il a accouru, Il est accouru.
We have run, &c. Nous avons accouru, Nous sommes accourus, &c.

* These two *rr* must be sounded distinctly; in order to do it, lay a stress on the first

INFINITIVE.

To GATHER.

CUEILL**ir*.

IMPERATIVE.

gather. cueill *es, sing.* CUEILL *ez, plur.*
 Let us gather. CUEILL *ons.*

INDICATIVE.

Present tense.
 I gather, or am
 Thou gatherest, art
 He gathers, or is
 We
 You } gather or
 They } are gathering.

Je^s cueill**e.*
Tu cueill *es*²⁶.
Il cueill *e.*
Nous cueill *ons.*
Vous cueill *ez.*
Ils cueill *ent*¹⁸.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Je cueill *e.*
Tu cueill *es.*
Il cueill *e.*
Nous cueill *ions.*
Vous cueill *iez.*
Ils cueill *ent*¹⁸.

Imperfect tense.
 I
 Thou } was gathering.
 He }
 We }
 You } were gathering.
 They }

Je cueill *ais*⁶.
Tu cueill *ais.*
Il cueill *ait*²⁶.
Nous cueill *ions.*
Vous cueill *iez.*
Ils cueill *aient*³.

Perfect tense.
 I
 Thou }
 He } gathered,
 We } did gather.
 You }
 They }

Je cueill *is*²⁶.
Tu cueill *is.*
Il cueill *it*²⁶.
Nous cueill *îmes.*
Vous cueill *îtes.*
Ils cueill *irent*¹⁸.

Je^s cueill *isse*².
Tu cueill *isses.*
Il cueill *ît*²⁶.
Nous cueill *issions.*
Vous cueill *issiez.*
Ils cueill *issent.*

Future positive.
 I
 Thou }
 He } shall, will gather
 We } be gathering.
 You }
 They }

Je cueill *erai*⁵.
Tu cueill *eras.*
Il cueill *era.*
Nous cueill *erons.*
Vous cueill *erez.*
Ils cueill *eront*²⁶.

Fut. conditional.
 I
 Thou }
 He } should, would gather,
 We } be gathering.
 You }
 They }

Je cueill *erais*⁶.
Tu cueill *erais.*
Il cueill *erait*²⁶.
Nous cueill *erions.*
Vous cueill *eriez.*
Ils cueill *eraient*⁶.

GERUND.

gathering.

CUEILL *ant.*

PARTICIPLE.

CUEILL *i.* gathered

After the same manner as CUEILLIR are conjugated,

ACCUEILLIR, to welcome, and RECUEILLIR, to receive, to collect.

N. B. ACCUEILLIE is now rather obsolete, instead of it, we use *Faire bon accueil*; as,
 They welcomed us. *Ils nous firent bon accueil.*

TO BE WELCOME is, *Etre bien venu*; as,
 You are welcome.

Vous êtes bien venu.

* The nearest idea that I can give with letters, of the sound of CUEILL, is *kheughl*.

gather, may gather.

gathered, might gather.

INFINITIVE.
To SHUN; To FLEE. *FU ir.*

IMPERATIVE.
 shun. *FU is, sing.* *FUI ez, plur.*
 let us shun. *FUI ons.*

INDICATIVE.

<i>Present tense.</i>	<i>I</i> shun, or <i>am</i>	shunning. g.	<i>Je</i> ³ <i>fu is</i> ²⁶ .
	<i>Thou</i> shunnest, <i>art</i>		<i>Tu fu is.</i>
	<i>He</i> shuns, or <i>is</i>		<i>Il fu it</i> ²⁵ .
<i>Imperfect tense.</i>	<i>We</i> } shun, or	shunning. g.	<i>Nous fu yons.</i>
	<i>You</i> } are shunning.		<i>Vous fu yez.</i>
	<i>They</i> }		<i>ils fu ient</i> ¹⁹ .
	<i>I</i> } was shunning.		<i>Je</i> ⁴ <i>fu yais</i> ⁶ .
	<i>Thou</i> }		<i>Tu fu yais.</i>
<i>Perfect tense.</i>	<i>He</i> } were shunning.	shunning. g.	<i>Il fu yait</i> ²⁶ .
	<i>We</i> }		<i>Nous fu yions.</i>
	<i>You</i> }		<i>Vous fu yiez.</i>
	<i>They</i> }		<i>ils fu yaient</i> ⁶ .
	<i>I</i> } shunned,		shunning. g.
<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu fu is.</i>		
<i>He</i> } did shun.	<i>Il fu it</i> ²⁵ .		
<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous fu imes.</i>		
<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous fu ites.</i>		
<i>Future positive.</i>	<i>They</i> }	shunning. g.	<i>ils fu irent</i> ¹⁹ .
	<i>I</i> } shall, will shun,		<i>Je fuir ais</i> ⁵ .
	<i>Thou</i> }		<i>Tu fuir as.</i>
	<i>He</i> } be shunning.		<i>Il fuir a.</i>
	<i>We</i> }		<i>Nous fuir ons.</i>
<i>Fut. conditional.</i>	<i>You</i> }	shunning. g.	<i>Vous fuir ez.</i>
	<i>They</i> }		<i>ils fuir ont</i> ²³ .
	<i>I</i> } shd, wd shun		<i>Je fuir ais</i> ⁵ .
	<i>Thou</i> }		<i>Tu fuir ais.</i>
	<i>He</i> } be shunning.		<i>Il fuir ait</i> ²³ .
<i>Fut. conditional.</i>	<i>We</i> }	shunning. g.	<i>Nous fuir ions.</i>
	<i>You</i> }		<i>Vous fuir iez.</i>
	<i>They</i> }		<i>ils fuir aient</i> ⁶ .

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Je</i> <i>fu ie.</i>	shun, may shun. shunned, might shun.
<i>Tu fu ies.</i>	
<i>Il fu ie.</i>	
<i>Nous fu yions.</i>	
<i>Vous fu yiez.</i>	
<i>ils fu ient.</i>	
<i>Je fu isse</i> ² .	
<i>Tu fu isses.</i>	
<i>Il fu it</i> ²⁵ .	
<i>Nous fu issions.</i>	
<i>Vous fu issiez.</i>	
<i>ils fu issent.</i>	

GERUND.

shunning.

*FUY ant*²⁶.

PARTICIPLE.

FU i. shunned.

After the same manner is conjugated s'ENFUIR, to run away; thus,

<i>I</i> run, or <i>am</i>	} running away.	<i>Je</i> <i>M'</i> <i>enfuis.</i>
<i>Thou</i> runnest, <i>art</i>		<i>Tu</i> <i>T'</i> <i>enfuis.</i>
<i>He</i> runs, or <i>is</i>		<i>il</i> <i>s'</i> <i>enfuit</i> ²⁶ .
<i>We</i> run, <i>are</i>		<i>Nous</i> <i>NOUS</i> <i>enfuyons.</i>
<i>You</i> run, <i>are</i>		<i>vous</i> <i>VOUS</i> <i>enfuyez.</i>
<i>They</i> run, <i>are</i>		<i>ils</i> <i>s'</i> <i>enfuient</i> ¹⁹ .

N. B. The compound tenses of *s'ENFUIR* are formed with *Etre*, not *Avoir*; as,

<i>I</i> have run away.	} <i>ENFUI</i> , &c.
<i>Thou</i> hast run away.	
<i>He</i> has run away	

Je *ME* *suis* }
Tu *T'* *es* }
Il *s'* *est* }

INFINITIVE.

To DIE.

MOUR *ir.*

IMPERATIVE.

die. Meurs, *sing.* MOUR *ez, plur*
 Let us die. MOUR *ons.*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	<i>I</i> die, or <i>am</i> dying ⁵ .	<i>Je</i> ¹² meurs ²⁶ .	<i>Je</i> meure.	die, may die.
	<i>Thou</i> diest, <i>art</i> dying ⁵ .	<i>Tu</i> meurs.	<i>Tu</i> meures.	
	<i>He</i> dies, or <i>is</i> dying ⁵ .	<i>Il</i> meurt ²⁶ .	<i>Il</i> meure.	
Imperfect tense.	<i>We</i> } die, or	<i>Nous</i> mour <i>ons.</i>	<i>Nous</i> mour <i>ions.</i>	died, might die.
	<i>You</i> } are dying.	<i>Vous</i> mour <i>ez.</i>	<i>Vous</i> mour <i>iez.</i>	
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> meurent ¹⁸ .	<i>Ils</i> meurent.	
	<i>I</i> } was dying.	<i>Je</i> ¹⁴ mour <i>ais</i> ⁶ .		
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> mour <i>ais.</i>		
Perfect tense.	<i>He</i> } were dying.	<i>Il</i> mour <i>ait</i> ²⁶ .		
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> mour <i>ions.</i>		
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> mour <i>iez.</i>		
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> mour <i>aient</i> ⁶ .		
	<i>I</i> } died,	<i>Je</i> ¹⁴ mour <i>us</i> ²⁶ .	<i>Je</i> mour <i>usse</i> ² .	
<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> mour <i>us.</i>	<i>Tu</i> mour <i>usses.</i>		
<i>He</i> } did die.	<i>Il</i> mour <i>ut</i> ²⁶ .	<i>Il</i> mour <i>ût</i> ²⁶ .		
<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> mour <i>ûmes.</i>	<i>Nous</i> mour <i>ussions.</i>		
<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> mour <i>ûtes.</i>	<i>Vous</i> mour <i>ussiez.</i>		
Future positive.	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> mour <i>urent</i> ¹⁸ .	<i>Ils</i> mour <i>ussent.</i>	
	<i>I</i> } shll, will die,	<i>Je</i> ¹⁴ mour <i>rai</i> ^{5,*} .		
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> mour <i>ras.</i>		
	<i>He</i> } be dying.	<i>Il</i> mour <i>ra.</i>		
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> mour <i>rons.</i>		
Fut. conditional.	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> mour <i>rez.</i>		
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> mour <i>ront</i> ²⁶ .		
	<i>I</i> } shd, wd die,	<i>Je</i> ¹⁴ mour <i>rais</i> ^{6,*} .		
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> mour <i>rais.</i>		
	<i>He</i> } be dying.	<i>Il</i> mour <i>rait</i> ²⁶ .		
<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> mour <i>riens.</i>			
<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> mour <i>riez.</i>			
<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> mour <i>raient</i> ⁶ .			

GERUND.

dying.

MOUR *ant*²⁶.

PARTICIPLE.

Mort²⁶.

dead.

After the same manner as MOURIR is conjugated se MOURIR, to be dying ;

<i>Je</i> ME meurs.	<i>I</i> am	} dying away.
<i>Tu</i> TE meurs.	<i>Thou</i> art	
<i>Il</i> SE meurt.	<i>He</i> is	
<i>Nous</i> NOUS mour <i>ons.</i>	<i>We</i> are	
<i>Vous</i> VOUS mour <i>ez.</i>	<i>You</i> are	
<i>Ils</i> SE meurent.	<i>They</i> are	

N. B. The compound tenses of MOURIR are formed by adding *Mort* to the auxiliary *Etre*; as, He has died. *Il est mort.*
 They have died. *Ils sont morts, &c.*

* These two *rr* must be sounded distinctly; in order to do it, lay a stress on the first *r*

INFINITIVE.

To OPEN. OUVR *ir.*

IMPERATIVE.

open. OUVR *es, sing.* OUVR *ez, plur.*
 let us open. OUVR *ons.*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	I open, or <i>am</i> Thou openest, <i>art</i> He opens, or <i>is</i> We } You } They }	opening. opening. opening. opening. opening.	J' ¹⁴ ouvr <i>e.</i>	J' ¹⁴ ouvr <i>e.</i>	open, <i>may</i> open.
			Tu ouvr <i>es.</i>	Tu ouvr <i>es.</i>	
			Il ouvr <i>e.</i>	Il ouvr <i>e.</i>	
			Nous ouvr <i>ons.</i>	Nous ouvr <i>ions.</i>	
			Vous ouvr <i>ez.</i>	Vous ouvr <i>iez.</i>	
	Ils ouvr <i>ent</i> ¹⁸ .	Ils ouvr <i>ent.</i>			
Imperfect tense.	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }	was opening. was opening. were opening. were opening.	J' ¹⁴ ouvr <i>ais</i> ⁵ .		opened, <i>might</i> open.
			Tu ouvr <i>ais.</i>		
			Il ouvr <i>ait</i> ²⁶ .		
			Nous ouvr <i>ions.</i>		
			Vous ouvr <i>iez.</i>		
	Ils ouvr <i>aient</i> ⁶ .				
Perfect tense.	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }	opened, did open.	J' ¹⁴ ouvr <i>is</i> ²⁶ .	J' ¹⁴ ouvr <i>isse</i> ² .	opened, <i>might</i> open.
			Tu ouvr <i>is.</i>	Tu ouvr <i>isses.</i>	
			Il ouvr <i>it</i> ²⁶ .	Il ouvr <i>ît</i> ²⁶ .	
			Nous ouvr <i>îmes.</i>	Nous ouvr <i>issions.</i>	
			Vous ouvr <i>îtes.</i>	Vous ouvr <i>issiez.</i>	
	Ils ouvr <i>irent</i> ¹⁸ .	Ils ouvr <i>issent.</i>			
Future positive.	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }	shall, will open, be opening.	J' ¹⁴ ouvrir <i>ai</i> ⁵ .		opened, <i>might</i> open.
			Tu ouvrir <i>as.</i>		
			Il ouvrir <i>a.</i>		
			Nous ouvrir <i>ons.</i>		
			Vous ouvrir <i>ez.</i>		
	Ils ouvrir <i>ont</i> ²⁶ .				
Fut. conditional.	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }	shd, wd open, be opening.	J' ¹⁴ ouvrir <i>ais</i> ⁶ .		opened, <i>might</i> open.
			Tu ouvrir <i>ais.</i>		
			Il ouvrir <i>ait</i> ²⁶ .		
			Nous ouvrir <i>ions.</i>		
			Vous ouvrir <i>iez.</i>		
	Ils ouvrir <i>aient</i> ⁶ .				

GERUND.

PARTICIPLE.

opening. OUVR *ant*²⁶. ouvert²⁷. opened.

After the same manner as OUVRIR, are conjugated

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| ENTR'OUVRIR, to open a little. | RECOUVRIR, to cover again |
| COUVRIR, to cover. | OFFRIR, to offer. |
| DÉCOUVRIR, to discover. | SOUFFRIR, to suffer. |

INFINITIVE.

To INVEST *with*.* REVÊT *ir*.

IMPERATIVE.

invest. REVÊT *s, sing.* REVÊT *ez, plur.*
let us invest. REVÊT *ons.*

INDICATIVE.

Present tense. I invest, or *am*
Thou investest, *art*
He invests, or *is*
We } invest,
You } *are* investing.
They }investing.
Je^s revêt *s²⁶.*
Tu revêt *s.*
Il revêt *s²⁶.*
Nous revêt *ons.*
Vous revêt *ez.*
Ils revêt *ent¹⁸.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Je revêt *e.*
Tu revêt *es.*
Il revêt *e.*
Nous revêt *ions.*
Vous revêt *iez.*
Ils revêt *ent.*invest, *may* invest.Imperfect tense. I }
Thou } *was* investing.
He }
We }
You } *were* investing.
They }Je revêt *aiss².*
Tu revêt *aiss.*
Il revêt *aiss²⁵.*
Nous revêt *ions.*
Vous revêt *iez.*
Ils revêt *aient¹⁸.*invested, *might* invest.Perfect tense. I }
Thou }
He } *invested,*
We } *did* invest.
You }
They }Je revêt *iss²⁵.*
Tu revêt *is.*
Il revêt *iss²⁵.*
Nous revêt *îmes.*
Vous revêt *îtes.*
Ils revêt *irent¹⁸.*Je revêt *isse.*
Tu revêt *isses.*
Il revêt *îss²⁵.*
Nous revêt *issions.*
Vous revêt *issiez.*
Ils revêt *issent.*Future positive. I }
Thou }
He } *shall, will* invest,
We } *be* investing.
You }
They }Je revêtir *aiss⁵.*
Tu revêtir *ais.*
Il revêtir *a.*
Nous revêtir *ons.*
Vous revêtir *ez.*
Ils revêtir *ont²⁶.*Fut. conditional. I }
Thou }
He } *shd, wd* invest,
We } *be* investing.
You }
They }Je revêtir *aiss²⁶.*
Tu revêtir *aiss.*
Il revêtir *aiss.*
Nous revêtir *ions.*
Vous revêtir *iez.*
Ils revêtir *aient⁶.*

GERUND.

investing. REVÊT *ant²⁶.*

PARTICIPLE.

REVÊT *u.* invested.*After the same manner as REVÊTIR, are conjugated*VÊTIR, *to clothe*; and DÉVÊTIR, *to undress*;

but these two verbs are seldom used, except in the infinitive VÊTIR, DÉVÊTIR, and in the participle VÊTU, *clothed*; instead of the former, we make use of HABILLER, *to clothe, to dress*; and instead of the latter, we use DÉSHABILLER, *to undress*.

* To invest with honours, dignities, &c. but not to surround.

INFINITIVE.
To FEEL; To SMELL. **SENT *ir.***

IMPERATIVE.
 feel. sens, *sing.* **SENT *ez, plur.***
 Let us feel. **SENT *ons.***

	<i>INDICATIVE.</i>	<i>SUBJUNCTIVE</i>		
Present tense.	<i>I</i> feel, or <i>am</i> feeling ^g .	<i>Je</i> ³ ¹⁶ sens ²⁵ .	<i>Je</i> sent <i>e</i> ² .	feel, may feel.
	<i>Thou</i> feelest, <i>art</i>	<i>Tu</i> sens.	<i>Tu</i> sent <i>es</i> .	
	<i>He</i> feels, or <i>is</i>	<i>Il</i> sent ²⁵ .	<i>Il</i> sent <i>e</i> .	
Imperfect tense.	<i>We</i> } feel, <i>You</i> } <i>are</i> feeling.	<i>Nous</i> sent <i>ons</i> .	<i>Nous</i> sent <i>ions</i> .	felt, might feel.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Vous</i> sent <i>ez</i> .	<i>Vous</i> sent <i>iez</i> .	
		<i>Ils</i> sent <i>ent</i> ¹⁸ .	<i>Ils</i> sent <i>ent</i> ¹⁸ .	
Perfect tense.	<i>I</i> } <i>was</i> feeling.	<i>Je</i> sent <i>ais</i> ⁵ .	<i>Je</i> sent <i>isse</i> ² .	felt, might feel.
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> sent <i>ais</i> .	<i>Tu</i> sent <i>isses</i> .	
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> sent <i>ait</i> ²⁵ .	<i>Il</i> sent <i>ît</i> ²⁵ .	
Future tense.	<i>We</i> } <i>were</i> feeling.	<i>Nous</i> sent <i>ions</i>	<i>Nous</i> sent <i>issions</i> .	felt, might feel.
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> sent <i>iez</i> .	<i>Vous</i> sent <i>issiez</i> .	
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> sent <i>aient</i> ⁹ .	<i>Ils</i> sent <i>issent</i> .	
Fut. conditional.	<i>I</i> } felt, <i>Thou</i> } <i>did</i> feel.	<i>Je</i> ³ sent <i>is</i> ²⁵ .	<i>Je</i> sent <i>isse</i> ² .	felt, might feel.
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Tu</i> sent <i>is</i> .	<i>Tu</i> sent <i>isses</i> .	
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Il</i> sent <i>it</i> ²⁵ .	<i>Il</i> sent <i>ît</i> ²⁵ .	
Future positive.	<i>You</i> } <i>did</i> feel.	<i>Nous</i> sent <i>îmes</i> .	<i>Nous</i> sent <i>issions</i> .	felt, might feel.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Vous</i> sent <i>îtes</i> .	<i>Vous</i> sent <i>issiez</i> .	
		<i>Ils</i> sent <i>irent</i> ¹⁸ .	<i>Ils</i> sent <i>issent</i> .	
Fut. conditional.	<i>I</i> } <i>shall, will</i> feel, <i>Thou</i> } <i>be</i> feeling.	<i>Je</i> sentir <i>ai</i> ⁵ .	<i>Je</i> sentir <i>isse</i> ² .	felt, might feel.
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Tu</i> sentir <i>as</i> .	<i>Tu</i> sentir <i>isses</i> .	
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Il</i> sentir <i>a</i> .	<i>Il</i> sentir <i>ît</i> ²⁵ .	
Fut. conditional.	<i>You</i> } <i>be</i> feeling.	<i>Nous</i> sentir <i>ons</i> .	<i>Nous</i> sentir <i>issions</i> .	felt, might feel.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Vous</i> sentir <i>ez</i> .	<i>Vous</i> sentir <i>issiez</i> .	
		<i>Ils</i> sentir <i>ont</i> ²⁶ .	<i>Ils</i> sentir <i>issent</i> .	
Fut. conditional.	<i>I</i> } <i>shd, wd</i> feel, <i>Thou</i> } <i>be</i> feeling.	<i>Je</i> sentir <i>ais</i> ⁶ .	<i>Je</i> sentir <i>isse</i> ² .	felt, might feel.
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Tu</i> sentir <i>ais</i> .	<i>Tu</i> sentir <i>isses</i> .	
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Il</i> sentir <i>ait</i> .	<i>Il</i> sentir <i>ît</i> ²⁵ .	
Fut. conditional.	<i>You</i> } <i>be</i> feeling.	<i>Nous</i> sentir <i>ions</i> .	<i>Nous</i> sentir <i>issions</i> .	felt, might feel.
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Vous</i> sentir <i>iez</i>	<i>Vous</i> sentir <i>issiez</i> .	
		<i>Ils</i> sentir <i>aient</i> ⁶ .	<i>Ils</i> sentir <i>issent</i> .	

GERUND. **PARTICIPLE.**
 feeling. **SENT *ant*²⁶.** **SENT *i.*** **Felt.**

After the same manner as SENTIR are conjugated

CONSENTIR, to consent.	PARTIR, to set out; to depart.
DÉMENTIR, to give the lie.	PRESENTIR, to have a foresight.
se DÉPARTIR, to give up.	REPARTIR, to set out again; to reply
DESSERVIR, to take off the dishes;	se REPENTIR, to repent.
DORMIR, to sleep. [to do an ill office.	RESSENTIR, to resent.
ENDORMIR, to lull asleep.	RESSORTIR, to go out again.
se ENDORMIR, to fall asleep.	SERVIR, to serve; se SERVIR to use.*
MENTIR, to lie; to tell a lie.	SORTIR, to go out.

* Observe that the third person singular of the present tense of SERVIR, is: *ert*, not *serv*

INFINITIVE.

To LEAP for joy. } TRESSAILL *ir de joie, de peur*.*
 To START out of fear. }

IMPERATIVE.

start. TRESSAILL *es, sing.* TRESSAILL *ez, plur.*
 Let us start. TRESSAILL *ons.*

INDICATIVE.

Present tense. I start, or *am*
 Thou startest, *art*
 He starts, or *is*
 We } start,
 You } are starting.
 They }

starting.
*Je*³ tressaill *e.†*
Tu tressaill *es.*
Il tressaill *e.*
Nous tressaill *ons.*
Vous tressaill *ez.*
Ils tressaill *ent*¹⁸.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Je tressaill *e.*
Tu tressaill *es.*
Il tressaill *e.*
Nous tressaill *ions.*
Vous tressaill *iez.*
Ils tressaill *ent.*

may start.

Imperfect tense. I }
 Thou } was starting.
 He }
 We } were starting.
 You }
 They }

Je tressaill *ais*⁶.
Tu tressaill *ais.*
Il tressaill *ait*²⁶.
Nous tressaill *ions.*
Vous tressaill *iez.*
Ils tressaill *aient*⁶.

Perfect tense. I }
 Thou } started,
 He } did start.
 We }
 You }
 They }

Je tressaill *is*²⁶.
Tu tressaill *is.*
Il tressaill *it*²⁶.
Nous tressaill *îmes.*
Vous tressaill *îtes.*
Ils tressaill *irent*¹⁸.

Je tressaill *isse*².
Tu tressaill *isses.*
Il tressaill *ît.*
Nous tressaill *issions.*
Vous tressaill *issiez.*
Ils tressaill *issent.*

might start.

Future positive. I }
 Thou } shll, wll start,
 He } be starting.
 We }
 You }
 They }

Je tressaillir *ai*⁵.
Tu tressaillir *as.*
Il tressaillir *a.*
Nous tressaillir *ons.*
Vous tressaillir *ez.*
Ils tressaillir *ont*²⁶.

Fut. conditional. I }
 Thou } shd, wd start,
 He } be starting.
 We }
 You }
 They }

Je tressaillir *ais*⁶.
Tu tressaillir *ais.*
Il tressaillir *ait*²⁶.
Nous tressaillir *ions.*
Vous tressaillir *iez.*
Ils tressaillir *aient*⁶.

GERUND.

starting. TRESSAILL *ant*²⁶.

PARTICIPLE.

TRESSAILL *i.* started.

After the same manner as TRESSAILLIR are conjugated

ASSAILLIR, to assault, but it is not used in the first, second, and third persons singular of the present tense, and is seldom used, except in the infinitive ASSAILLIR, and in the participle ASSAILLI, assaulted.

SAILLIR, to jet out, used only in the infinitive SAILLIR, in the gerund SAILLANT, in the participle SAILLI, and in the third person of each tense

* TRESSAILLIR is seldom used without the words *joie, joy*; or *peur, fear*.

† See *il* preceded by *i*, page 11 and 12.

To COME, VEN *ir*.

IMPERATIVE.

come. viens, *sing.* VEN *ez plur.*
 let us come. VEN *ons.*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	I come, or am Thou comest, art He comes, or is We You They	} coming. } come, or } are coming.	Je ³ viens ²³ .	Je ³ vienne ² .	} come, may come.
			Tu viens.	Tu viennes.	
			Il vient ²⁵ .	Il vienne.	
Imperfect tense.	I Thou He We You They	} was coming. } were coming.	Nous ven ons.	Nous ven ions.	
			Vous ven ez.	Vous ven iez.	
			Ils viennent ¹⁸ .	Ils viennent.	
			Je ³ ven ais ⁶ .	Tu ven ais	
			Tu ven ais	Il ven ait ²⁶ .	
Perfect tense.	I Thou He We You They	} came, or } did come.	Nous ven ions.	Nous ven ions.	
			Vous ven iez.	Vous ven iez.	
			Ils ven aient ⁵ .	Ils ven aient ⁵ .	
			Je ³ vins ²³ .	Je ³ vinsse ² .	
			Tu vins.	Tu vinsses.	
			Il vint ²⁰ .	Il vînt ²⁶ .	
Future positive.	I Thou He We You They	} shall, will come, } or be coming.	Nous vinmes.	Nous vinssions.	} came, might come
			Vous vintes.	Vous vinssiez.	
			Ils vinrent ¹⁸ .	Ils vinssent ¹⁶ .	
			Je ³ viendrai ⁵ .	Tu viendras.	
			Tu viendras.	Il viendra.	
Pul. conditional.	I Thou He We You They	} shd, wd come, } or be coming.	Nous viendrons.	Vous viendrez.	
			Ils viendront ²⁰ .	Ils viendront ²⁰ .	
			Je ³ viendrais.	Tu viendrais.	
			Tu viendrais.	Il viendrait ²⁶ .	
			Il viendrait ²⁶ .	Nous viendrions.	

coming. VEN *ant*²⁰. VEN *u*. come.

After the same manner as VENIR are conjugated,

s'ABSTENIR, to abstain.	OBTENIR, to obtain.
APPARTENIR, to belong.	PARVENIR, to attain, to arrive.
CONVENIR, to agree, to become.	PRÉVENIR, to prevent, to anticipate.
CONTREVENIR, to contravene.	PROVENIR, to proceed.
CONTENIR, to contain.	REVENIR, to come again, to return.
DISCONVENIR, to disagree, to disown.	RETENIR, to retain, to keep.
DÉTENIR, to detain.	SOUTENIR, to maintain.
DEVENIR, to become.	se SOUVENIR, to remember.
ENTRETENIR, to keep up.	SUBVENIR, to afford.
INTERVENIR, to intervenc.	SURVENIR, to befall, to happen.
MAINTENIR, to maintain.	TENIR, to hold.

N. B. The compound tenses of VENIR, CONVENIR, DEVENIR, DISCONVENIR, PARVENIR, PROVENIR, REVENIR, and SURVENIR, are formed with the auxiliary *Être*, not *Avoir* as, I have agreed, *Je suis convenu*; not *J'ai convenu*.

A TABLE shewing, in one point of view, how to c

	INFIN. FIN	GER. issant,	PART. i.	
Present tense.	Je	is	isse	
	Tu	is	isses	
	Il	it	isse	
	Nous	issons	issions	
	Vous	issez	issiez	
	Ils	issent.	issent.	
	Imperf. tense.	Je	issais	
		Tu	issais	
		Il	issait	
		Nous	issions	
Vous		issiez		
Ils		issaient		
Perfect tense.		Je	is	isse
		Tu	is	isses
		Il	it	it
		Nous	imes	issions
	Vous	ites	issiez	
	Ils	irent.	issent.	
	Fut. Positive.	Je	ai	
		Tu	as	
		Il	a	
		Nous	ons	
Vous		ez		
Ils		ont.		
Fut. condit.		Je	ais	
		Tu	ais	
		Il	ait	
		Nous	ions	
	Vous	iez		
	Ils	aient.		

Like FINIR, conjugate all the verbs in IR, the following excepted.

	AQUÉR	ir,	ant,	aquis.	
Present tense.	J'	aquiers		aquière	
	Tu	aquiers	aquiers	aquières	
	Il	aquiert		aquière	
	Nous	ons	ons	ions	
	Vous	ez	ez	iez	
	Ils	aquièreent.		aquièreent.	
	Imperf. tense.	J'	ais		
		Tu	ais		
		Il	ait		
		Nous	ions		
Vous		iez			
Ils		aient.			
Perfect tense.		J'	aquis		aquise
		Tu	aquis		aquises
		Il	aquit		aquit
		Nous	aquimes		aquissions
	Vous	aquites		aquissiez	
	Ils	aquirent.		aquissent.	
	Fut. positive.	J'	rai		
		Tu	ras		
		Il	ra		
		Nous	rons		
Vous		rez			
Ils		ront.			
Fut. condit.		J'	rais		
		Tu	rais		
		Il	rait		
		Nous	rions		
	Vous	riez			
	Ils	raient.			

In the same manner conjugate Conquerir, Requerir.

	INFIN.	GER.	PART.	INFIN.	GER.	PART.	
BOUILL	ir,	ant,	i.	ir,	ant,	i.	
	INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.	
	bous		e	bous		e	
	bous	bous	es	bous	bous	es	
	bout		e	bout		e	
	BOUILL	ons	ons	ions	ons	ons	ions
		ez	ez	iez	ez.	ez.	iez
		ent.		ent.			ent.
		ais			ais		
		ais			ais		
ait				ait			
ions				ions			
iez				iez			
aient				aient.			
is			isse	is		isse	
is		isses	is		isses		
it		it	it		it		
imes		issions	imes		issions		
ites		issiez	ites		issiez		
irent.		issent.	irent.		issent.		
BOUILLIR	ai			ai			
	as			as			
	a			a			
	ons			ons			
	ez			ez			
	ont.			ont.			
	ais			ais			
	ais			ais			
	ait			ait			
	ions			ions			
iez			iez				
aient.			aient.				

	COUR	ir,	ant,	u.	FU	ir,	yant,
COUR	s			e	is		
	s	s		es	is	is	
	t			e	it		
	ons	ons		ions	yons	yons	
	ez	ez		iez	yez	yez	
	ent.			ent.	ient.		
	ais				yais		
	ais				yais		
	ait				yait		
	ions				yions		
iez				yiez			
aient.				yaient.			
us			usse	is			
us			usses	is			
ut			it	it			
imes			ussions	imes			
ites			ussiez	ites			
urent.			ussent.	irent.			
COUR	rai				FUIR	ai	
	ras				as		
	ra				a		
	rons				ons		
	rez				ez		
	ront.				ont.		
	rais				ais		
	rais				ais		
	rait				ait		
	rions				rions		
riez				iez			
raient.				aient.			

Like COURIR conjugate Accourir, Concourir, Discourir, Encourir, Parcourir, Recourir, Secourir. Like FUIR conjugate to run away.

all the verbs in IR, both regular and irregular

INFIN.	GER.	PART.
MOUR <i>ir,</i>	<i>ant,</i>	<i>mort.</i>
INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.
meurs		meure
meurs	meurs	meures
meurt		meure.
MOUR <i>ons</i>	<i>ons</i>	<i>ions</i>
<i>ez</i>	<i>ez</i>	<i>iez</i>
meurent.		meurent.
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ait</i>		
<i>ions</i>		
<i>iez</i>		
<i>aient.</i>		
<i>us</i>	<i>usse</i>	
<i>us</i>	<i>usses</i>	
<i>ut</i>	<i>ût</i>	
<i>ûmes</i>	<i>ussions</i>	
<i>ûtes</i>	<i>ussiez</i>	
<i>urent.</i>	<i>ussent.</i>	
MOUR <i>rai</i>		
<i>ras</i>		
<i>ra</i>		
<i>rons</i>		
<i>rez</i>		
<i>ront.</i>		
<i>rais</i>		
<i>rais</i>		
<i>rait</i>		
<i>rions</i>		
<i>riez</i>		
<i>raient.</i>	<i>se Mourir.</i>	

INFIN.	GER.	PART.
REVÊT <i>ir,</i>	<i>ant,</i>	<i>u.</i>
INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.
REVET <i>s</i>		<i>e</i>
<i>s</i>	<i>s</i>	<i>es</i>
revet		<i>e</i>
<i>ons</i>	<i>ons</i>	<i>ions</i>
<i>ez</i>	<i>ez</i>	<i>iez</i>
<i>ent.</i>		<i>ent.</i>
REVET <i>ais</i>		
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ait</i>		
<i>ions</i>		
<i>iez</i>		
<i>aient.</i>		
<i>is</i>	<i>isse</i>	
<i>is</i>	<i>isses</i>	
<i>it</i>	<i>ît</i>	
<i>îmes</i>	<i>issions</i>	
<i>îtes</i>	<i>issiez</i>	
<i>irent.</i>	<i>issent.</i>	
REVÊTIR <i>ai</i>		
<i>as</i>		
<i>a</i>		
<i>ons</i>		
<i>ez</i>		
<i>ont.</i>		
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ait</i>		
<i>ions</i>		
<i>iez</i>		
<i>aient.</i>	<i>Vêtir, se Dêvêtir.</i>	

INFIN.	GER.	PART.
TRESSAIL <i>ir,</i>	<i>ant,</i>	<i>i.</i>
IND.	IMP.	SUBJ.
TRES- SAILL <i>e</i>		<i>e</i>
<i>e</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>es</i>
<i>e</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>es</i>
<i>ons</i>	<i>ons</i>	<i>ions</i>
<i>ez</i>	<i>ez</i>	<i>iez</i>
<i>ent.</i>		<i>ent.</i>
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ait</i>		
<i>ions</i>		
<i>iez</i>		
<i>aient.</i>		
<i>is</i>	<i>isse</i>	
<i>is</i>	<i>isses</i>	
<i>it</i>	<i>ît</i>	
<i>îmes</i>	<i>issions</i>	
<i>îtes</i>	<i>issiez</i>	
<i>irent.</i>	<i>issent.</i>	
TRES- SAILLIR <i>ai</i>		
<i>as</i>		
<i>a</i>		
<i>ons</i>		
<i>ez</i>		
<i>ont.</i>		
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ait</i>		
<i>ions</i>		
<i>iez</i>		
<i>aient.</i>	<i>Assaillir, Saillir.</i>	

OUVR <i>ir,</i>	<i>ant,</i>	<i>ouvert.</i>
<i>e</i>	<i>e</i>	
<i>es</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>es</i>
<i>e</i>	<i>e</i>	
<i>ons</i>	<i>ons</i>	<i>ions</i>
<i>ez</i>	<i>ez</i>	<i>iez</i>
<i>ent.</i>		<i>ent.</i>
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ait</i>		
<i>ions</i>		
<i>iez</i>		
<i>aient.</i>		
<i>is</i>	<i>isse</i>	
<i>is</i>	<i>isses</i>	
<i>it</i>	<i>ît</i>	
<i>îmes</i>	<i>issions</i>	
<i>îtes</i>	<i>issiez</i>	
<i>irent.</i>	<i>issent.</i>	
OUVRIR <i>ai</i>		
<i>as</i>		
<i>a</i>		
<i>ons</i>		
<i>ez</i>		
<i>ont.</i>		
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ait</i>		
<i>ions</i>		
<i>iez</i>		
<i>aient.</i>		

SENT <i>ir,</i>	<i>ant,</i>	<i>i.</i>
<i>sens</i>	<i>e</i>	
<i>sens</i>	<i>sens</i>	<i>es</i>
<i>sent</i>	<i>e</i>	
SENT <i>ons</i>	<i>ons</i>	<i>ions</i>
<i>ez</i>	<i>ez</i>	<i>iez</i>
<i>ent.</i>		<i>ent.</i>
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ait</i>		
<i>ions</i>		
<i>iez</i>		
<i>aient.</i>		
<i>is</i>	<i>isse</i>	
<i>is</i>	<i>isses</i>	
<i>it</i>	<i>ît</i>	
<i>îmes</i>	<i>issions</i>	
<i>îtes</i>	<i>issiez</i>	
<i>irent.</i>	<i>issent.</i>	
SENTIR <i>ai</i>		
<i>as</i>		
<i>a</i>		
<i>ons</i>		
<i>ez</i>		
<i>ont.</i>		
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ait</i>		
<i>ions</i>		
<i>iez</i>		
<i>aient.</i>		

VEN <i>ir,</i>	<i>ant,</i>	<i>u.</i>
<i>viens</i>		<i>vienne</i>
<i>viens</i>	<i>viens</i>	<i>viennes</i>
<i>vient</i>		<i>vienne</i>
VEN <i>ons</i>	<i>ons</i>	<i>ions</i>
<i>ez</i>	<i>ez</i>	<i>iez</i>
<i>viennent.</i>		<i>viennent</i>
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ais</i>		
<i>ait</i>		
<i>ions</i>		
<i>iez</i>		
<i>aient.</i>		
<i>vins</i>	<i>vinse</i>	
<i>vins</i>	<i>vinse</i>	
<i>vint</i>	<i>vint</i>	
<i>viames</i>	<i>vinssions</i>	
<i>vintes</i>	<i>vinssiez</i>	
<i>vinrent.</i>	<i>vinssent.</i>	
<i>viendrai</i>		
<i>viendras</i>		
<i>viendra</i>		
<i>viendrons</i>		
<i>viendrez</i>		
<i>viendront.</i>		
<i>viendrais</i>		
<i>viendrais</i>		
<i>viendrait</i>		
<i>viendriens</i>		
<i>viendriez</i>	<i>Conve-</i>	
<i>viendraient.</i>	<i>nir, Contrevenir,</i>	

In the same manner conjugate
Ent'ouvrir, Couvrir, Découvrir, Re-
ouvrir, Offrir, Souffrir.

Consentir, Pressentir, Ressentir,
Mentir, Dementir, Partir, Repartir,
se Départir, Sortir, Ressortir, se
Repentir, Servir, Dêsservir, Dormir
Endormir, s'Endormir.

venir, Intervenir, Parvenir, Prévenir,
Provenir, Revenir, se Souvenir, Sub-
venir, Survenir, Tenir, s'Abstenir, Ap-
partenir, Contenir, Détenir, Entretenir
Maintenir, Obtenir, Retenir, Soutenir

INFINITIVE.

To owe. DEV oir.

IMPERATIVE.

owe. dois, *sing.* DEV ez, *plur.*
 let us owe. DEV ons.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	I owe.	Je ²³ dois ²⁶ .	Je doive ² .	owe, may owe.
	Thou owest.	Tu dois.	Tu doives.	
	He owes.	Il doit ²⁵ .	Il doive.	
	We } owe.	Nous DEV ons.	Nous DEV ions.	
	You } They }	Vous DEV ez. Ils doivent ¹⁸ .	Vous DEV iez. Ils doivent.	
Imperfect tense.	I } Thou } He } We } did owe.	Je ³ DEV ais ⁶ . Tu DEV ais. Il DEV ait ²⁶ . Nous DEV ions. Vous DEV iez. Ils DEV aient ⁵		owed, might owe.
	I } Thou } He } We } owed.	Je dus.† Tu dus. Il dut ²⁶ . Nous dûmes. Vous dûtes. Ils durent ¹⁸ .	Je dusse ² . Tu dusses. Il dût ²⁸ . Nous dussions. Vous dussiez. Ils dussent. ¹⁸	
	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }	Je DEV rais ³ . Tu DEV ras. Il DEV ra. Nous DEV rons. Vous DEV rez. Ils DEV ront ²⁵ .		
	I } Thou } He } We } shld, wld owe.	Je DEV rais ⁶ . Tu DEV rais. Il DEV rait ²⁶ . Nous DEV rions. Vous DEV riez. Ils DEV raient ³ .		

GERUND.

PARTICIPLE.

owing.	DEV ant ²⁶ .	dû.	owed.
Interrogatively.	Negatively.	Interrogatively and Negativ.	
dois-je?	Je ne dois	Ne dois-je	do I not owe?
dois-tu?	Tu ne dois	Ne dois-tu	
doit-il?	il ne doit	Ne doit-il	
devons-nous?	Nous ne devons	Ne devons-nous	
devez-vous?	vous ne devez	Ne devez-vous	
doivent-ils?	ils ne doivent	Ne doivent-ils	

After the same manner as DEVOIR are conjugated,

APERCEVOIR, } to perceive.	PERCEVOIR, (a law term) to receive.
s APERCEVOIR, }	RECEVOIR, to receive.
CONCEVOIR, to conceive.	REDEVOIR, to owe still.

* See N. B. under DEVOIR, page 111.

† See note 2, page 1.

The IRREGULAR verbs belonging to this conjugation are

ASSEOIR, } to sit down ; page 136.	PREVOIR, to foresee ; ... page 139.
s'ASSEOIR, } to sit down ; page 136.	Prévaloir, to prevail ; ... } see VALOIR.
Choir, to fall }	sePrévaloir, to avail oneself ; }
Déchoir, to decay } *	Revaloir, return like for like ; like VALOIR.
Echoir, to expire, to be out. }	Rasseoir, } to sit down } ... like ASSEOIR.
Emouvoir, to stir up like MOUVOIR.	se Rasseoir, } again ; }
Entrevoir, to have a glimpse ; like VOIR.	Revoir, to see again ; like VOIR.
Équivaloir, to be equivalent ; like VALOIR.	SAVOIR, to know ; page 140.
Falloir, must ; to be necessary. †	Seoir, to fit, to suit, to become ; †
MOUVOIR, to move ; page 137.	urseoir, to supersede ; ... see PREVOIR.
Pleuvoir, to rain ; †	VALOIR, to be worth ; ... page 141.
Pouvoir, to provide ; see PREVOIR.	VOIR, to see ; page 142.
POUVOIR, to be able ; ... page 138.	VOULOIR, to will, to be willing ; page 143.

* These three verbs are now hardly ever used, but are found in many ancient writings, they are conjugated thus :

	INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLE.	
	CHoir. To fall.		CHU. fallen.	No other tenses.
	DEChoir. To decay.		DECHU. decayed.	
	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Present tense.	Je déchois. I decay, or am	decaying.	Je déchoie. I	} decay,
	Tu déchois. Thou decayest, art		Tu déchoies. Thou	
	Il déchoit. He decays, or is		Il déchoie. He	
	Nous déchions. We		Nous déchions. We	
	Vous déchoyez. You		Vous déchoyiez. You	
	Ils déchoient. They } are decaying.		Ils déchoient. They }	
Perfect tense.	Je déchus. I	} decayed,	Je déchusse. I	} mht decay.
	Tu déchus. Thou		Tu déchusses. Thou	
	Il déchut. He		Il déchût. He	
	Nous déchûmes. We		Nous déchussions. We	
	Vous déchûtes. You		Vous déchussiez. You	
	Ils déchurent. They }		Ils déchussent. They }	
Fut. positive.	Je décherrai. I	} shall, will decay,		
	Tu décherras. Thou			
	Il décherra. He			
	Nous décherrons. We			
	Vous décherez. You			
	Ils décherront. They }			
Fut. condit.	Je décherrois. I	} should, would decay.		
	Tu décherrois. Thou			
	Il décheroit. He			
	Nous décherrions. We			
	Vous décheriez. You			
	Ils décheroient. They }			

INFINITIVE.

ECHOIR. To expire ; speaking of the end of a term ; as,
The rent is due, the time is expired. La rente est due, le terme est échu.

INDICATIVE.

Pres. Il échoit. It expires.
Perf. Il échut. It expired.
Fut. Il écherra. It will expire.
Con. Il écheroit. It would expire.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Il échoie. It may expire.
Il échût. It might expire.

GERUND.

Eche ant. expiring.

PARTICIPLE.

Echu. expired.

+ FALLOIR, PLEUVOIR, see the IMPERSONAL VERBS, page 172, 174.

† SEOIR, To fit, to suit, to become, has only the third person of each tense in use.

Il siéd. It fits. Ils séioit. It fitted. Il siéra. It will fit. Il siérait. It would fit. Ils siérent. They fit. Ils séioient. They fitted. Ils siéront. They will fit. Ils siéraient. They wd fit

INFINITIVE.

To sit down. S'ASSE oir.

IMPERATIVE.

sit down. Assieds-TOI, *sing.* ASSÉ iez-VOUS, *plur.*
 Let us sit down. ASSÉ ions-NOUS

INDICATIVE.

Present tense.	I sit, or am	sitting down.	Je ^s M'	assieds ²⁵ .
	Thou sittest, art		Tu T'	assieds.
	He sits, or is		Il S'	assied ²³ .
	We	sit, are sitting down.	Nous NOUS	assé ions.
	You		Vous VOUS	assé iez.
They		Ils S'	assé ient ¹⁹ .	
Imperfect tense.	I	was sitting down.	Je M'	assé iais ⁵ .
	Thou		Tu T'	assé iais.
	He		Il S'	assé iait ²⁵ .
	We	were sitting down.	Nous NOUS	assé yons ⁴ .
	You		Vous VOUS	assé yez.
They		Ils S'	assé iaient ⁶ .	
Perfect tense.	I		Je M'	assis ²⁵ .
	Thou		Tu T'	assis.
	He	sat, did sit down.	Il S'	assit ²⁵ .
	We		Nous NOUS	assîmes.
	You		Vous VOUS	assîtes.
They		Ils S'	assirent ¹⁹ .	
Future positive.	I		Je M'	asseirai ⁵ .
	Thou		Tu T'	asseiras.
	He	shll, wll sit, be sitting dn.	Il S'	asseira.
	We		Nous NOUS	asseirons.
	You		Vous VOUS	asseirez.
They		Ils S'	asseiront ²⁵ .	
Fut. conditional.	I		Je M'	asseirais ⁵ .
	Thou		Tu T'	asseirais.
	He	shd, wd sit, be sitting dn.	Il S'	asseirait ²⁵ .
	We		Nous NOUS	asseirions.
	You		Vous VOUS	asseiriez.
They		Ils S'	asseiraient ⁵ .	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Je M'	assé ie ² .	may sit down.
Tu T'	assé ies.	
Il S'	assé ie.	
Nous NOUS	assé yons.	
Vous VOUS	assé yez.	
Ils S'	assé ient.	might sit down.
Je M'	assisse ² .	
Tu T'	assisses.	
Il S'	assît ²⁵ .	
Nous NOUS	assissions.	
Vous VOUS	assissiez.	
Ils S'	assissent.	

GERUND.

sitting down. s'ASSÉ yant²⁵.

PARTICIPLE.

assis. sat down.

Interrogatively.	Je ne M'	assieds	} pas.	I do not	Interrogat. and Negat.	
M' assieds-je?	Tu ne T'	assieds			Ne M' assieds-je	} pas?
T' assieds-tu?	Il ne S'	assied			Ne T' assieds-tu	
S' assied-il?			Ne S' assied-il			

COMPOUND TENSES formed by adding ASSIS to the auxiliary ETRE.

I have	} sat down.	Je	ME	suis	} ASSIS.	Je	ME	sois	} ASSIS.
Thou hast		Tu	T'	es		Tu	TE	sois	
He has		Il	S'	est		Il	SE	soit	
We have		Nous	NOUS	sommes		Nous	NOUS	soyons	

In the same manner, conjugate RASSEOIR, se RASSEOIR, to sit down again.

INFINITIVE.

To MOVE. MOUV oir*.

IMPERATIVE.

MOVE. MEUS, *sing.* MOUV ez, *plur.*
 Let us move. MOUV ons.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	I move, or am moving. Thou movest, art moving. He moves or is moving. We } move, are moving. You } They }	Je ¹² meus ²⁶ . Tu meus. Il meut ²³ . Nous mouv ons. Vous mouv ez. Ils meuvent ¹⁸ .	Je meuve ² . Tu meuves ²³ . Il meuve. Nous mouv ions. Vous mouv iez. Ils meuvent.	move, may move.
Imperfect tense.	I } was moving. Thou } He } We } were moving. You } They }	Je ¹⁴ mouv ais ⁶ . Tu mouv ais. Il mouv ait ²⁵ . Nous mouv ions. Vous mouv iez. Ils mouv aient ⁶ .		
Perfect tense.	I } moved, did move. Thou } He } We } You } They }	Je †mus ²³ . Tu mus. Il mut ²³ . Nous mûmes. Vous mûtes. Ils murent ¹⁸ .	Je musse ² . Tu musses. Il mût ²⁶ . Nous mussions. Vous mussiez. Ils mussent ¹⁸ .	moved, might move.
Future positive.	I } Thou } shall, will move, be moving. He } We } You } They }	Je ¹⁴ mouv rai ³ . Tu mouv ras ²³ . Il mouv ra. Nous mouv rons. Vous mouv rez. Ils mouv ront ²⁶ .		
Fut. conditional.	I } Thou } shd, wd move, be moving. He } We } You } They }	Je ¹⁴ mouv rais ⁶ . Tu mouv rais. Il mouv rait ²⁵ . Nous mouv rions. Vous mouv riez. Ils mouv raient ⁶ .		

GERUND.

PARTICIPLE.

Moving. MOUV ant²⁶. MU. Moved.

After the same manner as MOUVOIR is conjugated ÉMOUVOIR, to move, to stir up, speaking of vapours, or the passions; as,

Le soleil émeut les vapeurs. The sun stirs up the vapours.

Cet homme s'émeut de rien. That man is moved with the least thing

* MOUVOIR is a technical term, used only in some general propositions; as for example Every free body moves in a straight line. *Tout corps libre se meut en ligne droite.*

The general acceptation of MOVE is REMUER; as, Move your arm, your leg, your foot, the chair, the dish, the table, &c. *Remuez le bras, la jambe, le pied, la chaise, le plat, la table, &c.*

† See note 2 page 1.

		INFINITIVE.				
		To be ABLE.	POUV oir.			
		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		
Present tense.	I can, or am able.	Je	23	puis ²⁶ .	Je	puisse ⁹ .
	Thou canst, art able.	Tu	12	peux.	Tu	puisses ²⁶ .
	He can, or is able.	Il		peut. ²⁶	Il	puisse.
	We } can, are able.	Nous		pouv ons.	Nous	puissions.
	You } They }	Vous		pouv ez.	Vous	puissiez.
		Il		peuvent ¹⁸ .	Il	puissent ¹⁸ .
Imperfect tense.	I } could, was able.	Je	14	pouv ais ⁶ .		
	Thou } He } We }	Tu		pouv ais.		
	You } could, were able.	Il		pouv aie ²⁶ .		
	They }	Nous		pouv ions.		
			Vous		pouv iez.	
		Il		pouv aient ⁹ .		
Perfect tense.	I } could, was able.	Je	†	pus ²⁶ .	Je	pusse ⁹ .
	Thou } He } We }	Tu		pus.	Tu	pusses.
	You } could, were able.	Il		put ²⁶ .	Il	pût ²⁶ .
	They }	Nous		pûmes.	Nous	pussions.
			Vous		pûtes.	Vous
		Il		purent ¹⁸ .	Il	pussent ¹⁸ .
Future positive.	I } shll, will be able.	Je	14	pourai ⁹ .		
	Thou } He } We }	Tu		pouras ²⁶ .		
	You } They }	Il		poura.		
		Nous		pourons.		
		Vous		pourrez.		
		Il		pouront ²⁶ .		
Fut. conditional.	I } could,	Je	14	pourais ⁶ .		
	Thou } shd, wd be able.	Tu		pourais.		
	He } We }	Il		pourait ²⁶ .		
	You } They }	Nous		pourions.		
		Vous		pouriez.		
		Il		pouraient ⁶ .		
		GERUND.		PARTICIPLE.		
being able.		POUV ant ²⁶ .		pu. Been able		

* MAY, MIGHT have, through the verbs, been considered only as signs of the subjunctive mood; but these words are not always signs; they are sometimes verbs denoting power.

In order to discriminate whether MAY, MIGHT, are verbs, or only signs, change them into the tenses of the verb BE, that will make the best sense with the word power or able

If MAY, MIGHT, thus changed, answer to the tenses of the indicative of the verb BE, they must be expressed by the same tenses of the verb POUVOIR; as,

I may see it, if I choose, i. e. it is in my power, or I am able to see it, if I choose.

Je puis le voir, si je veux.

I might see it, if I chose, i. e. it would be in my power, or I should be able to see it, if I chose. Je pourais le voir, si je voulais.

If MAY, MIGHT, answer to the tenses of the subjunctive of the verb BE, they may be expressed either by the subjunctive of the following verb, or by the subjunctive of POUVOIR; as

Bring it me, that I may see it, i. e. that I may be able to see it.

Apportez-le-moi, afin que je le voie, or afin que je puisse le voir.

He brought it me, that I might see it, i. e. that I might be able to see it

Il me l'apporta, afin que je le visse, or afin que je pusse le voir.

† See note 2, page 1.

N. B. MAY,

may, * may be able.

might, * might be able.

INFINITIVE.

To FORESEE.

PRÉV *oir*.

IMPERATIVE.

foresee. PRÉV *ois*, *sing.*
Let us foresee.

PRÉV *oyez*, *plur.*
PRÉV *oyons*.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	I foresee.	Je prév <i>ois</i> ²³ .
	Thou foreseest.	Tu prév <i>ois</i> .
	He foresees.	Il prév <i>oit</i> ²⁵ .
You } foresee.	We	Nous prév <i>oyons</i> ⁴ .
	You	Vous prév <i>oyez</i> .
	They	Ils prév <i>oient</i> ¹⁸ .
Imperfect tense.	I	Je prév <i>oyais</i> ⁶ .
	Thou	Tu prév <i>oyais</i> .
	He	Il prév <i>oyait</i> ²⁶ .
	We } did foresee.	Nous prév <i>oyions</i> .
	You	Vous prév <i>oyiez</i> .
They	Ils prév <i>oyaient</i> ⁶ .	
Perfect tense.	I	Je prév <i>is</i> ²⁶ .
	Thou	Tu prév <i>is</i> .
	He } foresaw,	Il prév <i>it</i> ²⁶ .
	We } did foresee.	Nous prév <i>îmes</i> .
	You	Vous prév <i>îtes</i> .
They	Ils prév <i>irent</i> ¹⁸ .	
Future positive.	I	Je prévoir <i>ai</i> ⁵ .
	Thou	Tu prévoir <i>as</i> ²⁶ .
	He } shall, will	Il prévoir <i>a</i> .
	We } foresee.	Nous prévoir <i>ons</i> .
	You	Vous prévoir <i>ez</i> .
They	Ils prévoir <i>ont</i> ²⁶ .	
Fut. conditional.	I	Je prévoir <i>ais</i> ⁶ .
	Thou	Tu prévoir <i>ais</i> .
	He } should, wuld	Il prévoir <i>ait</i> ²⁶ .
	We } foresee.	Nous prévoir <i>ions</i> .
	You	Vous prévoir <i>iez</i> .
They	Ils prévoir <i>aient</i> ⁶ .	

foreseeing. PRÉV *oyant*²⁶. PRÉV *u*. foreseen

After the same manner is conjugated *SURSEOIR*, to supersede, participle

SURSIS. *POURVOIR*, to provide, except the perfect tense,

I } provided,	Je pourv <i>us</i> .	Je pourv <i>usse</i> ² .	might provide.	
	Thou	Tu pourv <i>us</i> .		Tu pourv <i>usses</i> .
	He } did provide.	Il pourv <i>ut</i> ²⁶ .		Il pourv <i>ût</i> ²⁶ .
	We	Nous pourv <i>ûmes</i> .		Nous pourv <i>ussions</i> .
	You	Vous pourv <i>ûtes</i> .		Vous pourv <i>ussiez</i> .
They	Ils pourv <i>urent</i> ¹⁸ .	Ils pourv <i>ussent</i> ¹⁸ .		

N.B. *MAY*, expressing a wish, is rendered by the present of the subjunctive of *POUVOIR*; as, *May you be happy!* *Puissiez-vous être heureux!*

But observe that, these instances excepted, the subjunctive never begins a sentence; so this, *May I see it?* is, *Puis-je le voir?* Not *Le voie-je*, or *Puisse-je le voir?*

INFINITIVE.

To KNOW.

SAV oir.*

IMPERATIVE.

KNOW. saches, *sing.* sachez, *plur.*
 Let us know. sachons.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	I know.	Je sais ⁶ .	Je sache.†	Know, <i>may</i> know.
	Thou knowest.	Tu sais.	Tu saches ²⁶ .	
	He knows.	Il sait ⁶ .	Il sache.	
	We } know.	Nous sav ons	Nous sachions.	
	You } They }	Vous sav ez. Ils sav ent ¹⁸ .	Vous sachiez. Ils sachent ¹⁸ .	
Imperfect tense.	I } Thou } He } We } did know.	Je sav ais ⁶ . Tu sav ais. Il sav ait ²⁶ . Nous sav ions. Vous sav iez. Ils sav aient ⁶ .		knew, <i>might</i> know.
	I } Thou } He } We } did know.	Je sus ²⁶ . Tu sus. Il sut ²⁶ . Nous sûmes. Vous sûtes. Ils surent ¹⁸ .	Je susse ² . Tu susses. Il sût ²⁶ . Nous sussions. Vous sussiez. Ils sussent ¹⁸ .	
	I } Thou } He } We } did know.	Je s'aurais ⁵ . Tu sauras ²⁶ . Il saura. Nous saurons. Vous saurez. Ils sauront ²⁶ .		
	I } Thou } He } We } should, You } wld know.	Je s'aurais ⁶ . Tu saurais. Il saurait ²⁶ . Nous saurions. Vous sauriez. Ils sauraient ⁶ .		
	I } Thou } He } We } should, You } wld know.	Je s'aurais ⁶ . Tu saurais. Il saurait ²⁶ . Nous saurions. Vous sauriez. Ils sauraient ⁶ .		

GERUND.

Knowing.

sachant²⁶.

PARTICIPLE.

su.

KNOWN.

* Meaning *mental knowledge, science, information*; as,
 I know my lesson, French, English, mathematics.

Je sais ma leçon, le Français, l'Anglais, les mathématiques.

I know your brother will come.

Je sais que votre frère viendra.

But To KNOW, meaning to be *acquainted with*, to know by sight, is not expressed by SAVOIR, it is expressed by CONNAÎTRE; as,

I know your brother, your sister, *i. e.* I am *acquainted* with them, I know them by sight. Je connais votre frère, votre sœur, &c. See CONNAÎTRE.

† Not that I know, &c. so often used in answer to a question, is expressed by the present of the subjunctive of this verb; thus,

Not that I know.

Non pas que je sache.

Not that we know.

Non pas que nous sachions.

INFINITIVE.

To be WORTH.

VAL oir.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	I am worth.	Je ⁸ vau ^x ²⁶ .		
	Thou art worth.	Tu vau ^x .		
	He is worth.	Il vaut ²⁶ .		
	We } are worth.	Nous val ons.		
	You } They }	Vous val ez. Ils val ent ¹⁹ .		
Imperfect tense.	I } was worth.	Je val ais ⁶ .		
	Thou } He } We } were worth.	Tu val ais. Il val ait ²⁶ . Nous val ions. Vous val iez. Ils val aient ⁶ .		
	Perfect tense.	I } was worth.	Je val us ²⁶ .	
		Thou } He } We } were worth.	Tu val us. Il val ut ²⁶ . Nous val ûmes. Vous val ûtes. Ils val urent ¹⁸ .	
		Future positive.	I } shall, will Thou } He } be worth.	Je ⁸ vaudrai ⁵ . Tu vaudras ²⁶ . Il vaudra. Nous vaudrons. Vous vaudrez. Ils vaudront ²⁶ .
Fut. conditional.			I } should, would Thou } He } be worth.	Je ⁸ vaudrais ⁶ . Tu vaudrais. Il vaudrait ²⁶ . Nous vaudrions. Vous vaudriez. Ils vaudraient ⁶ .

Je vaille ² .*	may be worth.
Tu vailles ²⁶ .	
Il vaille.	
Nous val ions.	
Vous val iez. Ils vaillent ¹⁹ .	

Je val usse ² .	might be worth.
Tu val usses.	
Il val ût ²⁶ .	
Nous val ussions.	
Vous val ussiez. Ils val ussent ¹⁸ .	

GERUND.

Being worth.

VAL ant²⁶.

PARTICIPLE.

VAL u.

Been worth

After the same manner as VALOIR are conjugated

EQUIVALOIR, to be equivalent.

PRÉVALOIR, to prevail.

REVALOIR, to return like for like.

se PRÉVALOIR, to avail oneself

But observe that PRÉVALOIR and se PRÉVALOIR have an imperative.

prevail.

prévau^x, sing.

PRÉVAL ez. plur.

Let us prevail.

PRÉVAL ons.

And, I may	} prevail, is
Thou mayest	
He may	
We may	
You may	
They may	

Je prév ale,	} not
Tu prév ales,	
Il prév ale,	
Nous prév alions,	
Vous prév aliez, Ils prév alent	

prév aille, &c.

* See *il* preceded by *i*, page 11 and 12.

INFINITIVE.

To SEE. V oir.

IMPERATIVE.

see, v ois, sing. v oyez, plur.
Let us see, v oyons.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	I see.	Je ²³ v ois ²⁶ .	Je v oie ²³ .	see, may see.
	Thou seest.	Tu v ois.	Tu v oies ²⁶ .	
	He sees.	Il v oit ²⁶ .	Il v oie.	
	We	Nous v oyons ⁴ .	Nous v oyions.	
	You } see.	Vous v oyez.	Vous v oyiez.	
	They }	Ils v oient ¹⁸ .	Ils v oient.	

Imperfect tense.	I	Je v oyais ⁶ .	
	Thou	Tu v oyais.	
	He	Il v oyait ²⁶ .	
	We } did see.	Nous v oyions.	
	You	Vous v oyiez.	
	They }	Ils v oyaient ⁹ .	

Perfect tense.	I	Je v is ²⁶ .	Je v isse ² .	saw, might see.
	Thou	Tu v is.	Tu v isses.	
	He	Il v it ²⁶ .	Il v it ²⁶ .	
	We } saw, did see.	Nous v îmes.	Nous v issions.	
	You	Vous v îtes.	Vous v issiez.	
	They }	Ils v irent ¹⁸ .	Ils v issent ¹⁹ .	

Future positive.	I	Je [*] verrai ⁵ .	
	Thou	Tu verras ²⁶ .	
	He	Il verra.	
	We } shall, will see.	Nous verrons.	
	You	Vous verrez.	
	They }	Ils verront ²⁶ .	

Fut. conditional.	I	Je [*] verrais ⁶ .	
	Thou	Tu verrais.	
	He	Il verrait ²⁶ .	
	We } shld, wld see.	Nous verrions.	
	You	Vous verriez.	
	They }	Ils verraient ⁶ .	

GERUND.

seeing v oyant²⁶.

PARTICIPLE.

v u. seen*After the same manner as VOIR are conjugated*

ENTREVOIR, to have a glimpse.

REVOIR, to see again.

* Only one r is sounded, the other r serves to make the preceding e long.

INFINITIVE.
To WILL, To be WILLING. VOUL oir.

		INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Present tense.	I will,* or am	willing. ^s Je ¹² veux ²³ .	Je	veille ² .
	Thou wiltest, art	Tu veux.	Tu	veilles ²⁶ .
	He wills, or is	Il veut ²⁶ .	Il	veille.
	We	Nous voul ons.	Nous	voul ions.
	You	Vous voul ez.	Vous	voul iez.
	They } are willing.	Ils veulent ¹⁸ .	Ils	veillent ¹ .
Imperfect tense.	I	Je ¹⁴ voul ais ⁵ .	Je	
	Thou	Tu voul ais.	Tu	
	He	Il voul ait ²⁶ .	Il	
	We	Nous voul ions.	Nous	
	You	Vous voul iez.	Vous	
	They } were willing.	Ils voul aient ³ .	Ils	
Perfect tense.	I	Je ¹⁴ voul us ²⁵ .	Je	voul usse ² .
	Thou	Tu voul us.	Tu	voul usses.
	He	Il voul ut ²⁶ .	Il	voul ût ²⁶ .
	We	Nous voul ûmes.	Nous	voul ussions.
	You	Vous voul ûtes.	Vous	voul ussiez.
	They } would, would, would, wld be willing.	Ils voul urent ¹⁸ .	Ils	voul ussent ¹⁸ .
Future positive.	I	Je ¹⁴ voudrai ⁵ .	Je	
	Thou	Tu voudras.	Tu	
	He	Il voudra.	Il	
	We	Nous voudrons.	Nous	
	You	Vous voudrez.	Vous	
	They } shall, will be willing.	Ils voudront ²⁶ .	Ils	
Fut. conditional.	I	Je ¹⁴ voudrais ⁶ .	Je	
	Thou	Tu voudrais.	Tu	
	He	Il voudrait ²⁶ .	Il	
	We	Nous voudrions.	Nous	
	You	Vous voudriez.	Vous	
	They } would,* should, wld be willing.	Ils voudraient ⁶ .	Ils	
		GERUND.	PARTICIPLE.	
		being willing. VOUL ant ²⁶ .	VOUL u. been willing.	

may be willing.

might be willing

* Frequent mistakes are committed in the use of the word WILL, which sometimes is a VERB implying *will, wish, desire, inclination*, and sometimes, as has been seen through the conjugations, only the SIGN of some of the tenses of verbs.

Though the distinction between WILL, the verb, and WILL, the sign, in some instances be nice, yet it is necessary it should be made, as it changes the idea.

If WILL, WOULD can be changed into the words *be willing*, they denote the WILL, and are expressed by the tenses of VOULOIR as above.

If WILL, WOULD can not properly be changed into *be willing*, they are mere SIGNS expressed in french by the termination of the verb. This sentence, for example ;

Will you go to the play to-night ? may be translated these two ways ;

VOULEZ-vous aller à la comédie ce soir ? or, IREZ-vous à la comédie ce soir ? with this difference, that in the first instance, I inquire whether it is the *wish, desire, or inclination* of the person I am speaking to, to go to the play, yet he may not go for all that ; in the second, I do not consult his *will or inclination*, for a person may do a thing against his inclination ; but I ask whether his *going to the play will actually take place*, either because he has *resolved to go*, or because he is *compelled to go*.

A TABLE shewing, in one point of view, how to conjugate

	INFIN. DEV oir,	GER. ant,	PART. dû.	INFIN. POUV oir,	GER. ant,	PART. pu.		
Present tense.	Je	dois		INDIC.	puis	SUBJ. puisse		
	Tu	dois,	dois,		peux	puisses		
	Il	doit			peut	puisse		
	Nous	DEV ons	ons,	SUBJ. doive	POUV	puissions		
	Vous	ez,	ez,	doive	ez	puissiez		
	Ils	doivent.		doivent.	peuvent.	puissent.		
	Imperf. tense.	Je	ais			ais		
		Tu	ais			ais		
		Il	ait			ait		
		Nous	ions			ions		
Vous		iez			iez			
Ils		aient.			aient			
Perfect tense.		Je	du	du		pus	pusse	
		Tu	du	du		pus	usses	
		Il	dut	dut	du	put	pût	
		Nous	dûmes	dûmes	dussions	pûmes	puissions	
	Vous	dûtes	dûtes	dussiez	pûtes	puissiez		
	Ils	durent	durent	dussent.	purent.	pussent.		
	Fut. positive.	Je	DEV rai			pourai		
		Tu	ras			pouras		
		Il	ra			poura		
		Nous	rons			pourons		
Vous		rez			pourrez			
Ils		ront.			pourront			
Fut. condit.		Je	rais			pourrais		
		Tu	rais			pourrais		
		Il	rait			pourrait		
		Nous	rions	Like DEVOIR	conjugate	pourrions		
	Vous	riez	Redevoir,	Percevoir,	pourriez			
	Ils	raient.	Apercevoir,	Concevoir,	pourraient.			
			Recevoir.					
	Present tense.	J'	ASSE oir,	yant,	assis.	PRÉV oir,	oyant,	u.
		Tu	assieds		ie	ois		oie
		Il	assieds,	assieds,	ies	ois,	ois,	oies
Nous		ASSÉ	ions,	yons	oit	oyons,	oyons,	oyions
Vous		iez,	iez,	yez	oyez,	ez,	oyiez	
Ils		ient.	ient.	ient.	oient.	oient.	oient.	
Imperf. tense.		J'	iais			oyais		
		Tu	iais			oyais		
		Il	iait			oyait		
		Nous	yons			oyions		
	Vous	yez			oyiez			
	Ils	iaient.			oyaient.			
	Perfect tense.	J'	assis		assise	is		isse
		Tu	assis		assises	is		isses
		Il	assit		assît	it		ît
		Nous	assimes		assissions	îmes		issions
Vous		assîtes		assissiez	îtes		issiez	
Ils		assirent		assissent.	irent.		issent	
Fut. positive.		J'	asseirai			PRÉVOIR ai		
		Tu	asseiras			as		
		Il	asseira			a		
		Nous	asseirons			ons		
	Vous	asseirez			ez			
	Ils	asseiront.			ont.			
	Fut. condit.	J'	asseirais			ais		
		Tu	asseirais			ais		
		Il	asseirait			ait		
		Nous	asseirions			ions		
Vous		asseiriez			iez			
Ils		asseiraient.			aient.			

Like ASSEoir, conjugate s'Asseoir, Rasseoir, se Rasseoir.

Pourvoir, perfect Pourvus, Pourvuss not Pourvis. Surseoir, participle Surs

ll the verbs *in OIR*, both regular and irregular.

INFIN.	GER.	PART.	INFIN.	GER.	PART.
SAV oir,	sachant,	su.	Voir,	oyant,	u.
INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	IMP.	SUBJ.
sais		sache	Vois		oie
sais,	saches,	saches	ois,	ois,	oies
sait		sache	oit		oie
SAV ons,	sachons,	sachions	oyons,	oyons,	oyions
ez,	sachez,	sachiez	oyez,	oyez,	oyiez
ent.		sachent.	oient.		oient.
ais			oyais		
ais			oyais		
ait			oyait		
ions			oyions		
iez			oyiez		
aient.			oyaient.		
sus		susse	is		isse
sus		susses	is		isses
sut		sût	it		ît
sûmes		sussions	îmes		issions
sûtes		sussiez	îtes		issiez
surent		sussent.	irent.		issent.
saurai			verrai		
sauras			verras		
saura			verra		
saurons			verrons		
saurez			verrez		
sauront.			verront.		
saurais			verrais		
saurais			verrais		
saurait			verrait		
saurions			verrions		
sauriez			verriez		
sauraient.			verraient.	Entrevol., Revoir.	

VAL oir,	ant,	u.	VOUL oir,	ant,	u.
vauz		vaille	veux		veuille
vauz		vailles	veux		veuilles
vaut		vaille	veut		veuille
VAL ons		ions	VOUL ons		ions
ez		iez	ez		iez
ent.		vailent.	veulent		veullent
ais			ais		
ais			ais		
ait			ait		
ions			ions		
iez			iez		
aient.			aient.		
us		usse	us		usse
us		usses	us		usses
ut		ût	ut		ût
ûmes		ussions	ûmes		ussions
ûtes		ussiez	ûtes		ussiez
urent.		ussent.	urent.		ussent.
vaudrai			voudrai		
vaudras			voudras		
vaudra			voudra		
vaudrons			voudrons		
vaudrez			voudrez		
vaudront.			voudront.		
vaudrais			voudrais		
vaudrais			voudrais		
vaudrait			voudrait		
vaudrions			voudrions		
vaudriez			voudriez		
vaudraient.			voudraient.		

Equivaloir, Revaloir, (Prévaloir, *se Prévaloir*, *subjunctive*, Prévale, not Prévaille.)

INFINITIVE.

To WAIT for, To EXPECT. ATTEND *re*

IMPERATIVE.

wait. ATTEND *s*, *sing.* ATTEND *ez*, *plur.*
 Let us wait. ATTEND *ons*.

INDICATIVE.

Present tense.
 I wait, or *am* waiting. *J'* ATTEND *s*¹⁶.
 Thou waitest, art waiting. *Tu* ATTEND *s*.
 He waits, or is waiting. *Il* ATTEND²⁵.
 We are waiting. *Nous* ATTEND *ons*.
 You are waiting. *Vous* ATTEND *ez*.
 They are waiting. *Ils* ATTEND *ent*¹⁹.
Imperfect tense.
 I was waiting. *J'* ATTEND *ais*⁶.
 Thou was waiting. *Tu* ATTEND *ais*.
 He was waiting. *Il* ATTEND *ait*²⁵.
 We were waiting. *Nous* ATTEND *ions*.
 You were waiting. *Vous* ATTEND *iez*.
 They were waiting. *Ils* ATTEND *aient*⁶.
Perfect tense.
 I waited, did wait. *J'* ATTEND *is*²⁶.
 Thou waited, did wait. *Tu* ATTEND *is*.
 He waited, did wait. *Il* ATTEND *it*²⁶.
 We waited, did wait. *Nous* ATTEND *îmes*.
 You waited, did wait. *Vous* ATTEND *îtes*.
 They waited, did wait. *Ils* ATTEND *irent*¹⁸.
Future positive.
 I shall, will wait, be waiting. *J'* ATTENDR *ai*⁵.
 Thou shall, will wait, be waiting. *Tu* ATTENDR *as*.
 He shall, will wait, be waiting. *Il* ATTENDR *a*.
 We shall, will wait, be waiting. *Nous* ATTENDR *ons*.
 You shall, will wait, be waiting. *Vous* ATTENDR *ez*.
 They shall, will wait, be waiting. *Ils* ATTENDR *ont*²⁶.
Fut. conditional.
 I should, would wait, be waiting. *J'* ATTENDR *ais*⁶.
 Thou should, would wait, be waiting. *Tu* ATTENDR *ais*.
 He should, would wait, be waiting. *Il* ATTENDR *ait*²⁶.
 We should, would wait, be waiting. *Nous* ATTENDR *ions*.
 You should, would wait, be waiting. *Vous* ATTENDR *iez*.
 They should, would wait, be waiting. *Ils* ATTENDR *aient*⁶.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

J' ATTEND *e*².
Tu ATTEND *es*²⁵.
Il ATTEND *e*.
Nous ATTEND *ions*.
Vous ATTEND *iez*.
Ils ATTEND *ent*¹⁹.
J' ATTEND *isse*².
Tu ATTEND *isses*.
Il ATTEND *ît*²⁵.
Nous ATTEND *issions*.
Vous ATTEND *issiez*.
Ils ATTEND *issent*¹⁹.

wait, may wait.
 waited, might wait.

waiting. ATTEND *ant*²⁶. ATTEND *u*. waited.

After the same manner as ATTENDRE, are conjugated

Battre, to beat, to fight.	Descendre, to go or come down.	Rébattre, to beat again, to repeat
Abattre, to pull down.	Entendre, to hear, understand.	Refondre, to melt again.
Combattre, to fight.	Etendre, to stretch, to spread.	Rendre, to render, to return.
Condescendre, to condescend.	Fendre, to cleave, to split.	se Rendre, to surrender.
Confondre, to confound.	Fondre, to melt, to cast.	Répandre, to spill, to shed.
Correspondre, to correspond.	Interrompre, to interrupt.	Répondre, to answer.
Corrompre, to corrupt.	Mordre, to bite.	Retordre, to twist anew.
Débatte, to debate.	se Morfondre, to grow cold.	Rompre, to break.
se Débatte, to struggle.	Pendre, to hang	Suspendre, to suspend.
Défendre, to forbid.	Pendre, to lose, to ruin.	Tendre, to tend, to bend.
se Défendre, to defend oneself.	Pondre, to lay eggs.	Tondre, to shear.
Démordre, to relax.	Prétendre, to pretend.	Tordre, to twist, to wring.
Dépendre, to depend.	Rabattre, to abate.	Vendre, to sell.

The IRREGULAR verbs belonging to this conjugation are

<i>Absoudre</i> , to absolve,..... see RESOUDRE.	<i>Enceindre</i> , to encompass,... like FEINDRE.
<i>Abstraire</i> , to abstract,..... see TRAIRE.	<i>Enclorre</i> , to enclose.†
<i>Accroître</i> , to accrue,..... like CONNAÎTRE.	<i>Enduire</i> , to daub,..... like INSTRUIRE
<i>Admettre</i> , to admit,..... like METTRE.	<i>Enfreindre</i> , to infringe,.... } like FEINDRE.
<i>Apparaître</i> , to appear,..... like CONNAÎTRE.	<i>Enjoindre</i> , to enjoin,..... } like FEINDRE.
APPRENDRE, to learn, ... page 149.	<i>s'Entremettre</i> , intermeddle, like METTRE.
<i>Astraindre</i> , to restrain,.... } like FEINDRE.	<i>Entreprendre</i> , to undertake, like APPRENDRE
<i>Atteindre</i> , to reach, to hit,.. } like FEINDRE.	<i>Epreindre</i> , to squeeze out, } like FEINDRE.
<i>BOIRE</i> , to drink,..... page 150.	<i>Eteindre</i> , to extinguish,... } like FEINDRE.
<i>Braire</i> , to bray.*	<i>Exclure</i> , to exclude,..... see CONCLURE.
<i>Ceindre</i> , to gird,..... like FEINDRE.	<i>Extraire</i> , to extract,..... like TRAIRE.
<i>Circoncirre</i> , to circumcise,.... see DIRE.	FAIRE, to do, to make,.... page 157.
<i>Circonscrire</i> , to circumscribe, like ÉCRIRE.	FEINDRE, to feign,..... page 158.
<i>Clore</i> , to close, to shut.†	<i>Frïre</i> , to fry,..... see RIRE.
<i>Commettre</i> , to commit,..... like METTRE.	<i>Induire</i> , to induce,..... like INSTRUIRE.
<i>Comparâtre</i> , to appear,..... like CONNAÎTRE.	<i>Inscrire</i> , to inscribe,..... like ÉCRIRE.
<i>Complaire</i> , to comply with, .. like PLAIRE.	INSTRUIRE, to instruct, .. page 159.
<i>Comprendre</i> , to understand, .. like APPRENDRE.	<i>Interdire</i> , to interdict,..... see DIRE.
<i>Compromettre</i> , compromise, .. like METTRE.	<i>Introduire</i> , to introduce,.... like INSTRUIRE.
CONCLURE, to conclude, .. page 151.	<i>Joindre</i> , to join,..... like FEINDRE.
<i>Conduire</i> , to conduct, to lead, like INSTRUIRE.	LIRE, to read,..... page 160.
<i>Confïre</i> , to pickle,..... see DIRE.	<i>Luire</i> , to shine,..... see INSTRUIRE.
<i>Conjoindre</i> , to join together, .. like FEINDRE.	<i>Maudire</i> , to curse,..... } see DIRE.
CONNAÎTRE, to know,.... page 152.	<i>Médire</i> , to slander,..... } see DIRE.
<i>Construire</i> , to construct, ... like INSTRUIRE.	<i>Méconnaître</i> , not to know, .. like CONNAÎTRE.
<i>Contraindre</i> , to compel,..... like FEINDRE.	<i>se Méprendre</i> , to mistake, .. like APPRENDRE
<i>Contredire</i> , to contradict,.... see DIRE.	METTRE, to put,..... page 161.
<i>Contrefaire</i> , to counterfeit,.... like FAIRE.	MOUDRE, to grind,..... page 162.
<i>Convaincre</i> , to convince,.... like VAINCRE.	<i>Naître</i> , to come to life,.... see CONNAÎTRE.
COUDRE, to sew,..... page 153.	<i>Nuire</i> , to harm, to hurt, ... see INSTRUIRE.
<i>Craindre</i> , to fear,..... like FEINDRE.	<i>Oindre</i> , to anoint,..... like FEINDRE.
CROIRE, to believe,..... page 154.	<i>Omettre</i> , to omit,..... like METTRE.
<i>Croître</i> , to grow up,..... like CONNAÎTRE.	<i>Pâître</i> , to graze,..... } like CONNAÎTRE.
<i>Cuire</i> , to do victuals, to cook, see INSTRUIRE.	<i>Paraître</i> , to appear,..... } like FEINDRE.
<i>Decoudre</i> , to unsew,..... like COUDRE.	<i>Peindre</i> , to paint,..... like FEINDRE.
<i>Décrire</i> , to describe,..... like ÉCRIRE.	<i>Permettre</i> , to permit,..... like METTRE.
<i>Décroître</i> , to decrease,..... like CONNAÎTRE.	<i>Plaindre</i> , to pity,..... } like FEINDRE.
<i>se Dédire</i> , to recant, to retract, see DIRE.	<i>se Plaindre</i> , to complain, .. } like FEINDRE.
<i>Déduire</i> , to deduct,..... like INSTRUIRE.	PLAIRE, to please,..... page 163.
<i>Défaire</i> , to undo, to defeat, .. } like FAIRE.	<i>se Plaire à</i> , to delight in, .. like PLAIRE.
<i>se Défaire</i> , to get rid of, ... } like FAIRE.	<i>Poursuivre</i> , to pursue,..... like SUIVRE.
<i>Déjoindre</i> , to disjoin,..... like FEINDRE.	<i>Prédire</i> , to foretel,..... see DIRE.
<i>Démettre</i> , to disjoin,..... } like METTRE.	<i>Prendre</i> , to take,..... like APPRENDRE.
<i>se Démettre</i> , to abdicate,.... } like METTRE.	<i>Précrire</i> , to prescribe,.... like ÉCRIRE.
<i>Déplaire</i> , to displease,..... like PLAIRE.	<i>Produire</i> , to produce,..... like INSTRUIRE.
<i>Désapprendre</i> , to unlearn,.... like APPRENDRE.	<i>Promettre</i> , to promise,..... like METTRE.
<i>Déteindre</i> , to take off the die, like FEINDRE.	<i>Proscrire</i> , to proscribe,.... like ÉCRIRE.
<i>Détruire</i> , to destroy,..... like INSTRUIRE.	<i>Reboire</i> , to drink again,.... like BOIRE.
DIRE, to say,..... page 155.	<i>Reconduire</i> , to lead back, .. like INSTRUIRE.
<i>Disparaître</i> , to disappear,.... like CONNAÎTRE.	<i>Reconnaître</i> , to know again, like CONNAÎTRE.
<i>Dissoudre</i> , to dissolve,..... like RESOUDRE.	<i>Recoudre</i> , to sew again,.... like COUDRE.
<i>Distraindre</i> , disturb attention, .. like TRAIRE.	<i>Récrire</i> , to write again,.... like ÉCRIRE.
<i>Eclorre</i> , to hatch.†	<i>Recuire</i> , to do or cook again, see INSTRUIRE.
ÉCRIRE, to write,..... page 156.	<i>Redéfaire</i> , to undo again, ... like FAIRE.
<i>Elïre</i> , to elect,..... like LIRE.	<i>Redire</i> , to say again,..... like DIRE.
<i>Emoudre</i> , to whet, to grind, .. like MOUDRE.	<i>Réduire</i> , to reduce,..... like INSTRUIRE.

* BRAIRE is used only in the following tenses and persons ;

Present.

Future.

Conditional.

Il brait, He, it brays. Il braira, He, it will bray. Il brairait, He, it would bray.
 Ils braient, They, bray. Ils braïront, They will bray. Ils braïraient, They would bray.

† CLORE, and its compounds ECILORE. ENCILORE, have only the following tenses and

<i>Refaire</i> , to do again, like FAIRE.	<i>Sourire</i> , to smile, like RIRE.
<i>Relire</i> , to read again, like LIRE.	<i>Souscrire</i> , to subscribe, like ÉCRIRE.
<i>Reluire</i> , to shine, like INSTRUIRE.	<i>Soustraire</i> , to subtract, like TRAIRE.
<i>Remettre</i> , to put again, . . like METTRE.	SUIVRE, to follow, page 166.
<i>Rémoudre</i> , to grind again, like MOUDRE.	<i>Suffire</i> , to be sufficient, see DIRE.
<i>Renâitre</i> , to revive, see CONNAÎTRE.	<i>Surfaire</i> , to exact, like FAIRE.
<i>Rentraire</i> , to finedraw, . . like TRAIRE.	<i>Surprendre</i> , to surprise, like APPRENDRE
<i>Repâitre</i> , to feed, see CONNAÎTRE.	<i>Survivre</i> , to outlive, survive, like VIVRE.
<i>Reprendre</i> , to take again, . like APPRENDRE.	se <i>Taire</i> , to hold one's tongue, like PLAIRE.
RESOUDRE, to resolve, page 164.	<i>Teindre</i> , to dye, like FEINDRE.
<i>Restreindre</i> , to restringe, . like FEINDRE.	<i>Traduire</i> , to translate, like INSTRUIRE.
<i>Revivre</i> , to live again, . . . like VIVRE.	TRAIRE, to milk, page 167.
RIRE, to laugh, page 165.	<i>Transcrire</i> , to transcribe, . . . like ÉCRIRE.
<i>Satisfaire</i> , to satisfy, like FAIRE.	<i>Transmettre</i> , to transmit, . . . like METTRE.
<i>Séduire</i> , to seduce, like INSTRUIRE.	VAINCRE, to vanquish, page 168.
<i>Soumettre</i> , to submit, like METTRE.	VIVRE, to live, page 169.

persons in use :

		INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLE.		
		CLO re.	To close.	CLO s.	closed.	
		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		may close.
Pres.	<i>Je</i>	clo s.	<i>I</i> close, or <i>am</i> closing.	<i>Je</i>	close.	
	<i>Tu</i>	clo s.	<i>Thou</i> closest, <i>art</i> closing.	<i>Tu</i>	closes.	
	<i>Il</i>	clo t.	<i>He</i> closes, <i>is</i> closing.	<i>Il</i>	close.	
Fut. positive	<i>Je</i>	clor ai.	<i>I</i>	} shall will close, or be closing.		
	<i>Tu</i>	clor as.	<i>Thou</i>			
	<i>Il</i>	clor a.	<i>He</i>			
	<i>Nous</i>	clor ons.	<i>We</i>			
	<i>Vous</i>	clor ez.	<i>You</i>			
	<i>Ils</i>	clor ont.	<i>They</i>			
Fut. Condit.	<i>Je</i>	clor ais.	<i>I</i>	} should, would close, or be closing.		
	<i>Tu</i>	clor ais.	<i>Thou</i>			
	<i>Il</i>	clor ait.	<i>He</i>			
	<i>Nous</i>	clor ions.	<i>We</i>			
	<i>Vous</i>	clor iez.	<i>You</i>			
	<i>Ils</i>	clor aient.	<i>They</i>			

COMPOUND TENSES.

Pres. Compound.	<i>I have</i>	} closed.	<i>J'</i>	ai	} clos.	<i>J'</i>	ai	} clos.	may have closed
	<i>Thou hast</i>		<i>Tu</i>	as		<i>Tu</i>	aies		
	<i>He has</i>		<i>Il</i>	a		<i>Il</i>	ait		
	<i>We have</i>		<i>Nous</i>	avons		<i>Nous</i>	ayons		
	<i>You have</i>		<i>Vous</i>	avez		<i>Vous</i>	ayez		
	<i>They have</i>		<i>Ils</i>	ont		<i>Ils</i>	aient		
	<i>I had</i> closed, &c.		<i>J'</i>	avais clos, &c.					

Conjugate in the same manner, ENCLOSE, To enclose.

ÉCLORE has only the following tenses and persons in use :

		INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLE.		
		ÉCLO re.	To be hatching.	ÉCLO s.	hatched.	
		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		may be hatching
	<i>Il</i>	éclo t.	<i>It</i> is hatching.	<i>Il</i>	éclose.	
	<i>Ils</i>	éclo sent.	<i>They</i> are hatching.	<i>Ils</i>	éclo sent.	
	<i>Il</i>	éclo ra.	<i>It</i> will be hatching.			
	<i>Ils</i>	éclo ront.	<i>They</i> will be hatching.			
	<i>Il</i>	éclo rait.	<i>It</i> would be hatching.			
	<i>Ils</i>	éclo raient.	<i>They</i> would be hatching.			

INFINITIVE.

To LEARN.

*APPREND re.

IMPERATIVE.

Learn. APPREND *s, sing.* Apprenez, *plur.*
 Let us learn. apprenons.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	I learn, or am Thou learnest, art He learns, or is We You They	} learn, are learning.	learnings.	J† *apprend s ²³ .	J apprenne ² .	learn, may learn.
				Tu ¹⁶ apprend s.	Tu apprennes ²³ .	
				Il apprend ²³ .	Il apprenne.	
Imperfect tense.	I Thou He We You They	} was learning. were learning.		J apprenais ⁶ .	J apprenne ² .	learned, might learn.
				Tu apprenais.	Tu apprennes ²³ .	
				Il apprenait ²⁶ .	Il apprenne.	
				Nous apprenions.	Nous apprenions.	
				Vous appreniez.	Vous appreniez.	
Perfect tense.	I Thou He We You They	} learned, did learn.		J† appris ²³ .	J apprisse ² .	
				Tu appris.	Tu apprisses.	
				Il apprît ²⁶ .	Il apprît ²⁶ .	
				Nous apprîmes.	Nous apprissions.	
				Vous apprîtes.	Vous apprissiez.	
Future positive.	I Thou He We You They	} shall, will learn, be learning.		J apprendr ai ³ .	J apprendr ai ³ .	
				Tu apprendr as ²⁵ .	Tu apprendr as ²⁵ .	
				Il apprendr a.	Il apprendr a.	
				Nous apprendr ons.	Nous apprendr ons.	
				Vous apprendr ez.	Vous apprendr ez.	
Fut. conditional.	I Thou He We You They	} should, would learn, be learning.		J apprendr ais ⁶ .	J apprendr ais ⁶ .	
				Tu apprendr ais.	Tu apprendr ais.	
				Il apprendr ait ²⁶ .	Il apprendr ait ²⁶ .	
				Nous apprendr ions.	Nous apprendr ions.	
				Vous apprendr iez.	Vous apprendr iez.	
				Il apprendr aient ⁵ .		

GERUND.

PARTICIPLE.

Learning. apprenant²³.

Appris²³. Learned.

After the same manner as APPRENDRE, are conjugated [mistake.
 DÉSAAPPRENDRE, to unlearn. se MÉPRENDRE, to commit a
 PRENDRE, to take. REPRENDRE, { to take again,
 COMPRENDRE, to comprehend, to understand. { to rebuke.
 ENTREPRENDRE, to undertake. SURPRENDRE, to surprise.

* Sound only one p.; see pp. page 13.

† See note * page 26.

INFINITIVE.

To DRINK.

BOI *re*.

IMPERATIVE.

drink.

BOI *s*, *sing*.BUVEZ, *plur*.let *us* drink.

BUVONS.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.

I drink, or *am* drinking.
Thou drinkest, art drinking.
He drinks, or *is* drinking.
We } drink,
You } are drinking.
They }

Je ²⁶boi *s*²⁶.
Tu boi *s*.
Il boi *t*²⁶.
Nous buvons.
Vous buvez.
Ils boi *vent*¹⁸.

Je ²³boi *ve*².
Tu boi *ves*²⁶.
Il boi *ve*.
Nous buvions.
Vous buviez.
Ils boi *vent*¹⁹.

drink, may drink

Imperfect tense.

I } was drinking.
Thou }
He }
We } were drinking.
You }
They }

Je ^{*}buvais⁶.
Tu buvais.
Il buvait²⁶.
Nous buvions.
Vous buviez.
Ils buvaient⁵.

Perfect tense.

I }
Thou } drank,
He } did drink.
We }
You }
They }

Je ^{*}bus²⁶.
Tu bus.
Il but²⁶.
Nous bûmes.
Vous bûtes²⁶.
Ils burent¹⁸.

Je ^{*}busse⁸.
Tu busses.
Il bût²⁶.
Nous bussions.
Vous bussiez.
Ils bussent¹⁹.

drank, might drink.

Future positive.

I }
Thou } shall, will drink,
He } be drinking.
We }
You }
They }

Je ²³boir *ai*⁵.
Tu boir *as*²³.
Il boir *a*.
Nous boir *ons*.
Vous boir *ez*.
Ils boir *ont*²⁶.

Fut. conditional.

I }
Thou } shd, wd drink,
He } be drinking.
We }
You }
They }

Je ²³boir *ais*⁶.
Tu boir *ais*.
Il boir *ait*²⁶.
Nous boir *ions*.
Vous boir *iez*.
Ils boir *aient*⁵.

GERUND.

PARTICIPLE.

drinking.

buvant²⁶.

BU.

drunk.

After the same manner as *BOIRE* is conjugated
REBOIRE, to drink again; to drink afresh.

* See note 2, page 1.

INFINITIVE.

To CONCLUDE.

CONCLU *re*.

IMPERATIVE.

conclude. CONCLU *s, sing.*
 Let us conclude.

CONCLU *ez, plur.*
 CONCLU *ons.*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.
 I conclude, or *am* concluding.^{5.} Je ²¹conclu *s*²⁶.
 Thou concludest, *art* concluding.^{5.} Tu conclu *s*.
 He concludes, or *is* concluding.^{5.} Il conclu *t*²⁶.
 We } conclude, *are* concluding.^{5.} Nous conclu *ons*.
 You } concluding.^{5.} Vous conclu *ez*.
 They } concluding.^{5.} Ils conclu *ent*¹⁸.

Je conclu *e*².
 Tu conclu *es*²⁶.
 Il conclu *e*.
 Nous conclu *ions*.
 Vous conclu *iez*.
 Ils conclu *ent*¹⁸.

conclude, *may* conclude.

Imperfect tense.
 I } *was* concluding.
 Thou } concluding.
 He } concluding.
 We } *were* concluding.
 You } concluding.
 They } concluding.
 Je ²¹conclu *ais*⁶.
 Tu conclu *ais*.
 Il conclu *ait*²⁶.
 Nous conclu *ions*.
 Vous conclu *iez*.
 Ils conclu *aient*⁶.

Perfect tense.
 I } concluded,
 Thou } *did* conclude.
 He } *did* conclude.
 We } *did* conclude.
 You } *did* conclude.
 They } *did* conclude.
 Je ²¹conclu *sse*².
 Tu conclu *s*.
 Il conclu *t*²⁶.
 Nous conclû *mes*.
 Vous conclû *tes*.
 Ils conclu *rent*¹⁸.

Je conclu *sse*².
 Tu conclu *ses*.
 Il conclû *t*²⁶.
 Nous conclu *ssions*.
 Vous conclu *ssiez*.
 Ils conclu *ssent*¹⁸.

concluded, *might* conclude.

Future positive.
 I } *shall, will*
 Thou } conclude,
 He } *be* concluding.
 We } *be* concluding.
 You } *be* concluding.
 They } *be* concluding.
 Je ²¹conclur *ai*⁵.
 Tu conclur *as*²⁵.
 Il conclur *a*.
 Nous conclur *ons*.
 Vous conclur *ez*.
 Ils conclur *ont*²⁶.

Future conditional.
 I } *should, would*
 Thou } conclude,
 He } *be* concluding.
 We } *be* concluding.
 You } *be* concluding.
 They } *be* concluding.
 Je ²¹conclur *ais*⁶.
 Tu conclur *ais*.
 Il conclur *ait*²⁶.
 Nous conclur *ions*.
 Vous conclur *iez*.
 Ils conclur *aient*⁶.

GERUND.

PARTICIPLE.

concluding. CONCLU *ant*²⁶.

CONCLU. concluded.

After the same manner as CONCLUDE, is conjugated

EXCLUDE, to exclude; observe only that the participle of EXCLUDE is EXCLUS, excluded.

INFINITIVE.

To KNOW.*

†CONNAIT *re*.

IMPERATIVE.

KNOW. Connais, *sing.* connaissez, *plur.*
 let us know. connaissons.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	I know.	Je ³ †connais ⁶ .	Je	connaisse ² .	know, <i>may</i> know.						
	Thou knowest.	Tu connais.	Tu	connaisse ²⁶ .							
	He knows.	Il connaît ²⁶ .	Il	connaisse.							
	We } know.	Nous connaissons.	Nous	connaissons							
	You } They }	Vous connaissez. Ils connaissent ¹⁸ .	Vous * Ils	connaissez. connaissent ¹⁸ .							
Imperfect tense.	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }	did know.	Je Tu Il Nous Vous Ils	connais ⁶ . connais ⁶ . connaissais. connaissais ²⁶ . connaissons. connaissez. connaissaient ⁶ .	knew, <i>might</i> know.						
	Perfect tense.	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }	knew, did know.	Je Tu Il Nous Vous Ils		connus ²³ . connus. connut ²⁶ . connûmes. connûtes. connurent ¹⁸ .	knew, <i>might</i> know.				
		Future positive.	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }	shall, will know.		Je Tu Il Nous Vous Ils		connaîtr ai ⁵ . connaîtr as ²⁶ . connaîtr a. connaîtr ons. connaîtr ez. connaîtr ont ²⁶ .			
			Fut. conditional.	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }		shuld, wuld know.		Je Tu Il Nous Vous Ils		connaîtr ais ⁶ . connaîtr ais. connaîtr aït ²⁶ . connaîtr ions. connaîtr iez. connaîtr aient ⁶ .	
				knowing.		connaissant ²⁶ .		connu.		KNOWN.	

After the same manner as CONNAÎTRE, are conjugated

MÉCONNAÎTRE, not to know.	PARAÎTRE, to appear.
RECONNAÎTRE, to know again.	APPARAÎTRE, to appear, speaking of ghosts.
CROÎTRE, to grow up, to encrease.	COMPARAÎTRE, (a law term,) to appear.
ACCROÎTRE, to accrue.	DISPARAÎTRE, to disappear.
DÉCROÎTRE, to decrease.	PAÎTRE, to graze.
RECROÎTRE, to grow again.	REPAÎTRE, to feed.
RENAÎTRE, to revive.	
NAÎTRE, to come to life, part. NÉ.	{ perf. ind. NAQU -is, -is, it; -îmes, -îtes, -irent. { perf.sub. NAQU-isse, -isses, -ît; -issions, -issiez, issent.

* Meaning to know by sight, or to be acquainted with; as,
 I know that man, this horse, that house, your brother, your sister, i. e. by sight.
Je connais cet homme, ce cheval, cette maison, votre frère, votre sœur.

See SAVOIR, page 140.

† Sound only one n, and lay the accent upon o.

INFINITIVE.

To SEW. COUD *re*

IMPERATIVE.

sew. coud *s, sing.* cousez, *plur.*
 Let us sew. cousons.

INDICATIVE.

Present tense. *I* sew, or *am* sewing.^s *Je*^s ¹⁴coud ^s²⁶.
Thou sewest, *art* sewing.^s *Tu* coud *s*.
He sews, or *is* sewing.^s *Il* coud²⁶.
We } sew,
You } are sewing.
They } *Nous* cousons.
 } *Vous* cousez.*
 } *Ils* cousent¹⁸.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Je ¹⁴couse².
Tu couses²⁶.
Il couse.
Nous cousions.
Vous cousiez.*
Ils cousent¹⁸.

sew, may sew.

Imperfect tense. *I* } *Je* ¹⁴cousais⁶.
Thou } was sewing. *Tu* cousais.
He } *Il* cousait²⁶.
We } *Nous* cousions.
You } were sewing. *Vous* cousiez.
They } *Ils* cousaient⁶.

Perfect tense. *I* } *Je* ¹⁴cousis.†
Thou } *Tu* cousis²⁶.
He } sewed, *Il* cousit²⁶.
We } did sew. *Nous* cousîmes.
You } *Vous* cousîtes.
They } *Ils* cousîrent¹⁸.

Je ¹⁴cousisse².
Tu cousisses.
Il cousît²⁶.
Nous cousissions.
Vous cousissiez.
Ils cousissent¹⁸.

sewed, might sew.

Future positive. *I* } *Je* ¹⁴coudr *ai*⁵.
Thou } *Tu* coudr *as*²⁶.
He } shall, will sew, *Il* coudr *a*.
We } be sewing. *Nous* coudr *ons*.
You } *Vous* coudr *ez*.
They } *Ils* coudr *ont*²⁶.

Fut. conditional. *I* } *Je* ¹⁴coudr *ais*⁶.
Thou } *Tu* coudr *ais*.
He } should, would sew, *Il* coudr *ait*²⁶.
We } be sewing. *Nous* coudr *ions*.
You } *Vous* coudr *iez*.
They } *Ils* coudr *aient*⁶.

GERUND.

sewing. cousant²⁶.

PARTICIPLE.

cousu. sewed.

After the same manner as COUDRE, are conjugated

DÉCOUDRE, to unsew.

RECOUDRE, to sew again.

* See *s* between two vowels page 14.

† See note 4, page 2.

INFINITIVE.

To BELIEVE.

CROI *re*.

IMPERATIVE.

believe crois, *sing.*
let us believe.croyez, *plur*
croyons.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.

<i>I</i> believe.	<i>Je</i> ³ <i>croi s</i> ²⁶ .
<i>Thou</i> believest.	<i>Tu</i> ²³ <i>croi s</i> .
<i>He</i> believes.	<i>Il</i> <i>croi t</i> ²⁵ .
<i>We</i> } believe.	<i>Nous</i> croyons.
<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> croyez ⁴ .
<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> <i>croi ent</i> ¹⁸ .

<i>Je</i> ²³ <i>croi e</i> .
<i>Tu</i> <i>croi es</i> ²⁶ .
<i>Il</i> <i>croi e</i> .
<i>Nous</i> croyions.
<i>Vous</i> croyiez.
<i>Ils</i> <i>croi ent</i> ¹⁹ .

believe *may* believe.

Imperfect tense.

<i>I</i> } <i>Je</i> ²³ <i>croyais</i> ⁴ .
<i>Thou</i> } <i>Tu</i> <i>croyais</i> .
<i>He</i> } <i>Il</i> <i>croyait</i> ²⁶ .
<i>We</i> } <i>Nous</i> croyions.
<i>You</i> } <i>Vous</i> croyiez.
<i>They</i> } <i>Ils</i> <i>croyaient</i> ⁶ .

did believe.

Perfect tense.

<i>I</i> } <i>Je</i> <i>crus</i> ²⁶ .
<i>Thou</i> } <i>Tu</i> <i>crus</i> .*
<i>He</i> } <i>Il</i> <i>crut</i> ²⁶ .
<i>We</i> } <i>Nous</i> <i>crûmes</i> .
<i>You</i> } <i>Vous</i> <i>crûtes</i> .
<i>They</i> } <i>Ils</i> <i>crurent</i> ¹⁸ .

believed, did believe.

<i>Je</i> <i>crusse</i> ² .
<i>Tu</i> <i>crusses</i> .
<i>Il</i> <i>crût</i> ²⁶ .
<i>Nous</i> <i>crussions</i> .
<i>Vous</i> <i>crussiez</i> .
<i>Ils</i> <i>crussent</i> ¹² .

believed, *might* believe.

Future positive.

<i>I</i> } <i>Je</i> ²⁶ <i>croir ai</i> ⁵ .
<i>Thou</i> } <i>Tu</i> <i>croir as</i> ²⁶ .
<i>He</i> } <i>Il</i> <i>croir a</i> .
<i>We</i> } <i>Nous</i> <i>croir ons</i> .
<i>You</i> } <i>Vous</i> <i>croir ez</i> .
<i>They</i> } <i>Ils</i> <i>croir ont</i> ²⁶ .

shall, will believe.

Future conditional.

<i>I</i> } <i>Je</i> ²³ <i>croir ais</i> ⁶ .
<i>Thou</i> } <i>Tu</i> <i>croir ais</i> .
<i>He</i> } <i>Il</i> <i>croir ait</i> ²⁶ .
<i>We</i> } <i>Nous</i> <i>croir ions</i> .
<i>You</i> } <i>Vous</i> <i>croir iez</i> .
<i>They</i> } <i>Ils</i> <i>croir aient</i> ⁶ .

should, would believe.

GERUND.

PARTICIPLE.

believing. croyant²⁵.

cru. believed

* See note 2, page 1.

INFINITIVE.

To SAY, To TELL.

Di re.

IMPERATIVE.

say. DI s, *sing.*
Let us say.

dites, *plur.*
DI sons.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.

I say, or am saying. Je^s di s²⁶.
Thou sayest, art saying. Tu di s.
He says, or is saying. Il di t²⁶.
We } say, Nous di sons.
You } are saying. Vous dites²⁶.
They } Ils di sent¹⁸.

Je di se².
Tu di ses²⁶.
Il di se.
Nous di sions.
Vous di siez.
Ils di sent¹⁸.
said, *may* say.

Imperfect tense.

I } was saying. Je di sais⁵.
Thou } Tu di sais.
He } Il di sait²⁶.
We } were saying. Nous di sions.
You } Vous di siez.
They } Ils di saient⁶.

Perfect tense.

I } said, did say. Je di s²⁶.
Thou } Tu di s.
He } Il di t²⁶.
We } said, did say. Nous dît mes.
You } Vous dît tes.
They } Ils di rent¹⁸.

Je di sse².
Tu di sses.
Il dît t²⁶.
Nous di ssions.
Vous di ssiez.
Ils di ssent¹⁸.
said, *might* say.

Future positive.

I } Je dir ai⁵.
Thou } Tu dir as²⁶.
He } shall, will say, Il dir a.
We } be saying. Nous dir ons.
You } Vous dir ez.
They } Ils dir ont²⁶.

Future conditional.

I } Je dir ais⁶.
Thou } Tu dir ais.
He } should, would say, Il dir ait²⁶.
We } be saying. Nous dir ions.
You } Vous dir iez.
They } Ils dir aient⁶.

saying. DI sant²⁶. DI t²⁶. said.

After the same manner as DIRE, are conjugated

CONTREDIRE, to contradict. PRÉDIRE, to foretell.
se DÉDIRE, to retract, to recant. REDIRE, to say again.
INTERDIRE, to interdict. CONFIRE, to confect, preserve fruit in sugar.
MAUDIRE, to curse. CIRCONCIRE, to circumcise. part. CIRCONCIS.
MÉDIRE, to slander. SUFFIRE, to be sufficient. part. SUFFI.

Observe only, that except REDIRE, the second person plural of the present of the indicative, and of the imperative of all these verbs ends in *sez*, and not in *tes*; so, *Vous confisez, Vous contredisez*; and that in MAUDIRE the *s* is doubled in the middle of the word; so, *Nous maudissons, Vous maudissez*; *Je maudissais, &c.* not *Nous maudisons, &c.*

INFINITIVE.

To WRITE.

ÉCRI re.

IMPERATIVE.

write. ÉCRI s, *sing.*
Let us write.ÉCRI vez, *plur.*
ÉCRI vous.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	I write, or am writing.	J'* écri s ²⁵ .	J' écri ve ² .	write, may write.				
	Thou writest, art writing.	Tu écri s.†	Tu écri ves ²⁵ .					
	He writes, or is writing.	Il écri t ²⁵ .	Il écri ve.					
	We } write, You } are writing. They }	Nous écri vous. Vous écri vez. Ils écri vent ¹⁸ .	Nous écri vions. Vous écri viez. Ils écri vent ¹⁸ .					
Imperfect tense.	I } Thou } was writing. He } We } You } were writing. They }	J'* écri vais ⁵ . Tu écri vais. Il écri vait ²⁵ . Nous écri vions. Vous écri viez. Ils écri vaient ⁵ .		wrote, might write.				
	Perfect tense.	I } Thou } wrote, He } did write. We } You } They }	J' écri vis.† Tu écri vis. Il écri vit ²⁵ . Nous écri vîmes. Vous écri vîtes. Ils écri virent ¹⁸ .		J' écri visse ² . Tu écri visses. Il écri vît ²⁵ . Nous écri vissions. Vous écri vissiez. Ils écri vissent ¹⁸ .			
		Future positive	I } Thou } shll, will write, He } be writing. We } You } They }		J' écri ai ⁵ . Tu écri as ²⁵ . Il écri a. Nous écri ons. Vous écri ez. Ils écri ont ²⁵ .			
			Fut. conditional.		I } Thou } shd, wd write, He } be writing. We } You } They }	J' écri ais. ⁶ Tu écri ais. Il écri ait ²⁵ . Nous écri ions. Vous écri iez. Ils écri aient ⁶ .		
					GERUND.		PARTICIPLE.	
writing.				ÉCRI vant ²⁵ .	ÉCRI t ²⁵ .	written.		

After the same manner as ÉCRIRE, are conjugated

CIRCONSCRIRE, to circumscribe.

PROSCRIRE, to proscribe.

DÉCRIRE, to describe.

RÉCRIRE, to write again.

INSCRIRE, to inscribe.

SOUSCRIRE, to subscribe.

PRESCRIRE, to prescribe.

TRANSCRIRE, to transcribe, to copy.

* See note * page 28.

† See note 4, page 2.

INFINITIVE.

To DO, TO MAKE.

FAI *re*.

IMPERATIVE.

DO
Let us do.

FAI *s, sing.*

faites, *plur.*
FAI *sons.*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present tense.
I do, or am doing. Je^s fai s⁶.
Thou doest, art doing. Tu fai s.
He does, or is doing. Il fai t²⁵.
We } do,
You } are doing.
They }

Je fasse². †
Tu fasses²⁵.
Il fasse.
Nous fassions.
Vous fassiez.
Ils fassent¹⁸.
do, may do.

Imperfect tense.
I } was doing.
Thou }
He }
We } were doing.
You }
They }

J fai sais⁶.
Tu fai sais.*
Il fai sait²⁶.
Nous fai sions.
Vous fai siez.
Ils fai saient⁸.

Perfect tense.
I } did, or made.
Thou }
He }
We }
You }
They }

Je fis²⁶.
Tu fis.
Il fit²⁵.
Nous fîmes.
Vous fîtes.
Ils firent¹⁸.

Je fisse².
Tu fisses.
Il fît²⁶.
Nous fissions.
Vous fissiez.
Ils fissent¹⁸.
did, might do

Future positive.
I }
Thou }
He } shall, will do,
We } be doing.
You }
They }

Je †ferai⁶.
Tu feras²⁵.
Il fera.
Nous ferons.
Vous ferez.
Ils feront²⁵.

Future conditional.
I }
Thou }
He } shd, wld do,
We } be doing.
You }
They }

Je †ferais⁶.
Tu ferais.
Il ferait²⁶.
Nous ferions.
Vous feriez.
Ils feraient⁸.

GERUND.

doing. FAI *sant*²⁵.

PARTICIPLE

FAI *t*²⁵. Done, Made.

After the same manner as FAIRE, are conjugated

CONTREFAIRE, to counterfeit.

REFAIRE, to do again.

DÉFAIRE, to undo, to defeat.

SATISFAIRE, to satisfy.

se DÉFAIRE, to get rid of.

SURFAIRE, to exact, to ask too much.

REDEFAIRE, to undo again.

* See s between two vowels, page 14. † Pronounce fray, fraw, &c. ‡ See ss, p. 15.

		INFINITIVE.			
		To PRETEND, TO FEIGN.		FEIND re.	
		IMPERATIVE.			
		pretend.	feins, <i>sing.</i>	feignez, <i>plur</i>	
		Let us pretend.		feignons.	
		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Present tense.	I pretend.	Je ³	feins ²⁷ .	Je ¹⁹ feigne ² .	
	Thou pretendest.	Tu ¹⁹	feins.	Tu feignes ²³ .	
	He pretends.	Il	feint ²³ .	Il feigne.	
	We } pretend.	Nous	feignons.	Nous feignons.	
	You } They }	Vous	feignez.	Vous feignez.	
Imperfect tense.	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }	Je ¹⁹	feignais ⁶ .	Je ¹⁹ feignisse ² .	
	} was pretending.		Tu	feignais.	Tu feignisses.
	} were pretending.		Il	feignait ²⁶ .	Il feignît ²⁶ .
	}		Nous	feignons.	Nous feignissions.
	}		Vous	feigniez.	Vous feignissiez.
Perfect tense.	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }	Je ¹⁹	feignis ²⁶ .	Je ¹⁹ feignisse ² .	
	} pretended,		Tu	feignis.	Tu feignisses.
	} did pretend.		Il	feignit ²⁶ .	Il feignît ²⁶ .
	}		Nous	feignîmes.	Nous feignissions.
	}		Vous	feignîtes.	Vous feignissiez.
Future positive.	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }	Je ¹⁹	feindr ai ⁵ .	Je ¹⁹ feindr aient ¹⁹ .	
	} shall, will		Tu	feindr as ²³ .	
	} pretend.		Il	feindr a.	
	}		Nous	feindr ons.	
	}		Vous	feindr ez.	
Fut. conditional.	I } Thou } He } We } You } They }	Je ¹⁹	feindr ais ⁶ .		
	} should, would		Tu	feindr ais.	
	} pretend.		Il	feindr ait ²⁶ .	
	}		Nous	feindr ions.	
	}		Vous	feindr iez.	
		Il	feindr aient ⁶ .		
		pretending.	feignant ²³ .	feint ²⁶ . pretended	
After the same manner as FEINDRE, are conjugated					
ASTREINDRE,	to tie, to bind.	OINDRE,	to anoint.		
CRAINDRE,	to fear.	TEINDRE,	to die.		
CONTRAINdre,	to constrain.	DÉTEINDRE,	to take off the die.		
CEINDRE,	to gi:d.	ÉTEINDRE,	to extinguish, to put out.		
ENCEINDRE,	to encompass.	ATEINDRE,	to reach.		
JOINDRE,	to join.	PEINDRE,	to paint.		
CONJOINDRE,	to unite.	PLAINdre,	to pity.		
DÉJOINDRE,	to disjoin.	se PLAINdre,	to complain.		
ENJOINDRE,	to enjoin.	RESTREINDRE,	to restrain, to limit.		
ENFREINDRE,	to infringe.	ÉPREINDRE,	to squeeze out, to strain.		

pretend, may pretend.

pretended, might pretend.

INFINITIVE. INSTRUI re.

IMPERATIVE. INSTRUI s, sing. INSTRUI sez, plur.
 Let us instruct. INSTRUI sons.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense. I instruct, or am instructing. J¹⁹ instrui s²⁵.
 Thou instructest, art instructing. Tu instrui s.
 He instructs, or is instructing. Il instrui t²⁵.
 We are instructing. Nous instrui sons.
 You are instructing. Vous instrui sez.
 They are instructing. Ils instrui sent¹⁸.
 Imperfect tense. I was instructing. J¹⁹ instrui sais⁶.
 Thou was instructing. Tu instrui sais.
 He was instructing. Il instrui sait²⁵.
 We were instructing. Nous instrui sions.
 You were instructing. Vous instrui siez.
 They were instructing. Ils instrui saient³.
 Perfect tense. I instructed, did instruct. J¹⁹ instrui sis²⁰.
 Thou instructed, did instruct. Tu instrui sis.
 He instructed, did instruct. Il instrui sit²⁶.
 We instructed, did instruct. Nous instrui simes.
 You instructed, did instruct. Vous instrui sîtes.
 They instructed, did instruct. Ils instrui sirent⁶.
 Future positive. I shd, wd instruct, be instructing. J¹⁹ instruir ai⁵.
 Thou shd, wd instruct, be instructing. Tu instruir as²¹.
 He shd, wd instruct, be instructing. Il instruir a.
 We shd, wd instruct, be instructing. Nous instruir ons.
 You shd, wd instruct, be instructing. Vous instruir ez.
 They shd, wd instruct, be instructing. Ils instruir ont²⁶.
 Fut. conditional. I shd, wd instruct, be instructing. J¹⁹ instruir ais.
 Thou shd, wd instruct, be instructing. Tu instruir ais.
 He shd, wd instruct, be instructing. Il instruir ait²³.
 We shd, wd instruct, be instructing. Nous instruir ions.
 You shd, wd instruct, be instructing. Vous instruir iez.
 They shd, wd instruct, be instructing. Ils instruir aient⁶.

instruct, may instruct.
 instructed, might instruct.

GERUND.

PARTICIPLE.

Instructing. INSTRUI sant²⁶. INSTRUI t²³. instructed

After the same manner as INSTRUIRE, are conjugated

CONDUIRE, to conduct. INTRODUIRE, to introduce.
 RECONDUIRE, to take or lead back. LUIRE, } to shine, part. LUI, RELUI.
 CONSTRUIRE, to construct. RELUIRE, }
 CUIRE, to do victuals, to cook.* NUIRE, to hurt, to injure, part. NUI.
 RECUIRE, to do or cook over again. PRODUIRE, to produce.
 DÉDUIRE, to deduct. RÉDUIRE, to reduce, to compel.
 DÉTRUIRE, to destroy. SÉDUIRE, to seduce.
 ENDUIRE, to daub. TRADUIRE, to translate.

* To cook, followed by an object, is generally expressed by Faire cuire; as, I cook, or am cooking meat, fish, &c. Je fais cuire de la viande, du poisson, &c.

INFINITIVE

To READ.

*LI *re*.

IMPERATIVE.

read. LI *s*, *sing*.
Let us read.LI *sez*, *plur*.
LI *sons*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	<i>I</i> read, or <i>am</i> reading.	<i>Je</i> ³ *li <i>s</i> ²⁶ .	<i>Je</i> *li <i>se</i> ² . †	read, <i>may</i> read.
	<i>Thou</i> readest, <i>art</i> reading.	<i>Tu</i> li <i>s</i> .	<i>Tu</i> li <i>ses</i> ²⁶ .	
	<i>He</i> reads, or <i>is</i> reading.	<i>Il</i> li <i>t</i> ²⁶ .	<i>Il</i> li <i>se</i> .	
	<i>We</i> } read,	<i>Nous</i> li <i>sons</i> . †	<i>Nous</i> li <i>sions</i> .	
	<i>You</i> } are reading.	<i>Vous</i> li <i>sez</i> .	<i>Vous</i> li <i>siez</i> .	
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> li <i>sent</i> ¹⁹ .	<i>Ils</i> li <i>sent</i> ¹⁹ .	
Imperfect tense.	<i>I</i> } was reading.	<i>Je</i> *li <i>sais</i> ⁶ .		
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> li <i>sais</i> . †		
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> li <i>sait</i> ²⁶ .		
	<i>We</i> } were reading.	<i>Nous</i> li <i>sions</i> .		
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> li <i>siez</i> .		
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> li <i>saient</i> ⁶ .		
Perfect tense.	<i>I</i> } read,	<i>Je</i> lus ²⁶ .	<i>Je</i> †lusse ⁹ .	read, <i>might</i> read.
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> †lus.	<i>Tu</i> lusses.	
	<i>He</i> } did read.	<i>Il</i> lut ²⁶ .	<i>Il</i> lût ²⁶ .	
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> lûmes.	<i>Nous</i> lussions.	
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> lûtes.	<i>Vous</i> lussiez.	
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> lurent ¹⁹ .	<i>Ils</i> lussent ¹⁹ .	
Future positive.	<i>I</i> } shall, will read,	<i>Je</i> *li <i>ai</i> ⁵ .		
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> li <i>as</i> ²⁶ .		
	<i>He</i> } be reading.	<i>Il</i> li <i>a</i> .		
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> li <i>ons</i> .		
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> li <i>ez</i> .		
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> li <i>ont</i> ²⁶ .		
Fut. conditional.	<i>I</i> } shld, wld read,	<i>Je</i> *li <i>ais</i> ⁶ .		
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> li <i>ais</i> .		
	<i>He</i> } be reading.	<i>Il</i> li <i>ait</i> ²⁶ .		
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> li <i>ions</i> .		
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> li <i>iez</i> .		
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> li <i>aient</i> ⁹ .		

GERUND.

PARTICIPLE.

reading. LI *sant*²⁶.

Lu. Read

After the same manner as *LIRE*, are conjugated
ÉLIRE, to elect. *RELIRE*, to read again.

* See note 4, page 2.

† See p. 14, s between two vowels.

‡ See note 2, p. 1.

INFINITIVE.

To PUT. *METT *re*.

IMPERATIVE.

put. mets, *sing.* METT *ez, plur.*
 Let us put. METT *ons.*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	<i>I</i> put, or <i>am</i> putting.	<i>Je</i> ³ mets ²¹ .	<i>Je</i> *mett <i>e</i> ² .	put, <i>may</i> put.
	<i>Thou</i> puttest, <i>art</i> putting.	<i>Tu</i> mets.	<i>Tu</i> mett <i>e</i> ²⁵ .	
	<i>He</i> puts, or <i>is</i> putting.	<i>Il</i> met ²¹ .	<i>Il</i> mett <i>e</i> .	
	<i>We</i> } put, <i>You</i> } <i>They</i> } are putting.	<i>Nous</i> mett <i>ons.</i> <i>Vous</i> mett <i>ez.</i> <i>Ils</i> mett <i>ent</i> ¹⁸ .	<i>Nous</i> mett <i>ions.</i> <i>Vous</i> mett <i>iez.</i> <i>Ils</i> mett <i>ent</i> ¹⁸ .	
Imperfect tense.	<i>I</i> } <i>Thou</i> } was putting.	<i>Je</i> *mett <i>ais</i> ⁶ . <i>Tu</i> mett <i>ais.</i>		
	<i>He</i> } <i>We</i> } were putting.	<i>Il</i> mett <i>ait</i> ²⁵ . <i>Nous</i> mett <i>ions.</i>		
	<i>You</i> } <i>They</i> }	<i>Vous</i> mett <i>iez.</i> <i>Ils</i> mett <i>aient</i> ⁶ .		
Perfect tense.	<i>I</i> } <i>Thou</i> } put, <i>He</i> } did put.	<i>Je</i> †mis ²³ . <i>Tu</i> mis. <i>Il</i> mit ²³ .	<i>Je</i> †misse ² . <i>Tu</i> misses. <i>Il</i> mît ²⁵ .	put, <i>might</i> put.
	<i>We</i> } <i>You</i> } <i>They</i> }	<i>Nous</i> mîmes. <i>Vous</i> mîtes. <i>Ils</i> mirent ¹⁶ .	<i>Nous</i> missions. <i>Vous</i> missiez. <i>Ils</i> missent ¹⁸ .	
Future positive.	<i>I</i> } <i>Thou</i> } shall, will put, <i>He</i> } be putting.	<i>Je</i> *mettr <i>ai</i> ³ . <i>Tu</i> mettr <i>as</i> ²⁶ . <i>Il</i> mettr <i>a.</i>		
	<i>We</i> } <i>You</i> } <i>They</i> }	<i>Nous</i> mettr <i>ons.</i> <i>Vous</i> mettr <i>ez.</i> <i>Ils</i> mettr <i>ont</i> ²³ .		
Fut. conditional	<i>I</i> } <i>Thou</i> } should, would put, <i>He</i> } be putting	<i>Je</i> *mettr <i>ais</i> ⁶ . <i>Tu</i> mettr <i>ais.</i> <i>Il</i> mettr <i>ait</i> ²⁵ .		
	<i>We</i> } <i>You</i> } <i>They</i> }	<i>Nous</i> mettr <i>ions.</i> <i>Vous</i> mettr <i>iez.</i> <i>Ils</i> mettr <i>aient</i> ⁶ .		

GERUND.

putting. METT *ant*²⁶.

PARTICIPLE.

mis. put.

After the same manner as METTRE, are conjugated

ADMETTRE, to admit.	OMETTRE, to omit.
COMMETTRE, to commit.	PERMETTRE, to permit.
COMPROMETTRE, to compromise.	PROMETTRE, to promise.
DÉMETTRE, to put out of joint.	REMETTRE, to put again, to deliver up.
se DÉMETTRE, to abdicate.	SOMETTRE, to submit.
s'ENTREMETTRE, to intermeddle.	TRANSMETTRE, to transmit.

* Sound only one t.

† See note 4, page 2

INFINITIVE.

To GRIND.

MOUD *re.*

IMPERATIVE.

grind.

MOUD *s, sing.*moulez, *plur.*

Let us grind.

moulons.

INDICATIVE.

Present tense.

I grind, or *am*
 Thou grindest, *art*
 He grinds, or *is*
 We } grind,
 You } are grinding.
 They }

grinding.

Je ¹⁴moud *s*²⁶.
 Tu moud *s*.
 Il moud²⁶.
 Nous moulons.
 Vous moulez.
 Ils moulent¹⁸.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

grind, may grind.

Je ¹⁴moule².
 Tu moules²⁶.
 Il moule.
 Nous moulions.
 Vous mouliez.
 Ils moulent¹⁸.

Imperfect tense.

I }
 Thou } was grinding.
 He }
 We } were grinding.
 You }
 They }

Je ¹⁴moulais⁶.
 Tu moulais.
 Il moulait²⁶.
 Nous moulions.
 Vous mouliez.
 Ils moulaient⁶.

Perfect tense.

I }
 Thou }
 He } ground,
 We } did grind.
 You }
 They }

Je ¹⁴moulus²³.
 Tu moulus.*
 Il moulut²⁶.
 Nous moulûmes.
 Vous moulûtes.
 Ils moulurent¹⁸.

ground, might grind.

Je ¹⁴moulusse².
 Tu moulusses.
 Il moulût²⁶.
 Nous moulussions.
 Vous moulussiez.
 Ils moulussent¹⁸.

Future positive.

I }
 Thou }
 He } shall, will grind,
 We } be grinding.
 You }
 They }

Je ¹⁴moudr *ai*⁵.
 Tu moudr *as*²⁶.
 Il moudr *a*.
 Nous moudr *ons*.
 Vous moudr *ez*.
 Ils moudr *ont*²⁶.

Fut. conditional.

I }
 Thou }
 He } shd, wd grind,
 We } be grinding.
 You }
 They }

Je ¹⁴moudr *ais*⁶.
 Tu moudr *ais*.
 Il moudr *ait*²⁶.
 Nous moudr *ions*.
 Vous moudr *iez*.
 Ils moudr *aient*⁶.

GERUND.

grinding.

moulant²⁶.

PARTICIPLE.

moulu. ground.

After the same manner as MOUDRE, are conjugated
 ÉMOUDRE, to grind, to whet.

RÉMOUDRE, to grind again.

* See note 2, page 1

INFINITIVE.

To PLEASE.

PLAI *re*.

IMPERATIVE.

please. PLAI *s*, *sing*.
Let us please.

PLAI *sez*, *plur*.
PLAI *sons*.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	<i>I</i> please.	<i>Je</i> plai <i>s</i> ⁶ .	<i>Je</i> plai <i>se</i> ² .	please, <i>may</i> please.
	<i>Thou</i> pleasest.	<i>Tu</i> plai <i>s</i> .	<i>Tu</i> plai <i>ses</i> ²⁶ .	
	<i>He</i> pleases.	<i>Il</i> plai ^t <i>s</i> ⁶ .	<i>Il</i> plai <i>se</i> .	
	<i>We</i> } please.	<i>Nous</i> plai <i>sons</i> .	<i>Nous</i> plai <i>sions</i> .	
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> plai <i>sez</i> .*	<i>Vous</i> plai <i>siez</i> .	
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> plai <i>sent</i> ¹⁸ .	<i>Ils</i> plai <i>sent</i> ¹⁸ .	

Imperfect tense.	<i>I</i> } did please.	<i>Je</i> plai <i>sais</i> ⁶ .	pleased, <i>might</i> please.
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> plai <i>sais</i> .*	
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> plai <i>sait</i> ²⁶ .	
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> plai <i>sions</i> .	
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> plai <i>siez</i> .	
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> plai <i>saient</i> ⁶ .	

Perfect tense.	<i>I</i> } pleased, did please.	<i>Je</i> †plus ²⁶ .	pleased, <i>might</i> please.
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> plus.	
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> plut ²⁶ .	
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> plûmes.	
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> plûtes.	
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> plurent ¹⁸ .	

Future positive.	<i>I</i> } shall, will please.	<i>Je</i> plair <i>ai</i> ³ .	pleased, <i>might</i> please.
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> plair <i>as</i> ²⁶ .	
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> plair <i>a</i> .	
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> plair <i>ons</i> .	
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> plair <i>ez</i> .	
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> plair <i>ont</i> ²⁶ .	

Fut. conditional	<i>I</i> } should, would please.	<i>Je</i> plair <i>ais</i> ⁶ .	pleased, <i>might</i> please.
	<i>Thou</i> }	<i>Tu</i> plair <i>ais</i> .	
	<i>He</i> }	<i>Il</i> plair <i>ait</i> . ²⁶	
	<i>We</i> }	<i>Nous</i> plair <i>ions</i> .	
	<i>You</i> }	<i>Vous</i> plair <i>iez</i> .	
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> plair <i>aient</i> ⁶ .	

GERUND.

PARTICIPLE.

pleasing.

PLAI *sant*²⁶.

PLU.

pleased

After the same manner as PLAIRE, are conjugated

COMPLAIRE, to comply.

se PLAIRE, to delight in.

DÉPLAIRE, to displease.

se TAIRE, to hold one's tongue, to be silent.

* See *s* between two vowels, page 14.

† See note 2, page 1.

INFINITIVE.

TO RESOLVE, TO DISSOLVE.

RÉSOUÐ *re*.

IMPERATIVE.

resolve. résous, *sing.*
 Let us resolve.

résolvez, *plur.*
 résolvons.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense. *I* resolve, or *am* resolving.
Thou resolvest, *art* resolving.
He resolves, or *is* resolving.
We } resolve,
You } *are* resolving.
They }

Je ¹⁴résous²⁵.
Tu résous.
Il résout²⁶.
Nous résolvons.
Vous résolvez.
Ils résolvent¹⁸.

Je résolve².
Tu résolves²⁰.
Il résolve.
Nous résolvions.
Vous résolviez.
Ils résolvent¹⁸.

Imperfect tense. *I* } *was* resolving.
Thou }
He }
We }
You } *were* resolving.
They }

Je résolvais⁶.
Tu résolvais.
Il résolvait.
Nous résolvions.
Vous résolviez.
Ils résolvaient⁶.

Perfect tense. *I* }
Thou }
He } resolved,
We } *did* resolve.
You }
They }

Je résolus²⁶.
Tu résolus.
Il résolut²⁶.
Nous résolûmes.
Vous résolûtes.
Ils résolurent¹².

Je résolusse².
Tu résolusses.
Il résolût²⁶.
Nous résolussions.
Vous résolussiez.
Ils résolussent¹².

Future positive. *I* }
Thou }
He } *shll, will* resolve,
We } *be* resolving.
You }
They }

Je ¹⁴résoudr *ai*⁵.
Tu résoudr *as*²⁶.
Il résoudr *a*.
Nous résoudr *ons*.
Vous résoudr *ez*.
Ils résoudr *ont*²⁶.

Future conditional. *I* }
Thou }
He } *shd, wld* resolve,
We } *be* resolving.
You }
They }

Je ¹⁴résoudr *ais*⁶.
Tu résoudr *ais*.
Il résoudr *ait*²⁶.
Nous résoudr *ions*.
Vous résoudr *iez*.
Ils résoudr *aient*⁶.

GERUND.

PARTICIPLE.

resolving. }
 dissolving. } résolvant²⁵.

résolu. resolved, determined.
 résous. melted, dissolved.*

After the same manner as RÉSOUÐRE, are conjugated

ABSOUÐRE, to absolve, part. ABSOUS, absolved; and DISSOUÐRE, to dissolve, part. DISSOUS, dissolved.

N. B. These two verbs have no perfect tense.

* As, *Le soleil a resous le brouillard en pluie.* The sun has melted the mist into rain.

resolve, may resolve.

resolved, might resolve.

INFINITIVE.

To LAUGH.

RI *re*.

IMPERATIVE.

Laugh. RI *s*, *sing*.
Let us laugh.

RI *ez*, *plur*.
RI *ons*.

INDICATIVE.

Present tense. I laugh, or am laughing.
Thou laughest, art laughing.
He laughs, or is laughing.
We } laugh,
You } are laughing.
They }

Je³ *ri s²⁶.
Tu ri s.
Il ri t²⁶.
Nous ri ons.
Vous ri ez.
Ils ri ent¹⁸.

Imperfect tense. I } was laughing.
Thou }
He }
We } were laughing.
You }
They }

Je *ri ais⁵.
Tu ri ais.
Il ri ait²⁶.
Nous rions⁴.
Vous ryez.
Ils ri aient⁹.

Perfect tense. I }
Thou } laughed,
He } did laugh.
We }
You }
They }

Je *ri s²⁶.
Tu ri s.
Il ri t²⁶.
Nous ri mes.
Vous ri tes.
Ils ri rent¹³.

Future positive. I }
Thou }
He } shall, will laugh,
We } be laughing.
You }
They }

Je *rir ai⁵.
Tu rir as²⁶.
Il rir a.
Nous rir ons.
Vous rir ez.
Ils rir ont²⁶.

Fut. conditional. I }
Thou }
He } should, would laugh,
We } be laughing.
You }
They }

Je *rir ais⁶.
Tu rir ais.
Il rir ait²⁶.
Nous rir ions.
Vous rir iez.
Ils rir aient⁶.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Je *ri e².
Tu ri es²⁶.
Il ri e.
Nous rions⁴.
Vous ryez.
Ils ri ent¹².

laugh, may laugh.

Je *ri sse².
Tu ri sses.
Il ri t²⁶.
Nous ri ssions.
Vous ri ssiez.
Ils ri ssent¹².

laughed, might laugh.

GERUND.

Laughing. RI ant²⁶.

PARTICIPLE.

RI. Laughed.

After the same manner as RIRE, are conjugated

SOURIRE, to smile.

FRIRE, to fry, part. FRIT, fried.

N.B. FRIRE is used only in the 1st, 2d, and 3d person of the present of the indicative, je fris, tu fris, il frit; in the future, je frirai, tu friras, &c. and in the conditional, je frirais, tu frirais, &c.; the other tenses are formed with the verb FAIRE, and the infinitive of this verb; so, We fry, nous faisons frire; you fry, vous faites frire; they fry, ils font frire.

Fry this fish, these eggs, that meat. Faites frire ce poisson, ces aufs, cette viande.

* See note 4, page 2

INFINITIVE.

To FOLLOW.

SUIV *re*.

IMPERATIVE.

follow.

suis, *sing.*SUIV *ez, plur.*Let *us* follow.SUIV *ons.*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	<i>I</i> follow, or <i>am</i>	following ^g .	<i>Je</i> ³ suis ^{2g} .	<i>Je</i> suiv <i>e</i> ² .	follow, <i>may</i> follow
	<i>Thou</i> followest, <i>art</i>		<i>Tu</i> ²³ suis.	<i>Tu</i> suiv <i>es</i> ^{2g} .	
	<i>He</i> follows, or <i>is</i>		<i>Il</i> suit ^{2g} .	<i>Il</i> suiv <i>e</i> .	
	<i>We</i> } follow,		<i>Nous</i> suiv <i>ons</i> .	<i>Nous</i> suiv <i>ions</i> .	
	<i>You</i> } are following.		<i>Vous</i> suiv <i>ez</i> .	<i>Vous</i> suiv <i>iez</i> .	
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> suiv <i>ent</i> ^{1g} .	<i>Ils</i> suiv <i>ent</i> ^{1g} .		
Imperfect tense.	<i>I</i> } was following.		<i>Je</i> ²³ suiv <i>ais</i> ⁶ .		followed, <i>might</i> follow.
	<i>Thou</i> }		<i>Tu</i> suiv <i>ais</i> .		
	<i>He</i> }		<i>Il</i> suiv <i>ait</i> ^{2g} .		
	<i>We</i> } were following.		<i>Nous</i> suiv <i>ions</i> .		
	<i>You</i> }		<i>Vous</i> suiv <i>iez</i> .		
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> suiv <i>aient</i> ⁶ .			
Perfect tense.	<i>I</i> } followed,	did follow.	<i>Je</i> ²³ suiv <i>is</i> ^{2g} .	<i>Je</i> suiv <i>isse</i> ² .	
	<i>Thou</i> }		<i>Tu</i> suiv <i>is</i> .	<i>Tu</i> suiv <i>isses</i> .	
	<i>He</i> }		<i>Il</i> suiv <i>it</i> ^{2g} .	<i>Il</i> suiv <i>it</i> ^{2g} .	
	<i>We</i> }		<i>Nous</i> suiv <i>imes</i> .	<i>Nous</i> suiv <i>issions</i> .	
	<i>You</i> }		<i>Vous</i> suiv <i>ites</i> .	<i>Vous</i> suiv <i>issiez</i> .	
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> suiv <i>irent</i> ^{1g} .	<i>Ils</i> suiv <i>issent</i> ^{1g} .		
Future positive.	<i>I</i> } shall, will follow,	be following.	<i>Je</i> ²³ suivr <i>ai</i> ⁵ .		
	<i>Thou</i> }		<i>Tu</i> suivr <i>as</i> ^{2g} .		
	<i>He</i> }		<i>Il</i> suivr <i>a</i> .		
	<i>We</i> }		<i>Nous</i> suivr <i>ons</i> .		
	<i>You</i> }		<i>Vous</i> suivr <i>ez</i> .		
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> suivr <i>ont</i> ^{2g} .			
Fut. conditional.	<i>I</i> } should, would follow,	be following.	<i>Je</i> ²³ suivr <i>ais</i> ⁶ .		
	<i>Thou</i> }		<i>Tu</i> suivr <i>ais</i> .		
	<i>He</i> }		<i>Il</i> suivr <i>ait</i> ^{2g} .		
	<i>We</i> }		<i>Nous</i> suivr <i>ions</i> .		
	<i>You</i> }		<i>Vous</i> suivr <i>iez</i> .		
	<i>They</i> }	<i>Ils</i> suivr <i>aient</i> ⁶ .			

GERUND.

following.

SUIV *ant*^{2g}.

PARTICIPLE.

SUIV *i*.

followed

After the same manner as *SUIVRE*, are conjugated

S'ENSUIVRE, to follow from, i. e. a consequence.

POURSUIVRE, to pursue.

INFINITIVE.

To VANQUISH.

VAINC *re*.

IMPERATIVE.

vanquish. VAINC *s, sing.* vainquez, *plur.*
 Let us vanquish. vainquons.

INDICATIVE.

Present tense.
 I vanquish, or *am*
 Thou vanquishest, *art*
 He vanquishes, or *is*
 We } vanquish,
 You } are vanquishing.
 They }
Imperfect tense.
 I }
 Thou } was vanquishing.
 He }
 We } were vanquishing.
 You }
 They }
Perfect tense.
 I }
 Thou } vanquished,
 He } did vanquish.
 We }
 You }
 They }
Future positive.
 I }
 Thou } shall, will vanquish,
 He } be vanquishing.
 We }
 You }
 They }
Fut. conditional.
 I }
 Thou } should, would vanquish,
 He } be vanquishing.
 We }
 You }
 They }

vanquishing.
 Je^s vainc *s*²⁵.
 Tu¹⁹ vainc *s*.
 Il vainc *
 Nous vainquons.
 Vous vainquez. †
 Ils vainquent¹⁸.
 Je¹⁹ vainquais⁶.
 Tu vainquais. †
 Il vainquait²⁶.
 Nous vainquions.
 Vous vainquiez.
 Ils vainquaient⁶.
 Je¹⁹ vainquis²⁶.
 Tu vainquis. †
 Il vainquit²⁶.
 Nous vainquîmes.
 Vous vainquîtes.
 Ils vainquirent¹⁸.
 Je¹⁹ vaincr *ai*⁵.
 Tu vaincr *as*²⁶.
 Il vaincr *a*.
 Nous vaincr *ons*.
 Vous vaincr *ez*.
 Ils vaincr *ont*²⁶.
 Je¹⁹ vaincr *ais*⁶.
 Tu vaincr *ais*.
 Il vaincr *ait*²⁶.
 Nous vaincr *ions*.
 Vous vaincr *iez*.
 Ils vaincr *aient*⁶.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Je vainque †
 Tu vainques²⁶.
 Il vainque.
 Nous vainquions.
 Vous vainquiez.
 Ils vainquent¹⁸.
 Je vainquisse².
 Tu vainquisses.
 Il vainquît²⁶.
 Nous vainquissions.
 Vous vainquissiez.
 Ils vainquissent¹⁸.
may vanquish.
might vanquish.

GERUND.

vanquishing. vainquant²⁶.

PARTICIPLE.

vaincu. vanquished.

After the same manner as VAINCRE, is conjugated

CONVAINCRE, to convince.

* The 1st, 2d, and 3d person *singular* of the *present* of the *indicative*, are not much used.

† See *qu*, page 13.

INFINITIVE.

To live, to have Life.* VIV re.

IMPERATIVE.

Live. VIS, *sing.* VIV ez, *plur*
Let us live. VIV ons.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense.	I live.	Je ^s †vis ²⁶ .	Je viv e ² .	live, may live.			
	Thou livest.	Tu vis.	Tu viv es ²⁶ .				
	He lives.	Il vit ²⁶ .	Il viv e.				
	We } live.	Nous viv ons.	Nous viv ions.				
	You } They }	Vous viv ez. Ils viv ent ¹⁸ .	Vous viv iez. Ils viv ent ¹⁸ .				
Imperfect tense.	I } Thou } He } We } did live.	Je †viv ais ⁶ . Tu viv ais. Il viv ait ²⁶ . Nous viv ions. Vous viv iez̄. Ils viv aient ⁶ .					
	Perfect tense.	I } Thou } He } lived, We } did live.	Je vécu ^s . † Tu vécu ^s . Il vécu ^t ²⁶ . Nous vécu ^m es. Vous vécu ^t es. Ils vécu ^{er} ent ¹⁸ .	Je véusse ² . Tu véusses. Il véût ²⁶ . Nous véussions. Vous vécssez. Ils vécssent ¹⁸ .	lived, might live.		
		Future positive.	I } Thou } He } shall, We } will live.	Je †vivr ai ^s . Tu vivr as ²⁶ . Il vivr a. Nous vivr ons. Vous vivr ez. Ils vivr ont ²⁶ .			
			Fut. conditional.	I } Thou } He } should, We } wld live.	Je †vivr ais ⁶ . Tu vivr ais. Il vivr ait ²⁶ . Nous vivr ions. Vous vivr iez. Ils vivr aient ⁶ .		

GERUND.

Living. VIV ant²⁶.

PARTICIPLE.

vécu. Lived.

After the same manner as VIVRE, are conjugated

REVIVRE, to revive, to come to life again. SURVIVRE, to survive, to outlive

* To LIVE, meaning to dwell, is expressed by *demeurer* ; as,
We live in London, in town, in the country.

Nous demeurons à Londres, à la vil e, à la campagne.

† See note 4, page 2.

‡ See note 2, page 1.

A TABLE shewing, in one point of view, how to conjugate all the verbs in RE, both regular and irregular.*

Table with columns for verb forms: INFIN., GER., PART., INDIC., IMP., SUBJ., and various conjugations for verbs like ATTENDRE, BOIRE, CROIRE, ECRIRE, FAIRE, LIRE, PLAIRE, SUIVRE, APPRENDRE, CONNAITRE, DI, FEINDRE, INSTRUIRE, METTRE, RIRE, VIVRE, APPRENDRE, CONNAITRE, DIR, FEINDRE, INSTRUIRE, METTRE, RIRE, VIVRE.

The verbs CONCLURE, to conclude; COUDRE, to set alphabetical order amongst the verbs in RE MOUDRE, to grind; RESOUDRE, to resolve; TRAIRE, to milk; VAINCRE, to vanquish; which are not frequently used, have been left out of this table, in order to render it more convenient; they may be seen in their IMPERATIVE the same as the indicative

Some verbs which have only the *third person singular*, and sometimes the *third person plural* of their tenses in use, are called *impersonal*, though they would perhaps be more properly called *monopersonal*, i. e. verbs of *one person*; the most frequently used are the following:

INFINITIVE.

TONNER. ÉCLAIRER. PLEUVOIR. GELER. NEIGER. GRÈLER. VENTER.
To Thunder. To Lighten. To Ruin. To Freeze. To Snow. To Hail. To Blow.

INDICATIVE.

	<i>It</i> thunders.	<i>Il</i> tonne.
Present tense.	<i>It</i> lightens.	<i>Il</i> éclaire.
	<i>It</i> rains.	<i>Il</i> pleut.
	<i>It</i> freezes.	<i>Il</i> gèle.
	<i>It</i> snows.	<i>Il</i> neige.
	<i>It</i> hails.	<i>Il</i> grêle.
	The wind blows.	<i>Il</i> vente.
Imperfect tense.	<i>It did</i> thunder.	<i>Il</i> tonnait.
	<i>It did</i> lighten.	<i>Il</i> éclairait.
	<i>It did</i> rain.	<i>Il</i> pleuvait.
	<i>It did</i> freeze.	<i>Il</i> gelait.
	<i>It did</i> snow.	<i>Il</i> neigeait.
	<i>It did</i> hail.	<i>Il</i> grêlait.
Perfect tense.	The wind <i>did</i> blow.	<i>Il</i> ventait.
	<i>It</i> thundered.	<i>Il</i> tonna.
	<i>It</i> lightened.	<i>Il</i> éclaira.
	<i>It</i> rained.	<i>Il</i> plut.
	<i>It</i> froze.	<i>Il</i> gela.
	<i>It</i> snowed.	<i>Il</i> neigea.
Future positive.	<i>It</i> hailed.	<i>Il</i> grêla.
	The wind blew.	<i>Il</i> venta.
	<i>It will</i> thunder.	<i>Il</i> tonnera.
	<i>It will</i> lighten.	<i>Il</i> éclairera.
	<i>It will</i> rain.	<i>Il</i> pleuvra.
	<i>It will</i> freeze.	<i>Il</i> gelera.
Future conditional.	<i>It will</i> snow.	<i>Il</i> neigera.
	<i>It will</i> hail.	<i>Il</i> grêlera.
	The wind <i>will</i> blow.	<i>Il</i> ventera.
	<i>It would</i> thunder.	<i>Il</i> tonnerait.
	<i>It would</i> lighten.	<i>Il</i> éclairerait.
	<i>It would</i> rain.	<i>Il</i> pleuvrait.
<i>It would</i> freeze.	<i>Il</i> gèlerait.	
<i>It would</i> snow.	<i>Il</i> neigerait.	
<i>It would</i> hail.	<i>Il</i> grèlerait.	
The wind <i>would</i> blow.	<i>Il</i> venterait.	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Il</i> tonne.	<i>it</i> may thunder, &c.
<i>Il</i> éclaire.	
<i>Il</i> pleuve.	
<i>Il</i> gèle.	
<i>Il</i> neige.	
<i>Il</i> grêle.	
<i>Il</i> vente.	

<i>Il</i> tonnât.	<i>it</i> might thunder, &c.
<i>Il</i> éclairât.	
<i>Il</i> plût.	
<i>Il</i> gelât.	
<i>Il</i> neigeât.	
<i>Il</i> grêlât.	
<i>Il</i> ventât.	

Interrogatively.

Tonne-t-il? }
Éclaire-t-il? } does it thunder?
Pleut-il? }
Gèle-t-il? }
Neige-t-il? }
Grêle-t-il? }

Negatively.

Il ne tonne }
Il n' éclaire }
Il ne pleut }
Il ne gèle } pas.
Il ne neige }
Il ne grêle }

it does not thunder.

Interrogatively & Negatively

Ne tonne-t-il }
N' éclaire-t-il } does it not thunder?
Ne pleut-il }
Ne gèle-t-il } pas?
Ne neige-t-il }
Ne grêle-t-il }

INFINITIVE.

There BE. Y AVOIR.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Affirmatively.

<i>There is,</i>			
<i>There are</i>	Il y a.	Il y ait.	<i>there may be.</i>
<i>There was,</i>			
<i>There were</i>	Il y avait.		
<i>There was,</i>			
<i>There were</i>	Il y eût.		
<i>There will be</i>	Il y aura.		<i>there may not be.</i>
<i>There would be</i>	Il y aurait.		
<i>There is not,</i>			
<i>There are not</i>	Il n'y a pas.	Il n'y ait pas.	
<i>There was not,</i>			
<i>There were not</i>	Il n'y avait pas.		
<i>There was not,</i>			
<i>There were not</i>	Il n'y eût pas.	Il n'y eût pas.	
<i>There will not be</i>	Il n'y aura pas.		
<i>There would not be</i>	Il n'y aurait pas.		

Interrogatively.

<i>Is there,</i>	
<i>Are there?</i>	Y a-t-il?
<i>Was there,</i>	
<i>Were there?</i>	Y avait-il?
<i>Was there,</i>	
<i>Were there?</i>	Y eût-il?
<i>Will there be?</i>	Y aura-t-il?
<i>Would there be?</i>	Y aurait-il?
<i>Is there not,</i>	
<i>Are there not?</i>	N'y a-t-il pas?
<i>Was there not,</i>	
<i>Were there not?</i>	N'y avait-il pas?
<i>Was there not,</i>	
<i>Were there not?</i>	N'y eût-il pas?
<i>Will not there be?</i>	N'y aura-t-il pas?
<i>Would not there be?</i>	N'y aurait-il pas?

COMPOUND TENSES.

<i>There has been,</i>		
<i>There have been</i>	Il y a eu.	Il y ait eu.
<i>There had been</i>	Il y avait eu.	
<i>There had been</i>	Il y eût eu.	Il y eût eu.
<i>There will have been.</i>	Il y aura eu.	
<i>There wd have been .</i>	Il y aurait eu.	
<i>There has not been,</i>		
<i>There have not been.</i>	Il n'y a pas eu.	
<i>Has there been?</i>	Y a-t-il eu?	Has not there been? N'y a-t-il pas eu?

MUST.

FALLOIR.

The verb **MUST** is conjugated through its *different persons*; but its representative **FALLOIR** has only the *third PERSON singular* of each tense, with *Il* for nominative; then the *nominative* of **MUST** becomes the *nominative* of the *following* verb in french, which verb must be in the *present* of the *subjunctive* after *Il faut, Il faudra*; and in the *perfect*, after *Il fallait, Il fallut, Il faudrait*, as appears by the following example,

<i>I</i> must	} go out.	<i>Il faut</i>	} <i>que je sorte.</i>									
<i>Thou</i> must				} <i>que tu sortes.</i>								
<i>He</i> must					} <i>qu' il sorte.</i>							
<i>My brother</i> must						} <i>que mon frère sorte.</i>						
<i>We</i> must							} <i>que nous sortions.</i>					
<i>You</i> must								} <i>que vous sortiez.</i>				
<i>They</i> must	} <i>qu' ils sortent.</i>											
<i>for me</i>		} to go out, or	<i>Il fallait</i>	} <i>que je sortisse.</i>								
<i>for thee</i>					} that <i>I, thou,</i>				} <i>que tu sortisses.</i>			
<i>for him</i>						} <i>he, &c. should</i>				} <i>qu' il sortît.</i>		
<i>for my brother</i>							} go out.				} <i>que mon frère sortît.</i>	
<i>for us</i>								} <i>Il fallut</i>				} <i>que nous sortissions.</i>
<i>for you</i>	} <i>que vous sortissiez.</i>											
<i>for them</i>												
<i>for me</i>		} to go out, or	<i>Il faudra</i>	} <i>que je sorte.</i>								
<i>for thee</i>					} that <i>I</i> go out.				} <i>que tu sortes.</i>			
<i>for him</i>						} <i>qu' il sorte.</i>						
<i>for my brother</i>							} <i>que mon frère sorte.</i>					
<i>for us</i>								} <i>que nous sortions.</i>				
<i>for you</i>	} <i>que vous sortiez.</i>											
<i>for them</i>		} <i>qu' ils sortent.</i>										
<i>for me</i>			} to go out, or	<i>Il faudrait</i>	} <i>que je sortisse.</i>							
<i>for thee</i>						} that <i>I should</i>			} <i>que tu sortisses.</i>			
<i>for him</i>							} go out.			} <i>qu' il sortît.</i>		
<i>for my brother</i>								} <i>que mon frère sortît.</i>				
<i>for us</i>	} <i>Il faudrait</i>										} <i>que nous sortissions.</i>	
<i>for you</i>		} <i>que vous sortissiez.</i>										
<i>for them</i>			} <i>qu' ils sortissent.</i>									

Negatively.

<i>I</i> must not	} go out.	<i>Il ne faut pas</i>	} <i>que je sorte.</i>		
<i>Thou</i> must not				} <i>que tu sortes.</i>	
<i>He</i> must not					} <i>qu' il sorte.</i>
<i>My brother</i> must not					

Interrogatively.

<i>Must I</i>	} go out?	<i>Faut-il</i>	} <i>que je sorte?</i>		
<i>Must thou</i>				} <i>que tu sortes?</i>	
<i>Must he</i>					} <i>qu' il sorte?</i>
<i>Must my brother</i>					
<i>Must I not</i>	} go out?	<i>Ne faut-il pas</i>	} <i>que je sorte?</i>		
<i>Must thou not</i>				} <i>que tu sortes?</i>	
<i>Must he not</i>					} <i>qu' il sorte?</i>
<i>Must not my brother</i>					

MUST HAVE, meaning *To be in need* of a thing, is expressed thus :

<i>I</i> must have	} money, books; or, <i>I, thou, he, &c.</i> want money, books.	<i>Il</i> ME	} faut de l'argent, des livres.
<i>Thou</i> must have		<i>Il</i> TE	
<i>He</i> must have		<i>Il</i> LUI	
<i>We</i> must have		<i>Il</i> NOUS	
<i>You</i> must have		<i>Il</i> VOUS	
<i>They</i> must have		<i>Il</i> LEUR	
<i>My brother</i> must have			<i>Il</i> faut des livres à mon frère.

<i>It was necessary</i>	} for <i>me</i> for <i>thee</i> for <i>him</i> for <i>us</i> for <i>you</i> for <i>them</i>	} to have money, books; or, <i>I</i> wanted money, books.	<i>Il</i> ME	} fallait, or fallut de l'argent, des livres.
			<i>Il</i> TE	
			<i>Il</i> LUI	
			<i>Il</i> NOUS	
			<i>Il</i> VOUS	
			<i>Il</i> LEUR	

<i>It will be necessary</i>	} for <i>me</i> for <i>thee</i> for <i>him</i> for <i>us</i> for <i>you</i> for <i>them</i>	} to have money, books; or, <i>I</i> shall want money, &c.	<i>Il</i> ME	} faudra de l'argent, des livres.
			<i>Il</i> TE	
			<i>Il</i> LUI	
			<i>Il</i> NOUS	
			<i>Il</i> VOUS	
			<i>Il</i> LEUR	

<i>It wd be necessary</i>	} for <i>me</i> for <i>thee</i> for <i>him</i> for <i>us</i> for <i>you</i> for <i>them</i>	} to have money, books; or, <i>I</i> should want money, &c.	<i>Il</i> ME	} faudrait de l'argent, des livres.
			<i>Il</i> TE	
			<i>Il</i> LUI	
			<i>Il</i> NOUS	
			<i>Il</i> VOUS	
			<i>Il</i> LEUR	

The impersonal verb **TARDER**, *To long*, is also conjugated in the same manner as the above ;

<i>I</i> long	} to see her, to go there.	<i>Il</i> ME	} tarde de la voir, d'y aller.
<i>Thou</i> longest		<i>Il</i> TE	
<i>He</i> longs		<i>Il</i> LUI	
<i>We</i> long		<i>Il</i> NOUS	
<i>You</i> long		<i>Il</i> VOUS	
<i>They</i> long		<i>Il</i> LEUR	
<i>My brother</i> longs			<i>Il</i> tarde à mon frère de la voir.

<i>I</i> did long	} to see her, to go there.	<i>Il</i> ME	} tardait de la voir, d'y aller.
<i>Thou</i> didst long		<i>Il</i> TE	
<i>He</i> did long		<i>Il</i> LUI	
<i>We</i> did long		<i>Il</i> NOUS	
<i>You</i> did long		<i>Il</i> VOUS	
<i>They</i> did long		<i>Il</i> LEUR	

<i>I</i>	} longed, <i>did</i> long	} to see her, to go there.	<i>Il</i> ME	} tarda de la voir, d'y aller.
<i>Thou</i>			<i>Il</i> TE	
<i>He</i>			<i>Il</i> LUI	

<i>I</i>	} shall <i>will</i> long	} to see her, to go there.	<i>Il</i> ME	} tardera de la voir, d'y aller.
<i>Thou</i>			<i>Il</i> TE	
<i>He</i>			<i>Il</i> LUI	

I should long to see her, &c. *Il* ME tarderait de la voir

I.	1,	one.	* <i>Un, m. Une, f</i>
II.	2,	two.	<i>Deux.</i>
III.	3,	three.	<i>Trois. †</i>
IV.	4,	four.	<i>Quatre.</i>
V.	5,	five.	<i>Cinq.</i>
VI.	6,	six.	<i>Six.</i>
VII.	7,	seven.	<i>Sept.</i>
VIII.	8,	eight.	<i>Huit.</i>
IX.	9,	nine.	<i>Neuf.</i>
X.	10,	ten.	<i>Dix.</i>
XI.	11,	eleven.	<i>Onze.</i>
XII.	12,	twelve.	<i>Douze.</i>
XIII.	13,	thirteen.	<i>Treize.</i>
XIV.	14,	fourteen.	<i>Quatorze.</i>
XV.	15,	fifteen.	<i>Quinze.</i>
XVI.	16,	sixteen.	<i>Seize.</i>
XVII.	17,	seventeen.	<i>Dix-sept.</i>
XVIII.	18,	eighteen.	<i>Dix-huit.</i>
XIX.	19,	nineteen.	<i>Dix-neuf.</i>
XX.	20,	twenty.	<i>Vingt.</i>
XXI.	21,	twenty-one.	<i>Vingt et un.</i>
XXII.	22,	twenty-two.	<i>Vingt-deux.</i>
XXIII.	23,	twenty-three.	<i>Vingt-trois.</i>
XXIV.	24,	twenty-four.	<i>Vingt-quatre.</i>
XXV.	25,	twenty-five.	<i>Vingt-cinq.</i>
XXVI.	26,	twenty-six.	<i>Vingt-six.</i>
XXVII.	27,	twenty-seven.	<i>Vingt-sept.</i>
XXVIII.	28,	twenty-eight.	<i>Vingt-huit.</i>
XXIX.	29,	twenty-nine.	<i>Vingt-neuf.</i>
XXX.	30,	thirty.	<i>Trente.</i>
XXXI.	31,	thirty-one.	<i>Trente et un.</i>
XXXII.	32,	thirty-two, &c.	<i>Trente-deux, &c.</i>
XXXIX.	39,	thirty-nine.	<i>Trente-neuf.</i>
XL.	40,	forty.	<i>Quarante.</i>
XLI.	41,	forty-one.	<i>Quarante et un.</i>
XLII.	42,	forty-two, &c.	<i>Quarante-deux, &c.</i>
XLIX.	49,	forty-nine.	<i>Quarante-neuf.</i>
L.	50,	fifty.	<i>Cinquante.</i>
LI.	51,	fifty-one.	<i>Cinquante et un.</i>
LII.	52,	fifty-two, &c.	<i>Cinquante-deux, &c.</i>
LIX.	59,	fifty-nine.	<i>Cinquante-neuf.</i>
LX.	60,	sixty.	<i>Soixante.</i>
LXI.	61,	sixty-one, &c.	<i>Soixante et un, &c.</i>
LXIX.	69,	sixty-nine.	<i>Soixante-neuf.</i>
LXX.	70,	seventy.	<i>Soixante-dix.</i>
LXXI.	71,	seventy-one.	<i>Soixante-onze.</i>

* These words are both *Articles* and *Substantives*.

Articles when prefixed to a noun; as, *Un homme, Une femme; Un livre, Deux livres; Trois hommes; Quatre maisons; Cinq chevaux; Dix écus, &c.*

Substantives when preceded by an article; as, *un Deux; un Trois; un Quatre; le Deux le Trois, le Quatre; de janvier, de février, de cœur, de pique, &c. des Trois; des Quatre, &c.*

† The chapter on pronunciation contains rules which shew how to pronounce all these words.

LXXII.	72,	seventy-two.	<i>Soixante-douze.</i>
LXXIII.	73,	seventy-three.	<i>Soixante-treize.</i>
LXXIV.	74,	seventy-four.	<i>Soixante-quatorze.</i>
LXXV.	75,	seventy-five.	<i>Soixante-quinze.</i>
LXXVI.	76,	seventy-six.	<i>Soixante-seize.</i>
LXXVII.	77,	seventy-seven.	<i>Soixante-dix-sept.</i>
LXXVIII.	78,	seventy-eight.	<i>Soixante-dix-huit.</i>
LXXIX.	79,	seventy-nine.	<i>Soixante-dix-neuf</i>
LXXX.	80,	eighty.	<i>Quatre-vingt.</i>
LXXXI.	81,	eighty-one.	<i>Quatre-vingt-un.</i>
LXXXII.	82,	eighty-two.	<i>Quatre-vingt-deux.</i>
LXXXIII.	83,	eighty-three.	<i>Quatre-vingt-trois.</i>
LXXXIV.	84,	eighty-four.	<i>Quatre-vingt-quatre.</i>
LXXXV.	85,	eighty-five.	<i>Quatre-vingt-cinq.</i>
LXXXVI.	86,	eighty-six.	<i>Quatre-vingt-six.</i>
LXXXVII.	87,	eighty-seven.	<i>Quatre-vingt-sept.</i>
LXXXVIII.	88,	eighty-eight.	<i>Quatre-vingt-huit.</i>
LXXXIX.	89,	eighty-nine.	<i>Quatre-vingt-neuf.</i>
XC.	90,	ninety.	<i>Quatre-vingt-dix.</i>
XCI.	91,	ninety-one.	<i>Quatre-vingt-onze.</i>
XCII.	92,	ninety-two.	<i>Quatre-vingt-douze.</i>
XCIII.	93,	ninety-three.	<i>Quatre-vingt-treize.</i>
XCIV.	94,	ninety-four.	<i>Quatre-vingt-quatorze</i>
XCV.	95,	ninety-five.	<i>Quatre-vingt-quinze.</i>
XCVI.	96,	ninety-six.	<i>Quatre-vingt-seize.</i>
XCVII.	97,	ninety-seven.	<i>Quatre-vingt-dix-sept</i>
XCVIII.	98,	ninety-eight.	<i>Quatre-vingt-dix-huit.</i>
XCIX.	99,	ninety-nine.	<i>Quatre-vingt-dix-neuf</i>
C.	100,	a hundred.	<i>Cent.</i>
CI.	101,	a hundred & one.*	<i>Cent un.</i>
CII.	102,	a hundred & two, &c	<i>Cent deux, &c.</i>
CX.	110,	a hundred & ten.	<i>Cent dix.</i>
CXX.	120,	a hundred & twenty.	<i>Cent vingt.</i>
CC.	200,	two hundred.	<i>Deux cents.†</i>
CCL.	250,	two hundred & fifty.	<i>Deux cent cinquante.</i>
CCC.	300,	three hundred.	<i>Trois cents.</i>
CM.	900,	nine hundred.	<i>Neuf cents.</i>
M.	1000,	a thousand.‡	<i>Mille.</i>
C.	100,	one hundred.	<i>Un cent.</i>
CC.	200,	two hundred.	<i>Deux cents.</i>
M.	1000,	one thousand.	<i>Un mille.‡</i>
MM.	2000,	two thousand.	<i>Deux mille.</i>

* The article *A*, and the conjunction *And*, are omitted with these numbers in french.

† *Quatre vingt* and *Cent*, followed by a noun *plural*, require *s*; as, *Quatre vingts ans*, eighty years; *Deux cents hommes*, two hundred men; but not when they are followed by another number; as *Quatre vingt dix ans*; *Deux cent cinquante hommes*.

Observe also, that the *noun* which follows the number *One*, after another number, must be *singular* in french, though it is *plural* in english; as, *One and twenty years*. *Vingt et un an*. *One and thirty men*. *Trente et un homme*; but if the *noun* is followed by an adjective, the adjective must be *plural*; as, *Vingt et un an accomplis*. *Trente et un homme armés*.

‡ In the date of the year, *One* is omitted, and *Thousand* is spelt *Mil*, not *Mille*; so we write 1819, *Mil huit cent dix neuf*, not *Un mille huit cent dix neuf*.

From the foregoing numbers are formed the *adjectives of number* ;

1st,	the first.	le <i>Premier</i> , m. la <i>Première</i> , f.
2nd,	the second.	{ le <i>Second</i> , m. la <i>Seconde</i> , f. le or la <i>Deuxième</i> , m. and f.*
3rd,	the third.	le <i>Troisième</i> .
4th,	the fourth.	le <i>Quatrième</i> .
5th,	the fifth.	le <i>Cinquième</i> .
6th,	the sixth.	le <i>Sixième</i> .
7th,	the seventh.	le <i>Septième</i> .
8th,	the eighth.	le <i>Huitième</i> .
9th,	the ninth.	le <i>Neuvième</i> .
10th,	the tenth.	le <i>Dixième</i> .
11th,	the eleventh.	le <i>Onzième</i> , or l' <i>Onzième</i> .
12th,	the twelfth.	le <i>Douzième</i> .
13th,	the thirteenth.	le <i>Treizième</i> .
14th,	the fourteenth.	le <i>Quatorzième</i> .
15th,	the fifteenth.	le <i>Quinzième</i> .
16th,	the sixteenth.	le <i>Seizième</i> .
17th,	the seventeenth.	le <i>Dix-septième</i> .
18th,	the eighteenth.	le <i>Dix-huitième</i> .
19th,	the nineteenth.	le <i>Dix-neuvième</i> .
20th,	the twentieth.	le <i>Vingtième</i> .
21st,	the twenty-first.	le <i>Vingt et unième</i> .
22nd,	the twenty-second.	le <i>Vingt-deuxième</i> .
23rd,	the twenty-third.	le <i>Vingt-troisième</i> .
24th,	the twenty-fourth.	le <i>Vingt-quatrième</i> .
25th,	the twenty-fifth.	le <i>Vingt-cinquième</i> .
26th,	the twenty-sixth.	le <i>Vingt-sixième</i> .
27th,	the twenty-seventh.	le <i>Vingt-septième</i> .
28th,	the twenty-eighth.	le <i>Vingt-huitième</i> .
29th,	the twenty-ninth.	le <i>Vingt-neuvième</i> .
30th,	the thirtieth.	le <i>Trentième</i> .
31st,	the thirty-first.	le <i>Trent et unième</i> .
32nd,	the thirty-second, &c.	le <i>Trente-deuxième</i> , and so on, by adding <i>ième</i> , to the substantive numbers, page 176, 177.

Observe only, that in those ending in *e*, the *e* is left out; as, *Quatre*, *Quatrième*; *Douze*, *Douzième*; and in those ending in *f*, the *f* is changed into *v*, for softness of sound; as, *Neuf*, *Neuvième*; *Dix-neuf*, *Dix-neuvième*.

From the above adjectives are also formed the *numeral adverbs* ;

1stly,	firstly.	<i>Premièrement</i> .
2ndly,	secondly.	{ <i>Secondement</i> . <i>Deuxièmement</i> .
3rdly,	thirdly.	<i>Troisièmement</i> .
4thly,	fourthly.	<i>Quatrièmement</i> .
5thly,	fifthly.	<i>Cinquièmement</i> .
6thly,	sixthly.	<i>Sixièmement</i> ,
and so on, by adding <i>ment</i> to the above adjectives.		

* *Second* and *Deuxième* are used indiscriminately, when they are followed by a noun; as, *Le second*, or *Le deuxième jour*; *La seconde*, or *La deuxième semaine*; but after another number, *Deuxième* alone can be used; so we could not say, *Vingt second*; *Trente second*; we must say, *Vingt deuxième*; *Trente deuxième*, &c.

THE SYNTAX,
CONTAINING
THE GENERAL PRINCIPLES
OF
THE FRENCH LANGUAGE
WITH
PARTICULAR RULES
AND
EXCEPTIONS,
*NOT COMPRISED IN THE INTRODUCTION.**

THE FRENCH LANGUAGE, like most of the living languages, is composed of NINE different sorts of words, commonly known by the names of

NOUN,	PRONOUN,	PREPOSITION,
ARTICLE,	VERB,	CONJUNCTION,
ADJECTIVE,	ADVERB,	INTERJECTION.†

* Some of the general rules contained in the introduction are repeated in the syntax, because they are necessary to connect the different rules together. But each part must be considered as a distinct work, designed for different persons. The introduction is intended for children, and for persons who, not being accustomed to the study of languages, could not at once comprehend such a multiplicity of rules. The syntax, which includes all the rules which are necessary to a perfect knowledge of the language, is intended for the same persons, after they are sufficiently grounded in the introductory rules, and for persons of a comprehensive mind, who have no need of an introduction.

† Ever since the art of speaking has been reduced into a system, grammarians, and the philosophers who have written on the subject, have differed upon the parts, or different species of words of which it is composed. Some argue that there are but two, the NOUN and the VERB, and assert that the rest are only corruptions or abbreviations of these; others add the ARTICLE and the CONJUNCTION; others the PRONOUN, and so on to the INTERJECTION. It does not belong to a production of this kind to inquire into these different opinions; and I have adopted the most prevalent, because it has appeared to me, that whether they be *words*, or only *abbreviations of words*, there are NINE sorts, which are subject to *different* rules.

Those who are desirous to see ingenious dissertations on this subject, may read HARRIS'S *Hermes*, and TOOKE'S *Diversions of Purley*.

CHAP. I.

NOUN.

EVERY WORD is called a NOUN which names a *substance* or *being*, either real, as *man, house, tree, &c.*; or ideal, as *god, heaven, glory, &c.*

Nouns are distinguished into *proper* and *common*.

A noun *proper*, or *proper* name, is that which belongs only to *one being*; as, *John, the Thames, London, Paris, England, France, &c.**

A noun *common*, or *common* name, is that which belongs to *all beings* of the same kind; as, *man, woman, river, city, country, &c.*

N. B. In this class are comprised the abstract names of *virtue, vice, pleasure, pain, love, desire, fear, hatred, glory, honor*, and such like.

Two

* Though proper names should remain invariably the same in all languages, yet the French have given to the names of countries, and of some capital cities, names or terminations adapted to their own language; so, Asia is called *Asie*; Africa, *Afrique*; America, *Amérique*; England, *Angleterre*; Scotland, *Ecosse*; London, *Londres*; Spain, *Espagne*; Mexico, *Méxique*; Jamaica, *Jamaïque*; Italy, *Italie*; Tuscany, *Toscagne*; Sardinia, *Sardaigne*; Sicily, *Sicile*; Leghorn, *Livourne*; Mantua, *Mantoue*; Geneva, *Genève*; Genoa, *Gènes*; Switzerland, *Suisse*; Germany, *Allemagne*; Hungary, *Hongrie*; Bohemia, *Bohème*; Vienna, *Vienne*; Poland, *Pologne*; Warsaw, *Varsovie*; Craoow, *Cracovie*; Russia, *Russie*; Prussia, *Prusse*; Sweden, *Suède, &c.* for which no rule can be given; but as they are single words, and are generally found in the dictionaries, when they have been seen once or twice, they are easily retained.

The names of persons, derived from the living languages, do not vary; so, *For, Pitt, White, Brown*, are in french, *Fox, Pitt, White, Brown*, as in english; but the names of persons, derived from the greek and latin languages, generally change their terminations, agreeably to the following rules.

Names ending in *al, ar, or, is, os, on*, do not vary; as, *Annibal, Adherbal, Cæsar, Hamilcar, Mentor, Nestor, Adonis, Sésostris, Minos, Atropos, Damon, Solon, &c.* nor the names of men ending in *a*, as, *Numa, Nerva, Sylla, Agrippa, Dolabella*; except *Seneca*, which is *Sénéque*.

The finals *as* and *es*, are changed into *e*: as, *Pythagoras, Pythagore*; *Mecenas, Mécène*; *Eneas, Enée*; *Socrates, Socrate*; *Demosthenes, Demosthène, &c.*; except *Agésilus, Léonidas, Pélopidas, Phidias, Pythias, Pausanias, Epaminondas, Eudamidas, Calchas, Olympias, Cérés, Xerxes, Périclès*, and a few others not often met with.

The finals *us* and *ius*, are also generally changed into *e*; as, *Augustus, Auguste*; *Titus, Tite*; *Tiberius, Tibère*; *Julius Cæsar, Jule César*; *Tacitus, Tacite*; *Virgilius, Virgile*; *Horatius, Horace*; *Eolus, Eole*; *Ædipus, Oedipe*; except *Appius, Baccus, Brutus, Cincinnatus, Claudius, Cræsus, Cyrus, Darius, Decius, Dentatus, Gallus, Germanicus, Janus, Junius, Manlius, Marius, Ménénus, Métellus, Mutius, Papirius, Plautius, Pompilius, Porus, Pyrrhus, Remus, Romulus, Silvius, Valerius, Venus, Tullus*, and a few others not frequently met with; and *Coriolanus, Tarquinius*, which lose the finals *us, ius*; thus, *Coriolan, Tarquin*.

Nouns in *chus*, change *chus* into *que*; as, *Telemachus, Télémaque*; *Lysimachus, Lysimaque*; *Gracchus, Graque*; except *Antiochus*.

Nouns ending in *o* take the addition of *n*; as, *Cato, Caton*; *Cicero, Ciceron*; *Scipio, Scipion*; *Plato, Platon*; *Apollo, Apollon*; *Pluto, Pluton*; *Juno, Junon*; *Dido, Didon*; except *Calipso, Clio, Clotho, Sappho, Echo*.

The final *der* is changed into *dre*; as, *Alexander, Alexandre*; *Lysander, Lysandre*.

Names of women ending in *a*, change *a* into *e* mute; as, *Julia, Julie*; *Amelia, Amélie*; *Agrippina, Agrippine*; *Cleopatra, Cléopatre*; *Minerva, Minerve, &c.*

Those ending in *e, é*, retain their termination; as, *Cybele, Melpomene, Circé, Cloé, Daphné, Hébé, Thisbé*; except the following, in which the French do not sound the final *e*; *Ariadne, Euridice, Pénélope*.

Two things are to be considered in nouns ; the *gender* and the *number*.
The *gender* is the distinction between the *sexes*.

The french language admits of *two genders* only, the *masculine* and the *feminine*.

By *masculine* is meant the *male being* ; by *feminine*, the *female*.

The names of beings whose sex is unknown, and of those *inanimate* beings, commonly called *things*, which are of the *neuter gender* in english, are either *masculine*, or *feminine*, in french, according to custom.*

There

* The *difference of gender* is generally known by the *termination of the noun*.

Nouns of the following *Terminations* are
MASCULINE.

Nouns of the following *Terminations* are
FEMININE.

- A. un Opéra, *an opera* ; un Sopha, *a sopha* ;
du Quinquina, *peruvian bark*.
- AI sounded A ; as,
un Plat, *a dish* ; un Combat, *a battle*.
- B. du Plomb, *lead* ; le Radoub, *refitting* ;
un Rumb, *a point of the compass*.
- C. le Bec, *the beak* ; du Suc, *gravy* ,
du Porc, *pork* ; du Tabac, *tobacco*.
- D. du Lard, *bacon* ; du Fard, *paint* ;
un Regard, *a look* ; le Hasard, *chance*.
- É preceded by any letter but T ;
du Blé, *corn* ; un Pré, *a meadow* ;
un Congé, *a holiday* ; du Caffé, *coffee*.
Except l'Amitié, friendship ;
la Moitié, *the half* ; la Pitié, *pity*.
- ER sounded E ; as,
un Baiser, *a kiss* ; le Danger, *danger* ;
un Métier, *a trade* ; un Panier, *a basket*.
- AI. sounded É ; as,
un Geai, *a jay* ; un Balai, *a broom* ,
un Essai, *an essay* ; un Délai, *a delay*.
- AIT, ET sounded É ; as,
un Fait, *a fact* ; un Portrait, *a picture* ;
un Sujet, *a subject* ; un Objet, *an object*.
- F. un Nerf, *a sinew* ; un Œuf, *an egg* ;
du Bœuf, *beef* ; du Suif, *tallow*.
Except une Clef, a key ; la Soif, thirst ;
la Nef, *the body of a church*.
- G. le Rang, *rank* ; le Sang, *the blood* ;
un Étang, *a pond* ; un hareng, *a herring*.
- I. un Etui, *a case* ; un Défi, *a challenge* ;
un Lit, *a bed* : un Habit, *a coat*.
Except une Fourmi, an ant ; la Nuit, night.
- OI. un Envoi, *an invoice* ; un Convoi, *a convoy* ;
un Emploi, *an employ* ; le Doigt, *the finger*.
Except la Foi, faith ; la Loi, law.
- L. un Mal, *an evil* ; le Travail, *labour* ;
un Hôtel, *an hotel* ; le Sommeil, *sleep*.
- M. le Nom, *the name* ; le Parfum, *perfume* ;
du Thim, *thyme*.
Except la Faim, hunger

- TÉ. la Liberté, *liberty* ; la Santé, *health* ;
la Beauté, *beauty* ; la Bonté, *goodness* ;
la Majesté, *majesty* ; la Divinité, *divi-*
nity.
Except l'Eté, summer ; un Comté, a county ,
le Côté, *the side* ; un Pâsé, *a pie* ; un Comité,
a committee ; un Traité, *a treaty, a treatise* ;
du Thé, *some tea*.

There are *two* numbers, the *singular* and the *plural*.

A noun is *singular*, when we speak of *one being only*; as, a book, *un livre*; a house, *une maison*; a tree, *un arbre*; a ship, *un navire*, &c.

A noun

MASCULINE Terminations.

FEMININE Terminations.

- N.** All the terminations in **N** which are not **ION**, or **SON** soft, i. e. sounded **ZON**, viz.
- AN.** du Bran, *bran*; du Saffran, *saffron*.
- ANT,** **ENT** sounded **AN**; as, un Diamant, *a diamond*; un Présent, *a present*; le Vent, *the wind*. Except une Dent, *a tooth*.
- AIN.** du Pain, *bread*; un Bain, *a bath*. Exc. la Main, [the hand].
- IN,** **EIN** sounded **AIN**; as, du Vin, *some wine*; le Matin, *morning*; le Sein, *the bosom*; le Teint, *the complexion*. Except la Fin, *the end*.
- OIN.** le Soin, *care*; un Coin, *a corner*.
- IEN.** un Lien, *a tie*; du Bien, *wealth*.
- CON.** un Balcon, *a balcony*; un Flacon, *a decanter*.
- LON.** un Violon, *a violin*; un Papillon, *a butterfly*.
- SSON.** un Buisson, *a bush*; du Poisson, *fish*. Except la Moisson, *the harvest*; la Boisson, *drink*; une Chanson, *a song*.
- ÇON.** un Hameçon, *a fish-hook*; un Limaçon, *a snail*. Except une Leçon, *a lesson*; une Rançon, *a ransom*; la Façon, *the making*.
- TON.** un Bâton, *a stick*; un Bouton, *a button*.
- O.** un Echo, *an echo*; un Duo, *a duet*.
- OT** sounded **O**; as, un Mot, *a word*; un Complot, *a plot*; un Pot, *a pot*; un Gigot, *a leg of mutton*.
- EAU** sounded **O**; as, un Couteau, *a knife*; un Chapeau, *a hat*. Except l'Eau, *water*; la Peau, *the skin*.
- P.** un Cap, *a cape*; un Cep, *a stock of a vine*; un Champ, *a field*; le Galop, *the gallop*.
- Q.** un Cinq, *a five*; un Coq, *a cock*.
- R.** All the terminations in **R**, which are not **EUR**.
- AIR.** l'Air, *the air*; un Eclair, *a flash of lightning*. Except la Chair, *the flesh*.
- ER.** le Fer, *iron*; l'Enfer, *hell*. Except la Mer, *the sea*; une Cuiller, *a spoon*.
- IR.** le Désir, *desire*; le Plaisir, *pleasure*.
- OIR.** le Soir, *evening*; un Mouchoir, *a handkerchief*.
- OR.** l'Or, *gold*; un Trésor, *a treasure*.
- ORD** **ORT**, sounded **OR**; as, le Bord, *the border*; un Fort, *a fort*; le Sort, *fate*. Except la Mort, *death*.
- OUR.** le Jour, *the day*; un Tour, *a trick*. Except la Cour, *the court, the yard*; une Tour, *a tower*.
- ION.** une Action, *an action*; une Caution, *a bail*; une Portion, *a portion*. Except un Bastion, *a bastion*; un Crayon, *a pencil*; un Rayon, *a ray*; un Pion, *a man at drafts*; le Tallion, *retaliation*; un Scorpion, *a scorpion*; le Septentrion, *the north*; le Croupion, *the rump of fowls and birds*; un Million, *a million*.
- SON,** **ZON.** une Maison, *a house*; la Raison, *reason*; la Saison, *the season*. Except le Gazon, *turf*; du Poison, *poison*; un Tison, *a firebrand*; un Oison, *a gosling*; l'Horizon, *the horizon*; le Blason, *heraldry*.
- Except le Gazon, *turf*; du Poison, *poison*; un Tison, *a firebrand*; un Oison, *a gosling*; l'Horizon, *the horizon*; le Blason, *heraldry*.
- EUR.** la Peur, *fear*; la Chaleur, *heat*; une Fleur, *a flower*; la Couleur, *colour*. Except le Bonheur, *luck, happiness*; le Malheur, *misfortune*; l'Honneur, *honour*; le Déshonneur, *dishonour*; le Cœur, *the heart*; l'Equateur, *the equator*; l'Intérieur, *the interior*; l'Extérieur, *the exterior*. Except also the nouns in **EUR**, which belong only to persons; as, un Auteur, *an author*; un Docteur, *a doctor*; &c.
- See also, page 189, how some nouns feminine are formed from the masculine, in the same manner as adjectives, by changing the termination.

A noun is *plural* when we speak of *more than one*.

N. B. The plural is generally formed in french, as in english, by adding *s* to the singular ; as, *des livres*, books ; *des maisons*, houses, &c.

Nouns

MASCULINE Terminations.

- S. le Bras, *the arm* ; le Repos, *repose* ;
du Bois, *wood* ; le Succès, *success* ;
Except une Brebis, *a sheep* ; une Souris,
a mouse ; une Vis, *a screw* ; Fois, *time*.
- T. un Plat, *a dish* ; un Lit, *a bed* ;
le Vent, *the wind* ; un Accident, *an accident*.
Exe. une Part, *a share* ; une Forêt, *a forest* ;
la Nuit, *night* ; une Dot, *a dowery* ; une
Dent, *a tooth* ; la Mort, *death*.
- U. un Ecu, *a crown* ; un Fétu, *a straw*.
Except la Vertu, *virtue* ; une Tribu, *a tribe* ;
de la Glu, *bird-lime*.
- UT sounded *u* ; as,
le But, *the aim* ; le Scorbut, *the scurvy*.
- EU. le Feu, *fire* ; un Lieu, *a place*.
- OU. un Trou, *a hole* ; un Chou, *a cabbage*.
- X. un Faix, *a burthen* ; le Choix, *choice*.
Except la Paix, *peace* ; la Voix, *the voice* ;
une Noix, *nut* ; de la Poix, *pitch* ; une
Croix, *a cross* ; la Toux, *cough* ; une Per-
drix, *a partridge* ; une Faux, *a scythe*.

FEMININE Terminations.

From the above rules it appears that nouns ending with a consonant, or any vowel but *e* mute, are generally masculine ; but there is a great number of nouns ending in *e* mute, part of which are masculine, and part feminine, which can not be reduced to such certain rules.*

GENERAL RULES.

All NAMES of COUNTRIES ending with *e* mute are feminine ; as,
la France, *France* ; la Hollande, *Holland* ; l'Angleterre, *England* ; la Suisse, *Switzerland*, &c. except le Méxique, *Mexico*. Those ending with any other vowel, as *Canada*, *Chili*, *Pérou*, &c., or with a consonant, as *Denmark*, *Portugal*, *Japon*, &c. are masculine.

Êe
Ie.
Ue. All COMMON NAMES ending in *e* mute, preceded by another vowel, are feminine ; as,
une Epée, *a sword* ; une Armée, *an army* ; une Guinée, *a guinea* ; la Vie, *life* ; la Rue,
the street ; la Vue, *the sight* ; la Joie, *joy* ; la Joue, *the cheek* ; la Pluie, *rain*, &c.

Except le Foie, *the liver* ; un Incendie, *a conflagration* ; le Génie, *genius* ; le Messie,
the messiah ; un Parapluie, *an umbrella* ; un Trophée, *a trophy* ; un Pignée, *a pigny* ;
le Caducée, *caduceus* ; l'Hyménée, *hymen* ; un Mausolée, *a mausoleum* ; and nouns ending
in *GUE* and *QUE*, which are subject to a particular rule. See *GUE*, *QUE*.

PARTICULAR RULES.

- BE. There are *Thirty-four* nouns ending in *BE*, *Eleven* of which
are masculine ; the most commonly used are,
un Adverbe, *an adverb* ; un Proverbe, *a proverb* ;
un Cube, *a cube* ; un Tube, *a tube* ;
un Globe, *a globe* ; un Théorbe, *a theorb* ;
un Orbe, *an orb* ; un Verbe, *a verb* ;
- } *Twenty-three* other nouns end-
ing in *BE* are feminine.

* The discrimination between the genders of nouns is a difficulty which the learner finds hard to overcome. In order to attain it, he must consider the greatest number of words of each termination which are either masculine or feminine, as a general rule, and retain as many words of the exception as he can. Besides this, when he reads a french author, he must pay particular attention to the article which precedes each noun, and consider it as its necessary appendage. By these means the difficulty will insensibly lessen, and his mistakes will be but few. Not to overload his memory with a multiplicity of words, I have omitted in the list of nouns given a exceptions, those which are either obsolete or little used.

Nouns ending in *s* or *x* in the singular, are the same in the plural; as, *mon fils*, my son; *mes fils*, my sons; *une brebis*, a sheep; *des brebis*, sheep; *une voix*, a voice; *des voix*, voices; *une noix*, a nut; *des noix*, nuts.

Nouns

MASCULINE Terminations.

FEMININE Terminations.

CE There are *Three hundred* nouns ending in CE, *Thirty-four* of which are *masculine*; the most commonly used are,
 un Appendice, *an appendix*; un Indice, *an indication*;
 un Armistice, *an armistice*; le Négoce, *traffic*;
 un Artifice, *an artifice*; un Office, *an office*;
 un Auspice, *an auspice*; un Orifice, *an orifice*;
 un Bénédicte, *a benefit*; le Pouce, *the thumb*;
 un Calice, *a chalice*; un Préecipice, *a precipice*;
 le Caprice, *caprice*; le Préjudice, *injury*;
 un Cilice, *a hair-cloth*; un Sacrifice, *a sacrifice*;
 le Commerce, *commerce*; un Service, *a service*;
 le Délice, *delight*; le Silence, *silence*;
 un Edifice, *an edifice*; le Solstice, *the solstice*;
 un Exercice, *an exercise*; le Supplice, *punishment*,
 le Frontispice, *frontispiece*; le Vice, *vice*.

Two hundred and sixty-six other nouns ending in CE are feminine.

DE There are *Two hundred* nouns ending in DE, *Twenty-seven* of which are *masculine*; the most commonly used are,
 un Camarade, *a companion*; le Monde, *the world*;
 un Code, *a code*; un Période, *a period of time*;
 le Coude, *the elbow*; un Remède, *a remedy*;
 un Fluide, *a fluid*; un Sphéroïde, *a spheroid*;
 un Grade, *a degree*; un Subside, *a subsidy*;
 un Guide, *a guide*; le Suicide, *suicide*;
 un Mode, *a mode*; le Vide, *Vacuum*.

One hundred and seventy-three other nouns ending in DE are feminine.

FE. There are *Twenty* nouns ending in FE, PHE, *Eight* of which
 PHE. are *masculine*; they are,
 un Golfe, *a gulph*; un Parafe, *a paraph*;
 un Greffe, *a court register*; un Paragraphe, *a paragraph*;
 un Hiéroglyphe, *a hieroglyph*; un Triomphe, *a triumph*;
 un Logogriphe, *a riddle*; un Télégraphe, *a telegraph*;

Twelve other nouns ending in FE, PHE, are feminine.

GE. There are *Eighty* nouns ending in GE, *Thirty-two* of which
 are *masculine*; the most commonly used are,
 un ange, *an angel*; un Mensonge, *a lie*;
 un archange, *an archangel*; un Prestige, *a prestige*;
 le Change, *the change*; un Privilège, *a privilege*;
 un Cierge, *a taper*; un Prodige, *a prodigy*;
 un Collège, *a college*; un Rechange, *a change*;
 un Cortège, *a retinue*; un Refuge, *a refuge*;
 le Déluge, *the deluge*; un Sacrilège, *a sacrilege*;
 un Echange, *an exchange*; un Siège, *a seat, a siege*;
 un Eloge, *an encomium*; un Singe, *an ape*;
 du Liège, *cork*; un Songe, *a dream*;
 du Linge, *linen*; un Subterfuge, *a subterfuge*;
 le Manège, *riding school*; un Vertige, *a giddiness*;
 un Mélange, *a mixture*; un Vestige, *a track*.

Forty-eight other nouns ending in GE are feminine.

AGE. All nouns ending in AGE are *masculine*; as,
 un Avantage, *an advantage*; le Mariage, *marriage*;
 un Badinage, *a joke*; le Ménage, *housekeeping*;
 un Bocage, *a grove*; un Orage, *a storm*;
 le Courage, *courage*; un Ouvrage, *a work*;
 du Fromage, *some cheese*; le Rivage, *the shore*;
 le Jardinage, *gardening*; le Veuvage, *widowhood*;
 un Hermitage, *an hermitage*; le Visage, *the face, &c.*

Except une Cage, *a cage*; une Image, *an image*; la Nage, *swimming*; une Page, *a page*; la Plage, *a poetical word for sea*; la Rage, *rage*.

Nouns ending in *u* take *x* instead of *s* for the sign of the plural number ; as, *chapeau*, hat ; *chapeaux*, hats ; *chou*, cabbage ; *choux*, cabbages ; *lieu*, place ; *lieux*, places ; *feu*, fire ; *feux*, fires ; *jeu*, game ; *jeux*, games, &c.

Except

MASCULINE Terminations.

FEMININE Terminations.

GUE. There are *Thirty-five* nouns ending in GUE, *Twelve* of which are *masculine* ; the most commonly used are, un Catalogue, *a catalogue* ; un Dogue, *a bull-dog* ; le Décalogue, *the decalogue* ; un Orgue, *an organ* ; un Dialogue, *a dialogue* ; le Prologue, *the prologue* ;

} *Twenty-three* other nouns ending in GUE are *feminine*.

CHE. There are *One hundred* nouns ending in CHE, *Twelve* of which are *masculine* ; the most commonly used are, un Acrostiche, *an acrostic* ; un Panache, *a plume* ; le Coche, *the stage coach* ; du Ponche, *punch* ; un Dimanche, *a sunday* ; un Prêche, *a dissenting sermon* ; un Hémistiche, *an hemistich* ; un Reproche, *a reproach* ; un Manche, *a handle* ; un Tournebroche, *a jack* ; . . .

} *Eighty-eight* other nouns ending in CHE are *feminine*.
une Manche, *a sleeve*.

LE. There are *Four hundred* nouns ending in LE, *One hundred* of which are *masculine* ; the most commonly used are, un Aigle, *an eagle* ; un Angle, *an angle* ; un Article, *an article* ; un Asile, *an asylum* ; un Buffle, *a buffalo* ; un Câble, *a cable* ; le Capitole, *the capitol* ; le Centuple, *the centuple* ; un Cercle, *a circle* ; du Chèvre-feuille, *woodbine* ; le Chile, *the chyle* ; le Comble, *the top* ; un Concile, *a council* ; le Contrôle, *the control* ; un Couvercle, *a lid* ; le Crépuscule, *the twilight* ; un Crible, *a sieve* ; un Crocodile, *a crocodile* ; le Diable, *the devil* ; un Disciple, *a disciple* ; un Domicile, *a domicile* ; le Double, *the double* ; un Drôle, *a fellow* ; l'Évangile, *the gospel* ; un Exemple, *an example* ; du Girofle, *clove-spice* ; le Hâle, *the burning sun* ; un Intervalle, *an interval* ; un Libelle, *a libel* ; un Marouffe, *a scoundrel* ; un Merle, *a blackbird* ; le Meuble, *the furniture* ; un Mille, *a mile* ; un Miracle, *a miracle* ; un Modèle, *a model* ; un Monopole, *a monopoly* ; un Moule, *a mould* ; le Mufle, *the muzzle* ; un Muscle, *a muscle* ; un Obstacle, *an obstacle* ; un Ongle, *a nail* ; un Oracle, *an oracle* ; le Parallèle, *the parallel* ; un Pécule, *spare money* ; un Pendule, *a pendulum* ; . . . une Pendule, *a clock*.
le Peuple, *the people* ; un Poêle, *a stove* ; une Poêle, *a fryingpan*.
le Pôle, *the pole* ; un Portefeuille, *a portfolio* ; le Prémambule, *the preamble* ; un Quadrangle, *a quadrangle* ; le Quadrille, *quadril* ; le Quadruple, *quadruple* ; un Réceptacle, *a receptacle* ; un Rôle, *a roll, the part of an* [actor] ; le Sable, *the sand* ; un Saule, *a willow* ; le Scandale, *scandal* ; le Scrupule, *the scruple* ; du Siècle, *rye* ; un Siècle, *an age* ; le Symbole, *the symbol* ; le Souffle, *the breath* ; un Spectacle, *a spectacle* ; le Stile, *the style* ; le Tabernacle, *the tabernacle* ; un Temple, *a temple* ; le Trèfle, *trefoil* ; le Tremble, *the asp tree* ; le Triple, *the treble* ; le Trouble, *disturbance* ; un Vaudeville, *a ballad* ; un Vestibule, *a vestibule* ; un Vignoble, *a vineyard* ; un Violoncelle, *a violoncello* ; un Voile, *a veil* ; une Voile, *a sail*.
le Zèle, *the zeal*.

} *Three hundred* other nouns ending in LE are *feminine*.

Except *clou*, nail; *bijou*, jewel; *fou*, mad; *filou*, sharper; *trou*, hole; *sou*, penny; *matou*, ram cat; and *individu*, individual; which require *s* for their plural, *clous*, nails; *bijous*, jewels; *fous*, mad people; *filous*, &c.

Nouns

MASCULINE Terminations.

FEMININE Terminations.

ME. There are *One hundred and seventy-two* nouns ending in ME, *Forty-three* of which are feminine; the most commonly used are,

One hundred and twenty-nine other nouns ending in ME are masculine.

l' Ame, <i>the soul</i> ;	la Gourme, <i>the strangles</i> ;
une Arme, <i>an arm</i> ;	un Idiome, <i>an idiom</i> ;
la Brume, <i>the fog</i> ;	la Lame, <i>the blade</i> ;
la Cime, <i>the top</i> ;	une Larme, <i>a tear</i> ;
la Coutume, <i>the custom</i> ;	la Légitime, <i>a child's portion</i> ;
la Crème, <i>cream</i> ;	une Lime, <i>a file</i> ;
la Dîme, <i>the tithe</i> ;	une Maxime, <i>a maxim</i> ;
l' Ecume, <i>the foam</i> ;	la Paume, <i>the palm, tennis</i> ;
une Enclume, <i>an anvil</i> ;	une Plate-forme, <i>a platform</i> ;
une Enigme, <i>an enigma</i> ;	une Plume, <i>a pen</i> ;
une Epigramme, <i>an epigram</i> ;	une Pomme, <i>an apple</i> ;
l' Escrime, <i>fencing</i> ;	la Prime, <i>the prime</i> ;
l' Estime, <i>esteem</i> ;	une Rame, <i>an oar, a ream</i> ;
une Ferme, <i>a farm</i> ;	la Réforme, <i>the reform</i> ;
la Flamme, <i>the flame</i> ;	la Rime, <i>the rhyme</i> ;
la Forme, <i>the form</i> ;	une Somme, <i>a sum</i> ;
la Gamme, <i>the gamut</i> ;	la Trame, <i>the thread</i> ;
la Gomme, <i>gum</i> ;	une Victime, <i>a victim</i> .

NE. There are *Two hundred and forty-six* nouns in NE, *Thirty*

of which are masculine; the most commonly used are,

de l' Antimoine, <i>antimony</i> ;	le Jéûne, <i>fasting</i> ;
un Aune, <i>an elder</i> ;	un Organe, <i>an organ</i> ;
l' Automne, <i>autumn</i> ;	le Patrimoine, <i>patrimony</i> ;
le Capricorne, <i>the capricorn</i> ;	un Peigne, <i>a comb</i> ;
un Cerne, <i>a magical ring</i> ;	le Pêne, <i>the bolt of a lock</i> ;
un Chêne, <i>an oak</i> ;	un Pentagone, <i>a pentagon</i> ;
un Cygne, <i>a swan</i> ,	un Phénomène, <i>a phenomenon</i> ;
un Cône, <i>a cone</i> ;	un Polygone, <i>a polygon</i> ;
le Crâne, <i>the skull</i> ;	un Prône, <i>a sermon</i> ;
un Décagone, <i>a decagon</i> ;	le Règne, <i>the reign</i> ;
un Domaine, <i>a domain</i> ;	un Renne, <i>a rein deer</i> ;
un Faune, <i>a faun</i> ;	un Signe, <i>a sign</i> ;
du Filigrane, <i>filligram</i> ;	un Trône, <i>a throne</i> .
un Frêne, <i>an ash tree</i> ;	

Two hundred and sixteen other nouns ending in NE are feminine

PE. There are *Sixty-eight* nouns ending in PE, *Twelve* of which are masculine; the most commonly used are,

un Groupe, <i>a group</i> ;	un Participe, <i>a participle</i> ;
un Horoscope, <i>a horoscope</i> ;	un Polype, <i>a polypus</i> ;
du Jaspe, <i>jasper</i> ;	un Principe, <i>a principle</i> ;
un Microscope, <i>a microscope</i> ;	un Télescope, <i>a telescope</i> .

Fifty-six other nouns ending in PE are feminine.

QUE. There are *One hundred* nouns ending in QUE, *Thirty-four* of which are masculine; the most commonly used are,

un Asterisque, <i>an asterisk</i> ;	le Panégirique, <i>panegyric</i> ;
un Cantique, <i>a canticle</i> ;	le Pentateuque, <i>the pentateuch</i> ;
un Casque, <i>a cask</i> ;	un Portique, <i>a portico</i> ;
un Caustique, <i>a caustic</i> ;	le Risque, <i>the risk</i> ;
un Cirque, <i>a circus</i> ;	un Soliloque, <i>a soliloquy</i> ;
un Disque, <i>a disk</i> ;	un Spécifique, <i>a specific</i> ;
un Emétique, <i>an emetic</i> ;	le Tropicque, <i>the tropick</i> ;
un Obélisque, <i>an obelisk</i> ;	le Viatique, <i>viaticum</i> ;
un Manque, <i>a want</i> ;	le Zodiaque, <i>the zodiac</i> .
un Masque, <i>a mask</i> ;	

Sixty-six other nouns ending in QUE are feminine.

Nouns ending in *al, ail*, change *l* or *il* into *ux* for the plural; as, *mal, evils*; *maux, evils*; *cheval, horse*; *chevaux, horses*; *canal, canal*; *canaux, canals*; *travail, labour*; *travaux, labours*.

Except

MASCULINE Terminations.

FEMININE Terminations.

RE. There are Six hundred and thirty-two nouns ending in RE, Two hundred and twenty-three of which are masculine; the most commonly used are,

- un Adultère, an adultery;
- l' Albâtre, alabaster;
- l' Ambre, amber;
- un Amphithéâtre, an amphitheatre;
- un Anniversaire, an anniversary;
- un Antre, a den;
- un Arbre, a tree;
- un Artère, an artery;
- un Astre, a star;
- l' Atmosphère, the atmosphere;
- un Atre, an hearth;
- un Auditoire, an auditory;
- un Augure, an omen;
- du Babeurre, buttermilk;
- du Beurre, butter;
- un Baromètre, a barometer;
- le Bien-être, happy state;
- un Cadavre, a corpse;
- un Cadre, a frame;
- le Calibre, the bore;
- du Camphre, camphire;
- un Cancré, a crab;
- un Candélabre, a chandelier;
- le Caractère, the character;
- un Cédre, a cedar;
- le Centre, the centre;
- un Chancre, a shanker;
- du Chanvre, hemp;
- un Chapitre, a chapter;
- un Chef-d'œuvre, a masterpiece;
- un Chiffre, a figure;
- du Cidre, cider;
- un Cilindre, a cylinder;
- un Cimetière, a cimeter;
- un Cimetière, a church yard;
- un Cintre, an arch;
- un Clysère, a glister;
- un Coffre, a chest;
- un Commentaire, a commentary;
- un Concombre, a cucumber;
- un Congre, a conger;
- un Corollaire, a corollary;
- le Contraire, the contrary;
- un Corsaire, a corsair;
- du Cuivre, copper;
- le Décombre, the rubbish;
- le Délire, delirium;
- un Dépositaire, a depositary;
- le Derrière, the back part;
- un Désastre, a disaster;
- le Désordre, the disorder;
- le Diamètre, the diameter;
- un Dictionnaire, a dictionary;

- le Directoire, the directory;
- un Douaire, a dowery;
- un Empire, an empire;
- un Emplâtre, a plaster;
- l' Equilibre, the equilibrium;
- un Etre, a being;
- un Exemple, a copy of a book;
- un Fiacre, a hackney coach;
- un Fife, a fife;
- un Formulaire, a formulary;
- du Genièvre, juniper;
- le Genre, the gender;
- du Gingembre, ginger;
- un Gouffre, a gulf;
- un Havre, a harbour;
- l' Hémisphère, the hemisphere;
- un Hêtre, a beech tree;
- un Inventaire, an inventory;
- un Interrogatoire, an interrogatory;
- de l'Ivoire, ivory;
- un Laboratoire, a laboratory;
- du Lierre, ivy;
- un Lièvre, a hare;
- un Livre, a book;
- le Lustre, the lustre;
- un Luminaire, a luminary;
- le Maigre, the lean;
- du Marbre, marble;
- le Martyre, martyrdom;
- un Massacre, a massacre;
- un Membre, a limb;
- un Mémoire, a memorial;
- du Mercure, mercury;
- un Météore, a meteor;
- un Meurtre, a murder;
- le Ministère, the ministry;
- un Mystère, a mystery;
- un Monastère, a monastery;
- un Monstre, a monster;
- un Murmure, a murmur;
- du Nacre, mother of pearl;
- un Navire, a ship;
- le Nécessaire, the necessaries;
- du Nitre, nitre;
- un Nombre, a number;
- un Observatoire, an observatory;
- un Opprobre, a reproach;
- un Orchestre, an orchestre;
- un Ordinaire, an ordinary;
- un Ordre, an order;
- le Parterre, the pit of a playhouse;
- un Pâtre, a herdsman;
- un Phare, a lighthouse;
- du Phosphore,

une Livre, a pound.

Four hundred and nine other nouns ending in RE are feminine.

la Mémoire, memory

Except *bal*, ball; *détail*, detail; *épouvantail*, bugbear; *évantail*, fan; *gouvernail*, rudder; *portail*, portal; *sérail*, seraglio; the plural of which is formed by adding *s* to the singular; *bals*, balls; *détails*, details; *épouvantails*

MASCULINE Terminations.

FEMININE Terminations.

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| <p>RE. du Phosphore, <i>phosphorus</i> ;
 du Plâtre, <i>plaster</i> ;
 du Poivre, <i>pepper</i> ;
 un Pôre, <i>a pore</i> ;
 les Préliminaires, <i>preliminaries</i> ;
 un Presbîtere, <i>a parsonage house</i> ;
 un Promontoire, <i>a promontory</i> ;
 un Pupitre, <i>a desk</i> ;
 le Purgatoire, <i>purgatory</i> ;
 un Réfécatoire, <i>an eatingroom</i> ;
 un Registre, <i>a register</i> ;
 un Repaire, <i>a den</i> ;
 un Réverbère, <i>a reflector</i> ;
 un Sabre, <i>a sabre</i> ;
 le Sacre, <i>the coronation</i> ;
 du Salpêtre, <i>saltpetre</i> ;
 un Sanctuaire, <i>a sanctuary</i> ;
 un Sceptre, <i>a sceptre</i> ;
 un Secrétaire, <i>a secretary</i> ;
 un Séminaire, <i>a seminary</i> ;
 un Sépulcre, <i>a sepulchre</i> ;
 un Séquestre, <i>a sequestration</i> ;</p> | <p>le Sommaire, <i>the compendium</i> ;
 du Souffre, <i>brimstone</i> ;
 du Sucre, <i>sugar</i> ;
 un Tertre, <i>a hillock</i> ;
 un Territoire, <i>a territory</i> ;
 un Théâtre, <i>a theatre</i> ;
 un Thermomètre, <i>a thermometer</i> ;
 un Timbre, <i>a clock bell</i> ;
 un Tire-bourre, <i>screw of a ramrod</i> ;
 un Titre, <i>a title</i> ;
 le Tonnerre, <i>thunder</i> ;
 un Ulcère, <i>an ulcer</i> ;
 le Ventre, <i>the belly</i> ;
 un Vertèbre, <i>a vertebra</i> ;
 un Verre, <i>a glass</i> ;
 un Vésicatoire, <i>a blister</i> ;
 du Vinaigre, <i>vinegar</i> ;
 un Vocabulaire, <i>a vocabulary</i> ;
 un Vomitoire, <i>a vomit</i> ;
 le Vulgaire, <i>the vulgar</i> ;
 un Vulnéraire, <i>a vulnerary</i>.</p> | <p>} Four hundred and
 nine other nouns
 ending in RE are
 feminine.</p> |
| <p>SE. There are <i>Two hundred and fifty</i> nouns ending in SE, <i>Fourteen</i> of which are <i>masculine</i> ; the most commonly used are,
 l' Aïse, <i>ease</i> ;
 un Carosse, <i>a coach</i> ;
 un Colosse, <i>a colossus</i> ;
 un Diocèse, <i>a diocess</i> ;
 le Malaise, <i>uneasiness</i> ;</p> | <p>un Narcisse, <i>a narcissus</i> ;
 le Parnasse, <i>parnassus</i> ;
 un Thyrsé, <i>a thyrsis</i> ;
 un Trapèze, <i>a trapezium</i> ;
 un Vase, <i>a vessel</i>.</p> | <p>} Two hundred
 and thirty-six other
 nouns ending in SE
 are feminine.</p> |
| <p>TE. There are <i>Three hundred and seventy-five</i> nouns in TE, <i>Thirty-nine</i> of which are <i>masculine</i> ; the most commonly used are,
 un Acte, <i>an act</i> ;
 un Antidote, <i>an antidote</i> ,
 un Arbuste, <i>a shrub</i> ;
 un Aromate, <i>an aromatic</i> ;
 un Automate, <i>an automaton</i> ;
 un Buste, <i>a bust</i> ;
 un Cassetête, <i>a puzzlebrain</i> ;
 un Ceste, <i>a cestus</i> ;
 un Compte, <i>an account</i> ;
 un Conte, <i>a tale</i> ;
 un Contraste, <i>a contrast</i> ;
 le Culte, <i>the worship</i> ;
 un Décompte, <i>a discount</i> ;
 le Démentite, <i>demerit</i> ;
 le Doute, <i>the doubt</i> ;
 un Entr'acte, <i>an interlude</i> ;
 l' Escompte, <i>the discount</i> ;
 le Faîte, <i>the top</i> ;
 le Faste, <i>pomp</i> ;</p> | <p>un Geste, <i>a gesture</i> ;
 un Gîte, <i>the seat of a hare</i> ;
 un Inceste, <i>an incest</i> ;
 un Insecte, <i>an insect</i> ;
 un Labyrinthe, <i>a labyrinth</i> ;
 un Manifeste, <i>a manifesto</i> ;
 un Mécompte, <i>a misreckoning</i> ;
 le Mérite, <i>merit</i> ;
 un Myrte, <i>a myrtle</i> ;
 l' Omoplate, <i>the omoplate</i> ;
 un Pacte, <i>a pact</i> ;
 un Poste, <i>a station</i> ;
 un Précepte, <i>a precept</i> ;
 un Prétexte, <i>a pretext</i> ;
 le Reste, <i>the rest</i> ;
 un Squelette, <i>a skeleton</i> ;
 le Texte, <i>the text</i> ;
 un Tirebotte, <i>a bootjack</i> ;
 le Tumulte, <i>tumult</i>.</p> | <p>} Three hundred
 and thirty-six other
 nouns ending in TE
 are feminine.
 la Poste, <i>post office</i>.</p> |
| <p>NE. There are <i>Forty-two</i> nouns ending in VE, <i>Four</i> of which are <i>masculine</i>,
 un Conclave, <i>a conclave</i> ;
 un Fleuve, <i>a river</i> ;</p> | <p>un Glaive, <i>a sword</i> ;
 un Rêve, <i>a dream</i>.</p> | <p>} Thirty-eight other
 nouns ending in VE
 are feminine.</p> |

épouvantails, bugbears; *éventails*, fans; *gouvernails*, rudders; *portails*, portals; *sérails*, seraglios; and *bétail*, cattle, the plural of which is *bestiaux*.

MASCULINE Terminations.

FEMININE Terminations.

XE. There are *Ten* nouns ending in XE, *Five* of which are *masculine*.

un Axe, <i>an axis</i> ;	un Paradoxe, <i>a paradox</i> ;	} The other <i>Five</i> nouns ending in XE are <i>feminine</i> .
l' Equinoxe, <i>the equinox</i> ;	le Sexe, <i>the sex</i> ;	
le Luxe, <i>luxury</i> ;		

ZE. There are *Two* nouns ending in ZE, *One* of which is *masculine*, viz. du Bronze, *bronze*. *One fem. viz.* de la Gâze, *gauze*.

Some nouns *feminine* are formed in the same manner as the *feminine* of *adjectives*, by adding *e* mute to the *masculine*, or by changing the *termination*; these are;

1st. The nouns denoting *trade, profession, business, &c.* as,

un Acteur,	<i>an actor</i> ;	une Actrice,	<i>an actress</i> .
un Berger,	<i>a shepherd</i> ;	une Bergère,	<i>a shepherdess</i> .
un Boucher,	<i>a butcher</i> ;	une Bouchère,	<i>a female butcher</i> .
un Boulanger,	<i>a baker</i> ;	une Boulangère,	<i>a female baker</i> .
un Comédien,	<i>a player</i> ;	une Comédienne,	<i>a female player</i> .
un Cuisinier,	<i>a cook</i> ;	une Cuisinière,	<i>a female cook</i> .
un Epicier,	<i>a grocer</i> ;	une Epicière,	<i>a female grocer</i> .
un Fermier,	<i>a farmer</i> ;	une Fermière,	<i>a female farmer</i> .
un Marchand,	<i>a dealer</i> ;	une Marchande,	<i>a female dealer</i> .
un Ouvrier, &c.	<i>a workman</i> ;	une Ouvrière,	<i>a workwoman</i> .

2d. The following, as being the most frequently used;

un Amant,	<i>a lover</i> ;	une Amante,	<i>she who loves</i> .
un Ami,	<i>a male friend</i> ;	une Amie,	<i>a female friend</i> .
un Chat,	<i>a male cat</i> ;	une Chatte,	<i>a female cat</i> .
un Chien,	<i>a dog</i> ;	une Chienne,	<i>a bitch</i> .
un Chanteur,	<i>a male singer</i> ;	une Chanteuse,	<i>a female singer</i> .
un Citoyen,	<i>a citizen</i> ;	une Citoyenne,	<i>a citizeness</i> .
un Compagnon,	<i>a male companion</i> ;	une Compagne,	<i>a female companion</i> .
un Cousin,	<i>a male cousin</i> ;	une Cousine,	<i>a female cousin</i> .
un Danseur,	<i>a male dancer</i> ;	une Danseuse,	<i>a female dancer</i> .
un Diable,	<i>a male devil</i> ;	une Diablesse,	<i>a female devil</i> .
un Ecolier,	<i>a male scholar</i> ;	une Ecolière,	<i>a female scholar</i> .
un Epoux,	<i>a husband</i> ;	une Epouse,	<i>a wife</i> .
un Héritier,	<i>an heir</i> ;	une Héritière,	<i>an heiress</i> .
un Héros,	<i>a hero</i> ;	une Héroïne,	<i>a heroine</i> .
un Hôte,	<i>a landlord</i> ;	une Hôtesse,	<i>a landlady</i> .
un Ivrogne,	<i>a drunken man</i> ;	une Ivrognesse,	<i>a drunken woman</i> .
un Juif,	<i>a jew</i> ;	une Juive,	<i>a jewess</i> .
un Lapin,	<i>a buck rabbit</i> ;	une Lapine,	<i>a doe rabbit</i> .
un Lévrier,	<i>a greyhound</i> ;	une Lévrète,	<i>a greyhound bitch</i> .
un Lion,	<i>a lion</i> ;	une Lionne,	<i>a lioness</i> .
un Loup,	<i>a male wolf</i> ;	une Louve,	<i>a female wolf</i> .
le Maître,	<i>the master</i> ;	la Maîtresse,	<i>the mistress</i> .
le Marié,	<i>the bridegroom</i> ;	la Mariée,	<i>the bride</i> .
un Menteur,	<i>a man who lies</i> ;	une Menteuse,	<i>a woman who lies</i> .
un Orphelin,	<i>a male orphan</i> ;	une Orpheline,	<i>a female orphan</i> .
un Parent,	<i>a male relation</i> ;	une Parente,	<i>a female relation</i> .
un Paysan,	<i>a countryman</i> ;	une Paysanne,	<i>a countrywoman</i> .
un Prisonnier,	<i>a male prisoner</i> ;	une Prisonnière,	<i>a female prisoner</i> .
un Sultan,	<i>a sultan</i> ;	une Sultane,	<i>a sultana</i> .
un Tigre,	<i>a tyger</i> ;	une Tigresse,	<i>a tygress</i> .
un Tuteur,	<i>a male guardian</i> ;	une Tutrice,	<i>a female guardian</i> .
un Veuf,	<i>a widower</i> ;	une Veuve,	<i>a widow</i> .
un Voisin,	<i>a male neighbour</i> ;	une Voisine,	<i>a female neighbour</i> .

PARTICULAR RULES.

PROPER NAMES.

The NAMES of PERSONS and PLACES, i. e. of cities, towns, villages, &c. ⁴ are used in french as in english, *without* any of the signs called *article*; as,

I have seen	Cæsar,	J'ai vu	Cæsar, (a)
	Rome.		Rome.
The statue	of Cæsar,	La statue DE	Cæsar,
	at Rome.		à Rome. (b)

But the NAMES of COUNTRIES and PROVINCES which are used *without* ⁵ an article in english, require, in french, the *definite* article LE, LA, LES; DU, de LA, DES; AU, à LA, AUX, the same as common names; ex.

I have seen	France,	J'ai vu LA	France,
	Italy.		L' Italie.
The beauties	of France,	Les beautés de LA	France,
	of Italy.		de L' Italie.

It belongs to France, &c. *Il appartient à LA France, &c. (c)*

Yet the NAMES of COUNTRIES and PROVINCES are used *without the* ⁶ *article*, when they come after verbs denoting *dwelling* or *movement*; such as, TO BE *in*, TO LIVE *in*, TO GO *to*, TO COME *from*.

In these instances, *IN*, *TO*, are expressed by *EN*, and *FROM* by *DE*; as,

I am going	to France,	Je vais EN	France,
	to Italy.		EN Italie.
I have been	in France	J'ai été EN	France,
	in Italy.		EN Italie.
I come	from France,	Je viens EN	France,
	from Italy.		D' Italie. (d)

(a) Some names of persons, derived from common names, such as, *Le Brun, Le Blanc, Le Noir, La Porte, La Grange, La Fontaine, &c.* are always preceded by an article, but that article is considered as a syllable of the name, and never varies.

(b) Except the *Caire, Cairo*; le *Catelet, la Chapelle, la Charité, la Ferté, la Flèche, le Havre, la Havanne, Havannah*; la *Haye*, the *Hague*; la *Hogue, le Mans, la Mecque, Mecca*; le *Plessis, le Pui, le Quenoi, la Rochelle*, which require the definite article, for we say, *Je viens du Havre. I come from Havre. Je vais à la Rochelle. I am going to Rochelle.*

(c) Some names of countries, which take their name from their capital city, such as, *Alger, Algiers*; *Avignon, Gènes, Genoa*; *Genève, Geneva*; *Florence, Maroc, Morocco*; *Naples, Orange, Tunis, Tripoli, Venise*; or from the name of some person; as, *St. Domingue, St. Domingo*; *St. Vincent, &c.* do not require the article.

(d) From this rule must be excepted the countries discovered by the navigators, and some countries in *Asia* and *Africa*, which are never used without the article. The most essential to be known, on account of their being frequented by the Europeans, are

P' Archipel,	Archipelago.	la Floride,	Florida.	le Mississipi,	Mississippi.
les Barbades,	Barbadoes.	la Grénude,	Grenada	le Mogol,	Mogul Emp.
le Bengal,	Bengal.	la Guadeloupe,	Guadeloupe.	ies Moluques,	Moluccas Isles.
la Bermude,	Bermuda.	la Guienne,	Guiana.	la Nigritie, [terre,	Nigritia.
le Brésil,	Brasil.	l' Inde,	India.	la Nouvelle Angle-	New England.
la Californie,	California.	l' Indostan,	Indostan.	le Paraguay,	Paraguay.
le Canada,	Canada.	la Jamaïque,	Jamaica.	le Péloponèse,	Peloponnesus.
la Caroline,	Carolina.	le Japon,	Japan.	la Pensylvanie,	Pensylvania.
le Chili,	Chili.	le Levant,	The Levant.	le Pérou,	Peru.
la Chine,	China.	la Louisiane,	Louisiana.	les Philippines,	The Phil Isles.
la Cochinchine,	Cochinchina.	la Martinique,	Martinique.	la Sonde,	Sunda.
le Congo,	Congo.	le Méxique,	Mexico.	la Virginie,	Virginia.

For we say; *J' ai été au Canada. I have been in Canada. Je vais à la Jamaïque, au Méxique, au Pérou, &c. I am going to Jamaica, to Mexico, to Peru, &c. Je viens du Japon, de la Chine, des Indes, &c. I come from Japan, China, the Indies, &c.*

COMMON NAMES.

DEFINITE ARTICLE.

THE, LE, LA, LES; DU, *de* LA, DES; AU, *à* LA, AUX.

- 7 Every *COMMON* name used in a *GENERAL* sense, i. e. implying *the whole** of the substance spoken of, or in a *PARTICULAR* sense, i. e. implying some *particular sort** of the substance, requires before it one of the definite signs LE, LA, LES; DU, *de* LA, DES; AU, *à* LA, AUX, agreeably to the *gender* and *number* of the noun; ex.

GENERAL sense, *no article* in english before the noun.

I like wine,	<i>J'aime</i> LE <i>vin</i> ,
glory,	LA <i>gloire</i> ,
money,	L' <i>argent</i> ,
pleasures.	LES <i>plaisirs</i> .

The love <i>of</i> wine, <i>of</i> glory.	<i>L'amour</i> DU <i>vin</i> , de LA <i>gloire</i> , &c.
He owes <i>it to</i> wine, <i>to</i> glory.	<i>Il le doit</i> AU <i>vin</i> , <i>à</i> LA <i>gloire</i> , &c.

PARTICULAR sense, in english *THE* before the noun.

This is <i>the</i> wine	} I like.	<i>Voici</i> LE <i>vin</i> ,	} <i>que j'aime</i> .
<i>the</i> glory		LA <i>gloire</i> ,	
<i>the</i> money		L' <i>argent</i> ,	
These are <i>the</i> pleasures		LES <i>plaisirs</i> }	
A glass <i>of the</i> wine I like.		<i>Un verre</i> DU <i>vin</i> <i>que j'aime</i> .	

OF expressed by *DE*; *not* by *du, de la, des*.

- 8 In the above examples you see *OF* expressed by *du, de la, des*, but observe that this preposition coming after a noun used in a *partitive* sense,* can not be expressed by *du, de la, des*, which would then *particularize** the substance spoken of, and mean *of THE*; it must be expressed by *DE* only, *without any regard* to the gender or number of the noun; so we say,

We have a pipe <i>of</i> wine,	<i>Nous avons une pipe</i> DE <i>vin</i> ,
plenty <i>of</i> money,	<i>quantité d'argent</i> ,
a variety <i>of</i> pleasures.	<i>une variété</i> DE <i>plaisirs</i> .

Not, *une pipe* DU *vin*, *quantité* de L' *argent*, &c. which would mean a pipe *of the* wine, quantity *of the* money, &c.†

N. B. In this rule must be included the following words which, though

* When you speak of a substance, you either mean it *Whole*, or in *Parts*.

If you mean the *Whole* of the substance of which you are speaking, the noun that names it, is said to be used in a *General sense*; as, *Wine cheers the heart of man*, i. e. that substance *in general* known by the name of *Wine*, cheers the heart of man.

If you mean some *Particular sort* of the substance of which you are speaking, the noun is said to be used in a *Particular sense*; as, *The wine which we drank was good*; in speaking thus, I do not mean to say, that all the substance called wine is good, for there is bad wine, but that *particular sort* which we drank was good.

If you neither mean the whole, nor any particular sort of the substance spoken of, but a certain *Portion*, or *Quantity* of it; as when you say, *Give me some wine, A glass of wine*; i. e. a *portion* of the substance called wine, the noun is said to be used in a *Partitive sense*.

† It appears from the foregoing examples that, when two nouns come together in french, they must be connected by some sign, and this sign is determined by the sense in which the nouns are used.

If, as in the first instance (rule 7.), the nouns are used in an *unlimited* signification, they must be connected by the sign which denotes that idea, viz. *du, de la, des*.

But if, as in the second instance (rule 8), the *extent* of the *second* noun is *determined* by the *first*, then a simple preposition is sufficient to connect them.

they have no sign after them in english, require in french the connective particle DE to unite them to the noun which follows them;

ASSEZ, <i>enough</i> ;	as, <i>assez</i>	DE vin
BEAUCOUP, <i>much, many</i> ; (<i>e</i>)	<i>beaucoup</i>	D' argent.
COMBIEN, <i>how much, how many</i> ;	<i>combien</i>	DE gloire.
TANT, <i>so much, so many</i> ;	<i>tant</i>	DE plaisirs.
AUTANT, <i>as much, as many</i> ;	<i>autant</i>	DE vin.
PLUS, <i>more</i> ;	<i>plus</i>	D' argent.
MOINS, <i>less</i> ;	<i>moins</i>	DE gloire.
TROP, <i>too much, too many</i> ;	<i>trop</i>	DE plaisirs.
PEU, } <i>little, few</i> ;	<i>peu</i>	DE vin.
GUÈRE, }	<i>guère</i>	D' argent.
PAS, } <i>no, not</i> ;	<i>pas, or</i>	DE gloire.
POINT, }	<i>point</i>	
JAMAIS, <i>never</i> ;	<i>jamais</i>	DE plaisirs.

PARTITIVE ARTICLE.

SOME, ANY; DU, de LA, DES.

Every COMMON name used in a PARTITIVE sense* i. e. implying only 9 a portion of the substance spoken of, requires one of the *partitive* signs DU, de LA, DES, agreeably to the gender and number of the noun; as,

We have <i>some</i> wine,	<i>Nous avons DU vin,</i>
<i>some</i> glory,	de LA gloire,
<i>some</i> money,	de L' argent,
<i>some</i> pleasures.	DES plaisirs.

N. B. The sign SOME is often understood in english before *collective* substantives, such as *men, bread, meat, money, clothes, wine, fruit, pleasure, &c.* but the corresponding sign can not be omitted in french, and it must be repeated before every noun; as,

We have wine, glory, money, pleasures; i. e. *some* wine, *some* &c.
Nous avons DU vin, de LA gloire, de L' argent, DES plaisirs.

Exception. SOME, ANY expressed by DE; not by du, de la, des.

The *partitive* signs *du, de la, des,* require the noun immediately after them, therefore, if a noun used in a *partitive* sense is preceded by an 10 adjective, use DE before that adjective without any regard to gender or number, instead of *du, de la, des* before the noun; as,

We have <i>excellent</i> wine,	<i>Nous avons d' excellent vin,</i>
<i>fresh</i> glory,	DE nouvelle gloire,
<i>very good</i> money,	DE très bon argent,
<i>true</i> pleasures.	DE vrais plaisirs.

But if, agreeably to the general rule, the adjective comes after the noun, then the noun resumes its proper sign, viz. DU, de LA, DES; as,

<i>Nous avons DU vin excellent,</i>	We have <i>excellent</i> wine,
de LA gloire bien acquise,	well acquired glory,
de L' argent comptant,	ready money,
DES plaisirs champêtres.	rural pleasures.

(*e*) *Much, Many,* are expressed by *Beaucoup* or by *Bien*, with this difference only, that *Beaucoup* requires DE after it, and *Bien* requires DU, de LA, DES; so we say,
Beaucoup de vin, de gloire, d' argent, de plaisirs.

Or, *Bien du vin, de la gloire, de l' argent, des plaisirs.*

* See note * page 192.

NUMERAL ARTICLE.

A, AN; UN, UNE.

11 A, AN denoting *individuality*, i. e. *one* only of the substance spoken of, is expressed in french by the number UN, UNE, and no distinction is made between A and ONE; as,

A or one bottle.	UNE bouteille.
A or one pound.	UNE livre.
A or one dozen.	UNE douzaine.
A or one hundred.	UN cent. (f)

12 But A, AN before the names of *measure, weight, number and periods of time*, used in a *collective* sense, i. e. not denoting *individuality*, is not expressed by UN, UNE, it is expressed by LE, LA; as,

Wine sells at six shillings <i>a</i> bottle;	Le vin se vend six shelins	LA bou-
i. e. six shillings <i>per</i> bottle.	teille; not,	UNE bouteille.
Butter twenty pence <i>a</i> pound;	Le beurre vingt sous	LA livre;
i. e. <i>per</i> pound.	not,	UNE livre.
Eggs a shilling <i>a</i> dozen;	Les œufs un shelin	LA douzaine;
i. e. one shilling <i>per</i> dozen.	not,	UNE douzaine.
Oranges a guinea <i>a</i> hundred;	Les Oranges une guinée	LE cent;
i. e. one guinea <i>per</i> hundred.	not,	une guinée UN cent.
I go to town once <i>a</i> day;	Je vais à la ville une fois	LE jour,
i. e. <i>each</i> day, or <i>daily</i> .	or PAR jour; not,	UN jour.
Three times <i>a</i> week, or <i>weekly</i> .	Trois fois	LA semaine, or PAR sem.

By these words *a* bottle, *a* pound, *a* dozen, *a* hundred, I do not mean that *one single* or individual bottle, pound, dozen or hundred sells at that price; but *each* bottle, pound, dozen, or hundred; nor that I go to town *one single* day or week; but *each* day, *each* week.

DEMONSTRATIVE ARTICLE.

THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE; CE, CET, CETTE, CES.

The *demonstrative* words, CE, CET, CETTE, CES are used in the same instances as the corresponding signs are in english; they serve to point out the objects we name, and follow the same rule as LE, LA, LES; ex.

I like <i>this</i> or <i>that</i> wine,	J'aime	CE	vin,
<i>this</i> or <i>that</i> beer,		CETTE	bière,
<i>this</i> or <i>that</i> money,		CET	argent,
<i>these</i> or <i>those</i> fruits.		CES	fruits.

N. B. CE, CET, CETTE, CES do not express that local distinction which is implied in the words *THIS, THESE; THAT, THOSE*; so, if you wish to make the same distinction in french, you must add to the noun, CI to denote the *nearest* object, and LÀ to denote the *remotest*; as,

I prefer <i>this</i> wine to that,	Je préfère	CE	vin - CI	à celui-LÀ.
<i>this</i> beer to that.*		CETTE	bière-CI	à celle-LÀ.
I prefer <i>that</i> wine to this,	Je préfère	CE	vin - LÀ	à celui-CI.
<i>that</i> beer to this,*		CETTE	bière-LÀ	à celle-CI.
<i>this</i> money to that,		CET	argent-CI	à celui-LÀ.
<i>those</i> fruits to these.		CES	fruits-LÀ	à ceux-CI.

(f) Any number prefixed to a noun may be considered as an article, since, like the article, it serves to determine the acceptation of that noun; as, Deux hommes, two men; Trois femmes, three women; Quatre livres, four books; Six bouteilles, six bottles, &c

* THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE are also pronouns; see note (p) page 89.

POSSESSIVE ARTICLE.

MY, THY, HIS, HER, ITS, OUR, YOUR, THEIR.

MON, MA, MES; TON, TA, TES; SON, SA, SES; NOTRE, &c.

These words follow the same rule as the article LE, LA, LES; they agree in *gender* and *number* with the *noun* which follows them; so,

Her father, is, SON père. His or her son, SON fils.

His mother, SA mère. His or her daughter, SA fille.

The *possessive* article MY, THY, HIS, HER, OUR, YOUR, THEIR is expressed by the *definite* LE, LA, LES, when prefixed to the name of any part of the body, after a verb denoting a *natural action* of the body; as,

I open my	} mouth.	J' ouvre	} LA bouche;
Thou openest thy		Tu ouvres	
He opens his		Il ouvre	

Or when the verb denotes an action done upon the body; as,

I have cut my	} finger.	Je ME suis	} coupé LE doigt.*
Thou hast cut thy		Tu T' es	
He has cut his		Il s' est†	

Never say; J'ai coupé MON doigt; Tu as coupé TON doigt; Il a coupé SON doigt, &c.

N. B. Observe that in speaking of an action done upon the body, the person on whom the action is done must be denoted by a *personal pronoun*; so, if the verb is not *reflective*, *i. e.* if the agent does not act upon *itself*, as it does above, one of the pronouns ME, NOUS, TE, VOUS, LUI, LEUR, agreeably to *number* and *person*, must be added to the verb; as,

He has cut	} finger.	Il M'	} a coupé LE doigt.
thy		Il T'	
his or her		Il LUI	

He has cut	} fingers.	Il NOUS	} a coupé LES doigts.
your		Il VOUS	
their		Il LEUR	

Never say; Il a coupé MON doigt; Il a coupé TON doigt; Il a coupé SON doigt, &c.

If, in instances similar to the above, *i. e.* before the names of the parts of the body, the *possessive* words MY, THY, HIS, HER, OUR, YOUR, THEIR come with the verbs, To have a pain, Avoir mal; To hurt, se Faire mal; To be cold, Avoir froid; To be warm, Avoir chaud; they are expressed by AU, à LA, AUX; as,

I have a pain in my	} finger.	J' ai	} mal AU doigt,
Thou hast a pain in thy		Tu as	
He has a pain in his		Il a	

I have hurt my	} hand.	Je ME suis	} fait mal à LA main;
Thou hast hurt thy		Tu T' es	
He has hurt his		Il s' est†	

My feet are	} cold.	J' ai	} froid AUX pieds;
Thy feet are		Tu as‡	
His or her feet are†		Il or elle a	

* When I say, J'ouvre LA bouche, I open the mouth; the hearer understands that it is of my own mouth that I am speaking, for if it was the mouth of another being, I should name that being. Again, Je ME suis coupé LE doigt, corresponds with the english, I have cut myself in the finger; and J'ai mal AU doigt, with, I have a pain in the finger. Here also the possession being sufficiently determined by the pronoun ME, or by the verb J'AI, any other possessive expression would be superfluous; however, these are idioms which practice alone can render familiar. † See 237 rule. ‡ See 239 rule.

- 17 *ITS* and *THEIR* neuter, are also expressed by *LE, LA, LES*, and the pronoun *EN* is added to the verb, when the noun to which they are prefixed is not governed by the *same* verb as the noun to which they refer; as,
That tree is fine, but *its* fruit is good for nothing.
Cet arbre est beau, mais LE fruit n'EN vaut rien; i. e. the fruit of it.
But they are expressed by *SON, SA, SES, LEUR*, if the nouns are governed by the *same* verb; as,
I like that tree, *its* shape and *its* leaves.
J'aime cet arbre, SA forme et SES feuilles.
- 18 The *possessive* *MON, MA, MES* must be *prefixed* to names of *kindred* and *friendship*, when we *call* or *answer* any one by those names; as,
Come here, brother. *Venez ici, MON frère.*
I can not, sister. *Je ne saurais, MA sœur.*
- 19 The *article* is *left out* in french, when expressed in english, at the *title* page, or before any of the *parts* of a book; as,
A french grammar. *Grammaire française.*
The preface. The first part. *Préface. Première partie.*
- 20 The *article* *A, AN* which comes after *WHAT*, is *omitted* in french; as,
What a man! *Quel homme! not quel UN homme!*
What a woman! *Quelle femme! - quelle UNE femme!*
- 21 The *article* *A, AN* coming before *HUNDRED* or *THOUSAND*, followed by a noun, or relating to a noun,* is *not expressed* in french, the words *CENT* and *MILLE* having the property of an *article**; as,
I have won a thousand guineas; *J'ai gagné MILLE guinées;*
Will you have a hundred of them? *En voulez-vous CENT? not, UN cent.*
- 22 No *article* is used in french, before a noun added to *illustrate* or *explain* another noun; and the *article* which is prefixed to such nouns in english, must be *omitted* in french; as,
Zaira a tragedy of Voltaire. *Zaïre tragédie de Voltaire.*
Paris the capital of France. *Paris capitale de la France.*
Never, *Zaïre* *UNE* tragedy; nor *Paris* *LA* capital &c.
But if we left out the first noun, we should say; *J'ai vu UNE tragédie*
23 *de Voltaire. J'ai vu LA capitale de la France.*
- The *article* *A, AN* is also *omitted* in french after some neuter verbs, such as *Être*, to be; *Dévenir*, to become; *se Faire*, to turn; *Passer pour*, to be reckoned, to pass for; the noun which follows these verbs being considered as an *adjective* which serves to *illustrate* their nominative; as,
Is he a Frenchman? *Est-il Français?*
He passes for a German. *Il passe pour Allemand.*
His father is a merchant. *Son père est négociant; not, UN négoci.*
But the *article* must be *expressed*, if the noun is attended by an *adjective* or by a *relative* pronoun, for it then returns into the class of *substantives*;
His father is a wealthy merchant. *Son père est UN riche négociant.*
- 24 No *article* is used in french before a noun which, being joined to a verb, forms only one idea with that verb; as, *Avoir peur*, to fear, to be afraid; *Avoir mal*, to ache, to have a pain; *Avoir raison*, to be right, to be in the right, &c.; these expressions are found in the dictionaries.

* See note (f) page 194.

How to place TWO NOUNS together.

Sometimes *TWO NOUNS* come together, having a dependence on each other, and forming a kind of complex idea; as, 25

John's horse. The *prince's sword.* The *lady's gown.* A *silk gown.*

The English have *TWO* ways of using these *NOUNS*; they say,

1. The horse *of John.* The sword *of the prince.* The gown *of the lady.* A gown *of silk.*

2. *John's horse.* The *prince's sword.* The *lady's gown.* A *silk gown.*

The French, on the contrary, have only *ONE* of these modes of placing *TWO NOUNS* together; they, as in the 1st instance, always place *FIRST* the noun which is the *SUBJECT of discourse*, with *DU, de LA, DES, DE, or À* BEFORE the second noun, agreeably to the sense in which it is used; as,

John's horse. Le cheval DE *Jean*; *i. e.* the horse *of John.* 4. *rul.*

The *prince's sword.* L'épée DU *prince*; the sword *of the prince.* 7

The *lady's gown.* La robe de LA *dame*; the gown *of the lady.* 7

A *silk gown.* Une robe DE *soie*; a gown *of silk.* 8 *rule.*

Sometimes however the order of the nouns could not be changed in the above manner in english, without changing also the meaning; for ex. these expressions, a *wine glass*, a *tea spoon*, could not be turned into a *glass of wine*, a *spoon of tea*; yet the nouns require this order in french: instead of changing the order of the words to alter the idea, as the English do, the French change the preposition, and instead of *DE*, they use *À*; so, 26

A glass of wine, is, Un verre DE *vin*; and

A wine glass, is, Un verre À *vin*; *i. e.* a glass *used for wine.**

N. B. When the nouns are compounded of the words *fair, FOIRE*; *market, MARCHÉ*, and in speaking of *messes*, and the *ingredients* which they are made of, the *TWO NOUNS* are connected by *AU, à LA, AUX*; as,

The *hay market.* Le marché AU *foin*; *i. e.* the market *for hay.*

Some *cream tarts.* Des tartes à LA *crème*; tarts made *with cream.*

Sometimes the *name* of a *COUNTRY* is changed in english into an *adjective*, and prefixed to the name of its production; as *spanish wine*, *french brandy*, *english beer*, *dutch cheese*, &c.; that *adjective* must be expressed by the *substantive* in french, and placed *AFTER* the name of the production, connected by the preposition *DE*; as, 27

Spanish wine. Vin d'Espagne; *i. e.* wine *of Spain.*

French brandy. Eau-de-vie DE *France*; *i. e.* brandy *of France.*

Before the *name* of a *COUNTRY*, after a noun denoting *dignity* or *au-* 28
thority, such as *emperor, king, prince, &c.* *OF* is expressed by *DE*; as,

The emperor *of Russia.* L'empereur DE *Russie.*

The parliament *of England.* Le parlement d'Angleterre.

After any other noun, *OF* is expressed by *DU, de LA, DES*; as,

The south *of France.* Le sud de LA *France.*

The north *of England.* Le nord de L'Angleterre.

* This rule is not without some exceptions, for we say, *Un pot de chambre*, a chamber pot; *Une fille de chambre*, a chamber maid; *Un bonnet de nuit*, a night cap; *Un mouchoir de poche*, a pocket handkerchief; *Un cheval de carosse*, a coach horse; *Un cochon de lait*, a suckling pig, &c. these few exceptions will be learnt by reading, and in conversation.

N. B. Many of these *compound names* are expressed by a *single word* in french; as, *Coachman, Cocher*; *Footman, Laquais*; *Countinghouse, Comptoir*; *Coachhouse, Remise.* These expressions are found in the dictionaries, and will be learnt by reading.

ADJECTIVE.

AN ADJECTIVE is a word *added* to a NOUN, to denote some *quality* or *circumstance* belonging to that noun; as, *good* wine, *fine* flowers.

29 The ADJECTIVE must be of the *same* GENDER and NUMBER as the noun to which it is added; as,

That is a *handsome* man. *Voilà un BEL homme.*

That is a *handsome* woman. *Voilà une BELLE femme.*(g)

N. B. A *past participle*, used to qualify a substantive, follows the same rules as an adjective; ex.

He is very well *made*. *Il est très bien FAIT.*

She is very well *made*. *Elle est très bien FAITE.*

30 When an adjective qualifies *several* nouns *singular* of the *same* GENDER, that adjective must be of the *same* GENDER as those nouns, and PLURAL; as,

My father and brother are *gone* out. *Mon père et mon frère sont SORTIS.*

My mother and sister are *gone* out. *Ma mère et ma sœur sont SORTIES.*

31 But if the nouns are of *different* GENDERS, the adjective must be of the MASCULINE gender, and in the PLURAL number; as,
My father and mother are *gone* out. *Mon père et ma mère sont SORTIS.*
He found his son and daughter *dead*. *Il trouva son fils et sa fille MORTS.*(h)

(g) The *feminine* gender of an *adjective*, or of a *participle* used *adjectively*, is formed by adding *e* *mute*, that is to say, *e* not accented, to the masculine; as,

loved; pretty; lost; great; fine; last; precise; little; learned.

Masc. *aimé, joli, perdu, grand, fin, dernier, précis, petit, savant.*

Fem. *aimée, jolie, perdue, grande, fine, dernière, précise, petite, savante.*

EXCEPTIONS.

E. Adjectives ending in *e* *mute*, are the *same* for both genders; as, *Un honnête homme*, an *honest* man. *Une honnête femme*; an *honest* woman. *Un jeune homme aimable*; an *amiable* young man. *Une jeune femme aimable*; an *amiable* young woman.

I. The feminine of *béni*, blessed, is *bénite*; that of *favori*, favourite, is *favorite*.

U. The feminine of *beau*, fine; *nouveau*, new; *mou*, soft; *fou*, mad; is *belle, nouvelle, molle, folle*, from *bel, nouvel, mol, fol* used before a noun masculine beginning with a vowel.

C. The feminine of *blanc*, white; *franc*, frank; *sec*, dry; *caduc*, decayed; *public*, public; *grec*, greek; *turc*, turkish; is *blanche, franche, sèche, caduque, publique, greque, turque*.

D. The feminine of *nud*, naked; *crud*, raw; is *nue, crue*; and that of *verd*, green, is *verte*.

F. Adjectives ending in *f*, change *f* into *ve* for the feminine; as,

Masc. *bref*, brief; *neuf*, new; *naïf*, candid; *actif*, active; *plaintif*, sorrowful.

Fem. *brève*, brief; *neuve*, new; *naïve*, candid; *active*, active; *plaintive*, sorrowful.

G. The feminine of *long*, long, the only adjective ending in *g*, is *longue*.

L, N, } Adjectives ending in *el, eil, ul, un, ien, on, as, ais, es, et, os, ot*, double the final S, T, } consonant, and take *e* *mute* for the feminine gender; as,

cruel; rosy; null; ancient; good; big; fat; thick; clean; foolish.

Masc. *cruel, vermeil, nul, ancien, bon, gros, gras, épais, net, sot.*

Fem. *cruelle, vermeille, nulle, ancienne, bonne, grosse, grasse, épaisse, nette, sotté.*

Except the adjectives of nations; as, *français*, french; *anglais*, english; &c. *mauvais*, bad; *niais*, silly; *ras*, shorn; *complet*, complete; *discret*, discreet; *inquiet*, uneasy; *replet*, replete; *secret*, secret; which follow the general rule, *française, anglaise, mau-vaïse*; &c. *frais*, fresh; *tiers*, third; which make *fraiche, tierce*; and *benin*, benign; *malin*, mischievous; which make *benigne, maligne*, in the feminine.

X. Adjectives ending in *x*, change *x* into *se* for the feminine; as,

Masc. *heureux*, happy; *paresseux*, lazy; *jaloux*, jealous; *faur*, false;

Fem. *heureuse*, happy. *paresseuse*, lazy. *jalouse*, jealous. *fausse*, false.

Except *doux*, sweet, soft; which makes *douce*; and *vicux*, old, which makes *vieille*.

N. B. The *plural* of adjectives is formed like that of nouns, by adding *s* to the singular.

(h) When the adjective is not separated from the nouns by a verb, some authors make it agree with the last noun, thus, *Il trouva son fils et sa fille MORTE*; but they except the

Adjectives in english are generally placed **BEFORE** the noun, in french **32**
they are generally placed **AFTER** it; as,

A <i>black</i> coat.	<i>Un habit NOIR.</i>
A <i>well made</i> man.	<i>Un homme bien FAIT.</i>
The <i>french</i> language.	<i>La langue FRANÇAISE.</i>

Except these adjectives, which are generally placed **BEFORE** the noun; **33**

PREMIER, 1st; SECOND, 2nd; and other adjectives of number.	
BEAU, BEL, m. } <i>fine,</i>	MÉCHANT, <i>wicked.</i>
BELLE, fem. } <i>handsome.</i>	MEILLEUR, <i>better.</i>
BON, m. BONNE, f. } <i>good.</i>	MÊME, <i>same.</i>
GRAND, <i>great, large.</i>	MOINDRE, <i>less.</i>
GROS, m. GROSSE, f. } <i>big.</i>	PETIT, <i>little, small.</i>
JEUNE, <i>young.</i>	PLUSIEURS, <i>several.</i>
JOLI, <i>pretty.</i>	TOUT, <i>all, whole.</i>
MAUVAIS, <i>bad.</i>	VIEUX, m. VIEILLE, f. } <i>old; as,</i>
She is a <i>handsome</i> woman.	<i>C'est une BELLE femme.</i>
She has a <i>good</i> husband.	<i>Elle a un BON mari.</i>

But if any one of the above adjectives comes with another adjective **34**
that can not be placed before the noun, they must *both* be placed **AFTER**,
connected by a *conjunction*; as,

A <i>handsome, amiable</i> woman.	<i>Une femme BELLE et AIMABLE.</i>
A <i>good, complaisant</i> husband.	<i>Un mari BON et COMPLAISANT. (i)</i>

adjectives which express union; as, *Il trouva son fils et sa fille RÉUNIS, RÉCONCILIÉS, &c.*

These exceptions and exceptions of exceptions are very difficult for learners to retain; therefore I would advise them to follow the general rule, which is perfectly agreeable to the fundamental principles of the french language.

(i) The rules for the placing of adjectives are not very strictly adhered to, especially in poetry. Even in prose many adjectives may be placed either *before* or *after* the noun, according as their position is more agreeable to the ear, of which a learner can be no judge; so his surest way is to follow the rules, and to notice in reading, those adjectives which he finds sometimes *before* and sometimes *after* the noun. Yet custom, for want of other expressions, has fixed a place for some adjectives which must be attended to, as the placing the adjective *before* or *after* the noun *changes the idea*; the most common are,

Un brave homme. A well behaved man.	Un vilain homme. A disagreeable man.
Un homme brave. A courageous man.	Un homme vilain. A niggardly fellow.
De braves gens. Well behaved people.	Un pauvre homme. A man without genius.
Des gens braves. Courageous people.	Un homme pauvre. A poor man.
Un bon homme. A simple man.	Une cruelle femme. An unfeeling woman.
Un homme bon. A good natured man.	Une femme cruelle. A cruel woman.
Un honnête homme. An honest man.	Une sage femme. A midwife.
Un homme honnête. A civil man.	Une femme sage. A wise woman.
D' honnêtes gens. Honest people.	Une grosse femme. A big, fat woman.
Des gens honnêtes. Civil people.	Une femme grosse. A woman with child.
Un gentil homme. A noble man.	Un furieux animal. A huge creature.
Un homme gentil. A genteel man.	Un animal furieux. A fierce animal.
Un galant homme. A liberal man.	Une certaine nouvelle. A certain piece of news.
Un homme galant. A galant.	Une nouvelle certaine. True or sure news.
Un grand homme. A great man.	De nouveau vin. Fresh wine.
Un homme grand. A tall man.	Du vin nouveau. Wine newly made.
Un plaisant homme. An odd sort of a fellow.	La morte eau. The neap tides.
Un homme plaisant. A pleasant man.	De l'eau morte. Standing water.

The adjective *Cher* placed before the noun signifies *dear, affectionate*; as, *Môcher père, my dear father*; placed after it, it signifies *of high price*; as, *Un livre cher, a dear book*.

New is both *Neuf* and *Nouveau*; *Neuf* is said of things newly made; as, *A new coat, Un habit neuf, i. e. made of new cloth*; *un livre neuf, a new book, i. e. a book that has not been used, &c.* *Nouveau* is said of things newly invented, of new productions; as, *Un habit nouveau, a coat of a new fashion*; *Un nouveau livre, or un livre nouveau, a new book, i. e. a new production.* *Un nouvel habit* means *a new dress*.

35 The adjectives of number, PREMIER, *first*; SECOND, DEUXIÈME, *second*, TROISIÈME, *third*; QUATRIÈME, *fourth*; CINQUIÈME, *fifth*, &c. are placed in french as in english, *before* the noun; as,

The *first* day.

Le PREMIER jour.

The *fourth* month.

Le QUATRIÈME mois.

36 But when the adjectives *third*, *fourth*, *fifth*, *sixth*, &c. are used as a *distinction* to some *personage*; as, George *the third*, Henry *the eighth*; or to *date* the months; as, July *14th*, November *5th*; they are changed into the *substantive* numbers *deux*, *trois*, *quatre*, *cing*, *six*, &c.

If used as a *distinction*, they are put *after* the name of the *personage*, as;

George *the third*.

George TROIS, *i. e.* george *three*.

Henry *the eighth*.

Henri HUIT, *i. e.* henry *eight*.

If used as a *date*, they are put *before* the name of the month, joined to it by DE; as, July *14th*.

Le QUATORZE de Juillet.

November *5th*.

Le CINQ de Novembre. (k)

37 Adjectives of *measure* and *dimension*, such as, *high*, *tall*, *low*, *deep*, *thick*, *big*, *wide*, *broad*, *long*, *short*, &c. which are placed *after* the number in english, must be placed *before* it in french, joined to it by DE; as,

A room twelve feet *long*, and ten *broad*.

Une chambre LONGUE de douze pieds, et LARGE de dix;

Literal. A room *long* of twelve feet, and *broad* of ten.

A wall ten feet *high*, and two feet *thick*.

Un mur HAUT de dix pieds, et ÉPAIS de deux;

Literal. A wall *high* of ten feet, and *thick* of two.

N. B. The adjectives of *measure* and *dimension* are frequently expressed in french by their *substantives*; † then the words remain in the same order in french as they are in english, but both the number and the noun of measure must be preceded by DE; as,

A room twelve feet *long*, and ten *broad*.

Une chambre de douze pieds de LONGUEUR, et de dix de LARGEUR.

Literal. A room of twelve feet of length, and of ten of breadth.

A wall ten feet *high*, and two feet *thick*.

Un mur de dix pieds de HAUTEUR, et de deux d'ÉPAISSEUR;

Literal. A wall of ten feet of height, and of two of thickness.

But observe that when the *adjective* is changed into its *substantive*, the verb ÊTRE must be changed into AVOIR, and DE is omitted before the number; as, Our room *is* twelve feet long, and ten broad.

Adjct. Notre chambre EST LONGUE de douze pieds, et LARGE de dix.

Subst. Notre chambre A douze pieds de LONGUEUR, et dix de LARGEUR;

i. e. Our room *has* twelve feet of length, and ten of breadth.

Adjct. Ce mur EST HAUT de dix pieds, et ÉPAIS de deux.

Subst. Ce mur A dix pieds de HAUTEUR, et deux d'ÉPAISSEUR;

i. e. This wall *has* ten feet of height, and two of thickness.

(k) Except Premier in dating the days, and Premier and Second when used for a distinction; for we do not say, Le un de Janvier, the one of January; but, Le premier de Janvier, Le deux, Le trois, &c. nor do we say, George un, George one; George deux, George two; but George premier, George second, and then, George trois, George three; George quatre, &c.

† The substantive may be formed by adding *ur* to the adjective when it ends with a vowel; as, Large, largeur; and *eur* when it ends with a consonant; as, Haut, hauteur, &c.

REMARKS ON THE ADJECTIVES.

The ADJECTIVE can *not* be separated by an article from the NOUN which it qualifies, therefore those *articles* which come *between* the adjective and the noun in english, must be placed *BEFORE* them in french; as, 38

Such a man. UN *tel* homme; not *tel* UN homme.
So great a thing. UNE *si* grande chose.

Except TOUT, *all, whole*, which requires the article *after* it; as,
All his time. Tout SON *tems*.
The whole day. Tout LE *jour*.
A whole day. Tout UN *jour*.*

Except also, when the adjective is used to *distinguish* some particular person from another person of the same name; as,

Peter the cruel. Pierre LE *cruel*.
Cato the elder. Caton L'*ancien*.
Alexander the great. Alexandre LE *grand*.

By *prefixing* to an adjective, an ARTICLE of the same gender and number as the noun to which it refers, that adjective has often the property of a SUBSTANTIVE, and the words *man, woman, people* which are expressed in english, may be omitted in french; as, 39

The wise man is happy. LE SAGE *est* heureux.
He is a troublesome man. C'est un IMPORTUN.
She is a little brown woman. C'est une PETITE BRUNE.
The great; the covetous people. Les GRANDS; les AVARES.†

As an ARTICLE *prefixed* to an ADJECTIVE without a noun, gives to it the property of a SUBSTANTIVE, so when the ARTICLE is *taken from* a NOUN, that noun assumes the power of an ADJECTIVE; for example, 40

I know a poet.
I speak of a philosopher.

Here the words *poet* and *philosopher* are SUBSTANTIVES, because they name the *objects* spoken of, consequently they require an article; so,

Je connais un POËTE.
Je parle d'un PHILOSOPHE. but when I say,
The man I speak of is a poet and a philosopher.
He is a poet, but he is not a philosopher.

The substance I am speaking of is *man*, the words *poet* and *philosopher* are only *attributes* of that substance, and they no more require an article than if I said; the man I speak of is *witty*, is *wise*; so the French,

L'homme dont je parle est POËTE et PHILOSOPHE.
Il est POËTE, mais il n'est pas PHILOSOPHE.

A philosopher is seldom a poet, but a poet is seldomer a philosopher.
Philosopher in the 1st part of the sentence is a *substanz*. in the 2nd an *adj*.
Poet in the 1st part of the sentence is an *adjective*, in the 2nd a *substantive*;
So the French,

Rarement UN philosophe est POËTE, mais plus rarement UN poëte est PHILOSOPHE. (See the 23rd rule.)

* And if TOUT is governed by a preposition, the preposition must be placed *before* TOUT, and the article *after*; as,

Of the whole regiment. De tout LE régiment. To the whole fleet. À toute LA flotte.

† This rule extends to many adjectives, but not to all; they should be taken notice of in reading.

COMPARISONS

The same words which serve to *qualify* nouns, serve also, by the means of certain ADVERBS *prefixed* to them, to *COMPARE* their qualities.

The quality of a substance, when compared with another, is either SUPERIOR, INFERIOR, OR EQUAL to the other; this is called *COMPARATIVE*.

Or the quality is *raised* ABOVE, or *lowered* BELOW several others, and this is called *SUPERLATIVE*.

OF COMPARATIVES.

- 41 The comparative of SUPERIORITY *MORE* before the adjective, or *R* or *ER* added to it, as *more* strong or stronger, is formed in french by *PLUS* before the adjective;* as,

My horse is *more* strong or stronger *than* yours.

Mon cheval est PLUS fort QUE le vôtre.

- 42 The comparative of INFERIORITY *LESS* before the adjective, is formed in french by *MOINS* before the adjective;† as,

My horse is *less* strong *than* yours.

Mon cheval est MOINS fort QUE le vôtre.

The same comparative formed by *so* before the adjective, and *AS* after it, is expressed, *so* before the adjective by *SI*, and *AS* after it by *QUE*; as,

My horse is not *so* strong *as* yours.

Mon cheval n'est pas SI fort QUE le vôtre.

- 43 The comparative of EQUALITY *AS* before, and *AS* after the adjective, is expressed, *AS* before the adjective by *AUSSI*, and *AS* after it by *QUE*; as,

My horse is *as* strong *as* yours.

Mon cheval est AUSSI fort QUE le vôtre.

OF SUPERLATIVES.

- 44 The superlative formed by *MOST* or *LEAST* before the adjective, or by *ST* or *EST* added to it; as, *most* strong or *strongest*, is formed in french by adding *LE*, *LA*, *LES* to the comparative words *PLUS*, *MOINS*; as,

Comp. stronger, *PLUS fort*, m. *PLUS forte*, f.

Sup. strongest, *LE PLUS fort*, *LA PLUS forte*, *LES PLUS forts*, *LES PLUS fortes*.

Comp. less strong, *MOINS fort*, m. *MOINS forte*, f.

Super. least strong, *LE MOINS fort*, *LA MOINS forte*, *LES MOINS forts*, *LES MOINS fortes*, agreeably to the gender and number of the noun; as,

My pony is the *strongest* of my horses.

Mon bidet est LE PLUS fort de mes chevaux.

My mare is the *least* strong of the two.

Ma jument est LA MOINS forte des deux.(l)

N. B. The comparison of *adverbs* is formed like that of *adjectives*; as, Strongly, *fortement*. more strongly, *PLUS fortement*.

Most strongly, *LE PLUS fortement*. *less* strongly, *MOINS fortement*, &c.

* Except *MEILLEUR*, *better*; *PIRE*, *worse*, adjectives, } which are comparatives of
MIEUX, *better*; *PIS*, *worse*, adverbs, } themselves.

† Except *MOINDRE*, *less*,

(l) Observe what is said, note * page 33, that *two* of the signs called *ARTICLE*, can not be prefixed to the same noun; so,

My strongest horse; is, *Mon PLUS fort cheval*; Not, *Mon le PLUS fort cheval*.

Observe also, that if the adjective is placed first, the article needs not to be repeated before the noun; but if the noun is first, the article must be repeated before the adjective; as, It is the *strongest* horse I have seen.

C'est le PLUS fort cheval que j'ai vu; or *C'est le cheval le PLUS fort que j'ai vu*.

REMARKS on the COMPARATIVE and SUPERLATIVE.

When the *comparison* runs between *TWO PARTS* of a sentence, an **ARTICLE** is added to the *comparative* in english; as,

The more you study, the more you learn;

This **ARTICLE** is omitted in french;

PLUS vous étudiez, PLUS vous apprenez.

And the **ADJECTIVE** or **NOUN** which, in these instances, comes *before* the *verb* in english, must be placed *AFTER* it in french; as,

The longer the day is, the shorter is the night.

PLUS le jour est LONG, PLUS la nuit est COURTE;

Literal. More the day is long, more the night is short.

The more populous a country is, the richer it is.

PLUS un pays est PEUPLÉ, PLUS il est RICHE;

Literal. More a country is populous, more it is rich.

The *comparative* words PLUS, MOINS, SI, AUSSI must be *repeated* **BEFORE every adjective**, though they are in the same sentence; as,

She is *as* rich and handsome as her eousin.

Elle est AUSSI riche et AUSSI belle que sa cousine.

The *comparative* words PLUS, MOINS, MOINDRE, MEILLEUR, MIEUX, **PIRE, PIS** require *NE* before the *verb* which follows them; as,

This is *better* than I thought.

Ceci est MEILLEUR que je NE pensais.

However *NE* is not required if the following *verb* is in the *infinitive*, or if it is preceded by a *conjunction*; as,

It is greater *to* forgive than *to* revenge.

Il est plus grand de PARDONNER que de* se VENGER.

I am better now than *when* I was in town.

Je me porte mieux à présent que QUAND j'étais à la ville.

The particles *BY* and *THAN* coming after the *COMPARATIVE*, or after the *adverbs* MORE, LESS followed by a word denoting *quantity*, not *quality*, are expressed by *DE*, not by *QUE* or *PAR*; as,

It is stronger *by* much. Il est plus fort DE beaucoup.

It costs more *than* ten guineas. Il coûte plus DE dix guinées.

The preposition *IN*, after a *superlative* in english, is expressed in french in the same manner as *OF*, agreeably to the rules on the article; as,

He is the richest merchant *in* London.

C'est le plus riche négociant DE Londres; i. e. of London.

She is the most virtuous woman *in* the city.

C'est la femme la plus vertueuse de LA ville; i. e. of the city.

The *superlative* followed by the *relative* or definite *pronoun*, *QUI*, *QUE*, **DONT** requires the following *verb* in the *subjunctive mood*; as,

She is the prettiest woman *that* was at the ball.

C'est la plus jolie femme QUI FÛT au bal.

He is the handsomest man *that* I have ever seen.

C'est le plus bel homme QUE j'AIÉ jamais vu.

* The same preposition which follows the comparative must be repeated after *QUE*; as,
We are more inclined *to* revenge, than *to* forgive.
Nous sommes PLUS portés à nous venger QU'à pardonner.

PRONOUN.

A PRONOUN is a word used to represent a NOUN, as when I say *I* instead of naming *my own name*; *THOU, YOU, HE, SHE, IT, THEY* instead of naming that of *another being*.

There are various sorts of pronouns, generally known by the names of PERSONAL, RELATIVE, POSSESSIVE, DEMONSTRATIVE, INDEFINITE.

SECT. I.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

As there are THREE persons in grammar, so there are THREE sorts of words to represent them, but sometimes the same person is represented by SEVERAL words, as appears from the following table.

Agents or NOMINATIVES of Verbs.			OBJECTS of Verbs, or of Prepositions.*		
1st per.	I, JE, MOI.		ME, ME, MOI.		
	WE; NOUS,		US; NOUS.		
2nd per.	THOU, TU, TOI.		THEE, TE, TOI.		
	YOU; VOUS.		YOU; VOUS,		
3rd p. m.	HE, IL, LUI.		HIM, LE, LUI.		
	THEY; ILS. EUX.		THEM; LES, LEUR, EUX		
3rd p. f.	SHE, ELLE,		HER, LA, LUI, ELLE.		
	THEY; ELLES.		THEM; LES, LEUR, ELLES.		
3rd p. n.	IT, IL, m. ELLE. f.		IT, LE, m. LA, f. EN, Y.		
	THEY; ILS, m. ELLES. f.		THEM; LES, m. & f. EN, Y.		
3rd pers. common	}		HIMself,	}	SE, SOI:
			HERself,		
			ITself,		
			THEMselves;		

And as these words are not used indiscriminately, it is necessary to attend to the following observations.

* In every action there is an Agent, doer, or performer; as *I* write, *I* teach, *Thou* teachest, *He* teaches, *The master* teaches; and if the action is of a nature to be communicated, there is also generally a Patient or receiver; as, *I* write a *Letter*, *I* teach *You*, *Him*, *Her*, *Them*, *French*, *English*, &c. This Agent or doer, in grammar, is called the NOMINATIVE of the verb, and the Patient or receiver, is called the OBJECT; so, *I*, *Thou*, *He*, *The master* are NOMINATIVES; *Letter*, *You*, *Him*, *Her*, &c. are OBJECTS of the verb.

Until now I have avoided speaking of Cases, because if a case be what it seems to be, a modification or variation from the original word, it is evident that in french there are no cases in nouns; and it is astonishing that grammarians should still persist in giving six cases to our nouns, as is done in Latin. Whether a noun be the giver or receiver of an action, i. e. whether it be the nominative or the object of the verb, it remains invariably the same; for ex.

Mon frère aime votre sœur.

My brother loves your sister.

Votre sœur aime mon frère.

Your sister loves my brother.

In the first instance, *Frère*, brother, is the nominative of the verb; in the second, it is the object. *Sœur*, sister, in the first instance, is the object of the verb; in the second, it is the nominative; and in both instances, the words are the same.

But it is not so with the Personal, and Relative pronouns. The same substantive, when the object of the verb, is not always expressed by the same word as when it is the agent or nominative; so we do not say,

IL aime ELLE, ELLE aime IL ;
we say, IL L'aime ELLE L'aime;

He loves she, she loves he ;
He loves her, she loves him.

If it be asked why this variation in the pronouns and not in nouns; it may be answered, that the pronouns having been invented to prevent the tiresome repetition of the same noun, if there had been only one word to supply its place, the repetition of that word must have been too frequent, and only half the inconvenience would have been removed.

Agents, or NOMINATIVE Pronouns.

I, THOU, HE, SHE, IT, WE, YOU, THEY.

These pronouns are sometimes *singly* the *nominative* of a *verb*; as I AM, THOU ART, HE IS; sometimes *jointly* with another *substantive**; as, YOU and I ARE; HE and HIS BROTHER ARE; and sometimes they are used absolutely *without* a verb; as, Who is there? I.

When I, THOU, HE, SHE, IT, WE, YOU, THEY are attended by a verb 51 that agrees with them in *number* and *person*, they are;

I,	JE.	HE, IT, m.	IL.
THOU,	TU.	THEY, mas.	ILS.
WE,	NOUS.	SHE, IT, f.	ELLE.
YOU.	VOUS.	THEY, fem.	ELLES.

These words keep the *same place* in the sentence in french as in english; † ex.

I am, thou art, he is, she is. JE suis, TU es, IL est, ELLE est.

Am I? art thou? is he? is she? Suis-JE? es-TU? est-IL? est-ELLE?

If I, THOU, HE, SHE, WE, YOU, THEY are joined to another *substantive*,* for a *nominative* to the *same verb*, or if they are used *without* a verb to agree with them, they are; 52

I,	MOI.	HE,	LUI.
THOU,	TOI.	THEY, mas.	EUX.
WE,	NOUS.	SHE,	ELLE.
YOU,	VOUS.	THEY, fem.	ELLES; ex.

IN CONJUNCTION with another *substantive*:

You and I are ready.	VOUS et MOI nous sommes prêts.
He and his sister are ready.	LUI et sa SŒUR sont prêts.
You and they are ready.	VOUS et EUX vous ¹²⁷ êtes prêts.
They and their friends are here.	EUX et leurs AMIS sont ici. (m)

WITHOUT a verb to agree with:

Who is ready to go? I.	Qui est prêt à partir? MOI.
It is I who will go first.	C' est MOI qui irai le premier
It is he who will go first.	C' est LUI qui ira le premier.
It is they who will go first.	Ce sont EUX qui iront les premiers.

When a personal pronoun is the agent or *nominative* of several verbs, 53 it is generally *repeated* with *each* verb; as,

I say and maintain that, &c.	JE dis et JE soutiens que, &c.
He is poor, and will always be so.	IL est pauvre, et IL le sera toujours. ‡

* Observe that by *substantive* I do not mean *nouns* only, I mean also the *personal pronouns*; for the word which represents a *substantive*, is as much a *substantive* as the word which names it. † See the verbs, page 106 and following.

(m) The pronouns MOI, TOI, NOUS, VOUS are sometimes added to Je, Tu, Nous, Vous, to point out more clearly a contradistinction; as,

You will write and I will read. Vous écrivez, et MOI je lirai.
You come from Paris, and we are going there. Vous venez de Paris, et NOUS nous y allons.

N. B. The words, *Myself, Thyself, &c.* which are often used by way of *emphasis* at the end of a sentence; as, I will do it *myself*; are expressed, *Myself, moi-même; Thyself, toi-même; Himself, lui-même; Herself, elle-même; Ourselves, nous-mêmes, Yourselves, vous-mêmes; Themselves, eux-mêmes, m. ELLES-mêmes, f.*

‡ If the verbs are in the *same tense*, and used in the *same sense*, as in the example, I say and maintain, the pronoun may be *omitted* before the second verb, JE dis et soutiens; but if the verbs are in different tenses, as in the other example, He is poor, and will always be so; or if the verbs are used in different senses, i. e. one affirmatively and the other negatively, the pronoun must be repeated.

OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER, IT, THEM.

Now let us see when *ME* is *ME* or *MOI*; *THEE*, *TE* or *TOI*; *HIM*, *LE* or *LUI*; *HER*, *LA* or *LUI*; *THEM*, *LES*, *LEUR*, *EUX*, *ELLES*.

The *OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS* are always *attended* by some *VERB* or *PREPOSITION* which *governs* them.

They are *placed* sometimes *BEFORE* the *verb*, and sometimes *AFTER* it; and it is the *place* which they keep in the sentence that *determines* which word is to be used.

The ORDER which the OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS keep with the VERB.

GENERAL RULE.

54 When the *OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS* *ME*, *THEE*, *US*, *YOU*, *HIM*, &c. are governed by a *verb*, place them *immediately* *BEFORE* that *verb*, and express

ME,	} by ME.	to HIM,	} by	LUI.
to ME;		to HER;		LEUR.
THEE,	} TE.	to THEM;		LEUR.
to THEE;				
US,	} NOUS.	to IT,	} neut.	Y.
to US;		to THEM,		EN.
YOU,	} VOUS.	of IT,	} neut.	
to YOU;		of THEM,		
HIM, IT;	LE.	HIM-HERself,	} SE; thus,	
HER, IT;	LA.	ITself,		
THEM;	LES.	THEMselfes;		

He looks at	} me. thee. us. you. him, or it. her, or it. them.	Il ME regarde.
		Il TE regarde.
		Il NOUS regarde.
		Il VOUS regarde.
		Il LE regarde.
		Il LA regarde.
		Il LES regarde.
Does he look at me?		ME regarde-t-il ?*
He does not look at me.		Il ne ME regarde pas.
Does he not look at me?		Ne ME regarde-t-il pas ?

55 Observe that if the *OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS* are governed by a *verb* compounded of the *auxiliary* verbs *AVOIR* or *ÊTRE*, and of a *participle past*, they must be placed *BEFORE* the *auxiliary* verb, not *between* the *auxiliary* and the *participle*; thus,

He has spoken	} to me. to thee. to us. to you. to him, to her. to them. of it, of them.	Il M' A parlé.
		Il T† A parlé.
		Il NOUS A parlé.
		Il VOUS A parlé.
		Il LUI A parlé.
		Il LEUR A parlé.
		Il EN A parlé.
Has he spoken to me?		M' A-t-il parlé ?*
He has not spoken to me.		Il ne M' A pas parlé.
Has he not spoken to me?		Ne M' A-t-il pas parlé ? &c.

* This t is added for the sake of melody; see note * page 92. † See note * page 28

The ORDER which the OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS keep with the VERB.

1st Exception. When the OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER, IT, THEM are governed by the IMPERATIVE of a verb used in a COMMANDING sense, i. e. without a negation, the pronouns which represent them are placed immediately AFTER the verb;

56

In these instances ME is expressed by MOI, and THEE by TOI.

But if the IMPERATIVE is used in a FORBIDDING sense, i. e. if it is attended by a negation, the pronouns must be placed immediately BEFORE the verb, agreeably to the general rule;

57

Then ME is expressed by ME, and THEE by TE; ex.

<i>Imperative</i> COMMANDING, 55 rule.		<i>Imperative</i> FORBIDDING, 57 rule.	
Look at me.	Regarde-MOI.	Ne ME	} <i>regarde pas.</i>
<i>thyself.</i>	TOI.	Ne TE	
Look at us.	Regardez-NOUS.	Ne NOUS	} <i>regardez pas.</i>
<i>yourself.</i>	VOUS.	Ne VOUS	
Let us look at him or it.	Regardons-LE.	Ne LE	} <i>regardons pas.</i>
<i>her or it</i>	LA.	Ne LA	
<i>them.</i>	LES. (n)	Ne LES	

do not look at me.

2nd Exception. The OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS are not always the object of verbs, they are sometimes governed by a PREPOSITION which some verbs require to unite them to the substantive which follows them; then the pronoun being the object of the preposition, not the object of the verb, it is placed AFTER the preposition, and ME is expressed by MOI; THEE, by TOI; HIM, by LUI; HER, by ELLE; US, by NOUS; YOU, by VOUS; THEM, masc. by EUX; THEM, féin. by ELLES; ex.

58

He came to me. *Il vint à MOI.*
 He complained of thee. *Il se plaignit de TOI.*
 He applied to him, to her, to them. *Il s'adressa à LUI, à ELLE, à EUX, &c. (o)*

(n) With two imperatives governing the same pronouns, to avoid monotony, we say
Donnez-LE-MOI, ou ME LE rendez. Give it me or sell it me.
Voyez-LE, et LE consolez. See him, and comfort him.

(o) Some difficulty arises here with respect to the preposition À, which, like the preposition TO, is generally implied in the pronoun; for we say
Il ME donna un livre, He gave me a book; instead of
Il donna un livre à MOI; He gave a book to me.
Je LUI prêtai de l'argent, I lent him money; instead of
Je prêtai de l'argent à LUI; I lent money to him.

But in some instances this preposition can not be left out; for though we say, *He gave me a book; I lent HIM money;* we could not say, *He came ME; I went HIM;* we must say, *He came to ME; I went to HIM.*

The verbs which require the preposition À to unite them to the pronoun, are the following; 1st, all the REFLECTIVE VERBS, which, as they always have a pronoun attached to them for their object, can not govern another substantive, without a preposition; as

Il s'est adressé à MOI, à TOI, &c. He has applied to me, to thee, &c.
Ne vous fiez pas à LUI, à ELLE, &c. Do not trust him, her, &c.

2dly, A few NEUTER VERBS which also require a preposition to unite them to the pronoun which attends them. The most frequently met with are:

ALLER, to go; as,	<i>N'allez pas à LUI.</i>	Do not go to him.
BOIRE, to drink;	<i>Je bois à vous.</i>	I drink to you.
COURIR, ACCOURIR, to run;	<i>Il accourt à nous.</i>	He is running to us.
DESCENDRE, to go or come down;	<i>Elle descendit à MOI.</i>	She came down to me.
ETRE, to be, viz. to belong;	<i>Ceci est à EUX.</i>	This belongs to them.
MONTER, to go or come up;	<i>Je monterai à ELLE.</i>	I shall go up to her.
PENSER, to think;	<i>Pensez à nous.</i>	Think of us.
RECOURIR, to have recourse;	<i>Recourez à EUX.</i>	Have recourse to them
VENIR, to come;	<i>Ils vinrent à MOI.</i>	They came to me.

The ORDER which SEVERAL OBJECTIVE PRONOUNS keep TOGETHER.

59 When SEVERAL OBJECTIVE pronouns are governed by the same verb, a precedence must be given to some of them.

If, agreeably to the general rule, the pronouns are placed BEFORE the verb,

ME,
NOUS, } have the precedence over LE, LA, LES, Y, EN.
TE,
VOUS,
SE

LE,
LA,
LES } have the precedence over LUI, LEUR, Y, EN.

LUI,
LEUR } have the precedence over Y, EN.

Y has the precedence over EN ;* AS,

Will he give him or it to me, her or it to me, them to me ?	ME LE ME LA ME LES*	} donnera-t-il ?	
He promised him or it to us, her or it to us, them to us,	Il NOUS L' Il NOUS L' Il NOUS LES		} ¹³⁵ a promis.
Will he not lend it to you, her or it to you, them to you ?	Ne VOUS LE Ne VOUS LA Ne VOUS LES		
He will send it to me there, some to me there, (p) some to you there.	Il ME L'Y Il M'Y EN Il VOUS Y EN	} enverra.	
He will not send it him or her, any to him, to her, (p) them to them.	Il ne LE LUI Il ne LUI EN Il ne LES LEUR		} enverra pas.*

60 But if, agreeably to the 56th rule, the pronouns are placed AFTER the verb, in which instances MOI, TOI are used instead of ME, TE, then

LE,
LA,
LES, } have the precedence over MOI, TOI ; AS,
Y

Send him, or it to me.	Envoyez LE-MOI.
her or it to me.	LA-MOI.
them to me.	LES-MOI.
them to me there.	LES-Y-MOI.*

61 Observe also that if ME, THEE after an imperative, are followed by SOME, of IT, of THEM, they are not expressed by MOI, TOI, as above ; ME some, ME of it, &c. are expressed by M'EN ; THEE some, &c. are expressed by T'EN, whether they come before or after the verb ; ex. He has sent me some. Il m'EN a envoyé. send me some. Envoyez-m'EN. Doest thou remember it ? T'EN souviens-tu ? remember it. souviens-t'EN.

* See, page 78, 79, a table which shews how to arrange several pronouns together.
(p) SOME, ANY, implying of IT, of THEM, are rendered by EN.

REMARKS on the PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

As there are only two genders in french, the *masculine* and the *feminine*, the *neuter* pronouns *IT*, *THEY*, *THEM* must be expressed by *IL*, *ELLE*, *ILS*, *ELLES*, *LE*, *LA*, *LES*, the same as *HE*, *SHE*, *THEY*, *HIM*, *HER*, *THEM*, masculine or feminine, agreeably to the *gender* of the *noun* which they represent; so we say,

Of a *man* or a *coach*;

IL vient; *je LE vois*, *He* or *IT* is coming; I see *HIM* or *IT*.
(See note h, page 80.)

Of a *woman* or a *watch*;

ELLE est belle; *regardez LA*. *She* or *IT* is fine; look at *HER* or *IT*.

N. B. *IT* is often used in an *impersonal* sense, *i. e.* without reference to any *substantive* mentioned before; as,

It is glorious, shameful, necessary, proper, &c.

In these instances, *IT* is always expressed by *IL*, or by *CE*.

IT is expressed by *IL*, if the verb is followed by an *adjective*; as,

It is glorious, shameful, necessary, proper, &c.

IL est glorieux, honteux, nécessaire, à propos, &c.

IT is expressed by *CE*, when the verb is followed by a *substantive*, either with or without an *adjective*; as,

Is *it* you? *It* is he. *It* is his son. *It* is a shameful thing.

Est-ce vous? C'est lui. C'est son fils. C'est une chose honteuse.

not, *Est-il vous? IL est lui. IL est son fils*, means *HE* is his son.

Though *LUI* and *LEUR* may be said of beings that have life, such as *brutes* and *plants*; as,

That tree is withered, give *it* some water.

Cet arbre est flétri, donnez LUI de l'eau;

They can not be said of *lifeless beings*, commonly called *things*; (*q*) in speaking of *things*, to *IT*, to *THEM* must be expressed by *Y*; as,

She loves reading, she gives all her time to *it*.

Elle aime la lecture, elle Y donne tout son tems.

LUI, *ELLE*, *EUX*, *ELLES*, after a *preposition*, are said only of *persons*; (*q*) in speaking of *brutes* or *things*, the *preposition* must be changed into some *adverb* which implies the meaning of both the *preposition* and pronoun; as,

Take this horse, and get upon *it*.

Prenez ce cheval, et montez DESSUS, not *sur LUI*. (*q*)

If an *adverb* can not be found to supply the place of the *preposition*,* give another turn to the sentence, by which the *preposition* will disappear; as,

He is come with *it*; *IL l' a apporté*, *i. e.* he has brought *it*.

not, *IL est venu avec LUI*, which would imply a *person*, not a *thing*.

(*q*) Except those that are generally personified, such as *Heaven*, *Fortune*, *Providence*, the *Elements*, some *Virtues* and *Vices*; as,

Love is the tyrant of reason, yet there are people who sacrifice every thing to *it*.

L'amour est le tiran de la raison, cependant il y a des gens qui LUI sacrifient tout.

Or when in a *metaphorical sense*, we attribute to *things*, what in a *proper sense* can only be attributed to *persons*; so, speaking of a *Sword*, we say;

Je LUI dois la vie, I owe my life to *it*.

Of a *Book*; *Ces livres me coutent cher, mais je LEUR dois mon instruction*

These books cost me dear, but I owe my instruction to *them*.

But in speaking of the same *things* without giving rational attributes to them, we could not use *LUI*, *LEUR*, we must use *Y*; as,

It is an old sword, but I have got a new hilt put to *it*.

C'est une vieille épée, mais j'Y ai fait mettre une garde neuve.

* You find in the dictionaries the words which are both *prepositions* and *adverbs*.

REMARKS on the PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

65 *HE, SHE, IT, THEY* coming with the verb *BE*, followed by a *substantive*, are generally expressed by *CE*; as,

He is an officer. *c' est un officier.*
She is a seamstress. *c' est une couturière*
They are merchants. *CE sont des négociants.*

If the substantive which follows the verb, denotes *rank, state, trade, or profession, HE, SHE, THEY* may be expressed by *IL, ELLE, ILS, ELLES*, but the *article* must be left out; as,

IL est officier. ELLE est couturière. ILS sont négociants.
 not, *IL est UN officier. ELLE est UNE couturière. ILS sont DES négociants.* (see 23 rule.)

66 *HE, SHE, THEY, HIM, HER, THEM* are sometimes used without reference to any noun expressed before them, but imply the words *MAN, woman, or people* understood; in this sense they are expressed,

HE, } by *CELUI*; *SHE,* } by *CELLE*; *THEY,* } by *CEUX*; as,
HIM, }
HER, }
THEM, }

He who can live dishonored, does not deserve to live, i. e. *the man who CELUI QUI peut vivre déshonoré ne mérite pas de vivre.*

I have met *her whom* you wished so much to see, i. e. *the woman whom J'ai rencontré CELLE QUE vous souhaitiez si fort de voir.*

N. B. The pronouns *CELUI, CELLE, CEUX*, and the relative *QUI, QUE, DONT* which attends them, must not be separated, as the corresponding words are sometimes in english; they must be placed together;

They are mistaken *who* think that riches make men happy.

CEUX QUI pensent que les richesses rendent les hommes heureux se trompent.
 i. e. *They who* think that riches make men happy are mistaken.*

67 *HIS, HER, THEIR* are also sometimes used in the same sense as the above pronouns, i. e. implying the words *MAN, woman, or people* understood, and are then expressed,

HIS, by *de CELUI*; *HER*, by *de CELLE*; *THEIR*, by *de CEUX*; as,

We⁹⁰ always blame *their* conduct *who* do not succeed.

On⁹⁰ blâme toujours la conduite de *CEUX* qui ne réussissent pas.

i. e. We blame always the conduct of *those*, viz. of *the people* who do not succeed.

68 When an *objective* pronoun is governed by *several verbs*, that pronoun must be repeated with every verb by which it is governed; as,

She loves and esteems *you*. *Elle vous aime et vous estime.*

Speak or write *to her* *Parlez LUI ou LUI écrivez.*

69 It sometimes happens that the verb by which the *objective* pronouns are governed, is preceded by *another verb*; as,

I *can* not do it; He *will* not give it me; You *may* lend it to him.

In these instances, it is better to place the pronouns *before the last verb* than before the *first*; so, instead of saying,

Je ne LE puis pas faire; say, *Je ne puis pas LE faire.*

Il ne ME LE veut pas donner; *Il ne veut pas ME LE donner.*]

* These sentences may also be expressed without changing the order of the words; thus

CEUX-là se trompent QUI pensent que les richesses rendent les hommes heureux;

or, *C'EST se tromper QUE de penser que les richesses rendent les hommes heureux.*

But these expressions are more adapted to poetry and oratory, than to conversation.

† This rule is not strictly adhered to by french writers, especially ancient authors; however it makes the sentence clearer, and it is the surest for a foreigner, as there are no exceptions to this rule, and there are several to the other, which he might be liable to mistake.

REMARKS on the PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

LE, LA, LES, EN, Y are often used when the corresponding words are not requisite in english; for example, in answer to these questions; 70

Are you MR. B? *Etes-vous monsieur B?*

Is that your house? *Est-ce là votre maison?*

Are these your gloves? *Sont-ce ici vos gants?*

It would not be sufficient in french, as it is in english, to answer with the auxiliary verb only, and say, *Oui, je suis*; yes, I am.

Non, ce n'est pas; no, it is not. *Oui, ce sont*; yes, they are.

We are obliged to add one of the above pronouns, and say;

Oui, je LE suis. Non, ce ne l'est pas. Oui, ce LES sont.(r)

You have got fine apples. *Vous avez de belles pommes.*

Will you have some? (of them). *EN voulez-vous quelques-unes?*

Yes, give me a few. i. e. (of them). *Oui, donnez m'EN quelques-unes.*

N. B. And if the auxiliary verb with which the question is asked is attended by another verb, that verb must also be repeated; as,

Has he done it? *L'a-t-il fait?*

No, he has not, i. e. (done it). *Non, il ne l'a pas FAIT.*

Do you remember it? *Vous EN souvenez-vous?*

Yes, I do, i. e. (remember it). *Oui, je m' EN SOUVIENS.*

Are you going to the play? *Allez-vous à la comédie?*

No, I am not, i. e. (going there). *Non, je n' Y VAIS pas.*

If the pronoun is added to represent a noun, it must be one of the words LE, LA, LES, agreeably to the gender and number of that noun; as, 71

Are you the son of MR. A? *Etes-vous le FILS de monsieur A?*

Yes, I am, i. e. (the son). *Oui, je LE suis.*

Are you the daughter of MRS. B? *Etes-vous la FILLE de madame B?*

No, I am not, (the daughter). *Non, je ne LA suis pas.*

Are these your gloves? *Sont-ce ici vos gants?*

Yes, they are, i. e. (my gloves). *Oui, ce LES sont.*

But if the word to be represented is an adjective, an adverb, or a whole sentence, LE is used without regard to gender or number; as, 72

Are you married, sir? *Etes-vous MARIÉ, monsieur?*

Yes, I am, i. e. (married). *Oui, je LE suis.*

Are you married, madam? *Etes-vous MARIÉE, madame?*

No, I am not, i. e. (I am not so). *Non, je ne LE suis pas.*

Are you contented, ladies? *Etes-vous CONTENTES, mesdames?*

Yes, we are, i. e. (we are so). *Oui, nous LE sommes.*

EN, Y, which are generally applied to things, may, in answer to a question or a command, be applied to persons, EN instead of *de moi, de toi, de nous, de vous, de lui, d'elle, d'eux, d'elles*; Y instead of *à moi, à toi, à nous, à vous, à lui, à elle, à eux, à elles*; as, 73

Remember me. *Souvenez-vous de moi.*

I will, i. e. (remember you) *Je m'EN souviendrai.*

Have you thought of us? *Avez-vous pensé à nous?*

Yes, we have, i. e. (thought of you). *Oui, nous Y avons pensé.*

(r) If the answer is made with the pronouns HE, SHE, THEY, relating to persons.

LUI, ELLE, EUX, ELLES added to the verb, render the other words unnecessary;

Is that your brother? Yes, he is. Is that your sister? No, she is not.

Est-ce là votre frère? Oui, c'est LUI. Est-ce là votre sœur? Non, ce n'est pas ELLE.

RELATIVE or *distinctive* PRONOUN

WHO, WHOM, WHOSE, THAT, WHICH, WHAT.

QUI, QUE, DONT, QUOI, QUEL, LEQUEL.

74 When *WHO, WHOM, WHOSE, THAT, WHICH* come after one or several substantives which they *particularize*, they are expressed,

Nomin.	} QUI;	WHO,	The man <i>who</i>	} comes.	L' homme QUI	} vient.	
		THAT,	The horse <i>that</i>		Le cheval QUI		
		WHICH,	The chaise <i>which</i>		La chaise QUI		
Object.	} QUE;	WHOM,	The man <i>whom</i>	} I see. (s)	L' homme QUE	} je vois.	
		THAT,	The horse <i>which</i>		Le cheval QUE		
		WHICH,	The coach <i>that</i>		Le carrosse QUE		
(see note m, page 82.)							
Possess.	} DONT;	WHOSE,	The man <i>of whom</i>	} I speak.	L' homme DONT	} je parle.	
		of WHOM,	The horse <i>of which</i>		Le cheval DONT		
		of WHICH,	The chaise <i>of which</i>		La chaise DONT		

75 QUI, QUE, DONT, whatever be the order of the corresponding words in english, must be *placed immediately after* the noun to which they relate;

Is the gentleman come, *who is²⁴² to dine with us?*

Le MONSIEUR QUI doit²⁴² dîner avec nous, est-il venu?

i. e. the gentleman who is to dine with us, is he¹³⁴ come?

N. B. DONT, besides being placed immediately after the noun to which it relates, must be followed by a substantive in the *nominative*; as,

He is a man *whose* probity is known.

C'est un homme DONT la probité est connue, or, DONT on connaît la &c.

If *WHOSE* is followed by a noun governed by a *preposition*, it can not be expressed by DONT, it must be expressed by *duQUEL, de laQUELLE, desQUELS, desQUELLES*, agreeably to *gender and number*; as,

He is a man on whose probity one may rely; i. e. on the probity of whom

C'est un homme sur la probité DUQUEL on peut compter;

not, *C'est un homme DONT sur la probité, nor sur la probité DONT. (t)*

(s) The distinctive words WHOM, THAT, WHICH are often left out; as, *The man I saw, for the man whom I saw; The wine we drank, for the wine which we drank;* but the corresponding words QUI, QUE, DONT must never be omitted, and if they are the nominative, or the object of several verbs they must be repeated with each verb; as,

The man I saw,	i. e. whom I saw.	L'homme QUE je vis.
The wine we drank,	i. e. which we drank.	Le vin QUE nous bûmes.
The woman I speak of,	i. e. of whom I speak.	La femme DONT je parle.

(t) When a relative pronoun comes after two nouns, and relates only to one of them, if the noun to which it relates is not the last in french, WHO, WHOM, THAT, WHICH must be expressed by *leQUEL, laQUELLE, lesQUELS, lesQUELLES*; of WHOM, of WHICH, by *auQUEL, de laQUELLE, desQUELS, desQUELLES*; to WHOM, to WHICH, by *auQUEL, à laQUELLE, auxQUELS, auxQUELLES*, agreeably to the *gender and number* of the noun, to avoid the ambiguity that might arise from QUI, QUE, DONT, which are generally understood to relate to the *last noun*; as,

This is that young man's sister of whom we were speaking.

Voici la sœur de ce jeune homme DE LAQUELLE nous parlions.

But this being done for the sole purpose of removing the ambiguity which would arise from QUI, QUE, DONT; if a relative pronoun, coming after two nouns, was followed by a *verb*, or by an *adjective* that would sufficiently denote to which noun it refers, it would be better to use QUI, QUE, DONT, than LEQUEL, LAQUELLE, &c. which are rather formal expressions; the following sentence, for example, would not be ambiguous,

That young man's sister *who* is so handsome.

Ju sœur de ce jeune homme QUI est si belle; QUI being determined by belle.

But, if these words can not be used without obscurity, the principal object of a language being to express our thoughts with precision, elegance must yield to perspicuity.

After any *preposition* but *OF*, or a *preposition* synonymous to it, *WHOM* is expressed by *QUI*, for both genders and numbers;

Masc. SING. Fem.

Masc. PLUR. Fem.

WHICH le QUEL, la QUELLE, les QUELS, les QUELLES;
From *WHICH* du QUEL, de la QUELLE, des QUELS, des QUELLES;
To, at *WHICH* au QUEL, à la QUELLE, aux QUELS, aux QUELLES;

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun to which it relates; as,

The man <i>with whom</i>	} he is.	<i>L'homme avec QUI</i>	} <i>il est.</i>
The horse <i>on which</i>		<i>Le cheval sur LEQUEL</i>	
The chaise <i>in which</i>		<i>La chaise dans LAQUELLE</i>	
The man <i>from whom</i>	} he comes	<i>L'homme de QUI</i>	} <i>il vient</i>
The horse <i>from which</i>		<i>Le cheval DUQUEL</i>	
The chaise <i>from which</i>		<i>(v) La chaise de LAQUELLE</i>	
The man <i>to whom</i>	} he goes.	<i>L'homme à QUI</i>	} <i>il va.</i>
The horse <i>to which</i>		<i>Le cheval AUQUEL</i>	
The chaise <i>to which</i>		<i>(x) La chaise à LAQUELLE</i>	

WHO, *WHOM* used *absolutely*, i. e. without reference to a noun mentioned before, imply the word *person* understood, and are expressed by *QUI*; as, *Who* has done that? 77

i. e. *what person* has done that? *QUI a fait cela?*

I know *whom* you mean;

i. e. *what person* you mean. *Je sais QUI vous voulez dire.*

WHOSE used *absolutely*, implies also the word *person* understood. 78

If it can be changed into *of WHOM*, it is expressed by *de QUI*; as,

Whose daughter is she?

i. e. *of whom* is she the daughter? *De QUI est-elle fille?*

I know *whose* relation she is.

i. e. *of whom*, or *of what person*. *Je sais de QUI elle est parente.*

If *WHOSE* can be changed into *to WHOM*, it is expressed by *à QUI*; as, *Whose* house is that?

i. e. *to whom* does that house belong? *À QUI est cette maison?*

I do not know *whose* it is. *Je ne sais pas à QUI elle est.*

(u) After a preposition, *WHICH*, relating to the word *Thing*, is expressed by *QUOI*; as, It is a thing *of which* I did not think. *C'est une chose à QUOI je ne pensais pas.*
I see nothing *to which* he can apply. *Je ne vois rien à QUOI il puisse s'appliquer.*

(v) With a verb denoting dwelling or movement, even in a figurative sense, *WHICH*, after a preposition, is generally expressed by *où*; as,

The city *in which* I live. *La ville dans laquelle, or où je demeure.*

The happiness *to which* I aspire. *Le bonheur auquel, or où j'aspire.*

But we could not say, *Le bonheur où je pense*, the happiness *ou which* I think; because *penser* does not denote movement; we must say, *Le bonheur AUQUEL je pense*.

In the same sense, *from WHICH* is expressed by *d'où*, and *through WHICH*, by *par où*; as, The country *from which* I come. *Le pays duquel, or d'où je viens.*

The town *through which* I have passed. *La ville par laquelle, or par où j'ai passé.*

(x) The distinctive word *WHICH* coming after an *Indefinite expression*, or after a *Noun* without an *article* in french, can not be rendered by any of the relative words which correspond with it in english; so these sentences,

I have obtained leave, *which* was the only thing that I asked; } can not be

The earth is ravaged *through ambition* *which* is the scourge of mankind, } translated,

J'ai obtenu permission QUI or LAQUELLE était la seule chose que je demandais;

On ravage la terre par ambition QUI or LAQUELLE est le fléau du genre humain: say,

J'ai obtenu permission, c'était la seule chose que je demandais.

On ravage la terre par ambition, et l'AMBITION est le fléau du genre humain.

WHICH INTERROGATIVE.

In an INTERROGATIVE sentence, *WHICH* requires THREE *distinctions*

WHICH INTERROGATIVE is either joined to the noun like an adjective.

i. e. *without* the help of a *preposition*; as,

WHICH *man*? WHICH *carriage*? WHICH *horses*?

Or like a *substantive*, it is joined to it by the *preposition of*; as,

WHICH *of the men*? WHICH *of the carriages*? WHICH *of my horses*?

Or like a *pronoun*, it is used *absolutely* after the noun; as,

It is one of these men; WHICH *is it*?

I came in one of these carriages. *In WHICH did you come*?

79

WHICH INTERROGATIVE joined like an *adjective*, i. e. *without* a *preposition*, to the noun to which it relates, is

	Masc. SING.	Fem.	Masc. PLUR.	Fem.
WHICH;	QUEL,	QUELLE,	QUELS,	QUELLES;
Of, from WHICH;	de QUEL,	de QUELLE,	de QUELS,	de QUELLES;
To, at WHICH;	à QUEL,	à QUELLE,	à QUELS,	à QUELLES;

agreeably to the *gender* and *number* of the noun; as,

Which man	} do you prefer?	QUEL homme	} préférez-vous?
Which carriage		QUELLE voiture	
Which horses		QUELS chevaux	

80

WHICH INTERROGATIVE joined by a *preposition* to the noun to which it relates, or coming after it *absolutely*, i. e. *without* a *noun*, is,

	Masc. SING.	Fem.	Masc. PLUR.	Fem.
WHICH;	le QUEL,	la QUELLE,	les QUELS,	les QUELLES;
Of, from WHICH;	du QUEL,	de la QUELLE,	des QUELS,	des QUELLES;
To, at WHICH;	au QUEL,	à la QUELLE,	aux QUELS,	aux QUELLES;

agreeably to the *gender* and *number* of the noun; as,

Which of these men	} do you prefer?	LEQUEL de ces hommes	} préférez-vous?
Which of the coaches		LAQUELLE des voitures *	
Which of my horses		LESQUELS de mes chevaux	
Which is the tallest?		LEQUEL est le plus haut?	
Which is the finest?		LAQUELLE est la plus belle?	
Which are the best?		LESQUELS sont les meilleurs?	

81

WHICH sometimes implies the *DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN THAT* or *THOSE* understood; as,

Which of these horses shall I ride?

You may ride *which* you will, i. e. *that which* you will.

This *DEMONSTRATIVE* word can *not* be omitted in french, and *WHICH* as including the two words, is expressed by

CELUI QUE, m.	} THAT which;	CEUX QUE, m.	} THOSE which.
CELLE QUE, f.		CELLES QUE, f.	

agreeably to the *gender* and *number* of the noun to which it relates; as,

Which of these horses shall I ride? *Lequel de ces chevaux monterai-je?*

Ride *which*, i. e. *that which* you will. *Montez CELUI QUE vous voudrez.*

In which carriage will you go? *Dans quelle voiture voulez-vous aller?*

I will go in *which* you please. *J'irai dans CELLE QU'il vous plaira.*

* The pronoun may be either *singular* or *plural*, agreeably to the number that is meant; for ex. *Which of these horses will you ride?* may be translated

LEQUEL or LESQUELS de ces chevaux voulez-vous monter?

LEQUEL meaning *one* horse; LESQUELS meaning that the person is to ride *more than one*.

WHAT requires the *same distinctions* as *WHICH*.

WHAT followed by a noun, or relating to a noun mentioned before, is expressed, 82

	Masc. SING. Fem.	Masc. PLUR. Fem.
<i>WHAT</i> ;	QUEL, QUELLE,	QUELS, QUELLES;
Of, from <i>WHAT</i> ;	de QUEL, de QUELLE,	de QUELS, de QUELLES;
To, at <i>WHAT</i> ;	à QUEL, à QUELLE,	à QUELS, à QUELLES;

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun; as,

<i>What man</i> <i>What carriage</i> <i>What horses</i> <i>What are your reasons?</i>	} will you have?	<i>QUEL homme</i> <i>QUELLE voiture</i> <i>QUELS chevaux</i> <i>QUELLES sont vos raisons?</i>	} voulez-vous?
--	------------------	--	----------------

WHAT used ABSOLUTELY, *i. e.* without reference to a noun mentioned, implies the word *THING* understood, and is expressed by *QUE* or by *QUOI*. 83

WHAT is expressed by *QUE*, when it is the *object* of a verb; as,

What are you doing there? *QUE faites-vous là?*

I do not know *what* to say to her. *Je ne sais QUE lui dire.*(y)

WHAT is expressed by *QUOI*, when it is governed by a *preposition*, or used as an *interjection*; ex.

What do you meddle with? *De QUOI vous melez-vous?*

What! you have not done yet. *QUOI! vous n'avez pas encore fini.*

WHAT sometimes implies the DEMONSTRATIVE pronoun *THAT*, and the *DISTINCTIVE WHICH*; it is then expressed, 84

Nom. *WHAT*, CE QUI; Always do *what* is right; *i. e.* *that which* is right.

Faites toujours CE QUI est juste.

Objec. *WHAT*, CE QUE; *What* I say is true; *i. e.* *that which* I say is true.
 CE QUE je dis est vrai.(z)

But with the *prepositions OF, TO*, or any preposition that is synonymous to them, it is necessary to consider whether the *preposition* comes before or after *WHAT*; for,

OF *WHAT* is de CE QUI, { I speak of *what* is true; *i. e.* OF *that which*, &c.
 de CE QUE; { *Je parle de CE QUI est vrai.*

WHAT OF is CE DONT; as, *What* he speaks of is not true; *i. e.* *that* OF *which*
 CE DONT il parle n'est pas vrai.

TO *WHAT* is à CE QUI, { Apply to *what* is useful; *i. e.* TO *that which* is, &c.
 à CE QUE; { *Appliquez-vous à CE QUI est utile.*

WHAT TO is CE à QUOI; as, *What* you apply to is not useful; *i. e.* *that* TO *which*
 CE à QUOI vous vous appliquez n'est pas utile.

(y) *WHAT*, in this sense, used interrogatively, is generally expressed in conversation by *QU'EST-CE QUE*, an idiomatical expression; as,

What do you say?

QUE dites-vous, or QU'EST-CE QUE vous dites?

What are you doing?

QUE faites-vous, or QU'EST-CE QUE vous faites?

And with the verb *BE*, it is always expressed by *QU'EST-CE QUE*; as,

What is it?

QU'EST-CE QUE c'est?

What is that to you?

QU'EST-CE QUE cela vous fait?

(z) Though the words *CE QUI, CE QUE*, being compounded of the pronoun substantive *CE*, and of the distinctive *QUI, QUE*, should have two verbs either to govern or to be governed; yet, when these words come before the verb *ÊTRE* followed by another verb, or by a noun in the plural number, another *CE* must be put before *ÊTRE*; as,

What vexes me is, that he will not study. *CE QUI me fâche, c'est qu'il ne veut pas étudier.*

What I detest most, are idle people *CE QUE je déteste le plus, CE sont les oisifs.*

POSSESSIVE PRONOUN.

	Masc. SING.	Fem.	Masc. PLUR.	Fem.
	MINE ;	le MIEN,	la MIENNE,	les MIENS, les MIENNES.
Of, from	MINE ;	du MIEN,	de la MIENNE,	des MIENS, des MIENNES.
To, at	MINE ;	au MIEN,	à la MIENNE,	aux MIENS, aux MIENNES.
	THINE ;	le TIEN,	la TIENNE,	les TIENS, les TIENNES.
	HIS,	} le SIEN,	la SIENNE,	les SIENS, les SIENNES.
	HERS ;			
	OURS ;	le NÔTRE,	la NÔTRE,	les NÔTRES, les NÔTRES.
	YOURS ;	le VÔTRE,	la VÔTRE,	les VÔTRES, les VÔTRES.
	THEIRS ;	le LEUR,	la LEUR,	les LEURS, les LEURS.

85 The POSSESSIVE pronouns *le MIEN, le TIEN, le SIEN, &c.* must be of the same *gender* and *number* as the noun which they represent ; ex.

Your hat is better than *hers*, i. e. *her hat*.

Votre chapeau est meilleur que LE SIEN.

My watch is not so fine as *his*, i. e. *his watch*.

Ma montre n'est pas si belle que LA SIENNE.

86 The POSSESSIVE words *MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS, OURS, YOURS, THEIRS* do not always represent a noun mentioned before them ; they are often used instead of the *personal* pronouns *ME, THEE, HIM, HER, US, YOU, THEM*, with the verb *BE*, meaning to *BELONG* ; as for example, *This book is MINE, i. e. belongs to ME* ; in this sense *MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS, OURS, YOURS, THEIRS* are expressed by à MOI, à TOI, à LUI, à ELLE, à NOUS, à VOUS, à EUX, *m. à ELLES, f.* ; as,

This book is <i>mine</i> .	<i>Ce livre est à MOI ;</i>	<i>i. e. belongs to me.</i>
is <i>thine</i> .	<i>est à TOI ;</i>	<i>to thee.</i>
is <i>his</i> .	<i>est à LUI ;</i>	<i>to him.</i>
is <i>hers</i> .	<i>est à ELLE ;</i>	<i>to her.</i>
is <i>ours</i> .	<i>est à NOUS ;</i>	<i>to us.</i>
is <i>yours</i> .	<i>est à VOUS ;</i>	<i>to you.</i>
is <i>theirs</i> .	<i>est à EUX, m. à ELLES, f.</i>	<i>to them. (aa)</i>

87 The POSSESSIVE pronouns *MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS, OURS, YOURS, THEIRS*, by an idiom peculiar to the english language, are sometimes joined to the noun to which they relate by the preposition *OF* ; as, A FRIEND OF MINE ; A BOOK OF YOURS ; this POSSESSIVE pronoun can not be expressed by the POSSESSIVE pronoun in french ; it must be expressed by the *possessive* ARTICLE *MES, TES, SES, NOS, VOS, LEURS* placed BEFORE the noun, which must always be *PLURAL* in french ; as,

A friend of <i>mine</i> .	<i>Un de MES amis ;</i>	<i>i. e. one of my</i>	} friends
of <i>thine</i> .	<i>Un de TES amis ;</i>	<i>one of thy</i>	
of <i>his</i> .	<i>Un de SES amis ;</i>	<i>one of his</i>	
of <i>hers</i> .	<i>Un de SES amis ;</i>	<i>one of her</i>	
of <i>ours</i> .	<i>Un de NOS amis ;</i>	<i>one of our</i>	
of <i>yours</i> .	<i>Un de VOS amis ;</i>	<i>one of your</i>	
of <i>theirs</i> .	<i>Un de LEURS amis ;</i>	<i>one of their</i>	

Never say ; *Un ami de MES, nor Un ami des MIENS ; Un ami de TES ; Un ami de SES, &c.*

(aa) Yet when a question is asked with *EST-CE* ; as, *EST-CE là votre livre ?* Is that your book ? we may answer, *Oui, c'est le MIEN*, or *il est à MOI*, Yes, it is mine. *EST-CE là sa maison ?* Is that his house ? No, it is not *his*, it is his sister's ; *Non, ce n'est pas la SIENNE, c'est CELLE de sa sœur*, or *Elle n'est pas à LUI, elle est à sa sœur*.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN.

	Masc. SING.	Fem.		Masc. PLUR.	Fem.
THIS,	} CELUI,	CELLE.	THESE,	} CEUX,	CELLES.
THAT;			THOSE;		

The DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS CELUI, CELLE, CEUX, CELLES must be 88
of the same gender and number as the noun which they represent; ex.

Bring my hat and *that* of my sister; i. e. the *hat* of &c.

Apportez mon chapeau et CELUI de ma sœur.

He has lost his watch and *that* of his brother; i. e. the *watch* of &c.

Il a perdu sa montre et CELLE de son frère.

Have you seen these (*bb*) gloves and *those* which I had on yesterday?

Avez-vous vu ces gants et CEUX que j'avais hier?

N. B. The DEMONSTRATIVE WORDS *THIS, THESE, THAT, THOSE* imply a local distinction which CELUI, CELLE, CEUX, CELLES do not express; therefore, when a distinction is to be made between two objects, the adverbial particle *CI, here*, to denote the *nearest* object, and *LÀ, there*, to denote the *remotest*, must be added to these pronouns; as,

This hat is better than *that*.

Ce chapeau-CI est meilleur que CELUI-LÀ; i. e. this hat here—that there.

That watch is not so fine as *this*.

Cette montre-LÀ n'est pas si belle que CELLE-CI; i. e. as this here.

But the particles *CI, LÀ*, being added merely to discriminate the objects, if the DEMONSTRATIVE pronoun is followed by a *relative* pronoun, or by a *noun* in the *possessive state*, which makes the distinction sufficiently clear, these particles would be *useless*, and they must be *left out*; as,

This hat is better than *that* of your brother.

Ce chapeau-CI est meilleur que CELUI de votre frère.

This watch is not so fine as *that* which you have lost.

Cette montre-CI n'est pas si belle que CELLE que vous avez perdue.

If *THIS, THAT* are not followed by a noun, nor relate to a noun mentioned before, they imply the word *THING* understood, and are expressed, 89

THIS, by CECI; THAT, by CELA; as,

This is good; i. e. this thing is good. CECI est bon.

That is better; i. e. that thing is better. CELA est meilleur.

(*bb*) It is not unnecessary perhaps to recall here to the attention of the learner, that the words *THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE* have already been seen in the chapter of articles, and he must take care not to confound them.

If *THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE* are followed by a noun, they have the property of a demonstrative article, and are expressed by *CE, CETTE, CES*, as has been seen, rule 1.

Ce vin, CETTE gloire, CES plaisirs. This wine, That glory, Those pleasures.

If *THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE* do not point out a noun after them, but represent one mentioned before, they are pronouns, and are expressed by *CELUI, CELLE, CEUX, CELLES*, agreeably to the gender and number of the noun which they represent; as,

Il a perdu sa montre et CELLE de son frère. He has lost his watch and *that* of his brother.

If *THIS, THAT* do not point out a noun after them, nor represent one mentioned before, they may be considered as *substantives* implying the word *THING*, and are expressed, *THIS, by CECI; THAT, by CELA; as,*

CECI est bon, mais CELA est meilleur. i. e. *This thing is good, but that thing is better.*

N. B. *THAT*, joining two sentences, is a conjunction, and is always expressed by *QUE; as,*
I know *that* he is come. *Je sais qu'il est venu.*

This conjunction is often understood in English, but it must always be expressed in French;
Do you think he is come? *Pensez-vous qu'il soit venu?* [see conjunctions.]

INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

- 90 *ONE, WE* } used in an INDEFINITE sense, i. e. not relating to any
THEY, PEOPLE } particular person, are expressed by ON.
 N. B. ON is always the *nominative* of a verb, and though it represents *WE, THEY,*
PEOPLE, which are *plural*, it requires the verb in the 3rd person *sing.*; as,
One says, }
They say, *people* say. } ON dit; i. e. *one* says, (See note * p. 38.)
- 91 The following and other like INDEFINITE expressions, are also expressed in french by ON, with the verb in its *active* sense; as,
It was said. ON disoit; i. e. *one* said.
It has been reported. ON a rapporté; *one* has reported.
- 92 The english *PASSIVE verbs* used *indefinitely*, require the *active* signification in french, with ON for *nominative*; but by adding ON to the sentence, the *nominative* of the verb in english, becomes its *object* in french;
I have been told that *news* has been received. } i. e. *one* has told me that *one*
 ON m'a dit qu'ON a reçu des nouvelles; } has received *news*.
- 93 *ONESELF,*
HIMSELF used *indefinitely*, } are expressed by SOI; as,
ITSELF after a *preposition* }
 Every one thinks well of *himself*. Chacun a bonne opinion de soi.
 Virtue is amiable of *itself*. La vertu est aimable de soi.
- 94 *SOME*, repeated in a sentence of two parts, is in the first part LES UNS, in the second part LES AUTRES; as,
Some laugh, *some* cry. LES UNS rient, LES AUTRES pleurent.
- 95 *SOMEBODY, SOME ONE* is QUELQU'UN for both genders; as,
Somebody has taken my book. QUELQU'UN a pris mon livre.
- 96 *SOME, ANY, FEW* followed by a *noun* or a *pronoun* in the *possessive* state, are expressed by QUELQU'UN, QUELQUES UNS, *m.* QUELQU'UNE, QUELQUES UNES, *f.* agreeably to *gender* and *number*; as,
 Take *some* of these oranges. Prenez QUELQUES UNES de ces oranges.
 Give me *a few* of them. Donnez-m'en QUELQUES UNES.
- 97 *NOBODY, NOT ANY BODY, PERSONNE*; } require *ne* before the verb;
NOBODY WHATEVER, QUI QUE CE SOIT }
Nobody loves that man. PERSONNE n'aime cet homme.
 He trusts *nobody whatever*. Il ne se fie à QUI QUE CE SOIT.
- 98 *SOMETHING* is QUELQUE CHOSE; as,
 He gave me *something* good. Il me donna QUELQUE CHOSE de bon(cc)
- 99 *NOTHING, NOT ANY THING, RIEN*; } require *ne* before the verb;
NOTHING WHATEVER, QUOI QUE CE SOIT } as,
Nothing is more agreeable. RIEN n'est plus agréable.
 He applies to *nothing whatever*. Il ne s'applique à QUOI QUE CE SOIT.
- 100 *NONE, NOT ANY*, followed by a *substantive* in the *possessive* state, are expressed by AUCUN, *m.* AUCUNE, *f.* with *ne* before the verb; as,
None of your sisters is come. AUCUNE de vos sœurs n'est venue.

(cc) QUELQU'UN, PERSONNE, QUELQUE CHOSE, RIEN followed by an adjective or a past participle, require *de* after them; as *Somebody* wounded. Quelqu'un de blessé. *Something* good. Quelque chose de bon. *Nobody* come. Personne de venu. *Nothing* new. Rien de nouveau.

- NONE, NUL**; } used *absolutely*, are synonymous to **PERSONNE** and **101**
NOT ONE, PAS UN } require *ne* before the verb; as,
None are free from faults. **NUL** *n'est exempt de défauts.*
Not one believes it. **PAS UN, or PERSONNE** *ne le croit* (dd)
- EACH**, joined to a *noun*, is expressed by **CHAQUE** for *both genders*; as, **102**
Each boy had a shilling. **CHAQUE** *garçon eut un shelin.*
Each girl earned six pence. **CHAQUE** *fille gagna six sous.*
- EACH**, followed by a *noun* in the *possessive state*, or relating to a *noun* **103**
already mentioned, is **CHACUN, m. CHACUNE, f.** as,
Each of these books has its price. **CHACUN** *de ces livres a son prix.*
Put them *each* in their places. **Mettez-les CHACUN** *à sa place.*
- EVERY**, followed by a *noun*, requires a distinction. **104**
If **EVERY** denotes *individuality*, it is expressed by **CHAQUE**; as,
Every language has its properties. **CHAQUE** *langue a ses propriétés;*
i. e. *each* language has &c.
If **EVERY** denotes a *totality*, it is expressed by **TOUT, m. TOUTE, f.**
Every man is fallible, i. e. *all men*; **TOUT** *homme est faillible.*
- EVERY ONE** requires the same distinction as **EVERY**. **105**
EVERY ONE, implying every one taken *individually*, is **CHACUN**;
Every one lives after his own way. **CHACUN** *vit à sa manière.*
i. e. *each person* lives &c.
- EVERY ONE**, implying every one *collectively*, is **TOUTS, m. TOUTES, f.**
Every one of them were taken; } **Ils furent TOUTS pris, m.**
i. e. they were *all* taken. } **Elles furent TOUTES prises, f.**
- EVERY BODY** is **TOUT le MONDE**; as, **106**
Every body speaks ill of her. **TOUT le MONDE** *parle mal d'elle.*
She speaks ill of *every body*. **Elle parle mal de TOUT le MONDE.**
- EVERY THING** is expressed by **TOUT**; as, **107**
Every thing is right. **TOUT** *est bien.*
She complains of *every thing*. **Elle se plaint de TOUT.**
- ANY BODY, ANY ONE**, used in the sense of *some body, some one*, are **108**
expressed by **QUELQU'UN**; as,
Has *any body* asked for me? **QUELQU'UN** *m'a-t-il demandé?*
- ANY BODY, ANY ONE**, used in the sense of *every body*, are expressed by **109**
TOUT le MONDE, or IL N'Y A PERSONNE QUI ne; as,
Any body will tell you the same, i. e. *every body* will &c.
TOUT le MONDE *vous dira la même chose;*
or, **IL N'Y A PERSONNE QUI ne vous dise la même chose.**
- With a verb denoting *admiration* or *doubt*, or after a *comparative*, **ANY** **110**
BODY is expressed by **PERSONNE**, but without *ne*, because *personne*
attended by *ne*, signifies *NOBODY*; as,
Did ever *any body* see that! **PERSONNE** *a-t-il jamais vu cela!*
He will do it better than *any body*. **Il le fera mieux que PERSONNE.**

(dd) **RIEN, AUCUN, PAS UN, PERSONNE** followed by **QUI, QUE, DONT** require the following verb in the *subjunctive*; as,

Have you found *nothing* that suits you? **N'avez-vous trouvé RIEN** *qui vous convienne?*
I do not know *any body* who can do it. **Je ne connais PERSONNE** *qui puisse le faire.*

- 111 *ANY THING*, in the sense of *something*, is QUELQUE CHOSE ; as,
Has *any thing* happened? *Est-il arrivé QUELQUE CHOSE ?*
- 112 *ANY THING*, used in the sense of *every thing*, is expressed by TOUT ;
Do *any thing* you please. *Faites TOUT ce qu'il vous plaira.*
- 113 With a verb denoting *admiration* or *doubt*, *ANY THING* is expressed by RIEN, but without *ne* ; for *rien* attended by *ne*, expresses NOTHING ; as,
Is there *any thing* finer ! *Y a-t-il RIEN de plus beau !*
- 114 *WHOEVER*, *WHOSOEVER* joined to a substantive, or relating to a substantive before mentioned, is expressed by QUELQUE, QUELSQUE, m. QUELLEQUE, QUELLESQUE, f. with the verb in the *subjunctive* ; and if the nominative is a *noun*, it is placed *after* the verb ; as,
Whoever that man is, I shall have him punished.
QUELQUE soit cet homme, je le ferai punir.
- 115 *WHOEVER*, *WHOSOEVER*, *WHOMSOEVER*, meaning *any person soever*, is expressed by QUI QUE CE SOIT, with a *relative* pronoun after it, and the verb in the *subjunctive* ; as,
Whoever has done it, he shall repent of it ; i. e. *whoever that person be* ;
QUI QUE CE SOIT QUI l'ait fait, il s'en repentira.
Whomsoever you meet, do not stop ; i. e. *whosoever that person be* ;
QUI QUE CE SOIT QUE vous rencontriez, ne vous arrêtez pas.
- 116 *WHOEVER*, *WHOMSOEVER*, meaning *every body*, is TOUTS CEUX ;
He stops *whomsoever* he meets. *Il arrête TOUTS CEUX qu'il rencontre.*
N. B. In proverbial sentences, *WHOEVER* is QUICONQUE ; as,
Whoever is rich is every thing. *QUICONQUE est riche est tout.*
- 117 *WHATEVER*, *WHATSOEVER*, with a substantive, requires a distinction.
If the substantive to which *WHATEVER*, *WHATSOEVER* is joined, is the *nominative* of a verb, it is expressed by QUELQUE, QUELSQUE, m. QUELLEQUE, QUELLESQUE, f. with the verb in the *subjunctive*, and if the nominative is a *noun*, it is placed *after* the verb ; as,
Whatever his reasons are, they will not be heard.
QUELLESQUE soient ses raisons, elles ne seront pas écoutées.
If the substantive to which *WHATEVER*, *WHATSOEVER* is joined, is the *object* of a verb, *WHATEVER*, *WHATSOEVER* is expressed by QUELQUE, *sing.* QUELQUES, *plur.* for both genders, with QUE *after* the substantive, and the verb in the *subjunctive* ; as,
Whatever reasons he gives, he will not be excused.
QUELQUES raisons qu'il donne, il ne sera pas excusé.
- 118 *WHATEVER*, *WHATSOEVER*, implying *whatever a thing may be*, is expressed by QUOI QUE CE SOIT, with a *relative* pronoun *after* it, and the verb in the *subjunctive* ; as,
Whatever happens let me know it ; i. e. *whatever the thing be* &c.
QUOI QUE CE SOIT QUI arrive, faites-le-moi savoir.
- 119 *WHATEVER*, *WHATSOEVER*, implying *Any thing*, or *every thing*, is expressed by TOUT CE QUI, *nomin.* TOUT CE QUE, *object.* as,
Whatever is right, is not always approved ; i. e. *every thing* that &c.
TOUT CE QUI est bien n'est pas toujours approuvé.
Do *whatever* you will ; i. e. *any thing*, or *every thing* you will.
Faites TOUT CE QUE vous voudrez.

OTHER is **AUTRE**, *substantive and adjective, of both genders*; as,
 Give me an *other* pen. *Donnez-moi une AUTRE plume.*
Others think differently. *D'AUTRES pensent différemment.**

EACH OTHER, ONE ANOTHER ;
 masc. SING. fem. • masc. PLURAL. fem.
l'Un l'Autre, l'Une l'Autre, les Uns les Autres, les Unes les Autres ;
of, from ONE ANOTHER ;
l'Un de l'Autre, l'Une de l'Autre, les Uns des Autres, les Unes des Autres ;
to, at ONE ANOTHER ;
l'Un à l'Autre, l'Une à l'Autre, les Uns aux Autres, les Unes aux Autres ;
 agreeably to *gender and number* ; but observe that the *preposition* which
 comes before **ONE ANOTHER** in english, must be placed *between* the two
 words **l'UN, l'AUTRE** in french ; as,

They can not live *without* one another ; *i. e.* the one *without* the other.
Ils ne sauraient vivre l'UN sans l'AUTRE, m. l'UNE sans l'AUTRE, f.

BOTH ; mas. SING. fem. masc. PLUR. fem.
l'Un et l'Autre, l'Une et l'Autre, Tous deux, Toutes deux ;
of, from BOTH ;
de l'Un et de l'Autre, de l'Une et de l'Autre, de Tous deux, de Toutes deux ;
to, at BOTH ;
à l'Un et à l'Autre. à l'Une et à l'Autre, à Tous deux à Toutes deux ;

} Speaking
of two indi-
vidual ob-
jects only
as,

Your sisters are *both* right.

Vos sœurs ont raison l'UNE et l'AUTRE, or ont TOUTES DEUX raison.

BOTH ; *les Uns et les Autres, les Unes et les Autres* ;
of, from BOTH ; *des Uns et des Autres, des Unes et des Autres* ;
to, at BOTH ; *aux Uns et aux Autres, aux Unes et aux Autres* ;

} Speaking of a greater
number of individuals,
but considered as two
parties; as,

The French and the Dutch are united, let us beat *both*.

Les Français et les Hollandais sont unis, battons les UNS et les AUTRES.

EITHER ; m. SING. fem. masc. PLURAL. fem.
l'Un ou l'Autre, l'Une ou l'Autre, les Uns ou les Autres, les Unes ou les Autres ;
of, from EITHER ;
de l'Un ou de l'Autre, de l'Une ou de l'Autre, des Uns ou des Autres, des Unes ou des Autres ;
to, at EITHER ;
à l'Un ou à l'Autre, à l'Une ou à l'Autre, aux Uns ou aux Autres, aux Unes ou aux Autres ;
Either of them will come.

L'UN ou l'AUTRE viendra, m. l'UNE ou l'AUTRE viendra, f.

You may use *either* of them.

Vous pouvez vous servir de l'UN ou de l'AUTRE, m. de l'UNE ou de l'AUTRE, f.

NEITHER, NOT EITHER ;
 masc. SING. fem. masc. PLURAL. fem.
Ni l'Un ni l'Autre, ni l'Une ni l'Autre, Ni les Uns ni les Autres, [ni les Autres,
of, from NEITHER ;
Ni de l'Un ni de l'Autre, ni de l'Une ni de l'Autre ; Ni des Uns ni des Autres, [ni des Autres,
to, at NEITHER ;
Ni à l'Un ni à l'Autre, ni à l'Une ni à l'Autre ; Ni aux Uns ni aux Autres, [ni aux Autres.

These words require *ne* before the verb which attends them ; as,

I care for *neither* of them.

Je ne me soucie ni de l'AUTRE, m. ni de l'UNE ni de l'AUTRE, f.

N. B. When these words are the *nominative* of a verb, they are gene-
 rally placed *after* the verb, and **ILS** or **ELLES** is *added* to the verb ; as,

Neither of them will come.

Ni l'UN ni l'AUTRE ne viendra ; or ILS ne viendront ni l'UN ni l'AUTRE, m.

Ni l'UNE ni l'AUTRE ne viendra ; or ELLES ne viendront ni l'UNE ni l'AUTRE, f.

* In proverbial sentences, **OTHERS** after **OF, TO** is generally rendered by **AUTRUI** ; as,
 Do not do to *others* what you would not like to be done to.

Né faites pas à AUTRUI ce que vous ne voudriez pas qu'on vous fît.

VERB.

AGREEMENT of the VERB with its NOMINATIVE.

A VERB expressing either *being* or *acting*, necessarily implies a *subject* or *agent*, generally known in grammar by the name of *NOMINATIVE*.

125 The VERB must be of the *same NUMBER* and *PERSON* as the *agent*, or *nominative*; this is called *agreement* of the verb with its *NOMINATIVE*; as,

	Singular.		Plural.		
I speak.	Je	PARLE.	Nous	PARLONS.	we speak, &c.
Thou speakest.	Tu	PARLES.	Vous	PARLEZ.	
He	Il	} PARLE.	Ils	} PARLENT.	
She	Elle		Elles		
My brother	Mon frère	} PARLE.	Mes frères	} PARLENT.	
My sister	Ma sœur		Mes sœurs		

126 When *TWO* or *more* substantives in the *singular* are the *NOMINATIVE* of the *same* VERB, that verb must be in the *PLURAL* number; as,
My sister and he speak french. *Ma sœur et lui PARLENT français.*

127 If the substantives which are the nominative of the verb, are of *DIFFERENT* persons,* the verb *does not agree* with either of them; we add *NOUS* or *VOUS* to the sentence with which we make the verb *agree*.

We add *NOUS*, if there is in the sentence a substantive* of the *first* person; as,

He and I speak french. *Lui et moi NOUS parlons français;*
i. e. he and I *we speak* french.

We add *VOUS*, if there is in the sentence a substantive* of the *second* person, and none of the first; as,

You and they speak french. *Vous et eux VOUS parlez français;*
i. e. you and they *you speak* french.

128 If the *nominative* of the verb is the relative pronoun *QUI*, the verb must be of the *same NUMBER* and *PERSON* as the *substantive** to which that pronoun *relates*; as,

It is <i>I</i> who speak best.	<i>C' est</i> MOI qui parle le mieux
It is <i>thou</i> who speakest best.	<i>C' est</i> TOI qui parles le mieux.
It is <i>he</i> who speaks best.	<i>C' est</i> LUI qui parle le mieux.
It is <i>we</i> who speak best.	<i>C' est</i> NOUS qui parlons le mieux.
It is <i>you</i> who speak best.	<i>C' est</i> VOUS qui parlez le mieux
It is <i>they</i> who speak best.	<i>Ce sont</i> EUX qui parlent le mieux.

129 If *QUI* refers to *several* substantives of *DIFFERENT* persons,* it *agrees* with the *FIRST* person in preference to the *second*, and with the *SECOND* in preference to the *third*; as,

It is *you and I* who speak best. *C' est VOUS et MOI qui parlons le mieux.*
It is *you and he* who speak best. *C' est VOUS et LUI qui parlez le mieux.*

130 The collective substantives *La PLUPART*, *INFINITÉ*, *NOMBRE*, *QUANTITÉ*, *TROUPE*, *MULTITUDE* followed by another substantive, require the verb of the *same number* as that *second substantive*; ex.

Most people are of that opinion.

La plupart du MONDE pense ainsi, or *La plupart des GENS* pensent ainsi.

131 *Le QUART*, *Le TIERS*, *La MOITIÉ* require the verb in the *singular*; as,
One fourth of my books are lost. *Le QUART de mes livres EST perdu.*

PLACING of the NOMINATIVE with the VERB.

In a DECLARATIVE sentence, *i. e.* when a question is not asked, the *NOMINATIVE* of the verb is placed in french as in english, *BEFORE* the VERB; ex.

132

I speak french well. JE parle bien français.
He speaks french well. IL parle bien français.
My brother speaks french well. Mon FRÈRE parle bien français.
My sister speaks french well. Ma SŒUR parle bien français. (*ee*)

But when the sentence is INTERROGATIVE, it is necessary to consider whether the *NOMINATIVE* of the verb is a *NOUN* or a *PRONOUN*.

If, when you *ask* a QUESTION, the *NOMINATIVE* of the verb is one of the *PRONOUNS* JE, TU, IL, ELLE, NOUS, VOUS, ILS, ELLES, ON, or CE, this pronoun is *placed* in french, as the corresponding words are in english, IMMEDIATELY *AFTER* the VERB; ex.

133

Do *I* speak french well? Parle-JE bien français? *
 Does *he* speak french well? Parle-t-IL bien français?
 Does *she* speak french well? Parle-t-ELLE bien français?
 Do *people* speak french well? Parle-t-ON bien français?

If, when you *ask* a QUESTION, the *NOMINATIVE* of the verb is a *NOUN*, that *noun* is placed *BEFORE* the *VERB*, the same as in *declarative* sentences; but to *shew* that a QUESTION is *asked*, one of the pronouns IL, ELLE, ILS, ELLES, agreeably to the *gender* and *number* of the noun, must be placed IMMEDIATELY *AFTER* the VERB; as,

134

Does my *brother* speak french well? Mon frère parle-t-IL bien français? (*ff*)
 Does my *sister* speak french well? Ma sœur parle-t-ELLE bien français?
 Do my *brothers* speak french well? Mes frères parlent-ILS bien français?
 Do my *sisters* speak french well? Mes sœurs parlent-ELLES bien français?

(*ee*) The *nominative* is generally placed after the verb in a *declarative* sentence.

1. When the verb is used as a PARENTHESIS; ex.
 You are wrong, said her mother to her. Vous avez tort, lui dit sa MÈRE.
2. When the sentence begins with TEL, or AINSI; as,
 Such was his advice. TEL était son AVIS.
 Thus ended the business. AINSI se termina l'AFFAIRE.
3. When the *nominative* is attended by several words which can not be separated from it, or can not be placed before the verb, without suspending the sense of the sentence;
 D' un côté on voyait une rivière où se FORMAIENT des ILES bordées de tilleus fleuris.
 On one side was seen a river from which sprung islands lined with lime trees in bloom.
 Là COULENT mille RUISSEaux qui distribuent par tout une eau claire.
 There a thousand rivulets run which carry every where a clear water. FENELON.
 These sentences would not be so clear, if they were expressed thus:
 D' un côté on voyait une rivière où des ILES bordées de tilleus fleuris se FORMAIENT.
 Là, mille RUISSEaux, qui distribuent par tout une eau claire COULENT.
4. When the verb is preceded by QUE, SE, or OÙ; as,
 The money which my father sent me. L'argent QUE m'envoya mon PÈRE.
 The field where the battle was fought. Le champ où se donna la BATAILLE.
5. JE, NOUS, TU, VOUS, IL, ILS, ELLE, ELLES, ON, CE are generally placed after the verb, when the sentence begins with one of these words, AINSI, so, therefore; AU MOINS, at least; EN VAIN, in vain; À PEINE, hardly; PEUT-ÊTRE, perhaps; as,
 You were hardly gone, when she came in. À PEINE étiez VOUS sorti qu'elle entra.

* Except the pronoun *Je*, when the verb to which it is joined ends with several consonants, so instead of saying; COURS-je? do I run? MENTS-je? do I lie? DORS-je? do I sleep? which are hard to pronounce, we say, EST-CE QUE je cours! EST-CE QUE je ments?

(*ff*) When an interrogative sentence begins with QUE, (*what*); OÙ, (*where*); we generally place the noun after the verb, without adding a pronoun to it; as,
 Où est votre frère? Where is your brother? Où est votre sœur? Where is your sister?
 QUE fait votre frère? What is your brother doing? QUE fait votre sœur? What is your &c.?

MOODS *and* TENSES.INDICATIVE MOOD *OR* MANNER.

When we *declare* that a thing *is*, or *is not*, or that it *is*, *was*, *will be*, or *would be* in our power to have it so, this manner of expressing ourselves is called *INDICATIVE* or *declarative*.

PRESENT TENSE *OR* TIME.

J' AI,	I have,	} now, to-day, this week, this month, this year, this age, in any period of time not entirely elapsed.†
Je SUIS,	I am,	
Je PARLE,*	I speak, or am speaking ;	

135

The *PRESENT* tense in french does not differ from the same tense in english ; it expresses the being or acting at the *time* in which *we are* ; as,
I *now* have. I *now* am. I *now* speak, or *am* speaking.
À présent j'AI. À présent je SUIS. À présent je PARLE.

PAST TENSES.

COMPOUND *of the* PRESENT.

J' AI EU,	I had, or have had,	} lately, to-day, this week, &c. in any period of time, not entirely elapsed ; this is the nearest time to the present.
J' AI ÉTÉ,	I was, have been,	
J' AI PARLÉ,	I spoke, did speak, have spoken ;	

136

If we speak of an *ACTION* *recently* PAST, without *mentioning* the *TIME* in which it passed, or if we *mention* a *PERIOD*† which is still *lasting*, such as, *to-day, this week, this month, this year, &c.* the *action* being *past*, and the *period* of time mentioned being *still present*, we make the verb partake of both the *present* and *past* tenses, by adding the *PAST PARTICIPLE* to the *PRESENT* tense of the auxiliarij verbs AVOIR or ÊTRE ; ex.

NO TIME MENTIONED.

Were you ever at paris ?

turn, *Have* you ever *been* at paris ? AVEZ-vous jamais ÉTÉ à paris ?

No, I never *was* there ;

turn, No, I *have* never *been* there. Non, je n'y AI jamais ÉTÉ.

I *had* no opportunity to go ;

turn, I *have had* no opportunity &c. Je n'AI pas EU occasion d'y aller.

Did you ever *see* Buonaparte ?

turn, *Have* you ever *seen* B. ? AVEZ-vous jamais VU Buonaparte ?

PERIOD MENTIONED, BUT NOT ELAPSED.

I *was* at your house this morning ;

turn, I *have been* at your house &c. J'AI ÉTÉ chez vous ce matin.

Did you *find* any body there ?

turn, *Have* you *found* any body &c. Y AVEZ-vous TROUVÉ quelqu'un ?

I *saw* your sister, and *spoke* to her ;

turn, I *have seen* your sister, and &c. J'AI VU votre sœur, et je lui AI PARLÉ.

Did you not *see* my mother ?

turn, *Have* you not *seen* &c. ? N'AVEZ-vous pas VU ma mère ?

* In order to render the elucidation of this interesting part of the language more obvious, I have laid down the two auxiliary verbs AVOIR, *to Have* ; and ÊTRE, *to Be*, which are generally found the most embarrassing, and the familiar verb PARLER, *to Speak*, which may serve as a model for all the rest.

† A *period of time* is a certain *quantity* of time, the duration of which is *fixed* and *agreed* upon, and which being *elapsed*, that period ceases ; such as a *Day, a Week, a Fortnight, a Month, a Year, an Age*, the four seasons of the year, *Spring, Summer, Autumn, Winter* ; or any other portion of time, the beginning and end of which can be ascertained.

‡ The french generally use the participle ÉTÉ, instead of the participle ALLÉ, to express that a person has *gone* to a place whence he is *returned*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PERFECT TENSE.

J' EUS, I had, } yesterday, last week, last month, last year, a fortnight ago, in any period of time
 Je FUS, I was, } entirely past; *this is the remotest time from the present.*
 Je PARLAI, I spoke, did speak;

137

If we speak of an action PAST, in a PERIOD of time which is also entirely PAST; such as *Yesterday, last WEEK, a fortnight AGO, last MONTH, last YEAR*, any year previous to that in which we live, then both the *time* and *action* being *past* or *accomplished*, we use the *PERFECT tense* of the verb; viz. EUS, FUS, PARLAI; as,

I called at your house yesterday. Je PASSAI hier chez vous.
 Did you find any body there? Y TROUVÂTES-vous quelqu'un ? *
 I saw your sister and spoke to her. Je VIS votre sœur et je lui PARLAI.
 Did you go to the ball with her? ALLÂTES-vous au bal avec elle ? *
 No, I did not; i.e. go there. ^(70 Rule N.B.) Non, je n'y ALLAI pas. ^(70 Rule N.B.)
 Did you not speak to my mother? Ne PARLÂTES-vous pas à ma mère ?
 Yes, I did; i.e. speak to her. ^(70 Rule N.B.) Oui, je lui PARLAI. ^(70 Rule N.B.)

IMPERFECT TENSE.

J' AVAIS, I had, }
 J' ÉTAIS, I was, } then, at that time, when that happened, in a time imperfect or uncertain.
 Je PARLAIS, I spoke, did speak;

The IMPERFECT is used in THREE different instances.

1st. When we speak of an action that was passing, and consequently imperfect or incomplete at a time we allude to, though at the time in which we relate it, it is perfect or accomplished, we use the IMPERFECT tense of the verb: viz. AVAIS, ÉTAIS, PARLAIS, &c.

138

These instances are generally expressed in english by the gerund or present participle in *ing* added to *was* or *were*; as,

What were you doing there? Que FAISIEZ-vous là
 I was writing to a friend. J'ÉCRIVAIS à un ami.
 I was getting ready to go out. Je m'APPRÊTAIS à sortir.
 I was going to call upon you. J'ALLAIS passer chez vous.
 I was talking of you just now. Je PARLAIS de vous tout à l'heure.
 I was going out, as you came in. Je SORTAIS, comme vous ENTRIEZ.

2nd. When we wish to denote that the action of which we speak was habitual, or has been reiterated, we must use the IMPERFECT.

139

In these instances, the english verb may be changed into the infinitive, with *did use*, or *used*, before it; as,

Where did you walk in London
 viz. Where did you use to walk &c. Où vous PROMENIEZ-vous à Londres ?
 I generally walked in the park. [le parc.
 or, I used to walk &c. Je me PROMENAIS ordinairement dans
 I often met frenchmen there.
 or, I used to meet &c. J'y RENCONTRAIS souvent des français.
 I always spoke french with them.
 or, I used to speak &c. Je PARLAIS toujours français avec eux.

* It is not necessary in order to use the past tenses, that every verb should be attended by an expression denoting a time past; it is sufficient that the time be mentioned or alluded to at the beginning of the discourse, because the mind naturally goes back to the period which has either been mentioned or alluded to.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

140

3rd. Another very extensive use of the *IMPERFECT* is in *descriptions* for whenever we describe the *qualities* of persons, or things, the *state, place, situation, order, disposition* in which they were in a *time past*, we use the *IMPERFECT*; as,

Where *were* you yesterday?

I *was* in the country.

I *was*²⁴¹ not well.*

I *had* a bad head-ache.

Was the country pleasant?

Yes; but it *was*²⁴⁰ rather hot.

Où ÉTIEZ-vous hier?

J'ÉTAIS à la campagne.

Je ne PORTAIS²⁴¹ pas bien.

J'AVAIS grand mal à la tête.*

La campagne ÉTAIT-elle agréable?

Oui; mais il FAISAIT²⁴⁰ un peu chaud.

N B. Observe however, that if the *duration* of the state, &c. which we wish to describe was *limited* to a *period* of which the *end was known*, we

* The greatest difficulty attending the past tenses is how to discriminate this last instance of the *imperfect* from the *perfect*, i. e. how to distinguish an *action* from a *state of being*, and indeed the distinction is sometimes so nice, that it is not surprising foreigners should err in the use of them; for example,

FIRST instance.

I WAS very wet in going into the country.

He WAS killed in falling from his horse.

He HAD his leg carried off by a cannon ball.

SECOND instance.

I WAS so wet that I could not stay

He WAS dead when we found him.

He HAD also a wound in his breast.

WAS and HAD in these various instances can not be expressed by the same tense in french.

When, in the first instance, I say; I WAS very wet in going into the country; He WAS killed in falling; He HAD his leg carried off &c. I am relating facts, events which happened, of the end of which a perfect idea may be formed, and these must be expressed by the *perfect*.

But when, in the second instance, I say; I WAS so wet that I could not stay; He WAS dead when we found him; He HAD also a wound in his breast; I no longer express the facts themselves, of being wet, of being killed &c. but describe a *state of being*, i. e. I WAS in a wet state; He WAS in a dead state; He WAS in a wounded state, the duration of which is not limited to any time, and can not be ascertained, and these are expressed by the *imperfect*; thus,

FIRST instance."

Je FUS très mouillé en allant à la campagne.

Il FUT tué en tombant de cheval.

Il EUT la jambe emportée d'un coup de canon.

SECOND instance.

J' ÉTAIS si mouillé que je ne pus pas rester.

Il ÉTAIT mort quand nous le trouvâmes.

Il AVAIT aussi une blessure à la poitrine.

In order to elucidate this still more, and try the rules that have just been laid down, let us peruse a piece of history where the difference between a *narration* and a *description*, a *fact* and an *incident*, will appear obvious.

Calippo could not console herself for the departure of Ulysses. In her grief, she considered her immortality as a misfortune. Her grotto no longer resounded with the sweet harmony of her voice. The nymphs who attended her, dared not to speak to her. She often walked alone upon the flowery turf which an eternal spring diffused round her island; but these charming abodes, far from assuaging her grief, served only to recall the sad remembrance of Ulysses, whom she had so many times seen by her side. Frequently she stood motionless on the beach of the sea, which she watered with her tears, and she was incessantly turned towards that quarter where the ship of Ulysses, plowing the waves, had disappeared from her eyes. All on a sudden, she PERCEIVED pieces of a ship which had just been wrecked; then she DESCRIBED two men at a distance, one of

Calippo ne POUVAIT¹⁴⁰ se consoler du départ d'Ulysse. Dans sa douleur, elle se TROUVAIT¹⁴⁰ malheureuse d'être immortelle. Sa grotte ne RESONNAIT¹⁴⁰ plus du doux chant de sa voix. Les nymphes qui la SERVAIENT¹⁴⁰ n' OSAIENT¹⁴⁰ lui parler. Elle se PROMENAIT¹³⁹ souvent seule sur les gazons fleuris dont un printems éternel BORDAIT¹⁴⁰ son île; mais ces beaux lieux, loin de modérer sa douleur ne FAISAIENT¹³⁹ que lui rappeler le triste souvenir d'Ulysse qu' elle y AVAIT¹⁴⁰ vu tant de fois auprès d'elle. Souvent elle DEMEURAIT¹³⁹ immobile sur le rivage de la mer qu' elle ARROSAIT¹³⁹ de ses larmes, et elle ÉTAIT¹⁴⁰ sans cesse tournée vers le côté où le vaisseau d' Ulysse, fendait les ondes, AVAIT¹⁴⁰ disparu à ses yeux. Tout à coup, elle APPERÇUT¹³⁷ les débris d'un navire qui VENAIT¹⁴⁰ de faire naufrage; puis elle DECOUVRIT¹³⁷ de loin

INDICATIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

should not use the imperfect; we should use either the *compound* of the *present* or the *perfect*, according to the period mentioned, or alluded to; for though I should say,

J'ÉTAIS malade ce matin. I was ill this morning.

J'AVAIS hier grand mal à la tête. I had a bad head-ache yesterday

I would not say:

J'ÉTAIS malade, but *j'AI ÉTÉ malade toute la matinée.*

J'AVAIS mal à la tête, but *j'EUS mal à la tête toute la journée;*

Because the state which I describe is known to have ended with the period mentioned, viz. *la matinée, la journée.*

whom was seemingly in years; the other, though a youth, resembled Ulysses. He had his sweet and lofty look, with his size and majestic deportment. The goddess UNDERSTOOD that it was Telemachus the son of that hero, but she COULD not find out who that venerable man was by whom Telemachus was accompanied.

deux hommes dont l'un PARRAISAIT¹⁴⁰ âgé; l'autre, quoique jeune, RESSEMBLAIT¹⁴⁰ à Ulysse. Il AVAIT¹⁴⁰ sa douceur et sa fierté, avec sa taille et sa démarche majestueuse. La déesse COMPRIT¹³⁷ que c'ÉTAIT¹⁴⁰ Télémaque fils de ce héros, mais elle ne PUT¹³⁷ découvrir qui ÉTAIT¹⁴⁰ cet homme vénérable dont Télémaque ÉTAIT¹⁴⁰ accompagné.

Now, if we select from the above passage the facts that constitute the ground of the narration, we shall find them to be these:

Calypso, standing on her island, perceived the wreck of a ship; then she described two men, the one young and the other old. She understood the young one to be Telemachus, but she could not recognise the other. And the verbs expressing these facts are in the *perfect*. The verbs which form only incidents, such as the description of Calypso and her island, of Telemachus and his shipwreck, and which might be left out of the narration, without impairing it, but not without stripping it of its beauties, are in the *imperfect*.

Let us examine another piece of the same author, in which there will be more narration, and less description, or more facts and fewer incidents.

Telemachus, relating the manner in which he escaped the danger of being taken by the Trojan fleet, says:

The affability and the courage of the sage Mentor charmed me; but I was still more surprised, when I saw with what address he delivered us from the Trojans. At the moment when the skies began to clear, and the Trojans, having a nearer view of us, would infallibly have known us; he observed one of their ships that was almost similar to ours, which the storm had separated from the rest. Her poop was adorned with particular flowers. He hastened to put upon our poop garlands of flowers similar to theirs. He fastened them himself with fillets of the same colour as those of the Trojans. He ordered all our rowers to stoop as much as they could along their benches, that they might not be known by the enemy. In this manner we passed through the middle of their fleet, and whilst they were driven by the impetuosity of the winds towards Africa, we made all our endeavours to reach the neighbouring coast of Sicily. There indeed we arrived; but &c.

La douceur et le courage du sage Mentor me CHARMERENT¹³⁷; mais je FUS¹³⁷ encore bien plus surpris, quand je VIS¹³⁷ avec quelle adresse il nous DELIVRA¹³⁷ des Troyens. Dans le moment où le ciel COMMENÇAIT¹³⁸ à s'éclaircir et que les Troyens, nous voyant de plus près, n'auraient pas manqué de nous reconnaître; il REMARQUA¹³⁷ un de leurs vaisseaux qui ÉTAIT¹⁴⁰ presque semblable au nôtre, et que la tempête AVAIT¹⁴⁰ écarté. La poupe en ÉTAIT¹⁴⁰ couronnée de certaines fleurs. Il se HATA¹³⁷ de mettre sur notre poupe des couronnes de fleurs semblables. Il les ATTACHA¹³⁷ lui même avec des bandelettes de la même couleur que celles des Troyens. Il ORDONNA¹³⁷ à tous nos rameurs de se baisser le plus qu'ils pourraient le long de leurs bancs, pour n'être point reconnus des ennemis. En cet état nous PASSAMES¹³⁷ au milieu de leur flotte, et pendant que les vents impétueux les POUSSAIENT¹³⁸ vers l'Afrique, nous FIMES¹³⁷ les derniers efforts pour arriver sur la côte voisine de Sicile. Nous y ARRIVAMES¹³⁷ en effet; mais &c. FENELON.

The narrative part of this history is; the affability &c. of the sage Mentor charmed me, but I was still more surprised when I saw with what address he delivered us from the Trojans. He observed one of their ships with flowers on her poop. He hastened to put similar flowers upon ours. He fastened them himself with fillets of the same colour as those of the Trojans. He ordered all our rowers to stoop along their benches, that we might not be known by the enemy. In this manner we passed through the middle of their fleet, and made all our efforts to reach the coast of Sicily, where we arrived &c. by which you see that all the verbs which are necessary to the train of the narration, because they declare facts, are in the *perfect tense*, those which denote only incidents, are in the *imperfect*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

FUTURE POSITIVE.

J' AURAI,	I shall, will have,	} soon, by and by, tomorrow, next week, next month next year, &c. in any time to come.
Je SERAI,	I shall, will be,	
Je PARLERAI,	I shall, will speak;	

141 The *FUTURE* tense is used in french as in english, to express what is to happen in a *time to come*; as,
I will call upon you by and by. Je PASSERAI tantôt chez vous.

142 The *PRESENT* tense is sometimes used in both languages, instead of the *future*; so we say,
Où ALLEZ-vous ce soir? Where do you go this evening?
for, Où IREZ-vous ce soir? Where shall you go this evening?

N. B. But if *TWO* verbs denoting *futurity* come in the same sentence, the *second* verb can *not* be put in the *present* tense in french, as it is sometimes in english, it must be put in the *FUTURE*; as,

Call upon me, when you are ready; the *time* for calling and for being ready, *having yet to come*, I would not say in french,
PASSEZ chez moi, quand vous ÊTES prêt, which would denote that the person is ready at the time I am speaking; I must say,
PASSEZ chez moi, quand vous SEREZ prêt, i. e. when you will be ready.
I will call as soon as I have dined.

Je PASSERAI aussi tôt que j'AURAI dîné; not, aussi tôt que j'AI dîné, which would denote that the person had dined at the time he is speaking.
This generally happens after the words *when, as soon as, as long, as after.*

FUTURE CONDITIONAL.

J' AURAIS,	I should, would have,	} if I could, if I would, if I had time, if such a thing happened.
SERAIS,	I should, would be,	
PARLERAIS,	I should, would speak;	

143 The *CONDITIONAL* has also the same properties in french as in english; it denotes that a thing would be done, if some condition was granted; as,
I would call there, if I could. J'y PASSERAI, si je pouvais.

144 After the conjunction *IF, SI; SHALL, WILL* must not be considered as *signs* of the *future*, nor *SHOULD, WOULD* as *signs* of the *conditional* of the verb which follows them; *WILL* is then the *present* tense, and *WOULD* the *imperfect* of the verb *TO WILL, to BE WILLING*, and they must be expressed, *WILL* by the *present*, and *WOULD* by the *imperfect* of the verb *VOULOIR*, with the following verb in the *INFINITIVE* in french; as,
I will go with you, if you will come with me; i. e. if you are willing to come
J'IRAI avec vous, si vous VOULEZ venir avec moi.* [(gg.)
I would go with you, if you would come with me; i. e. if you were willing
J'IRAIS avec vous, si vous VOULIEZ venir avec moi.* [to come.

N. B. If *SHOULD* is the sign that follows *IF*, it must be left out, and the following verb put in the *IMPERFECT*; as,
If he should come, what should I say to him? S'il VENAIT, que lui dirais-je?

* In these examples, you see *will* used first as a *sign* of the *future* of the following verb, then as the *present* of the verb *to will*; *would* first used as a *sign* of the *conditional*, then as the *imperfect* of the verb *to will*. If the learner finds himself embarrassed how to distinguish the *verb* from the *sign*, let him try to substitute in the place of *will, would* some verb of the same meaning, i. e. denoting *will, wish, inclination, desire*, such as *please, like, choose, be willing*; and he will know by the sense it will make, which is the *verb* and which is the *sign*. See also note * page 143.

(gg.) If *SI* is used for *WHETHER*; *SHALL, WILL* must be expressed by the *future*, and *SHOULD, WOULD* by the *conditional*; as,

Do you know whether he will come?

I want to know whether he would come.

Savez-vous s' il VIENDRA ?

Je veux savoir s' il VIENDRAIT.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

It has been said, (p. 224,) that when we *declare* that a thing *is* or *is not*, or that it *is in our power* to have it so, that mode of expression is called *INDICATIVE*, or *declarative*; but if the thing spoken of *is not asserted* to be or not to be; if it is mentioned only as a thing which *may* or *may not be*, and *is not to be depended upon*, this mode of expression is called *potential*, *conjunctive*, or *SUBJUNCTIVE*.*

If we speak of an action the event of which is *uncertain*, which is generally the case when, in a sentence of *TWO PARTS* connected by the conjunction *QUE*, the *first PART* is either *INTERROGATIVE* or *NEGATIVE*, or is attended by some expression denoting *DOUBT*; as for ex. when I say;

Do you think your sister will come?

I do not think she *will come* to-day.

If I hear that she comes, I will let you know;

In which instances it remains *uncertain* whether the person will come or not; this *uncertainty* is imparted in french, by putting the verb in the *second part* of the sentence in the *SUBJUNCTIVE*; thus,

Pensez-vous que votre sœur VIENNE? not, VIENDRA.

Je NE pense PAS qu'elle VIENNE aujourd'hui; not, VIENDRA.

Si j'apprends qu'elle VIENNE, je vous le ferai savoir.

VIENDRA and VIENT would assert as a *fact*, what the first part of the sentence shews to be *doubtful*.

N.B. With respect to *INTERROGATIVE* sentences, it must be observed, that it is only when we wish to impart *ignorance* or *doubt* of the thing inquired after, that the *subjunctive* is required after them; for if we knew that a thing *is* or *will be*, and only enquired whether the person to whom we speak knows it likewise, we should use the *INDICATIVE*; as,

Do you not believe that she will come? Ne croyez-vous pas qu'elle VIENDRA?

Do not you know that she is married? Ne savez-vous pas qu'elle EST mariée? which sentences express the same idea as these;

She will come, do you not believe it? She is married, do not you know it?

* A few examples will make the difference between the *INDICATIVE* and *SUBJUNCTIVE* moods more obvious:

They say that peace is made. I believe that peace is made.

By these expressions I declare, in a *positive manner*, that, in the opinion of some person, the thing of which I am speaking (*peace*) *does* or *does not exist*, and this positive assertion must be made with the *indicative*; thus,

On dit que la paix EST faite. Je crois que la paix EST faite.

But by these expressions;

Do they say that peace is made? I do not believe that peace is made.

I do not assert that peace *does* or *does not exist*; I either declare that I am *ignorant* of it, or that I *doubt* its existence; but a thing may exist, though I am ignorant of it; it may exist, though I am not convinced of its existence, and this *uncertainty*, whether the thing is or is not, is imparted to the hearer by means of the *subjunctive* mood;

Dit-on que la paix SOIT faite? Je ne crois pas que la paix SOIT faite.

Again, I know somebody who *will lend* me money. He promised that *he would lend* me some

These are *positive* assertions, and they must be made with the *indicative*;

Je connais quelqu'un qui me PRÊTERA de l'argent.

Il a promis qu'il m'en PRÊTERAIT. But in these other instances;

I seek for somebody who *will lend* me money.

Do you know any body who *would lend* me money?

It is not asserted whether the thing I am speaking of, *will*, or *will not be*, i. e. whether the money *will be lent* or *not*; the event remains *uncertain*, and this uncertainty must be expressed by the *subjunctive*;

Je cherche quelqu'un qui me PRÊTE, or qui VEUILLE me prêter de l'argent.

Connaissez-vous quelqu'un qui VOULÛT me prêter de l'argent?

The *indicative* mood (says Harris) which, in all grammars, is the first in order, is also the first, both in dignity and use; it is this which publishes our sublimest perceptions, which exhibits the soul in her purest energies, superior to the imperfections of desires and wants, which includes the whole of time and its minutest distinctions.

As to the potential (*subjunctive*) mood, it is only of a subordinate nature, and it implies but a *dubious* and *conjectural* assertion; whereas that of the *indicative* is *absolute*, and without *reserve*. (HERMFS, page 158, 159.)

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

146

The *SUBJUNCTIVE* mood is required after all *verbs* and *adjectives*, denoting *will, wish, desire, command, fear, wonder, surprise, astonishment, joy, gladness, grief, sorrow*, in short, after all expressions which denote any *passion* or *emotion* of the mind,* as,

I will have you do that.

I wish you may succeed.

I desired it to be got ready.

I am afraid he will spoil it.

I am surprised he is not here.

I am glad you are come.

I am sorry he has not seen it.

Je veux que vous FASSIEZ *cela.*

Je souhaite que vous RÉUSSISSEZ.

J'ai ordonné qu'on le PRÉPARE.

Je crains qu'il ne le GÂTE.

Je suis surpris qu'il ne SOIT *pas* ici.

Je suis bien aise que vous SOYEZ *venu.*

Je suis fâché *qu'il* ne l'AIT *pas* vu.

147

The *SUBJUNCTIVE* mood is also required in french after the following *verbs* and *adjectives*, though they neither denote *doubt* nor *passion* ;

Il FAUT } *que je* le VOIE.

Il est TEMS } *que je* le VOIE.

C'est le SEUL *ami* *que j'*AIE.

Il CONVIENT } *que j'y* AILLE.

Il IMPORTE } *que j'y* AILLE.

Il VAUT MIEUX } *que j'y* AILLE.

Il SUFFIT } *que je* lui PARLE.

Il est À PROPOS } *que je* lui PARLE.

Il est NÉCESSAIRE } *que je* lui PARLE.

Il est INDIFFÉRENT } *que cela* SOIT.

Il est CRUEL } *que cela* SOIT.

Il est HONTEUX } *que cela* SOIT.

Il est JUSTE } *qu'il* le FASSE.

Il est INJUSTE } *qu'il* le FASSE.

Il est POSSIBLE } *qu'il* le FASSE.

Il est IMPOSSIBLE } *qu'il* le FASSE.

I must see him.

It is *time* that *I should* see him.

He is the *only* friend *I have*.

It is *becoming*

It is *material* } that *I should* go.

It is *better* }

It is *sufficient* }

It is *fit* } that *I speak* to him.

It is *necessary* }

It is *indifferent* }

It is *cruel*. } that it *should* be so.

It is *shameful* }

It is *just* }

It is *unjust* }

It is *possible* } that he *should* do it.

It is *impossible* }

After an *ADJECTIVE* in the *superlative* degree, (see 50 rule.)

After *RIEN, AUCUN, PAS UN, PERSONNE*, (note *dd*, p. 219.)

After *QUELQUE, QUI QUE CE SOIT, QUOI QUE CE SOIT*, (114, 115, 117, 118 rules.)

After the conjunctions *AFINQUE, QUOIQUE, &c.* (see 218 rule.)

* The ingenious Mr. HARRIS, (HERMES, p. 15, 16.) gives the following definition of the powers of the soul, which may throw some light upon this intricate subject.

The powers of the soul may be included in those of PERCEPTION, and those of VOLITION.

By the powers of PERCEPTION, I mean the senses and the intellect. By the powers of VOLITION, I mean not only the will, but the several passions and appetites; in short, all that moves to action, whether rational or irrational.

If the leading powers of the soul be these two, it is plain that every speech or sentence, as far as it exhibits the soul, must of course respect one or other of these.

If we assert, then it is a sentence which respects the powers of PERCEPTION; for what, indeed, is it to assert, but to publish some perception, either of the senses, or of the intellect.

If we interrogate, if we command, if we pray, if we wish, what do we but publish so many different VOLITIONS? for, Who is it that questions? He who has a desire to be informed. Who is it that commands? He who has a will, which he would have obeyed. What are those beings who either wish or pray? Those who feel certain wants, either for themselves or for others.

If then the soul's leading powers be the two above mentioned, and if it be true that all speech is a publication of these powers, it will follow, that every sentence will be either a sentence of ASSERTION, or a sentence of VOLITION.

To this may be added that sentences of assertion require the INDICATIVE, and sentences of volition require the SUBJUNCTIVE mood after them.

TENSES of the SUBJUNCTIVE.

The *SUBJUNCTIVE* mood being always *subordinate* to a verb that *precedes* it,* its tenses are *regulated* by this *foregoing* verb.

PRESENT TENSE.

J' AIE,	I have,	may have,	} used after the present and future of the indicative.
Je SOIS,	I be,	may be,	
Je PARLE,	I speak,	may speak;	

The *PRESENT* of the *SUBJUNCTIVE* is used, when the verb which requires the *SUBJUNCTIVE* after it, is in the *present* or *future* of the *INDICATIVE*; as, 148

Present. Do you think	{	I shall have time?	PENSEZ-VOUS	{	que j' AIE le tems?
		I shall be ready?			que je SOIS prêt?
		I shall speak to her?			que je lui PARLE?
Future. He will wait	{	till I have time;	Il ATTENDRA	{	que j' AIE le tems;
		till I am ready;			que je SOIS prêt;
		till I speak to her.			que je lui PARLE.

PERFECT TENSE.

J' EUSSE,	I had,	might have,	} used after the perfect, imperfect, and conditional tenses.
Je FUSSES,	I were,	might be,	
Je PARLASSE,	I spoke,	might speak;	

The *PERFECT* of the *SUBJUNCTIVE* is used, when the verb which requires the *SUBJUNCTIVE* after it, is in the *perfect*, *imperfect*, or *conditional*; as, 149

Perfect. He waited	{	till I had time;	Il ATTENDIT	{	que j' EUSSE le tems;
		till I was ready;			que je FUSSE prêt;
		till I spoke to her.			que je lui PARLASSE.
Imperf. He was waiting	{	till I had time;	Il ATTENDAIT	{	que j' EUSSE le tems;
		till I should be ready;			que je FUSSE prêt;
		till I should speak to her			que je lui PARLASSE.
Condit. Would he wait	{	till I had time?	ATTENDRAIT il	{	que j' EUSSE le tems?
		till I should be ready?			que je FUSSE prêt?
		till I should speak to her?			que je lui PARLASSE?

N.B. The *PERFECT* of the *SUBJUNCTIVE* is also used, though the foregoing verb is in the *present* of the *indicative*, if after the *subjunctive* there is another verb in the *imperfect*, or some *conditional* expression; as, 150

Do you think I *might* speak to her, if I *went* now?

Pensez-vous que je PUSSE lui parler, si j'y ALLAIS à présent?

I do not think I *should* have succeeded *without* your assistance.

Je ne pense pas que j' EUSSE réussi SANS votre secours; i. e. if you had not [assisted me.]

And also when the action expressed by the verb is *past*; as,

It is no wonder that he *was* wicked.

Il n'EST pas étonnant qu'il FÛT méchant.

If, after a verb in the *SUBJUNCTIVE*, there is another verb, preceded by the *conjunction* *QUE*, that verb must also be in the *SUBJUNCTIVE*; as, 151

Do you think she *expects* that I *shall* come?

Pensez-vous qu'elle s'ATTENDE que je VIENNE?

* Except in some sentences of *WISH*, where the verb *wish* is understood; as,
 God be blessed! Dieu SOIT béni!
 May you be happy! PUISSIEZ-vous être heureux!
 Would to God I had never seen him! PLUT à dieu que je ne l' EUSSE jamais vu!

GERUND or present PARTICIPLE.

AYANT,	having,	} N. B. AYANT, ETANT, never change their termination.
ÉTANT,	being,	
PARLANT,	speaking;	

152 The GERUND or present PARTICIPLE, joined to a noun, generally denotes *quality*, and, like an adjective, agrees with it in *gender* and *number*; She is a *charming* woman. *C'est une femme* CHARMANTE.
She has *engaging* manners. *Elle a des manières* ENGAGEANTES.

153 But the GERUND expressing the *action*, and not the quality of the substantive to which it refers, does not require any agreement with it; as, I saw her *in coming* home. *Je la vis en* VENANT *au logis.* (hh)
I found them *in walking* here. *Je les trouvai en me* PROMENANT *ici.*
N. B. If the substantive to which the GERUND refers is the *object* of the verb, it is better to express it with the *indicative*; thus,
I found her *coming* here. *Je la trouvai qui* VENAIT *ici.*
I saw them *walking*. *Je les vis qui se* PROMENAIENT.

154 The english GERUND governed by a *verb*, or the *prepositions* OF, FROM, AT, FOR, AFTER, WITH, WITHOUT, is expressed by the *infinitive* in french; I see him *coming*. *Je le vois* VENIR *or qui* VIENT.
Without bringing his book. *Sans* APPORTER *son livre.*
I was prevented *from doing* it. *On m'a empêché de le* FAIRE.
I was tired *with waiting*. *J'étais las d'*ATTENDRE.
After having stayed so long. *Après* AVOIR *resté si long* tems.
I was afraid of *being* too late. *Je craignais d'y* ÊTRE *trop tard.*

155 The GERUND, so often used in english with the auxiliary verb BE, to render an action more definite, can not be expressed by the *gerund* in french; the *auxiliary* verb must be *left out* and the *gerund* be made into a *VERB*, in the *same tense* and *person* as the auxiliary verb is; as,
I am *speaking*. *Je* PARLE; never, *Je suis* }
Thou art *speaking*. *Tu* PARLES; *Tu es* }
He is *speaking*. *Il* PARLE; *Il est* }
I was *speaking*. *Je* PARLAIS; *J'étais* }
I shall be *speaking*. *Je* PARLERAI; *Je serai* }
PARLANT.
See the conjugations, p. 112.

156 The GERUND, when used as a *substantive* in english, *i. e.* preceded by an *article*, can not be expressed by the *gerund* in french; it must be expressed by a *NOUN*, if a noun *synonymous* to the verb can be found; as,
Let us go *a walking*. *Allons à la* PROMENADE.
Her singing was much admired. *Son* CHANT *fut fort* admiré.
He gives all his time *to gaming*. *Il donne tout son* tems *au* JEU.
That is the cause of *his being* poor. *C'est là la cause de sa* PAUVRETÉ.
If a *NOUN* *synonymous* to the verb can not readily be found, give another *turn* to the sentence; as,
What is the reason of *your coming* so late?
Quelle est la raison que vous VENEZ *si tard?* *i. e.* that *you come* &c.
The impoverishing of some is *the enriching* of others.
CE QUI APPAUVRIT *les uns* ENRICHIT *les autres*; *i. e.* *what* impoverishes.

(hh) EN is the only preposition which the gerund admits before it in french, therefore the preposition BY, which is often prefixed to it in english, must be expressed by EN; as,
They saved the city *by* surrendering. *Ils sauvèrent la ville* EN *se* rendant.
You gained his esteem *by* forgiving him. *Vous avez gagné son estime* EN *lui* pardonnant.

EU, had, PAST PARTICIPLE.
 ÊTÉ, been, N.B. ÊTÉ never varies its termination.
 PARLÉ, spoken;

The *PAST PARTICIPLE* joined to a *noun*, has the property of an *AD-JECTIVE*, and agrees in *gender* and *number* with that *noun*; 157

A well *made* man. UN homme bien FAIT.

A well *made* woman. UNE femme bien FAITE.

After the auxiliary verbs *AVOIR* and *ÊTRE*, a *distinction* must be made.

After *ÊTRE*, *to BE*, the *PAST PARTICIPLE* must be of the same *gender* and *number* as the *NOMINATIVE* of the verb; ex. 158

IL est bien FAIT. ILS sont bien FAITS.

ELLE est bien FAITE. ELLES sont bien FAITES.

After *AVOIR*, *to HAVE*, the *PAST PARTICIPLE* does *not* agree with the *NOMINATIVE* of the verb; so we say, 159

IL a bien FAIT. ILS ont bien FAIT.

ELLE a bien FAIT. ELLES ont bien FAIT.

In these instances you must consider whether the *PARTICIPLE* has an *OBJECT*, and whether this *OBJECT* comes *before* or *after* the *PARTICIPLE*.

If the *PARTICIPLE* comes *BEFORE* its *OBJECT*, it *does not* require any agreement with it; but if it comes *AFTER* the *OBJECT*, it must *agree* like an *ADJECTIVE* in *gender* and *number* with that *OBJECT*; ex.

PARTICIPLE BEFORE ITS OBJECT.

My brother has *made* a *mistake*. Mon frère a FAIT une faute.

My sister has *made* a *mistake*. Ma sœur a FAIT une faute.

My brothers have *made* a *mistake*. Mes frères ont FAIT une faute.

PARTICIPLE AFTER ITS OBJECT.

Here is the *mistake* he has *made*. Voici la faute qu'il a FAITE.

Here is the *mistake* she has *made*. Voici la faute qu'elle a FAITE.

Here is the *mistake* they have *made*. Voici la faute qu'ils ont FAITE.

N. B. Observe that the participle *agrees* only with its *direct object* (see 162 rule); for if the *object* is governed by a *preposition* expressed or understood, the participle *does not* agree with that *object*; so, though we say, *Il nous a vus*, he has *seen* us; we could not say, *Il nous a dits des nouvelles*, he has *told* us news; we must say, *il nous a dit*; because *nous* is here used for *à nous*, to us.

Sometimes after the *PARTICIPLE* preceded by an *OBJECT*, there is a *verb* in the *INFINITIVE*, then it is necessary to consider whether the *OBJECT* is governed by the *PARTICIPLE*, or by the *INFINITIVE* which follows it. 160

If the *OBJECT* is governed by the *PARTICIPLE*, the *participle* must be of the same *gender* and *number* as that *OBJECT*; ex.

The letter I have *given* him to copy. La LETTRE que je lui ai donnée à copier.

If the *OBJECT* is governed by the *INFINITIVE* which follows the *participle*, the *participle* has *no* agreement with the *object*; as,

The letter I have *told* him to copy. La LETTRE que je lui ai dit de copier.*

The participles *PLU*, *pleased*; *DÛ*, *owed*, *ought*; *PU*, *been able*; and *VOULU*, *been willing*; do not agree with the *object* that precedes them, because the *infinitive* of the foregoing verb is *understood* after them; ex. 161

Je lui ai rendu tous les SERVICES que j'ai PU, lui RENDRE understood.

I have done him all the *services* that I have *been able*, to *do* understood.

* If you are uncertain whether the *object* is governed by the *participle*, or by the *infinitive* which follows it, *transpose* the words, and see after which the *object* may more properly be placed.

If the *object* can be placed *after* the *participle*, as in the first instance, *The letter I have given him to copy*, which may be turned, *I have given him the letter to copy*; the *participle given* governs the *object letter*, and it must agree with it.

If the *object* comes more properly after the *infinitive*, as in the second instance, *The letter I have told him to copy*, which might be turned, *I have told him to copy the letter*, (not, *the letter to copy*) the *object letter* is governed by the *infinitive to copy*, and the *participle* has no agreement with it.

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

- 162 When a verb governs *TWO SUBSTANTIVES* (see note * page 205) one of them is the *direct OBJECT* of the verb, and does not require *any preposition*; the other is an *indirect OBJECT*, and requires a *preposition*, expressed before a noun, and generally *implied* in the pronouns*; as,
 I gave her a nosegay. *Je LUI ai donné un BOUQUET.*
 Q. I gave *what*? A. a nosegay. To whom? to her.
Nosegay is the *direct object* of the verb; to her is the *indirect*.
 Do not tell your mother of it. *Ne LE dites pas à votre MÈRE.*
 Do not tell *what*? do not tell *it*. To whom? to your mother;
 For it is the *thing* you tell, not the *person* you tell it to, which is the *object* of the verb.
- 163 When a verb governs *TWO OBJECTS*, the *direct OBJECT* is generally placed *BEFORE* the *indirect*; as,
 I gave your sister a nosegay. *J'ai donné un BOUQUET à votre SŒUR.*
 Yet the *indirect OBJECT* must be placed *first*, if by placing it *last*, it made the meaning *equivocal*; for example, we say,
Elle a jetté son BOUQUET dans la RUE.
 She has thrown her nosegay into the street; but we do not say:
Elle a jetté le BOUQUET que vous lui aviez donné dans la RUE.
 She has thrown *the nosegay* which you had given her *into the street*; because, *dans la RUE*, after *donné*, might be understood that the nosegay was given in the street, not that it was *thrown* into the street; we say:
Elle a jetté dans la RUE, le BOUQUET que vous lui aviez donné.
 She has thrown *into the STREET*, *the NOSEGAY* which you had given her.†
- 164 The same *NOUN* may be governed by *TWO VERBS* which are both used *without a PREPOSITION*, or which require both the same *PREPOSITION*; as,
 They attacked and took the place. *Ils ATTAQUÈRENT et PRIRENT la place.*
 But if one of the verbs requires a *PREPOSITION* after it, and the other does not, or if the two verbs require *different PREPOSITIONS*, the *noun* must be made the *object* of the *FIRST verb*, and an *objective pronoun* must be added for an *object* to the *SECOND verb*; so we could not say:
Ils ATTAQUÈRENT et se RENDIRENT maîtres de la place.
 They attacked and made themselves masters of the place; because *Rendre maître* requires a preposition after it, and *Attaquer* does not; we say:
Ils ATTAQUÈRENT la place, et s'EN RENDIRENT maîtres.
 They attacked the place, and made themselves masters of *IT*.
- 165 The same *VERB* may likewise govern *several PARTS* of a sentence, provided they are used in the same *SENSE*; as,
 I expect much from him, but still more from you.
J'ATTENDS BEAUCOUP de lui, mais ENCORE PLUS de vous.
 But if one of the parts is *affirmative*, and the other *negative*, the verb must be repeated in the *second part*; as,
 I expect every thing from you, and nothing from him.
J'ATTENDS TOUT de vous, et je N'ATTENDS RIEN de lui.
- 166 Some verbs govern indifferently the *infinitive* or the *subjunctive mood*; but if they govern *two VERBS*, they must be both in the same *MOOD*; as,
 I will prevent him from going out, and from doing you any harm.
Je l'empêcherai de SORTIR, et de vous FAIRE du mal; or
J'empêcherai qu'il ne SORTE, et qu'il ne vous FASSE du mal.

* See a table of the pronouns, page 74.

† The English should pay particular attention to this rule; they are very apt to act contrary to it, both in speaking and writing.

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

167

PASSIVE VERBS require **DE** or **PAR** before the noun which they govern.

They require **DE**, when the verb expresses an action *wholly of the mind*; as,
Your brother *is loved and esteemed* by all who know him.

Votre frère est AIMÉ et ESTIMÉ DE tous ceux qui le connaissent.

They require **PAR**, when the *bodily faculties* participate in the action; as,
He *was beaten* by a sailor, and *robbed* by a soldier.

Il a ÉTÉ BATTU PAR un matelot, et VOLÉ PAR un soldat.

But instead of these *passive* expressions, it is better in french to use the *active sense* of the verb, and say:

Tous ceux qui connaissent votre frère l'AIMENT et l'ESTIMENT.

All those who know your brother *love and esteem* him. (ii)

When **TWO VERBS** come together, without being joined by a **CONJUNCTION**, the *latter* is governed by the *former* in the **INFINITIVE**, sometimes *with*, and sometimes *without* a **PREPOSITION**.

The *preposition TO*, the sign of the *infinitive mood* in english, is expressed by **DE, À, POUR**, in french, but not indiscriminately. (kk)

(ii) Grammarians distinguish *three* SORTS of verbs, which they call **ACTIVE, PASSIVE, and NEUTER**.

ACTIVE, when the *action* of the verb *passes* from the *agent* to some *object*; as,

I TEACH your sister.

PASSIVE, when the *receiver* of the *action* is made the *leading power* of the verb; this is done by adding the *past participle* to the *auxiliary verb* **BE**; as,

Your sister IS TAUGHT by me.

NEUTER, *i. e.* neither *active* nor *passive*, when the whole energy of the verb *remains* in the *agent*, and is not *communicated* to any *object*; as,

I THINK, I WALK, I STAND, I SIT, I SLEEP, &c.

These distinctions are common to all languages.

But the English have a facility of changing **ACTIVE verbs** into **NEUTER verbs**, which the French have not; for example, when I say;

WE MET your brothers quarrelling: we PARTED them.

Here *met* and *parted* are *active*, because the energy of the verbs *met, parted* passes from the agent *we*, to an object *brothers*; if I take away the object, and say: *we met, we parted*; then *met* and *parted* are *neuter*, because the whole energy of the verb *remains* in the agent *we*.

Again; *I OPENED the door*; here *opened* is **ACTIVE**, because it has an object, *door*.

The door OPENED; here *opened* is **NEUTER**, because the action *remains* in the door itself.

To leave out this object would not render the verb *neuter* in french, it would only make the sentence incomplete.

To answer the same end, and give to the verb a *neuter* signification, the French add to it an *objective PRONOUN* of the same *PERSON* as the *agent* or *nominative*, by which means the whole *energy* of the verb *remains* in the same being; hence the number of *reflective verbs* with which the french language abounds: so in the first instance,

WE MET your brothers, we PARTED them; the French say:

Nous RENCONTRÂMES vos frères, nous les SEPARÂMES.

In the second,

WE MET; we PARTED. *Nous nous RENCONTRÂMES; Nous nous SEPARÂMES; i. e.* we ourselves *met*; we ourselves *parted*.

They STOPPED me; Ils m'ARRETÈRENT. *They STOPPED; Ils s'ARRETÈRENT; i. e.* they *stopped* themselves.

He OPENED the door; Il OUVRIT la porte. *The door OPENED; La porte s'OUVRIT; i. e.* the door *opened* itself.

N. B. The genius of the french language requires also that some verbs which have a kind of *passive* or *neuter* signification in english, should be made *reflective*, when we wish to shew that the action expressed by the verb is *not limited* to the instance of which we speak, but is *applicable* to all instances of the same kind; for example:

Ce mot n'EST pas bien PLACÉ; This word is not rightly PLACED; i. e. in this instance

Il se PLACE ordinairement avant le verbe; It is generally PLACED before the verb; i. e. its usual place is before the verb. These instances may also be expressed by **ON**; on *le place ordinairement avant le verbe.* See 92 rule.

(kk) When two verbs come together, without a *conjunction* between them, the *latter* is governed by the *former* in the **INFINITIVE**, whether the sign **TO** be expressed or not.

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

168

To, before an *INFINITIVE*, is expressed by *DE*, when it can be changed into *OF* or *FROM*, and the *infinitive* into the *GERUND* or *present participle*; *N.B.* This commonly happens after nouns used in a *definite* sense; as,

He has the pleasure of *seeing* her. *Il a le plaisir DE la VOIR.*

She has the vanity to think so. *Elle a la vanité DE le PENSER.**

* As this rule does not apply to all instances in which *TO* is expressed by *DE*, here is a list of the *verbs* and *adjectives* which require *DE* before the *infinitive* which follows them :

s' Abstenir de,	Abstain from.	se Garder de,	Take care to.
Accuser de,	Accuse of.	Gronder de,	Scold for.
Achever de,	Finish to.	se Hâter de,	Haste to.
Affecter de,	Affect to.	Heureux de,	Happy to.
Affligé de,	Afflicted to.	Impossible de,	Impossible to.
Aise de,	Glud to.	Incapable de,	Incapable of.
Appréhender de,	Fear to.	Inspirer de,	Inspire to.
s' Attendre de, à, †	Expect to.	Juger à propos de,	Think proper to.
Avertir de,	Warn to.	Jurer de,	Swear to.
s' Aviser de,	Bethink to.	Juste de,	Just to.
Blâmer de,	Blame to.	Lassé de,	Tired of, with.
Capable de,	Capable of, to.	Libre de,	At liberty to.
Cesser de,	Cease to.	Mander de,	Send word to.
Charger de,	Charge to.	Manquer de,	Fail to.
Charmé de, Ravide,	Delighted with.	Ménacer de,	Threaten to.
Commander de,	Command to.	Mériter de,	Deserve to.
Commencer de, à, †	Begin to.	Nécessaire de,	Necessary to.
Conjurer de,	Entreat to.	Négliger de,	Neglect to.
Conseiller de,	Advise to.	Offrir de,	Offer to.
Consoler de,	Console for.	Omettre de,	Omit to.
Content de,	Content to.	Ordonner de,	Order to.
Continuer de, à, †	Continue to.	Oublier de,	Forget to.
Convaincre de,	Convince to.	Pardonner de,	Forgive for.
Convenir de,	Agree to.	Permettre de,	Permit to.
Craindre de,	Fear to.	Persuader de,	Persuade to.
Curieux de,	Curious to.	se Piquer de,	Pretend to.
Décourager de	Discourage with.	Plaindre de,	Pity to, for.
Défendre de,	Forbid to.	Possible de,	Possible to.
se Dépêcher de,	Make haste to.	Prescrire de,	Prescribe to.
Désespérer de,	Despair to.	Presser de,	Press to.
Désirer de,	Wish to.	Prier de,	Request to.
Déterminer de,	Determine to.	Promettre de,	Promise to.
Détourner de,	Divert from.	Proposer de,	Propose to.
Différer de,	Defer to, Delay to.	Recommander de,	Recommend to.
Dire de,	Tell to.	Refuser de,	Refuse to.
Discontinuer de,	Discontinue to.	Regretter de,	Regret to.
Disconvenir de,	Disown to.	se Réjouir de,	Rejoice to.
Dispenser de,	Dispense with.	Remercier de,	Thank for.
Dissuader de,	Dissuade from.	se Repentir de,	Repent of, to.
Doux de,	Pleasant to.	Reprocher de,	Reproach for.
Ecrire de,	Write to.	Résoudre de,	Resolve to.
s' Efforcer de,	Endeavour to.	Risquer de,	Risk to.
Enjoindre de,	Enjoin to.	Rougir de,	Blush to.
Empêcher de,	Prevent to.	Satisfait de,	Satisfied to, with.
s' Empresser de,	Eager to.	Solliciter de,	Solicit to.
Ennuyé de,	Tired of.	Sommer de,	Summon to.
Enragé de,	Enraged at.	se Soucier de,	Care to.
Entreprendre de,	Undertake to.	Souhaiter de,	Wish to.
Essayer de, à, †	Try to.	Soupçonner de,	Suspect to.
Etonné de,	Astonished at.	se Souvenir de,	Remember to.
Éviter de,	Avoid to.	Suffire de,	Sufficient to.
Excuser de,	Excuse to.	Suggerer de,	Suggest to.
Exempter de,	Exempt from.	Supplier de,	Entreat to.
Exorter de, à, †	Exhort to.	Sûr de,	Sure to.
Fâché de,	Sorry to.	Surpris de,	Surprised to.
Feindre de,	Feign to.	Tâcher de,	Endeavour to.
Finir de,	Finish to.	Tarder de,	Long to.
se Flatter de,	Flatter to.	se Vanter de,	Boast of.

† As it sounds best, i. e. *de* to avoid the sound of several *a*, and *a* to avoid the sound of several *de*

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

To, before an *INFINITIVE*, is expressed by *à*, when it can be changed into *IN*, and the english *infinitive* into the *GERUND* or *present participle*;

N.B. This is generally the case after nouns used in a *partitive* sense; as,

He has pleasure *in seeing* her. *Il a du plaisir à la VOIR.*

Is there vanity *to think* so? *Y a-t-il de la vanité à le PENSER?*†

† As this rule is not applicable to all instances in which *to* is expressed by *à*, here is a list of the *verbs* and *adjectives* which require *à* before the *infinitive* which follows them:

s' Abaisser à,	Stoop to.	Exercer à,	Exercise to.
Accoutumer à,	Accustom to.	Exciter à,	Excite to.
Admettre à,	Admit to.	Exposer à,	Expose to.
Admirable à, de,*	Wonderful to.	Facile à, de,*	Easy to.
Affreux à, de,*	Dreadful to.	se Fatiguer à,	Get tired with.
Agréable à, de,*	Agreeable to.	Forcer à, de,†	Force to.
Aider à,	Help to.	Gagner à,	Gain to.
Aimer à,	Like to.	Habile à,	Clever to.
Aisé à,	Easy to.	Habituer à,	Accustom to.
Amuser à,	Amuse to, with.	Hésiter à,	Hesitate to.
Animer à,	Animate to.	Horrible à, de,*	Horrid to.
s' Appliquer à,	Apply to.	Inciter à,	Incite to.
Apprendre à,	Learn to.	Ingenieux à,	Ingenious to.
s' Appréter à,	Get ready to.	Inviter à,	Invite to.
Aspirer à,	Aspire to.	Laid à,	Ugly to.
Assidu à,	Assiduous to.	Lent à,	Slow to.
s' Attacher à,	Stick to.	Manquer à,	Omit to.
Autoriser à,	Authorise to.	se Mettre à,	Set about to.
Avoir à,	Have to.	Montrer à,	Show to.
Beau à, de,*	Fine to.	Obliger à, de,†	Oblige to.
Bon à, de,*	Good to.	s' Obstiner à,	Obstinate to.
Charmant à,	Charming to.	Occupé à,	Busy to.
Chercher à,	Seek to.	s' Opiniâtrer à,	Obstinate to.
Condamner à,	Condemn to.	Parvenir à,	Arrive to.
Condescendre à,	Condescend to.	Passer à,	Spend in.
Consister à,	Consist to, in.	Penser à,	Think of.
Contraire à, de,†	Compel to.	Perdre à,	Lose in.
Contribuer à,	Contribute to.	Persister à,	Persist in.
Demander à,	Ask to.	se Plaire à,	Delight in.
Dépenser à,	Spend to, in.	Porter à,	Induce to.
Dernier à,	Last to.	Premier à,	First to.
Désagréable à, de,*	Disagreeable to.	Préparer à,	Prepare to.
Destiner à,	Destine to.	Prêt à,	Ready to.
Déterminer à,	Resolve upon.	Prompt à,	Quick to.
Difficile à, de,*	Difficult to.	Propre à,	Fit to.
Diligent à,	Diligent to.	Recommencer à,	Begin again to.
Disposer à,	Dispose to.	Renoncer à,	Renounce to.
Donner à,	Give to.	Résoudre à,	Resolve to.
s' Echauffer à,	Heat to.	Rester à,	Stay to.
s' Efforcer à,	Spend oneself to, in.	Réussir à,	Succeed to, in.
Effroyable à, de,*	Frightful to.	Servir à,	Serve to.
Employer à,	Employ to, Use to.	Soigneux à,	Careful to.
Encourager à,	Encourage to.	Songer à,	Think of.
Enclin à,	Inclined to.	Sujet à,	Subject to, apt to
Engager à,	Induce to.	Tâcher à,	Aim at.
Enhardir à,	Embolden to.	Tarder à,	Delay to.
Enseigner à,	Teach to.	Tendre à,	Tend to.
s' Etudier à,	Study to.	Terrible à, de,*	Terrible to.
Etre à,	Be to.	Travailler à,	Work to.
Exact à,	Exact to.	Venir à,	Come to.

* These adjectives require *à*, when the verb which precedes them has a *personal* nominative; they require *de*, when the nominative is *impersonal*; ex.

Cela est agréable, bon, beau à voir, à dire, à faire, That is agreeable, fine to see, &c.
 Il est agréable, bon, beau de voir, de dire, de faire, It is agreeable, fine to see, &c.

† De or à, as it sounds best in the active sense; always de in the passive; as,

On m'a obligé de or à le faire; They have obliged me to do it.

J' ai été obligé de le faire; I have been obliged to do it.

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS

170 *To*, before an *INFINITIVE*, is expressed by *POUR*, when the words *in order*, or *with an intention*, may be prefixed to it; as,

I did it *to (in order to)* oblige you. *Je l'ai fait POUR vous OBLIGER.*

We went there to see you. *Nous y allâmes POUR vous VOIR.*

N. B. The *english GERUND* preceded by the preposition *FOR*, explaining why a thing is done, is also expressed by the *INFINITIVE* with *POUR*;

He was hanged *for having* robbed. *Il a été pendu POUR AVOIR volé.*

He was flogged *for telling* lies. *Il a été fouetté POUR AVOIR menti.*

171 The *INFINITIVE* is used *without* a *PREPOSITION in french*, when it is the *nominative* of another verb; as,

To be rich is nothing; *ÊTRE riche n' EST rien;*

To be happy is every thing. *Le tout est d'ÊTRE heureux.*

172 The *INFINITIVE* is also used *without* a *PREPOSITION in french*, after the following verbs: viz.

AIMER mieux;	<i>J'aime mieux le FAIRE.</i> (U)	I would rather <i>do</i> it.
ALLER;	<i>Allons nous PROMENER.</i>	Let us go to <i>take</i> a walk.
APPERCEVOIR;	<i>Je l'aperçois MOUVOIR.</i>	I perceive it <i>move</i> .
ASSURER;	<i>Il assure l' AVOIR fait.</i>	He asserts to <i>have</i> done it.
CROIRE;	<i>Il croit me TROMPER.</i>	He thinks to <i>deceive</i> me.
COMPTER;	<i>Il compte PARTIR en peu.</i>	He purposes to go soon.
DAIGNER;	<i>Daignez me DIRE quand.</i>	Deign to <i>tell</i> me when.
DECLARER;	<i>Il déclare le SAVOIR.</i>	He declares to <i>know</i> it.
DEVOIR;	<i>Il doit me l' ENVOYER.</i>	He is to <i>send</i> it me.
ENTENDRE;	<i>Je l'entends PARLER.</i>	I hear him <i>speak</i> .
ENVOYER;	<i>Envoyez le CHERCHER.</i>	Send for it, or to <i>fetch</i> it.
ESPÉRER;	<i>J'espère le RENCONTRER.</i>	I expect to <i>meet</i> him.
FALLOIR;	<i>Il faut lui AIDER.</i>	It is necessary to <i>help</i> him.
s' IMAGINER;	<i>Je m'imagine y ÊTRE.</i>	I fancy myself to <i>be</i> there.
LAISSER;	<i>Laissez-le DIRE et FAIRE.</i>	Let him <i>say</i> and <i>do</i> .
OSER;	<i>Il n'ose l' AVOUER.</i>	He dares not <i>confess</i> it.
PARAÎTRE;	<i>Il paraît l' ENTENDRE.</i>	He seems to <i>understand</i> it.
PENSER;	<i>Il a pensé TOMBER.</i>	He had like to <i>have</i> fallen.
PRETENDRE;	<i>Prétend-il le FAIRE ?</i>	Does he pretend to <i>do</i> it?
POUVOIR;	<i>Il n'a pas pu me le DIRE.</i>	He could not <i>tell</i> it me.
RECONNAÎTRE;	<i>Je reconnais l' AVOIR dit.</i>	I acknowledge to <i>have</i> said it.
REGARDER;	<i>Je vous regarde FAIRE.</i>	I am looking at you <i>doing</i> it.
RETOURNER;	<i>Elle retourna la VOIR.</i>	She returned to <i>see</i> him.
SAVOIR;	<i>Il sait où la TROUVER.</i>	He knows where to <i>find</i> her.
SEMBLER;	<i>Elle semble AVOIR peur.</i>	She seems to <i>be</i> afraid.
SOUHAITER;	<i>Je souhaite la VOIR.*</i>	I wish to <i>see</i> her.
SOUTENIR;	<i>Il soutient l' AVOIR vu.</i>	He maintains to <i>have</i> seen it.
VALOIR mieux;	<i>Il vaut mieux lui ÉCRIRE.</i> (U)	It is better to <i>write</i> to her.
VENIR;	<i>Viendrez-vous me VOIR? (mm)</i>	Will you come to <i>see</i> me?
VOIR;	<i>Je vois VENIR votre sœur.</i>	I see your sister <i>coming</i> .
VOULOIR;	<i>Elle ne veut pas RESTER.</i>	She will not <i>stay</i> .

(U) AIMER MIEUX, VALOIR MIEUX, followed by another verb in the infinitive, require *DE* before the *second* infinitive; as,

I would rather stay than go; *J'aimerais mieux rester que d'y aller.*
It is better to go than stay alone; *Il vaut mieux y aller que DE rester seul.*

* Souhaiter may also be used with *de*; as, *Je souhaite le voir, or de le voir*; I wish to see him.

(mm) VENIR used for *to be just, to have just*, requires *DE* before the following infinitive; and in the sense of *to happen*, it requires *À*; as,

I have just seen her; *Je viens DE la voir.*
If she should happen to know it; *Si elle venait À le savoir.*

REMARKS ON THE VERBS.

WILL, WOULD.

If, by *WILL, WOULD*, you wish to denote *will, wish, desire*, you must express them by the corresponding tenses of the verb *VOULOIR*, with the following verb in the *infinitive*; if you wish to express a *determination*, to make a *positive assertion*, *WILL* must be considered as the sign of the *future*, and *WOULD* as the sign of the *conditional* of the following verb; ex.

173

My brother *will* not stay; } *Mon frère ne VEUT pas rester.*
 viz. *Is not willing* to stay.
 He *positively will* not stay. } *Mon frère ne RESTERA pas.* [see note * page 143.]
 My brother *would* not stay; }
 viz. *Had no desire* to stay. } *Mon frère ne VOULAIT pas rester.*
Would he not stay, if I asked him? } *Ne RESTERAIT-il pas, si je l'en priais?*

WILL HAVE, WOULD HAVE.

174

If *WILL HAVE, WOULD HAVE* are used to denote the *wish, the desire* to possess an object, they are expressed by the corresponding tenses of *VOULOIR* as above, and *HAVE* is left out; if they are used to denote not the *wish* to possess, but an *assurance* of the *possession* itself, they are expressed by the *future* or by the *conditional* of *AVOIR*; ex.

My brother *will have* this book; } *Mon frère VEUT ce livre.*
 viz. My brother *wishes* to have &c.
 He *will have* it, if he behaves well. } *Il l'AURA, s'il se comporte bien.*
 My brother *would have* this book; }
 viz. My brother *wished* to have &c. } *Mon frère VOULAIT ce livre.*
 He *would have* it, if he behaved well. } *Il l'AURAIT, s'il se comportait bien.*

N. B. If *WILL HAVE, WOULD HAVE*, in the sense of *wish, choose*, are followed by another *VERB*, the *object* of *HAVE* becomes the *nominative* of the following *VERB*, which must be in the *subjunctive* in french; as,

He *will have* his sister go with him; } *Il VEUT que sa sœur AILLE avec lui.*
 i.e. He *wishes* that his sister *should go*.

He *will not have* her stay alone. } *Il ne VEUT pas qu'elle RESTE seule.**

WOULD HAVE in the sense of *chosen, wished, been willing*, followed by a *PAST PARTICIPLE*, is expressed by the *imperfect* or by the *conditional* of *AVOIR* with the participle *VOULU*, and the english *participle* is expressed by the *infinitive* in french; as,

175

If you *would have told* him of it. } *Si vous AVIEZ VOULU le lui dire.*
 He *would not have believed* me. } *Il n'AURAIT pas VOULU me croire.*

SHOULD.

SHOULD, which is generally a *sign* of the *conditional* tense, is sometimes used in the sense of *OUGHT*, i. e. denoting *duty or necessity*, and is then expressed by the *conditional* tense of the verb *DEVOIR*; as,

176

You *should* go and see him (*ought*). } *Vous DEVRIEZ aller le voir.*
 He *should* let me know it. } *Il DEVRAIT me le faire savoir.*

SHOULD HAVE, OUGHT TO HAVE.

SHOULD HAVE, and OUGHT TO HAVE, followed by a *PAST PARTICIPLE*, are expressed by the *conditional* of *AVOIR*, with the *participle* *DÛ*, and the english *participle* is expressed by the *infinitive* in french; as,

177

You *ought to have seen* him. } *Vous AURIEZ DÛ le voir.*
 He *should have let* me know of it. } *Il AURAIT DÛ me le faire savoir.*

* When you say *I will have you, or I would have you do such a thing*, it is not the *person* that you wish to have, but you wish that the person *would do* the thing you mention; so we could not say, *je vous veux*, nor *je veux vous avoir*, nor *je vous curai*, which would mean that you want the *person*, not that you want the *thing* to be done; we must say, *je veux que vous fassiez telle chose*

REMARKS ON THE VERBS.

MAY, MIGHT.

178 If *MAY, MIGHT* are used to denote *power*, *MAY* is expressed by the *present* of the verb *POUVOIR*, viz. *puis*; and *MIGHT* by the *conditional* *pourrais*, with the following verb in the *INFINITIVE*; as,

I <i>may</i> or <i>can</i> see it, if I choose;	} <i>Je PUIS le voir, si je veux.</i>
i. e. It is in my <i>power</i> to see it, if &c.	
I <i>might</i> or <i>could</i> see it, if I chose;	} <i>Je POURAIS le voir, si je voulais.</i>
i. e. It <i>would be</i> in my <i>power</i> to &c.	

[See note page 138.]

If *MAY, MIGHT* denote a mere *possibility*, they may be expressed by the *subjunctive* of *POUVOIR*, or the *subjunctive* of the following *VERB*; as,

Bring it, that I <i>may</i> see it;	} <i>Apportez-le, afin que je le VOIE ;</i>
i. e. That it <i>may be</i> in my <i>power</i> to see	
He brought it, that I <i>might</i> see it;	} <i>Il l'apporta, afin que je le VISSÉ ;</i>
i. e. That it <i>might be</i> in my <i>power</i> &c.	

COULD HAVE, MIGHT HAVE.

179 *COULD HAVE, MIGHT HAVE* followed by a *past PARTICIPLE* are expressed by the *imperfect* or the *conditional* of *AVOIR*, with the *participle* *PU*, and the english *participle* is made by the *INFINITIVE* in french; as,

If he <i>could have come</i> sooner.	<i>S'il AVAIT PU venir plutôt.</i>
He <i>might have seen</i> it too.	<i>Il AURAIT PU le voir aussi.</i>

WISH.

180 The *present* tense of the verb *WISH*, followed by another verb in the *imperfect*, or in the *conditional*, is expressed by the *conditional* of *SOUHAITER*, and the verb which is in the *imperfect*, or in the *conditional* in english, must be in the *perfect* of the *SUBJUNCTIVE* in french; as,

I <i>wish</i> she <i>had</i> seen it.	<i>Je SOUHAITERAIS qu'elle l'eût vu.</i>
I <i>wish</i> he <i>would</i> come.	<i>Je SOUHAITERAIS qu'il voulût venir.</i>
I <i>wish</i> I <i>had</i> done it.	<i>Je SOUHAITERAIS l'AVOIR fait. (nn)</i>

MUST, NECESSARY.

181 *MUST* is conjugated through its *different persons*, but its representative *FALLOIR* has only the *third PERSON singular* of each tense, with *IL* for *nominative*; then the *nominative* of *MUST* becomes the *nominative* of the following *VERB*, which must be in the *SUBJUNCTIVE* in french; as,

I <i>must</i> do it.	<i>IL FAUT que je le FASSE.</i>
You <i>must</i> do it.	<i>IL FAUT que vous le FASSIEZ.</i>
My brother <i>must</i> do it.	<i>IL FAUT que mon frère le FASSE.</i>
It <i>was necessary</i> for me to do it.	<i>IL FALLAIT que je le FISSÉ, &c.*</i>

N. B. When the *nominative* of *MUST* is *indefinite*, the French *leave it out*, and put the following verb in the *INFINITIVE*; as,

One <i>must be</i> mad to think so.	<i>IL FAUT ÊTRE fou pour le penser.</i>
-------------------------------------	---

MUST HAVE.

182 *MUST HAVE*, meaning *need to have*, is also expressed by *FALLOIR*, and the *nominative* of *MUST HAVE* is made the *object* of *FALLOIR*; as,

I <i>must have</i> money.	<i>IL ME FAUT de l'argent.</i>
He <i>must have</i> books.	<i>IL LUI FAUT des livres.</i>
My brother <i>must have</i> a horse.	<i>IL FAUT un cheval à mon FRÈRE.†</i>

(nn) When two *VERBS* in the same *SENTENCE* have the same *PERSON* for their *nominative*, the French generally put the *second VERB* in the *INFINITIVE*; as,

I am afraid I shall spoil it;	<i>Je crains de le GÂTER.</i>
I wish I could do it;	<i>Je souhaiterais POUVOIR le faire.</i>

* See the different modifications of *FALLOIR*, p. 174.† See *FALLOIR*, p. 175

ADVERB.

An **ADVERB** is to a verb what an *adjective* is to a noun; it is a word added to the *verb*, to denote some *circumstance* belonging to it, or the *manner* in which an action is done; as,

I walk **FAST**. *You walk* **SLOWLY**. *He* **OFTEN** reads. *She* **SELDOM** writes.

There are adverbs of *time*, of *place*, of *order*, of *quality*, *affirmative*, and *negative*, but their properties being the same in both languages, it is needless to enumerate them here.*

ADVERBS in general keep the same place with the verb in french as in english; they are placed **AFTER** the *verb*, when the tense is *simple*, and **BETWEEN** the *auxiliary* and the *participle* when the tense is *compound*; as,

I always esteem him *much*. *Je l'estime* **TOUJOURS** **FORT**.

I have always esteemed him *much*. *Je l'ai* **TOUJOURS** **FORT** *estimé*. †

N. B. The **ADVERB** expressing some circumstance of the verb, must be placed *as near* to the verb which it modifies, as can be done without infringing upon other rules; ex.

I saw your sister *yesterday*. *Je vis* **HIER** *votre sœur*.

She speaks french *very well*. *Elle parle* **TRÈS BIEN** *français*.

She likes reading *very much*. *Elle aime* **FORT** *la lecture*. †

Some **ADVERBS** may be placed in english, either *before* or *after* the verb which they modify; as, *I* **OFTEN** see *him*, or *I* see *him* **OFTEN**; but the corresponding adverbs must always be placed **AFTER** the verb in french; as,

I **often** walk alone. *Je me promène* **SOUVENT** *seul*.

I **seldom** go to town. *Je vais* **RAREMENT** *à la ville*.

I **always** go into the country. *Je vais* **TOUJOURS** *à la campagne*.

* Most of the **ADVERBS** are formed from the **ADJECTIVES**; in english by adding **LY**; in french by adding **MENT**; as,

ADJECTIVE.		ADVERB.	
Wise,	Sage.	Wisely,	Sagement.
Assured,	Assuré.	Assuredly	Assurement.
Polite,	Poli.	Politely,	Poliment.
Assiduous,	Assidu.	Assiduously,	Assidument.

But observe that *ment* requires a vowel before it; so that, if the adjective ends with a consonant in the masculine, the adverb must be formed by adding *ment* to the feminine; as,

	Masc.	Fem.		
Frank,	Franc.	Franche.	Frankly,	Franchement.
Public,	Public.	Publique.	Publicly,	Publiquement.
Real,	Réel.	Réelle.	Really,	Réellement.
Good,	Bon.	Bonne.	Goodly,	Bonement.
Soft,	Doux.	Douce.	Softly,	Doucement.
Generous,	Généreux.	Généreuse.	Generously,	Généreusement.
Exc. Gentil,	Pretty, which makes		Gentiment,	Prettily.

Except also the adjectives ending in *nt*, which require *nt* to be changed into *nment* and *nment*, as,

Constant,	Constant.	Constantly,	Constamment.
Decent,	Décent.	Decently,	Décemment.
Diligent,	Diligent.	Diligently,	Diligemment.

Exc. *Présentement*, *Presently*; *Lentement*, *Slowly*, which follow the general rule.

† Observe only that the adverbs compounded of *several words* generally come *after* the *participle*, so we say, *Je l'ai vu* très souvent. *Je lui ai parlé* depuis peu. *Vous êtes venu* à propos. Not, *Je l'ai très souvent vu*. *Je lui ai depuis peu parlé*. *Vous êtes à propos venu*. Yet, in some instances, the ear alone is consulted; for we say, *je l'avais tout à fait oublié*; I had quite forgotten it. *Je ne me suis jamais si bien diverté*; I never diverted myself so well. These variations must be noticed in reading.

‡ The perspicuity of a sentence depends often upon the right placing of the adverbs; for example, *J'aime* **BEAUCOUP** *à marcher*. *J'aime à marcher* **BEAUCOUP**.

These two sentences, though they are formed with the same words, by changing the place of the adverb *beaucoup*, express two different ideas. *J'aime beaucoup à marcher*, means, I am fond of walking; *J'aime à marcher* beaucoup, means, I like to walk a great deal.

Again; *Je* **NE** *l'ai PAS* *fait pour vous déplaire*; and, *Je l'ai fait* **pour** **NE** **PAS** *vous déplaire* express also different ideas; the first implies *no design*; the second implies *one*, that of *not displeasing*. The English, in general, do not pay sufficient attention to the *placing* of the *adverbs*.

REMARKS ON THE ADVERBS.

HOW; QUE, COMBIEN, COMMENT.

185 *HOW*, denoting *admiration*, is expressed by *QUE*, and the *adjective* or *adverb* which follows *HOW*, must be placed *AFTER* the *verb* in french; as,

How pretty this is!

QUE ceci est JOLI!

How well it is done!

QU'il est BIEN fait!

In asking a *question HOW* is expressed by *COMMENT*, to denote the *manner*, and by *COMBIEN*, to denote *number* or *quantity*; as,

How will you do that?

COMMENT ferez-vous cela?

How often have you done it?

COMBIEN de fois l'avez-vous fait?

HOW LONG.

COMBIEN, COMBIEN DE TEMS, JUSQU'À QUAND.

186 *HOW LONG*, referring to the *beginning* of time, is expressed by *COMBIEN*; referring to the *duration*, it is expressed by *COMBIEN DE TEMS*; and referring to the *end*, it is expressed by *JUSQU'À QUAND*; as,

How long have you been in France? *COMBIEN ya-t-il que vous ÊTES en France?*
or *COMBIEN de TEMS AVEZ-VOUS ÉTÉ en France?*

N. B. Few learners make a distinction between these two ways of expression; yet the ideas which they express are quite different. By the first, *vous êtes en France*, it is understood that the person *is* in France still; by the second, *vous avez été en France*, it is understood that the person is *no longer* there.

How long will } *COMBIEN de TEMS resterez-vous?* i. e. *what length* of time?
you stay? } *JUSQU'À QUAND resterez-vous?* i. e. *until* what time?

* A list of adverbial expressions, which can not be expressed literally, as learners are apt to do, some of which are not to be found in the dictionaries;

ABOUT,	<i>Environ.</i>	That EXCEPTED,	<i>A celu près.</i>
There ABOUTS,	<i>A peu près.</i>	FAIRLY,	<i>De bonne foi.</i>
Here ABOUTS,	<i>Ici autour.</i>	How FAR,	<i>Jusqu' où.</i>
Round ABOUT,	<i>A l'entour.</i>	As FAR as here,	<i>Jusqu'ici.</i>
ALoud,	<i>A haute voix.</i>	As FAR as there,	<i>Jusque là.</i>
AMICABLY,	<i>A l'amiable.</i>	AFAR off,	<i>De loin.</i>
ASIDE,	<i>A côté, à part.</i>	After the FASHION,	<i>A la mode.</i>
On an AVERAGE,	<i>L'un dans l'autre.</i>	After the FRENCH,	<i>A la française.</i>
BACKWARDS,	<i>En arrière. (falling)</i>	The ENGLISH fashion,	<i>A l'Anglaise.</i>
BACKWARDS,	<i>A reculons. (walking)</i>	At FIRST,	<i>D'abord.</i>
Into the BARGAIN,	<i>Par dessus le marché.</i>	On the same FLOOR,	<i>De plein pied.</i>
BETIMES,	<i>De bonne heure.</i>	Within a FORTNIGHT,	<i>Dans quinze jours.</i>
BETTER and better,	<i>De mieux en mieux.</i>	For FUN,	<i>En badinant.</i>
So much the BETTER,	<i>Tant mieux.</i>	For the FUTURE,	<i>A l'avenir.</i>
ABREAST,	<i>De front.</i>	GROPING,	<i>A tâtons.</i>
BY and BY,	<i>Tantôt.</i>	On the GROUND,	<i>Par terre.</i>
By CHANCE,	<i>Par cas fortuit.</i>	HAND over HEAD,	<i>A corps perdu</i>
CHEAP,	<i>A bon marché.</i>	HARD by,	<i>Ici près.</i>
Most COMMONLY,	<i>Presque toujours.</i>	HARDLY ever,	<i>Presque jamais.</i>
In DAY time,	<i>De jour.</i>	In HASTE,	<i>A la hâte.</i>
In open DAY,	<i>En plein jour.</i>	HEARTILY,	<i>De bon cœur.</i>
Every DAY,	<i>Touts les jours.</i>	HERE and THERE,	<i>Par ci par là.</i>
From DAY to DAY,	<i>De jour en jour.</i>	HELTET skelter,	<i>Pêle mêle.</i>
Every other DAY,	<i>De deux jours l'un.</i>	HITHERTO,	<i>Jusqu'ici.</i>
This DAY week,	} <i>Il y a aujourd' hui 8 jours.</i>	HOURLY,	<i>D'heure en heure.</i>
This DAY se'night,		} <i>Il y a aujourd' hui en huit.</i>	Every HOUR,
This DAY fortnight,	} <i>Il y a aujourd' hui 15 jours.</i>		INADVERTENTLY,
		} <i>D'aujourd' hui en quinze.</i>	INCONSIDERATELY,
This DAY month,	} <i>D'aujourd' hui un mois.</i>		TO all INTENTS and
DESERVEDLY,		} <i>A bon droit.</i>	[purposes,
	DIRECTLY,		} <i>Tous à l'heure.</i>
In DISORDER,	} <i>A l'abandon.</i>	Depuis peu.	
By DROPS,		} <i>Goute à goutte.</i>	Enfin.
EARLY,	} <i>De bon matin.</i>		Au moins.
In good EARNEST,		} <i>Tout de bon.</i>	A moins.
EMPTY,	} <i>A vide.</i>		D'autant moins.
In EMULATION,		} <i>A l'envi.</i>	Peu à peu.
			Ever so LITTLE,

REMARKS ON THE ADVERBS.

HOW FAR; COMBIEN, JUSQU'OU.

How FAR, meaning *what distance*, is expressed by *COMBIEN*; and when used for *to what distance*, it is expressed by *JUSQU'OU*; as,
How far is it from here? COMBIEN y a-t-il d'ici?
How far shall we go? JUSQU'ou irons-nous?

HOWEVER, HOWSOEVER, LET; QUELQUE.

HOWEVER, HOWSOEVER, before an *adjective*, a *participle*, or an *adverb*, is expressed by *QUELQUE* with *QUE*, after the *adjective*, *participle* or *adverb*, and the following verb in the *SUBJUNCTIVE*;

However rich she is; } *QUELQUE riche qu'elle soit.*
 or *Let her be ever so rich.*
N. B. If the nominative is a *noun*, it is generally placed after the verb; as,
However rich her sister is; } *QUELQUE riche QUE soit sa sœur.*
 or *Let her sister be ever so rich.*

QUITE, ENTIRELY; TOUT.

QUITE, ENTIRELY, before an *adjective*, or a *participle*, are generally expressed by *TOUT*; as,

Those men are quite astonished. *Ces hommes sont TOUT étonnés.*
 Those women are quite astonished. *Ces femmes sont TOUT étonnées.**

How long ?	<i>Jusqu' à quand?</i>	STEP by STEP,	<i>Pas à pas.</i>
As LONG as,	<i>Tant que.</i>	STRAIGHT ON,	<i>Tout droit.</i>
In the same MANNER,	<i>De même.</i>	THOROUGHLY,	<i>A fond.</i>
Through MISTAKE,	<i>Par mégarde.</i>	This long TIME,	{ <i>De long tems.</i>
MORE than is necessary,	<i>Plus qu'il n'en faut.</i>	For a long TIME,	{ <i>Depuis long tems.</i>
Neither MORE nor LESS,	<i>Ni plus ni moins.</i>	FROM TIME to TIME,	<i>De tems en tems.</i>
MORE and MORE,	<i>De plus en plus.</i>	One TIME or other,	<i>Tôt ou tard.</i>
Much MORE so,	<i>A plus forte raison.</i>	TO and FRO,	<i>Cà et là.</i>
So much the MORE,	<i>D'autant plus.</i>	FROM TOP to BOTTOM,	<i>De fond en comble.</i>
At MOST,	<i>Tout au plus.</i>	TOPSY TURVY,	<i>Sens dessus dessous.</i>
How MUCH ?	<i>Combien ?</i>	In a TRICE,	<i>En moins de rien.</i>
As MUCH,	<i>Autant.</i>	By TURNS,	<i>Tour à tour.</i>
So MUCH,	<i>Tant.</i>	At every TURN,	<i>A tout bout de champ.</i>
Through ill NATURE,	<i>Par malice.</i>	In the TWINKLING of	
Nothing NEAR,	<i>A beaucoup près.</i>	[an eye,	<i>En un clin d'œil.</i>
Just NOW,	<i>Tout de suite.</i>	UNAWARES,	<i>Sans y penser.</i>
Now and then,	<i>De tems en tems.</i>	UP and DOWN,	<i>De côté et d'autre.</i>
All at ONCE,	<i>Tout d'un coup.</i>	UPWARDS,	<i>En haut.</i>
OPPOSITE,	<i>Vis-à-vis.</i>	UNSEASONABLY,	<i>A contre tems.</i>
PURPOSELY,	{ <i>A dessein, Exprès.</i>	VISIBLY,	<i>A vue d'œil.</i>
On PURPOSE,	{ <i>De propos délibéré.</i>	With a low VOICE,	<i>Tout bas.</i>
To what PURPOSE ?	<i>A quoi bon?</i>	The wrong WAY,	<i>A contre sens.</i>
At RANDOM,	<i>A tort et à travers.</i>	In a WEEK,	[day, <i>Dans huit jours.</i>
In every RESPECT,	<i>A tous égards.</i>	It was a WEEK yester-	<i>Il y eut hier 8 jours.</i>
SEASONABLY,	<i>A propos.</i>	It will be a WEEK to-	<i>Il y aura demain 8</i>
On both SIDES,	<i>De part et d'autre.</i>	WHEREVER [morrow,	<i>Par tout où. [jours.</i>
The wrong SIDE out,	<i>A l'envers.</i>	In no WISE,	<i>En nulle manière.</i>
The wrong SIDE up,	<i>A rebours.</i>	WORSE and WORSE,	<i>De pis en pis.</i>
SOONER or LATER,	<i>Tôt ou tard.</i>	So much the WORSE,	<i>Tant pis.</i>
SOUNDLY,	<i>Comme il faut.</i>	A YEAR hence,	<i>Il y a un an. [an.</i>
With all SPEED,	<i>Au plus vite.</i>	This day 12 MONTHS,	<i>Il y a aujourd' hui un</i>
At full SPEED,	{ <i>A bride abattue.</i>	Against one's WILL,	<i>A contre cœur.</i>
On a SUDDEN,	{ <i>Ventre à terre.</i>	Whether one WILL or	<i>Bon gré mal gré.</i>
	<i>Tout à coup.</i>	YONDER,	[not, <i>Là bas.</i>

* When the adjective which follows *TOUT* is *feminine*, and begins with a *consonant*, we make it agree in *gender* and *number* with the noun; as,

This house is quite new, *Cette maison est TOUTE neuve.*
 These women are quite ugly. *Ces femmes sont TOUTES laides.*

But, as this is done solely for the sake of melody, it would be better, especially when the noun is plural, to make use of *Tout à fait*, since the hearer is sometimes at a loss, whether *TOUTES* means quite or all.

NEGATIVE ADVERBS

NO, NOT ;	}	NE—PAS, NE—POINT *
NO MORE, NOT ANY MORE ;		NE—PLUS.
NEVER ;	}	NE—JAMAIS.
BUT LITTLE, VERY LITTLE ;		NE—GUÈRE.
BY NO MEANS ;		NE—NULLEMENT.†

- 190 The *NEGATIVE* expressions NE—PAS, NE—POINT, &c. form only one *negation*; NE is always placed *BEFORE* the *verb*, and PAS, POINT, &c. like the other adverbs, are placed *AFTER* the *verb*, when the tense is simple and *BETWEEN* the *auxiliary* and the *participle*, when it is compound; as,
I do *not* like her. *Je NE l'aime PAS, OR POINT.*
I will *not* see her *any more.* *Je NE veux PLUS la voir.*
I will *never* speak to her again. *Je NE lui reparlerai JAMAIS.*
You have thought of it *but little.* *Vous n'y avez GUÈRE pensé.*

N. B. If the verb which follows *NOT* is in the *infinitive*, the two negative words NE—PAS, OR POINT, NE—PLUS, NE—JAMAIS, may be, and are generally placed *TOGETHER* before the verb; as,

I am determined *not* to see her. *J'ai résolu de NE PAS la voir.*
Not to speak to her *any more.* *De NE PLUS lui parler.*
Never to write to her again. *De NE JAMAIS lui écrire.*

- 191 Without a verb, *NO* is expressed by *NON*, and *NOT* by *NON PAS*; as,
Will you go to town to-morrow? *Irez-vous demain à la ville?*
No; I will go, but *not* to-morrow. *NON*; *j'y irai, mais NON PAS demain.*

REMARKS ON THE NEGATIVE ADVERBS.

- 192 With the verb *CAN*, rendered by the *conditional* tense of *SAVOIR*, instead of the *present* of *POUVOIR*, and with *WHY*, rendered by *QUE*, instead of *POUR QUOI*, *NOT* is expressed by *NE* only before the verb; as,

I can *not* do it. *Jene puis PAS, OR je ne saurais le faire.*
Why does he *not* do it himself? *Que NE le fait-il lui-même?*

N. B. We also generally *suppress* PAS, POINT, with the verbs *OSER*, to *dare*; *CESSE*, to *cease*; and with *SAVOIR*, to *know*; when it is followed by *SI*, *OÙ*, *QUE*, *QUAND*, *QUEL*, *COMBIEN*, *COMMENT*; as,

I *dare not* do it. *Je N'OSE le faire.*
I do *not know* what to say to her. *Je NE sais QUE lui dire.*
She is *incessantly* plaguing me. *Elle NE cesse de me tourmenter.*

* PAS, POINT, are used indiscriminately, except in sentences of interrogation, when, according to the french academy, POINT intimates a *doubt*, and PAS a kind of *affirmation*; so, *N'avez-vous POINT pris mon livre?* means, Have not you taken my book? and *N'avez-vous PAS pris mon livre?* means, You have taken my book, have not you?

Perhaps it would be better to give another turn to the sentence than to give these different properties to two monosyllables which may be so easily mistaken one for the other.

Some grammarians, and even the french academy, make several other distinctions between PAS, POINT; viz. that POINT means *not at all, never*, and denies more strongly than PAS; that PAS is said of something momentary, and POINT of things that are permanent; so *Il NE lit PAS*, means, He does *not* read *now*; and *Il NE lit POINT*, means, He *never* reads; these distinctions seem to me merely ideal; I have endeavoured to ascertain them, and I have not found any author who has observed them; the *ear* alone is consulted. There are in our language, as well as in our manners, trifles which reason does not scruple to overlook.

† MOT and GOUTE are also *negative* expressions, but used only with the verbs *DIRE* and *VOIR*; as,

Il NE dit NOT; He did *not* say a word. *Il NE voit GOUTE*; He does *not* see at all,

REMARKS ON THE NEGATIVE ADVERBS.

NOT, after the verb *take care*, *PRENDRE GARDE*, is not expressed in french, when the verb which follows it is in the *INFINITIVE*, and it is expressed by *NE*, if the following verb is in any *other MOOD*; as, 193

Take care of falling, or *not* to fall. *Prenez garde de tomber.*

Take care that he does *not* fall. *Prenez garde qu'il NE tombe.*

The verb *EMPÊCHER*, to *Hinder*, *prevent*, *keep from*, requires *NE* before the following verb, if that verb is *not* in the *infinitive*; so we say; 194

Je l'empêcherai de jouer;
or *J'empêcherai qu'il NE joue.* } I will hinder him from playing.

The verbs *CRAINdre*, *AVOIR PEUR*, *APPRÉHENDER*; to *fear*, to be *Afraid*; the conjunctions *DE PEUR QUE*, *DE CRAINTE QUE*, *lest*, for *fear that*, require *NE* before the following verb, if we fear that the action *will happen*; then the verb has *no negation* in english; as, 195

I am afraid that he will come. *Je crains qu'il NE vienne.*

Come in, lest he should see you. *Entrez, de peur qu'il NE vous voie.*

But *NE* is *left out*, if the following verb is in the *INFINITIVE*; as,

I am afraid of spoiling it. *Je crains, or j'ai peur de le gâter.*

If we fear that the action *will not happen*, there is a *negation* in english, and it must be expressed by the *corresponding negation* in french; as,

I fear he will come *no more*. *Je crains qu'il NE vienne PLUS.*

I am afraid he *has not* seen me. *J'ai peur qu'il NE m'ait PAS vu.*

N.B. The verbs *NIER*, to *deny*, and *DOUTER*, to *doubt*, used negatively, the conjunction *À MOINS QUE*, *unless*, and *SI* in the sense of *à moins que*, require also *NE* before the following verb; as,

He does not deny having seen her. *Il ne nie pas qu'il NE l'ait vue.*

I do not doubt but she will come. *Je ne doute pas qu'elle NE vienne.*

IL Y A—QUE, *It is—since*; *DE PUIS QUE*, *since*, require *NE* before the verb which follows them, when we wish to denote that *no action* has taken place since the period we mention; then the verb may also have a *negation* in english; 196

It is long since I have seen him; } *Il y a long tems que je NE l'ai vu.*
or I have *not* seen him this long while. }

But *NE* is not required, if there has been an *action*, and *no negation* could be used in english; as,

It is not long since I *have seen* him; } *Il n'y a pas long tems que je l'ai vu.*
or I *have seen* him not long since. }

The *NEGATIVE* particle *NE* is required before the verb which follows *AUTRE*, *other*; *AUTREMENT*, *otherwise*; as, 197

He is quite *another* than I thought. *Il est tout autre que je NE pensais.*

He speaks *otherwise* than he thinks. *Il parle autrement qu'il NE pense.*

After the *comparative* words *PLUS*, *MIEUX*, *MEILLEUR*, *MOINS*, see 47 rule; as also with *PERSONNE*, *QUI QUE CE SOIT*, see 97 rule; *RIEN*, *QUOI QUE CE SOIT*, 99; *AUCUN*, 100; *NUL*, *PAS UN*, 101; *NI L'UN NI L'AUTRE*, 124.

BUT, used in the sense of the adverb *ONLY*, is expressed by *NE* before the verb, and *QUE* after it; as, 198

She is *but* fifteen (i. e. *only* 15). *Elle n'a QUE quinze ans.*

I have seen her *but* once. *Je NE l'ai vue QU'une fois.*

BUT is sometimes used in the sense of a *relative pronoun*, and is then expressed by *QUI NE*, with the following verb in the *SUBJUNCTIVE*; as, 199

There are few people *but* can do it, i. e. *who* can *not* do it.

Il y a peu de gens QUI NE puissent le faire.

PREPOSITION.

PREPOSITIONS are certain monosyllables added to *nouns, verbs, and Adjectives* in order to extend their meaning to the word which follows them; as,

I came FROM Paris, THROUGH Canterbury, TO London.

The words FROM, THROUGH, TO, which express a relation between the verb *came* and the *substantives* which follow it, are called PREPOSITIONS.

The PREPOSITIONS are in french ;

À	<i>At, To.</i>	EXCEPTÉ,	} <i>Save, But, Except.</i>
APRÈS,	<i>After.</i>	HORMIS,	
AVEC,	<i>With.</i>	MOYENNANT,	} <i>For, By the Means of.</i>
AVANT,	<i>Before.</i>	MALGRÉ,	
CHEZ,	<i>At the House of.</i>	NONOBTANT,	} <i>Notwithstanding.</i>
CONTRE,	<i>Against.</i>	OUTRE,	
DANS,	<i>In, Into.</i>	PAR,	} <i>By, Through.</i>
DE,	<i>Of, From, By.</i>	PARMI,	
DÈS,	<i>From.</i>	PENDANT,	} <i>During, For.</i>
DEPUIS,	<i>Since, From, For.</i>	POUR,	
DEVANT,	<i>Before.</i>	SANS,	} <i>For, In Order to.</i>
DERRIÈRE,	<i>Behind.</i>	SELON,	
DURANT,	<i>During, For.</i>	SUIVANT,	} <i>According to.</i>
EN,	<i>In, Into.</i>	SOUS,	
ENTRE,	<i>Between, Betwixt.</i>	SUR,	} <i>Under, Beneath.</i>
ENVERS,	<i>To, Towards.</i>	TOUCHANT,	
ENVIRON,	<i>About.</i>	VERS,	} <i>On, Upon, Over.</i>
			} <i>Concerning, About.</i>

* The following expressions are found in several french grammars, and even in the dictionary of the french academy, in the class of prepositions:

AUPRÈS de,	<i>Near, By, Close to.</i>	à	FORCE de,	<i>By dint of.</i>
AUTOUR de,	<i>Round.</i>		JUSQU'À,	<i>To, Till, Until.</i>
à CAUSE de,	<i>On account of.</i>		HORS de,	<i>Out of.</i>
à CÔTÉ de,	<i>By, By the side of.</i>	au	LIEU de,	<i>Instead of, in the place of.</i>
en DEÇÀ de,	<i>On this side of.</i>		LOIN de,	<i>Far from.</i>
au DELÀ de,	<i>On that side of.</i>	le	LONG de,	<i>Along.</i>
au DESSOUS de,	} <i>Under, Below.</i>	à	MOINS de,	<i>Under, For less.</i>
par DESSOUS,		} <i>Above, Over, Upon.</i>	au	MOYEN de,
au DESSUS de,	} <i>Before, In the fore part of.</i>			PRÈS de,
par DESSUS,		} <i>Behind, In the back of.</i>	par	RAPPORT à,
au DEVANT de,	} <i>As to, With respect to.</i>		à	TRAVERS,
par DEVANT,			au	TRAVERS de,
au DERRIÈRE de,			VIS à VIS de,	<i>Over against, Facing.</i>
à L'ÉGARD de,				

And a few others which I have not thought proper to notice, because they certainly do not belong to this class. But these words are so far from being prepositions, that it is only by the means of the preposition DE or À, that they can be connected with the word which follows them. It is evident that they are *Nouns*, preceded and followed as you see, by an *Article*, or by a *Preposition*, and coming under the rules that have been given on nouns. According to the french academy, some of these words are both *Prepositions* and *Adverbs*. They are *Prepositions* when they govern a substantive after them, and they are *Adverbs* when they are used *absolutely* without a substantive. This distinction is right, but its application is not always so; for example, *J'étais à côté de la porte*, I was *by the side of* the door; here *à côté* is a *preposition*. *Il était sur la porte, et j'étais à côté*; He was *on the door*, and I was *by the side of* it; here *à côté*, is an *adverb*. With due respect to the french academy, I must say that *à côté*, in these instances, seems to me of the same nature as the substantive *side*, which represents it in english. Certain it is, that these words called *prepositions* are all derived from *nouns* or *verbs*. If then our poverty of expression obliged us to have recourse to this benevolent family, I think their generosity should not be abused, and their nature changed without a necessity which, in these instances, does not seem to exist.

DIFFERENCE between the FRENCH and ENGLISH PREPOSITIONS.

Having found it impossible to make rules sufficiently explicit for the use of the prepositions, I have subjoined a list of all the *VERBS* and *ADJECTIVES* which require a preposition *different* from the preposition which generally corresponds with it in english, by means of which the learner may always remove any doubt he may have respecting the prepositions.*

200

Agree	ABOUT,	<i>Convenir</i>	DE ;	as Nous sommes <i>convenus</i> DE ceci.
Carry	ABOUT,	<i>Porter</i>	SUR ;	Je ne <i>porte</i> pas d'argent SUR moi.
Concerned	ABOUT,	<i>Inquiet</i>	DE ;	Je suis <i>inquiet</i> DE sa santé.
Uneasy	ABOUT,			
Discourse	ABOUT,	<i>Discourir</i>	DE ;	Nous <i>discourons</i> DE nos affaires.
Easy	ABOUT,	<i>Tranquille</i>	SUR ;	Je suis <i>tranquille</i> SUR cela.
Inquire	ABOUT,	s' <i>Inform</i>	DE ;	<i>Informez</i> -vous DE son retour.
Talk	ABOUT,	<i>Parler</i>	DE ;	<i>Parlons</i> d'autres choses.
Greedy	AFTER,	<i>Avide</i>	DE ;	Il est trop <i>avide</i> DE richesses.
Inquire	AFTER,	s' <i>Inform</i>	DE ;	Il <i>s'informe</i> souvent DE vous.
Thirst	AFTER,	<i>Altéré</i>	DE ;	Il est <i>altéré</i> DE sang.
Angry	AT	<i>Fâche</i>	CONTRE ;	Etre <i>fâché</i> CONTRE quelqu'un
Offended	AT			
Vexed	AT			
Angry	AT			
Offended	AT	<i>Fâché</i>	DE ;	Etre <i>fâché</i> DE quelque chose.
Vexed	AT			
Astonished	AT,	<i>Etonné</i>	DE ;	Je ne suis pas <i>étonné</i> DE cela.
Blush	AT,	<i>Rougir</i>	DE ;	Elle <i>rougit</i> DE sa folie.
Exasperated	AT,	<i>Ou<tré< i=""></tré<></i>	DE ;	Il fut <i>ou<tré< i=""> DE ce discours.</tré<></i>
Grieve	AT,	s' <i>Affliger</i>	DE ;	Il <i>s'afflige</i> DE sa perte.
Laugh	AT,	<i>Rire</i>	DE ;	Il <i>rit</i> or <i>se moque</i> DE tout.
Laugh	AT,	se <i>Moquer</i>	DE ;	Il <i>se moque</i> DE tout le monde.
Rejoice	AT,	se <i>Réjoir</i>	DE ;	Je me <i>réjois</i> DE votre succès.
Scandalised	AT,	<i>Scandaliser</i>	DE ;	Je fus <i>scandalisé</i> DE son action.
Smile	AT,	<i>Sourire</i>	DE ;	Elle <i>sourit</i> DE ma confusion.
Surprized	AT,	<i>Surpris</i>	DE ;	Je ne suis pas <i>surpris</i> DE cela.
Wonder	AT,	<i>Etonné</i>	DE ;	Je n' EN suis pas <i>étonné</i> .
Followed	BY,	<i>Suivi</i>	DE ;	Il était <i>suivi</i> DE ses gens.
Gain	BY,	<i>Gagner</i>	À ;	Il n' a rien <i>gagné</i> À cela.
Get	BY,			
Preceded	BY,	<i>Précédé</i>	DE ;	Le souper fut <i>précédé</i> d'un bal.
Profit	BY,	<i>Profiter</i>	DE ;	Il n'a pas <i>profité</i> DE vos leçons.
Answer	FOR,	<i>Répondre</i>	DE ;	<i>Repondez</i> -vous DE lui? DE cela?
Blame	FOR,	<i>Blâmer</i>	DE ;	Je le <i>blâme</i> DE ses défauts.
Bless	FOR,	<i>Bénir</i>	DE ;	<i>Béni</i> sons-le DE sa bonté.
Care	FOR,	se <i>Soucier</i>	DE ;	Je ne me <i>soucie</i> pas DE lui.
Chastise	FOR,	<i>Châtier</i>	DE ;	Il sera <i>châtié</i> DE sa malice.
Console	FOR,	<i>Consoler</i>	DE ;	<i>Consol</i> ez-le DE sa perte.
Design	FOR,	<i>Destiner</i>	À ;	À quoi le <i>destinez</i> -vous ?

* Some grammarians have endeavoured to analyze the different *relations* which the prepositions have with the words which they connect; so, according to them, all verbs and adjectives expressing *desire, knowledge, remembrance, ignorance, forgetfulness, care, fear, guilt, innocence, fulness, emptiness, plenty, want, measure, dimension*, require DE; the verbs and adjectives which express *submission, relation, pleasure, displeasure, duty, resistance, opposition, facility, difficulty, likeness, inclination, aptness, fitness, advantage, profit*, require A; but these terms are so indefinite, and notwithstanding their latitude, they leave so great a chasm in the field of prepositions, that I have not met with any person who has derived the least advantage from them.

DIFFERENCE between the FRENCH and ENGLISH PREPOSITIONS.

Fit	FOR,	<i>Propre</i>	À ; as	À quoi cela est-il <i>propre</i> ?
Good	FOR,	<i>Bon</i>	À ;	Cela n'est <i>bon</i> À rien.
Grieve	FOR,	s' <i>Affliger</i>	DE ;	Il est <i>affligé</i> DE ses fautes.
Obliged	FOR,	<i>Obligé</i>	DE ;	Je lui suis <i>obligé</i> DE sa lettre.
Pity	FOR,	<i>Plaindre</i>	DE ,	Je le <i> plains</i> DE sa faiblesse.
Praise	FOR,	<i>Louer</i>	DE ;	On le <i>loua</i> DE sa candeur.
Provide	FOR,	<i>Pourvoir</i>	À ;	Qui <i>pourvoye</i> À ses besoins ?
Punish	FOR,	<i>Punir</i>	DE ;	Il sera <i>puni</i> DE sa témérité.
Sorry	FOR,	<i>Fâché</i>	DE ;	Je suis <i>fâché</i> DE son malheur
Sufficient	FOR,	<i>Suffire</i>	À ;	Cela ne <i>lui</i> * <i>suffit</i> pas.
Thank	FOR,	<i>Remercier</i>	DE ;	<i>Remerciez-le</i> DE ses bontés.
Borrow	FROM,	<i>Emprunter</i>	À ;	Il l'a <i>emprunté</i> À votre père.
Conceal	FROM,	<i>Cacher</i>	À ;	Ne le <i>cachez</i> pas À votre ami.
Escape	FROM,	<i>Echapper</i>	DE ;	<i>Echapper</i> D'un endroit.
Escape	FROM,	<i>Echapper</i>	À ;	<i>Echapper</i> À une personne.
Hear	FROM,	<i>Ouir dire</i>	À ;	Je l'ai <i>ouï dire</i> À mon père.
Take	FROM,	<i>Oter</i>	À ;	Ne l'ôtez pas À cet enfant.
Take	FROM,	<i>Prendre</i>	À ;	Il le <i>lui</i> * a <i>pris</i> or <i>ôté</i> .
Acquiesce	IN,	<i>Acquiescer</i>	À ;	J' <i>acquiesce</i> À votre demande.
Interested	IN,	s' <i>Intéresser</i>	À ;	Je m' <i>intéresse</i> À son bien-être.
Delight	IN,	se <i>Plaire</i>	À ;	Il se <i>plait</i> AU jardinage.
Dexterous	IN,	<i>Adroit</i>	À ;	Il est <i>adroit</i> AUX exercices.
Glory	IN,	se <i>Glorifier</i>	DE ;	Il se <i>glorifie</i> DE ses richesses.
Pride	IN,	s' <i>Enorgueillir</i>	DE ;	Il s' <i>enorgueillit</i> DE sa naissance.
Ask	OF,	<i>Demander</i>	À ;	<i>Demandez-le</i> À cet homme.
Sensible	OF,	<i>Sensible</i>	À ;	Il est très <i>sensible</i> AU froid.
Think	OF, †	<i>Penser</i>	À ;	Avez-vous <i>pensé</i> À moi ?
Think	OF,	<i>Songer</i>	À ;	Vous ne <i>songez</i> À rien.
Think	ON,	<i>Penser</i>	À ;	Avez-vous <i>pensé</i> À mon affaire ?
Have pity	ON,	<i>Avoir pitié</i>	DE ;	Vous n' <i>avez pitié</i> DE personne.
Play	ON,	<i>Jouer</i>	DE ;	<i>Joue-t-il</i> DE quelqu'instrument ?
Triumph	OVER,	<i>Triompher</i>	DE ;	Il a <i>triomphé</i> DE ses ennemis.
Pretend	TO,	se <i>Piquer</i>	DE ;	Il se <i>pique</i> DE générosité.
Agree	UPON,	<i>Convenir</i>	DE ;	<i>Convenons</i> DE quelque chose.
Call	UPON,	<i>Passer</i>	CHEZ ;	Quand <i>passerez-vous</i> CHEZ moi ?
Congratulate	UPON,	<i>Féliciter</i>	DE ;	Je vous <i>félicite</i> DE votre retour.
Depend	UPON,	<i>Dépendre</i>	DE ;	Vous ne <i>dépendez</i> pas DE lui.
Feed	UPON, se	<i>Nourrir</i>	DE ;	Il se <i>nourrit</i> DE pain et DE lait.
Impose	UPON, en	<i>Imposer</i>	À ;	Il en <i>impose</i> AUX gens.
Live	UPON,	<i>Vivre</i>	DE ;	Il <i>vit</i> DE fruit et DE légumes.
Prevail	UPON,	<i>Persuader</i>	À ;	Je <i>lui</i> * <i>persuadai</i> de s'en aller.
Seize	UPON, se	<i>Saisir</i>	DE ;	On se <i>saisit</i> aussitôt DE lui.
Smile	UPON,	<i>Sourire</i>	À ;	Il <i>souriait</i> À ses amis.
Take	UPON, se	<i>Charger</i>	DE ;	Il s'est <i>chargé</i> DE cette affaire.
Abound	WITH,	<i>Abonder</i>	EN ;	La France <i>abonde</i> EN fruit.
Acquainted	WITH,	<i>Connu</i>	DE ;	Je ne suis pas <i>connu</i> DE lui.
Adorn	WITH,	<i>Orner</i>	DE ;	Une chambre <i>ornée</i> DE tableaux.
Angry	WITH,	<i>Fâché</i>	CONTRE ;	Il est très <i>fâché</i> CONTRE vous.

* Observe that the *preposition* à is implied in *LUI*, which means to *him*. See table of the pronouns, p. 74.

† When *think* is used in the sense of to *have an opinion*, of is expressed by *de*, not by *à* ; as, What do you think of that ? *Que pensez-vous de cela ?* not, *à cela ?*

DIFFERENCE between the FRENCH and ENGLISH PREPOSITIONS.

Amuse	WITH,	<i>Amuser</i>	DE ;	Il l' <i>amusait</i> DE promesses.
Animated	WITH,	<i>Animé</i>	DE ;	Il est <i>animé</i> DE zèle.
Armed	WITH,	<i>Armé</i>	DE ;	Il était <i>armé</i> d'un pistolet.
Bathe	WITH,	<i>Baigner</i>	DE ;	Elle le <i>baigna</i> DE ses larmes.
Charge	WITH,	<i>Accuser</i>	DE ;	On l' <i>accuse</i> DE trahison.
Charmed	WITH,	<i>Charmé</i>	DE ;	Il est <i>charmé</i> DE ses manières.
Compare	WITH,	<i>Comparer</i>	À ;	<i>Comparez</i> -vous ceci À cela ?
Comply	WITH,	<i>Condescendre</i>	À ;	Il <i>condescend</i> À ses caprices.
Contented	WITH,	<i>Content</i>	DE ;	Je ne suis pas <i>content</i> DE cela.
Cover	WITH,	<i>Couvert</i>	DE ;	Il est <i>couvert</i> DE poussière.
Delighted	WITH,	<i>Charmé</i>	DE ;	Il fut <i>charmé</i> DE son esprit.
Die	WITH,	<i>Mourir</i>	DE ;	Je <i>meurs</i> DE faim, DE soif.
Disgusted	WITH,	<i>Dégoûté</i>	DE ;	Je suis <i>dégoûté</i> DU monde.
Dispense	WITH,	<i>Dispenser</i>	DE ;	<i>Dispensez</i> -moi DE cela.
Displeased	WITH,	<i>Mécontent</i>	DE ;	Je suis <i>mécontent</i> DE lui.
Do	WITH,	<i>Faire</i>	DE ;	Que <i>fera</i> -t-on DE cet homme ?
Embellish	WITH,	<i>Embellir</i>	DE ;	Un jardin <i>embelli</i> DE fleurs.
Endue	WITH,	<i>Douer</i>	DE ;	Il n'est <i>doué</i> d'aucun esprit.
Enflame	WITH,	<i>Enflamer</i>	DE ;	Il était <i>enflamé</i> DE colère.
Feed	WITH,	<i>Nourir</i>	DE ;	On le <i>nourit</i> DE pain et d'eau.
Fill	WITH,	<i>Emplir</i>	DE ;	<i>Emplissez</i> votre verre DE vin.
Glut	WITH,	<i>Assouvir</i>	DE ;	Il est <i>assouvi</i> DE carnage.
In love	WITH,	<i>Amoureux</i>	DE ;	Il est <i>amoureux</i> DE cette fille.
Load	WITH,	<i>Charger</i>	DE ;	Il est <i>chargé</i> DE butin.
Meddle	WITH, se	<i>Mêler</i>	DE ;	<i>Mélez</i> -vous DE vos affaires.
Moved	WITH,	<i>Touché</i>	DE ;	Il fut <i>touché</i> DE compassion.
Overjoyed	WITH,	<i>Ravi</i>	DE ;	Il fut <i>ravi</i> DE cette nouvelle.
Overwhelm	WITH,	<i>Accabler</i>	DE ;	Il est <i>accablé</i> DE chagrin.
Part	WITH, se	<i>Défaire</i>	DE ;	Il s'est <i>défait</i> DE son cheval.
Perish	WITH,	<i>Périr</i>	DE ;	Il <i>périt</i> DE faim et DE misère.
Pleased	WITH,	<i>Content</i>	DE ;	Elle n'est pas <i>contente</i> DE lui.
Prevail	WITH,	<i>Persuader</i>	À ;	<i>Persuadez</i> -LUI DE le faire.
Provide	WITH,	<i>Fournir</i>	DE ;	Ils <i>fournissent</i> l'armée DE blé.
Provided	WITH,	<i>Pourvu</i>	DE ;	Il est bien <i>pourvu</i> d'habits.
Puffed up	WITH,	<i>Enflé</i>	DE ;	Il est tout <i>enflé</i> d'orgueil.
Refresh	WITH, se	<i>Rafraichir</i>	DE ;	Se <i>rafraichir</i> d'un verre de vin.
Satiated	WITH,	<i>Rassasié</i>	DE ;	Il est <i>rassasié</i> DE plaisirs.
Satisfied	WITH,	<i>Satisfait</i>	DE ;	Il n'est pas <i>satisfait</i> DE cela.
Set	WITH,	<i>Garnir</i>	DE ;	Une boîte <i>garnie</i> DE diamants.
Sport	WITH, se	<i>Jouer</i>	DE ;	Elle se <i>joue</i> DE sa crédulité.
Store	WITH,	<i>Munir</i>	DE ;	La place est <i>munie</i> DE provisions.
Struck	WITH,	<i>Frappé</i>	DE ;	Il fut <i>frappé</i> d'étonnement.
Surrounded	WITH,	<i>Entouré</i>	DE ;	Il était <i>entouré</i> DE flatteurs.
Swarm	WITH,	<i>Fourmiller</i>	DE ;	Le pays <i>fourmille</i> DE voleurs.
Taken up	WITH,	<i>Occupé</i>	DE ;	Il est <i>trop occupé</i> DE lui-même.
Tax	WITH,	<i>Taxer</i>	DE ;	On le <i>taxe</i> DE sédition.
Threaten	WITH,	<i>Menacer</i>	DE ;	On le <i>menaça</i> DE la mort.
Tire	WITH,	<i>Ennuyer</i>	DE ;	Il est <i>ennuyé</i> DE ces choses.
Tormented	WITH,	<i>Tourmenté</i>	DE ;	Il est <i>tourmenté</i> DE remords.
Transported	WITH,	<i>Transporté</i>	DE ;	Elle est <i>transportée</i> DE joie.
Do	WITHOUT, se	<i>Passer</i>	DE ;	Il ne peut pas se <i>passer</i> d'elle.

DIFFERENCE between the FRENCH and ENGLISH PREPOSITIONS.

201

Sometimes a verb requires a PREPOSITION after it in english, and will not admit of it in french; such are,

Look	AT;	Look at that man;	Regardez cet homme.
Ask	FOR;	He asks for you;	Il vous demande.
Buy	FOR;	I bought this for a penny;	J'ai acheté ceci un sou.
Go	FOR;	Go for your book;	Allez chercher votre livre.
Look	FOR;	Look for it;	Cherchez-le, not, pour lui
Sell	FOR;	I have sold it for two pence;	Je l'ai vendu deux sous.
Stay	FOR;	Stay for me;	Attendez-moi, not, pour moi.
Wait	FOR;	Do not wait for me;	Ne m'attendez pas.
Wish	FOR;	I wish for your company;	Je souhaite votre compagnie.
Accept	OF;	Please to accept of this;	Daignez accepter ceci.
Admit	OF;	He will not admit of that;	Il n'admettra pas cela.
Approve	OF;	Do you approve of it?	L'approuvez-vous?
Beg	OF;	I beg of you to see her;	Je vous prie de la voir.
Ignorant	OF;	She was quite ignorant of it;	Elle l'ignorait tout à fait.
Tyrannise	OVER;	She tyrannises over me;	Elle me tyrannise.
Listen	TO;	Listen to me;	Ecoutez-moi, not à moi.
Look	UPON;	Look upon me as a friend;	Regardez-moi comme ami.
Prevail	UPON;	Prevail upon her to stay;	Engagez-la à rester.
Prevail	WITH;	Prevail with him to come;	Engagez-le à venir.
Resolve	UPON;	Has he resolved upon any thing?	A-t-il résolu quelque chose?
Bear	WITH;	I bear with his importunities;	J'endure ses importunités.
Meet	WITH;	I met with a robber;	Je rencontraï un voleur.
Put up	WITH;	I put up with his impertinence;	Je souffris son impertinence.

202

In other instances it is the reverse, and the verb which has no PREPOSITION in english, must have a PREPOSITION after it in french; such are,

Abuser	DE;	Il abuse DE ma patience;	He abuses my patience.
s'Appercevoir	DE;	Je m'aperçois DE cela;	I perceive that.
Avoir besoin	DE;	J'ai besoin D'argent;	I want money.
Avoir pitié	DE;	Il n'a pas pitié DE moi;	He does not pity me.
Changer	DE;	Il a changé DE dessein;	He has changed his design.
se Défier	DE;	Vous défiez-vous DE lui?	Do you mistrust him?
se Démettre	DE;	Il s'est démis DE sa place;	He has given up his place.
Disconvenir	DE;	Il n'EN* disconvient pas;	He does not disown it.
Douter	DE;	Il doute DE tout;	He doubts every thing.
s'Embarasser	DE;	Il ne s'embarasse DE rien;	He minds nothing.
Gémir	DE;	Il gémit DE ses fautes;	He laments his errors.
Hériter	DE;	Il a hérité D'un gros bien;	He inherited a large estate.
Jouir	DE;	Il jouit D'une bonne santé;	He enjoys good health.
Manquer	DE;	Il ne manque DE rien;	He wants nothing.
Médire	DE;	Il médit DES gens;	He slanders people.
se Méfier	DE;	Il se méfie DE ses amis;	He mistrusts his friends.
se Méprendre	DE;	Il s'est mépris DE chemin;	He has mistaken his way.
se Moquer	DE;	Il se moque DES sages;	He mocks wise people.
se Passer	DE;	Il ne peut pas s'EN* passer;	He can not spare it.
se Servir	DE;	Il se sert DE mon nom;	He uses my name.
se Souvenir	DE;	Je me souviens DE cela;	I remember that.
User	DE;	Il a usé DE violence;	He has used violence.
se Venger	DE;	Je m'EN* vengerai;	I will revenge it.
Attenter	À;	Il a attenté À ma vie;	He has attempted my life.
Commander	À;	Commandez-LUI† d'y aller;	Bid him to go there.
Compatir	À;	Je compatiss À sa peine;	I compassionate his pain.
Convenir	À;	Cela LUI† convient, or	} That suits or becomes him wonderfully.
Seoir	À;	Cela LUI† sied à merveille;	

* The preposition *de* is implied in the pronoun EN, which means *of it*; see a table of the pronouns page 74.

† See note * page 251.

DIFFERENCE between the FRENCH and ENGLISH PREPOSITIONS.

Défendre	à ;	Défendez-LUI* de le dire ;	Forbid him to tell it.
Déplaire	à ;	Il déplaît à son père ;	He displeases his father.
Désobéir	à ;	Il désobéit à sa mère ;	He disobeys his mother.
se Fier	à ;	Il ne se fie à personne ;	He trusts nobody.
Manquer	à ;	Il manque à sa parole ;	He breaks his word.
Importer	à ;	Il LUI* importe de le voir ;	It concerns her to see it.
Nuire	à ;	Ne nuisez à personne ;	Do not injure any body.
Obéir	à ;	Obéissez à vos parents ;	Obeey your parents.
Obvier	à ;	Il n'a pu obvier à cela ;	He could not prevent that.
s Opposer	à ;	Opposez-vous à l'injustice ;	Oppose injustice.
Ordonner	à ;	Ordonnez-LUI* de le faire ;	Order him to do it.
Pardonner	à ;	Pardonnez à vos ennemis ;	Forgive your enemies.
Permettre	à ;	Permettez-LUI* de s'en aller ;	Permit her to go.
Persuader	à ;	Persuadez-LUI* de la voir ;	Persuade him to see her.
Plaire	à ;	Elle plaît à tout le monde ;	She pleases every body.
Prend garde	à ;	Il prend garde à tout ;	He minds every thing.
Promettre	à ;	Il LUI* a promis de venir ;	He promised her to come.
Renoncer	à ;	Il a renoncé au jeu ;	He has given up gaming.
Répondre	à ;	Répondez à ma question ;	Answer my question.
Résister	à ;	Résistez à la tentation ;	Resist temptation.
Ressembler	à ;	Elle ressemble à sa mère ;	She resembles her mother.
Subvenir	à ;	Il subvient à ses besoins ;	He supplies her wants.
Succéder	à ;	Il succédera à son oncle ;	He will succeed his uncle.
Survivre	à ;	Elle ne LUI* survivra pas ;	She will not outlive him.
Toucher	à ;	Ne touchez pas à ce livre ;	Do not touch that book.

In some instances the PREPOSITION may be placed in english, either before or after the substantive which it governs ; but in french, the PREPOSITION must always be placed immediately BEFORE its object ; as,

With whom were you ?	}	AVEC qui étiez-vous ?
or Whom were you with ?		
To whom shall I give this ?	}	À qui donnerai-je ceci ?
or Whom shall I give this to ?		

The PREPOSITIONS must be repeated in french before EVERY word which they govern, though these words are in the same sentence, and the preposition is not repeated in english ; as,

I come from France and Italy ; Je viens DE France et d'Italie.
 I have been to Paris and Rome ; J'ai été à Paris et à Rome.†

REMARKS ON THE PREPOSITIONS.

FOR; DEPUIS, PENDANT, DURANT, POUR.

FOR, before a period of time, is expressed by DEPUIS, to denote the two extremes of the period ; by PENDANT, or DURANT, to denote its duration ; and by POUR, to denote the end ; as,

I have not seen him for a month ;	
i. e. a month since.	Je ne l'ai pas vu DEPUIS un mois.
They fought for two days ;	
i. e. during two days.	Ils se batirent PENDANT deux jours.
They have provisions for a year ;	
i. e. to last a year.	Ils ont des provisions POUR un an.

* The preposition à is implied in the pronoun LUI, which expresses to him, to her. See a table of the pronouns, p. 74.

† This repetition is not always necessary, but the surest way for a foreigner is to make it a general rule, until he has learned by reading when the preposition may be left out.

REMARKS ON THE PREPOSITIONS.

BEFORE; AVANT, DEVANT.

- 206 Speaking of *time*, or *order*, *BEFORE* is expressed by *AVANT*, the opposite of which is *APRÈS*, *after*; speaking of *place* or *in presence*, it is expressed by *DEVANT*, the opposite of which is *DERRIÈRE*, *behind*; as,
 Do not walk *before* me. *Ne marchez pas* DEVANT moi.
 I want to arrive *before* you. *Je veux arriver* AVANT vous.
 N. B. Without an object after it, *BEFORE* is *AUPARAVANT*; as,
 I had seen it *before*. *Je l'avais vu* AUPARAVANT.

BY; PRÈS DE, À CÔTÉ DE.

- 207 *BY*, used in the sense of *NEAR*, is *PRÈS DE*, or *À CÔTÉ DE*; as,
 He was sitting *by* or *near* me. *Il était assis à côté de moi*.
 He passed *by* or *near* us. *Il passa près de nous, à côté de nous*.
 N. B. With the words *MYSELF*, *THYSELF*, *HIMSELF*, &c., *BY* is often used in the sense of *alone*, and is expressed by the adjective *SEUL*; as,
 I like to be *by myself*, i. e. *alone*. *J'aime à être SEUL*; not, *PAR moi-même*.
 She was *by herself* all the day. *Elle a été SEULE toute la journée*.

AT, TO; CHEZ.

- 208 *AT*, *TO*, denoting *being AT*, or *going TO* a person's *house*, are expressed by *CHEZ*, and the word *house* is *left out* in french; as,
 I must go *TO* my sister's; } *Il faut que j'aille chez ma sœur*.
 or *to* my sister's *house*. }
 She is *AT* your mother's. *Elle est chez votre mère*.
 N. B. If the word *house*, instead of being preceded by a noun, is preceded by one of the *possessive PRONOMINAL articles* *MY*, *THY*, *HIS*, *HER*, *OUR*, *YOUR*, *THEIR*, the word *house* is also omitted, and the *possessive ARTICLE* is changed into a *personal PRONOUN*, thus;
 At *my* house; *Chez moi*. At *our* house; *Chez nous*.
 At *thy* house; *Chez toi*. At *your* house; *Chez vous*.
 At *his* house; *Chez lui*. At *their* house; *Chez eux. m.*
 At *her* house; *Chez elle*. At *their* house; *Chez elles. f.*

FROM; De CHEZ.

- 209 *FROM*, with verbs denoting *coming* or *going FROM* a person's *house*, is expressed by *de* *CHEZ*, and the word *house* is *left out*; as,
 I come *from* my sister's; } *Je viens de chez ma sœur*.
 or *from* my sister's *house*. }
 Is she returned *from* my mother's? *Est-elle revenue de chez ma mère?*
 N. B. If the word *house* is preceded by the *possessive PRONOMINAL article* *MY*, *THY*, *HIS*, *HER*, *OUR*, *YOUR*, *THEIR*, that article is changed into a *personal PRONOUN*, as follows;
 From *my* house; *De chez moi*. From *our* house; *De chez nous*.
 From *thy* house; *De chez toi*. From *your* house; *De chez vous*.
 From *his* house; *De chez lui*. From *their* house; *De chez eux. m.*
 From *her* house; *De chez elle*. From *their* house; *De chez elles. f.*

FROM; De la PART.

- 210 *FROM*, with the verbs to *go*, to *come*, not *from the HOUSE* of a person, but *from the PERSON himself*, is expressed by *de la PART*; as,
 Go *from me* to my daughter's. *Allez de MA PART chez ma fille*.
 Whom do you come *from*? *De la PART de QUI venez-vous?*

REMARKS ON THE PREPOSITIONS.

IN, INTO; DANS, EN.

Before the names of *persons* and *places*, *IN*, *INTO* are expressed by **211**
DANS; as,

I have read that *in* Voltaire. *J'ai lu cela DANS Voltaire.*

Are there fine streets *in* Paris? *Y a-t-il de belles rues DANS Paris?*

N. B. Observe only with respect to *places*, that after verbs denoting residence, *IN* is expressed by *À*; as,

My brother lives *in* Paris. *Mon frère demeure À Paris.*

Before the names of *countries*, with verbs denoting *going* or *residing*, **212**
IN, *INTO* are expressed by *EN*; as,

My brother lives *in* France. *Mon frère demeure EN France.*

Has he ever been *into* Italy? *A-t-il jamais été EN Italie?*

N. B. In other instances, *IN*, *INTO* before the names of *countries*, may be expressed by *EN* or by *DANS*; observing only that after *DANS*, the noun must have an article, and after *EN*, it must be without; as,

There is some *in* France. *Il y en a EN France, DANS la France.*

Is there any *in* Italy? *Y en a-t-il EN Italie, or DANS l'Italie?*

Before *common* names used in a *limited* sense, i. e. preceded by any of the **213**
signs which have been called *article*, *IN*, *INTO* are expressed by *DANS*;

In the last peace. *DANS la dernière paix.*

In this unfortunate war. *DANS cette guerre malheureuse.*

There are charms *in* society. *Il y a des charmes DANS la société.*

But when the same *common* names are used in an *unlimited* sense, in **214**
which sense they generally have no article, *IN*, *INTO* are expressed by *EN*;

I like to live *in* peace. *J'aime à vivre EN paix.**

We are always *in* broils. *Nous sommes toujours EN querelle.*

It is better to live *in* society. *Il vaut mieux vivre EN société.†*

Speaking of *time*, *IN* is expressed by *DANS*, to denote the time **215**
after which an action *will be performed*, and by *EN*, to denote the time that
will be employed *in performing* it; as,

I shall go to Paris in three days.

J'irai à Paris DANS trois jours; viz. after three days.

J'irai à Paris EN trois jours; i. e. I shall be three days in going.

Before nouns denoting any part of the day, *IN* is *not expressed* in french; **216**

In the morning—*In* the evening. *Le matin—Le soir.*

In the afternoon. *Après midi, or Après dîné.*

N. B. Observe the same rule with *ON*, before the days of the week; as,

On Sunday—*On* Monday. *Dimanche—Lundi; not, sur Lundi.*

On the day he came. *Le jour qu'il est venu.*

* If in some instances *IN*, *INTO* are expressed by *EN*, without an article in french, before nouns which in english have the article *A*, *AN*; as,

I came *in* a coach; *Je vins EN carrosse.* She fell *into* a passion; *Elle se mit EN colère;*

It is because in these instances the noun serves less to name the thing itself, than the manner of being or acting of the agent of the verb, and these words *En carrosse*, *En colère*, may be considered as adverbial expressions; but if we add to the same nouns some word which will render their meaning definite, *IN*, *INTO* must be expressed by *DANS*; as,

I came *in* a fine coach;

Je vins DANS un beau carrosse.

She fell *into* a great passion;

E le se mit DANS une grande colère.

† *Société*, in these two instances, is used in a different sense; in the first instance, it means that particular state of being called *society*; in the second, it is rather an adverbial expression, and means *socially*.

CONJUNCTION.

CONJUNCTIONS are certain words, and sometimes short phrases that serve to express the relation which several sentences have together; as,

Will you come, IF I go? I will not go, UNLESS you come.

The words IF, UNLESS, which denote a relation between the verbs *come* and *go*, are called CONJUNCTIONS.

The CONJUNCTIONS are in french;

AFIN QUE,	} That, To the end that.	ET,	And, Both.
POUR QUE,		MAIS,	But.
À MOINS QUE,	Unless.	NI,	Neither, Nor.
AVANT QUE,	Before.	OU,	Either, Or.
AUSSI,	So, Therefore.	PARCE QUE,	Because.
BIEN QUE,	} Though, Although.	POURTANT,	Yet, However
QUOI QUE,		POURVU QUE,	Provided.
CAR,	For, Because.	PUISQUE,	Since.
ENCAS QUE,	If, In case that.	QUE,	That.
CEPENDANT,	Yet, However.	QUAND,	} When.
COMME,	As, Since.	LORSQUE,	
DECRAINTE QUE,	} Lest, For fear that.	QUAND,	Though, If even.
DEPEUR QUE,		SANS QUE,	Without.
JUSQU'à ce QUE,	Till, Until.	SI,	If, Whether.
NÉANMOINS,	Nevertheless.	SOIT QUE,	Whether.*

* Several grammarians reckon above one hundred conjunctions, which they call

DECLARATIVE, viz.	SUSPENSIVE, viz.	DISJUNCTIVE, viz.	COPULATIVE, viz.
SAVOIR.	SI.	OU.	ET.
COMME.	SAVOIR SI.	OU bien.	AUSSI.
C'est à DIRE.	C'est à SAVOIR si.	SOIT.	NI.
Par EXEMPLE.	QUOI qu'il en SOIT.	SOIT que.	NON plus.
AUGMENTATIVE, viz.	DIMINUTIVE, viz.	TRANSITIVE, viz.	CONCESSIVE, viz.
D'AILLEURS.	ENCORE.	En EFFET.	QUOI que.
OUTRE.	AU MOINS	AU RESTE.	À la VÉRITÉ.
DE PLUS.	Du MOINS.	À PROPOS.	QUAND, QUAND même.
AU SURPLUS.	Pour le MOINS.	APRÈS tout.	NON que, NON PAS que.
RESTRICTIVE, viz.	ADVERSATIVE, viz.	CONCLUSIVE, viz.	
SINON.	MAIS.	OR, DONC.	
SI ce n'est QUE.	CEPENDANT.	AINSI.	
QUOI que.	NÉANMOINS.	Par CONSÉQUENT.	
POUR, viz. QUOI que.	POURTANT.	C'est POUR QUOI.	
ENCORE que.	TOUTE FOIS	TELLEMENT que.	
À MOINS que.	BIEN que.	De sorte que. De	MANIÈRE que.
CAUSATIVE, viz.	COMPARATIVE, viz.	CONDITIONAL, viz.	TIME and ORDER, viz.
CAR.	COMME.	SI.	QUAND, LORSQUE.
COMME.	AINSI.	SINON.	PENDANT que.
PARCE que.	De MÊME.	QUAND, QUAND même.	TANDIS que.
À CAUSE que.	AINSI que.	QUAND bien même.	TANT que.
VU que.	AUSSI BIEN que.	À MOINS que.	AVANT que.
ATTENDU que.	AUSSI PEU que.	POURVU que.	DEPUIS que.
PUIS que.	AUTANT que.	SUPPOSÉ que.	DES que.
POUR quoi.	NON PLUS que.	AU CAS que.	AUSSI TÔT que.
AFIN que.	NI PLUS NI MOINS que.	En CAS que.	APRÈS que.
De PEUR que.	SI que.	À CONDITION que.	CEPENDANT.
De CRAINTE que.	EN, viz. COMME.	Bien ENTENDU que.	à PEINE, ENFIN.

Which, except those mentioned in the table above, are either *nouns* or *adverbs*, with *puz-ling* and *useless denominations*, since their properties are the same in both languages.

Some grammarians add to these *AFIN de*; *À MOINS QUE de*; *AVANT de*; *AVANT QUI de*; *AU LIEU de*; *DE CRAINTE de*; *DE PEUR de*; *FAUTE de*; *LOIN de*; *PLUTÔT QUE de*; *JUSQU' à*; but the only connective part of these words being *DE*, or *À*, which are *prepositions*, they can hardly be said to belong to the conjunctions.

The CONJUNCTIONS in french *affect* the verbs which follow them, so as to require some *particular* MOOD.

The following CONJUNCTIONS require the *INDICATIVE* mood after them; **217**

AUSSI,	<i>so, therefore.</i>	OU,	<i>Either, or.</i>
CAR,	<i>For, because.</i>	PARCE QUE,	<i>because.</i>
CEPENDANT,	} <i>yet, however.</i>	PUISQUE,	<i>since.</i>
POURTANT,		QUAND,	} <i>when.</i>
COMME,	<i>as, since.</i>	LORSQUE,	
MAIS,	<i>but.</i>	QUAND,	<i>Tho', if even.</i>
NÉANMOINS,	<i>nevertheless.</i>	QUE,	<i>that.</i>
NI,	<i>neither, nor.</i>	SI,	<i>if, whether.</i>

The following CONJUNCTIONS require the *SUBJUNCTIVE* mood after them; **218**

AFIN QUE,	} <i>that.</i>	DECRAINTE QUE,*	} <i>Lest, for</i>
POUR QUE,		<i>to the end that.</i>	
À MOINS QUE,*	<i>unless.</i>	JUSQU'À CE QUE,	<i>till, until.</i>
AVANT QUE,	<i>before.</i>	POURVU QUE,	<i>provided.</i>
BIEN QUE,	} <i>though, although.</i>	QUE,†	<i>that.</i>
QUOIQUE,		SANS QUE,	<i>without.</i>
ENCAS QUE,	<i>if, in case that.</i>	SOIT QUE,	<i>whether.</i>

When a CONJUNCTION governs *SEVERAL* VERBS, it is expressed before the first verb only, and QUE is added to the other verbs, with the *SAME* MOOD after it, as if the conjunction itself was repeated; ex.

As he is diligent, and takes pains.

COMME il EST diligent, et QU'il PREND de la peine.

He learns well, *because* he is diligent, and takes pains.

Il apprend bien, PARCE QU'il EST diligent, et QU'il PREND de la peine.

Unless he is diligent, and takes pains.

À MOINS QU'il ne SOIT diligent, et QU'il ne PRENNE de la peine.

When SI, IF, governs *two* verbs, instead of repeating SI before the *second* verb, we use QUE; and the verb which follows this QUE, must be in the *SUBJUNCTIVE*, though the verb which follows SI is in the *indicative*; You will learn, *if* you are diligent, and take pains.

Vous apprendrez, SI vous ÊTES diligent, et QUE vous PRENIEZ de la peine.

If you come, and I am not at home, you will wait for me.

SI vous VENEZ, et QUE je ne SOIS pas au logis, vous m'attendrez. (oo)

The idiom of the english language often admits an *ellipsis*, i. e. an omission of the conjunction THAT; as, **220**

I think my sister will come; for, I think THAT my sister will come.

But the corresponding conjunction must always *be expressed* in french; as,

I think my sister will come.

Je pense QUE ma sœur viendra.

I know she intends to come.

Je sais QU'elle a dessein de venir.

I hope she will soon be here.

J'espère QU'elle sera bientôt ici.

* The conjunctions A MOINS que, DE CRAINTE que, DE PEUR que require NE before the verb which follows them; see 195 rule.

† Learners are often mistaken, by considering QUE as requiring always the *subjunctive* mood after it; but QUE does not govern any particular mood; its power depends on the verb or conjunction that precedes it.

(oo) The conjunction IF is often suppressed, and the nominative transposed after the verb; as, *If you should come, or should you come, or were you to come, and I was not at home, you will wait for me*, which turn of expression must be rendered in french by SI before the verb; thus, SI vous venez, et QUE je ne fusse pas au logis, vous m'attendrez.

REMARKS ON THE CONJUNCTIONS.

BOTH; ET, TANT.

222 *BOTH*, a conjunction of emphasis, is expressed by *ET* before an *adjective*, by *ET* or *TANT* before a *substantive*; but observe, that when we use *TANT* before the *first* substantive, we put *QUE* instead of *ET* before the *second*;

She is *both* rich and handsome. *Elle est ET riche ET belle.*

Both summer and winter. *TANT en été QU'en hiver.*

N. B. This conjunction in *familiar* writing and in *conversation* is generally *left out* in french; thus,

Elle est riche et belle. En été et en hiver.

EITHER, OR; OU, SOIT.

223 *EITHER, OR*, are generally expressed by *OU*; as,

That is either good or bad. *Cela est ou bon ou mauvais.*

Either he is rich, or he is poor. *ou il est riche, ou il est pauvre.*

N. B. *EITHER, OR*, followed by a *Noun*, may be expressed by *SOIT*; as,

Either through love or caprice, she has married him.

SOIT par amour ou par caprice, or SOIT par caprice, elle l'a épousé.

NEITHER, NOR; NE NI, NI NE.

224 *NEITHER, NOR*, followed by a verb in the *indicative* or *subjunctive* mood, are expressed, *NEITHER* by *NE*, and *NOR* by *NI NE*; as,

I *neither* love nor hate her. *Je NE l'aime NI NE la hais.*

I *neither* see her nor speak to her. *Je NE la vois NI NE lui parle.*

If, after *NEITHER, NOR*, there is a verb in the *infinitive*, an *adjective*, a *noun*, or a *pronoun*, *NEITHER* is expressed by *NE* before the verb, and *NI* after it, and *NOR* is expressed by *NI*; as,

I care *neither* for him nor for her. *Je NE me soucie NI de lui NI d'elle.*

She is *neither* rich nor handsome. *Elle N'est NI riche NI belle.*

She has *neither* beauty nor riches. *Elle N'a NI beauté NI richesses.*

I can *neither* see her, nor speak to her. *Je NE puis NI la voir, NI lui parler.*

WHETHER; SI, QUE, SOIT QUE.

225 *WHETHER*, used in the sense of *IF*, is expressed by *SI*, with the following verb in the *INDICATIVE*; as,

Do you know *whether* she will come? *Savez-vous SI elle VIENDRA?*

I want to know *whether* she will come. *J'ai envie de savoir SI elle VIENDRA.*

WHETHER, used in the sense of *LET*, is expressed by *QUE*, or *SOIT QUE*, with the following verb in the *SUBJUNCTIVE*; as,

Come yourself, *whether* she comes } *Venez vous-même, QU'elle vienne ou non;*

or not; or *let* her come or not. } *or QU'elle vienne ou QU'elle ne vienne pas.*

Whether she comes or not; or } *SOIT QU'elle vienne ou non; or QU'elle vienne*

let her come or not, we will go. } *ou QU'elle ne vienne pas, nous y irons.*

THOUGH, ALTHOUGH, IF EVEN; QUAND.

226 *THOUGH, ALTHOUGH, IF EVEN*, followed by a *conditional* tense, are generally expressed by *QUAND*; as,

Though she should come,
or *Even if* she should come,
She would not go with us. } *QUAND elle viendrait, elle n'irait pas avec nous. (pp)*

(pp) These conjunctions are often *left out* in english, and the *nominative* is put after the verb, which mode of expression is also rendered in french by *QUAND*; as,
Were *she* to come, or, should *she* come now, she would not go with us;
Quand elle viendrait à présent, elle n'irait pas avec nous

REMARKS ON THE CONJUNCTIONS.

BUT FOR, IF IT WERE NOT FOR, &c. SANS.

BUT FOR, IF IT WERE NOT FOR, IF IT HAD NOT BEEN FOR, HAD IT NOT BEEN FOR, are generally expressed by SANS; as,
 But for you, I should have starved. SANS vous, je serais mort de faim.
 But for his friends,
 or If it were not for his friends,
 or Had it not been for his friends, he would have been punished. } SANS ses amis, il aurait été puni.

CHAP. X.

INTERJECTION.

INTERJECTIONS are natural sounds caused by some sudden emotion of joy, grief, pain, aversion, disgust, fright, surprise, astonishment, &c.

The sounds most commonly used in french as *interjections* are ;*

FOR JOY;

O!	O!	ô ! si je pouvais le voir.
AH!	Ah !	AH ! que je serais aise !
HA HA!	} Sounds caused by bursts of laughter.	
HI HI!		
HO HO!		

FOR PAIN AND GRIEF;

O!	O!	ô ! que je suis à plaindre !
AH!	Ah !	AH ! que je suis malheureux !
HE!	Ho!	HE ! vous me faites mal.
AIE!	Ay !	AIE ! vous me blessez.
OUF!	Oh!	OUF ! que je souffre !
HELAS!	Alas!	HELAS ! j'ai tout perdu.
MON DIEU!	O dear!	MON DIEU ! que ferai-je ?

FOR AVERSION, DISGUST;

FIE ! Fie upon ! FI ! n' avez-vous pas de honte ?

FOR FRIGHT, SURPRISE, ASTONISHMENT;

HA!	Ay!	HA ! vous voilà.
EH!	Hah!	EH ! que vous êtes alerte !
OH OH!	Oh!	OH OH ! je vous y prends.
O CIEL!	Heavens!	O CIEL ! qu'allons-nous devenir ?
BON DIEU!	Mercy on us!	BON DIEU ! que vous êtes impatient !

FOR CALLING;

HO!	} Sounds used when we call out to people.
HOLA!	
HEM!	

FOR SILENCE;

ST!	} Sounds used when we call for a sudden silence.
CHUT!	
PAIX!	

* The number of interjections cannot be ascertained, because any sound which expresses a sudden emotion of the soul may be called an interjection. Some of these sounds called interjections express even different sensations, according to the inflexion which the voice takes, either of joy or grief, of pleasure or pain. The soul is then the only syntax for interjections, and they can never embarrass the learner, since they do not require any rules.

IDIOMS.

REMARKS ON SOME *IDIOMATICAL* expressions, and words having *different meanings*, in which learners are apt to be mistaken.

PEOPLE; PEUPLE, GENS, PERSONNES, MONDE.

- 228 *PEOPLE*, meaning that *aggregate body* of human beings that compose a *nation*, a *government*, is expressed by *PEUPLE*; as,
 The french *people*. *Le PEUPLE français.*
 The will of the *people*. *La volonté du PEUPLE.*
 N. B. *PEUPLE* is also said of that number of persons without dignity, who compose the *multitude*; as,
 An insurrection of the *people*. *Un soulèvement du PEUPLE.*

- 229 *PEOPLE*, used to denote a certain number of *individuals*, is expressed by *GENS*, *PERSONNE*, *MONDE*; as,
 Were there many *people*, i. e. *persons*, at the play?
Y avait-il beaucoup de GENS, beaucoup de MONDE à la comédie?
 There is a great number of *people* in the street.
Il y a un grand nombre de MONDE, de GENS, de PERSONNES dans la rue.
 But observe that *GENS* is not used after a *definite number*; so we do not say, *Deux ou trois GENS*; two or three *people*; we say, *Deux ou trois PERSONNES*.
 Except when *GENS* is attended by an *adjective*; as
Deux ou trois honnêtes GENS. Two or three *honest people*.
Cinq ou six jeunes GENS. Five or six *young people*.
 Observe also that when *GENS* is attended by an *adjective*, this adjective must be *feminine* if it comes *BEFORE* *GENS*, and it must be *masculine* if it comes *AFTER*; as,
Good people, civil people. *De bonnes GENS, des GENS civils.*
Old people are suspicious. *Les vieilles GENS sont soupçonneux.*

COUNTRY; PAYS, CAMPAGNE.

- 230 *PAYS* is said of a *large extent* of country, such as the *dominions* of a government, a *county*, a *province*; *CAMPAGNE* is said of a certain extent of *fields*, and is the opposite of *VILLE*, *town*; as,
 France is a fine *country*. *La France est un beau PAYS.*
 I prefer the *country* to the town. *Je préfère la CAMPAGNE à la ville.*

MOUTH; BOUCHE, GUEULE.

- 231 Speaking of *men*, *horses*, *mules*, *asses*, we express *MOUTH* by *BOUCHE*;
 The *mouth* of a horse, of an ass. *La BOUCHE d'un cheval, d'un âne.*
 Speaking of other *animals*, we express *MOUTH* by *GUEULE*;
 The *mouth* of an ox, of a dog, &c. *La GUEULE d'un bœuf, d'un chien.*
 The *mouth* of a pike, of a trout. *La GUEULE d'un brochet, d'une truite.*

TIME; TEMS, FOIS.

- 232 The word *TIME*, denoting any *period*, or *space*, is expressed by *TEMS*;
 It is *time* to set out. *Il est TEMS de partir.*
 We shall not be there in *time*. *Nous n'y serons pas à TEMS.*

But the word *TIME* is sometimes used to *limit* the action of the verb, or to denote a *repetition* of the action; as, the *first time*; *this time*; *another time*; *several times*, and is then expressed by *FOIS*; as,

- Pardon me for *this time*. *Pardonnez-moi pour cette FOIS.*
 I will do it better *next time*. *Je le ferai mieux la prochaine FOIS.*
 How *many times* have you done it? *Combien de FOIS l'avez-vous fait?*

YEAR; AN, ANNÉE.
DAY; JOUR, JOURNÉE.

AN and JOUR are *indefinite* expressions which serve more to denote the **233**
periods of time than its duration; they are chiefly used after the cardinal
or primitive numbers *un, deux, trois, quatre, &c.*; as,

Un AN, deux ANS, trois ANS; &c. A year, two years, three years, &c.
Un JOUR, deux JOURS, trois JOURS. One day, two days, three days, &c

ANNÉE, on the contrary, implies *duration*, and will admit of different
modifications; so when YEAR is attended by an *article*, or by an *adjective*,
or by another noun, you must express it by ANNÉE; as,

This year, last year. *Cette ANNÉE, l'ANNÉE dernière.*
A good, a happy year. *Une bonne, une heureuse ANNÉE.*
A great number of years. *Un grand nombre d'ANNÉES.*

JOURNÉE is generally understood of the time which people employ in
their occupations from their *rising* to their *going to bed*; as,

I spent the *day* very well. *J'ai bien employé la JOURNÉE.*
I have studied the whole *day*. *J'ai étudié toute la JOURNÉE.*

MORNING; MATIN, MATINÉE.
EVENING; SOIR, SOIRÉE.

It is the same with MATIN, MATINÉE; SOIR, SOIRÉE, as it is with JOUR, **234**
JOURNÉE. MATIN is said of the *first*, and SOIR of the *last part* of the day,
but they do not imply any idea of duration. MATINÉE, on the contrary,
implies the *whole time* from *day light* till *noon*; but is generally under-
stood to be from the time that *people get up* till *twelve o'clock* at noon;
and SOIRÉE implies the whole time of *darkness* till *twelve o'clock* at night,
or till *people retire*; as,

It was fine this *morning*. *Il faisait beau ce MATIN.*
I have studied all the *morning*. *J'ai étudié toute la MATINÉE.*
Shall we see you this *evening*? *Vous verrons-nous ce SOIR?*
I shall spend the *evening* with you. *Je passerai la SOIRÉE avec vous.*

N. B. Saluting people, for *GOOD MORNING*, we say BON JOUR, not
BON matin; and for *GOOD NIGHT*, we say BON SOIR, in the *early part*
of the night, and BONNE NUIT, when the night is *far advanced*.

NIGHT; NUIT, SOIR.

If, by NIGHT, you mean the *whole time of darkness* on that part of the **235**
earth which we inhabit, you express it in french by NUIT; as,

Where did he sleep last *night*? *Où coucha-t-il la NUIT dernière?*
He spent the whole *night* at the ball. *Il passa toute la NUIT au bal.*

If, by NIGHT, you mean only the *first part of darkness* which is other-
wise called *evening*, you express it by SOIR; as,

Will you go to the play to-*night*? *Irez-vous à la comédie ce SOIR*
Were you at the ball last *night*? *Etiez-vous au bal hier au SOIR*

TWELVE O'CLOCK; MIDI, MINUIT.

It is *twelve o'clock*. *Il est MIDI (in the day.) Il est MINUIT (at night.)* **236**
It is a *quarter past 12*. *Il est MIDI et un quart. Il est MINUIT et un quart.*

It is *half past twelve*. *Il est MIDI et demi. Il est MINUIT et demi.*

It is *three quarters past twelve*. } *Il est une heure moins un quart.*
It wants a *quarter* to one. }

It is *one o'clock*. *Il est une heure.*

It is a *quarter past one*. *Il est une heure et un quart, &c.*

To HAVE, expressed by ÊTRE.

- 237** The auxiliary verb *HAVE* is expressed by the same tense and person of the auxiliary ÊTRE, to form the *compound* tenses of *reflective* VERBS; as,
 I have hurt myself. Je ME SUIS blessé.
 He has gone away. Il s'en EST allé.
 We have sat down. Nous NOUS SOMMES assis.
 You have walked. Vous VOUS ÊTES promenés.
 They have diverted themselves. Ils SE SONT divertis. [see page 115.]

- 238** The auxiliary *HAVE* is also expressed by the same tense and person of ÊTRE, when it comes before any of the following participles ;
- | | | | | | |
|-----------|----------|------------|-------------|------------|----------|
| Agreed, | CONVENU. | come, | venu. | fallen, | TOMBÉ. |
| Arrived, | ARRIVÉ. | come in, | ENTRÉ. | gone, | ALLÉ. |
| Become, | DEVENU. | dead, | MORT. | returned, | REVENU. |
| Befallen, | SURVENU. | deceased, | DÉCÉDÉ. | set out, | PARTI. |
| Born, | NÉ. | disagreed, | DISCONVENU. | succeeded, | PARVENU. |
- I have set out early. Je SUIS PARTI de bonne heure.
 He has agreed to do it. Il EST CONVENU de le faire.*
 We have arrived in time. Nous SOMMES ARRIVÉS à tems.
 You have returned too soon. Vous ÊTES REVENUS trop tôt.
 They have gone too far. Ils SONT ALLÉS trop loin.

To BE, expressed by AVOIR.

- 239** The auxiliary verb *BE* is expressed by the same tense and person of the auxiliary AVOIR, when it is followed by the adjectives *hungry, thirsty, cold, warm, hot* denoting the natural feelings; *right, wrong, ashamed*; because these *adjectives* are expressed by a *substantive* in french; as,
 I am hungry. J'AI faim.
 He is thirsty. Il A soif.
 His feet are cold. Il A froid aux pieds.
 She is warm or hot. Elle A chaud; not, Elle EST chaude.
 Her hands are warm. Elle A chaud aux mains.
 We are right. Nous AVONS raison.
 They are wrong, ashamed. Ils ONT tort; ils ONT honte.
 N. B. The verb *BE* is also expressed by AVOIR, in speaking of the *Age* of beings, because in these instances, as in the above, the French use a *substantive* instead of an adjective; as, [have you?
 How old are you? Quel âge AVEZ-vous? i. e. What age
 I am sixteen. J'AI seize ans; not, Je SUIS seize.
 How old is your horse? Quel âge A votre cheval?

* When the participle CONVENU means *suited*, it requires AVOIR; as,
 Cela m'AURAIT fort bien CONVENU; That would have suited me very well.

N. B. The participles SORTI, *gone out, been out*; PASSÉ, *gone by*; MONTE, *gone up, ascended*; DESCENDU, *come down*, require AVOIR or ÊTRE, agreeably to the sense in which they are used; but the same distinction, I think, is observed in english;

Mon père A sorti; My father has been out. Il ÉTAIT sorti; He was gone out.
 Il A passé près d'ici; He has passed just by. Il EST passé; He is gone by.
 Il A monté la coline; He has ascended the hill. Il EST monté; He is gone up.
 Il A descendu l'escalier; He has come down the stairs. Il EST descendu; He is come down.

DEMEURÉ, used for *lived, dwelt*, requires AVOIR; and for *remained, staid*, it requires ÊTRE; as,

Il A demeuré à Paris; He has lived in Paris. Il EST demeuré à P.; He has staid in P.

ACCOURU, *run to*; PÉRI, *perished*; APPARU, *appeared*; DISPARU, *disappeared*; CRU, *grown*; DÉCRU, *grown less*; RECRU, *grown again*, take indifferently AVOIR or ÊTRE.

To BE, expressed by FAIRE.

The verb BE, attended by an adjective or a substantive denoting the state of the weather, or of the Atmosphere, is expressed in french by the same tense of the verb FAIRE, with IL for its nominative; as, 240

How is the weather? *Quel tems FAIT-il?*
 Is the weather fine? *FAIT-il beau tems?*
 Yes, the weather is very fine. *Oui, il FAIT très beau tems.*
 It is rather warm. *Il FAIT un peu chaud.*
 It is very cold. *Il FAIT très froid, or grand froid.*
 The weather has been bad lately. *Il A FAIT mauvais tems depuis peu.*

To BE, To DO, expressed by Se PORTER.

The verbs BE and DO, used to denote the state of the body, are expressed by the same tense and person of the reflective verb Se PORTER; as, 241

How are you? how do you do? *Comment vous PORTEZ-vous?*
 I am pretty well, I thank you. *Je me PORTE assez bien, dieu merci.**
 I have not been well. *Je ne me suis pas bien PORTÉ. [mère?*
 How is your mother? } *Comment se PORTE madame† votre*
 How does your mother do? }

To BE, expressed by DEVOIR.

The present tense of the verb BE, am, art, is, are, and the imperfect was, were, followed by another verb in the INFINITIVE, are expressed by the same tense and person of the verb DEVOIR; as, 242

I am to go there to-night. *Je DOIS y aller ce soir.*
 He is to come to-morrow. *Il DOIT venir demain; not, IL EST &c.*
 He was to bring it to-day. *Il DEVAIT l'apporter aujourd'hui.*

To BE, not expressed in french.

The infinitive word TO BE, followed by a PAST PARTICIPLE, is not expressed, but the english PARTICIPLE takes the place of the infinitive BE, and is expressed by the INFINITIVE in french; as, 243

There is nothing to be SEEN. *Il n'y a rien à VOIR.*
 He caused his head to be CUT off. *Il lui fit COUPER la tête.*
 This house is to be LET, to be SOLD. *Cette maison'est à LOUER, à VENDRE.*

To BE Just, To HAVE Just; VENIR DE, Ne FAIRE Que DE.

The verbs HAVE and BE followed by the adverb Just, to denote an action past at the moment we are speaking, are expressed by VENIR de, or Ne FAIRE que DE, in the same tense and person as HAVE or BE are, and the english participle is expressed by the infinitive in french; thus, 244

I am just come. } *Je VIENS d'arriver; or,*
 } *Je ne FAIS que d'arriver.*
 My brother had just done. } *Mon frère VENAIT de finir; or,*
 } *Mon frère ne FAISAIT que de finir. ‡*

* The French do not, as the English do, thank those who inquire after their health. Instead of *Je vous remercie*; they say, *Dieu merci*; *A votre service*; *Vous êtes bien bon, or bien civil*; *Vous avez bien de la bonté*, or they return the compliment after the answer by saying, *Et vous?* and *you?*

† It is customary with the French, in mentioning the relations of the people to whom they are speaking, to add the words *Monsieur, Madame, Mademoiselle*; as,

Comment se porte MONSIEUR votre père, MONSIEUR votre frère?

J'ai rencontré MADAME votre mère, MADMOISELLE votre sœur; these words can not be expressed in english.

‡ Do not confound *Ne FAIRE que DE, To be just, To have just*, with *Ne FAIRE que*, which expresses another idea, viz. *To do nothing but*; *DE* added to the first makes the difference between these two expressions.

245

WAS NEAR, WERE NEAR, HAD LIKE; PENSER.

WAS NEAR, WERE NEAR followed by a present *participle*, and HAD LIKE followed by an *infinitive*, denote an action which was on the point of being effected, and are expressed by the *perfect* tense, or the *present compound** of the verb PENSER; as,

I was near dying;	} J'ai PENSÉ, or je PENSAI* mourir.
or I had like to have died.	
You were near falling;	} Vous avez PENSÉ tomber.
or You had like to have fallen.	
He was near being killed;	} Il a PENSÉ, or il PENSA* être tué.
or He had like to have been killed.	

246

THERE IS, THERE ARE, IT IS FAR, IT IS LONG, AGO, IT IS SINCE, THIS, THESE; IL Y A; IL Y AVAIT, &c.

THERE IS, THERE ARE, IT IS FAR, IT IS LONG, IT IS SINCE, AGO, and the demonstrative words THIS, THESE, pointing out a period of time, are expressed by the impersonal verb IL Y A; IL Y AVAIT, &c.; † as,

Is there any news to-day?	Y A-t-IL des nouvelles aujourd'hui?	} Combien Y A-t-IL de calais à paris?
Are there flowers in his garden?	Y A-t-il des fleurs dans son jardin?	
How far is it from calais to paris?		} IL Y A cent cinquante milles.
or How far is calais from paris?		
It is a hundred and fifty miles.		} IL Y A cent cinquante milles de c. à p.
Calais is 150 miles from paris.		
How long has he lived here?	Combien Y A-t-IL qu'il demeure ici?	} IL Y A six mois qu'il est ici.
He has been here these six months.		
It is 10 years since he was in France	IL Y A dix ans qu'il était en France;	} or, Il était en France IL Y A dix ans.
or He was in France ten years ago.		
It is long since I have seen him.	} IL Y A long tems que je NE† l'ai vu.	} IL Y AVAIT un an que je NE l'avais vu.
or I have not seen him this long while		
It was 12 months since I saw him.		} IL Y AVAIT un an que je NE l'avais vu.
or I had not seen him these 12 months.		

247

HERE IS, HERE ARE; THIS IS, THESE ARE; VOICI.

THERE IS, THERE ARE; THAT IS, THOSE ARE; VOILÀ.

HERE IS, HERE ARE, THIS IS, THESE ARE, pointing out any object, are expressed by VOICI; THERE IS, THERE ARE, THAT IS, THOSE ARE, also pointing out an object, are expressed by VOILÀ; as,

Here is, or this is your horse.	VOICI votre cheval.
Here are, or these are your boots.	VOICI vos bottes.
There is, that is a man who says.	VOILÀ un homme qui dit.

N. B. It is to be observed that, when the *nominative* of the verb which attends *HERE, THERE*, in the above sense, *i. e.* pointing out an object, is a *personal pronoun*, this *nominative* pronoun is changed into an *OBJECTIVE pronoun* in french, and placed *BEFORE* VOICI, VOILÀ; thus,

Here I am.	ME voici.	Here we are.	NOUS voici.
Here he is.	LE voici.	There she is.	LA voilà.
Here they are.	LES voici.	There they are.	LES voilà.

* Agreeably to 136, 137 rules.

† See the conjugation of the impersonal verb Y AVOIR, page 173. ‡ See the 196 rule.

§ The French do not give to the different periods of time names which correspond with the English. For a week, they say, *huit jours*; for two weeks, or a fortnight, they say, *quinze jours*; three weeks, *trois semaines*; four weeks, *un mois*; for a quarter of a year, they say, *trois mois*; half a year, *six mois*; three quarters of a year, *neuf mois*; twelve months, *un an*.

LET; QUE, LAISSEZ.

LET, implying command or permission to a *THIRD* person, is expressed by QUE, and the *object* of LET is made the *Nominative* of the following verb, which must be in the *SUBJUNCTIVE* in french; as, 248

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Let him do it himself. | QU'il le fasse lui-même. |
| Let her go, if she likes. | QU'elle y aille, si elle veut. |
| Let them go too. | QU'ils, or QU'elles y aillent aussi. |
| Let my brother go alone. | QUE mon frère y aille seul. |

LET, commanding or entreating a *SECOND* person, is expressed by the second person of the *IMPERATIVE* of the verb LAISSER, with the following verb in the *INFINITIVE*; as,

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Let him go; permit him to go. | LAISSEZ-le aller. |
| Let her go; permit her to go. | LAISSEZ-la aller. |
| Let them go; permit them to go. | LAISSEZ-les aller. |
| Let my brother go; suffer him to go. | LAISSEZ aller mon frère. |

N. B. LET KNOW, meaning to *inform*, is expressed by FAIRE SAVOIR, agreeably to tense and person; as,

- | | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Let him know that I will come. | FAITES lui SAVOIR que je viendrai. |
| I will let him know it to-night. | Je le lui FERAI SAVOIR ce soir. |

To MAKE; FAIRE, RENDRE.

To MAKE, meaning to perform some work, or some action, is expressed by FAIRE; as, 249

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| To make a book; to make a noise. | FAIRE un livre; FAIRE du bruit. |
| To make great progress. | FAIRE de grands progrès. |

But to MAKE, expressing not the performance of an action, but the *moral* or *natural effects* of one being on another, is expressed by RENDRE; as, Exercise makes the body healthy. L'exercice REND le corps sain.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Vice makes men unhappy. | Le vice REND les hommes malheureux. |
| Misfortune has made him wise. | Le malheur l'a RENDU sage. |

To CAUSE, To HAVE, To GET; FAIRE.

The verbs CAUSE, and HAVE; and GET, in the sense of *cause*, meaning to order, or procure a thing to be done, are expressed by the same tense and person of the verb FAIRE; and the english *Participle* which follows HAVE, or GET, is expressed by the *INFINITIVE* in french; as, 250

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| I had him arrested; | } Je l'AI FAIT arrêter. |
| or I have caused him to be arrested. | |
| I shall have him punished; | } Je le FERAI punir. |
| or I shall cause him to be punished. | |
| Get your watch mended. | FAITES raccommoder votre montre. |

To CAUSE To BE DONE or MADE, To HAVE or GET DONE or MADE, To ORDER, To BESPEAK; } FAIRE FAIRE.

To CAUSE TO BE DONE or MADE, To HAVE or GET DONE or MADE, To ORDER, To BESPEAK, are expressed by the verb FAIRE repeated; i. e. the first verb in the same tense and person as cause, have, get, order, or bespeak is, and the second verb in the *INFINITIVE*; as, 251

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| I am going to get a watch made. | Je vais FAIRE FAIRE une montre. |
| Where will you have it made? | } Où la FEREZ-vous FAIRE? |
| or Where will you get it done? | |
| I shall have it made in Paris; | } Je la FERAI FAIRE à Paris. |
| or I shall get it done in Paris. | |

252

To ASK, To DESIRE; DIRE, PRIER CHARGER.

We say in french as in english, DEMANDER *une chose*, to *ask* for a thing; DÉSIERER *une chose*, to *wish for a thing*; but we do not say; DEMANDER *de faire une chose*, to *ASK to do a thing*; nor DÉSIERER *une personne de faire une chose*, to *DESIRE a person to do a thing*; therefore, when ASK or DESIRE are followed by another verb in the *infinitive*, ASK must be expressed by DIRE or PRIER; and DESIRE by PRIER or CHARGER; as,

He asked me to do it. *Il me* DIT, or *il me* PRIA *de le faire*.
He desired me to tell you so. *Il m'a* PRIÉ, or CHARGÉ *de vous le dire*.

253

To LOOK; REGARDER, PARAÎTRE, AVOIR LA MINE.

To LOOK, meaning to *view*, to *consider*, is expressed by REGARDER; Look at this man, at that horse. REGARDEZ *cet homme, ce cheval*.

To LOOK, meaning to *seem*, to *appear*, is PARAÎTRE, AVOIR L'AIR, AVOIR LA MINE, AVOIR APPARENCE; as,

That man looks very proud. *Cet homme a l'air bien fier*.
You look very well to-day. *Vous AVEZ bonne MINE aujourd'hui*.
This bread looks well. *Ce pain PARAÎT bon, or a bonne MINE.**
How does the country look? *Quelle APPARENCE a la campagne?*

254

To SUPPOSE; SUPPOSER, PENSER, S'IMAGINER.

The French say as well as the English, SUPPOSER *une chose*, to *suppose a thing*, i. e. to *take it as granted* for the sake of argument; as, You suppose (i. e. you take for granted) a thing which is not probable. Vous SUPPOSEZ *une chose qui n'est pas probable*.

But the verb SUPPOSE, so often used in english in the sense of to *think*, to *fancy*, to *imagine*, can not be expressed by the verb *supposer* in french; it must be expressed by PENSER or S'IMAGINER; as,

I suppose you know the news, i. e. I think, I imagine, &c.

Je m'IMAGINE que vous savez les nouvelles; not, *Je suppose, &c.*

It is supposed that there has been a battle; i. e. it is thought, &c.

On PENSE, on s'IMAGINE qu'il y a eu bataille; never, *On suppose*.

255

To HOPE; ESPÉRER.

To HOPE; Se FLATTER, AIMER à CROIRE, Se PLAIRE à CROIRE.

The verb HOPE followed by a *future* tense, is expressed by ESPÉRER; I hope you will be well by and by, to-morrow, &c.

J'ESPÈRE que vous vous porterez bien tantôt, demain, &c.

N.B. HOPE, being the *expectation* of something to *come*, can never be said in french of what is *past* or *present*; so when the verb HOPE is followed by the *present* or *perfect* tense of another verb, it can not be expressed by *Esperer*; it must be expressed by Se FLATTER, AIMER à CROIRE, Se PLAIRE à CROIRE; as,

I hope you are well. *Je me* FLATTE, or *J'AI*ME à CROIRE, or

Je me PLAIS à CROIRE *que vous vous portez bien*; never, *J'ESPÈRE*.

I hope that I have not kept you waiting.

Je me FLATTE† *que je ne vous ai pas fait attendre*; never, *J'ESPÈRE*.

Yet, in these instances, we may also use the verb ESPÉRER, if we transpose it in *parenthesis* at the end of the sentence; thus,

Vous vous portez bien, j'ESPÈRE. You are well, *I hope*.

Je ne vous ai pas fait attendre, j'ESPÈRE. I have not kept you, *I hope*.

* MINE is said of the *look* of persons, and of things that are eatable, such as bread, meat, fruit, &c. but it cannot be said of other things.

† *Je me* FLATTE, in this sense, does not mean *I flatter myself*; it means, *I like to think to persuade myself*.

To TAKE; MENER, PORTER.
To BRING; AMENER, APPORTER.

MENER, to TAKE, is said of beings that have the *natural faculty* of walking; PORTER is said of the same beings when they have *lost*, or are *not able* to use that faculty; and of *things*; as,

Take my horse to the stable. MENEZ mon cheval à l'écurie.
Take the saddle to the saddler. PORTEZ la selle au sellier.

AMENER and APPORTER are used in the same sense as mener and porter, but they imply a relation to the *place* in which we are; as,
Bring me my horse. AMENEZ-moi mon cheval.
Bring me my whip. APPORTEZ-moi mon fouet.

To USE; { Se SERVIR de, USER de, En USER,
TRAITER, AGIR, AVOIR COUTUME.

To USE, meaning to *make use* of things, is expressed by the reflective verb *se SERVIR de*; as,

I am using my knife, my pen, my book, my horse, &c.
Je me SERS de mon couteau, de ma plume, de mon livre, de mon cheval;
not J'USE mon couteau, ma plume, &c. because USER *une chose*, means, to wear out a thing, not to *make use* of a thing.

Yet speaking of moral or intellectual objects, we express *USE* by USER *de*;
To use patience, violence, reprisals, precaution.
USER de *patience*, de *violence*, de *représailles*, de *précaution*.

To USE, speaking of the *manner* of *Acting* towards persons, is expressed by TRAITER, EN USER *avec*, AGIR *avec*; as,
He uses me well.

Il me TRAITÉ bien; Il en USE bien avec moi; Il AGIT bien avec moi.
He has not used me well. Il ne m'a pas bien TRAITÉ.

To USE, meaning to be *accustomed to*, is expressed by AVOIR COUTUME, or ÊTRE ACCOUTUMÉ; as,
You are used to it. Vous y êtes ACCOUTUMÉ.
He was not used to do so. Il n'avait pas COUTUME d'agir ainsi.

To HELP; AIDER, SERVIR.

To HELP, viz. to *assist* a person to do a thing, is expressed by AIDER; 258
Shall I help you to do it? Vous AIDERAI-je à le faire?
My brother will not help me. Mon frère ne veut pas m'AIDER.

But to HELP is often used in the sense of to *take*, to *offer*, to *present* a thing to a person; HELP is then expressed by SERVIR, not the person to the thing, but the thing to the person; as,

Shall I help you to a glass of wine? Vous SERVIRAI-je un verre de vin?
i. e. shall I help a glass of wine to you?

Help that gentleman to a glass; SERVEZ un verre à ce monsieur;
not, SERVEZ ce monsieur à un verre; for it is the glass that you help or present to the gentleman, not the gentleman to the glass.

To ATTEND, explained in the following examples;

To attend a meeting. ALLER or ASSISTER à une assemblée. 259
To attend to one's duty. FAIRE or REMPLIR son devoir.
To attend to what is said. FAIRE attention à ce qu'on dit.
To attend to business. S'APPLIQUER aux affaires.

To attend a sick

To attend a sick person. GARDER or SOIGNER un malade.

To attend a patient, viz. to visit. VOIR or VISITER un malade.

To attend a master, to wait upon. SERVIR un maître.

To attend a master, to be taught. PRENDRE leçon d'un maître.

To attend a pupil, to give lessons. DONNER leçon à un écolier.

To WANT; { AVOIR BESOIN, AVOIR ENVIE, DÉSIRER,
SOUHAITER, VOULOIR, DEMANDER.

260 To WANT, meaning to be in need of a thing, or under the necessity of doing a thing, is expressed by AVOIR BESOIN; as,

I want money, clothes; am in need. J'ai BESOIN d'argent, d'habits.

I do not want him; have no need. Je n'ai pas BESOIN de lui.

I want to go to town; i. e. must go. J'ai BESOIN d'aller à la ville.

But WANT is often used to denote merely wish or desire; it is then expressed by AVOIR ENVIE, DÉSIRER, SOUHAITER, VOULOIR; as,

I want to see him; i. e. I wish. Je DÉSIRE or SOUHAITE de le voir.

I want to speak to him; (wish) J'ai ENVIE de lui parler.

I want him to learn french. Je VEUX qu'il apprenne le français.

To WANT a person or a thing, in the sense of wish, is DEMANDER;

Whom or what do you want? Qui or que DEMANDEZ-vous?

You are wanted; He wants you. On vous DEMANDE; Il vous DEMANDE.

To MARRY; MARIER, Se MARIER, ÉPOUSER.

261 If, by MARRY, you mean to give a person in marriage, or to perform what is called the ceremony, you must make use of the verb MARIER. If, by MARRY, you mean to take a person in marriage, you use ÉPOUSER;

My father has married his niece.

Mon père a MARIÉ sa nièce; i. e. has given her in marriage.

Mon père a ÉPOUSÉ sa nièce; i. e. has taken her for his wife.

That parson has married my sister.

Ce prêtre a MARIÉ ma sœur; i. e. has performed the ceremony.

Ce prêtre a ÉPOUSÉ ma sœur; i. e. has taken her for his wife.

N. B. MARRIED, in the sense of taking a wife, is expressed by ÉPOUSÉ after the auxiliary HAVE, and by MARIÉ after the auxiliary BE; as,

I have married his sister. J'ai ÉPOUSÉ sa sœur; not MARIÉ.

I am married to his sister. Je suis MARIÉ à sa sœur; not ÉPOUSÉ.

To MARRY, in a neuter sense, i. e. without an object added to it, is expressed by the reflective verb se MARIER; as,

When do you marry? Quand VOUS MARIEZ-vous?

I will never be married. Je ne ME MARIERAI jamais.

To RIDE, explained in the following examples;

262 To ride well. se TENIR bien à cheval.

To ride in a coach, on horseback. ALLER en carrosse, ALLER à cheval.

To take a ride in a coach. { FAIRE un TOUR en carrosse; or,
se PROMENER en carrosse.

To take a ride on horseback. { FAIRE un TOUR à cheval; or
se PROMENER à cheval.

N. B. To RIDE, attended by any particular object, i. e. an object determined by any of the signs called Article, is expressed by ALLER; as,

I will ride your horse, and you will ride in my coach.

J'IRAI sur votre cheval, et vous IREZ dans mon carrosse.

T, WALK; MARCHER, *Se* PROMENER.

If, by *WALK*, you mean the action of going from place to place, either for *business* or *Exercise*, you must use *MARCHER*; as, 263

Walk a little faster. *MARCHEZ un peu plus vite.*

I can not *walk* any more. *Je ne puis plus MARCHER.*

I have *walked* too much to-day. *J'ai trop MARCHÉ aujourd'hui.*

If, by *WALK*, you mean that exercise which is taken for *Diversion*, you must use the reflective verb *se PROMENER*; as,

Let us *walk* a little. *PROMENONS-nous un peu. [d'hui.*

I have not *walked* to-day. *Je ne me suis pas PROMENÉ aujourd'hui.*

N. B. *To TAKE A WALK* is expressed by *FAIRE un TOUR*, or by *FAIRE une PROMENADE*, *FAIRE un TOUR de PROMENADE*; as,*

Let us go and *take a walk*. *Allons FAIRE un TOUR de PROMENADE.*

Go and *take a walk* in the garden. *Allez FAIRE un TOUR dans le jardin.**

To COME; ALLER, VENIR.

The English often use the verb *COME*, with reference to the *person* to whom they speak; so speaking to a person in the street, they will say: 264

I will come and see you to-morrow, meaning, at the *person's house*;

The French, on the contrary, speak with reference to the *place*, and not to the person; so this sentence:

I will come and see you to-morrow, may be expressed two ways;

Je VIENDRAI vous voir demain, being then at the place in which you are to *come* to see the person.

J'IRAI vous voir demain, meaning the place where you are to *go* to see the person; for, *VENIR* means to *move* from a *place* in which we are not at the time we are speaking, to a *place* in which we are; *ALLER* means to move from a *place* in which we are, to a *place* in which we are not.

In asking a question, *COME* is expressed by *VENIR*; but in the answer, the verb must be determined by the *place*, not by the *person* you are to go to.

To RETURN; RETOURNER, REVENIR.

The English use the verb *RETURN* both for to *go back*, and to *come back*; but in french you must make a distinction. 265

If, by *RETURN*, you mean to *go back*, you must use *RETOURNER*; as,

I come from *Paris*, and I will *return* to-morrow; *i. e.* will *go back*.

Je viens de Paris, et j'y RETOURNERAI demain.

If, by *RETURN*, you mean to *come back*, you must use *REVENIR*; as,

I am going to *Paris*, and I will *return* next week; *i. e.* will *come back*.

Je vais à Paris, et je REVIENDRAI la semaine prochaine.

N. B. *To RETURN*, meaning to *give back*, to *restore*, to *repay*, is expressed by *RENDRE*; as,

Return me my money. *RENDEZ-moi mon argent.*

Have I not *returned* it to you? *Ne vous l'ai-je pas RENDU?*

To CALL; PASSER CHEZ.

To CALL a person, is *APPELER quelqu'un*; but *TO CALL AT* a person's, or *UPON* a person is *PASSER CHEZ quelqu'un*; as, 266

When will you *call upon* me? *Quand PASSEREZ-vous CHEZ moi?*

I will *call upon* you to-morrow. *Je PASSERAI demain CHEZ vous.*

Never say, *APPELEZ SUR moi, call upon me; J'APPELERAI SUR vous, &c.*

* *Faire un tour* is generally understood of a *short walk*; and *Faire une promenade, Faire un tour de promenade* means to take a walk, without any limitation as to time, but rather long than short.

267

To BREAK; ROMPRE, CASSER.

ROMPRE is said of things which require some *effort* to break them, such as *wood* and *metals*; as,

You have *broken* my stick. *Vous avez rompu mon bâton.*

CASSER is said of things that are *frail*, such as *glass* and *earthenware*.

He has *broken* the plates. *Il a cassé les assiettes.*

The glass and bottle are *broken*. *Le verre et la bouteille sont cassés.*

N. B. In speaking of *bones*, we use indifferently ROMPRE or CASSER;

He has *broken* his leg. *Il s'est cassé or rompu la jambe.*

Without specifying any particular object, we use CASSER; as,

They *break* every thing in this house. *On casse tout dans cette maison.*

And for *BREAK* to *pieces*, we say BRISER; as,

The ship was *broken* to pieces. *Le navire fut tout brisé.*

268

To LIKE; AIMER, TROUVER.

To *LIKE*, meaning to be *fond* of, to have a *liking* for a person or a thing, is expressed by AIMER; as,

I *like* wine, money, pleasure, France, the country, &c.

J'aime le vin, l'argent, le plaisir, la France, la campagne, &c.

But *LIKE* is often used, especially in asking questions, for to *think*, to *have* an *opinion*, and is then expressed by PENSER or TROUVER;

How do you *like* this country? { *i. e.* What *think* you, what is your *opinion* of this country?

Que pensez-vous de ce pays? or *comment trouvez-vous ce pays?*

Yet in the answer we use AIMER; as,

Je l'aime beaucoup. Je l'aime assez bien. Je ne l'aime pas du tout.

I *like* it much. I *like* it well enough. I do not *like* it at all.

269

To KEEP; GARDER, TENIR, AVOIR.

To *KEEP*, meaning to *preserve*, to *watch*, to *guard*, to *look after*, is expressed by GARDER; as,

Keep it for my sake; *i. e.* *preserve.* *gardez-le pour l'amour de moi.*

This dog *keeps* the house; *watches.* *Ce chien garde la maison.*

This boy *keeps* the flocks; *looks after.* *Ce garçon garde les troupeaux.*

These instances excepted, to *KEEP* is generally expressed by TENIR

She *keeps* a house, a school. *Elle tient maison, école.*

He *keeps* an inn, boarders. *Il tient auberge, des pensionnaires.*

To *keep* in prison, in the house. *Tenir en prison, dans la maison.*

To *keep* clean, to *keep* ready. *Tenir propre, tenir prêt.*

To *keep* cows, horses, a coach. *avoir des vaches, des chevaux, un carrosse.* Familiarly we say; *rouler carrosse*; to *keep* a coach.

To *GET*; GAGNER; GOT not expressed in french.

270

The verb *GET*, meaning to *gain*, to *win*, to *earn*, to *acquire*, is expressed by GAGNER; as,

He *gets* or *earns* five shillings a day. *Il gagne cinq shélins par jour.*

He has *got* or *won* a deal of money. *Il a gagné beaucoup d'argent.*

But the participle *GOT*, so often added to the verb *HAVE*, to denote *possession*, is not expressed in french, and is perhaps *useless* in english; as,

He has *got* a deal of money. *Il a beaucoup d'argent.*

Have you *got* any money about you? *Avez-vous de l'argent sur vous?*

You have *got* a new hat. *Vous avez un chapeau neuf;* not, *vous avez gagné*, which means, you have *won, gained, earned, &c.*

To SPEND; DÉPENSER, PASSER.

Speaking of *money, property*, to SPEND is expressed by DÉPENSER; **271**
 speaking of *time*, SPEND is expressed by PASSER; as,
 He spends all his money in gaming. *Il DÉPENSE tout son argent à jouer.*
 He spends all his time in hunting. *Il PASSE tout son tems à la chasse.*

To CHARGE; PRENDRE, FAIRE PAYER, PRIX.

The verb CHARGE, so often used in speaking of the *price* of things, **272**
 can not be expressed in french by charger, which means to LOAD, or to
 GIVE IN CHARGE; it must be expressed by PRENDRE, FAIRE PAYER, or
 by PRIX, with some other verb; as,

How much do you charge a day for a horse? *i. e.* do you require?

Combien PRENEZ-vous par jour pour un cheval?

How much do you charge for a saddle? what is the price of a saddle?

Combien PRENEZ-vous pour une selle? or quel est le PRIX d'une selle?

You charge too much; *i. e.* the price is too high.

C'est trop, c'est trop cher, vous PRENEZ trop, vous FAITES PAYER trop;
 never, *vous CHARGEZ trop; vous avez CHARGÉ trop.*

To GO to MEET; { ALLER au DEVANT de,
 { ALLER à la RENCONTRE de; ex.

Let us go and meet your sister. ALLONS au DEVANT de votre sœur. **273**

We were going to meet you. { Nous ALLIONS à votre RENCONTRE;
 { Nous ALLIONS au DEVANT de vous.

To BRING NEAR,

To GO NEAR, To COME NEAR;

} APPROCHER, S'APPROCHER de.

APPROCHER means to BRING an object NEAR, and s'APPROCHER de **274**
 means TO GO, or COME NEAR an object; for ex. I shall say:

APPROCHEZ la table. Bring the table near.

But if I said to a person come near or go near the table; I should not say,
 APPROCHEZ la table; I must say, APPROCHEZ-vous DE la table; for it is the
 person who is to approach the table, not the table to approach the person.

I brought my sister near me. J'APPROCHAI ma sœur de moi.

I went near my sister. Je m'APPROCHAI DE ma sœur.

To HEAR; ENTENDRE, ENTENDRE des NOUVELLES, &c.

To HEAR a person is ENTENDRE quelqu'un; as, **275**

I hear your sister coming. J'ENTENDS venir votre sœur.

But TO HEAR FROM a person, is not ENTENDRE DE quelqu'un; HEAR
 is then expressed by ENTENDRE des NOUVELLES, APPRENDRE des NOU-
 VELLES, RECEVOIR des NOUVELLES; as,

Do you hear from your sister often?

ENTENDEZ-vous, or APPRENEZ-vous, or RECEVEZ-vous souvent des NOU-
 VELLES de votre sœur? not, ENTENDEZ-vous souvent DE votre sœur?

I hear from her almost every day.

J'ENTENDS, or J'APPRENDS, or Je REÇOIS presque tous les jours de ses
 NOUVELLES, or des NOUVELLES d'elle; not, J'ENTENDS d'elle &c.

IT IS WITH; IL EN EST DE.

IT IS WITH, denoting a similarity between two objects, is expressed **276**
 by IL EN EST DE; as,

It is with you as with me. IL EN EST de vous comme de moi. [mille.

It is with a state as with a family. IL EN EST d'un état comme d'une fa-

- 277 **WHATEVER, IN VAIN, TO NO PURPOSE; AVOIR BEAU.**
 AVOIR BEAU is an expression very prevalent in conversation, instead of EN VAIN, INUTILEMENT; so, instead of saying;
C'est en vain que je lui dis d'étudier, il n'en fait rien;
 It is *in vain* that I tell him to study, he does not do it; we say;
J'AI BEAU lui dire d'étudier, il n'en fait rien.
- 278 **To FIND FAULT WITH; TROUVER à REDIRE à; ex.**
 He *finds fault with* every thing. *Il TROUVE à REDIRE à tout.*
 What *fault* can be *found with* it? *Que peut-on y TROUVER à REDIRE?*
- 279 **To TAKE IT KINDLY; SAVOIR BON GRÉ.**
To TAKE IT UNKINDLY; SAVOIR MAUVAIS GRÉ; ex.
 If he comes, I will *take it kindly.* *S'il vient, je lui en SAURAI bon GRÉ.*
 He would *take it unkindly* of me. *Il m'en SAURAIT mauvais GRÉ.*
Take it kindly or unkindly. *SACHEZ-m'en bon GRÉ ou mauvais GRÉ.*
- 280 **To DO WITHOUT, To BE EASY WITHOUT; Se PASSER de; ex.**
 Can you *do without* a horse? *Pouvez-vous vous PASSER de cheval?*
 I can not *do without* one. } *Je ne puis pas m'en PASSER.*
 I am not *easy without* it.
- 281 **WHAT IS THE MATTER, QU'YA-T-IL, QU'EST-CE QU'IL Y A,**
WHAT IS IT ABOUT, QU'EST-CE QUE,
WHAT IS IT? QU'EST-CE QUE C'EST? ex.
What is the matter there? *QU'Y A-t-il là; QU'EST-ce qu'il y a là?*
What is the matter with you? *QU'EST-ce que vous avez?*
What is the matter with your hand? *QU'EST-ce que vous avez à la main?*
 N. B. QU'EST-CE QUE is very prevalent in conversation, instead of QUE; so instead of saying:
 QUE *dites-vous?* *What do you say?*
 QUE *faites-vous?* *What are you doing? we say:*
 QU'EST-CE que *vous dites?* *QU'EST-CE que vous faites?*
- 282 **IS IT, IS IT NOT, EST-CE QUE,**
DOES IT, DOES IT NOT, N'EST-CE PAS QUE,
HAVE I, HAVE I NOT? N'EST-CE PAS?
 These expressions are often used to ask questions; but they serve less to require information, than to shew a kind of *rear* or *surprize*, that the thing about which we inquire should be different from what we thought or wished it to be; the difference will be made obvious in the following examples;
Vous en allez-vous? *Are you going?*
 EST-CE QUE *vous vous en allez?* *You are not going, are you?*
Ne sortirons-nous pas? *Shall we not go out?*
 N'EST-CE PAS QUE *nous sortirons,* } *We shall go out, shall we not?*
 or *Nous sortirons, n'EST-CE pas?*
- It seems to me, however it may seem to other people, that these two ways of asking a question, imply different ideas.*

* These are the words which, I have remarked, generally embarrass the learner; but he will find in the course of his studies, several other idiomatical expressions of less importance and too numerous to be explained in a grammar; they are found in the dictionaries, and will be learned by taking notice of them in reading.

EXERCISES

ON THE

RULES CONTAINED IN THE SYNTAX.*

ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

- 1 The article must be of the same gender and of the same number
article doit être même genre m. et nombre m.
 as the noun; The horse, the cow, the sheep. The bread, the meat, the
que nom; m. cheval, vache, brebis.† pain, m. viande, f.
 clothes. My garden, his house, his trees. Her finger, her ring, her
habit.‡ jardin, m. maison, f. arbre. doigt, m. bague, f.
 gloves. A dish, a plate. Some butter, some sauce, some pepper,
gant. plat, m. assiette. f. beurre, m. sauce, f. poivre, m
 some mustard, some capers. This wine, that beer, those glasses.
moutarde, f. capre. vin, m. bière, f. verre.
2. The article must be pronounced easily with the noun; Do you¹³³
doit se prononcer aisément avec —‡ ||
 go¹²⁵ to the assembly to-night? I will go¹²⁵ to the opera. Shall you go¹²⁵ to
aller§ assemblée ce soir? — aller || opéra. — 133 aller
 school this summer? I shall go¹²⁵ towards the beginning of autumn.
7école été m. ? — aller vers commencement m. 7automne.
 (Let us go) (as far as) that tree near the church. Do you hear¹²⁵
— — allons jusqu'à arbre m. près de église. — 133 entendre§
 that bird? Have¹²⁵ you heard the history of that man? He has¹²⁵
oiseau ? m. Avoir entendu 'histoire 'homme ? avoir
 sacrificed his honour to the interest of the state. My ingenuity and
sacrifié 'honneur intérêt état. ingénuité et
 my exactness have¹²⁵ (at last) won her affection and her esteem.
exactitude avoir enfin gagné affection estime.

* These exercises being intended for persons who have written the introductory exercises, and for persons of a riper understanding who are able to comprehend many rules at once, such rules only will be pointed out in each exercise, as the learner is supposed not to have seen, when he writes that exercise, that he may have an opportunity to exercise his recollection.

† See rules for the formation of the plural number of nouns, p. 183 and following.

‡ A dash under a word shews that the word is not expressed in french.

§ The figures at the top of the words indicate the paragraph where the rule which that word requires is to be found.

¶ The *Infinitive* only of the verb is given here; the learner must himself find the right tense and person, agreeably to the conjugation to which the verb belongs; therefore it is necessary that he should peruse the conjugations, before he writes these exercises

ARTICLE and NOUN.

3. The article must (be repeated) before every noun; Bring me
article doit se répéter avant chaque nom; Apportez ⁵⁸
 some pens, ⁹ink, and ⁹paper. I have a letter to write to my uncle
⁹ plume, ²encre et papier. m. lettre f à écrire oncle
 and ²⁰⁴aunt. This paper and ink are¹²⁵ not good. Lend me your wax
 tante. ¹ être ¹⁹⁰ bon ³¹ Prêtez ⁵⁶ cire m
 and seal. My father and mother have¹²⁵ invited your brother and sister
 cachet. m. et avoir invité
 to dine with us. After dinner we shall walk¹²⁵ into the park and
 à dîner avec ⁵⁸ Après dîné nous nous promener dans parc m
²⁰⁴gardens. We shall drink¹²⁵ some tea or ⁹coffee before we go.²¹⁸
 jardin. — prendre ⁹ thé m. ou café m. avant que y allons.

4. The names of persons, ²⁰⁴towns and ²⁰⁴places do not take¹²⁵ any⁸ article;
 nom personne, ville et lieux — ¹⁹⁰ prendre N.B.
 Molière and Racine are¹²⁵ the two best²⁹ french³² dramatic³² authors.
 et être deux meilleur français dramatique²⁹ auteur.
 Buonaparte and Blucher decided the fate of Paris in the plain of Waterloo.
 décider¹²⁵ du sort de dans plaine f.
 Is Paris¹²⁴ as large as London? The city of London is¹²⁵ much larger⁴¹
 Paris est-il ⁴³ grand ⁴³ Londres? ville f. être beaucoup grand²⁹
 than that of Paris. Have¹²⁵ you never been at Paris? No; I have been
 que celle Avoir ¹³³ ¹⁹⁰ été à ? Non; ¹²⁵
 at Nantes, ²⁰⁴Bordeaux, and ²⁰⁴Marseilles, but I have not been at Paris.
 à mais ¹²⁵ ¹⁹⁰
 Next³² summer I will go¹²⁵ to Paris, ²⁰⁴Geneva, ²⁰⁴Florence and ²⁰⁴Rome.
 Prochain ⁷été aller à Genève,

5. The names of countries require¹²⁵ the definite article, LE, LA, LES; France
 nom pays demander ² défini³² f.
 is¹²⁵ the most pleasant ⁷country in⁴⁹ Europe. It⁶² is as fertile as Italy, and
 être plus agréable³² pays m. de l' ² Elle ¹²⁵ ⁴³ ⁴³ ²Italie
 the air of France is more healthful than that of Italy. France is rich
² ¹²⁵ ⁴¹ sain que celui ² ¹²⁵ riche
 and very powerful. She has conquered Holland, Switzerland, Italy,
 très puissant. ²⁹ Elle ¹²⁵ conquis Hollande f. Suisse, f. ²
 Spain, Portugal, Saxony, Bavaria, Prussia, Austria, part of Poland,
²Espagne, m. Saxe f. Bavière f. Prusse f. ²Autriche, une partie Pologne f.
 and ²⁰⁴Russia, and compelled her enemies to make peace with her.
 * Russie, f. forcé ¹ ennemi à faire ⁷paix avec elle.

6. After verbs expressing DWELLING, GOING, COMING, instead of
 Après ⁷verbe qui expriment DEMEURER, ALLER, VENIR,† au lieu de
 the article before the names of countries, we⁹⁰ use¹²⁵ the prepositions
² avant pays on N.B. employer prépositions
 EN and DE; Have¹²⁵ you ever been to France? I have lived in France
 et Avoir jamais été ? demeuré

* The preposition *Of* must be expressed in french, together with the article, viz. *of the*.

† These verbs being used here as substantives, must be in the *infinitive* in french.

ARTICLE; *and* NOUN.

several years. I went¹³⁷ to France as soon as the war was over.
plusieurs années. aller¹²⁵ aussi tôt que guerre f. fut finie.

I went¹³⁷ afterwards to Germany and ²⁰⁴Italy. I have lived near
aller¹²⁵ ensuite Allemagne et Italie. J' ai demeuré près d'

(twelve months) in Italy. Were you ever in Switzerland? No; I
*un an * † jamais Suisse? ¹⁹¹,*

never was.⁷⁰ From France I went¹³⁷ to Holland and ²⁰⁴Sweden. I am
¹⁹⁰ *y ai été. N.B. aller Hollande Suède.*

going¹⁵⁵ to Spain and ²⁰⁴Portugal; from thence I will go¹²⁵ to Greece,
aller¹²⁵ ; de là aller Grèce,

²⁰⁴Egypt, ²⁰⁴Bengal, ²⁰⁴China, and ²⁰⁴Japan. I have a brother in Ja-
Egypte, (d) m. (d) Chine, f. (d) Japon. m. à (d) Ja-

maica, and another in Martinique. He is going to Mexico, and ³Peru.
maïque, f. un autre à (d) f. - va ¹⁵⁵ (d) Mélique, m. (d) Pérou. m.

7. Common³² names⁷ used²⁹ in a general or in a particular³² sense
commun ²⁹ nom m. employé dans sens général particulier sens m.

require¹²⁵ the article *LE, LA, LES*; Man² is born for society, but love
demander ² article 'Homme né pour société, f. mais ²amour

and ambition often¹⁸⁴ disturb the happiness of the social³² state. Men
²*ambition souvent trouble¹²⁵ bonheur m. social ²état.*

thirst¹²⁵ after honours and riches; yet honours and riches seldom¹⁶⁴
soupirer après honneur richesse; cependant rarement

make¹²⁵ men happy. True happiness consists¹²⁵ in virtue; for what are
rendre heureux. Vrai † consister dans vertu f.; car que

birth, honours, beauty and riches without virtue? Virtue (of which)
naissance, f. beauté f. ? dont

men speak¹²⁵ (so much) is (nothing but) a sincere desire of doing good,
parler tant n'est qu' ³² désir m. faire¹⁵⁴ bien, m.

and of shunning evil. My sister is learning¹²⁵ French and Italian
éviter¹⁵⁴ mal. m. ¹⁵⁵ apprendre Français m. ²Italien;

and I am going to¹⁷² learn English, geography and mathematics.
¹⁵⁵ *aller¹²⁵ - Anglais, géographie f. mathématique.*

8. When the preposition *OF* comes before a noun used in a general
Quand préposition f. OF venir¹²⁵ avant employé ³²

sense, but (of which) the quantity is¹²⁵ limited by another noun, this
sens, m. mais dont quantité f. être limité²⁹ par un autre , ¹

preposition can¹²⁵ not (be expressed) by *du, de la, des*, which would
f. pouvoir ¹⁹⁰ (kk) s'exprimer par qui

render the expression particular, and mean of *THE*; it must (be expressed)
¹²⁵ ² *rendre particulier ²⁹, signifierait of THE; il faut (kk) l'exprimer*

by *de* only, without any regard to the gender or ³number of the
seulement, sans avoir égard genre m. ou nombre m.

* Twelve months, used to denote the period of a year, is never expressed by *douze mois* in french; it is expressed by *un an*. See note § page 262.

† *Were* being used here to express an *action*, must be expressed in the same manner as *have been*, thus, *have you ever been*, rule 136. † Put this adjective before the noun

ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

noun; Have you got any money about you? I have not above⁹ three
²⁷⁰ ⁹ *argent sur* ? ¹⁹⁰ *plus N.B. trois*
 or four shillings. I want to buy a basket of fruit. Have you much
ou quatre shelin. veux -172 acheter panier m. fruit. (e)
 fruit in your garden this year? (There is) a great³³ quantity of pears
dans jardin année f. ? Il y a 246 grand 29 quantité f. poire
 and²⁰⁴ apples, but (there is) no⁸ stone²⁶ fruit. Buy me a bottle of ink,
pomme, il n'y a pas N.B. fruit à noyau. Achetez 56 bouteille f. encre,
 a quire of paper, and a dozen of pens. (Were there) many people
cahier m. papier, douzaine f. plume. Y avait-il (e) monde m.
 at the play last night? (There were) a great number of gentlemen,
 † *comédie f. hier au soir ? Il y avait grand nombre m. messieurs,*
 but there were very few⁸ ladies. My brother has a pretty³³ collection
il y avait très peu N.B. dame. 1 joli 29 f.
 of shells, ²⁰⁴plants, ²⁰⁴birds, and ²⁰⁴other curious³² things. He has got
coquille, plante, oiseau, autres curieuse 29 chose. 270
 a parcel of letters for you. He has had a (great deal) of trouble.
paquet m. lettre pour eu - beaucoup (e) peine. f.

9. Common³² names used²⁹ in a partitive sense require²²⁵ the article
²⁹ *nom m. employé* *partitif 32 sens m. demander*

du, de la, des; I should like¹²⁵ to have some fruit. (Is there) any
 — *aimer à avoir fruit. m. Y a-t-il 246*

ripe fruit in the garden? Yes; (there are) strawberries, gooseberries,
^{mûr 32} *dans jardin m. ? Oui; il y a 246 fraise, groseille,*
 cherries and apples. We will eat¹²⁵ some strawberries and cherries.
cerise pomme. — manger

Have¹²⁵ you got any (pine apples) in your houses? No; but we have
*Avoir 133 270 ananât serre ? * 191 ; mais*

grapes, figs, and melons in abundance. What shall we drink¹²⁵?
raisin, figue, melon en abondance. Que 33 — 133 boire ?

Will¹²⁵ you have beer or wine? We shall drink wine, if you have
Vouloir 133 - 174 bière f. ou vin ? m. — 125 , si

any,⁵⁴ and if you have no⁸ wine, we will drink cider or water.
en, (p) n'avez pas N.B. , — 125 cidre, m. ou 2eau.

10. A noun used in a partitive sense, preceded by an adjective,
employé dans partitif 32 , précédé d' adjectif, m.
 requires *de* before the adjective, instead of *du, de la, des*, before the
demander 125 avant 2 , au lieu de

noun; (Were there) any pretty³³ women at the ball? (There were)
 ; *Y avait-il 246 joli 29 femme † bal m. ? Il n'y avait*

few but old³³ women. (There are) fine³⁹ country²⁵ houses in England.
guère que vieille 29 Il y a 246 belle 33 de campagne maison f. en

Some have large³³ parks and beautiful³³ gardens. (Are there) any
Quelques unes 125 grand 29 parc très beaux jardin. Y a-t-il 10

* *Serre* is the name the French have for all glazed places, where plants are either preserved or forced.
 † *AT* is expressed by the same preposition as *TO*.

ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

large³³ trees in your garden? No; (They are) only small³³ trees.
*grand*²⁹ *arbrem.* dans *jardin*? ¹⁹¹; *Il n'y a*²⁴⁶ *que* *petit*²⁹

Some of the trees have fine³³ fruit on this year. Have you got
Quelques uns *arbres*¹²⁵ *beau* *fruit* m. - ¹ *année.* f. ¹³³ ²⁷⁰

any nice³³ flowers? Yes; we have some beautiful³³ pinks.
¹⁰ *belle*²⁹ *fleur*? *Oui*; ¹²⁵ *très beaux* *œillet.*

11. The numeral article A, AN, (is expressed) by *un, une*, the same
*numeral*³² *A, AN,* *s'exprime* *par* *de même*

as the number ONE; A glass, a bottle, a pound, a day, a year.
que *nombre* m. ONE; *verre,* m. *bouteille,* f. *livre,* f. *jour,* m. *an.* m.

12. Before names of measure, ²⁰⁴weight and ²⁰⁴number used in a
Avant ⁷*nom* ⁸ *mesure,* *poids* *nombre* *pris*

collective sense, A, AN, (are expressed) by *le, la*; I must¹⁸¹ buy
*collectif*³² *A, AN,* *s'expriment* *par*; *Il faut que j' achète*

a pound of plums. (How much) do they sell them a pound? They⁹⁰
¹¹ ⁸ *prune.* *Combien* - *on*¹³⁵ *vend* *les*⁵⁴ ? *On* N.B.

sell¹²⁵ them two pence a dozen. Beer⁷ sells¹²⁵ at four pence a pint,
 vendre *les*⁵⁴ *deux* *sou* *douzaine.* f. *Bière* f. *se vendre* - *quatre* *sou* *pinte.* f.

wine⁷ five shillings a bottle, ⁷brandy six pence a glass, and ⁷rum
vin m. *cinq* *shelin*, ²*eau-de-vie*, *rum* m.

five shillings a quart. I go¹²⁵ to ⁷school once a day. I take¹²⁵ lessons
quarte. f. *aller* ²*école* *une fois* *prendre* *leçon*

three times a week. We have (holidays) only once a year.
fois *semaine.* f. *n'avons* *vacances* *qu'** *une fois* ²*année.*

13. The demonstrative article THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE, has
*démonstratif*³² *THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE,* has
CE, CET, CETTE, CES,

the same properties in french as in english; it⁶² serves to (point out)
mêmes *propriété* *en* *français* *qu'* *anglais*; *il* *servir*¹²⁵ *à* *désigner*

the objects; This man, this woman, these children. That horse, that
objet; ²*homme,* *femme,* *enfant.* *cheval,*

house, those trees This field, that grass, these people, those flocks.
maison, f. *arbre.* *champ,* m. *herbe,* f. *gens,* *troupeau*

N. B. If you wish¹²⁵ to shew a distinction between two objects,
Si *vouloir* ⁷² *marquer* *distinction* f. *entre* *deux* *objet,*

(you must) add *ci* after the noun to denote the nearer³² objet, and *là*
il faut (kk) *ajouter* *après* ¹⁷⁰ *désigner* *plus près* ⁷*objet,* m.

to denote the remoter; This man is taller than that. ⁸⁸ That woman
¹⁷⁰ *plus éloigné*; *grand*⁴¹ *celui-là.* N.B.

is handsomer than this.⁸⁸ These children play better than those.⁸⁸
*belle*⁴¹ N.B. *jouer*¹²⁵ † N.B.

Those trees are larger than these.⁸⁸ This field is better than that.⁸⁸
¹²⁵ *gros*⁴¹ N.B. † N.B.

* The adverb *Only* may be expressed two ways, either by *Seulement* after the verb, or by *Ne* before the verb, and by *Que* after it; so, *Nous avons vacances SEULEMENT une fois,* or *Nous n'avons vacances qu'une fois &c.* † See note (b) page 72

ARTICLE and NOUN.

14. The possessive³² signs *MON, MA, MES; SON, SA, SES, &c.* follow
*possessif*²⁹ *signe* m. ; *suivre*¹²⁵
 the same rule as the definite article *LE, LA, LES*; they agree¹²⁵ in gender
*même règle f. que défini*³² ; ils *s'accorder en genre*
 and ²⁰⁴number with the noun which follows¹²⁵ them; My book, my
nombre avec ⁷⁴ *suivre* *les*⁵⁴; *livre, m.*
 pen, my papers. His coach, his chaise, his horses; Her coach,
plume, f. papier. carrosse, m. chaise, f. chevaux;
 her chaise, her horses. Our friends, your children, their relations.
ami, enfant, parent.

15. The possessive³² signs *MY, THY, HIS, HER, OUR, YOUR, THEIR,*
*possessif*²⁹ *MY, THY, HIS, HER, OUR, YOUR, THEIR,*
 (are expressed) by the definite article *LE, LA, LES*, before the name of the
*s'expriment défini*³² *avant nom. m.*
 parts of the body, when we⁹⁰ speak of a natural action of the body;
*partie corps, m. quand on N.B. parler*¹⁹⁵ *naturelle*³² *f.* ;
 Raise your arm. Move your leg. Advance your foot. She shuts¹²⁵
*Lever** *bras. m. Remuer** *jambe. f. Avancer** *ped. m. fermer*
 her eyes, and opens her mouth; or when we⁹⁰ speak of an action done
*yeux, ouvrir*¹²⁵ *bouche; f. on N.B.* ¹²⁵ *qui se fait*
 upon the body; but, in these instances, we⁹⁰ add¹²⁵ to the verb one
sur ; *mais, dans* ¹ *cas, N.B. ajouter verbe m.*
 of the pronouns *ME, NOUS, TE, VOUS, SE, LUI, LEUR*, (agreeably to) num-
pronom m. suivant - nom-
 ber and person; I have²⁹⁷ hurt my arm. You have²⁹⁷ cut your hand.
bre m. personne; f. † blessé † coupé main. f.
 He has²⁹⁷ broken his leg. She has²⁹⁷ put her foot (out of joint.)
† rompu † — démis
 You have hurt my arm. He has cut my hand. You have put her foot
† blessé † coupé † —
 (out of joint.) The carriage ran¹³⁶ over his body, and broke³⁶ his leg.
démis voiture f. a passé par-dessus † a rompu †

16. After the words to have a pain, to hurt, to be cold, to be
mot - avoir - mal, - se faire mal, - avoir froid, - avoir
 warm, the possessive³² signs *MY, THY, HIS, HER, &c.* (are expressed)
*chaud, possessif*²⁹ *MY, THY, HIS, HER, &c. s'expriment*
 by *AU, à LA, AUX*; I have a pain in my head. My mother has a pain
²⁴ *mal* * *tête. f.* ²⁴ *mal*

* Second person of the imperative.

† These sentences must be expressed as if the words were construed in this manner:
 I to myself have²⁹⁷ hurt the arm. You to yourself have²⁹⁷ cut the hand. He to himself
- me suis blessé - vous êtes coupé - s'
 has²⁹⁷ broken the leg. She to herself has²⁹⁷ disjoined the foot. You to me have hurt
est rompu - s' est démis - m' avez blessé
 the arm. He to me has cut the hand. You to her have disjoined the foot. The
- m' a coupé - lui avez démis
 carriage to him has run¹³⁶ over the body, and to him has broken¹³⁶ the leg.
voiture f. - lui a passé par-dessus - lui a rompu

ARTICLE and NOUN

in her side. My father has got the gout in his feet. Have²⁷ you
côté. m. ²⁷⁰ *goute f. ** *Ne vous êtes - vous*

not hurt your leg? No; but I have²⁷ hurt my knee. In the
*pas fait mal ** *jambe f. ?* ¹⁹¹; *me suis fait mal ** *genou. m.* *Dans*

last²⁹ battle, my brother was wounded in his arm, and I was wounded
dernier bataille, f. *fut blessé ** , *fus blessé*

in the shoulder. My hands are²³⁹ warm, but my feet are²³⁹ very cold.
** épaule.* *avoir chaud, †* *avoir grand froid.*

17. The possessive³² signs ITS and THEIR (are also¹⁸⁴ expressed) by
possessif²⁰ signe m. *ITS THEIR - aussi s'expriment*

Le, La, Les, and the pronoun *EN* (is added) to the verb, when the noun
pronom m. *s'ajoute* *verbe, m.* *quand nom m.*

before which⁷⁶ they come¹²⁵ is not in the same part of the sentence as
avant lequel ils⁶² se trouver ¹⁹⁰ *même partie f.* *phrase f. que*

the noun to which they refer;¹²⁵ That water is good,²⁹ I know¹²⁵ *its*
auquel⁷⁶ ⁶² se rapporter; *eau f. bon, (g) connaître*

qualities (turn, the qualities of *it*.) and I have experienced *its* effects, (*i. e.*
qualités, *en,⁵⁴ j'ai éprouvé effet,*

the effects of *it*.) To¹⁷⁰ paint the human heart (it is necessary) to
en⁵⁵. *Pour peindre humain³² cœur m.* *il faut* ¹⁷² -

know all *its* springs, (*i. e.* the springs of *it*.) London astonishes
connaître tous ressort, *en.⁵⁴ Londres étonner¹²⁵*

strangers; They admire *its* extent, and *its* riches, *i. e.* (of *it*.)
étranger; *admirer¹²⁵ ²étendue,* *richesse, f.* *en.⁵⁴.*

18. The possessive³² signs *MON, MA, MES,* (are added) to names of
possessif²⁹ s'ajoutent ⁷nom ⁸

kindred and ²⁰⁴friendship, when we⁹⁰ call¹²⁵ any body by those names;
parenté amitié, quand on N.B. appeler ¹⁰⁸ de ¹;

Mother, you are⁹² wanted. I am coming, child. Daughter, are you
, on vous demande. J' - y vais,¹⁵⁵ ²enfant. fille,

ready? Yes, father. Come, friends, (let us be) merry.
prêt²⁹ ? Oui, Allons, ami, - - soyons gai.²⁹

19. Do not put any⁹ article in french before nouns used as
- ¹⁹⁰ mettre † N.B. avant ⁷nom employés en forme

a title; A treatise upon the immortality of the soul. An introduction
de titre; traité sur ²immortalité ²âme. introduction

to the french⁹² language. The preface. The first²⁹ part. The end.
français³⁹ langue. f. préface. premier partie. f. fin.

20. Do not express the article *A, AN,* which comes after the word
- exprimer † A, AN, ⁷⁴ venir¹²⁵ après mot m.

WHAT; What¹⁸² a pretty dog! What a funny head he has! What
*WHAT; Quel *joli⁸³ chien!* ⁸² *drôle de tête f. !* ⁸²*

* Say; *At the head; at the side; at the feet; at the leg; at the knee; at the arm; at the shoulder.* N. B. *at the* is expressed in the same manner as *to the*.

† Turn, I have warmth *at the* hands, but I have great cold *at the* feet. † 2nd pers. imp.

ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

a large⁸³ house! What a cold⁸² day! What a beautiful woman.
*grand*²⁹ *maison*! f. ⁸² *froid* *jour*! m. ⁸² *belle*³³ *femme*!

21. Do not express the article A, AN, before the numbers HUNDRED
 — ¹⁹⁰ *exprimer** A, AN, *avant* *nombre* HUNDRED
 and THOUSAND, because the numbers have the property of articles;
et THOUSAND, *parceque* ¹²⁵ *propriété* f. ⁷ ;
 Can²⁵ you lend me a thousand pounds? I can¹²⁵ lend you⁵⁴ a
Pouvoir (kk) *prêter*⁵⁴ *mille* *livres sterling*? *pouvoir* *prêter* *vous* *en*⁷⁰
 hundred, but I can not¹⁹⁰ lend you⁵⁴ a thousand. We have an army
cent, *pouvoir*¹²⁵ *vous* *en*⁷⁰ *mille*. ¹²⁵ *armée* f
 of a hundred thousand men. They have a hundred field²⁵ pieces.
homme. ¹²⁵ *pièces* *de* *campagne*.

22. Do not put any⁸ article in french before a noun which serves
¹⁹⁰ *mettre* * N.B. *en* *nom* m. ⁷⁴ † *servir*¹²⁵
 to qualify or ²⁰⁴distinguish another noun; Neptune the god of the
à *qualifier* *ou* *à* *distinguer* *un* *autre* ; *Neptune* *le* *god* *of* *the*
sea. *Telemachus* *an* *epic* *poem*. *Madrid* *the* *capital*⁸² *city* *of* *Spain*.
mer. *Télémaque* *épique*⁸² *poème*. *capitale* *ville* ⁵ *Espagne*.
 My brother is a citizen of Geneva, a small republic between France
citoyen *Genève*, *république* *entre* ⁵ f.
 and Switzerland. He is a counsel and a member of the great council.
⁵ *Suisse* f. *avocat* *membre* *grand* *conseil* m.

23. Do not put any⁸ article before the noun which follows *être*,
 — ¹⁹⁰ *mettre* * N.B. *nom* m. ⁷⁴ † *suivre*¹²⁵
devenir, *se* *faire*, *passer* *pour*, when such noun serves only
quand *ce* *servir*¹²⁵ *seulement*
 to qualify the nominative of these verbs; Are you a Frenchman?
à *qualifier* *nominatif* m. ¹ *verbe*; ¹³³ *Français*?
 No; I am a Spaniard. He passes¹²⁵ for a Portuguese. His father was
¹⁹¹ ; ¹²⁵ *Espagnol*. *passer* *pour* *Portugais*. *était*
 a physician. He was a jew, and he is turned a christian.
médecin. *juif*, *s'est* *fait* *chrétien*.

24. Do not put any⁸ article before the noun which follows the
 — *mettre* * N.B. *nom* m. ⁷⁴ † *suivre*¹²⁵
 verbs *Avoir* and *faire*, when this noun forms¹²⁵ only one idea with
verbe m. ¹ *ne* *former* *qu'*⁷ *idée* f.
 those verbs; I am²³⁹ in the right. She is²³⁹ in the wrong. I have a pain
¹ † ; *avoir* — *raison*. *avoir* — *tort*. *avoir* *mal*
 in my head. He made¹²⁵ me a sign. He has done me an injury.
¹⁵ *faire* ⁵⁴ *signe*. *faire* ⁵⁵ *tort*.

* Second person of the imperative.

† See note (m) page 82.

‡ In these instances, the noun may generally be changed into a verb; as, *Avoir mal*, to have a pain, or to ache; *Faire offre*, to make an offer, or to offer; *Faire tort*, to do an injury, or to injure; *Faire signe*, to make a sign, or to beckon, &c.

ARTICLE and NOUN.

25. When two nouns come¹²⁵ together to express one idea,
Quand deux nom venir ensemble ¹⁷⁰ *exprimer idée, f.*
 place first the noun which is the subject of discourse, with *de*,
*placer * le premier* ^{74 †} *sujet* ⁷ *discours, m.*
du, de LA, des, before the second noun, agreeably to the rules on
*avant second*³³ *conformément* *règles sur*
 the article; Which⁹⁰ do you admire¹²⁵ most, Cato's⁴ perseverance, or
; Laquelle - ¹³³ *admirer le plus, Caton* ⁷ *persévérance, f.*
 Cæsar's⁴ intrepidity?⁷ Will you have any London⁴ porter? No;
César ² *intrépidité?* *-* ¹⁷⁴ ⁹ *Londres* *porter? m.* ¹⁹¹ ;
 I will drink a glass of Lisbon wine. I have lost my gold watch.
*boire*¹²⁵ *verre m. Lisbonne vin,* *perdu or montre. f.*
 I had it⁵⁴ at the park gate. I am afraid¹²⁵ I have left it⁵⁵
avais l' *parc m. porte. f. -* *craindre (nn) de l'*⁵⁵ *avoir laissée*
 (in the) (coffee room.) Put this gentleman's horse into my brother's
au *café. m. Mettre ** *monsieur* *cheval dans*
 stable. Have you seen my mother's silk gown, and my sister's new[†]
écurie. *vu* *soie robe, f.* *nouveau*
 bonnet? It⁶⁵ is a present from the brother of her children's guardian.
m.? *C'* *présent m. de* *tuteur m.*
 After her husband's death, all his father's friends forsook¹³⁷ her.
mari *mort, f. tous* *ami* *abandonner*¹²⁵ *l'*⁵⁴

26. If one of the two nouns denotes¹²⁵ the use of the other,
Si *nom m. désigner* ² *usage* ² *autre,*
 instead of changing the order of the words, as the English do,
au lieu *changer*¹⁵⁴ *ordre* *mot* *, comme* *Anglais font,*
 the French change the preposition, and instead of *de, du, de la, des*,
Français ¹²⁵ *préposition, f.*
 before the second noun, they use¹²⁵ *à*; Bring me a wine glass,
avant *second*³³ *, employer* ; *Apporter** *moi*⁵⁶ *vin* || *verre, m.*
 and a tea spoon. Take the coffee cups into the dining room. He
thé *cuiller. f. Porter** *café tasse dans* *dîner* *chambre. f.*
 has broken the water pot. Where is my sister's work bag? It⁶² is
cassé *eau* *pot. m. Où* *ouvrage sac? m. Il*
 in my mother's bed room. Have you ever seen a steam mill?
dans *coucher* *chambre. f.* *jamais vu* *vapeur moulin m.?*
 No; but I have seen several water mills and many⁸ wind mills.
¹⁹¹ ; *mais* *plusieurs* *eau* *moulin* *N.B. vent moulin.*

N. B. After the words *roire, marché*, we⁹⁰ use¹²⁵ *AU, à LA, AUX*,
mot *on N.B. employer*
 before the second noun; Will¹²⁵ you come to the horse fair? I want
avant ³³ *nom* ; *Vouloir* *venir* *chevaux foire f. J'ai besoin*
 to go to the poultry market. Let us go through the hay market.
d' aller *volaille f. marché. m. - - aller § par* *foire*

* Second person imperative. † See note (m) page 82. ‡ Put this adjective before the noun.

§ When I say to a person, bring me a wine glass, it is evident that it is the glass I want, not the wine so I ought to mention the glass first. ¶ First person imperative.

ARTICLE *and* NOUN.

27. In speaking of the produce of a country, the English denote¹²⁵
En parlant produit m. pays, m. *Anglais désigner*
 the name of the country by an adjective; the French denote it by a
nom m. par adjectif; m. Français ¹²⁵ le⁵⁴
 substantive, and place¹²⁵ it after the name of the produce; Have you
substantif, m. placer le⁵⁴ ; ¹³³
 got any french brandy? No; but I have good spanish wine. Do you
²⁷⁰ 9 France eau-de-vie? ¹⁹¹ ; ¹⁰ bon Espagne vin. m. - ¹³³
 like¹²⁵ english beer? No; I do⁷⁰_{N.B.} not; I prefer¹²⁵ dutch beer or
 aimer Angleterre bière f. ? ¹⁹¹ ; Je ne l'aime pas; J'aime mieux Hollande ⁷
 french cider.⁷ Will¹²⁵ you have english ⁹cheese, or swiss cheese?
 France cidre. m. Vouloir - ¹⁷⁴ Angleterre fromage, m. Suisse ⁹ ?

28. Before the names of countries, OF (is expressed) by *de*, after
Avant nom m. pays , OF s'exprime par ,
 nouns denoting dignity or authority, by *du, de la, des*, after
⁷ qui désignent dignité f. autorité ,
 other nouns; The king of Congo. The queen of Angola. The stadtholder
les autres ; roi reine stadtholder
 of Holland. The cortes of Spain. The petty states of Italy. The
 Hollande. cortes plur. Espagne. petits état Italie.
 air of France is more healthful than that⁸⁰ of Italy. The soil of
air m. f. plus salubre celui sol m.
 Spain and Portugal would be¹²⁵ very fertile, if it was well cultivated.
 m. - être très fertile, s'il était bien cultivé.
 The south of England is warmer than the north of France.
sud m. chaud⁴¹ nord m.

* The gender of nouns will no longer be marked in these exercises with the initial letters *m. f.*; the learner must now find out the gender by the rules given page 181 and following, according to the termination of the noun. But observe that it is by the *sound* of the last syllable of the word, not by the spelling that we know the gender of the noun. Now suppose you want to find out the gender of these twelve nouns, *France, Pays, Nation, Besoin, Agrément, délice, Vie, Secours, Pêche, Abricot, Fruit, Gibier*, which you will find in the beginning of the following exercise. 1st. *France*; this noun ends in *e mute*; see page 183 a general rule for the mute termination, and you will find it to be *fem.* *Pays*; see either the termination *i* page 181, or *s* page 183, and you will find that these terminations are both *masc.* *Nation*; look for *ION*, page 182; you will find that nouns of this termination, a few excepted, are all *fem.* *Besoin*; look for the termination *ION*, page 182, and you will find it to be *masc.* *Agrément*; look for *ENT*, page 182, you will find that nouns of this termination are all, but one, *masc.* *Délice*; look for the termination *CE*, page 184; you will find *délice, masc.*, being an exception to the general rule, which is *fem.* *Vie*; see page 183, the general rule for common names ending in *e mute*, and you will find it to be *fem.* *Secours*; look for *OUR*, page 182, and you will find it to be a *masc.* termination. *Pêche*; look for *CHE*, page 185; you will not find that word in the exceptions, which are *masc.* then you conclude that it is included in the general rule, which is of the contrary gender. *Abricot*; look for *O* or *OT*, page 182; you will find that nouns of that termination are all *masc.* *Fruit*; look for *I*, page 181, a masculine termination. *Gibier*; look for *ER*, page 182; you will find it to be a *masc.* termination; and so on for any other noun the gender of which you want to know. But impress your mind with the general rule, and read often the exception, that by such frequent readings you may retain the most useful words contained in it; for you must not expect to retain them all at once. The advantage of these rules must appear obvious. By marking the gender at the end of the noun, or by referring to the dictionary for it, you learn only the gender of one word, whilst by referring to these rules, you learn the gender of a whole set of words.

ARTICLE and NOUN.

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.*

I come from France and Italy. I have been at Paris, Bordeaux,
*venir*¹²⁵ *Italie.* *à* ²⁰⁴

Lyon, Geneva, Florence, Leghorn, Naples and Rome. How do you
Lyon, *Genève,* *Livourne,* *Comment* - ¹³³

like²⁰⁸ France and Italy? I like¹²⁵ them both¹²² (very much¹⁰³), but
trouver [?] *aimer* *les*⁵⁴ *l'une et l'autre* *beaucoup* ^{N.B.,}

I would¹²⁵ rather live in France than in Italy. France is certainly a
aimer *mieux* (*kk*) *vivre* *qu'* *certainement*

most beautiful country. It⁰² has within itself every thing that can¹²⁵
très beau ²⁹⁰ *Elle* *en* *elle-même* *tout* *ce* *qui* *pouvoir*

minister to the wants, comforts and delights of life. France produces¹²⁵,
servir (*kk*) *besoin,* *agrément* *délice* *vie.* *produire*

almost without the assistance of art, all²⁹ sorts of delicious fruit ;
presque sans *secours* *art, tout* *sorte* *délicieux*³² *fruit ;*

pears, apples, grapes, peaches, apricots, plums, cherries, figs, olives,
poire, *pomme,* *raisin,* *pêche,* *abricot,* *prune,* *cerise,* *figue,* ,

a (great deal) more corn, wine and oil than the inhabitants can¹²⁵
- beaucoup plus blé, vin *'huile que* *habitant* ⁴⁷ *pouvoir*

consume; and the country abounds¹²⁵ with game, ²⁰⁴poultry, and ²⁰⁴cattle.
consommer ; *pays* *abonder* *en* *gibier,* *volaille,* *bétail.*

The population of France, (considering¹⁷its extent) is immense. They⁰⁰
si on en considère *l'étendue* *On* ^{N.B.}

reckon in France twenty-five millions of souls. France is undoubtedly
*compter*¹²⁵ *vingt* *cinq* *âme.* ¹²⁵ *sans* *contredit*

the most powerful nation in⁴⁹ Europe. It⁰² alone has withstood the
*plus puissant*²⁹ *de l'* *Elle seule* *résisté* ²⁰² *aux*

efforts of Russia, Prussia, Germany, England, Holland, Spain,
Russie, *Prusse,* *Allemagne,* *Angleterre,* *Hollande,* *Espagne,*

and Sardinia, that wanted to¹⁷² subdue it; but after twenty years of
Sardaigne, ⁷⁴ *voulaient* - *subjuguer* *la*⁵⁴; *vingt* *an*

uninterrupted³² victories, that brave and warlike³² nation was (at last)
*continue*²⁹ *victoire,* ¹³ ³² *guerrier*²⁹ *fut* *enfin*

overcome by all²⁹ those powers combined,²⁹ and compelled to submit
*accablé*¹³⁸ *par* *tout* *puissance* *combiné,* ^{N.B.} *forcé*²⁹ *de* *se* *soumettre*

to the greatest²⁹ humiliation to which men can⁵⁰ be condemned, that⁰⁸
plus grand ⁷⁰ *peuvent* *être* *condamnés*¹⁵⁸, *cette*

of obeying²⁰² beings whom they despise¹²⁵. Now that I have a little⁸
¹⁵⁴ *obéir* *à* *être* ⁷⁴ *mépriser.* *À* *présent* *que* *un* *peu* ^{N.B.}

time to myself, I am going to¹⁷² travel. I (am fond) of¹⁰⁹ travelling.
tems *à* *moi,* ¹⁵⁵ *aller*¹²⁵ - *voyager.* *aimer*¹²⁵ *à* *voyager*¹⁵⁴

* The recapitulatory exercise at the end of each part of speech, is intended to try how far the learner understands the rules on which he has been practising on that part of speech. An infallible way to ascertain it, is to induce him to mark under every word on that part of speech the rule by which he makes use of such word; for instance, in the above exercise on the article and the noun, to make him mark under every noun, the rule by which, or at least to make him give a reason why he uses such and such an article, and so on with the other parts of speech; for unless he can do this, it is evident that he does not understand that part of speech, that he has no foundation to build upon, and he must read the rules over again, till he is able to do it.

† Do not put any article after *en*.

ARTICLE and NOUN.

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

In travelling one sees (so many) new* things, and every new*
En voyageant on⁹⁰ voir¹²⁵ tant nouvelle⁸⁹ chose, chaque nouvel
 object furnishes some new idea to the mind. In a few⁸ days I will
objet fournir¹²⁵ † nouvelle idée esprit. Dans - peu^{N.B.} jour -
 go to France, and after spending some time with my friends at Paris,
aller , après avoir passé † avec ami à
 I will go to Switzerland, Italy, and Spain, where I will embark¹²⁵ for
- ¹²⁵ Suisse, ²⁰⁴ , ²⁰⁴ , où - m'embarquer pour
 America. I long to see that country of liberty and independence,
Amérique. Il me tarde de voir ¹³ ²⁹⁰ liberté indépendance,
 where rational⁸⁹ beings may¹²⁵ communicate their ideas to their (fellow
où raisonnable⁸⁹ être pouvoir communiquer ¹ idée
 beings) without fearing¹⁵⁴ the holy²⁹ political⁸² or religious inquisition.
semblable sans craindre saint politique ou religieuse⁸²*
 After having¹⁵⁴ visited the principal²⁹ cities of the wise republic of the
*avoir visité * ville sage * république*
 immortal Washington, I will go to Mexico, Chili, and Peru. I want
immortel , - aller¹²⁵ Mexique, Pérou. ai envie*
 to see if the tree of liberty, lately¹³⁴ planted in the new* world,
de voir si arbre , depuis peu planté ²¹³ nouveau monde,
 is¹⁹⁶ thriving better than it⁶² has done in the old, and if it is
- réussir¹²⁵ mieux qu' il n'⁴⁷ a faire ²¹³ ancien, ⁶² ¹⁵⁵
 spreading its enlivening⁸² branches over the fertile⁸² plains of that
étendre¹²⁵ ses vivifiant²⁹ sur ²⁹ plaine ¹³
 immense and rich⁸² continent. What a pleasure to see millions of
³² riche Quel plaisir ¹⁶⁸ voir ⁹
 intelligent⁸² beings uniting all their energies to¹⁷⁰ break the chains of
²⁹ être unir¹⁵⁴ ²⁹ pour rompre chaîne
 superstition and despotism, those two satanic⁸² enemies of reason, that
despotisme, deux satanique²⁹ ennemi raison, ¹³
 divine spark of the supreme wisdom! If the father of light deigns¹²⁵
³² étincelle ³² sagesse ! lumière daigner
 to cast a look on the actions of men, it is surely in such a work
¹⁷² jeter regard sur , c' sûrement ²¹³ tel ³⁸ ouvrage
 that he must delight to see his image employed. What is the reason
qu' doit se complaire à voir occupé. Quelle
 that trade is so languishing, and that money is so scarce now?
que commerce ¹²⁵ si languissant, argent rare à présent ?
 (People in trade) think¹²⁵ that it is the war. Oh! war is a dreadful
Commerçants penser que ⁶⁵ guerre. Oh ! ¹²⁵ affreuse⁸²
 thing. War is the scourge of mankind. How preferable²⁹ are
chose. fléau genre humain. Combien préférable¹⁸⁵ ¹²⁵
 peace and harmony amongst all men! If men were reasonable,
paix 'harmonie parmi tous ! Si étaient raisonnable,²⁹

* Put this adjective before the noun. † When the substance is restrained to a little, a few, SOME is expressed by *quelque, quelques*, not by *du, de la, des*, which imply an unlimited number or quantity.

ARTICLE and NOUN.

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

they (would never go to) war. War begets¹²⁵ taxes, taxes beget
ne se feraient jamais engendrer taxe, ¹²⁵

poverty, and plunge¹²⁵ people into misery. Thus whole³² nations are
pauvreté, plonger peuple ²¹³ misère. Ainsi entier⁵⁹

made¹⁵⁸ miserable²⁰ to gratify the ambition of a few vain³² beings
rendre ¹⁷⁰ satisfaire petit nombre vain²⁹ être

whom often chance alone raises to the supreme rank, and who have
⁷⁴ *souvent hazard seul élever¹²⁵ ³² rang, ⁷⁴ ¹²⁵*

the art of inciting men to slaughter men, by calling them⁶⁶ heroes,
² *exciter ¹⁵⁴ à égorgier en appelant ceux * héros,*

who⁶⁶ are merely the base executioners of their inhuman³² orders.
N.B. ne sont que vil²⁹ exécuteur inhumain²⁹ ordre.

Will you come and take a walk along the river side before dinner?
Vouloir ¹³³ venir (nn) faire tour sur rivière bord ²⁰⁶ dîné?

The sight of the water is pleasant at this time of the year. (Is there)
vue eau agréable tems année. Y a-t-il²⁴⁶

any fish in this river? Not much; (there are) eels and carps, and
poisson ? Pas ; Il y a ²⁴⁶ anguille carpe,

some trouts: But we are not far from the sea, and our fish-market
[†] *truite: ¹⁹⁰ loin de mer, poissonnerie*

is well supplied with sea ²⁵fish. We have salmon, turbot, soles,
bien pourvu¹⁵⁸ de de mer poisson, saumon, sole,

mackerel, codfish, excellent²⁵ oysters, crabs, and lobsters. Let us go and
maquereau, morue, † ³¹ huitre, crabe homard. - - Aller (nn)

see your market. What an abundance of (every thing) (there is in it!)
voir marché. Quelle³² abondance ¹⁰⁷ il y a ²⁴⁶ -!

What a deal of hares, rabbits and partridges! I see people yonder¹⁸³
⁶² *quantité lièvre, lapin perdrix! voir gens²²⁹ là-bas N.B.*

who are selling¹²⁵ woodcocks, snipes and (wild pigeons.) (Here are)
⁷⁵ ¹⁵⁵ *vendre bécasse, bécassine ramier. ²⁴⁷*

also pheasants and quails. Do you like quails? Yes; (very much.) We
aussi faisan caille. - ¹³³ aimer ? ; beaucoup. Il

must⁸¹ walk towards home. It⁶² is dinner time. Let us walk
faut que nous allions vers la maison. C' N.B. dîner heure. - - Entrer

into the dining room. The dinner is on the table. What have we
²¹³ *dîner salle. sur Qu' ⁸³ ¹²⁵ ¹³³*

for dinner? A round of beef with cabbage and carrots, and a loin
pour ? rouelle bœuf avec chou || carotte, longe

of veal with peas and spinage. Bring me some mustard, salt, pepper,
veau, pois épinards. || Apporter ⁵⁶ moutarde, sel, poivre,

a coffee cup, and a table spoon. (How much) do they⁸⁰ sell¹²⁵ meat
café tasse, soupe cuiller. Combien - ¹³⁸ N.B. vendre viande

a pound in this town? Beef and mutton sell¹²⁵ eight pence a pound,
livre ²¹³ ville ? mouton se vendre huit sou

* Turn by calling heroes them who, &c.

† Put this adjective after all these nouns.

† See note † p. 282.

|| This word is plural in french.

ARTICLE and NOUN.

RECAPITULATORY *exercice* on the foregoing rules.

and veal seven pence. 'That is very dear. Yet we often buy¹²²
veau sept C' très cher. Cependant ¹⁸⁴ *en* ⁷⁰ *acheter*

a hundred pounds weight at a time. Corn sells¹²⁵ twelve shillings a
cent livre - à ¹² *fois. Blé se vendre douze shelin*

bushel, and bread three pence a pound; but good³³ workmen get¹²⁵
boisseau, pain trois livre; bon ²⁹ *ouvrier gagner*

four shillings a day. Bring a bottle of wine, and some wine glasses.
quatre jour. Apporter bouteille vin, verre.*

Will you have french wine or spanish wine? I will drink a glass
Vouloir - ¹⁷⁴ *France Espagne ? - boire*

of Port wine, if you have any.⁵⁴ (There is) no wine in the bottle.
, si en. (p) Il n'y a ²⁴⁶ *pas* ²¹³

Is there no wine in the wine cellar? Go to the wine merchant,
N'y a-t-il pas cave ? Aller chez de vin marchand,*

and tell him to send me⁵⁴ a dozen bottles of Port wine at sixty
dire lui de envoyer m' douzaine de à soixante*

shillings a dozen. This wine costs me five shillings a bottle. You
shelin coûter ⁵⁴ *cing*

have a fine gold watch. It⁶² has cost a hundred guineas. It⁶⁵ is a
belle or montre. Elle coûté guinée. C'

present from my cousin's guardian. Have you seen my brother's
présent cousin tuteur. vu

powder bag? It⁶² is in my father's bed room. Let us walk up to
poudre sac ? Il ²¹³ *'coucher chambre. - - Aller* -*

that hill. What⁶² a fine prospect we have from here! What a deal
colline. Quelle belle perspective d' ici! ⁶² *quantité*

of fine³³ flowers (there is) here! Let us gather some⁶⁶ to¹⁷⁰
belle ²⁹ *fleur il y a ici! - - Cueillir* en* ⁷⁰ *quelques-unes pour*

make nosegays for your sister's children who (are so fond of) flowers.
faire bouquet pour ⁷⁴ *aiment tant -*

(Here are) some violets. What a pretty rose bud! I see¹²⁵ yonder
Voici ²⁴⁷ *violette. †* ⁶² *joli* ³³ *rose bouton! voir là-bas*

some hawthorns, (honey suckles) and sweet³² briars. (That is) my sister's
aubépine †, chèvre-feuille † odorant églantier. † Voilà ²⁴⁷

husband's country house. Your father's house is finer⁴¹ than that.⁶⁵
mari de campagne maison. belle ^{N.B.}

(There are) people who are looking¹²⁵ at the flower pots which are at
Voilà ²⁴⁷ *gens* ²²⁹ ¹⁵⁵ *regarder* ²⁰¹ *fleur pot †* ⁷⁴ *à*

your mother's window. My brother's coachman fell¹³⁷ from his horse
fenêtre. cocher tomber de - cheval

yesterday¹⁸³; He broke¹³⁷ his leg, and put¹³⁷ his arm out of joint.
hier; N.B. se casser jambe, se démettre bras - - ||

* Imperative.

† Use the singular in french.

‡ If you mean pots *with* flowers *in*, you must say, *pots de fleurs*; if you mean pots to *put* flowers *in*, you must say, *pots à fleurs*. || *Out of joint* is expressed in the verb *démètre*.

ADJECTIVE

29. The ADJECTIVE must be of the same gender, and of the same number as the noun which it⁶² qualifies; That young man is (in love.)
 nombre que non. ⁷⁴ il qualifier; (bb) jeune homme amoureux
 That young woman is (in love.) He is very young. She is very young. He is married. She is married.²⁹ He is capricious. She is capricious. All²⁹ men are capricious. All²⁹ women are capricious.
 * * * * *
 * * * * *

30. When an adjective qualifies several nouns of the same gender, the adjective must be of the same gender as those¹³ nouns and plural;
 Miss A. and Miss B. are (in love.) They are very happy. They will soon¹⁸⁴ be married. That⁸⁰ makes the mother and daughter very proud.* They are both¹²² very capricious; but they are civil and obliging. That¹³ lady has a gown and a petticoat very well matched. The tea and the sugar are good, but the cream and the water are bad.
 * * * * *

31. If an adjective qualifies several nouns of different³² genders, the adjective must be of the masculine gender and (in the) plural number;
 Mr. A. and Miss B. are (in love.) They are very happy. Are they not married yet¹⁸³? They are both¹²² very capricious; but they are civil and obliging. He makes¹²³ his son and daughter unhappy. You have a coat and a waistcoat very well matched. The tea and the water are good, but the cream and the sugar are very bad.
 * * * * *

32. Adjectives are generally¹⁸⁴ placed in french after the noun;
 All²⁹ the polite people in⁴⁰ Europe speak the french²⁹ language. (I am told) that it is a very difficult language. Eat† a piece of new
 * * * * *

* See note (g) p. 193, how the feminine gender of adjectives is formed. † Imperative.

ADJECTIVE.

bread, and drink a glass of white wine. England is a delightful
*pain, boire * verre 3 blanc vin. Angleterre délicieux*
 country; but (there is) always a cold and damp air. (There are)
²³⁰; *il y a 246 froid humide 246*
 charming²⁰ women, opulent ⁹cities, fruitful ⁹lands, and pleasant
charmant † 9, opulent 29 ville, fertile 29 terre, agréable 22
 country ²⁵houses. I like¹²⁶ their simple²⁹ and cordial²⁹ manners.
de campagne 9maison. aimer 14 simple cordial † manière.

33. The adjectives *beau, bel, belle, bon, grand, gros, jeune, joli, mauvais, meilleur, moindre, petit, tout, vieux, vieille*, and the adjectives of number *premier, second, &c.* are generally¹⁸⁴ placed
 - *ordinairement se placent*
 before²⁰⁶ the noun; (That is) a large house. It⁶² is in a fine situation.
avant ; Voilà 247 grand 29 Elle 213 belle situation.
 It belongs to a young man. He has lately married an old woman.
⁵² *appartenir jeune depuis peu épousé vieille*
 He⁶⁵ is a big man. She is a little woman. They have two pretty children.
C' gros 65 petit 29 deux joli 29

34. If two adjectives requiring different³² places qualify the same
Si deux (qui demandent) différent 29 9 qualifier même
 noun, they⁶² (are placed) both¹²² after the noun, joined together by
, ils se placent tous deux, joint 29 ensemble par
 a conjunction; (that is) a large convenient house. It⁶² is in a fine
conjunction ; 247 grand 29 commode. Elle 213 belle
 healthy situation. It belongs to a profligate young man. He has
saine 62 appartenir débauché 33 39
 lately married an old rich woman. He⁶⁵ is a great man. He is a tall
depuis peu épousé riche C' (i) 65 (i)
 man. They are ¹⁰very honest²⁹ people. They are very civil²⁹ people.
⁶⁵ *sont très honnête (i) gens. 65 honnête (i) 9*

35. The adjectives of number (are placed) in french as in english,
nombre se placent en comme anglais,
 before the noun; The first day of the week. The third month of the
²⁰⁶ *† jour semaine. mois*
 year. The fourth year of the reign of the fifth monarch.
année. règne monarche.

36. To distinguish some personage from other persons of the same
¹⁷⁰ *distinguer || personnage d' autres personne même*
 name, the English use¹²⁵ the adjectives of number; the French use
nom, Anglais employer 8 ; Français 125

* Imperative. † See note (g) page 198, how the feminine gender of adjectives is formed.

‡ See the adjectives of number, p. 178.

|| See note † page 232.

ADJECTIVE.

the substantives, and leave out the article; Henry the fourth was a great
*substantif, omettre*¹²⁵ - *Henry* * *grand*
 man and a good king; he succeeded Henry the third brother to Charles
roi; succéder à * *de*
 the ninth, the greatest villain that⁷⁴ ever reigned¹³⁶ over a civilized
 • ⁴⁴ *scélérat qui † ait*⁵⁰ *jamais régné* *sur* *civilisé*³²
 people. Henry the eighth, after having¹⁵⁴ been the friend of Pope
²²⁸ *Henry* * *après avoir* *été* *ami* *7Pape*
 Clement the seventh, became the greatest enemy of the papal³² autho-
 * *devenir* ⁴⁴ *ennemi* *papal*²⁹ *auto-*
 rity, and delivered England (from the) shameful yoke of an Italian priest.
rité, délivrer ⁵ *du* *honteux*³² *joug* *Italien*³² *prêtre.*

37. The adjectives of measure and ²⁰⁴dimension which (are placed)
⁸ *mesure* *dimension* ^{74 †} *se placent*
 after the number in english, (are placed) before the number in french,
nombre en *se placent* ²⁰⁶ ,
 and are always followed by the preposition *de*; Our garden is two
toujours suivis de *jardin*
 hundred paces long, and a hundred and fifty broad. It⁶² is surrounded
 * *pas long,* ²¹ † *large.* *Il entouré*
 by a wall twelve feet high, two feet thick, and a hundred yards long.
d' mur * *pieds haut,* *épais,* ²¹ *verge*

N. B. These sentences are more commonly¹⁸⁴ expressed in french
 (bb) *phrase* - *plus communément s'expriment en*
 by the substantive of dimension in this manner; Our garden has two
par substantif ⁸ *de (bb) manière;*
 hundred paces of length, and a hundred and fifty of breadth. It⁶² is
pas longueur, ²¹ † *largeur.* *Il*
 surrounded by a wall of twelve feet of height, and of two of thickness.
entouré d' *pieds hauteur,* *épaisseur.*

But observe that with the adjective (you¹⁸¹ must) use the verb *Être*,
observez qu' avec *il N.B. faut employer verbe* ,
 and with the substantive the verb *avoir*; thus, Our garden is long of
 ; *ainsi,* *long*
 two hundred paces, and broad of a hundred and fifty; or, our garden
pas , large ²¹ † ; *ou,*
 has two hundred paces of length, and a hundred and fifty of breadth.
pas longueur, *largeur.*

38. The adjective is²⁴² not to be separated (from the) noun by *un*,
doit ¹⁹⁰ - *être séparé* *du* *par*
une, as it⁶² is sometimes by *A, AN*, in english; this article must be
comme il l'⁷⁰ est quelque fois *A, AN, en* ; ² *doit se*
 placed in french before these words; Did¹³⁶ you ever see such a man?
placer français (bb) *mot;* *Avez* *jamais vu tel* ?

* See numbers, page 176. † See note (m) page 82. ‡ See note * page 177.

ADJECTIVE.

I never saw¹³⁶ so tall²⁹ a woman. It is not so great a thing.
¹⁹⁰ *ai vu si grand* *Ce* ¹⁹⁰ *si grand*²⁹ *chose.*

39. Many⁸ adjectives have the property of substantives in french,
Beaucoup^{N.B.} *propriété* ⁷ *en* ,
 and render²⁵ useless the words MAN, WOMAN, PEOPLE, which the
rendre inutiles mot MAN, WOMAN, PEOPLE. ^{74 *}
 (corresponding³²) adjectives require in english; An English man.
qui les représentent demander Anglais
 A French woman. He is a drunken man; a covetous man. She is
Française ⁶⁵ *ivrogne* ; *avare.* ⁶⁵
 an idle woman. They are ungrateful people. Learned men
paresseux (g) ⁶⁵ *sont ingrat* ⁹ *Savant* ⁷
 are esteemed.²⁹ Ignorant people are despised.²⁹ Take notice of
estimé. ^{N.B.} *Ignorant* ⁷ *méprisé.* ^{N.B.} *Faites attention à*
 these words in reading authors, and in the dictionaries.
 (bb) *en lisant* ⁷ *auteur,* ²¹³ *dictionnaire.*

40. By leaving out the article before²⁰⁶ the names of distinction and
En omettant - avant nom ⁸ *distinction*
 of profession which follow the verbs *Être, Devenir, se Faire, Passer*
*profession * suivre verbe*
pour, these nouns have the property of adjectives; My brother is a
 , (bb) *nom propriété* ⁷
 colonel, and my father is a general. He is the commander in chief.
colonel, général. Il commandant en chef.
 That man was a tailor. He lately¹⁸⁴ turned a school²⁵master. He
² ¹⁴⁰ *tailleur.* *depuis peu s'est fait école maître.*
 passes for a doctor. His son was a bookseller; now he is a surgeon.
passer pour médecin. ¹⁴⁰ *libraire;* *chirurgien.*

The same words which serve to qualify nouns, serve also (by the)
mêmes ^{74 *} *servir à qualifier nom*⁷ , *servir aussi au*
 means of certain particles to compare their qualities.
moyen ⁸ *certaines (i) particule à en comparer les* ¹⁷ *qualité.*

41. The comparative of superiority which (is formed) in english by
comparatif ⁸ *supériorité* * *se forme † en en*
 adding ER to the adjective, (is formed) in french by *plus* before the
ajoutant ER ² , *se forme en par* ²⁰⁶
 adjective; Spain⁵ is larger than France; but France is richer and
 ; ² *Espagne grand*²⁹ *que* ⁵ ; *riche*
 more powerful than Spain. This¹³ field is better than that,⁸⁸ because
puissant ²⁹ . ^{N.B.} *champ †* ^{N.B., parce qu'}
 it⁶² is better cultivated. Your watch is finer than mine, because it⁶² is
il † cultivé. *montre belle* ⁸⁵ *elle*
 newer and dearer; but mine is better, and will last longer than yours.
neuve, *cher*²⁹ ; ⁸⁵ *†* — *durer long tems* ^{85.}

* See note (m) p. 82. † See N. B. under note (ii) p. 235. ‡ See note (b) p. 72.

ADJECTIVE.

46. The comparative³² particles *plus, moins, si, aussi, inust*¹²⁵
*comparative*²⁰ *particule* , *devoir*
 (be repeated) before every¹⁰⁴ adjective ; She is more studious²⁹ and
 (*kk*) *se répéter* ²⁰⁶ *chaque* ; *studieux* (*g*)
 dutiful than her sister. She is already as wise and clever as her
*oblissant*²⁰ *déjà* *sage* *habile*
 mother ; but she is so proud and affected that nobody likes¹²⁵ her.
 ; *fier*²⁹ *affecté*²⁹ ⁹⁷ *aimer* ³⁴

47. *Que* after the comparative³² words *plus, moins, moindre, meilleur*
*comparatif*²⁰ *mots*
leur, mieux, pis, pire, requires *ne* before the verb which follows it³⁴ ;
 , *demander* ²⁰⁶ ⁷⁴ *suivre* *le* ;
 He has lost more than he has gained. He is richer than he was. He lives
perdre *gagner.* *riche* ¹⁴⁰ *vivre*
 better than he did¹³⁹ before. He is less happy than people imagine.
 (*b*) p. 72 *faire* ²⁰⁶ *N.B.* *heureux* ⁹⁰ *N.B.* *s'imaginer.*

N. B. *Ne* (is left out) if the verb which follows *que* is in the infi-
s'omet (*ii*) *N.B.* ⁷⁴ *suivre* *à* ² *infi-*
 nitive, or if it is preceded by a conjunction ; it is better to read than
nitif, ou ⁶² *précédé* *d'* *conjonction* ; *il vaut mieux* ¹⁷² *lire*
 be idle. He is more studious now than when he was at school.
 (*ll*) *oisif.* *studieux à présent* ¹⁴⁰ *à* ² *école.*

48. *THAN, BY*, after *MORE, LESS*, used¹⁵⁷ to denote a quantity,
THAN, BY, après MORE, LESS, employés ¹⁶⁹ *désigner* *quantité,*
 not a quality, (are expressed) by *de*, not by *que* or *par* ; This does
ка *qualité,* - *s'exprimer*¹²⁵ , *non* *ou* ; ⁸⁰ -
 not cost less than fifty guineas. It is too dear by half. I would not
¹⁹⁰ *coûter* *guinée.* *C'* *trop* *moitié.* I would not
 sell it⁵⁴ for less than sixty. I have not had it⁵⁶ more than a year.
 vendre le à *eu l'* *an.*

49. *IN*, after a superlative (is expressed) in the same manner as
IN, *superlatif* - *s'exprimer* ¹²⁵ *de* *même manière que*
OF, agreeably to the rules on the article ; (That is) the cleverest boy
OF, conformément *règle sur* ² ; ²⁴⁷ *habile* *garçon*
 in the school. His father is the most learned man in the kingdom.
² *école.* *savant* *royaume.*

His mother is the most sensible³² woman in the whole town.
spirituel ²⁹ ³⁸

50. An adjective (in the) superlative, followed by one of the relative⁶⁸
adjectif *au* , *suiwi* *de* *relatif*²⁹
 words *qui, que, dont*, requires the following verb (in the) subjunctive ;
mot , *demander* *suivant*³² *au* *subjunctif* ;
 Mr. A. is the best friend I have. He is the most honest man I
Mons. *meilleur* (*s*) ⁶⁵ *honnête* (*s*)
 know. His sister is the handsomest woman I have ever seen.
connaître. *belle* (*s*) *jamais vue*

ADJECTIVE.

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.*

What⁸² charming weather! How¹⁸⁵ beautiful the country²³⁰ looks!
Quel charmant tems! Que belle¹⁸⁵ campagne être!¹²⁵

How attractive nature is, when it is arrayed in its verdant charms!
¹⁸⁵ *atrayant* 7, *quand* ⁶² *orné* *de ses verdoyant charme!*

How sweet solitude is to innocent minds! Let us go and take
¹⁸⁵ *doux* (g) *τcœur!* - - *aller* (nn) *faire*

a (short walk) in the neighbouring fields, (whilst we wait) till your
tour ²⁶³ n.b. ²¹³ *voisin* *champ,* *en attendant* *que*

sister is²¹⁸ ready. How¹⁸⁵ is²⁴¹ your aunt? She is still very ill.
soit prêt. *Comment se porter* *tante?* *encore* *malade.*

I am sorry (for it.) She is a virtuous, prudent and generous wo-
fâché *en*⁵⁴ ⁶⁵ *vertueux,*(g) *généreux* (g)

man. Her daughter is very handsome, but she is too proud. She
fille *belle,* ⁵¹ *trop orgueilleux* (g)

is as haughty as if she were the finest woman in England; yet
fier ¹⁴⁰ ; *cependant*

as she is richer and handsomer than her cousin, she will ⁴¹ sooner get
comme *belle,* *cousine, f.* - *tôt*¹⁸³ *trouver*

a husband; but virtue is more precious than riches. (Something
mari; *τvertu* *précieux* (g) *τrichesse.* (*Il faut*

must be allowed) for her age; she is so young. She is older than I³²
passer quelque chose) *à* ² *âge;* *jeune.* *âgé* *moi*

am. She is as old as my sister who is married. She is²³⁰ not less
[†] *âgé* ⁷⁴ *marié.* ^a n.b.

than twenty. I do not think that she is²³⁰ more than eighteen. She
vingt ans. - *penser* *en* ⁷⁰ *ait*¹⁴⁵

is taller by two inches, but she is not so handsome by much. She has
grand *pouce,* *belle*

been spoiled in her infancy. Your sister is the most lovely girl I
gâté ² *enfance.* *aimable* (s)

know. She is so diligent and¹⁶ attentive. You do not learn so well
connaître. *attentif.* (g) - *apprendre*

as she does, because you are not so studious. My sister learns better
[†] , *parceque* *studieux.* (g) (b) p. 72.

than I do, because she has a better memory than I have, but I take
⁵² [†] , *mémoire* ⁵² [†] ,

more pains⁸ than she does. I found¹³⁶ my exercise easier than I thought.
peine^{n.n.} *faire.* [†] *ai trouvé* *thème* *aisé* *penser.*¹⁴⁶

It is better than I expected. It is less difficult than you imagined.
*attendre.*¹⁴⁰ ⁶² *moins difficile* *s'imaginer.*¹⁴⁰

My son has made greater progress than I expected. (There are)
¹⁰ ⁴¹ *progrès* ⁴⁷ *espérais*¹⁴⁰ ²¹⁶

authors who write better than they speak; there are others who speak
⁹ *auteur* ¹²⁵ [†] ¹²⁵ ¹²⁵

* See note * p. 281. † This auxiliary verb is generally left out in french; if you express it, you must follow rule 47. ‡ See note (b) page 72.

ADJECTIVE.

RECAPITULATORY *exercice on the foregoing rules.*

better than they write. The more I examine this affair, the more
125 45 (bb) affaire, f. 45

puzzling⁹⁹ I find it⁶². Give that⁹⁹ to your eldest³² sister and this⁹³
embarrassant 54 (bb) ainé 29 * (bb)

to your younger brother. Your writing is bad, but this⁸⁰ is worse,
jeune 33 * écriture f. (bb) pire †

and that⁸⁸ is the worst of all. This ditch is nine feet deep, and
(bb) † tout²⁹. (bb) fossé ‡ pied profond,

six feet broad. That tree is a hundred yards high, and ten feet
‡ large. (bb) 2 arbre 21 verge haut,

thick. London²⁵ bridge, now the finest bridge in England, is seven
épais. † pont, à présent beau †

hundred and sixty-six feet long, and fifty-six feet broad; the center
§ pieds , large du milieu

arch is one hundred and fifty feet broad, and thirty-two feet high.
arche f. 21 § , haut.

Napoleon the first succeeded¹²⁰² Louis the 16th; Louis the 18th succeeded
a 136 succédé à ; 136 à

Napoleon the 2nd, king of Rome, and second emperor of the French. I
, roi , 33 empereur

want a watch; but I should not like to give more than ten guineas (for it.)
260 montre ; - aimer à donner guinée en⁵⁴

You can not get a good one for less than twenty. I will not give more
(kk) avoir en⁵⁴ à moins - en⁷⁰

than twelve. The best quality a man can¹²⁵ have, is to be civil and
qualité(s) 50 pouvoir (kk), de civil

obliging to the most uncivil and disobliging people⁷. The more difficult
obligeant incivil désobligeant gens 239 difficile

a thing is, the more merit (there is) in doing¹⁶⁹ it⁵⁴. The more we
chose , mérite 246 à faire 62

contemplate the beauties of nature, the less reason we have to (be
contempler beauté 7 , moins sujet de nous

proud.) The richer and the more elevated in dignity we are, the
enorgueillir. riche élevé en dignité ,

less⁹ pride we ought to have, and the more we are obliged to be
moms n. n. orgueil devoir 172 avoir, obligé, d'

just and reasonable; but most men (of these days) remember
juste raisonnable; la plupart des d'aujourd'hui ne se souvenir 130

that they are rich and powerful, only to¹⁷⁰ oppress the poor and
(bb) n. n. puissant, que pour opprimer pauvre

the weak, and to be more unjust and unreasonable.
faible, 170 être injuste déraisonnable.

† See the numbers page 176. * Eldest and younger cannot be expressed by the comparative nor superlative in french, they must be expressed by the positive, for, as there is only one eldest and one younger there can be no comparison. † See note * page 202.

§ See note * page 177.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

51. When I, THOU, HE, SHE, IT, WE, YOU, THEY, are the nominative
Quand I, THOU, HE, SHE, IT, WE, YOU, THEY, nominatif
 of a verb, they (are expressed) I by *je*, THOU by *tu*, HE, IT, *m.* by *il*,
verbe, ils s'expriment I par , THOU , HE, IT, m.*
SHE, IT, f. by Elle; WE by nous, YOU by vous, THEY by ils, masc.
SHE, IT, f. ; WE , YOU , THEY , masc.
 by *elles*, fem.; as, I learn¹²⁵ french. Doest thou speak it⁵⁴ well?
, fem. ; comme, apprendre français, m. - 133 parler 62 bien?
 He has not learned long. It⁶² is not difficult. She is too idle.
¹⁰⁰ *long-tems. difficile. trop paresseux. (g)*
 We have not time. You will never learn. They are too fond of play.
⁷ *tems. 190 125 - 183 aimer à jouer.*
52. I (is expressed) by *moi*, THOU by *toi*, HE by *lui*, THEY by
I - s'exprimer 125 par , THOU , HE , THEY*
EUX, m. by Elles, f. if two of these pronouns are the nominative of
, deux
 the same verb; as, You and I will learn french. He and I will
verbe; , 127 - apprendre -
 learn together. You and they have learned before: Or, when they
¹²⁷ *ensemble. 127 auparavant: Ou, ils*
 are joined to another substantive; as, My brother and I have begun
joindre substantif; , 127 commencer
 to learn it⁵⁴. He and his sister learn very well. They and their
^à *le 126 très*
 master always speak french together: Or, when there is no⁸ verb in
¹⁸¹ ¹²⁵ *: Ou, il n'y a pas n.b.*
 the sentence to agree with these pronouns; as, Who learns best?
phrase pour s'accorder (bb) ; , le mieux?
 He or I? It⁶² is I who learn best. It⁶² is he who learns best.
[?] *n.b. 123 n.b. 123*

53. When a personal⁹² pronoun is the nominative of several verbs
personnel pronom plusieurs
 it is generally¹⁰³ repeated with each verb; I believe and will always
⁶² *- ordinairement se répéter 125* chaque ; croire - 184*
 believe that it is so. He always promises, but does not keep his
que cela ainsi. 184 promettre, - 190 tenir
 word. We have seen it⁵⁵, and will see¹²⁵ it again.
parole. vu le , revoir 54 †

54. When the pronouns ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER, IT, THEM,
ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER, IT, THEM,
 are governed by a verb, the pronouns *me, te, nous, vous, se, le, la,*
régir 198 verbe,
LES, Lui, Leur, Y, EN, which represent them, (are placed) in french
⁷⁴ ⁵⁴ *représenter , - se placer 125 * en*

* See N.B. under note (ii), page 235,

† Again is expressed by *re* before *voir*,

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

immediately before that verb; Your brother does not love me. He
immédiatement ²⁰⁶ (bb) *verbe*; - *aimer*¹²⁵

never comes to see us. Does he not speak to you, when he meets
¹⁹⁰ *venir* ¹⁷² *voir*. - ¹³³ *parler* (o) , *rencontrer*

you? My mother will not allow me to speak to him. I will write
 ? *vouloir* (kk) *permettre* de (o) - *écrire*

to her. I will scold her for using you so. Do not say (any thing).
 (o) - *gronder* de *traiter* ainsi. - *dire*¹²⁵ ⁹⁹

to her (about it.) She would use me worse (for it.) She would beat
 (o) *en* - *traiter* plus mal *en*⁵⁹ - *battre*

me. If I knew it, I would not suffer it. I must¹⁶¹ reconcile them.
Si *savais* le, - *souffrir* *Il faut que je reconcilie*

I will invite them to come to see me. I will speak to them to-day.
 - *inviter* à *venir* ¹⁷² *voir* - (o) *aujourd'hui*,

55. If the pronouns *ME, TE, NOUS, VOUS, SE, LE, LA, LES, LUI, LEUR, Y*
pronom

EN are governed by a tense compounded of the auxiliary verbs *AVOIR*
*régir*¹⁵³ *par* *tems* *composé* *auxiliaire*⁵²

or *ÊTRE*, and of a past³² participle, they must (be placed) before
ou , *passé* *participe*, ⁶² *devoir* (kk) *se placer* ²⁰⁸

the auxiliary verb, not between the auxiliary and the participle; Have
³² , *non* *entre* ;

you seen my brother? I have seen him, but I have not spoken
voir ? , ¹⁹⁰ *parler*

to him. My mother has forbidden me to speak to him. Has he
 (o) *défendre* de (o)

returned you the book which you had lent him? No, he has not
rendre *livre* ⁷⁴ *aviez* *prêter* * ? ¹⁹¹ ¹⁹⁰

returned it⁶² yet¹⁶³. Has he read it⁶²? I do not think²²¹ he has
rendre le *encore*, *lire* † ? - *penser* ¹⁴⁵

opened it⁶². I am afraid²²¹ he ¹⁹⁵ has lost it⁶². He has told me that
ouvrir † - *craindre* ¹⁴⁶ *perdre* † *dire* que

you have given it him. I have not given it him. It⁶² is not mine.
donner ⁶² * ⁶² * *Il* ⁸⁶

I have borrowed it⁶² from a friend. He has asked me for²⁰¹ it again.
emprunter † à *redemander* - † †

If the pronouns *ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER, IT, THEM* are
ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER, IT, THEM

governed by the imperative of a verb, consider whether the sentence
*régir*¹⁵³ *par* *impératif* , *considérer* si *phrase*

commands, or whether it⁶² forbids. ||
commander, *ou* si † *défendre*.

³² See note (f) p. 79. † See note (h) p. 80. ‡ *Again* is expressed by *re* before *demander*.

|| The verb commands when the action spoken of is to be done; the verb forbids when the action spoken of is not to be done; so, *Wait*, is a command; *Do not wait*, is a forbiddance or prohibition.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

59. If several pronouns are governed by the same verb, they must
plusieurs régir¹⁵⁸ par , ⁶² *devoir*
 (be placed) together in the following order; The pronouns of the
 (*kk*) *se placer ensemble*²¹³ *qui suit*⁹² *ordre* ;
 first¹²⁹ person *me, nous* ; those of the second *te, vous*, and that of the
³⁵ *personne* ; ⁶⁸ *second*²⁹ , ⁶⁸
 third *se*, (are placed¹²⁵) before any of the other pronouns ; *Le, La, Les*,
 - *se placer*^{*} ²⁰⁶ *touts - autres* ;
 (are placed) before *Lui, Leur, Y, EN* ; *Lui, Leur* before *Y, EN* ; and *Y*
 - *se placer*¹²⁵ * ; ²⁰⁶ ;
 before *EN* ; I have something to tell you. What⁹³ is it ? I can not tell
 † ; ⁹⁸ *à dire* (*y*) ? *pouvoir* (*kk*)
 it you now. I will tell it you (by and by.) Why will¹⁷³ not you
le *à présent.* - *tantôt.* *Pourquoi vouloir*
 tell it me now ? I have a letter for you. Your brother has sent it⁶²
 ? *lettre pour* *envoyée* †
 me to bring it you. Where is it ? Give it me. Why will¹⁷³ not
⁵⁵ ¹⁷⁰ *apporter* † *Où* ⁶² ? *Donner*⁶² ⁶⁰ *vouloir*¹²⁵
 you give it me ? If you do not give it me immediately, I will¹⁷³ not ask
⁶² ? - ⁶³ *aussitôt,* - *ne*
 you for²⁰¹ it again, and I will tell him¹⁶² of it. Here it is²⁴⁷. Shew
 - || *plus*,¹⁹⁰ - *lui* || *le* *La voici* ^{N.B.} *Montrer*
 it⁵² me. I will return it to you presently. I have brought you some
⁶⁰ - *rendre*⁶² - *tout à l'heure.* *apporter*⁵⁵ ⁹
 fruit too. Give us some. What⁸³ ! you had promised it to us, and
aussi. (*p*) *Quoi !* *aviez promettre*⁶² - ,
 you give it to them. I offered¹⁹⁶ it to you first and you would not
⁶² - *ai offert*⁶² - ⁵⁵ *premièrement* *avez*¹³⁶
 have it. I will send you some to-morrow. Do not forget to send
*voulu*⁵⁵ - *envoyer* (*p*) *demain.* - *oublier* *de*
 me some, for it is long²⁴⁶ since I¹⁹⁵ have eat any. I will⁷⁰ not.
 (*p*) , *car il y a long-tems que* *mangé* (*p*) ^{N.B.}

60. When a verb in the imperative governs several pronouns, if
Quand *à* *impératif* *régir* *plusieurs* ,
moi, toi are (in the) number, these two pronouns (are placed) for
du , ¹³ - *se placer*¹²⁵ * *pour*
 the sake of melody after the other pronouns ; Give it me. Bring
 - - *mélodie* *autres* ; *Donner*¹²⁵ *Amener*
 her to me. Send them to me there. Send some to me there.
 - *Envoyer* - *y. (e) p. 74.* -

* See N. B. under note (ii) p. 235. † See note * p. 78. ‡ See note (h) p. 80.

|| We do not say in french, *Demander quelqu'un pour une chose*, to ask somebody for a thing ; the thing is always the *object of the verb*, and the *person* the object of a *preposition* ; we say, *Demander une chose à quelqu'un*, to ask a thing to somebody, the same as we say, *Donner une chose à quelqu'un*, to give a thing to somebody. Nor do we say, *Dire une personne d'une chose*, to tell a person of a thing, we say, *Dire une chose à une personne*, to tell a thing to a person.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

61. Except when either¹²⁸ of these pronouns meets the pronoun
Excepté l'un ou l'autre rencontrer
EN, for, ME SOME, ME of IT, of THEM (are expressed) by *m'en* ;
, car, ME SOME, ME of IT, of THEM - s'exprimer¹²⁵ par ,
 THEE SOME, THEE of IT, of THEM are expressed¹²⁵ by *t'en*,
THEE SOME, THEE of IT, of THEM - (ii)^{N.B.} ,
 whether they come before or after the verb; He gave me some.
soit que venir²⁹⁵ ; donner (p)
 Give me some. He put¹²⁷ me (in mind) (of it.) Put me (in mind)
(p) faire souvenir en Faites souvenir
 of it. He brought thee some. Recall to thyself the difficulties of it.
⁵³ *apporter (p) Rappeler - difficulté⁵⁹*

62. As there are only two genders in french, the masculine and
Comme il n'y a que genre en , masculin
 the feminine, the neuter³² pronouns IT, THEY, THEM (are expressed)
feminin, neutre²⁹ IT, THEY, THEM - (ii)^{N.B.}¹²⁵
 by *il, Elle, ils, Elles, Le, La, Les*, agreeably to the gender and
suivant -
 number of the noun to which they refer¹²⁵, the same as when (speak-
³ *se rapporter, de même que ou parle*
 ing) of ⁷persons; Look at that tree; it is well blossomed, yet
personne ; Regarder²⁰¹ ² arbre ; fleuri, cependant
 it produces no fruit.³ I will cut it down, if it does not bear
*produire¹⁹⁰ N.B. abattre, (h) p. 80. * , - porter*
 fruit³ this year. (These are) ¹⁰very fine trees, but they are too
N.B. année.²⁴⁷ très³³ , trop
 young to bear fruit yet¹²³. They do not bear fruit³, when they are
jeune²⁹ pour⁹ déjà^{N.B.} - N.B.,
 so young. (That is) a fine flower. It is a rose. Will you have¹⁷⁴
si²⁹ ²⁴⁷ fleur.⁶⁵ Vouloir -
 it? How sweet it smells! I will take it to my mother.
(h) p. 80. ¹⁸³ bon † sentir!¹⁷³ ²⁵⁶ (h) p. 80.

She is so¹⁶³ fond of roses. Take some of these cherries; they are
- tant aimer - 7 Prendre⁹³ (bb) cerise ;
 very good. They are not quite ripe²⁹ yet¹²³ They will be better
très²⁹ tout à fait mûr encore.^{N.B.} (b) p. 72.
 in another week. It⁶² is very pleasant to have a garden near one's
²¹³ *une semaine. N.B. agréable d' jardin près de sa*
 house. It⁶² is the greatest³³ pleasure I have. Was it⁶² you who
N.B. ⁴⁴ plaisir (s) ⁵⁰ Etait N.B.
 sent¹²⁰ us some fruit the other day? No, it⁶² was my brother. I
envoyer¹³⁷ autre jour? Non, N.B. ¹⁴⁰
 thought²²¹ it⁶² was you. Did you like¹²⁷ it⁵⁴? Yes, it was very nice.
penser¹⁴⁰ N.B. - trouver bon ? ¹⁴⁰ bon.

* To CUT is Couper ; To CUT DOWN is Abattre, not Couper en bas.

† Sweet is here used adverbially, so is Bon, and it does not require any agreement.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

63. Though *Lui*, *Leur*, (are used) for all²⁹ beings that⁷⁴ have life
Quoique , , - *s'employer*¹²⁵ *pour* ⁷*être* (m) p. 82. ⁷*vie*
 such as brutes and plants, as likewise for ideal³² substances in which
tels que brute ⁷ ⁷*plante, et aussi idéal*³² ⁷ ⁷*substances* ⁷⁶ ⁷⁶
 we suppose an active principle, such as ⁷heaven, providence, fortune,
*supposer actif*³² *principe, telles que ciel,* ⁷ , ⁷ ,
 some virtues and vices; as, Take the horses into the stable, and bring
^{*} *vertu* ³ ; *comme,* ²⁵⁶ ²¹³ *écurie,* ²⁵⁶
 them⁵⁵ some hay. This tree is dying¹⁵⁵, give¹⁶² it a little⁸ water.
 (f) p. 79. ⁹ *foin.* ² *arbre - se mourir,* *donner* ⁵⁶ *peu* ^{N.B.} *eau.*
 Most men worship ⁷love; they sacrifice every thing to it; They
*La plupart des adorer*¹³⁰ *amour;* *sacrifier* ¹⁰⁷ ⁵⁴; *Ils*
 can not be used for lifeless³² beings which are⁹² commonly¹⁶³ called
 - (kk) *s'employer sans vie* ⁷ *que on ordinairement appeler*
 things; in speaking of things, to IT, to THEM are expressed by Y;
chose; en parlant ⁷ , to *IT*, to *THEM* - *s'exprimer* ¹²⁵ ;
 Geography is a pleasant study; you should give some time to it. You
Géographie ⁷ *agréable*³² *étude;* ¹⁷⁶ * *tems* ⁵⁴
 do not pay sufficient attention to it. I want to learn mathematics; but
faire assez ^{N.B.} ⁵⁴ ²⁶⁰ *mathématique;*
 I can not apply to them. I have not time to stick to them.
 (kk) *m'appliquer* ⁵⁹ ⁷ *de m'attacher* ⁵⁹

64. *Lui*, *Elle*, *Eux*, *Elles*, after a preposition, (are said) only of
préposition ne se disent que
 persons and beings that are⁹² generally¹⁶³ personified; such as heaven,
personne ⁷ *que on généralement personnifier*¹²⁵; *tels que* ⁷ ,
 providence, virtue, love, &c.; as, If men knew¹⁴⁰ virtue, they would
⁷ , ⁷*vertu,* ⁷*amour, &c.;* *comme,* ⁷ *connaître* ⁷ ,
 burn with love for it, and † own that (there is) no⁸ real happiness
bruler d' pour , avouer que ²⁴⁶ ^{N.B.} *vrai † bonheur*
 without it. In speaking of brutes or things, the preposition is gene-
sans En parlant ⁷*brutes ou* ⁷ , - ¹³³
 rally changed into an adverb, and the pronoun (is left out); as,
*se changer*¹²⁵ *en - adverbe,* - *s'omettre*¹²⁵; *comme,*
 That chair is broken, do not sit⁵⁷ upon it. The rails are
 (bb) *chaise rompu*¹⁵⁸ , - *s'asseoir* || *dessus* *barreau*
 newly painted, do not lean⁵⁷ against them. Stand⁵⁵ (by the side)
fraichement peint ²⁹ , - *s'appuyer* || *contre* *Se tenir* || *à côté*
 of them. I have made a terrace in my garden, a grotto under it, and
²¹³ *terrasse* , *grotte dessous,*
 planted trees all round it. I am going to make a water spout (in the)
planté ^{N.B.} *arbre autour* ¹⁵⁵ ¹⁷² *d'eau* ²⁵ *jet* ^{au}
 middle of it, and a canal through it. Have you ever been in it?
milieu , *à travers.* *jamais dedans?*

* See note † page 282.

† Put this adjective before the noun.

† *Would* is here understood in english.

|| See the imperative of a reflexive verb, p. 114.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

65. When HE, SHE, IT, THEY are the nominative of the verb BE, HE, SHE, IT, THEY, BE, followed by a substantive, they⁶² are generally expressed by *Ce*; *sui* *d'* *ils* - ¹⁸³ *s'exprimer*¹²⁵ *par* ; Do you know that gentleman who is coming (this way?) He is a philosopher. He is a very learned man. That is his wife who is with him. She is a very haughty³² woman. Is that their house? Yes, it is. It is a very good²⁰ house. They are very respectable people⁹.

¹³³ *connaître* (bb) *monsieur* - *venir*¹⁵⁵ (par ici ?)
⁵⁸ *hautain*²⁹ *femme*. *Est-ce là* ? *Oui*,
⁷⁰ *philosophe*. *très savant* *C'est là femme*
³³ *mot MAN, WOMAN ou PEOPLE sous-entendus; alors*
³² *gens*.

66. HE, SHE, THEY, HIM, HER, THEM are sometimes used¹²⁵ HE, SHE, THEY, HIM, HER, THEM - *quelquefois*¹⁸³ *s'employer* without reference to a noun expressed in the discourse, but with reference to the words MAN, WOMAN or PEOPLE understood; then they (are expressed) HE, HIM by *celui*; SHE, HER by *celle*; THEY, THEM by *ceux*; Happy he who lives, i. e. the man who lives contented with his lot. Providence never abandons him who does not abandon himself. She who refuses a husband, is not always sure to find another.

rapport *exprimé*²¹³ *discours*, *avec*
mot MAN, WOMAN ou PEOPLE sous-entendus; alors
⁷ *s'exprimer*¹²⁵ *HE, HIM par* ; *SHE, HER* ; *THEY, THEM*
¹⁹⁰ *abandonner* - *s'abandonner lui-même*.
refuser mari, *sûr*²⁹ *en*⁷⁰ *trouver un autre*.

N. B. The English, in this kind of sentences, often place¹²⁵ the words HE, SHE, &c. and the relative WHO, WHOM, which⁷⁴ follows them, in different⁹² parts of the sentence; the French (on the contrary, generally place *qui*, *que*, *dont* immediately after *celui*, *celle*, *ceux*; He is a flatterer who praises men for virtues which⁷⁴ they have not. He can not be happy whose happiness depends upon other people. They are not always happy who seem to be so⁵⁴.†

Anglais, ²¹³ (bb) *sorte*⁸ *phrase*, ¹⁸⁴ *placer*
⁵⁴ *HE, SHE, &c.* *relatif WHO, WHOM, (m) p. 82. suivre*
²¹³ *different*²⁹ *partie* ; *au*
¹⁸⁴ *contraire*, ¹²⁵ *immédiatement*
⁷⁴ *celle, ceux* ; *He is a flatterer who loue*⁷ *des* (m) p. 82.
¹⁹² *saurait* ⁷⁴ *bonheur*⁷ *dépendre des*
³⁹ *autres*. - ³⁹ *paraître* - - *le*

67. HIS, HER, THEIR used in the same sense as the above³² pro- nouns, i. e. without reference to a noun mentioned, are expressed,

HIS, HER, THEIR employés *sens que ci-dessus*
rapport (dout il soit fait mention), - *s'exprimer*¹²⁵,

* See * p. 210.

† Turn this sentence in french; *They who seem happy, are not always so.*

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

HIS by *de celui*; HER by *de celle*; THEIR by *de ceux*; Every body
HIS ; *HER* ; *THEIR* ¹⁰⁶

blames his manners, i. e. the manners of *him*, who acts without modesty.
blâmer *manière* , *agir* *modestie*.

I would not trust her virtue, who does not care²⁰⁰ for her reputation.
vouloir *me fier à* *vertu* - *se soucier de* ¹

Their labours do not always succeed, who take their measures best.*
travail - ¹⁰⁴ *réussir* *prendre* *mesure* *le mieux*.

68. When a personal³² pronoun is the object of several verbs, it must
personnel *objet* *plusieurs* , ⁶² *doit*
 be repeated with each verb; He saw and heard me. He loves and
⁵² *répéter* ¹⁰³ ; *voir* *entendre* ⁵⁴ *aimer*
 esteems you. I hate and despise him. I entreat and conjure you.
estimer ⁵⁴ *hâir* *mépriser* ⁵⁴ *prier* *conjuré* ⁵⁴

69. When several verbs come together, the pronouns should (be
ensemble , *devraient* (*se*
 placed) immediately before the verb which⁷⁴ governs them; Will
placer) (m) p. 82. *régir* ⁵⁴ ; ¹⁷³
 you help me to do it? Can not you do it yourself? He wishes to
aider ¹⁶³ *faire* ⁵⁴ ? ¹⁹² (m) N.B. ? *souhaiter* ¹⁷³
 marry her. She will not speak to him. She can not bear him.
épouser ⁵⁴ *vouloir* (*kk*) (*o*) ⁵⁴ ¹⁹² *souffrir* ⁵⁴.

70. When, in a sentence of several parts, the subject mentioned
Quand , ²¹³ *phrase* *plusieurs partie* , *sujet dont il est fait mention*
 in the first²⁹ part is continued, the french add¹²⁵ to the following³² parts
premier *continuer* , *français ajouter* *suivant* ²⁹
 of the sentence one of the pronouns *Le*, *La*, *Les*, *En*, *Y*, agreeably to the
suivant -
 idea which⁷⁴ they wish to express; Is this the master of the house?
idée (m) p. 82. *vouloir* ¹⁷² ; *Est-ce ici* *maître* ?
 Yes, he is; i. e. *the master*. He is rich and I am not; i. e. *rich*. He
 , (*r*) . *riche* (*m*) . †
 has friends and I have not; i. e. *any friends*. Are these the books
^{ami} (*m*) . (*p*) † *Sont-ce ici*
 of which you were speaking? Yes, they are; i. e. *the books*. Is
⁷⁴ ¹⁵⁵ ? , ⁶⁵ . †
 your brother at home? No, he is not; i. e. *there*. And if the
¹³⁴ *au logis* ? ¹⁹¹ , ¹⁹⁰ . (*e*) p. 74.
 auxiliary verb with which we⁹⁰ ask the question, is attended by ano-
*auxiliaire*³² ⁷⁶ N.B. *faire* , *accompagné d'*
 ther verb, that verb must also be repeated; Have you seen your
 , (*bb*) *doit* *aussi* - *se répéter*; (*ii*) N.B. *vu*

* Turn; The labours of those who take best their measures, do not always succeed.

† You do not repeat the noun or adjective, which is understood in english, but you must add one of the above pronouns to the verb, as long as the same subject is continued.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

brother lately? No, I have not, i. e. *seen him*. When you see¹⁴²
depuis peu ? ¹⁰¹ , * . *verrez*
 him, tell him that I want to speak to him. I will; i. e. *tell it him*. I
 , *dire lui*⁵⁵ (bb) ²⁶⁰ ¹⁷² (o) * .
 do not know what he wants; do you? i. e. *know it*? No, I do not; i. e.
savoir ⁸⁴ *vouloir*; * ? ^{70 N.B.} , * ;
know it; if I did¹⁴⁰; i. e. *know it*, I would not have asked you about it.
^{70 N.B.} ; * ; ^{70 N.B.} , *demandez* - † ⁵⁹

71. If the pronoun, which⁷⁴ in these instances (is added) to the sen-
 , (m) p. 82. (bb) *cas* *s'ajouter* ¹²⁵
 tence, represents a noun, it must be one of the words *le, la, les,*
 , *représenter* , *doit* *not*
 agreeably to the gender and number of that noun; Are you the
suivant - ³ (bb) ;
 brother of that lady? Yes, I am. Are you the sister of that
 (bb) ? , (bb)
 gentleman? No, I am not. Are these your horses? Yes, they are.
monsieur ? *Sont-ce ici* *cheval* ? , ⁶⁵

72. If you have to represent, in the second part of the sentence,
à représenter ²⁹
 an adjective, an adverb, or a member of a sentence, you¹⁰¹ must add
 , *ou un membre* - , *il* ^{N.B.} *fait ajouter*
le without regard to gender or number; Sir, are you ready? Yes, I
sans *avoir égard* ⁷ *ou* ⁷ ; , *prêt* ? ,
 am; i. e. *ready*. Are you ready, Madam? No, Sir, I am not; i. e. *ready*.
²⁹ , ? , .
 Are your brothers returned¹⁵⁸? No, they are not; i. e. *returned*.
¹³⁴ ²⁶⁵ ? , .

73. *En, y*, which⁷⁴ are generally said¹²⁶ of things only, may, in
 (m) p. 82. - ¹⁵³ *se dire* ⁷ , *peuvent, en*
 answer to these questions, (be used) for persons; *en*, instead of
réponse (bb) , (kk) *s'employer pour* ⁷ ; , *au lieu de*
de moi, de toi, de nous, de vous, de lui, d'elle, d'eux, d'elles; y,
 ;
 instead of *à moi, à toi, à nous, à vous, à lui, à elle, à eux, à elles* ;
 Were you speaking of me? Yes, I was; i. e. *speaking of you*. Do
 - ¹³³ ¹⁵⁵ ⁵⁸ ? , * .
 you care for her? No, I do not; i. e. *care for her*. Will you not
se soucier de ⁵⁸ ? ¹⁹¹ * ¹⁷³
 trust²⁹² him? No, indeed, I will not; i. e. *trust him*. Have²⁹⁷ you
vous fier à ⁵⁸ ? ¹⁹¹ , *en vérité* , †
 not applied to them? Yes, we have²⁹⁷; i. e. *have applied to them*.
s'adresser ⁵⁸ ? , .

* These signs, or auxiliary verbs which represent the principal verb in English, have no meaning in French, you must repeat the verb itself.

† See note j p. 296.

‡ See compound tenses of a reflexive verb used interrogatively, page 115.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.*

Your sister has not used²³⁷ me well. What has she done to you?
n'en a pas usé avec ^{188 N.B.} ⁸³ *faire (o)* ?

We were at the ball last night; I asked²²² her to dance with me;
¹⁴⁰ *bal* ²³⁵ ; *prier* ¹³⁷ ¹⁶⁸ *danser* ;

she refused me, and after she had refused me, she danced with
refuser ¹²⁷ , *après que* *eut refusé* , ¹³⁷

another. She mentioned it to me this morning. She is very sorry
^a ¹³⁸ *parlé* *en (o)* *(bb)* ²²⁴ *fâché* ²⁹

(for it.) She desired me to tell you so. She did¹⁴⁰ not intend to offend
en ^a ¹³⁸ *prié* ¹⁶⁸ *dire* ^{le} ⁵⁴ *avoir* *dessein* ¹⁶⁸ *offenser*

you. She had promised to dance with him before you had²¹⁸ asked
avait promettre ¹⁶⁸ *avant que* *eussiez demander*

her. She ought¹⁷⁷ then to have told me so. She forgot¹³⁷ it. She did not
lui *aurait donc - dû* *dire* ^{le} ⁵⁴ *oublier* -

think (of it.) I beg you will forgive²⁰² her. You had promised me
penser ¹³⁷ *y* *prier* † *de pardonner* *lui* *aviez*

that, when you should come to see me, you would bring me your
que, quand *venir* ¹⁷² *voir* , - ²⁵⁶

children. Why did¹³⁵ you not bring them with you? I could not
Pourquoi avez *amenés* ? *ai* ¹³⁶ *pu*

bring them to-day. I will¹⁷³ bring them the next time I come¹⁴².
²⁵³ *aujourd'hui.* - ²⁵⁶ *prochaine* *fois* ²²¹ *viendrai.*

Bring them to me as soon as you can¹⁴². I will⁷⁰. They have desired
²⁵⁶ *(o)* *aussitôt que* *pouvoir.* ^{N.B.} ²⁵²

me to buy¹⁶² them fruit, and to send it to them, but I will take it to
¹⁶⁸ *acheter (f)* *p.* ^{79.} ⁹ , ¹⁶⁸ *envoyer* *(o)* , ²⁵⁶ ⁶² *(o)*

them myself. I long to see them. It is so long²⁴⁶ since I have seen
(m) ^{N.B.} † *de voir* *Il y a si long tems que* [¹⁹³ *vus* ¹⁵⁹

them. They will be very glad²⁰ to see you. They are very fond of
bien aise ¹⁶⁸ - *fort* ¹⁸³ *aimer* -

you. They are always talking¹⁵³ of you. You are so good|| to them.
¹⁵⁵ ¹⁸³ *parler* *avez tant de bonté pour*

They like you better than their uncle. He is incessantly teasing¹⁵⁵
aimer *(b)* *p.* ^{72.} *oncle.* - *sans cesse* ¹⁸³ *tourmenter*

them. They will¹⁷³ not stay with him. They would rather come to
vouloir *rester* *aiment mieux* *(o)*

me or go to you. They are very amiable³² children. I often think
(o) ⁶⁵ *aimable* ²⁹ ⁹ ¹⁸⁴ *penser*

of them. I am much obliged to you. You have got a nice stick.
²⁰⁰ *bien obligé* *(o)* ²⁷⁰ *joli bâton.*

Let²⁴³ me look at it. Will you have it? I make you a present (of it.)
Laisser *voir* - *Vouloir* ¹⁷⁴ ? *faire* ²⁴ *en*

* See note * p. 281. † Turn in french, *I beg you to forgive her.* ‡ See LONG, p. 175.

|| TO BE SO GOOD, TO BE SO KIND, are expressed by *Avoir tant de bonté*. BE SO GOOD, BE SO KIND, in the imperative, *Ayez la bonté*; not *Soyez si bon*.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

I thank you. I will⁷³ not deprive you of it. I do not care (for it.)
remercier vouloir (kk) priver - se soucier en

I have bought it with the intention of giving¹⁵⁴ it away. Have you
acheter dans dessein donner - En⁷⁰

got another? Yes, I have⁷⁰. Is this your new³² watch? Yes, it is. It
²⁷⁰ un autre? , N.B. Est-ce ici neuve montre ? , ce ⁷⁰ ⁶²

is silver; I thought²²¹ it was gold. My uncle has promised me a gold
d'argent ; pensais¹⁴⁰ ⁶² ¹⁴⁰ d'or. My uncle *oncle* d'or

one, if I get a prize this year. I wish²²¹ you may⁷⁰. N.B. Ah!
en ⁷⁰ , remporter prix (bb) ²³³ souhaiter en remportiez un. Ah!

is it⁶² you? How glad I am to see you! If you had not called upon
 N.B. ? ¹⁸⁵ aise ¹⁶⁸ voir! aviez ²⁶⁶

me now, I would have called upon you this afternoon. I wanted²⁶⁰
à présent , ²⁶⁶ (bb) ¹⁴⁰ après midi.

to see you. We go to the play to-night; will you come with us?
aller comédie * ²³⁵ ; † venir ?

Will your cousin¹³⁴ be there? I think²²¹ she will⁷⁰. I will go; for I long
 - † cousine f. (e) p. 74. penser N.B. † ; car †

(very much) to see her. She is a most amiable³² young lady. You
fort ¹⁶⁸ voir ⁶⁵ des plus aimables jeune demoiselle. §

do not know (how much) I love and esteem her. I always think
 - savoir combien aimer estimer ¹⁸⁴ penser

of her, but I (am afraid)²²¹ she never thinks of me. What reason
²⁰⁰ , craindre ¹⁹⁰ ²⁰⁰ ⁸² raison

have you to think so? Because, when I meet her, she does not
¹⁶⁸ le ⁵⁴ ? Parceque, rencontrer, - ||

take any notice of me. You should¹⁷⁶ speak to her. You should
faire aucune attention à devoir (o) ¹⁷⁶

call upon her. I (am afraid) of offending¹⁵⁴ her. I know²²¹ she has
 (kk) ²⁶⁶ craindre déplaire ²⁰² lui savoir

a great regard for you, but I can not say that she loves you.
 - beaucoup de respect pour , (kk) dire (bb) N.B.

Yet, I recollect that one day, as I was speaking of you to her,
Cependant, se rappeler un jour, comme ¹⁵⁵ (o) ,

she asked me if I knew¹⁴⁰ you well. I told her that I did⁷⁰,
demandar connaître bien dire (f) p. 79. (bb) N.B. ¶ N.B.

* Comédie in french, does not mean Comedy only, but is said of any kind of plays acted upon a stage, and also of the house itself where such plays are acted; you may also express the word Play by Spectacle. Théâtre in french is generally understood of that part of the house called the stage; yet it is said also of the house itself.

† See note * p. 143.

‡ See the impersonal verb LONG, p. 175.

§ Demoiselle is said of all ladies who have never been married, whatever their age may be; Dame is said of all ladies who are or have been married.

|| Express Not by ne only, before the verb, as aucune which follows it, supplies the place of pas or point.

¶ You may express I did by Out only, or you may repeat the verb Connaître, and say, I did know you.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

and she seemed¹⁵⁷ pleased (at it.) If she is at the theatre to night,
paraître bien aise en à comédie* 235

I will tell her what you have told me. I shall be much obliged
81 bien obligé

to you, if you do. I see a gentleman in that box yonder who
(o) , † monsieur (bb) loge là-bas 75 ‡

owes me (a great deal) of money, but I dare not ask him for it, for
devoir - beaucoup argent, oser § , de

fear of giving him pain; yet I am in great want (of it;) and
peur faire 154 162 peine; cependant, avoir grand besoin en;

as (you are acquainted with him,) I will be obliged to you, if you
comme vous vous connaissez || , (o) ,

will tell him so, the first time you have an opportunity to
144 dire (f) p. 79. le 54. fois (s) 142 24 occasion 103

mention it to him. Who, Mr. A? I know him very well. He is
parler en (o) Qui, Mons. A? connaître très bien.

a very honest man; he will pay you, you may be sure of it. I
honnête (i) ; payer , pouvoir sûr

answer for him as for myself. I suppose²²¹ he has forgotten it.
repondre 200 comme 200 moi-même. s'imaginer oublier

My sisters were talking this morning of going¹⁵⁴ to drink tea⁷ at
155 parler (bb) matin aller 172 prendre thé

your²⁰⁰ house this afternoon. Shall you be there? Certainly, I shall⁷⁰.
N.B. 2 après midi. (e) p. 74. Certainement, N.B.

I should not like to lose that opportunity of seeing them. I want
aimer 169 (bb) occasion 154 260

to return²⁰⁵ them the book which⁷⁴ they have lent me, and to thank
N.B. (f) p. 79. (m) p. 82. prêter , remercier

them (for it.) I have been told that one of them is going to be
en 92 une ¶ - 155 172

married¹²⁰¹. Is it true? They⁹⁰ talk of it, but I do not know whether
se marier. vrai ? N.B. parler , si

it is true or not. Ask¹⁶² her. I dare not ask her such a thing;
ou non. Demander le (f) p. 79. oser (f) p. 79. 30 chose;

she would be angry with me. I met¹³⁷ them walking together
fiché 29 200 rencontrer à la promenade ensemble

the other day, and I related¹²⁷ to them what had²³⁸ happened to us,
autre , raconter (o) 84 était arriver (o) ,

after we had left¹⁵⁹ them; they laughed (at it) (very much.) They
après que 137 quittés ; ¶ rire 137 en beaucoup. ¶

* See note * p. 303. † Here you may express *Do* by the verb *Faire*, or you may repeat the verb and the pronouns, if you tell it her.

‡ Turn; I see in that box yonder a gentleman who &c. § See note || p. 296.

¶ Leave out with him; as *Vous vous connaissez* means, you are acquainted with each other.

¶ Mind the gender of the noun which this pronoun represents.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

told¹⁵⁷ me they wished¹⁴⁰ that they had been with us. I also¹⁸⁴ shewed¹⁵⁷
dire ²²¹ * *souhaiter* (nn) *aussi* *montrer*

them the letter which you have written to me, desiring me not¹⁹⁰ to
 (f) p. 79. (m) p. 82. *écrite* ¹⁵⁹ (o) , *pour prier* N.B. ¹⁶⁸

mention it to them, for fear²¹⁸ your father (should come) to know of
parler *en* (o) , *de peur que* ¹⁹⁵ *vint* à *savoir* -

it; but I requested them not¹⁹⁰ to mention it to him. Have they
le; *prier* ¹³⁷ N.B. *de parler* *en* (o)

mentioned it to you? No, they have not⁷⁰. They only¹⁸⁴ told¹³⁶ me
en (o) ¹⁹¹ , * N.B. * *seulement* *out dit*

that they had met you, and that you had²²⁷ walked (a little way)
 (bb) N.B. * *avaient* , *étiez* *se promener* *un peu*

with them. They were (very well) pleased²⁰ with you. I was not
 * * *très* - *content* N.B. ²⁰⁰

less so⁵⁴ with them. They have invited me to come and spend an
moins *le* *d'* * * *inviter* ¹⁶⁹ *venir* (nn) ²⁷¹

evening with them. I intend¹²⁵ to pay them¹⁰² a visit soon ¹⁶³.
²³⁴ *avec* * *avoir dessein* ¹⁶⁸ *rendre* (f) p. 79. *bientôt*. N.B.

Pray give my love to them, and tell them¹⁶² so. I will⁷⁰. Is not
faire *amitiés* (o) † , (f) p. 79. *le* N.B.

your country ²⁵house finished yet¹⁸³? No, it is not, and I do not
de campagne ¹³⁴ *finir* ¹⁵⁸ N.B. ¹⁹¹ , * ⁷⁰ , -

know when it will be. My father does not like it now. He says
savoir *quand* * ⁷⁰ - *aimer* * (h) p. 80.

that it is too near the road. He wants²⁰⁰ to sell it, and ²⁰⁴
 (bb) N.B. * *trop près de* *route*. *avoir envie* ¹⁶⁸ * (h) p. 80. *d'en*⁷⁰

build another a little further in the country. I wonder he does
bâtir ¹²⁰ *un peu* *loin* ⁴¹ ²¹³ ²³⁰ *s'étonner* ²²¹ -

not like it; it seems¹²⁵ a good house, and it is in a pleasant
 * ; * *avoir apparence* - † , * ²¹³ *agréable*³²

situation. He is going¹⁵⁵ to add a terrace to it, and make a moat
 - *aller* ¹⁷² *ajouter* *terrasse* , *fossé*

round it. Have you been in the park? They⁹⁰ are making a pond
autour ⁶⁴ *parc* ? N.B. - *faire* ¹⁵⁵ *étang*

in the middle of it. (Here is) some fruit. Will you have⁷⁴ any?
milieu ⁶⁴ ²⁴⁷ ⁹ . (p)

I shall be obliged to you, if you will give me some. Take some.
obligé (o) , ¹⁴⁴ (p) *Prendre* (p)

Take some more. (There²⁴⁶ is) plenty in the garden. We have
 (p) *d'avantage*. *en* ⁷⁰ *abondance* ²¹³ *jardin*. *en* ⁷⁰

(so much) that we do not¹⁹² know what to do (with it.) Have you
tant (bb) N.B. - N.B. *que* ¹⁷² *faire* ²⁰⁰ || *en*.

* Mind the gender of the noun which this pronoun represents.

† Express this sentence thus: *I pray you to give my love to them, and to tell them &c.*

‡ Turn this sentence thus: *It has a good appearance.* || *With* is implied in the pronoun *en*.

PERSONAL PRONOUN.

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

been where I told¹³⁶ you? No, I have not⁷⁰. Why do not you go?
être où ai dit ^{191,} *N.B. Pourquoi - y* ⁷⁰ ¹³³

Are you not ready yet¹⁸³? Yes, I am. Is your sister ready? I
¹⁹³ *prêt* *encore* *N.B.* , ⁷⁰ ¹³⁴ ²⁹

(am afraid) she is not. Go and tell her¹⁰² to (get ready) as fast as
craindre ²²¹ ¹⁴⁸ ⁷⁰ *Aller - (nn) dire (f) p. 79.* ¹⁰⁸ *s'apprêter* ⁴³ *vite* ⁴³

she can¹⁴². Is this the book of which you were speaking to me?
poura. *Est-ce ici* ⁷⁴ ¹⁵⁵ ^(o)

Yes, it is. Have you read it? Yes, I have⁷⁰. Is it entertaining? Yes,
⁷⁰ *lire* *N.B.* *amusant?*

very. Read it. You know Mr. B.; do you not²⁸²? Yes, I do.⁷⁰
beaucoup *connaître Monsieur* ; *n'est-ce pas?* *Oui,* *N.B.*

He is a very clever young man, but I (am afraid)¹⁹⁵ he is a little (too
⁶⁵ *très habile*³² *jeune* , *craindre* ²²¹ ¹⁴⁶ *un peu*

much) addicted to gaming. Has he ever asked you for money? Yes,
trop *adonné* ⁷ *jeu.* *jamais* * *argent?* ,

he has⁷⁰. Did¹⁹⁶ you lend him¹⁰² any? Yes, I ¹³⁶did⁷⁰. I am very sorry
N.B. *Avez* *prêté (f) p. 79. (p)* , *ai* *N.B.* *fâché*

(for²⁰⁰ it,) for I do not think that he will ever return it to you. Do
en , *car* - ^(bb) *N.B.* *rendre* ¹⁴⁵ ^(o) -

you think he will⁷⁰? Yes, I do⁷⁰. He is a very worthy³² young
²²¹ ¹⁴⁵ *N.B.* , *N.B.* ⁶⁵ *de beaucoup de mérite*

man. I wish²²¹ you would recommend him to some of your friends
¹⁸⁰ *vouloir* *recommander* ⁹³

who could serve him. I will⁷⁰. I esteem him (very much) myself,
pût servir *N.B.* *estimer* *fort* ^(m) *N.B.*

and I beg you by all that is dear to you, not¹⁹⁰ to mention to him
supplier *par tout ce qui* *cher (o)* , *N.B. de parler de (o)*

what⁸⁴ I have said to you, for I would never pardon you for it. I
^(m) *p. 82.* ^(o) , *car* ¹⁹⁰ *pardonner* *

will⁷⁰ not. Only¹⁸⁴ tell him¹⁰², when you see¹⁴² him, that I shall be
N.B. *Seulement* ^{(f) p. 79.} *voir* , ^(bb) *N.B.*

much obliged to him, if he will do me the favour that he has pro-
bien obligé (o) , ¹⁴⁴ *faire* *grâce* ⁷⁴ *pro-*

vided me. I will tell him¹⁶² so⁵⁴. I like them who shew themselves
*mettre*¹⁵⁹ ^{(f) p. 79.} *le* *aimer* ⁶³ *montrer* *se*

such as they are. (So do I.) Tell him¹⁶² to call upon me as soon as
tels que *Et moi aussi.* ^{(f) p. 79.} ¹⁶⁸ ²⁶⁶ ⁴³ *tôt* ⁴³

he can¹⁴². I will⁷⁰. Now, I must wish you good morning. Come
pouvoir. *N.B.* *À présent,* ¹²¹ *souhaiter* ⁷ ²³⁴ *N.B.* *Venir*

and see us again soon. You may¹⁷⁸ be sure that I will⁷⁰. I will
^{- (nn)} *revoir* † *bientôt.* *pouvoir* *sûr (bb)* *N.B.* *N.B.*

come as often as I can, whilst I am so near you. I hope you will⁷⁰.
⁴³ ⁴³ ¹⁴² , *pendant que* ¹⁴³ *près de* ²²¹ *N.B.*

* See note † page 295.

† *Re* prefixed to a verb, expresses the word *again*.

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

74. When **WHO, THAT, WHICH** are the nominative of a verb, they
WHO, THAT, WHICH nominatif* , ils
 (are expressed) by *qui*; I see a gentleman yonder who is waiting
s'exprimer (ii) N.B. *par* ; *voir* *monsieur* † *là bas* 75 155 *attendre*
 for me. It²² is from him I have bought that horse which is lame.
 201 N.B. 221 *acheter (bb)* *boiteux*.
 He has another which suits me. I have one which, I think, will die.
*en*⁷⁰ *un autre* *convenir* *en*⁷⁰ *un* , *croire*, *mourir*.
 When **WHOM, THAT, WHICH** are the object of a verb, they are
WHOM, THAT, WHICH objet* , -
 expressed by *que*; You know the gentleman we have just²⁴ met.
s'exprimer ; ‡ † (s) *venons de rencontrer*.
 It²² is from him I have bought the horse that you have seen. He has
 N.B. 221 *voir*. *en*⁷⁰
 another which I want to buy, to replace that which I have lost.
 120 230 *acheter*, 170 *remplacer* 88 *perdre*.
WHOSE, of WHOM, of WHICH, are expressed by *dont*; He is the
WHOSE, of WHOM, of WHICH - *s'exprimer* ; 65
 gentleman whose horse has won the race. He is not the person
 † *gagné le prix de la course*. 65 *personne f*.
 of whom you complain. No, he is⁷⁰ not. He is a man of whom I have
se plaindre. , 65 (r) 65
 a good opinion. The horse of which I was speaking to you is sold.
 24 29 - *parler*¹⁵⁵ (o) *vendre*.

75. *Qui, que, dont*, whatever be the order of the words which
 , , , *quelque*¹¹⁷ *soit*
 correspond to them in english, must be placed immediately after the
correspondre 63 *en* , *devoir* - *se placer* *immédiatement*
 noun to which they relate; A gentleman has been here who
 76 62 *se rapporter (ii)*; † *il est venu ici* ||
 wanted²⁰⁰ to speak to you. Is the man (come back) whom I had
*vouloir*¹⁴⁰ ¹⁷² (o) 134 *revenir* *avais*
 sent (for him)? Yes, he is⁷⁰. Is the money to be had (turn, can
envoyer le querir? , N.B. *Peut-on* 92 *avoir*
*one*⁶⁰ *have the money*) which we are in need of? No, it is not.⁷⁰
 (kk) *avons*²⁴ *besoin* 203 191 , N.B.
 N. B. *Dont*, (besides its being placed) immediately after the noun
 , *autre qu'il doit se placer*
 to which it relates, must also be followed immediately (by the) nomi-
 76 *il* , *doit aussi être suivi* *du*
 native of the verb which⁷⁴ follows it; as, (That is) the gentleman
 (m) p. 82. *suivre* 54; , 247 †

* See note *, p. 204, the distinction between the *nominative* and the *object* of a verb.

† *Monsieur*, not *Gentilhomme*, which in the french language means *Nobleman*.

‡ See page 140, and 152, the difference between *Savoir* and *Connaitre*.

|| Turn this sentence thus; There has been here a gentleman who wanted &c.

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

whose horse I wanted²⁶⁰ to buy. He is a man whose probity I know,
vouloir ¹⁴⁰ ¹⁷² *acheter.* ⁶⁵ *probité* * ,
 a man whose talents I admire, and whose friendship I value much.
 , *amitié* *priser fort.*

If the sentence can not be turned in this manner, WHOSE must
phrase *pouvoir (kk) - se tourner de (bb) manière,* *WHOSE* *doit (kk)*
 be expressed by *duquel, de laquelle, desquels, desquelles*, agreeably to
 - *s'exprimer* *par* , , , *suivant* -
 the gender and number of the noun to which the pronoun relates¹²⁵ ;
genre ³ *nombre* ⁷⁶ *se rapporter ;*
 He is a man to whose family I owe every thing, and in whose hands
⁶⁵ *famille* *devoir* ¹⁰⁷ , *main*
 all my property is. They are people upon whose word one may depend.
bien ⁶⁵ ⁹ *gens* ²²⁹ *sur* *parole on peut compter.*

76. After a preposition WHOM is expressed by *qui* for both genders
WHOM - *s'exprimer* *les deux*
 and numbers; WHICH by *lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles* ;
les deux ; *WHICH* , , , ;
 from WHICH by *duquel, de laquelle, desquels, desquelles*; to, at WHICH
from WHICH , , , ; to, at WHICH
 by *auquel, à laquelle, auxquels, auxquelles*, agreeably to the gender
 , , , *suivant* -
 and number of the noun to which it relates; You know the gentle-
³ *il se rapporter ;* *
 man to whom I have spoken. It⁶² is he who has brought the parcel
parler. *N.B.* ⁵² *apporter* *paquet*
 in which your letter was. (This is) the carriage in which he came¹³⁶.
¹⁴⁰ ²⁴⁷ *voiture* *est venu.*

Are these the horses to which he is so much attached? They are not
Sont-ce ici *si fort* *attaché ?*
 fit²⁰ for the use which they are intended for²⁰³. Let us walk along
propre ²⁰⁰ *usage* *les* ⁹² *destine.* *à* *Se promener †* *le long de*
 the road in which we walked¹³⁷ yesterday. What is the name of
route (*v*) *se promener †* *hier.* ⁹²
 the place in which we are? I like to know the name of the places
² *endroit* * (*v*) *aimer* ¹⁶⁹ *
 through which I go. Have²³⁷ you inquired for the town from which
 (*v*) *passer.* *Vous êtes-vous informé de* (*v*)
 he comes? I could not hear any thing on which I can rely.
venir ? *ai* ¹³⁶ *pu* ⁹⁹ *apprendre* ⁹⁹ (*u*) ¹⁴⁵ *compter.*

77. WHO, WHOM used absolutely, i. e. without reference to a noun
Who, whom employé absolument, c'est à dire *rapport*
 mentioned in the sentence, implies the word PERSON understood,
 (*dont il soit fait mention*) *phrase* , *renfermer* *PERSON* *sous-entendu,*

* See p. 140, and 152. the distinction between *Savoir* and *Connaitre*.

† See *Se BLAMER*, p. 114.

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

and is expressed by *qui*; Whom did¹³³ you meet? Whom were
 - *s'exprimer* * ; *avez* *trouvé*? ¹⁴⁹

you with? Whom did¹³³ you give it⁵⁵ to? I do not know whom
¹³³ ²⁰³ *avez* *donné* ²⁰³ - *savoir*

you mean¹²⁵. I do not know whom you are speaking of.
vouloir dire. - ¹⁵⁵ ²⁰³

78. WHOSE used in the same sense, i. e. without reference to a
WHOSE employé même sans, c'est à dire rapport

noun expressed, implies also the word PERSON understood, and is
exprimé, renfermer aussi PERSON -

expressed by *de qui*, when it is used for of WHOM; and by *à qui*,
s'exprimer * , - *s'employer* * . of WHOM; ,

when it is used for to WHOM; Whose son are you? Whose daughter
 - * *to WHOM*; ¹³³

is she? Whose relations are they? Whose house is that, or whom
parent *cette,* †

does that house belong to? Whose property is it, or whom does it
 - (bb) *est* ²⁰³ - ⁶² † -

belong to? Whose children are these, or whom do these children
^{2st} ²⁰³ *ces,* † (bb)

belong to? Do you not know whose they are? They are my sister's.
 - ¹³³ †

WHICH used to ask a question, is sometimes¹⁸³ joined like an
WHICH ¹⁸⁹ *faire* , - *quelquefois se joindre* * , *comme*

adjective to the noun which follows it; as, WHICH MAN? Some-
adjectif *suivre* ⁵⁴ ; *comme, WHICH MAN?*

times it is joined to it like a substantive by the preposition OF; as,
il - se joindre * ⁶³ *substantif* *par* *OF*;

WHICH OF THESE MEN? and sometimes it is used without (a noun
WHICH of THESE MEN? - *s'employer* * *être suivi*

after it,) but with reference to a noun expressed in the former²⁹ part
d'un nom, *avec rapport* *exprimé* *premier* *partie*

of the sentence; as, It⁶² is one of these men; WHICH IS IT?
phrase ; , *N.B.* (bb) ; *WHICH IS IT?*

79. When WHICH interrogative is joined like an adjective to the
WHICH *interrogatif* - *se joindre* * *comme*

noun which follows it⁵⁴, it is expressed by *quel, quelle, quels, quelles*,
suivre *le, il - s'exprimer* * , , , ,

agreeably to the gender and number of the noun; Which horse will
suitant - *genre* *nombre* ; ¹⁷³ ||

you ride? Which road shall we go by²⁰³? Which inn shall we
¹³³ *monter*? *route* ¹³³ *aller par* *auberge* ¹³³

(put up) at? Which is the best inn in this town? Which room
descendre ²⁰³ *meilleur* (bb) *ville?* *chambre*

* See N. B. under note (ii) page 235.

† These two modes of expression are generally rendered in the same manner in french,

‡ See note (o) p. 88. § See note * p. 143.

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

will you sit ⁱⁿ? Which paper would you like to read?
¹⁷³ *rester* ²⁰³ *papier* ¹⁶³ *lire*?

80. When WHICH interrogative is joined like a substantive by the
WHICH - *se joindre* * *comme*
 preposition OF, to the noun which follows it, or when it relates to a
^{OF,} ^{suivre} ^{54,} ^{il se rapporter}

noun mentioned in the foregoing part of the sentence, it is expressed
 (*dont il est fait mention*) ^{premier} ²⁹ *partie* *phrase,* ⁶² - *s'exprimer* *

by *lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles, duquel, de laquelle, des* &c.
^{par} , , , , , , , , ,

i. e. the article *le, la, les; du, de la, des; au, à la, aux,* agreeably to
^{c'est à dire} ; ; ^{suivant} -

gender and number, is added to the words *quel, quelle, quels, quelles;*
⁷ , - *s'ajouter* * ;

Which of these horses will you ride? Which is the easiest?
[†] ¹⁷³ *monter*? ^{aisé}? ⁴⁴

Which of these two roads shall we go by?²⁰³ Which is the shortest?⁴⁴
¹³³ *par* ^{court}? ²⁹?

Which of these rooms will you sit in? Which has the finest view?
¹⁷³ *rester* ²⁰³ ^{belle}? ^{vue}?

81. Sometimes WHICH implies the pronoun THAT or THOSE under-
WHICH *renfermer* *THAT* *ou* *THOSE* *sous-*
 stood; Then it is expressed by *celui que, celle que, ceux que,*
entendu; Alors il - s'exprimer * , , ,

celles que, agreeably to the gender and number of the noun to which
⁻ ³ ⁷⁶

it relates; Which horse shall I ride? You may ride which (i. e.
⁶² *se rapporter* ; ¹³³ *monter* ^{pouvez}

that which) you please¹⁴². Which of these roads shall we go by?
^{il vous plaira.} ¹³³ *aller*? ²⁰³

Go by which you like¹⁴². In which room shall I put your luggage?
^{vouloir.} ¹³³ *mettre* ^{bagage}?

Put it⁵⁶ in that which I told¹³⁶ you. Put it in which you will¹⁴².
^{Mettre} ⁶² ⁸⁸ ^{ai dit} ⁵⁵ ⁶² ^{vouloir.}

82. WHAT joined to a noun, or relating to a noun mentioned
WHAT *joint* , *ayant rapport* (*dont il est fait mention*)
 in the sentence, is expressed by *quel, quelle, quels, quelles,* agreeably
phrase, - *s'exprimer* * , , , , *suivant*

to gender and number, in the same manner as WHICH; What place
⁻ ⁷ ⁷ *de* *manière* *que* *WHICH*; *endroit*

do you come from? What road did¹³⁶ you come by? What inn
⁻ ¹³³ *venir* ²⁰³ ^{êtes} ²³⁸ ^{venu} ²⁰³

will you go to²⁰³? Have you heard the report? No, what is it?
^{aller} ^{entendu} ^{bruit qui court}? , ⁶³

* See N. B. under note (ii) page 235.

† See note * page 214.

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

83. WHAT used absolutely, i. e. without reference to a noun
WHAT employé , *c'est à dire rapport*
 expressed in the discourse, implies the word **THING** understood, and
exprimé ²¹³ *discours,* *renfermer* **THING** ,
 is expressed by *que* or by *quoi*. What is expressed by *que*, when it⁶³
 - *s'exprimer* *ou* *WHAT - s'exprimer* , *il*
 is the object of a verb ; What do you think of this country? What
 ; - ¹³³ *penser* ²³⁰
 do you intend¹²⁵ to (do with yourself)? What do you mean¹²⁵?
 - ¹³³ *avoir dessein de devenir* - ¹³³ *vouloir dire* ?
 What do you want²⁰⁰ to do with that? What is that to you?
 - ¹³³ *vouloir* ¹⁷² *faire* ²⁰⁰ ⁸⁹ (*y*) *fait* ⁸⁹ (*o*) ⁵⁴
 WHAT (is expressed) by *quoi*, when it is used as an interjection, or
WHAT , *il - s'employer* - , *ou*
 when it is governed by a preposition ; What! he is not come yet¹⁶³.
⁶² *régir* *par* ; ! *venu encore* N.B.
 What! you do not answer me. Listen to me. Well! what?
 - *repondre* ⁵⁴ *Ecouter (o)* ⁵⁶ *Eh bien!*
 What are these people talking about? What do you meddle with?
 - (*bb*) *gens*¹³⁴ *parler*¹⁵⁵ *de*²⁰³ - *se mêler* *de*²⁰³
84. WHAT is often used in the sense of **THAT WHICH**: in these
WHAT - ¹⁸³ *s'employer*²¹³ *sens* **THAT WHICH**: (*bb*)
 instances, WHAT is expressed by *ce qui*, when it is the nominative
cas, *WHAT - s'exprimer* (m) p. 82. *il* *nominatif*
 of a verb, and by *ce que*, when it is the object ; Do you know what
 , (m) p. 82. *objet* ; - ¹³³
 (*that which*) makes her angry? Do you hear what she says? I know
fâcher - - *entendre*
 what she wants²⁶⁰. But when WHAT in the sense of **THAT WHICH** is
vouloir. *WHAT* *THAT WHICH*
 governed by a preposition, (it is necessary) to consider whether the
régir *il faut* ¹⁷³ *considérer* *si*
 preposition comes before or after WHAT ; for *of* WHAT is *de ce qui*,
venir *WHAT* ; *car of* *WHAT*
de ce que, i. e. *of* **THAT WHICH** ; WHAT *of* is *ce dont*, i. e. **THAT**
 , *c'est à dire, of* **THAT WHICH** ; *WHAT of* , **THAT**
of **WHICH** ; *to* WHAT is *à ce qui*, *à ce que*, i. e. *to* **THAT WHICH** ;
of **WHICH** ; *to* *WHAT* (m) p. 82. , *to* **THAT WHICH** ;
 WHAT *to* is *ce à quoi*, i. e. **THAT to** **WHICH** ; as, You speak of what
WHAT to , *THAT to* **WHICH** ; *comme,* *parler*
 will never happen. What you are speaking of will never happen. Are
¹⁹³ *arriver.* ¹⁵⁵ ²⁰³
 you sure of what you say? It is what you may¹⁷⁶ be sure of. Will
sûr (m) p. 82. *dire?* ⁶³ *pouvez* ²⁰³
 you trust to what he proposes? What you trust to is very uncertain.
se fier *proposer?* ²⁰³ *très* *incertain.*

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.**

What! is it⁶² you? Where have you been since¹⁹⁵ I saw¹³⁶ you?
 ! N.B. Où depuis que ai vu? ⁵⁴

What country do you come from? What ship did¹³⁶ you come
 pays ²³⁰ - ¹³³ venir ²⁰³ navire êtes ²³⁸ venu

in? What news do you bring? What do they⁸⁰ say in town?
²⁰³ nouvelles - ¹³³ apporter - ¹³³ N.B. à ville?

Read the papers, and you will see. Which paper must I read?
 Lire papier, voir. ¹⁸¹ ¹³³

Which of these papers do you advise me to read? Which has the
 - ¹³³ conseiller ⁵⁴ ¹⁶⁸

latest⁴⁴ news? (There is) very little⁸ difference; read which you
 fraîche²² ²⁴⁶ très peu N.B. ;

can¹⁴² get. Now, what do you think of the news? I do not
 pouvez trouver. Maintenant, - ¹³³ penser -

believe a word of what that paper says. (There is) not a word of
 croire mot (bb) ²⁴⁵

truth in what I have read. What shall we do now? Let us go
 vrai † ¹³⁶ - - aller

to the place in which we are to meet your cousin. What have you
 endroit (v) ⁴¹² ¹⁷² rencontrer ¹³³

done with your stick? I do not know what I have done (with it). I
 faire ²⁰⁰ bâton? - savoir en ⁵⁵

(am afraid) I have left it at the inn at which we have²³⁷ stopped
 craindre (nn) laisser ⁵³ à auberge (v) nous nous sommes arrêtés

to dinner. If your father asks you what you have done (with it),
 dîner. ⁵⁴ en ⁵⁵ ,

what will you answer²⁰² him? Indeed, I shall not¹⁹² know what to
¹³³ répondre lui ⁵⁴ Ma foi, N.B. ¹⁷³

say. What would you advise me to say? I will tell you sincerely
 dire. ¹³³ conseiller ⁵⁴ ¹⁶⁸ † dire ⁵⁴ sincèrement

what I would say. Well! what? What would you say? I would
 Eh bien! ¹³³

tell him¹⁰² the truth. It⁶⁸ is what I was thinking of. What is your
 (f) p. 79. vérité. N.B. ¹⁵⁵ à ²⁰³

reason for leaving this country? Because I see nothing here to which
 raison de quitter (bb) ²³⁰ † Parceque ⁹⁹ ici (u)

I can⁴⁵ apply. I want to go abroad. What country would you
 puisse s'appliquer. ²⁶⁰ dans les pays étrangers. ²⁹⁰

like to go to? To France or Italy? Which country would you
 aimer ¹⁶⁹ ²⁰³ ⁶ Italie? ²²⁰ ¹³³

advise me⁵⁴ to go to? Which of those countries is the most pleasant?
 conseiller ¹⁶⁸ ²⁰³ plus agréable?

* See note * p. 281.

† When the French speak of an action which they are on the point of doing, they do not use the future as the English do; they express *Shall, Will* by the *present* tense of the verb *Aller*, to go; je vais, tu vas, il va, nous allons, &c. with the following verb in the *infinitive*; so turn this sentence thus, *What are you going¹³⁵ to do now?* † Turn; *What reason have you to leave this country?*

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

You have seen them both; which do you like best? If you will
 voir¹²² ; -¹³³ aimer le mieux? ¹⁴⁴

come with me, I will go to which you like¹⁴². I will consider (of it).
⁵⁸ , ^{vouloir.} ^{penser} ^y ⁵⁴

(That is) the gentleman whose⁷⁵ house we have just²⁴⁴ passed by²⁰³.
²⁴⁷ ^{monsieur} ^{N.B.} ^{venons de} ^{passer} ^{près de}

It is the house in which we lived¹⁴⁰ formerly. Is it⁶⁵ the house which
⁶⁵ (v) ^{demeurer} ^{autrefois.} ¹³³

your father wanted²⁶⁰ to buy, and for which he offered¹³³ (so much⁸).
^{vouloir} ¹⁴⁰ ¹⁷² ^{acheter,} ^{a offert} ^{tant} ^{N.B.}

money? Yes, it is. Do you know that young lady? Yes, I do.⁷⁰
^{argent?} ^{Oui,} ⁷⁰ - ¹³³ * (bb) ^{N.B.}

Who is she? Whose daughter is she? She is married²⁹. Whose
^{marie.} ^{N.B.}

wife is she? Whom is she married to? She is the wife of that
^{femme} ¹⁵⁸ ²⁰³ ⁶⁵ (bb)

gentleman whom we were speaking of. I know whose daughter she
¹⁵⁵ ²⁰³ *

is. I know whose relations they are. Whose handkerchief is this
 * ^{parent} ^{mouchoir}

which I have found on the staircase? I do not know whose it is.
^{trouver sur} ^{escalier?} - * ⁶²

I do not know whom it belongs to. What shall I do (with it)?
 - * ^{appartenir} ²⁰³ ^{faire} ^{en} ⁵⁴

Take it⁵⁵ back to the place in which you found¹³⁶ it. Which door
^{Remettre} ⁶² - ^{endroit} (v) ^{avez trouvé} ⁵⁵ ^{porte}

must I go through? Which of these doors must I go through?
¹⁸¹ ¹³³ ^{passer} ^{par} ²⁰³ ¹⁸¹ ¹³³ ²⁰³

Go through which you like¹⁴². Have you heard what I said¹³⁶ to
^{Passer} ^{voudrez.} ^{entendre} ^{ai dit} (o)

you? No, what is it? The man you trust to deceives you. The
⁵⁵ ¹⁹¹ , (y) ^{se fier} † ²⁰³ ^{tromper} ⁵⁴

company he keeps, is not honest. You do not know all the harm
^{compagnie} ^{fréquenter,} ^{honnête.} - * ^{mal}

he does you. I do not¹⁸² know what to do. I wish²²¹ you would tell
^{faire} ⁵⁴ - ^{N.B.} * ¹⁷² ^{faire.} ¹⁰⁰ ^{vouloir}

me what I must do. You do not know what a disagreeable situation
⁵⁴ ¹⁸¹ - * ²⁰ ^{désagréable}

I am in. What must I do? Do what I told you. I do not see what
²⁰⁸ ¹⁸¹ ¹³³ ^{Faire} ¹³⁶ ⁵⁵ -

you can do better. If you had believed me, what you complain of
 (kk) ^{de mieux.} ^{aviez} ⁵⁵ , ^{se plaindre} † ²⁰³

would not have happened. I am sorry for what has happened to you.
^{être} ²³⁸ ^{arriver.} ^{fâché} ²⁰⁰ ²³⁸ (o)

* See page 140, 152, the difference between *Savoir* and *Connaitre*. † See *reflective verbs*, p. 114.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUN.

who told³⁶ me that a friend of ours is dead. Is not Mrs A.
à dit ⁵⁵ (bb) N.B. mourir. Madame ¹³⁴
 a relation of yours? A son of hers is dead. A cousin of mine has
parente
 married²⁶¹ a daughter of hers, but she is no⁸ relation of mine. They
épouser N.B. ¹⁹⁰ N.B.
 are neighbours of ours. I am going to dine with an aunt of theirs.
voisin ¹⁵⁵ aller ¹⁷² tante

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.*

Your mother and mine are gone¹⁵⁸ to (take²⁶³ a walk) in our fields;
aller ¹⁷² N.B. ²¹³ champ;
 Let us go and (take a²⁶³ walk) in yours. Is not that house yours?
 - - (nn) N.B. (bb) ¹³⁴
 No, it is not ours; it is my uncle's. I should have taken it⁵⁵ for
¹⁹¹ , ⁶² ; ⁶² oncle. † prise ⁶² pour
 yours. Ours is not so fine as his, and his is better situated than
⁴³ ⁴² (b) p.72. situé ¹⁵⁸
 ours. Let us go (this way); I want to call at a friend's of mine.
 - - par ici; ²⁶⁰ ²⁶⁵ ²⁰⁸ une amie
 I think she is a friend of yours too. Who? Mrs. A. She is an
²²¹ ⁶⁵ aussi. Madame ⁶⁵
 old acquaintance of ours, but she is no friend of mine. I do not
ancienne † *connaissance* ¹⁹⁰ -
 like her. She is incessantly¹⁸⁴ talking of herself, or of some relation
aimer ⁵⁴ - sans cesse ¹⁵⁵ elle-même, ⁹⁵ parent
 of hers. Let us walk into this room. What a pretty work²⁵ bag
 - - Entrer ²¹³ (bb) ⁸³ ²⁰ joli ouvrage sac²⁵
 you have got there. Is it yours? No, it is not mine; it is my
²⁷⁰ là. ⁶² ¹⁹¹ , ⁶² ; ⁶²
 sister's. This⁸⁸ is mine. Hers is (very much) like²⁰² yours. Hers
 † N.B. - fort ¹⁸⁴ ressembler au
 is not so pretty as mine. How long¹⁸⁶ have you had yours?
⁴³ ⁴² Combien y a-t-il que vous avez ||
 I got¹⁹⁶ mine about the same time that my sister got hers. Yours
ai eu vers tems ¹³⁶
 looks²⁵³ better than hers. Yes, because I take more care⁸ of my
avoir apparence ³³ que , prendre *soin* N.B.
 clothes than she does of hers. (What is the matter with) your
habit ⁴⁷ faire Qu' est-ce qu' a ²⁸¹ -
 neighbour? A sister of his is dead. She went¹⁸⁷ (a few days ago) to
voisin ? mort, ¹⁵⁸ aller il y a quelques jours ¹⁷²
 see a child of hers who is at a relation of ours in the country,
²⁰⁸ ²³⁰ ,
 and she died¹⁸⁶ there. You have got a handkerchief of mine. A
est mort ¹⁵⁸ y ⁵⁵ ²⁷⁰ mouchoir

* See note * p. 281 † See note (o) p. 88. ‡ Put this adjective before the noun. || See § p. 353

POSSESSIVE PRONOUN.

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

handkerchief of yours! I have no handkerchief of yours. I have
 none but what are¹⁴⁵ mine. What! is this¹³⁴ yours? Yes, it is mine.
pas ¹⁹³ *soient* ⁶³ ! ⁸³ N.B. ⁶²
 You are greatly mistaken: It is not yours; it is my mother's.
 - *fort* ¹³¹ *se tromper* : ⁶² ⁶² *

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN.

88. The demonstrative³² pronouns *celui, celle, ceux, celles*, THIS, THAT; *ceux, celles*, THESE, THOSE must be of the same gender and number as the
*démonstratif*²³ *THIS, THAT;*
, THESE, THOSE *devoir être* *genre* *nombre* *que*
 noun to which they relate; This steeple is not so high as that of St.
⁷⁶ ⁶² *se rapporter*; (*bb*) *clocher* ⁴² *haut* ⁴²
 Paul. This church is larger than that which we have just²⁴⁴ passed
 (*bb*) *église* *grande*⁴¹ ⁷⁶ *venons de* *passer*
 by²⁰³. These trees are finer⁴¹ than those which are in your park.
près de (*bb*) *arbre* *beau* ⁷⁴ *parc*.

N. B. Observe that *celui, celle, ceux, celles* do not express that
Observer (*bb*) N.B. *exprimer la*
 local³² distinction which is implied in the words THIS, THESE; THAT,
de lieu ⁷⁴ *renfermé*¹⁵⁰ *THIS, THESE; THAT,*
 THOSE; therefore, if you wish to make that distinction in french,
THOSE; *c'est pourquoi,* *vouloir*¹⁷² *faire* (*bb*) *en* ,
 (you must¹⁸¹) add to these words, *ci* to denote the nearest⁴⁴ object, and
il faut N.B. *ajouter* (*bb*) , ¹⁷⁰ *désigner* *près*³² ⁷ ,
Là to denote the remotest; This¹³ steeple is not so high as that. That¹³
¹⁷⁰ *éloigné*⁴⁴ ; N.B. ⁴² N.B.
 church is much larger than this. These¹³ trees are finer than those.
beaucoup ⁴¹ N.B. ⁴¹
 But *ci, là*, are not requisite, when the demonstrative pronoun is fol-
nécessaire, ³²
 lowed by a noun or by a relative pronoun; as, This gown is prettier⁴¹
suivre ²⁰⁰ ²⁰⁰ ³² ; , (*bb*) *robe* *joli*²⁹
 than that of your sister. This is not so fine as that which I shewed you.
⁴³ *belle* ⁴² *ai montrée*.⁵⁵

89. Sometimes THIS, THAT are used without reference to a noun
THIS, THAT - *s'employer* *rapport*
 expressed, but imply the word THING understood; then they (are
exprimé, *renfermer* *THING* *sous-entendu;* *alors* ⁶² -
 expressed), THIS by *ceci*; THAT by *cela*; Give me this. What will
s'exprimer, *THIS* ; *THAT* ; ¹⁷³
 you do with that? Take this. Let that alone. I will take this
faire de *Prendre* *Laisser* - ‡

* See note (o) page 88.

† Repeat of the same.

‡ See note † page 312.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN.

RECAPITULATORY *exercice on the foregoing rules.**

Do you hear that man? He is scolding¹⁵⁵ that woman who has
 - ¹³³ *entendre* † - *gronder*

been beating those children. Look at that house. Is not that a
¹⁵⁵ *battu* *Regarder* ²⁰¹ *N'est-ce pas là*

good house? Yes, it is a good house, but this is a better²⁹ one.
²⁹ , ⁶⁵ , (b) p. 72. †

Nay! I think that is better. Those rooms seem to me to be
Oh non! *penser* ²²¹ (b) p. 72. *paraître* (o) ⁵⁴ - -

larger⁴¹ than these; besides, that is much better situated than this.
grand ²⁹ ; *outré cela*, (b) p. 72. *situé* ¹⁵⁶

I do not see that. I think this is as pleasantly situated as that. Do
 - *voir* ²²¹ ⁴³ *agréablement* ¹⁵⁸ ⁴³ -

you admire those flowers? What flowers? Those that⁷⁴ we see in that
¹³³ *admirer* *fleur?* ⁸² (m) p. 82.

garden before that house. How do you call this? This is a poppy,
devant *Comment* - ¹³³ *appeler* *pavot*,

and that is a marigold. I do not like that kind of flowers; I like
souci. - *aimer* *sorte* ⁸ ;

those that⁷⁴ have a pleasant smell. What do you think of these? Oh,
 (m) p. 82. *agréable* ³² *odeur.* ⁸³ - *penser* *Oh,*

I like these better than those. These smell sweet. The action of
 (b) p. 72. *ont une douce odeur.* *action*

Virginius sacrificing his daughter, is as strong and more pure than
Virginius *sacrifier* , ⁴³ *fort* ²⁹ *pur* ²⁹

that of Brutus condemning his son; nevertheless this is glorious²⁹
Brutus *condamner* ; *néanmoins* *glorieux* (g)

and that is not. Virginius secured only the honour of his family;
⁷⁰ *savait* *seulement* *'honneur* *famille;*

Brutus saved that of the laws and of the country. (There was) much⁸
savait *loi* *patrie.* *Il y avait* *N.B.*

pride in the action of Brutus, perhaps there was nothing but pride;
orgueil , *peut-être* *n'y* ²¹⁵ *avait-il* - *que* ⁹ ;

there was in that of Virginius only honesty and courage; but this did¹⁹⁷
¹⁹⁷ *honnêteté* ⁹ ; *faire*

(every thing) for his family, that did¹⁹⁷ every thing, or seemed¹⁹⁷ to
¹⁰⁷ *pour* , *faire* ¹⁰⁷ , *ou sembler* ¹⁷²

do every thing for Rome, and Rome, which considered¹³⁵ the action of
faire , *a considéré*

Virginius as that of an honest man and of a good father, consecrated
comme *honnête* , *a* ¹³⁰ *consacré*

the action of Brutus as that of an hero; is not that just?
comme *héros;* ¹³¹ *juste?*

* See note * page 231.

† Read note (bb), p. 217, before you write this exercise.

‡ If you express *This* by the pronoun, you must leave out *a* and *one*; but you may express *This* by *Voici*, rule 247; then you express *a* by *une*, and *one* by *en*, before *Voici*; thus, *En voici une &c.*

INDEFINITE PRONOUN.*

90. When the words ONE, WE, THEY, PEOPLE, are used indefinitely, *Quand* *ONE, WE, THEY, PEOPLE, s'employer* (dans *un sens indéfini,*) i. e. without reference to any particular³² person, they *rapport* *quelque en particulier* *personne,* are expressed by *ON*; but though *ON* represents WE, THEY, PEOPLE, *'exprimer* (ii) *N.B.* *quoique* *représenter* *WE, THEY, PEOPLE,* which are plural, it always requires the verb in the third person *plurier, il* ¹⁸⁴ *demander* *à* *troisième* singular; People are spreading¹⁵⁵ strange¹⁰ reports. They say that *au singulier;* - *faire*¹²⁵ *courir* *étrange* *bruit* . *dire* (bb) *N.B.* we have been beaten. Who says so? They say so. People say so. *neus* *battre*¹⁵³. *le*⁵⁴ *51* (You¹⁸¹ must not) believe every thing that people say. *Il* *N.B.* *ne faut pas* *croire* *tout* *ce* *que*

91. All²⁹ indefinite³² expressions like these⁸⁶, IT IS THOUGHT, *Tout indéfini* ³⁰ *7* *semblables à* *N.B., IT IS THOUGHT,* IT IS SAID, &c. are also expressed by *ON*, by changing the verb (from *IT IS SAID, &c.* - ¹⁰² *s'exprimer* *par* , (hh) *changeant* its) passive sense into the active; It is thought that (there will be) *du passif* - *en* - *actif*; † *penser* (bb) *N.B.* *il y aura* a peace. It is said that the preliminaries are signed. It will soon¹⁸⁴ *- paix.* (bb) *N.B.* *préliminaire* *signer*¹⁵⁸. *bientôt* be known if it be true. It was asserted yesterday on the exchange. ⁺ *si cela* ²¹⁷ *vrai.* † *assurait* *hier* *à* *bourse.*

92. English³² passive verbs used indefinitely are generally¹⁸³ changed *Anglais* ²⁹ ³² *7* *employés* - *ordinairement se changer* into their active signification in french, and take *ON* for nominative; *dans* ³² *en* , *prendre* ; but by changing thus the sense of the verb, the noun or pronoun (hh) *ainsi* , which is the nominative of the verb in english, becomes its¹⁷ object in ⁷⁴ *en* , *devenir* *en*⁵⁴ *en* french; How can that be believed, when such great preparations for ; *pouvoir* ⁸⁰ † *croire,* ¹⁰ *si* ³³ *préparatif* war (are going on)? I was told yesterday that it has been resolved ⁷ *guerre* ¹⁵⁵ *faire* - † ¹³⁷ (bb) *N.B.* † *resolu* to (carry on) the war. Do you know if the letters have been received ¹⁰⁸ *continuer* † *reçu* which (were expected) by the last²⁹ mail? They have not been received ⁷⁴ *attendait* ¹⁴⁰ *dernier poste?* † *reçues* ¹⁵⁹

* Though in point of order, this is the proper place for these pronouns, yet as they are easy, and of less consequence than the other exercises which follow them; not to break the chain of the most useful rules, I would advise the learner, after having read the rules on the *indefinite pronouns*, page 218, and following, and written rules 90, 91 and 92, to pass over the rest of the rules and go to the exercise on the *verbs*, the knowledge of which is necessary to have a complete idea of the language. The rest of this exercise may be written after all the other exercises.

† A *Passive* verb is made *Active*, by leaving out the verb *be*, and making the past participle into a verb of the same tense and person as the auxiliary verb is; as *It is thought*; turn, *One thinks*. *It has been said*; turn, *One has said*.

INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

yet¹⁸⁵. They are expected to-day. Somebody has been sent to know
N. B. * attendre aujourd'hui. 95 * envoyé pour

why they have not been brought sooner. We have been much deceived.
pourquoi * apportées tôt. 41 * fort trompés.

93. ONESELF, HIMSELF used indefinitely, and ITSELF after a pre-
ONESELF, HIMSELF dans un sens indéfini, ITSELF
 position are expressed by *Soi*; Let²⁴⁸ every one think of himself.
- s'exprimer † par ; Que 105 penser 200

Every one for himself, and god for all. That is harmless in itself.
, , tous 89 innocent de

Vice is odious of itself. The earth contains all seeds ⁷ in itself.
7 odieux terre contenir 23 semence en

94. SOME repeated in a sentence of two parts, is, in the first part
SOME répété phrase partie, , 29

les uns, in the second part, *les autres*; Some like one thing, some
, 23 , ; aimer ,

like⁷⁰ another. Some will have it one way, some will have it another.
en aimer 174 54 d'une manière, 174 54 d'une autre.

95. SOMEBODY is *quelqu'un*; Somebody has told me so⁵⁵. I heard¹³⁵ it
SOMEBODY ; dit le entendre 55
 from somebody. I expect somebody. Somebody will call upon me soon¹⁸³.
attendre 266 bientôt. N. B.

96. SOME, ANY, FEW used to denote a small quantity, or a small
SOME, ANY, FEW employés 169 désigner petit 29 quantité,

number of the substance (spoken of,) are expressed by *quelqu'un*,
nombre (dont on parle,) - s'exprimer † ,

quelqu'une, *quelques uns*, *quelques unes*, agreeably to the gender and
, , suivant -

number of the noun to which they relate; Have you seen any of my
8 76 se rapporter ; vu

flowers? Will you have some (of them)? I will take a few (of them).
fleur ? 174 en 54 † prendre

97. NOBODY, NOT ANY BODY, is expressed by *personne*; NOBODY
NOBODY, NOT ANY BODY - s'exprimer † NOBODY

WHATEVER by *qui que ce soit*; these two words require *ne* before
WHATEVER ; (bb) not demander avant

the verb which attends them; Nobody likes that woman. That
accompagner 51 ; aimer (bb) (bb)

woman likes nobody. Do not tell it to any body. Have you met
- dire 57

nobody? Has nobody met you? I have not met any body whatever.
134 rencontré

* See † p. 313.

† See N. B. under note (ii) p. 235.

† See note † p. 313.

INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

98. SOMETHING is expressed by *quelque chose*; I feel something
SOMETHING - *s'exprimer* * *par* ;
 that hurts me. I have something curious to tell you. Is not that
⁷⁴ *blessé* ⁵⁴ (cc) *curieux* à ⁵⁴ *N'est-ce pas là* ;
 something wonderful? Why do you not apply to something?
 (cc) *étonnant*? - ¹³³ *s'appliquer* (ii) †

99. NOTHING, NOT ANY THING is expressed by *rien*; NOTHING
NOTHING, NOT ANY THING - *s'exprimer* * ; NOTHING
 WHATEVER by *quoique ce soit*; these words require *ne* before the verb
WHATEVER ; *demander*
 which attends them; I will give you nothing. You have not done
⁷⁴ *accompagner* ⁵⁴ ; *donner* ⁵⁴ *fait*
 any thing to-day. He applies to nothing whatever. He does not
aujourd'hui. *s'appliquer* †
 mind any thing whatever. I would not part (with it) for any thing.
faire attention à *se défaire* † *en* ⁵⁹

N. B. *quelqu'un, quelque chose, personne, rien* followed by an adjective
 , , , *suivi* ²⁰⁰ *adjectif*
 or by a past³⁹ participle, require *de* before that² adjective or participle ;
²⁰⁰ *passé* *participe,* *demander* ²⁰⁰ (bb) ³
 Somebody come. Something lost. Nobody hurt. Nothing done.
venu. *perdu.* *blessé.* *fait.*

100. NONE, NOT ANY followed by a noun or a pronoun is expressed
NONE, NOT ANY *suivi* ²⁰⁰ ²⁰⁴ - *s'exprimer* *
 by *aucun, masc.*; *aucune, fem.* and requires *ne* before the verb; None
par , ; *demander* ²⁰⁶ ;
 of the ladies whom we expected will come. We shall not see any
 † ⁷⁴ *attentions* ¹⁷³ *venir* *voir*
 (of them) to-day. Do you know any of them? No, I do⁷⁰ not.
^{en} ⁵⁴ *aujourd'hui.* - ⁹⁶ ¹⁹¹ *N. B.*

101. NONE used absolutely, *i. e.* without reference to a noun, is
NONE *employé* , *rapport* , -
 expressed by *nul*, and NOT ONE by *pas un, masc. pas une, fem.*;
s'exprimer * *par* , *NOT ONE* , ;
 these words are synonymous to *personne*, and require *ne* before the
synonimes *de* . *demander*
 verb; None is sheltered from censure. None can boast (of it.)
 ; *à l'abri* ? *pouvoir se vanter* *en* ⁵⁹
 Many⁸ people called themselves his friends, not one assisted him.
^{N. B.} ²²⁹ *disaient* *se* ⁵⁴ , *aider* ¹³⁷ *lui* ⁵⁴

102. EACH is sometimes¹⁸³ joined to a noun in the same manner
EACH - *quelquefois* *se joindre* * *de*

* See N. B. under note (ii) page 225.

† See reflexive verbs, page 114.

‡ Speaking of *young ladies*, we should say *demoiselles*; speaking of *married, or grown up ladies*, we should say *dames*.

INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

as an adjective, and is expressed by *chaque* for both genders; Each
que , - s'exprimer* *par* *les deux* ;
 horse carried two men. Each woman had a bundle in each hand.
porter ¹⁴⁰ *paquet dans* *main.*

103. EACH is sometimes joined to a noun by the preposition *OF*,
EACH - *se joindre** *OF*,
 or refers to a noun which has been mentioned before¹⁸³; then it
se rapporter *dont* ⁹² *fait mention déjà*; N.B. *alors il*
 is expressed by *chacun*, masc. *chacune*, fem; each of these men has a
 - s'exprimer* , , , ; (bb)
 shilling a day; or these men have each a shilling a day. Each of these
sheling *par jour*; (bb)
 women carried two bundles; or these women carried two bundles each.
porter ;

104. EVERY followed by a noun requires a distinction. If EVERY is
EVERY *suivi* *d'* *demander* *EVERY* -
 used¹²⁵ to denote individuality, it is expressed by *chaque*; Every
*s'employer** ¹⁰⁹ *désigner des individus,* *il - s'exprimer** ;
 science (i. e. each science) has its principles. Every season has its
ses *principe.* *EVERY* *saison*
 attractions. Every plant has its properties. If EVERY is used to denote
charme. *plante* *propriété.* ¹⁶⁹
 a totality, it is expressed by *tout*, masc. *route*, fem; Every man lies,
un tout, - s'exprimer* , , , ;
 (i. e. all men lie) but every man is not a liar. Every woman is frail, but
 - *menteur.* *fragile,*
 every woman does not yield. I am found at every hour of the day.
 - *succomber.* ⁹² *à* ²³³

105. EVERY ONE requires the same distinction as EVERY. If, by
EVERY ONE *demander* *que* *EVERY.*
 EVERY ONE, you mean¹²⁵ EVERY ONE taken individually, it is expressed
EVERY ONE, *vouloir dire* *EVERY ONE* *pris* *individuellement,* - s'exprimer*
 by *chacun*; Every one has a good opinion of himself, (i. e. each
 ; ²⁴ *soi,*
person.) Every one thinks himself to be²³⁹ in the right.
penser - † - *avoir* - ²⁴ *raison.*

If, by EVERY ONE, you mean¹²⁵ EVERY ONE taken collectively, it
EVERY ONE *vouloir dire* *EVERY ONE* *pris* *collectivement,*
 is expressed by *tous*, masc. by *routes*, fem; I have lost every one
 - s'exprimer* , , , ; *perdre*
 of my books, (i. e. all my books.) I had won twenty guineas, and
 - *avais* *gagner* ,
 I lost every one of them. Every one of the robbers were taken.
 - ⁵⁴ *voleur* ¹³⁷ *prendre.*

* See N. B. note (ii) page 235.

† This sentence can not be expressed literally.

INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

106. EVERY BODY is *tout le monde*; Every body says so. She
EVERY BODY ; *dire le*⁵⁴
 speaks ill of every body. It⁶² is impossible to please every body.
dire du mal N.B. ¹⁶⁸ *plaire*²⁰²

107. EVERY THING is *tout*; Every thing is for the best. You
EVERY THING ; *mieux*.
 complain of every thing. I am prepared against every thing.
se plaindre * *prêt* à

108. ANY BODY, ANY ONE is sometimes used in the sense of
ANY BODY, ANY ONE - ¹⁸³ *s'employer* †
 SOME BODY, SOME ONE, and is expressed by *quelqu'un*; Is any body
SOME BODY, SOME ONE, - *s'exprimer* † ; ¹⁸⁴
 come? Have you met any body? Can any body do what I do?
venu? *Pouvoir* ¹³⁴ *faire* ⁸⁴

109. ANY BODY, ANY ONE is sometimes used in the sense of
ANY BODY, ANY ONE - ¹⁸³ *s'employer* †
 EVERY BODY, and is expressed by *tout le monde*, or *il n'y a personne*
EVERY BODY, - *s'exprimer* † ,
qui ne, with this difference only, that *tout le monde* requires the
 , (bb) , (bb)N.B. *demander*
 following verb in the indicative, and *il n'y a personne qui ne* requires
*qui suit*⁸² à *indicatif*, and *il n'y a personne qui ne* requires
 it (in the) subjunctive; Any body (or *every body*) may¹⁷⁸ do that.
⁵⁴ *au* *subjonctif*; *pouvoir faire* ⁸⁹

Any body will (or *there is nobody but* will) shew you the way.
montrer *chemin*.

110. With a verb denoting admiration or doubt, or after a compara-
qui désigne ⁷ ⁷*doute*, *compara-*
 tive, ANY BODY is expressed by *personne*, but without *ne*, because
tif, *ANY BODY* - *s'exprimer* , ,
personne attended by *ne*, means NO BODY; Did ever any body do
accompagné de , *signifier NO BODY* ¹³⁶ *jamais* ¹³⁴
 such a thing! Yes; and you can do it as well as any body.
²⁸ (kk) ⁵⁴ ⁴³ ⁴³

111. ANY THING is sometimes used in the sense of SOMETHING,
ANY THING - ¹⁸³ *s'employer* † *SOMETHING*,
 and is expressed by *quelque chose*; (Is there) any thing in the bottle?
 - *s'exprimer* † ; ²⁴⁶ *bouteille?*
 Have you heard any thing? (Is there) any thing new to-day?
apprendre ²⁴⁶ (cc) *nouveau*

112. Sometimes ANY THING is used in the sense of EVERY THING,
ANY THING - *s'employer* † *EVERY THING*,
 and is expressed by *tout*; He is fit for any thing (or *every thing*).
 - *s'exprimer* † ; *propre* ²⁰⁰

* See a reflexive verb, page 114.

† See N. B. note (ii) page 235.

INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

I will do any thing to serve him. I prefer this to any thing.
faire ¹⁷⁰ *servir* *préférer* ⁸⁹

113. With a verb denoting admiration or doubt, ANY THING is
qui désigne ⁷ ⁷ *doute*, ANY THING -
 generally expressed by *rien*; (is there) any thing finer⁴¹ than civility!
¹⁸³ *s'exprimer* * ; ²⁴⁶ (*cc*) *beau* ⁷ *civilité*!

I doubt that you will make¹⁴⁵ any thing good (of it.)
douter que faire (*cc*) *bon* *en* ⁵⁴.

114. WHOEVER, WHOSOEVER is sometimes joined to a substantive,
WHOEVER, *WHOSOEVER* *joint* *substantif*,
 or relates to a substantive previously mentioned, and is expressed
se rapporter *dont on a déjà fait mention*, - *s'exprimer* *
 by *quelque*, *quelque*, masc; *celleque*, *cellesque*, fem; these words
 , , , , , , ; (bb)
 require the verb (in the) subjunctive, and if the nominative of the
demander *au* *subjonctif*, *nominatif*
 verb is a noun, it must be placed after the verb; Whoever that²
 , ⁶² *devoir* (*kk*) - *se placer* * ; (bb)
 man be, he is acting wrong; or that man is acting wrong, whoever
 , *agir* ¹³⁵ *mal*; ¹⁵⁵ ,
 he be. Whoever those children be, they are ill¹⁸³ behaved.
 (bb) , - *mal se comporter* ¹²⁵

115. Sometimes WHOEVER, WHOSOEVER, WHOMSOEVER implies the
WHOEVER, *WHOSOEVER*, *WHOMSOEVER* *renfermer*
 word PERSON understood, and is expressed by *qui que ce soit*, followed
PERSON , - *s'exprimer* * , *sui*
 by *qui*, *que*, or *dont*, which requires the following verb (in the) sub-
²⁰⁰ , , , ⁷⁴ *demander* *qui suit* ³² *au*
 junctive; Whoever speaks to you, you ought to answer civilly.
 ; (o) ⁵⁴, ¹⁷² *devoir* *répondre* *civilement*.
 Whomsoever you apply to, they⁹⁰ will tell you the same thing.
s'adresser ²⁰³, *N.B.* *dire* *même chose*.

116. Sometimes WHOEVER, WHOMSOEVER is used in the sense of
WHOEVER, *WHOMSOEVER* - *s'employer* *
 EVERY BODY, then it is expressed by *touts ceux*, followed by *qui* or
EVERY BODY, *alors* - *s'exprimer* * , *sui* ²⁰⁰
que; Whoever (or *every body who*) is found out at night is stopped.
 ; ⁹² *trouver dehors la nuit* ⁹² *arrêter* †
 Bring with you whomsoever (or *every person*) you meet¹⁴².
Amener *rencontrerez*.

117. WHATEVER, WHATSOEVER joined to a substantive requires a
WHATEVER, *WHATSOMEVER* *joint* *substantif* *demande*
 distinction. If the substantive to which WHATEVER, WHATSOEVER
⁷⁸ *WHATEVER*, *WHATSOMEVER*

* See N. B. note (ii) page 235.

† Turn: one stops whomsoever one finds out at night.

INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

is joined, is the nominative of a verb, it is expressed by *quelque*
 , nominatif , - s'exprimer * par
quelque, masc. *quelleque*, *quellesque*, f.; which requires the verb (in the)
 , , ; demander au
 subjunctive; and if the nominative is a noun, it is placed after the verb;
 subjonctif; ,⁶² - se placer *

Whatever this² work be, it is too dear. Whatever his terms be, I shall
 (bb) ouvrage ,⁶² trop conditions ,
 agree to them. Do not trust to their promises, whatever they be.
 accepter - ⁵⁴ - se fier † à promesse, ⁶²

If the substantive to which **WHATEVER**, **WHATSOEVER** is joined, is
⁷⁶ **WHATEVER**, **WHATSOEVER** ,
 the object of a verb, it is expressed by *quelque*, sing. *quelques*, plur;
 objet , ⁶² - s'exprimer * , ; , ;
 these words require *que* after the substantive, and the verb (in the)
 (bb) demander , au
 subjunctive; Whatever business you have, you should not neglect your
 ; affaire , ¹⁷⁶ négliger
 friends. Whatever terms they propose, I shall agree to them.
 conditions proposer, accepter - ⁵⁴

118. Sometimes **WHATEVER**, **WHATSOEVER** implies the word **THING**
WHATEVER, **WHATSOEVER** renfermer **THING**
 understood; then it is expressed by *quoique ce soit*, followed by *qui*,
 ; alors - s'exprimer * , suivi ²⁰⁰ ,
que or *dont*, which requires the verb (in the) subjunctive; Whatever I
 , ⁷⁴ demander verbe au ;
 do, I am always scolded. Whatever he undertakes, he never succeeds.
 faire, gronder. entreprendre, ¹⁹⁰ réussir.

119. **WHATEVER**, **WHATSOEVER** is sometimes used in the sense of
WHATEVER, **WHATSOEVER** - s'employer *
ANY THING, or **EVERY THING**, then it is expressed by *tout ce qui*,
ANY THING, ou **EVERY THING**, alors - s'exprimer *
 nom; *tout ce que*, obj; Take whatever you think¹⁴² proper. He grants
 ; , ; Prendre croirez à propos. accorder
 her¹⁶² whatever she desires. He approves of whatever she does.
 (f) p. 79. désirer. approuver ²⁰¹ faire.

120. **OTHER** is *Autre*; I see another man coming¹⁵³. I have found
OTHER ; voir qui vient. N.B. trouver
 another flower. (Here is²⁴⁷) another. (There are) a great many others.
 fleur. En ⁷⁰ voici En ⁷⁰ ²⁴⁷ - beaucoup d'

121. **EACH OTHER**, **ONE ANOTHER** is expressed by *l'un l'autre*,
EACH OTHER, **ONE ANOTHER** - s'exprimer *
une l'autre; *les uns les autres*, *les unes les autres*, agreeably to the
 ; , suivant -

* See N. B. note (ii) page 235.

† See imperative of a reflexive verb, page 114.

INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

gender and number of the noun to which it relates; Fire and water
 3 76 se rapporter; Feu 7 eau 7

destroy each other. These women hate one another. Observe
 se détruire (bb) se haïr Observer

that the preposition which comes before EACH OTHER, ONE ANOTHER,
 (bb) N.B. venir EACH OTHER, ONE ANOTHER,

must be placed between the two words *l'un l'autre, l'une l'autre, &c.*
 devoir - se placer entre , ,

See those two women; they are jealous of each other; yet they can not
 ; jaloux²⁹(g) ;

do²⁸⁰ without one another. These people have fallen upon one another.
 se passer de (bb) gens²³⁸ tombé¹³⁸

122. BOTH, speaking of two individual³² objects, is expressed by
 BOTH, parler individuel²⁹ , - s'exprimer

l'un et l'autre, or rous deux, masc; by *l'une et l'autre, or routes deux,*
 , ou , ; , ou ,

fem; Your brothers are²⁴¹ both very well. I saw them both last night.
 ; se porter voir²³⁵

You know my sisters; they will both be here to-night. In speaking
 ; être²³⁵ En parler

of a greater number of individuals, but considered as two parties,
 41 individu, considérés comme ,

BOTH is expressed by *les uns et les autres, masc;* *les unes et les autres, f;*
 BOTH - s'exprimer , ; , ;

The Russians and the Prussians have declared war against us; but
 Russe Prussien déclarer 7 guerre - 55 ;

we will beat both. Both will have reason to repent (of it.)
 battre lieu de se repentir en⁵⁹.

123. EITHER is *l'un ou l'autre, l'une ou l'autre; les uns ou les autres,*
 EITHER , ; ,

les unes ou les autres, agreeably to the gender and number of the noun;
 , suivant - 3 ;

Either of these men will do it. You may¹⁷⁸ speak to either. Take
 (bb) faire⁵⁴ pouvoir parler Prendre

either of these flowers. You may¹⁷⁸ have either of them.
 - (bb) fleur. pouvoir (kk) - -

124. NEITHER, NOT EITHER, *i. e.* EITHER with a negation, is express-
 NEITHER, NOT EITHER, EITHER - s'exprimer

ed by *ni l'un ni l'autre, ni l'une ni l'autre; ni les uns ni les*
 (ii) N.B. , ;

autres, ni les unes ni les autres, agreeably to gender and number;
 , suivant - 7 7 ;

these words require *ne* before the verb; Neither of them will study.
 (bb) demander ne ; - - 173 étudier.

Neither of these men can do it. I will not trust²⁰² either of them
 (bb) faire⁵⁴ 173 se fier à

INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.*

Do you know any of the ladies we have²⁴⁴ just passed? No; I
 - *connaître* †(s) *venir de passer?* ;
 know none (of them.) I have not seen any (of them) before.
*en*⁵⁴ *en*⁵⁵ ²⁰⁶ N.B.

I should like to get acquainted with some of them. I know the two
¹⁶⁹ *faire connaissance* ⁵⁸ †

last⁸⁹. Which of the two is the handsomest? They are both very
dernier. ⁸⁰ † *belle*⁴⁴? † *très*

handsome, and they have each a handsome fortune. You may¹⁷⁸
²⁹ , † *beau* *bien.* *pouvoir*

get acquainted with either of them, or with both, if you like. They
 (kk) - - , , *vouloir.* †

come here every summer. Every body is fond of them. Every one
ici *été.* - *aimer* || ⁵⁴

who knows them is fond of their company. They are very fond of
⁵⁴ - || - *compagnie.* † - *fort s'aimer* -

each other. They are always with one another. Are they married?
 † † *marier*¹⁵⁸?

No, neither of them is married, but I think they are both promised.
¹⁹¹ , † - - ¹⁵⁸ , ²²¹ † *promettre.*¹⁵⁸

I would give any thing I possess to be acquainted with them. You
 (s) *posséder*¹⁷⁰ *connu*²⁰⁰ ⁵⁸ †

may speak to either of them. Bring here every one of your books.
¹⁷⁸ (kk) † - - *Apporter ici*

Let²⁴⁸ every one of you shew me his exercise. Every one of you
Que *montrer*⁵⁴ *thème.* - -

will be punished. Can I do any thing for you? Yes, you can.
punir. *Pouvoir* *faire* *pour*⁵⁸ , ⁷⁰

You can help me as well as any body. Nobody is more capable
 (kk) *aider*⁵⁴ ⁴³ ⁷⁰

than you. I should like to buy something, but every thing is so
¹⁶⁹ *acheter* , *si*

dear now, that one can not get any thing. I should like to
à présent, (bb) N.B. *se procurer* ¹⁶²

have some of these flowers. Which do you think are the finest⁴⁴?
 (bb) ⁸⁰ † - ¹³³ *belle*²⁹?

Some say that these are the finest²⁹; some give the preference to
 (bb) N.B. ⁸⁹ N.B. ⁴⁴ ; *préférence*

those. These men relate both the same story, but neither of them
⁸⁸ N.B. (bb) *rappporter* *même* *histoire,* - -

believes that it⁶² is true. I do not believe either of them. They are
croire (bb) N.B. ¹⁴⁵ *vrai*²⁹. - - - ²³⁹

both wrong, whoever they be. Whosoever asks for me, tell him⁵⁸
tort, ²⁰¹ ⁵⁴ ¹⁶²

* See * p. 281. † See † p. 320. ‡ Mind the gender of the noun which this pronoun represents.
 † We have no other word to express the words *be fond of*, in french, but the verb *Aimer*, to like.

INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

RECAPITULATORY *exercice on the foregoing rules.*

that I am not at home. Whatever he writes, let me know it.
 (bb) N.B. au logis. faire N.B. savoir

Whatever is right, is not always approved. Whatever good is said of
 bien, approuver. bien

us, we are not told any thing new. Whatever your rank and riches
 dire (cc) nouveau. rang richesses

may be, or whatever rank and riches you have, do not be proud, if
 , - orgueilleux,

you will not (be disliked) by every body. No one ought to be a judge
 144 déplaire à devoir 172 23 juge

in his own cause. People often flatter themselves more than they should.
 213 propre 184 flatter se 54 47 178

Every one complains of his memory, but no one complains of his
 se plaindre

understanding. There would not be (so much) disorder seen in the
 esprit. tant N.B. désordre *

world, if youth had a good impression given it at first, and if care
 monde, jeunesse * d'abord,

was taken to form the mind of children as it ought to be. I have
 soin * 169 former esprit 7 comme devrait - -

just been told that Mr. A. is dead. Indeed? Yes, they say so.
 244 - dire En vérité? , le 54

He was invited to supper yesterday at Mrs. B.'s. They waited
 140 inviter 169 souper hier 208 Madame attendre

for him a long time, but seeing that he did not come, somebody was
 201 54 - tems, voir - 138 , -

sent to look for him; he could not be found any where; they
 envoyer 172 chercher 201 54 ; pouvoir † - trouver nulle part ;

have been seeking for him all night, and this morning he was
 - chercher 201 55 7 nuit, (bb) 234 -

found drowned in a pond, not far from Mrs. B.'s house. Every body
 136 noyer 213 étang, non loin de 25

is sorry (for it). Is it known how this accident happened? No,
 fâché en 55 - savoir comment (bb) arriver 238? 191,

nobody knows. It is supposed that he (lost his way) in the dark. He
 70 - s'imaginer s'égarer 137 213 obscurité.

is to be buried to-morrow. You will be expected at his funeral.
 242 enterrer demain. - attendre funéraires. (pl.)

You will go; will you not? I will not go, unless I am invited
 70 ; 232 70 , à moins que 195 - inviter

(to it.) You may be sure that they will invite you.
 63 178 (kk) sûr (bb) N.B. 54

* Turn this sentence thus: *One* would not see so much disorder in the world, if *one* gave at first a good impression to youth, and if *one* took care to form the mind of children as *one* should.

† Express *Not* by *Né* only, before the verb, as *Nulle* which comes after, supplies the place of *Pas* or *Point*.

VERB.

say your lesson first. It⁶² is they who will say their lessons first.
N.B. 52

129. If *qui* relates to several substantives of different persons, the
*se rapporter plusieurs substantif** ²⁹ ,
 verb agrees with the first³³ person in preference to the second, and
s'accorder ²⁹ *par préférence* ²⁹ ,
 with the second in preference to the third; It⁶² is you and I who will
²⁹ *par* ²⁹ ; N.B. 52
 begin. It⁶² is you and your brother who will (go out) first.
commencer. N.B. *sortir les premiers.*

130. When the collective³² substantives *la plupart, infinité, nombre,*
Quand collectif ²⁹ , , ,
quantité, troupe, multitude, are followed by another substantive, the verb
 , , , *suis* ²⁰⁰ , ,
 agrees with this last substantive; A great number of men perished.
s'accorder dernier ; ⁸ *périr.* ¹³⁷
 Most of the cavalry deserted. A crowd of people²²⁹ came to see them.
La plupart cavalerie désertier ¹³⁷. *foule* ⁸ *gens venir* ¹⁷²

131. The collective substantives *le quart, le tiers, la moitié* require
demander
 the verb in the third person singular; One fourth of the ships were
à au singulier; Le quart navire ¹³⁷
 taken or destroyed. One third of the crews deserted. One half of
prendre détruire. Le tiers équipage ¹³⁷ *La moitié*
 men do not think, and the other half know not¹⁹² what to think.
⁷ *penser,* *ne savoir* N.B. ⁸³ ¹⁷²

PLACING of the nominative with the verb.
Place ¹⁹ *nominatif* *verbe.*

132. When the sentence is expositive, i. e. when a question is not
phrase expositive, ⁹²
 asked, the nominative is placed before the verb; I study well. He
faire, - se placer ; *étudier*
 studies well. This boy studies well. You study well. They study well.
garçon †

But when the sentence is interrogative, (it is necessary) to consider
 , *il faut* ¹⁷² *considérer*
 whether the nominative of the verb is a noun or a pronoun.
^{si}

133. If, when a question is asked, the nominative of the verb is one
 , ⁹² *faire,*
 of the personal³² pronouns *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles, on,*
personnel ²⁹
 or *ce,* these words are placed in french, as the corresponding³² words
 , *mot - se placer † en* , *comme* *qui y correspondent*

* See note * page 205.

† See note (ce) page 233.

‡ See N. B. note (ii) page 235.

VERB.

are in english, immediately after the verb; Do I study well? Does
se placer , * ; *étudier*
 he study well? Do we study well? Do you study well? Do they study?

134. If, when the sentence is interrogative, the nominative of the
 , *quand* *phrase* ,
 verb is a noun, this noun is placed before the verb, the same as
 , (*bb*) - *se placer* † , *de même que*
 in expositive sentences; but (in order to) shew that a question
 213 29 32 7 ; 170 *faire voir* (*bb*) N.B.
 is asked, we⁹⁰ put after the verb one of the pronouns *il*, *Elle*, *ils*,
 92 *faire*, N.B. *mettre*
Elles, agreeably to the gender and number of the noun which is the
 , *suivant* - 3
 nominative of the verb; Does this boy study well? Does this girl
 ; (*bb*) *garçon* *fille*
 study well? Do these boys study well? Do these girls study well?
 (*bb*)
 Do any of them learn french? Is not the french language very
 96 58 7*français?* 29 32 *langue*
 difficult? Are your masters pleased²⁹ with you? Does your father
difficile? *content* N.B. 200
 often come to see you? Has your mother been here lately?
 184 172 *ici* *depuis peu?*

INDICATIVE MOOD.—Use¹⁹ of the tenses of the indicative.
Emploi *tems* 2 *indicatif.*

135. The present tense of the indicative is generally used in the
présent - 183 *s'employer* †
 same instances in french as in english; I like study. Study is the
cas *en* *que* ; 7*étude* 7 2
 food of the mind. But the past³² tenses require several distinctions
aliment 2 *esprit.* *passé* 29 *demande plusieurs*
 in french, which the corresponding³² tenses do not require in english;
 , *qui y correspondent* ;
 therefore pay particular³² attention to the following³² rules.
ainsi *faire une particulier* 29 *suivant* 29

136. If we⁹⁰ speak of an action past²⁹ without mentioning¹⁵⁴ the time
 N.B. *passé* N.B. *faire mention* *du tems*
 in which it 136 passed, or if we⁹⁰ mention a period, and²¹⁹ that
 76 62 *s'est passée,* N.B. *faire mention d'un période, †* *et* 220 (*bb*)
 period is not yet entirely elapsed, such as to-day, this morning,
soit *encore* *écoulé,* *tel* *que* *aujourd'hui,* *matin,*
 this week, this month, this year, &c. the action being past, and the
 (*bb*) , *mois,* 233 , *&c.* *étant* 158 ,

* See note * page 223.

† See N. B. note (ii) page 235.

‡ See note † page 224.

VERB.—INDICATIVE MOOD.

period being still present, we⁹⁰ make (the verb partake) both of the
encore , *N.B. faire* *participer le verbe* *et* ²²²

present and past time, by adding the past²⁰ participle of the verb
³*passé* - , (*hh*) *ajouter* ³² *N.B. participe*

expressing the action, to the present of the auxiliary³² verbs *avoir*,
qui exprime , *auxiliaire* ²⁹

TO HAVE, or *Être*, TO BE; as, When did you see Mr. A. ? I saw him
 , *ou* , ; , *Quand* * †

this morning. I met him as he was coming to town. He told me he
²³⁴ † *comme* ¹³⁸ ¹⁵⁵ ⁷ *dire* † ²²¹

was going to²⁰⁸ your house. Did you not see him ? No, I did⁷⁰ not. He was
¹³⁸ ¹⁵⁵ *N.B.* † , *N.B.* † †

at²⁰⁸ our house, but I was not in. He only¹⁸⁴ found my sister there,
N.B. , ¹⁴⁰ *y* ⁵⁴ § † *y* ⁵⁵,

and he would not stop. Did you hear that he was going to be mar-
vouloir ¶ *rester.* † ¹⁵⁵ ¹⁷² - *se ma-*

ried ? No, I did not ; (i. e. *hear*⁷⁰ *it.*) Who told you so ? His cousin
rier ? , † ; *N.B.* † ⁵⁵ *le* ⁵⁹ ¹⁴ *cousine* *f.*

told me so. I heard that he was going abroad. I shall
 † ⁵³ *le* ⁵⁹ † - ¹⁵⁵ *dans les pays étrangers.*

soon¹⁸⁴ know if it be true ; for, when he called this morning, he
bientôt ²¹⁷ ; *car,* *passer* ,

promised my sister that he would call again (as he goes back.)
 † ¹⁸² (*bb*) *N.B.* *repasser* - *en s'en retournant.*

137. If we⁹⁰ speak of an action past¹⁸⁷ in a period of time which is
N.B. *passé* ⁸

also entirely elapsed, such as yesterday, last³² week, last month, last
écoulé, *hier,* *dernier* ²⁹ ⁷ ³² ⁷ , ³³

year⁷, &c. then both the time and the action being past³¹, we⁹⁰ use the
²³³ , &c. *alors* *et* *passé* , *N.B.*

perfect tense of the verb ; Where did you dine yesterday ? I dined at
parfait ; *Où* *dîner* † ²⁰⁸

my mother's, and supped at my sister's. Did you not go to the play ?
 , *souper* ²⁰⁸ † *comédie* ?

Yes, I did⁷⁰. What play did they⁹⁰ act ? They⁹⁰ acted a new comedy.
 , *N.B.* ⁸² *pièce* † *N.B.* *jour* *N.B.* † *nouvelle comédie.*

How were you entertained ? I did not pay much⁸ attention to the
¹⁸⁵ † *amuser* ¹⁵⁸ ? † *faire* *N.B.*

play. I conversed all the while with a gentleman who sat¹⁴⁰ by me.
pièce. *parler* † *tems* *monsieur* *être* *près de* ⁵⁸

Did you not see me ? No ; I did⁷⁰ not. Where were you ? I was
 † ¹⁹¹ ; † *N.B.* *Où* ¹⁴⁰ ¹⁴⁰

(in the) pit. I did not stop long. I went home, where I read the play.
au *parterre.* † *rester* † *au logis,* † *pièce.*

* Turn ; when *have* you *seen* &c. † Turn ; I *have* *seen* him. † See note * page 225.
 † Turn ; he *has* *been* &c. § See note * page 275. ¶ Turn ; he *has* *not* *been* *willing*.

VERB.—INDICATIVE MOOD

138. Sometimes we⁹⁰ speak of an action that was passing, and which
Quelquefois N.B. *parler* 74 - *se passer* 143,
 consequently was incomplete at a period which we⁹⁰ mention²²⁵;
par conséquent 140 *imparfait* 29 *dont* N.B. *faire mention* ;
 then the period being past, and the action being at that time incom-
alors , (bb)
 plete, we⁹⁰ use the imperfect tense of the verb; What were you
 N.B. *employer* *imparfait* - ; 83
 doing when I came in? I was preparing myself to study a music
 155 *suis* 136 *entré?* 155 *me* 54 169 *musique*
 lesson. I was going to play a tune. I was trying to tune my instru-
 25 155 172 *air*, 155 *essayé* 168 *accorder*
 ment. Stop. You were doing it (the wrong way). You were spoiling
Arrêter, 155 54 *à rebours*, *gâter* 155
 it. They⁹⁰ were making (a great deal) of noise at²⁰⁸ your house last
 62 N.B. 155 *beaucoup* *bruit* N.B.
 night. Yes, we had some company. We were enjoying ourselves.
 235 , 9 *compagnie*, 155 *réjouir* *nous* 54

139. We⁹⁰ also¹⁸⁴ make use of the imperfect to denote that the
 N.B. *faire usage* 170 *désigner que*
 action (of which) we⁹⁰ are speaking has been habitual²⁹, or that it has
 74 N.B. - 155 *habituel*, (g) 62
 been reiterated; How did you spend your time, when you were in the
réitéré 158 ; 185 271 *le* *temps*, 140 *à*
 country? As soon as we were up, we walked in the garden till
 230 *Aussitôt que* 140 *levés*, *se promener* *jusqu'au*
 breakfast time; after breakfast we (sat at our work) till (twelve
déjeuné 23 ; *travailler* *jusqu'à*
 o'clock), and then we studied till dinner time. How did you spend
 236 , *alors* *dîné* 23 185 271
 your evenings? You had neither plays nor concerts to go to. Some
les 234 224 * *comédie* * - *où aller* †
 ladies and gentlemen in our neighbourhood often called upon us, or
 † *messieurs* *voisinage* 184 266 ,
 we called upon them, and we sometimes made a little concert, or we
 266 58 , 184 *faire* *petit* ,
 played at different games, but we generally¹⁸⁴ spent the evenings in
our *à* 29 32 *jeux*, *ordinairement* 271 234 169
 reading or in conversing. We spent our time very agreeably. †
lire 169 *converser*, 271 *le* *agréablement*.

* Do not put any article before the noun which follows *NI*.

† See note † page 232.

‡ By using the *Perfect* instead of the *Imperfect* in these instances, the sentence would be equally grammatical, but the idea would be very different. This difference will appear obvious in the following examples composed of the same words:

Quand j'ÉTAIS à Londres, j'ALLAIS à la comédie;
Quand je FUS à Londres, j'ALLAI à la comédie.

By the first of these expressions, people will understand that when I was in London, I used to go to the play; by the second they will understand that when I arrived at London, at a certain period either named or alluded to, I went to the play. Learners are very apt to confound these two tenses.

VERB—INDICATIVE MOOD.

140. Another very extensive use of the imperfect is in descriptions ;
 130 étendu³² usage imparfait²¹³ 7 ;
 for, whenever we⁵⁰ describe the state, place, situation, order or dis-
 car, toutes les fois que N.B. décrire² état, lieu,³ ordre,³
 position in which the beings (of which) we⁹⁰ speak were, in a time
 76 être⁷⁴ N.B. 140 , tems
 past, we⁹⁰ make use of the imperfect ; Where were you yesterday ? I
 , N.B. ; Où hier ?
 called¹³⁷ at²⁰⁸ your house, but you were not in. I was not well. I had
 286 N.B. , y⁵⁴ 241
 a head-ache ; and as I could not study, I went¹⁹⁷ to walk in the
 24 mal à la tête ; comme , aller 172 263 213
 fields. There had been a little⁸ rain. The plants were so fresh, the
 Il 240 un peu N.B. pluie. si fraîche⁸²,
 trees were so green, and formed such an agreeable shade, and the flowers
 vert²⁹, former si † 32 ombre,
 spread so sweet²² a smell, that I could not be tired with admiring
 *épandre douce³³ odeur, - se lasser 163 admirer 154
 the beautiful landscape which surrounded me. I wished to stay
 beau³³ paysage entourer 172 rester
 longer⁴¹ ; but it was late, I was tired, and I had a long way to go.
 long-tems ; tard, lasser, chemin à faire.

141. The future is generally used in the same instances in french
 futur † 183 213 cas en
 as in english ; When will you call upon me ? I will call to-night.
 que ; Quand 266 58 233
 I shall not be in. I shall be in the country. I will (set out) after dinner.
 y⁵⁴ 230 partir dîné.

142. The present tense is sometimes used in french as in english
 - † en comme
 to express an action that is²⁴² to pass in a time (not far) remote
 170 exprimer 74 172 se passer peu éloigné
 from the time (in which) we are ; as, Where do you dine to-day ?
 , où (v) ; comme, Où dîner
 Do you go to the play to-night ? No, we go to a ball. But if a
 comédie 235 191, bal.
 verb (in the) present tense, denoting a future action, is preceded or
 au - , désignant 32 , précédé
 followed by another verb (in the) future, that present tense must
 suivi 200 au futur, (bb) - devoir
 be expressed by the future in french ; Call upon me as soon as you
 - s'exprimer ; en ; 266 43 tôt 43
 can. We shall begin as⁴³ soon as you are come. When you are
 pouvoir. commencer 43 arrivé.

• See note • page 226. † Turn ; a shade so agreeable. ‡ See N. B. note (ii) page 235.

VERB—INDICATIVE MOOD.

ready, we will go and take a walk²⁰³. You shall not (go out) till
prêt, - (*nn*) N.B. *ne* *sortir* *que*
 after we have done. We will go as soon as you will. I hope we
après que *finir.* *partir* ⁴³ *tôt* ⁴³ *221*
 shall see you oftener⁴¹, when we are in the country. Come as often
souvent, *à* ²³⁰ ⁴³
 as you can. I will call upon you every ⁷time that I go (that way).
⁴³ ²⁹⁶ ¹⁰⁴ *fois* ⁷⁴ *par là.*

143. The conditional tense has also the same properties in french
conditionnel - *aussi* *propriétés* *en*
 as in english; I should like much to go to France. What would you
que ; *fort* ¹⁶⁹ ⁶ ⁸³
 do, if you were there? You would not have any⁸ pleasure. You
faire, *y* ⁵⁴ N.B. *plaisir.*
 could not understand the language. I think I should soon¹⁸³ learn it.
entendre *langue.* ²²¹ *bientôt*

144. After the conjunction *IF*, *Si*, *SHALL*, *WILL* can not be expressed
conjonction *IF,* , *SHALL,* *WILL* - *s'exprimer*
 by the future in french, nor *SHOULD*, *WOULD* by the conditional;
par *futur* *en* , *ni* *SHOULD,* *WOULD*
 (*WILL* must be expressed) by the present, and *WOULD* by the imperfect
il faut exprimer *WILL* , *WOULD* *imparfait*
 of the verb *vouloir*, which then¹⁸⁴ governs the following verb in the
 , ⁷⁴ *alors* *régir* *qui suit* ⁸² *à*
 infinitive; as, I will go with you, if you will come with me. I would
infinitif; , * ⁵⁸ , ⁵⁸ *
 go with you, if you would come with me. I will teach you french,
 , * *enseigner* *français,*
 if you will learn it. I would teach you french, if you would learn
 * *apprendre.* * ⁷ , *
 it. How long do you think that I should be in learning it, if I should
¹⁸⁶ *penser* *à apprendre* , †
 begin now? You may learn it in six months, if you will take
commencer ¹⁷⁸ ²¹⁵ , * *prendre*
 pains. You might learn it in six months, if you would take pains.
de la peine. ¹⁷⁸ ²¹⁵ *
 I will be obliged to you, if you will call upon me to-morrow¹⁸³. I
obligé (*o*) ⁵⁴ , * ²⁶⁶ *demain.* N.B.
 would be (very much) obliged to you, if you would call upon me.
irès - (*o*) , * ²⁶⁶

* Observe, that in the sentences where *IF* occurs, there are generally two *Will*, or two *Would*; that *Will* which follows *If* is the present, and *Would* is the imperfect of the verb to *WILL*, to *BE WILLING*, (see page 143.) and they must be expressed by the corresponding tenses of the verb *VOULOIR*, which then governs the following verb in the infinitive; the other *Will* is the sign of the future, and the other *Would* is the sign of the conditional of the following verb, which must also be expressed by the corresponding tenses, i.e. the *Future* or the *Conditional* of that verb in french. See also note * page 228.

† When *Should* is the sign which follows *If*, this sign must be left out, and the following verb must be put in the *Imperfect* of the indicative.

VERB—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

USE¹⁹ of the subjunctive.

Usage *subjonctif*.

145 When we⁹⁰ speak of an action, the event (of which) is un-
 N.B. événement ⁷⁵ in-
 certain, which is generally the case when, in a sentence of two parts
certain, ce qui cas, ²¹³ phrase partie
 connected by the conjunction *QUE*, the first verb is either interrogative
joint ¹⁵⁷ par conjonction, ou interrogatif
 or negative, or preceded by *SI*, this uncertainty is imparted to the
négatif, ²⁰⁰, (*bb*) incertitude — se communiquer
 hearer, by putting the second verb (in the) subjunctive; I think it will
auditeur, (hh) au ; ²²¹
 rain soon. Do not you think it will⁷⁰? It will perhaps rain a little,
pleuvoir bientôt. ²³¹ N.B. ¹⁸³ un peu,
 but I do not think that it will rain much. If I thought that it
 (*bb*) N.B. ¹⁴⁰
 would not rain, I would stop, but there is no ⁸ appearance that it will
 — ¹⁴⁹, *rester*, ²⁴⁶ ¹⁹⁰ N.B.
 be fine to-day. I will (come again), if I find that it does not rain.
²⁴⁰ *revenir*, *trouver*

But observe with respect to interrogative sentences, that it is only
 à l'égard des ³², ce
 when we⁹⁰ wish to express our ignorance of the thing (enquired after)
 N.B. *vouloir* ¹⁷² *témoigner son* † *dont on s'informe*
 that we⁹⁰ use the subjunctive; for, if the person who asks the question
que N.B. *employer* ; *car*, — *celui* *faire*
 knew that a thing is, and only enquired¹⁹⁶ whether the person whom
¹⁴⁰, ¹⁸⁴ *s'informer* *si* ⁷⁶
 he is speaking to knows it likewise, he would use the indicative; Do
¹⁵⁵ ²⁰⁸ *aussi*, ;
 you not think that I did well to go before the rain came? Do
 (*bb*) N.B. ¹³⁶ *de s'en aller* ²¹⁸ *pluie venir*?
 not you think that I should have been wet, if I had stayed longer?
 (*bb*) N.B. *mouillé*, ¹⁴⁰ *rester* ⁴¹

146. All verbs and adjectives denoting *will*, *wish*, *desire*, *com-*
⁷ ⁷ *qui désignent volonté, souhait, désir, com-*
mand, *fear*, *wonder*, *surprise*, *astonishment*, *joy*, *gladness*, *grief*,
mandement, crainte, admiration, surprise, étonnement, joie, aise, peine,
sorrow, in short all expressions which denote any *passion* or *emotion*
chagrin, en. un mot ²⁹ ⁷ *quelque* *ou*
 of the soul, followed by the conjunction *que*, require the following verb
² *âme, † suivi* ²⁹ ²⁰⁰, *demander*
 (in the) subjunctive; I am glad²²¹ you are here. I wish²²¹ my brother
au ; *bien aise* *ici.* ¹⁸⁹

* See note * page 229. † We could not say *notre* after *on*, which is singular. ‡ See note * page 230.

VERB—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

USE¹⁹ of the tenses of the subjunctive. The tenses of the subjunctive depend (on²⁰⁰ the) tenses of the verb which governs it.

Emploi *tens* *subjonctif.*
dépendre *des* *régir* 62

148. The present of the subjunctive is used when the verb which governs it, is (in the) present or in the future of the indicative; Do you think your sister will come? I (am afraid) she will not be here to-day. Somebody must go and fetch her. He will be back before we begin. It⁶² is fit that somebody should go for her before it is too late.

au *futur* ;
 221 145 *craindre* 221 146 *ici*
 95 181 (*nn*) *chercher* *de retour* 218
 N.B. à *propos* 95 147 * 54 213 *trop*

149. The perfect of the subjunctive is used when the verb which governs it, is (in the) perfect, in the imperfect, or (in the) conditional; I did not think my sister would have come. I (was afraid) she would not be here in time. It⁶² was that which made me wish that somebody would go for her. He might have returned before the play began. It⁶² would be a pity she should not see it⁶² after waiting so long.

parfait - *s'employer*
au 2 *imparfait,* *au* *conditionnel* ;
 140 238 158 *craindre* 221
 146 à *tens.* N.B. 140 89 74 *faisait* (*bb*) N.B. 95
 145 * 54 179 265 218 *pièce* *commencer.*
 N.B. - *dommage* 146 *avoir attendu*

150. N. B. The perfect of the subjunctive is also used, though the foregoing verb is (in the) present, if, after the subjunctive, there is another verb in the imperfect, some conditional expression, or if the action spoken of is past; Do you think your sister would come, if I went for her now? It⁶² is not probable that she would have gone there, if she had not been invited. I do not think we should have seen her, if it had not been for you. I do not think we should.

parfait 92 184 *emplove,* 218
qui précède 218 *au* , , 246
 à 2 , *quelque conditionnelle* 32 ,
dont on parle *passé* 158; 221 145 ,
aller † * 54 N.B. 258 158
 y 55, † 92 *inviter.* 221 145
 139 55, *ce* † à *cause de* 58 †

151. If after a verb (in the) subjunctive there is another verb express-

au 246

* *Go for* is expressed by *Aller chercher*, not *Aller pour*.
 † *Was, Were, Had, Did*, or any other *past* tense that comes after *IF, Si*, must be in the *Imperfect*.
 ‡ Instead of repeating the verb, the french would say; *Je ne le pense pas non plus*.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

ing doubt, preceded by the conjunction *que*, that verb must also be
 , précédé²⁰⁰ , devoir
 (in the) subjunctive ; Do you think she expects¹⁴⁵ that I shall see her
 au ; ²²¹ s'attendre revoir
 again ? I wonder she could¹⁷⁹ have thought that I was capable (of it.)
 * s'étonner²²¹ ait¹⁴⁶ pu pense^v en⁵⁴

152. When the gerund or present participle is used to qualify a
 gérondif³² participe - s'employer¹⁶⁹ qualifier
 noun, it agrees like an adjective in gender and number with that
 , s'accorder comme en genre ²⁰⁴nombre (bb)
 noun ; A charming girl, with a moving voice, singing her growing
 ; charmant³² , de touchant³² , ¹⁵³ naissant³²
 love, in seeking¹⁵³ her wandering sheep, heard some threatening
 amours, f. en chercher errant³² brébis, entendre⁹ menaçant³²
 words followed by piercing cries. I heard her trembling steps.
 parole suivi¹³⁷ ²⁰⁰ perçant³² cri. tremblant³² pas.

153. But, when the gerund expresses the action, and not the quality
 , exprimer , non qualité
 of a substantive, it does not agree with that substantive ; A woman
 substantif, ⁶² s'accorder ;
 wandering through the country²³⁰, (lost her way.) Some men piercing
 errant à travers campagne, s'égarer. ⁹ perçant
 through the croud and threatening to kill her, she fled trembling.
 - foule menaçant¹⁶⁶ tuer , s'enfuir en

N. B. If the substantive to which the gerund refers is the object
⁷⁶ se rapporter
 of a verb, it is generally expressed by the indicative in french ; We
 , - ¹⁸³ s'exprimer par en ;
 met a woman wandering through the country. We heard a man
 errer à travers ²³⁰
 threatening to kill her. We saw some huntsmen seeking for a hare.
 menacer¹⁶⁸ ⁹ chasseur chercher - lièvre.

154. The english gerund being governed by a VERB, or by the pre-
 régi par VERBE,
 positions OF, FROM, AT, FOR, AFTER, WITH, WITHOUT, is expressed by
 OF, FROM, AT, FOR, AFTER, WITH, WITHOUT, - s'exprimer
 the infinitive of the verb in french ; I saw you doing it, without
 infinitif en ; ¹³⁶ ,
 taking any pains. I was afraid of spoiling it. I blame him for
 de la peine. craindre¹⁴⁰ gâter ²⁰⁰
 going away, after having promised to wait for me. Be contented
 s'en être allé, ¹⁶⁸ ²⁰¹ ⁵⁴ - se contenter ,
 with telling him¹⁶⁸ so. There is no occasion for (using him ill.)
²⁰⁰ (f) p. 79. le ⁵⁹ ²⁴⁶ ¹⁹⁰ lieu de maltraiter ⁵⁴ -

* Again is expressed by *re* before *voir*

† See the Imperative of a reflexive verb, page 114.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

155. The english gerund which is so often used with the auxiliary
³² *gérondif* - ¹⁸³ *s'employer* * ³² *auxiliaire*
 verb BE, to define an action more particularly, can not be expressed
¹⁷⁰ *définir* *particulièrement*, - *s'exprimer* *
 by the gerund in french; (the auxiliary verb must be left out,) and
 ; *il faut omettre le verbe auxiliaire* ,
 (the gerund must be made into a verb) (in the) same tense and person
³ *faire du gérondif un verbe* *au*
 as the auxiliary verb is; What are you doing there? I am reading
³² *que* - ; ⁸³ *là ?*
 a novel. You are losing (a deal) of time. What have you been doing,
^{roman.} *perdre* *beaucoup* - ,
 whilst I was dressing myself? I was waiting for my sister. I am
^{pendant que} *habiller* *me* ⁵⁴ ²⁰¹
 going to dress myself too. I (am afraid)²²¹ they will be going¹⁴⁶ before
¹⁷² ⁵⁴ *aussi.* *craindre* ¹⁹⁵ - *partir* ²¹⁸
 I am ready. Make haste, for they are going to (set off) just now.
^{prêt.} *se dépêcher*, † *car* *aller* ¹⁷² *partir* *tout à l'heure.*

156. The gerund which is sometimes used as a substantive in
 - ¹⁸³ *s'employer* * - *en*
 english, i. e. preceded by an article, can not be expressed by the gerund
 , ²⁰⁰ *précédé* , - *s'exprimer* * *par*
 in french; (it must be expressed) by a noun, if a noun synonymous to
 ; *il faut l'exprimer* , *synonyme*
 the verb can be found; as, the reading of good books forms the mind.
⁹² ; , *lecture* ⁷ ⁸³ *former* *esprit.*
 His having been instructed (turn; *his instruction*) was of great ser-
 ; ¹³⁶ *d'un grand*
 vice to him. If a noun synonymous to the verb does not readily¹⁸³
 (*o*) ⁵⁵ *aisément*
 occur to the mind, you¹⁶¹ - must give another turn to the sentence; as,
^{se présenter} , *il N.B. faut* *tour* *phrase* ; ,
 I should have caught that bird, if it had not been for your making
^{attraper} ² *oiseau* ,
 a noise; (turn; *if you had not made &c.*) You are the cause of his
^{du bruit} ; ; *fait* *&c.*
 having been punished; (turn; *that he has been punished.*) What is the
 ; ; ⁸³
 reason for your being so angry with him? turn; *that you are* so angry.
^{raison} *fâché* ²⁰⁰ ? ;

157. The past⁹² participle joined to a noun has the property of an
^{passé} *joint* *propriété*
 adjective, and agrees in gender and number with that noun; A
 , *s'accorder* *en* *genre* ²⁰⁴ *nombre* ;

• See N. B. note (ii) page 935.

† See the Imperative of a reflective verb, page 114.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

married³⁰ man. A married woman. Well brought up children. Well
marier N.B. ³² *bien élever*³² - ⁹ *Well*
 written letters. New built³² houses. Roasted potatoes ⁹.
écrite ³² ⁹ *nouvellement bâtir* ⁹ *rôtir*³² *pommes de terre.*

When a past participle comes after the auxiliary³² verbs HAVE or
³² *participe* *auxiliaire*³⁹ *HAVE*

BE, you¹⁸¹ must make a particular³² distinction between these two verbs.
BE, il N.B. *faut* *particulier*²⁹ *entre* (bb)

158. After the auxiliary verb *être*, to BE, the past participle agrees
³² *verbe* , to *BE,* ³² *s'accorder*
 like an adjective, in gender and number with the nominative of that
comme *adjectif,* ²⁰⁴ *nominatif* (bb)
 verb; as, that man is married. That woman is married. Those
 ; , *marier.* (bb)
 children are well brought up. These letters are well written. The
élever -
 potatoes are not done enough. Those houses are very well built.
cuire ¹⁸³ *très* *bâtir.*

159. After the auxiliary verb *avoir*, to HAVE, the past participle
³² , to *HAVE,* ³²
 never agrees with the nominative of the verb; so, in these examples;
¹⁹⁰ *s'accorder* ; *ainsi,* (bb) *exemple;*
 My mother has invited your sisters. Your sisters have invited my
invité
 mother, the participle *invité* must not change its masculine termination;
 , *devoir* *changer* *sa* ³² *terminaison;*
 except when the past participle comes after the participle *été*, BEEN,
excepté ³² , *BEEN,*
 serving with *avoir*, to form a compound tense; for then it agrees
servant , ¹⁵⁹ *former* *composé*³² *tems;* *car alors* *s'accorder*
 with the nominative of *avoir*; as, My sister has been invited. My
 ; , *été* *invité.*
 brothers have been invited. My sisters have been invited.

In all other instances (in which) the past participle comes after
²¹³ ⁷ *cas* *où* ³²
 HAVE, it (is necessary) to consider whether the participle has an object,
HAVE, il - *faut* ¹⁷² *considérer* *si* *objet,*
 and whether this object comes before or after the participle.
²⁰⁶

If the participle comes before its object, it does not vary, i. e. it is
^{son} , *changer,*
 always masculine and singular; but if it comes after its object, it
masculin *singulier;* ,
 agrees like an adjective in gender and number with that object; I
s'accorder *en* ²⁰⁴ ² ;

PAST PARTICIPLE.

have lost my watch. I have not found it. I have found a watch.
perdre *montre.* *trouver* ⁵⁵

It is not that which I have lost. I have sent you a letter. I have
⁶⁵ ⁸⁸ *envoyer* ⁵⁵ *lettre.*

not received it. Have you not received the letter which I have sent
recevoir ⁵⁵

you? We have sold our house, but we have bought another. (That is)
⁵⁵ *vendre* *maison,* *en* ⁷⁰ *acheter* *une autre.* ²⁴⁷

the house which we have sold, and (this is) the other which we have
²⁴⁷

bought. We have gained a complete³² victory. Have you heard
remporter *complet* ²⁹ *victoire.* *entendu parler*

of the victory which we have gained? We have destroyed or taken
détruire *prendre*

all the enemy's²⁵ ships. (Here are) the frigates which we have taken.
ennemi *vaisseau* ²⁴⁷ *frégate*

N. B. Observe that the participle agrees only with its direct object ;
Observer (bb) N. B. *son* ³² ;

for, when the object is governed by a preposition expressed or under-
car, *régir* *exprimer* ¹⁵⁷ *sous-*

stood, the participle does not agree with that object ; (Here is) the
entendre ^{157,} (bb) ; ²⁴⁷

person to whom I have written the letter of which I have spoken to
personne ⁷⁶ ⁷⁴ (o)

you. It mentions a victory to which we have not contributed a little.
⁵⁵ ⁶² *faire mention d'* ⁷⁶ *contribuer* - *peu* ¹⁸³

Over²⁰⁰ (how many)^a powerful³² enemies have we not triumphed !
De *combien* N. B. *puissant* ²⁹ *triumpher !*

160. Sometimes after a participle preceded by an object, there is a
précédé ²⁰⁰ , ²⁴⁶

verb in the infinitive, then (it is necessary) to consider whether the
d *infinitif,* *alors* *il faut* ¹⁷² *si*

object is governed by the participle, or by the infinitive which follows
régir *par* , *suivre*

it. If the participle governs the object, it agrees in gender and num-
⁶² , ⁶² *s'accorder*

ber with that object ; but if the object is governed by the verb which
[;]

follows the participle, the participle does not require any^o agreement
[,] *ne demander pas* N. B. *accord*

with it ;* Have you finished the letter which I had given you to write ?
l'objet ; ¹⁴⁰ ⁵⁵ ¹⁶⁹

Have you finished the letter which you had begun to write ? Have
¹⁴⁰ † ¹⁶⁸

* Here the noun must be repeated in the place of the pronoun, because the personal pronouns after a preposition, can not be used to represent things. See 64 rule, † See note * page 233.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

you read the books which I had lent you to read? Have you read
140 prêter * 55 169
 the books which I had advised you to read? Is that the actress
conseiller * 55 166 Est-ce là actrice
 whom we heard¹³⁵ sing? Sing the song which we heard her⁵⁵ sing
entendre * chanter ? chanson 136 * lui
 (These are) the figures which I have lately learned to draw. I
247 dernièrement * 169 dessiner.
 still¹⁸⁴ see the same faults which you had resolved to avoid.
encore faute 140 résoudre * 168 éviter.

161. The participles *plu, dû, pu, voulu* do not agree with the object
s'accorder
 that precedes them, because the infinitive of the verb which comes be-
74 , parceque
 fore these words, is understood after them; You have not written this
, sous-entendu - 61 ;
 letter so well as you ought. You have had all the time and all the
42 42 177 tems
 assistance that you wished¹³³. I have taken all the pains that I could¹³⁶.
secours 74 vouloir. 30 peine 74 pouvoir.

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

(A word is⁹² said) to govern another, when the word governing
On dit qu'un mot en régit un autre, qui régit
 obliges the governed to¹⁰⁹ conform to certain rules.
obliger mot qui est régi se conformer certaine (i) règle.

162. When a verb governs two substantives, either nouns or pro-
régir , soit ou †
 nouns, one of them requires a preposition, expressed before a noun, and
, demander , exprimer 157 205 ,
 generally implied in the pronouns; Has your sister given my brother
renfermer 157 ; 134
 any money? (turn; *given money to my brother.*) Yes, she has lent
9 ; , prêter
 him⁵⁵ some; (i. e. *some to him.*) Did he ask her for it? (turn; *did he*
(f) p. 79. (p) ; (o) 135 55 † 59 ;
ask it to her?) No, it⁶⁹ was she who offered it⁵⁵ him; (i. e. *it to him.*)
(o) † 191, N.B. 140 offrir 136 (f) p. 79. ; (o)
 They have requested me to buy them books, (*to buy books to them.*)
prier 168 (f) p. 79. 9 , (o)
 and to send them to them; but I will not send them any; (*any to*
106 (o) ; (f) p. 79. (p) ;
them.) Have they returned your sister (*to your sister*) those which
265 N.B. (bb)
 she had lent them⁵⁵? No, they have⁷⁰ not; i. e. *returned them to her.*
140 159 (f) p. 79. , N.B. ; (o)

* See note * page 233.

† See note * page 205

‡ See note || page 296.

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

163. When a verb governs two objects, the shorter, i. e. the object which is compounded of the fewer⁴¹ number of words, is generally placed first; I have brought your brother a very entertaining book. He must dedicate all the time that he can spare to study. How can he expect to learn unless¹⁹⁵ he pays all the attention he can to his books?

régir *objet*, *court*⁴¹,
composé *plus petit* ⁸ *mot*, — ¹⁸³
¹⁸¹ *se placer le premier* ; ¹⁶² *I have brought your brother* a very ¹⁸³ *entertaining book.*
¹⁸¹ *donner* ⁷⁴ *He must dedicate all the time that he can spare* to ¹⁸³ *study.* ¹⁸³ *How can he*
¹⁶⁸ *expect to learn unless*¹⁹⁵ *he pays all the attention he can to his books?* (*s*)
²¹⁸ *N.B.* ²⁹ *faire*

If the objects are nearly of an equal length, i. e. compounded of nearly the same number of words, the direct³² object must be placed before the indirect; Have you lent my sister any money? She intends to present your brother with a book. He gives his friends (a great deal) of trouble. Tell her¹⁰² that I will send her children some fruit.

à peu près *égale* ,
⁸ , *direct* *devoir* — *se placer* ²⁰⁶
¹⁶² *l'objet* ; ¹⁶² ⁹ *She intends to* ¹²⁵ *avoir dessein de*
¹⁶² *present your brother with a book.* ¹⁶² *He gives his friends (a great deal)*
¹⁶² *of trouble.* ¹⁰² *Tell her that* ¹⁶² *I will send her children some fruit.*
¹⁶² *peine.* (*f*) p. 79. (*bb*) *N.B.* ¹⁶²

Yet the indirect object must be placed first, though it were the longer⁴¹, if by placing it last, it⁶² caused an amphibology with other words; as, Take the parcel which I have brought into the parlour. Have you sent the letter which I gave you to the (post office?)

Cependant ³² *devoir* , *quand même il serait*
⁴¹ *the longer*, if by ⁶² *placing it last*, it⁶² *caused an amphibology with*
⁴¹ *other words* ; as, ⁴¹ *Take the parcel which I have brought into the*
⁴¹ *parlour.* ⁴¹ *Have you sent the letter which I gave you to the (post office?)*
⁴¹ *salon* ¹³⁶ ⁵⁵ *post*

164. The same noun may be governed by two verbs which have both the same government, i. e. which are both used without a preposition, or which require both the same preposition; as, I hate and despise that young man. He is always talking and boasting¹⁵⁵ of what he does. He is always opposing and (finding fault) with what other people do; but we⁹⁰ could not say, I hate and mistrust that young man. He is always talking about, and finding fault with what other people do; because *se méfier* requires a preposition before the noun

même ¹⁷⁸ *régi* *par* .
¹²² *both the same government*, i. e. which are both ¹²² *used without a pre-*
¹²² *position*, or which require ¹²² *both the same preposition* ; as, ¹²² *I hate and*
¹²² *despise that young man.* ¹²² *He is always talking and boasting*¹⁵⁵ *of what*
¹²² *he does.* ¹²² *He is always opposing and (finding fault) with what other*
¹²² *people do* ; but ⁹⁰ *we could not say*, ¹²² *I hate and mistrust that young*
¹²² *man.* ¹²² *He is always talking about, and finding fault with what other*
¹²² *people do* ; because *se méfier* requires a preposition before the noun
³⁹ *faire* ;

• See note ¶ page 296. † Put this pronoun after the verb. ‡ Put this adverb after the second verb.

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

which follows it, and *haïr* does not require any; and because *parler*
suivre , 219 (p) 54;
 and *trouver à redire* require different prepositions; we¹⁸¹ must say; I
 29 32 9 ; N.B. ;
 hate that young man, and I mistrust him. He is always talking about
 (bb) , *se méfier de* 58 184 155 200
 what other people do, and finding fault (with it.)
les autres - 39 , 155 *à redire y* 51

165. The same verb may govern two parts of a sentence, provided
 17B *régir* *partie* *phrase*, 218
 they are both affirmative or both negative; as our reputation depends
 62 122 *affirmative* *ou* 122 *négative* ; *dépendre*
 much (upon²⁰⁰ the) caprice of men, but still more upon our actions;
du 7 , *encore* *de*
 but if one part of the sentence is affirmative and the other is negative
et 219 *autre* 220
 (the verb must be repeated;) so, instead of saying: Our reputation
il faut répéter le verbe ; *ainsi, au lieu* 154 ;
 does not depend (upon²⁰⁰ the) caprice of men, but upon our good or
du , 200 29
 204 our bad actions; repeat the verb, and say; *but it depends* upon our
de 29 ; *répéter* , ; 63 200
 good or our bad actions. All men are equal; it⁶² is not birth, but
 7 *égaux* ; N.B. *naissance*,
 virtue alone (say, *it⁶² is virtue alone*) which makes the difference.
 7 *vertu seule* N.B. 74

166. Some verbs govern the verbs which follow them, indifferently
régir *suivre* , *indifféremment*
 in the infinitive or (in the) subjunctive; but when any one of these
 à 2 *au* ; 96
 verbs governs two verbs, they must be both (in the) same mood; so,
 , *devoir* 122 *au* *mode* ; *ainsi*,
 (it would not be proper to say;) I am glad to see you, and *that I*
on ne dirait pas bien ; *bien aise de* , *que*
 have an opportunity to tell you so; you¹⁸¹ must say, and *to have an*
 24 *occasion* 103 59 *le* 54 ; N.B. , *de* 24
 opportunity to tell you so. Instead of saying: I have ordered the
 168 59 *le* 54 *Au lieu de* 154 ; *ordonné*
 coach to (be got ready), and that they⁹⁰ bring²⁵⁵ it here; say, I have
 d' *apprêter, †* , *que* N.B. *amener* 54 *ici* ; *dire*,
 ordered the coach to be got ready, and to be brought here; or, I have
 168 - *apprêter, †* 168 - 255 ; ,
 ordered that the coach be got ready, and that they⁹⁰ bring it here.
 92 , N.B. 256 54

* See note † page 282.

† Turn; to get ready the coach, and to bring &c.

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

167. Passive verbs require *de* or *par* before the noun which they
*passif*³² 7 *demande* 206

govern. They require *de*, when the verb expresses an action wholly of
régir. *exprimer* *entièrement*

the mind; as, He is blamed by all his friends, and despised by all his
esprit ; , *mépriser*

neighbours. She is commended and esteemed by every body. They
voisin. *louer*¹⁵⁸ *158* *106*

require *par*, when the bodily³² faculties participate in the action; The
 , *du corps* *avoir*¹²⁵ *part à* ;

town was besieged by the Austrians, and afterwards taken¹⁵⁸ by the
¹³⁷ * *assiéger*¹⁵⁸ *Autrichiens,* *ensuite* *prendre*

French. The houses were plundered by the mob. This news was
¹³⁷ * *piller*¹⁵⁸ *populace.* *nouvelle*¹⁸⁶

sent¹⁵⁸ to us by my correspondent. The letter is written by a man
envoyer (o) *correspondant.* ¹⁵⁸

who was upon the spot. But instead of these passive expressions,
¹⁴⁰ *place.* *au lieu* (bb) ³²

which are foreign to the genius of the french language, (it is better),
*étranger*²⁹ *génie* ²⁹ ³² , *il vaut mieux,*

by changing the order of the words, to give to the verb its active sig-
 (hh) *changer* *ordre* , ¹⁷² *sa* ³²

nification; thus, All his friends blame him, and all his neighbours
 ; *ainsi,* ,

despise him. Every body commends and esteems her. The Austrians &c.
mépriser ¹⁰⁵ *louer* ⁶⁸

When two verbs occur in²¹³ the same part of a sentence the
se rencontrer *partie*

latter is governed by the former in the infinitive mood, sometimes
dernier *régir* *par* *premier* à *infinitif* - ,

(by the) means of a preposition, and sometimes without it. †
au *moyen* , *préposition.*

The preposition *to*, the sign of the infinitive mood in english, is
to, ²² *signe* - *en* , -

expressed by *de*, *à*, or *pour*, but not indiscriminately.
s'exprimer † , , ¹⁹¹ *indifféremment.*

168. *To*, before an infinitive is expressed by *de*, when it can
To, ²⁰⁶ . - *s'exprimer* † *il* *pouvoir*

be changed into *of* or *from*, and²²⁹ the infinitive can be turned into
 - *se changer* † *en* *OF* *FROM,* *et* *que* - *se tourner* *par*

the gerund or present participle; this generally occurs when the infi-
gérondif ³² *participe* ; ⁸⁹ ¹⁸⁴ *arriver*

nitive comes after a noun used in a definite sense; as, You shall have
employé *défini*³² *sens* ; ,

* See note * p. 226.

† See note * page 311.

‡ See N. B. note (ii) p. 235.

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

the trouble to do *peine* it, or (*of doing it*) over again. Will you have *refaire* ,
 the goodness to help, or (*of helping*) me? If you have any desire *bonté* *aider*, ²⁴ *envie*
 to serve me, you have now a fine opportunity to do it. Have the *servir* , *à présent* *occasion*
 complaisance to wait for me. I have not time to stay. It is time to ²⁰¹ *rester.* *Il*
 go. I do not hinder you from going. See, rule 168, a list of the verbs *partir.* *empêcher* *vous en aller.* , *règle* , *liste*
 and adjectives which require *de* before the infinitive that follows them. ⁸ *demander* ²⁰⁶ *infinitif* ⁷⁴

169. To, before an infinitive is expressed by *à*, when it can be *To,* - *s'exprimer** *à,* *il* -
 changed into IN, and ²¹⁹ the infinitive can be turned into the gerund, *se changer en IN, et que* - *se tourner par* *gérondif,*
 or present participle; this generally occurs after nouns used¹⁵⁷ in a ³² ; ⁸⁹ ¹⁸⁴ *arriver* ⁷ *employer*
 partitive sense; He will have some trouble to do it (*or in doing it*) *partitif*³² ; ⁹ *peine* *refaire*
 over again. He perhaps¹⁶⁴ will have somebody to help him. Is there [†] *peut-être* ⁹⁵ *aider lui* ⁵⁴ ²⁴⁶
 no⁸ risk to go (this way?) A virtuous man takes pleasure to do good. *N.B. risque* *par ici?* *vertueux* ⁹ *bien.*
 Amuse yourself with reading some instructive book, instead of spend- *Amuser vous* ⁵⁶ ¹⁵⁴ *quelque instructif*³² , *au lieu* ²⁷¹
 ing¹⁵⁴ your time in playing. See, rule 169, a list of the verbs and *jouer.* , *liste*
 adjectives which require *à* before the infinitive that follows them. ²⁰⁶ ⁷⁴

170. To, before an infinitive is expressed by *pour*, when it can be *To,* - *s'exprimer** , *il* -
 turned into IN ORDER TO; as, I was going to write to you to beg, *se tourner par IN ORDER TO;* , ¹⁵⁵ *aller* ^{172.} (*o*) *demander*
 or (*in order to beg*) a favour of you. You are too civil to refuse me. *grâce* - ⁵⁴ *trop* *refuser* .
 (I will do any thing) to oblige you. I want money to buy a horse. *Il n'est rien que je ne fasse* ²⁶⁰ *acheter*
 I have not money⁸ enough to buy one. It is not enough to have money *N.B. assez* *en* ⁷⁰ *un.* - *suffire* ¹⁶⁸ ⁹
 to get a horse, one must¹⁸¹ have money to keep it. He wants *se procurer* , *N.B. -* *maintenir* ²⁶⁰
 to have a horse, in order to make (people believe) that he is rich. *croire aux gens*

* See N. B. note (ii) page 235.

† Over again is expressed by *re* before *faire*.

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

N. B. The english gerund preceded by the preposition **FOR**, explaining the motive of an action, is also expressed by the infinitive

à expliquer ³² *gérondif* ²⁹⁰ *FOR, servant*

with *pour*; He has been taken up for having fought a duel. Is that¹³⁴ sufficient for arresting a man? He was not arrested for fighting, but for robbing and ill using the man whom he had²²⁷ fought with.

à expliquer ³² *motif* , - ¹⁸⁴ *s'exprimer* ^{par} *infinitif*

; *arrêter* - ^{s'être}²³⁷ *battre* *en* *duel.* -

that¹³⁴ ¹³⁵ *suffire* ¹³⁶ *s'être battu,*

avoir volé ^{maltraité} ⁷⁶ *s'était* ²⁰³

171. The infinitive is used without a preposition in french, when it is the nominative of a verb; as, To love and to be loved are the greatest pleasures in life⁷. To love without measure is a folly, not to love at all, is insensibility. To do to others as we would wish (to be⁹² done to), is to follow the law of reason.

- *s'employer* - *en* ,

; , *aimer*

⁴⁴ *vie.* ⁴⁹ *mesure* *folie,* ^{N.B.}

du tout, *insensibilité.* *à* *autrui* *ce que* *vouloir*

qu'on nous fit, *c'est* - *loi* ⁷ *raison.*

172. The infinitive is also used without a preposition after the verbs

Aimer mieux, valoir mieux, aller, venir, Assurer, croire, compter, daigner, déclarer, devoir, Entendre, Envoyer, Espérer, Falloir, s'imaginer, Laisser, oser, paraître, penser, prétendre, pouvoir, reconnaître, regarder, retourner, savoir, sembler, souhaiter, soutenir, vouloir, voir, appercevoir; as, I am going to embark for America. When do you intend to go? I want²⁶⁰ to (set out) as soon as I can. I hope you will come to see us before you go. I do not think I shall (be able) to call²⁶⁶ before I go; but I expect to see you often when I have¹¹² returned. You seem to have a great desire to¹⁰⁸ go. No; I would rather stay than go; but I do not¹⁰² know what to do here. It is better to gain a little than to gain nothing. I would rather gain nothing than to toil myself for so little. See the 172nd rule.

- *s'employer* -

m'embarquer ⁵ *Amérique.*

compter *partir?* *souhaiter* *partir* ¹⁴² ²²¹

²¹⁸ *partir* ²²¹ *pouvoir* ¹⁴⁵

passer ²¹⁸ *partir;* *espérer* ²³³

²⁶³ *envie* *y* ⁷⁰ *aller.* ; *aimer*

mieux *rester* *(ll)* *y aller;* ^{N.B.} *savoir* ⁸³ *Il vaut*

mieux *gagner* - *peu* *(ll)* ⁹⁹ *aimer* *mieux*

(ll) *tourmenter* *me* ⁵⁴ *si* *peu* *de chose.* *règle.*

REMARKS ON THE VERBS.

173. WILL, WOULD. If, by the words WILL, WOULD, you wish to
 WILL, WOULD. , par WILL, WOULD, vouloir ¹⁷²
 denote will, wish desire, inclination, you¹⁸¹ must express them by
désigner volonté, souhait, désir, il N.B. faut exprimer
 the verb *vouloir*, and put the following verb in the infinitive; if you
 , mettre à ;
 wish to denote a determination, (WILL, WOULD must be considered)
¹⁷³ , il faut considérer WILL, WOULD
 only as the signs of the future, or of the conditional of the verb which
 comme futur, conditionnel
 follows them; as, Will you do me the favour to call²⁰⁶ upon me? I
 ; , * faire grâce ¹⁶⁸ ⁵⁸
 will call, if I can. Would you do me the favour to call upon me?
 , pouvoir. * ²⁶⁶
 I would call, if I could. Will you bring your sister with you? I will
 pouvoir. * amener avec
 bring her, if she will come. Would you bring your sister with you?
 , ¹⁴⁴ ²⁵⁶
 I would bring her, if she would come. My sister will not come; she
 amener , ¹⁴⁴ ;
 will stay at home. My sister would not come; she would stay at home.
 rester au logis. ;

174. WILL HAVE, WOULD HAVE. When WILL HAVE, WOULD HAVE
 WILL HAVE, WOULD HAVE. WILL HAVE, WOULD HAVE
 are used to denote the wish to possess, WILL, WOULD are expressed
 - s'employer ¹⁶⁹ désigner ¹⁶⁸ désir ¹⁶⁸ posséder, WILL, WOULD - s'exprimer
 by the verb *vouloir*, and HAVE is left out; if WILL HAVE, WOULD
 , HAVE - s'omettre; WILL HAVE, WOULD
 HAVE are used to denote not the wish, but the certainty to possess,
 HAVE - s'employer ¹⁶⁹ non , certitude ¹⁶⁸ ,
 they are expressed by the future, or by the conditional of *avoir*; as,
 - s'exprimer futur, conditionnel ; ,
 My brother will have a horse. He will have one (cost what it will.)
 * en ⁷⁰ * un coûte qui coûte.
 My brother would have a horse. He would have one (at any rate.)
 * à quelque prix que ce fût.
 He will have a watch too. He would have a watch too. He will
 * montre aussi. * ^{en 70}
 have one, if he learns well. He would have one, if he learned well.
 , apprendre ^{en 70} ,
 He will have none, if he will not have this⁸⁹. He would have none,
 n'en ⁷⁰ pas, ¹⁴⁴ N.B. n'en ⁷⁰ pas,
 if he would not have this. He will have one like yours.
¹⁴⁴ ^{en 70} * une ⁸⁵

* These sentences may be expressed two ways, but each way denotes a different idea, and this idea can be determined only by the speaker or writer. See the examples under rules 173, 174. See also the different notes on *Will, Would*, page 143, 228, and 334.

REMARKS ON THE VERBS.

N. B. If **WILL HAVE, WOULD HAVE**, in the sense of **WISH**, are followed by another verb, the object of **HAVE** becomes the nominative of the following verb which must be (in the) subjunctive in french;

vis ²⁰⁰ , *objet* **HAVE** *devenir* *nominatif*

suivant ³² *devoir* *au* *en* ;

What will you have me do? What will you have my brother do?

⁸³ * *faire*? * *faire*?

I will have you learn Italian⁷, and I will have him learn French⁷.

† *Italien,* † *Français.*

Would you have us do¹⁴⁹ nothing but study? Must we never play?

† *faire* ⁹⁹ *qu' étudier?* ¹⁸¹ ¹³³ ¹⁰⁰ *jouer*

Yes, I would have you learn your lessons first, and I would have you play afterwards. I will not have any of you be idle. I will have every one of you do his duty before he does any thing else.

¹⁰⁵ *devoir* ²¹⁸ ¹¹¹ *autre chose.*

175. **WOULD HAVE** in the sense of **CHOSEN, BEEN WILLING**, followed by a past participle is expressed by the imperfect or by the conditional of *avoir*, with the participle *voulu*, viz. *avais voulu, aurais voulu*, and the english participle is expressed by the infinitive in french;

WOULD HAVE *CHOSEN, BEEN WILLING, suivre* ¹⁵⁷

²⁰⁰ ³² - *s'exprimer* *par* *imparfait* *conditionnel*

³² , *c'est à dire*

³² - *s'exprimer* *en* ;

If you would have let me go, I should have been back long since.

laisser , *de retour il y a long tems.*

This would have been done in time, if he would have helped me.

⁸⁹ *finir à tems,* *aider*

I asked¹³⁶ him to help me, and he would not. I would not have helped you for ever so much. Why did you not tell me so before I began? If I had told you so, you would not have come. If any body but you had told me so, I certainly would not have believed him.

prier ⁵⁵ , ¹³⁶ ⁵⁵ ²¹⁸ *cela*

rien au monde. ¹³⁶ ⁵⁵ ²¹⁸ *cela*

† ⁵⁵ *le* ⁵⁹ , ¹⁸⁴ *tout*

autre que † ⁵⁹ *le* ⁵⁵ , ¹⁸⁴

176. **SHOULD.** When **SHOULD**, which is generally a sign of the conditional tense, is used in the sense of **OUGHT**, it is expressed by the

SHOULD. *SHOULD,* *signe*

- , - *s'employer* *OUGH*T, - *s'exprimer*

* Turn, What will you that I do? What will you that my brother do? for it is not the person whom you wish, but you wish that the person should perform some action.

† Turn, I will that you learn Italian, and I will that he learn french. Would you that we should do nothing but study? and so on with other sentences of this kind. † See note † page 337.

REMARKS ON THE VERBS.

conditional of the verb *devoir*, viz. *devrais*; as, you should take
 , *c'est à dire* ;
 more^a pains than you do. Children should learn, every day, something
 N. B. *peine* 47 *faire.* 7 , *touts les jours,* 98
 by heart. They should (get up) (sooner in the morning) than they do.
par cœur. *se lever* *plus* - *matin* 47

177. SHOULD HAVE, OUGHT to HAVE, followed by a past participle,
SHOULD HAVE, OUGHT to HAVE, 200 32
 are expressed by the conditional of *Avoir*, with the participle *dû*, viz.
 - * *par* , *dû*,
Aurais dû, and the english participle is expressed by the infinitive
 , 32 - *
 in french; You should have gone (viz. *ought to have gone*) with your
en ; *aller*
 brothers. You should not have let them go alone. They ought not
laisser *seul* 29.
 to have gone without leave. They should not have stayed so long.
 y⁷⁰ *permission.* *rester si long tems.*
 You ought to have told them⁵⁴ so. You have not acted as you should.
dire (f) p. 79. *le* 59 *agir*

178. MAY, MIGHT. If MAY, MIGHT are used to denote the power
MAY, MIGHT. *MAY, MIGHT* - * 109 *désigner* *pouvoir*,
 of doing a thing, MAY is expressed by the present of the verb *pou-*
 154 , *MAY* - *
voir, viz. *puis*, &c. and MIGHT by the conditional *pourais*, which
 , , , &c. *MIGHT* ,
 govern the following verb in the infinitive; If MAY, MIGHT denote the
régir à 2 ; *MAY, MIGHT*
 mere possibility of doing a thing, they may be expressed by the sub-
simple *possibilité* 154 , † - *
 junctive of *pouvoir*, or by the subjunctive of the following verb; Any
 , *qui suit* 32 ;
 body *may* do that; (i. e. *can* or *is able*) to do that. You *may* do it,
 109 † (*bb*); 172 *faire* ,
 (i. e. You *can* or *are able*) to do it, if you like. I will shew you
 , *vouloir.* ‡ *montrer*
 how it *may* be done; (i. e. how one *can*, or *is able* to do it.) Leave
 92 ; *Laisser*
 it here, that I *may* try; (i. e. that it *may be possible* for me to
 58 , *afinque* *essayer*; 172
 try.) I will lend it⁵⁴ you, that you *may* learn; (i. e. that it *may*
prêter 59 , *afinque* ;
 be possible for you to learn.) Any body *might* do that; (i. e.
 109 ;

* See N. B. note (it) page 200.

† See note * page 138, N. B. p. 139.

‡ See note † p. 312.

REMARKS ON THE VERBS.

would be able) to do that. You *might* do it, (i. e. you *could* or *faire* , *
would be able) to do it, if you had¹⁴⁰ a mind. I will shew you how
 , en⁷⁰ 24 *envie.* †
 it *might* be done; (i. e. how one *could* do it.) I left¹³⁵ it here that
 82 ; * *laisser* 55 *afinque*
 you *might* try; (i. e. that it *might be possible* for you to try.)
 ;

179. COULD HAVE, MIGHT HAVE. When COULD HAVE, MIGHT HAVE
 COULD HAVE, MIGHT HAVE. COULD HAVE, MIGHT HAVE
 are followed by a past participle, they are expressed by the imperfect
 138 200 32 , - † *imparfait*
 or by the conditional of *avoir*, with the participle *pu*, viz. *avais pu*,
conditionnel , , ,
aurais pu, agreeably to the tense, and the english participle is ex-
 , *suivant* - , 32 -
 pressed by the infinitive in french; If I *could have* done it, (i. e. i
 † en ; * *faire* ,
 I *had* (*been able*) to do it,) I would not have asked²⁵² you to help
 110 *pu* 172 , *prier* 168 *aider*
 me. You *might have* done it (i. e. you *would have been able* to do
 it) as well as I⁵². I *could* not *have* done it so soon; (i. e. I *should*
 43 43 * ;
 not *have been able* to do it so soon.) You perhaps¹⁶⁴ *could* not, (or
si tôt. *peut-être* ,
would not have been able to do it) but you *might have* tried; (i. e.
essayer ;
 you *would have been able* to try.) I *might have* tried, (i. e. I *should*
have been able to try) as you say; but I am sure that I *could* not
comme ; *sûr*
have succeeded; (i. e. that I *should* not *have been able* to succeed.)
réussir ;

180. WISH. The present tense of the verb *WISH*, followed by another
WISH. - *WISH,* 200
 verb in the imperfect or (in the) conditional is expressed by the con-
 à au - †
 ditional of *souhaiter*, viz. *souhaiterais*, and the verb which is in the
 , *c'est à dire,* , à
 imperfect or (in the) conditional in english, must be (in the) perfect
 au en , *devoir* (kk) au *parfait*
 of the subjunctive in french; as, I wish that was done. I wish
subjunctif ; , 221 (bb) 221

• See the different use of *Could*, page 138. † See note † p. 312. ‡ See N. B. note (ii) p. 235.

REMARKS ON THE VERBS.

your sister would come. I wish somebody would help me. I wish
221 95 aider

I had never attempted it. I am glad that I have done (with it.)
 -(m) entreprendre 55 168 - -(m) être débarassé en 55

181. MUST. The verb MUST is conjugated with the three different
 MUST. MUST - se conjuguer* 29 22

persons, viz. I MUST, THOU MUST, HE MUST, &c. but the verb which
 , I MUST, THOU MUST, HE MUST, &c.

represents it, has only the third person singular of each tense, with
 , au singulier 102 ,

il for nominative, viz. *il faut, il fallait, &c.* (see page 174.) then
 , , , &c. alors

the nominative of MUST becomes the nominative of the following verb
 MUST devenir

which is always (in the) subjunctive in french; as, I must see (turn;
 au en ; , ;

it must that I see) that man. Thou must not go alone. He must
 † seul.

come himself. Your brother must go with you. You must not stay
 (m) N.B. † 58 †

long. Must we not speak to him? Must not his friends know it?
 long tems. † (o) 54 † savoir ?

N. B. When the nominative of MUST is indefinite, i. e. when it does
 MUST indéfini,

not relate to any particular²² person, it is generally left out in french,
 se rapporter en particulier , - 183 s'omettre * ,

and the following verb is put in the infinitive; How many⁸ times
 - * à ; N.B. 232

must one tell you the same thing? We must employ our time
 dire le

usefully. People must never be idle. They must help one another.
 utilement. oisif. s'aider 121

182. MUST HAVE meaning to BE IN NEED, is expressed by *il faut,*
 MUST HAVE désigner to BE IN NEED, - * ,

but HAVE is left out, and (the nominative of MUST is made) the object
 HAVE - * , on fait du nominatif de MUST

of *faut*; thus, I MUST HAVE, *il ME faut*; THOU MUST HAVE, *il TE*
 ; ainsi, I MUST HAVE, ; THOU MUST HAVE,

faut; HE MUST HAVE, *il LUI faut, &c.* (see page 175.) I must have a
 ; HE MUST HAVE, , &c. †

horse. He must have a saddle. My brother must have a wife. My
 † selle. † femme.

sister must have a husband. These children must have clothes.
 mari. habit.

* See N. B. note (ii) page 235. † See MUST used negatively, p. 174. ‡ See MUST HAVE, p. 175.

VERB.

RECAPITULATORY *exercice on the foregoing rules.**

I have done. Have you done? Has your brotner done? Has
finir.
 your sister done? My brother has sung a song. My sister has sung
chanter chanson.
 a song. My brothers have sung a song. My sisters have sung a
 song. Have you heard the song which my brother has sung? Have
entendre ⁷⁴
 you heard the song which my sister has sung? Have you heard the
 song which my brothers have sung? Have you heard the song which
 my sisters have sung? They are gone. Are they gone? Are your
partir.
 brothers gone? Are your sisters gone? How do they do²⁴¹? How
¹³⁴ ¹⁸⁵ *se porter?* ¹⁸⁵
 does your mother do? Is all your family well? Is your sister
²⁴¹ ²⁴¹ ²⁹ *famille* ¹³⁴
 returned from Bath? Have the baths been of service to her? I
²⁶⁵ *Bath?* *bain faire du bien* (o)
 think they have. She looks²⁵³ much better than she did before
²²¹ † *avoir mine* ‡ ⁴⁷*avoir* ²¹⁸
 she went. I am glad²²¹ you are come; I wanted to see you. If
y aller. *bien aise* ; ²⁶⁰
 you had not come, I would have called upon you. I have some
²³³ , ²⁶⁶ ⁹
 news to tell you. Do you know that Mrs. B. is here? No,
nouvelles plur. *savoir* *ici?* ¹⁹¹,
 I did not know it. When did¹³⁶ she come? She came this morning.
Quand ²³⁶ *matin.*
 I have just received this note from her. I am glad she is come
²⁴⁴ *recevoir* *billet* ⁵⁸
 (at last), for I longed¹⁴⁰ much to see her. I will wait upon her
enfin, *car* see p. 175. *fort* *passer chez* ⁵⁹
 to-morrow morning. Will you come with me? I do not think I
demain *matin.* ⁵⁸ ²²¹
 shall (be able) to go. I (am afraid) my mother will not be able to
pouvoir *y* ⁷⁰ *craindre* ²²¹
 spare²⁰² me. Since she has been ill, she wishes me to be always
se passer de ⁵⁸ *Depuis que* § *malade,* *vouloir* ||

* See note * p. 291, and add to it that the whole of this exercise on the verbs must be well understood before the exercise is left off.

† You may express, I think they *have*, by *je pense qu'oui*; or if you express *have*, you must add the rest of the sentence and say; *je pense qu'ils lui en ont fait*.

‡ Turn this sentence, *She has much better look than she had &c.*

§ *Has been ill.* The English often use this past tense to express an action or a state of being which is still lasting: as, *I have been ill these six months*; the French can not use it in this sense; so, *Has been ill* must be expressed by *Est malade*, if the person is ill still; by *A été malade*, if she has ceased to be so.

|| Turn, *She wishes that I be &c.* see note * p. 239, which is also applicable to *wish*.

VERB.

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

with her. She will not let me (go out) for fear¹⁹⁵ I should stay too
⁵⁶ (kk) laisser sortir de peur que rester

long. Do you wish me to go? Yes, I do⁷⁰. Well; I will call,
 long-tems. * y⁷⁰ † , N.B. Eh bien; passer,

if I can. You may call, if you will; it is not so far. I do not think
 pouvoir , ; ²⁴⁶ loin. ²²¹

your mother will refuse you to (go out) for such a short⁸ time. I will
 sortir si - peu N.B.

ask her. Do⁷⁰; i. e. ask her. I wish you would lend me the book which
 le ‡ (f) p. 79. N.B. ²²¹ (kk) prêter

you promised me the last time I was at²⁰⁸ your house. I promised
 (s) N.B.

to send it to my cousin after I have read it. She has nothing to
 f. après que ⁶² ⁹⁹

do now, and it is better she should do that than do nothing.
 à présent, valoir mieux ²²¹ ⁸⁹ (ll)

I will lend it you now. I wish you (very much) to read it. I did
 § ⁶² ⁵⁹ ¶ fort

not lend it you then, for fear²¹⁸ you would not return²⁶⁵ it to me in
⁶² ⁵⁹ alors, de peur que - N.B. à

time. I (was afraid) that you would keep it too long. I have long
 tems. craindre ¹²⁵ - ¹⁹⁵ garder ⁶² long-tems.

wished to read it. I could not lend it you, before you asked me for
 ¶ ⁶² pouvoir ⁶² ⁵⁹ , ²¹⁸ ⁵⁹ ²⁶¹

it. Here²⁴⁷ it is. I wish²²¹ it may amuse you (as much) as it has
⁶² N.B. ⁶² amuser autant que ⁶²

amused me. Do you think your cousin would come, if I sent for
⁵⁵ ²²¹ cousine , envoyer chercher

her? I do not think she can. She told me that she expects a friend
²²¹ ⁷⁰ attendre

who promised to call upon her this afternoon. Did she tell you that
²⁶⁶ après midi.

I drank ⁷tea with her yesterday¹⁸³? Yes, she did.⁷⁰ I wish²²¹ you had
 prendre thé hier N.B. N.B. ¹⁸⁰

been there. I wish I had. She is coming to spend the evening with
 y ⁵⁵ (e) p. 74. ** ²⁷¹ ²³⁴

me (to-morrow,¹⁸³) will you come with her? I wish I could; but I
 demain, N.B. (kk) ¹⁸⁰ (nn)⁷⁰ ;

can not. I am engaged at Mrs. A's. We will meet some other day.
⁷⁰ ²⁰⁸ se rencontrer quelque ¹²⁰

* Turn; do you wish that I go? see * p. 239, which is also applicable to wish.

† The verb *aller*, to go, requires a place mentioned after it; if the place has been mentioned before we always add to *aller* the adverbial pronoun *Y*, there; see note (e) p. 74.

‡ Add here, in french, the pronoun *Le*, it. § See note † page 312.

¶ Turn; I wish much that you read it; see note * p. 239, which is also applicable to wish.

¶ Turn; it is long since I wish &c. see note § page 353.

** Instead of repeating this verb in french we should say, *je le souhaite aussi*.

VERB.

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

I have just heard that Miss B. is very ill. Who told you so?
venir de ²⁴⁴ *apprendre* *malade.* *dire* ⁵⁹ *le* ⁵⁴

Miss C. told me so. How²⁴⁶ long has she been ill? She was taken
^{le} ⁵⁴ *Combien y a-t-il que* * *prendre*

ill this morning. They⁹⁰ say she is very ill. I must send to inquire
de mal ²³⁴ *N.B.* ²²¹ *m'informer*

how she is now. I think it is better that I go myself. It (is
²⁴¹ ²²¹ *valoir mieux* (*m*) *N.B.*

necessary) that I should see her. It (is becoming) that I pay her a visit.
falloir ¹²⁵ *convenir* ¹²⁵ *rendre* ¹⁶² ²⁴ *visite.*

Did you hear that Mrs. C. is dead? Indeed! When did she die?
entendre (*bb*) *N.B.* *mourir?* ! ²³⁸

I was with her last night. She seemed (well enough) when I left
²³⁵ *paraître en assez bonne santé* *quitter*

her. She was taken ill suddenly in the night, and she died this
prendre de mal subitement , ²³⁸

morning. I am very sorry she is dead. She was the most estimable
fâché ²²¹ ⁶⁵ ³⁹

woman that I knew⁵⁰. I had invited her daughter to come and spend
connaître. (*nn*) ²⁷¹

(a few) days with me, but I do not think she will come now that
quelques ⁵⁸ , ²²¹

her mother is dead. Were you at the play lately? Yes, my sister
comédie depuis peu? ,

and I went there (the night before last), to see a new actress. We
¹²⁷ *y* ⁵⁴ *avant hier au soir,* *nouvelle actrice.*

had expected some amusement, but we were greatly disappointed. The
attendre , *bien tromper.*

players were very bad. I never saw a worse⁴¹ set. Was it a good
comédiens mauvais. *mauvais troupe.* *Y avait-il beaucoup*

house? Yes, the house was pretty full²⁹. The lower²⁹ boxes
de monde? † , *salle passablement plein.* *premier loge*

were not full, but the upper boxes and the pit were very full.
²⁹ , † *parterre* ³¹

Was my cousin there? I do not know. I did not see her. I met
f. *y* ⁵⁴

her yesterday, as I was going to take²⁶³ a walk, and I went to drink
hier, *N.B.* , §

tea with her. After we had drunk tea, we went into the fields, and
⁵⁶ § ²¹³ ,

we picked several curious⁹² flowers which I intend to draw, and
cueillir curieux (*g*) *avoir dessein dessiner,*

* See note § p. 353.

† This sentence can not be expressed in french according to its literal sense; it must be expressed as if the words were, *Were there many people?*‡ The different sets of boxes are distinguished in french by the names of *premières, secondes, troisiemes, &c. loges.*§ Speaking of drinking tea, coffee, &c. as a meal, we use *Prendre* instead of *Boire*.

VERB.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

send to you. I must make you some little present that²¹⁸ you may
 (o) *quelque* *afinque*

remember me. Do you think I need any thing to make me
se souvenir^{202 58} *avoir besoin de*^{221 111 170}

remember you? I will not forget you (as long) as I live. I was
^{202 58} *oublier* *tant* *que*

in²¹¹ London since I saw you. Did you see the curiosities? I saw
N.B. Londres *depuis que*¹⁹³ *curiosité?*

the Tower, St. Paul's, and the Museum, but I did not find (so many)⁸
Tour, *Muséum,* *tant* *N.B.*

curiosities as I had expected. Did you ever see the Museum? Yes;
que *s'y attendre.*²³⁷

I have seen it several times. Did you hear that my brother is gone
⁵⁵ ²³² *entendre*

to France? No, I did not⁷⁰. When did he go? He (set out) this
⁶ ¹⁰¹ *N.B.* ²³⁸ *partir?* ²³⁸ *partir*

morning. Were you ever in France? No, I never was there. I
¹⁹⁰ *y*^{55 (e)} p. 74.

never had an opportunity to go. I should like to see that country of
²⁴ *occasion* *y*^{70 *} *(bb)*²³⁰

which I have heard (so much). I will go the first opportunity
⁷⁴ *entendre parler* *tant*¹⁸⁸ *y*^{70 *d} *(s)*

I can find. And you, were you ever there? I lived in France
⁵⁵ *demeurer*

several years. I have been nearly all over the country. Was
plusieurs † *presque* † ³⁸ ²³⁰ *Y avait-il*

any body with you? Yes, Mr. B. was with me. How did you travel?
¹⁰⁸ ⁵⁸ ¹⁸⁵ *voyager?*

We travelled sometimes in a coach, sometimes in a gig, and some-
quelquefois *en - carrosse,* *- cabriolet,*

times on (horseback), as it suited us. When did you return? I
^d *cheval,* *comme cela convenir*⁵⁴ ²³⁸ ²⁶⁵

returned about three weeks or a month ago. Which way did you
²⁶⁵ *il y a*²⁴⁶ *environ* ^{246 -} *Par*⁷⁹ *route*

(come back)? I came through Hayre de Grace and Southampton.
revenir? *par* *(b)*

Did you speak french when you went to France? I spoke it a little.
 † *français* m. ⁶ † ⁶² *un peu.*

I spoke it enough to make myself understood: But I knew grammar
 † ⁶² *assez* ¹⁷⁹ *entendre.* *savoir*⁷ *grammaire*

* See note † p. 354.

† Express *been over* by the verb *parcourir*.

‡ *Did speak* and *spoke* require here an explanation. For instance, if I were to say, I met a gentleman in the street yesterday and I *spoke* french to him; I should say, *je rencontra hier un monsieur dans la rue, et je lui PARLAI français*, because I then wish to express what I did, viz. that I *spoke* french. But in the example here given, I do not want to know whether the person spoke french or not, but whether he *knew the language*, which being mere *knowledge* or a *description* of the mind, must, agreeably to 140th rule, be expressed by the imperfe: *parlais, &c.*

VERB.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

pretty well¹⁸³, and I soon learned to speak it well. I now speak it
assez bien N.B., 184 62 184

as fluently as my native³² language. Did you never meet with
⁴³ *coulamment* ⁴³ *natal*²⁹ *langue* ¹⁹⁰ *rencontrer* ²⁰¹

people who spoke english? Yes, sometimes, but not so often as I
²²⁹ , , ¹⁹¹ *que*

wished. Were you in France when the revolution began? No, I
commencer? ,

was in Holland. Were the Dutch glad²⁹ (of it)? Some were glad
*Hollande. Hollandais bien aise en*⁵⁴ ⁹⁴ ²⁹

(of it), and some⁷⁰ were not. Some (were of opinion) that it would do
^{en⁵⁴ ⁹⁴ ⁷² ⁹⁴ *penser* ⁶²}

a (great deal) of good, others thought that it would do a great deal of
⁻ *beaucoup* *bien,* ¹²⁰ *penser* ⁶² ⁻

harm. I did not stay long in Holland; I went to Germany and Italy.
mal. rester ⁶ ; ⁶ *Allemagne* ²⁰⁴

I have been to Ireland too, since¹⁹⁶ I saw you. Well; how do you like
⁶ *Irlande aussi, depuis que* *Eh bien;* ²⁶⁸

that country? I like it (very much); it is a very fine country; but I
²³⁰ ²⁶⁸ ⁶² *beaucoup;* ⁶⁵ ;

will not (go again,) unless, as the Irishman in London says, I can¹ ¹
y retourner, ²¹³ , *comme Irlandais à Londres* * ^{N.}

go by land. I was¹⁴⁰ very sick. I never was so sick in my life
^(kk) ^y⁷⁰ *par terre.* ^{N.B.} *malade.* ¹³⁶ *de vie*

Indeed, every body on board was sick. It⁶² is true that it blew
à la vérité, ¹⁰⁶ *à bord* ^{N.B.} *vrai* *faire*

a tempest. One of our masts fell over board, and we lost almost
tempête. *mât tomber par-dessus* ⁷ , *perdre*

all our sails. We expected every moment that we should go and
voile. *attendre à tout* ^{-(nr)}

sup with the god of the waves. However after a deal of toil
souper *dieu* *flot.* *Cependant* ⁻ *beaucoup* *peine*

and fatigue, we arrived at Cork²⁵ harbour. We landed as soon as
²⁰⁴ , ⁷ *havre.* *débarquer* ⁴³ ⁴³

we could, and we were very well received by our friends who were
pouvoir, *recevoir*

waiting for us. We soon forgot the perils of the sea, and we began
²⁰¹ ¹⁸⁴ *oublier* ,

to divert ourselves (in the best manner) we could. (Next day) I went
divertir *du mieux que* ⁷ *Lendemain*

to my friend Mr. D.'s (country seat.) The weather was²⁴⁰ bad for
²³ *château.* ¹⁴⁰ ^{N.B.} ²⁰⁵

some days, but one morning it grew fine. I (got up) early, and
[,] ²³⁴ ⁶² *devenir* *se lever* *de bonne heure,*

* In a parenthesis, the French generally put the nominative after the verb; so, *turn this sentence thus, as says the Irishman in London.*

VERB.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

I went by myself to take²⁶⁸ a walk in the fields, while the family
207 N.B. N.B. , pendant que
 (were asleep.) I never saw nature more sublime than it⁶² was at that
dormir.¹²⁵ * le⁷⁰ dans
 moment. The sun had just risen, and the dew which was on the grass
244 se lever, rosée 'herbe
 appeared like pearls. I advanced a little into the country, but the
resembler à 'perle. s'avancer un peu 230 , 45
 more I advanced, the more I felt inclined to advance. I saw on all
, 45 se sentir porté de
 sides trees loaded with fruit which was beginning to ripen; an in-
côté 9 200 commencer mûrir, in-
 finite number of birds singing¹⁵³ and warbling on the branches; cattle
fini⁹² 8 oiseau N.B. gazouiller¹³⁸ ; 'bétail
 grazing¹⁵³, or wandering through the meadows; hills and dales covered
paître, N.B. errer à travers prairie ; 'colline 'vallée
 with corn which began to (turn yellow); in short every thing indicated
200 blé jaunir ; en un mot 107 annoncer
 abundance and prosperity. I was¹⁴⁰ so delighted with my walk, that I
'abondance 7 é é N.B. charmé 200 ,
 (went again) every morning that the weather was fine. I stayed there
y⁷⁰ retourner tous les matins 240 rester y⁵⁴
 six weeks, and I do not think it⁶² is possible to spend six weeks
, 221 N.B. 271
 more agreeably than I did. Did you see Mr. A. lately? I saw him
47 le⁷⁰ faire. depuis peu ?
 this morning. I met him as I was going along the street. He
rencontrer comme passer le long de
 told me that he had called upon you, but that you were not in. He
296 , y⁵⁴
 desired me to tell you that he wanted to see you. If you see him
252 260 revoir
 again, tell him that I will call upon him as soon as I have dined.
- , 56 266 58 43 43
 I will.⁷⁰ Did you not go a shooting together yesterday? Yes, we
N.B. à la chasse au fusil ensemble 183 N.B. ,
 did.⁷⁰ Was your excursion successful²⁹? Not very. The ground
N.B. chasse heureux (g) ? Pas beaucoup. terre
 was wet, and the game was very wild. We killed only six brace of
humide, gibier sauvage. tuer couple
 partridges, two hares and four woodcocks. Were there no⁶ pheasants?
perdrix, lièvre bécasse. 246 N.B. fuisan ?
 There were plenty; but they were in some gentlemen's²⁵ plantations,
246 abondance ; 62 † messieurs 7

VERB.

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

and we dared not touch them. Did you walk or ride? We
 oser (kk) toucher y⁵⁴ aller à pied ou à cheval?

rode as far as R. where we left our horses at a small inn there,
 aller à cheval jusqu'à où laisser à auberge qui y est,

and after we had refreshed ourselves a little, we began our excursion.
 après que rafraichir un peu, chasse.

We (went over) I do not know¹⁹² (how many) heaths, fields and coppices.
 parcourir N.B. combien⁸ N.B. bruyère,²⁰⁴ taillis.

I dare say we walked 20 miles. When we arrived at the inn, we were
 pouvoir²²¹ ²⁶³ mille.

so tired that we could not return home that night. We slept there,
 lasser (kk)²⁶⁵ au logis¹³ soir-là. coucher y⁵⁴,

and we (came home) this morning. We intend to try again to-morrow.
 revenir essayer encore demain.

Will you come with us, if we go? I will go, if you will promise
 y^{70*}

me to return in time for dinner. If we find that it is too late, we
²⁶⁵ à tems dîner. trop

may dine in the country. I can not stay. We shall have company
 pouvoir † ²³⁰ (kk) rester.

to dinner, and I must be there. Then I think it is better for
 y⁵⁴ Donc¹⁸⁴ ²²¹ il vaut mieux que

us to go after dinner. We may set out as soon as the dinner is
 † y^{70*} pouvoir † ⁴³ ⁴³

over. We generally¹⁸⁴ dine late; I am afraid it⁶² will be too late to
 fini. ordinairement tard; ²²¹ N.B. ¹⁹⁵ ¹⁷⁰

go then. I think the best thing we can do, is to (put it⁵⁴ off)
 y⁷⁰ alors. ²²¹ (s) ⁵⁰ , c'est de remettre

till after to-morrow. We may then take our own time. We shall
 jusqu'à après † alors -

(set out) as early as you please. I wish your cousin would come
 partir d'aussi bonne heure qu'il plaira §. ²²¹

with us. I wish you would send somebody to let²⁴⁶ him know. I do
²²¹ ⁹⁵ N.B. ||

not know a man whose company is more pleasant. Bring him with
⁷⁴ ⁷ agréable. ²⁵⁶ ⁵⁶

you, if he will come. I see him coming, I will ask him⁵⁴. Your
 , ¶ ||

cousin and I go a shooting the day after to-morrow, will you be one
⁵² ¹²⁷ à la chasse au fusil - - , (kk) -

of the party? I should be very happy to accompany you, but I do
 partie? bien aise accompagner ,

* See note † p. 354. † The french would here use the future.

‡ Turn; It is better that we go.

§ Make the verb Please impersonal, and express You please, as if the english was, it will please you.

¶ Add here the pronoun Je, and say Le lui. 70 rule.

¶ See note † p. 312.

VERB.

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

want²⁶⁰ it. Will you take²⁶³ a walk when your letter is finished?
avoir besoin en ⁵⁴ *N.B.*

I can not; I must take it to the (post office) as fast as I can. It
⁷⁰ ; ²⁵⁶ ⁶² *poste* ⁴³ *vite* ⁴³

must go to-night. I am afraid it will be too late when I am
partir ²³⁵ ²²¹ ¹⁹⁵ *tard*

there. I will go with you, if you will wait for me. I can not wait;
^y ⁵⁴ *aller* , ²⁰¹ (*kk*) ;

I must go directly. Will you call upon me when you (come back)?
^y ⁷² *tout à l'heure.* ²⁶⁶ *revenir* ?

I do not think I can. My sisters go to the play; they will have¹⁷⁴ me
²²¹ ⁷⁰ *comédie* ; *N.B.*

go with them, and I must go. Will you call when you come back
⁵⁸ , ⁷⁰ *passer*

from the play? I will see. I will call, if it is not too late when the
de ²⁶⁶ ,

play is over. Why did you not call in (coming back) from hunting?
finie. * ²⁶⁶ *en* *revenir* *de* *chasse* ?

I could not. It⁰² was late, the weather was bad, and I was tired.
⁷⁰ *N.B.* *tard,* *tems* ²⁴⁰ , *lassé.* †

I am tired of those violent²² exercises. I must get a wife. Marry,²⁶¹
ennuyé † ²⁰ *exercice.* *prendre* *se marier,* ‡

says a proverb, you will do well; do not marry, you will do better
proverbe, ; † , (*b*)p.72.

I do not care for your proverbs. I must have a wife. I will have
se soucier ²⁰⁰ ¹⁸² ||

one who is tolerably handsome, who has some common sense and a
passablement , ⁹ *commun* ³² *un*

little⁸ fortune. Do you think you can find a woman who is so
^{peu} *N.B. bien.* ²²¹ *trouver*

accomplished? If I thought that I could not find one, I would never
accomplir ? ¶ *pouvoir* *en* ⁷⁰ *une,*

be married. I like your sister. Do you think she will go to the
se marier. ²⁶¹ ²²¹

assembly to-night? If I hear that she goes, I will send you word.
assemblée ²³⁵ *apprendre* ^{** 70,} *le faire* ⁵⁴ *savoir.*

I do not think she will⁷⁰. She has not been well for some time,
²²¹ ^{**} *N.B.* ²³⁷ ²⁴¹ *depuis quelque*

* Did refers here to the period of hunting, which was yesterday.

† Tired—*Lassé, Ennuyé.* *Lassé* is said of the body; *Ennuyé* is said of the mind.

‡ See the imperative of a reflective verb, p. 114.

¶ *Will have* may here be expressed two ways, agreeably to the idea which you wish to express.

If you wish to denote that you know the person you describe, and are certain to have her, you express *Will have one* by *J'en aurai une* &c. with the following verbs in the indicative.

If you want to denote that you wish to find such a person as you describe, you must express *Will have one* by *J'en veux une*, with the following verbs in the subjunctive. See 174 rule.

¶ See note † p. 337.

** See note † p. 354.

VERB.

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

and she (is afraid) of (going out), for fear of (catching cold). I am
craindre *sortir*, *de peur de* *s'enrhumer*.

sorry²²¹ she does not come, for I intended to dance with her. She is
fâché , *avoir dessein* ⁵⁸ ⁶⁵

the most agreeable woman that I ever⁵⁰ knew. When did you see her?
⁴⁴ ⁸² *jamais* ¹³⁶

I saw her this morning. She called at²⁰⁸ our house, but she did not
²³⁴ ²⁶⁸ * *N.B.* , *

stop. Did she give you the book which I sent you? Yes, she did⁷⁰;
rester. ⁷⁴ , *N.B.*

i. e. give it me⁷⁰. Did you read it? Yes, I read a good part (of it).
N.B. , *partie en* ⁵⁵

How do you like it? Did it entertain you? I like it very well;
¹⁸⁵ ²⁸⁸ ⁶² *amuser* ⁶² ;

it entertained me (very much). I never read a book which entertained
⁶² *fort*. ¹⁸³ ⁷⁴

me more. Do you think the foreign³² mail will arrive to-day? It
¹⁸³ ²²¹ *étranger* ²⁹ *malle* *aujourd'hui?* ⁶²

is arrived. It arrived early this morning. I wonder that (there is)
⁶² ²³⁸ *de bonne heure* ²³⁴ *s'étonner* ²⁴⁶

no⁸ letter for me. I am afraid my friends have forgotten me. I wrote
N.B. ⁵⁸ ²²¹ ¹⁹⁵ *oublier* ⁵⁵

to them (long ago). It is time that I should hear from them. I
(o) *(il y a long-tems)*. *Il* *tems* ²⁷⁵ †

wish they would write to me. I will not write to them again,
²²¹ *(o)* *récrire (o)* - ,

until²¹⁸ I have heard from them. I think they do not wish me to
jusqu' à ce que ²⁷⁵ † ²²¹ †

know what is passing at home. I am afraid they will think that I
savoir ⁶⁴ - *se passer* *au logis*. ²²¹ ¹⁹⁵

stay here too long. I suppose they wish me to come²⁶⁴ home, but
rester ici *long-tems*. ²⁵⁴ ²²¹ || *s'en retourner*,²⁶⁵

I do not intend to go back yet. I will stay here as long as I can.
avoir *dessein* *s'en retourner* *encore*. ⁴³ ⁴³

We are going to drink tea, will you take a cup with us? I do not
prendre *thé*, ⁷⁰ *tasse* *Je le veux*

care. I was going to Mrs. D.'s, but I (may as well) stay here. I
bien. † ²⁰⁶ , *(ferai aussi bien) de*

can not be in better company. What were you looking for when
(kk) *en* ⁸³ ²⁰¹

I met you? I was looking for my little boy who has been wander-
²⁰¹ *garçon* *errer*

* See note * p. 225.

† Express from them by *de leurs nouvelles*, or by *des nouvelles d'eux*

‡ Turn; they do not wish that I know &c. † See note * page 233, which is also applicable to wish

¶ We could not say in this sense, *je ne m'en soucie pas*, for I do not care.

VERB.

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

ing about all the afternoon. I saw him playing with the other
à et. là *après midi.* 120

children, as I was passing by your house. Your house is well built,
, comme 207 *bâtir,*

but it is not well situated. It is (too much) exposed to the wind.
 62 *situer.* 62 *trop* *exposer* *vent.*

We had planted a great number of trees round it, but the drought
planter *autour* 64, *sécheresse*

has nearly killed them all. Is it⁶² the house which your father
presque faire mourir 55 *N.B.* 74

got built? No, it⁶² is not; he has sold it⁶², and has bought this⁸⁸.
faire bâtir † *, N.B.* 70 ; *vendre* 55, *acheter* *N.B.*

Have you seen (the one) which he has begun to build? No, I have
*celle ** 74 *commencer*

not⁷⁰. You have a nice³³ library; may I look at it⁵⁴? Surely,
N.B. *joli* 29 *bibliothèque; pouvoir voir -* 62 *Assurément,*

you may. These books are well bound, but they are very badly
 70 *relier,* *mal*

printed. I have lately read some very entertaining ones. I will
imprimer. *depuis peu †* 10 *amusant* *en* 55 †

shew you the books which I have read. I have also bought several
 74 *plusieurs*

curious³² things. See the fine things which I have bought. I want
curieux 29 (*g*) *belle* 260

to shew them to your sister. How long is it since you saw her?
 246 *que* 196

I saw her as she was coming to town. I am glad²²¹ you are come,
comme 7 *bien aise*

and that your sister is coming too. I am surprized she has written
aussi. 221

to you, and has not mentioned it. Have you sent the books which
 (o) , 221 *parler* *en* 55 74

you were speaking of into the country²³⁰? No, I have not sent them
 203 213 163

yet⁶³. I will send them this evening. Did you lend your cousin
encore. 234 162

those which he asked you for? Yes, I did; i. e. *lend them to him.*⁷⁰
 88 201 *N.B.*

Did you hear that my uncle B. has given my brother a horse? He
oncle 162 103

has lent him money to buy one, and I am sure he never will ask
 162 *en* 70 *un,* 221 190 *redemander*

him for it again. He has also made my eldest³² sister a present of a
 162 || 59 ¶ *ainé* 29 162 24 163

* We could not say *l'une* for the one.
 † See note † page 296.

‡ See note † page 241. † See note † page 312.
 ¶ Again is expressed by *re* prefixed to *demander*.

VERB

RECAPITULATORY *exercice on the foregoing rules.*

watch. Did he ever give your other sister any¹¹¹ thing? No, he
montre. 120 162 163
 never did⁷⁰. He often promised her something, but he never gave her
 N.B. 184 162 98 163
 any thing. She should try to please him. She should pay more
 99 *essayer* 203 *faire*
 attention than she does to what⁸⁴ she is told. She says she pays all
 47 *faire* 163 92 221 29
 the attention she can to every thing¹⁶³ she does. Sometimes, not
 (s) *tout ce que* , *pas*
 always. Take the books which I gave you into the (school room)
 256 213 *école* 163 -
 with you. Now, I must go. Will you come with me? I can not.
 , *s'en aller.* 58 70
 You might come, if you would. I might go (to be sure); but then
 , *y* 70 *il est vrai;* *alors*
 I must neglect business which ought not to be neglected. Come,
négliger 9 *affaires* ,
 that we may divert ourselves a little. You must have a little⁸ diver-
afin que *divertir* *un peu.* N.B. *amuse-*
 sion. You must not always be (shut up) in the house. Send me my
ment. *renfermer*
 servant, that²¹⁰ I may tell him to get our horses ready. If you
domestique, *afinque* *apprêter* - *
 would have (set out) a little sooner, we might have diverted ourselves
partir *tôt* 41 , *nous* 54
 (very much). If I could have got my horse when I ordered it, I
beaucoup. *avoir* *demande* ,
 might have been ready as soon as you. I should have had it sooner,
prêt 43 43 41 ,
 if my brother could have spared it. I wish my father had bought
se passer *en* 49 221
 (the one) which you recommended to him. I wish you would sel.
celui † (o) 221
 him yours. I would have sold mine (long²⁴⁶ ago), if I could have found
 162 85 85 *il y a long-tems,*
 any body who would have bought it. I will have one like yours.
 108 *sembler* *au* 85
 If I had known that you wished to sell yours, I might have found
 ‡ *vouloir* ,
 somebody who would have bought it. You should have told me⁵⁰ so
 95 *le* 54
 then; I might have bought it myself. I may perhaps find somebody
alors (m) N.B. *peut-être* (kk) 95

* Ready is expressed in the word *Apprêter.* † We could not say *l'un for the one.*

‡ See p. 140 and 152, the difference between *Savoir* and *Connaître*

VERB.

RECAPITULATORY *exercice on the foregoing rules*

yet¹⁸³. I wish you could. I could have sold it myself long ago,
encore, N.B. 221 70 55 (m) N.B. *il a long-tems*,
 if I could have done without it then. Can you do without it now?
 280 *en alors*, 280 *en*
 I think I can. My sisters wish you to come and spend an evening
 221 70 * (nn) 271 234
 with us. When will you come? I can not tell. I will come as soon
Quand 70 264 43
 as I can. You must bring your sister with you. Oh! we can not
 43 256 !
 come both at the (same time). Somebody must stay at home. The
 122 *à la fois*, 95 *rester au logis*.
 house can not be left (to itself). Come; you are rather too hard
 92 92 *laisser seule*, *Allons*; *un peu sévère*
 upon her. She must have a little⁸ amusement too. You should have
envers 58 *un peu* N.B. *aussi*.
 brought her with you to-day. Why did you not bring her? I did
 256 256
 not know that you wanted²⁰⁰ so much to see her, or else I would
avoir si grande envie , *autrement*
 have brought her. I will bring her the next time I come. Do.
 256 256 232 (s) 70
 I will⁷⁰. Did my sister tell you that I have been in the country?
 N.B. *à* 230
 No, she did not⁷⁰. When did you go? I think I saw you (at the)
 , N.B. *y*⁷⁰ 221 *au*
 beginning of the week. You could¹³⁶ not see me this week, for
commencement *semaine*, *pouvoir* , *car*
 I went last³² week. When did you return? I returned this
 70 7 238 265 238 2
 afternoon. Did you call upon our friends? I just¹⁸⁴ saw them,
 266 *seulement* ,
 as I was passing by the house. How were they? They seemed
 207 195 241 *paraître*
 very well. Did you come (that way) (on purpose)? Yes, I
en très bonne santé, 233 *par là* *exprès?* ,
 did⁷⁰. I wonder at your going there again so soon. Will you
 N.B. *s'étonner* † *retourner y*⁵³ - *si*
 never cease doing what you are desired not¹⁹⁰ to do? I should not
cesser 94 92 *dire*²⁵² N.B.
 find fault with your calling sometimes, when you happen to be
trouver mauvais † *passer* *il vous arrive de* -

* Turn; *wish* that *you come* &c. see note * p. 239, which is also applicable to *wish*.

† Turn; that *you have* ²³⁸ *gone there again so soon*. see 165 rule.

‡ Turn; that *you should call* ¹⁴⁹ *sometimes* &c. see 156 rule.

VERB.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

going (that way), but I wonder at your going there purposely, after
par là, s'étonner y⁵⁴ exprès

having promised me that you would not go again without asking me
55 ne plus

leave. You are too¹⁸³ fond of rambling; are you²⁸² not? How
permission. - trop aimer à roder; n'est-ce pas? 183

could I help it⁵⁴? I was accused of neglecting⁹ people who have
s'empêcher en⁵⁹ 92 négliger 229

been kind to me; can I be blamed for endeavouring to justify
eu des bontés pour⁵⁸; 92 de chercher

myself? I do not blame you for justifying yourself; I only wish you
me⁵⁴ de vous⁵⁴; 184 †

not to do things which may be disagreeable to your friends. Come,
9 désagréable²⁹ Allons,

ladies, amuse yourselves with reading this pretty tale, instead of losing
mesdemoiselles, 56 109 conte, au lieu

your time in playing. You should abstain from looking about you,
s'abstenir autour de ,

whilst you are learning your lessons. That is not the way to
pendant que Ce n'est pas là moyen

improve yourselves. You are very¹⁸³ fond of scolding. What plea-
nerfectionner vous⁵⁴ - beaucoup aimer à gronder.

sure can you have in vexing people so¹⁸³? You are always
chagriner 229 ainsi N.B.? - 184

finding fault with every thing one does. I am quite tired with
trouver à redire à tout ce (s) 90 189 ennuyé 200

always hearing the same thing. If you paid attention to what you
184 chose. faire 84

are told, there would not be occasion for repeating it so often. You
92 , il besoin de

never do things (at a proper time). How can I help it? I never
190 à propos. Que faire † y⁵⁴

know the (time of the day). You should have a watch. Yes; I
'heure qu'il est. montre. ;

ought to have a watch. I want²⁶⁰ a watch (very much). When
avoir besoin grand. ||

shall I have one? You shall have one as soon as you behave well.
en⁷⁰ 70 se comporter

Will you have mine? No, I do not like yours. It is an old one.
85 , 63 - vieille -

I will have a new one, or I will have none. Then¹⁸⁴ you must
en⁷⁰ une neuve, - en⁷⁰ † † Donc

* Turn; that you have²³⁸ gone there purposely &c. see 156 rule.

† Turn; I only wish that you do not things &c. see note * p. 239.

‡ Help, in the sense of to avoid, is expressed by *Faire, Éviter, Empêcher*, never by *Aider*.

|| Turn; I have great need of a watch. †† Express None by *Pas*, with *Ne* before the verb.

VERB.

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

wait till²¹⁸ you can buy one yourself. What will you have us do
attendre que en⁷⁰ (m) N.B. 83 faire
 now? I would have you go and take a walk²⁰⁸ till dinner²⁵ time;
(nn) N.B. jusqu'au 7 ;
 and when you have (eaten your dinner), I would have you go to your
diné, prendre -
 books. What! so soon. Must we have no play? No, you shall
*83 ! si tôt. * jouer?*
 not play before²¹⁸ you have said your lessons. May we play then?
avant que alors?
 Yes, you may play, if you say them well. You should (get up)
se lever
 sooner; then you would have plenty of time to play. If you would
41 ; alors tout le tems
 have got up when I called you, you might have played as long as
se lever appeler , 43 long-tems 43
 you would. I wonder that the people whom we expected are not come
175 s'étonner 229 attendre
 yet¹⁸⁵. Is it⁶² not astonishing that they should keep us waiting so
encore. N.B. étonnant faire attendre si
 long? They should not have promised, if they found that they
long-tems? promettre, prévoir †
 could not come. I might have asked somebody else. We might
prier quelqu' autre personne.
 have taken²⁶³ a walk before we sat at table. For the future I will²⁷⁴
N.B. avant de nous mettre à venir N.B.
 have my orders punctually attended⁹² to. You should not have relied
‡ exactement qu'on suive - compter
 upon people you did not know. If you would have followed my advice,
229 (s) suivre avis,
 this would not have happened. You see; we can not console our-
89 238 arriver. ; nous 54
 selves for being deceived by our enemies, and betrayed by our friends;
de tromper par ennemis, trahir ;
 and we are often satisfied with being so by ourselves. I have received
satisfaire 200 le 54 (m) N.B. recevoir
 the letters which you have written to me respecting the affair which
(o) 55 au sujet de
 I had proposed to you, and after having read them attentively, I have
proposer (o) 55 , 55 avec attention,
 found that, if I had undertaken it, I should have met with
reconnaître , † entreprendre 55, trouver 801
 obstacles which I had not foreseen. I am very glad you have not⁷⁰.
prevoir. bien 221 N.B.

* Express this sentence as if it were, *Must we not play?* † See note † p. 337 ‡ See * p. 239.

ADVERB.

183. ADVERBS, in french as in english, are generally placed after
*Adverbe*⁷, *en* *comme* - *se placer*
 the verb, when the tense is simple, and between the auxiliary verb and
verbe, *entre* *auxiliaire*³²
 the participle, when it is compounded; I understand french pretty
participe,⁶² *composé*; *entendre*⁷ *assez*
 well¹⁸³, but I have not yet learned it long enough to speak it fluently.
bien, N.B. *encore* *long-tems assez**¹⁷⁰ *62* *coulamment*.

N. B. The adverb expressing some circumstance of the verb, must
quelque *devoir*
 be placed immediately after the verb which it modifies; so, instead
se placer *immédiatement* *62* *modifier*; † *ainsi*, *au lieu*,
 of saying; You pronounce french very well. I wish to learn it (very
¹³⁴ ; *prononcer*⁷ *très*
 much.) You must take more⁸ pains in future than you do. I will
fort.¹⁸¹ *N.B. peine à l'avenir*⁴⁷
 do every thing that you have recommended to me carefully. Do you
tout ce que *recommandé* (o)⁵⁵ *soigneusement*.
 not go into the country to-morrow? say; You pronounce very well
à *demain?* *dites*;
 french. I wish (very much) to learn it. You must take in future
⁷ *fort* ¹⁸¹ *à l'avenir*
 more pains than you do. I will do carefully every thing that you
⁴⁷
 have recommended to me. Do you not go to-morrow into the country?
 (o)⁵⁵ *à*

184. Some adverbs may be placed in english either before or after
Quelques - *se placer* *ou*
 the verb which they modify, but the french³² adverbs which represent
français *représenter*
 them must always be placed, (agreeably to) the general³² rule, after the
devoir *se placer*, *suiwant* - *générale* *règle*,
 verb, or between the auxiliary and the participle; as, What is the
ou *auxiliaire*⁸²
 reason that you so seldom come to see me? (say, *that you come so*
raison *si rarement*
seldom &c.) I sometimes think that you never will come again. You
*quelquefois*¹⁹⁰ *revenir* -
 certainly have no reason to think so. I very seldom (go out,) and
certainement *sujet* *le*⁵⁴ *rarement* *sortir*,
 when I go, my sisters generally come with me, and I never can
sortir, *ordinairement* ⁵⁸ ¹⁹⁰
 bring them so far as your²⁰⁸ house; but I very often think of you.
amener *jusque chez* *N.B.* ; ²⁰⁰ ⁵⁸

* The adverb *Assez*, like the other adverbs, is always placed *before* the adjective or adverb which it modifies: so say, *enough long*.
 † See note † p. 241.

REMARKS ON THE ADVERBS.

185. How. How used to denote admiration is expressed by *que*,
How. How employé désigner - s'exprimer par,
 and the adjective or adverb which follows how, must be placed after
adjectif 3adverbe HOW, devoir - se placer
 the verb in french; as, How long you have been! How late you
en ; , long tems tard
 come! How glad I am to see you! How heartily I thank you!
aise de bon cœur
 How sweet these flowers smelt! How beautiful those roses are!
bon (bb) sentir! (bb) !
 In asking a question, how is expressed by *comment* to denote the
En faire HOW - (ii) N.B. par 170 désigner
 manner, and by *combien* to denote a quantity; How shall we go?
manière, quantité;
 How shall we carry our luggage? How shall we know where you are?
porter bagage? savoir où
 How many⁸ people shall we be? How much⁸ money have you got?
N.B. 229 N.B. argent 270

186. How LONG. When HOW LONG refers to the beginning of
HOW LONG. HOW LONG se rapporter commencement
 time, it is expressed by *combien*, when it refers to the duration, it
7 , - (ii) N.B. , durée,
 is expressed by *combien de tems*; and when it refers to the end, it
- ; fin,
 is expressed by *jusqu'à quand*; as, How long have you been learn-
- ; ,
 ing french? or, how long is it⁴⁶ since you learn french? How long
*155 y a-t-il que **
 do you intend to learn? How long will you abuse²⁰² my patience?
avoir 125 dessein abuser de

187. How FAR. When HOW FAR is the nominative of a verb, it
How FAR. HOW FAR nominatif ,
 is expressed by *combien*; and when it is its object, it is expressed
- (ii) N.B. ; 17 objet, -
 by *jusqu'ou*; as, How far is your house from here? or how far is²⁴⁶ it
; , † y a-t-il
 from here to your house? How far is Windsor from London? How
ici † 246 Londres?
 far do you intend to go? How far shall we go to meet²⁷³ you?
avoir dessein au devant de

* These two ways of expression are rendered by the latter way in french. By this expression *Have been learning*, is meant that the person continues to learn; so to express the same idea in french, you must use the present of the verb, and say; *Vous apprenez*, not *Vous avez appris*, which would mean that the person has ceased to learn. Again, *How long have you been in England?* may be expressed by *Combien de tems avez-vous été en Angleterre?* or by *Combien y a-t-il que vous êtes en Angleterre?* The former of these expressions meaning that the person has left England; the latter meaning that the person is still in England. Learners are very apt to confound these two ideas. See note § p. 353.

† These two ways of expression must be rendered by the latter way in French.

REMARKS ON THE ADVERBS.

188. HOWEVER, HOWSOEVER, before an adjective, a participle, or an
HOWEVER, HOWSOEVER, ²⁰⁶ *adjectif, participe*

adverb, is expressed by *quelque*, which requires *que* after the adject-
*adverbe, - s'exprimer ** , *demande*

tive, participle or adverb, and the following verb (in the) subjunctive :
 , , *qui suit* ³² *au* *subjunctif ;*

However learned you are. However diligent she is.
savant

N. B. If the nominative of the verb is a noun, it is generally
 - *nom,* ⁶³ - ¹⁸³

placed after the verb ; However learned your master is, &c. These
*se placer ** ; *savant* *maître* ,

words follow the same rule as WHATEVER, WHATSOEVER, rule 117.
mot *règle que* *WHATEVER, WHATSOEVER,*

189. QUITE, ENTIRELY, before an adjective or a participle, are
QUITE, ENTIRELY, ²⁰⁶ *ou* , -

generally expressed by *tout* ; as, My shoes are quite (worn out.) My
 * ; , *soulier* *usé* ¹⁵⁸.

boots are quite worn out. My mother is quite astonished (at it.)
botte *étonné* ¹⁵⁸ *en* ⁵⁵.

N. B. When *tout*, in this sense, is followed by an adjective femi-
 , *sens,* *suivre* ²⁰⁰

nine beginning with a consonant, melody requires that it should
qui commence *par* *consonne,* ⁷ *demande*

be¹⁴⁶ of the same gender and number as the adjective ; My boots are
¹⁴⁸ ³ *que* ;

quite new. My sisters are quite tired¹⁵⁸. They are quite ill.
 † *neuve.* *fatigué.* *malade.*

NEGATIVE ADVERBS.

190. The negative expressions *Ne pas, Ne point, NO, NOT ; Ne plus,*
négative ³² , , *NO, NOT ;*

NO MORE, NOT ANY MORE ; *Ne jamais, NEVER ; Ne guère, BUT LITTLE,*
NO MORE, NOT ANY MORE ; , *NEVER ;* , *BUT LITTLE,*

VERY LITTLE ; *Ne nullement, BY NO MEANS, form only one negation ;*
VERY LITTLE ; , *BY NO MEANS, ne faire que* ;

Ne is always placed before the verb, and *pas, point, plus, jamais,*
 - *se placer ** ²⁰⁶ , , , , ,

guère, nullement, like the other adverbs, are placed either after the
 , , *comme* , - *se placer ** *ou*

verb, or between the auxiliary and the participle ; as, I do not like
 , *auxiliaire* *participe ;* , *aimer*

that man. I never found so much² deceit. He never keeps his word.
² ¹³⁶ *tant* *N.B. tromperie.* *tenir* *parole.*

I know him but little. I will not deal any more with him.
faire d'affaires ⁵⁸

* See N. B. note (ii) page 235.

† Note * page 243.

REMARKS ON THE NEGATIVE ADVERBS.

193. NOT after the verb TAKE CARE, *Prendre garde*, is not expressed
Not TAKE CARE, , - s'exprimer
 in french, if we⁹⁰ put the following verb in the infinitive, and it is
 , N.B. 32 à , 62 -
 expressed by *ne*, if we⁹⁰ put the following verb (in the) subjunctive ;
 (ii) N.B. , N.B. 32 au ;
 Take care not to spoil it. Take care that he does not spoil it. I
Prenez garde de * *gâter*
 will take care not to let him (go out). I will take care that he does
 * *laisser sortir*.
 not go out. Take care not to let yourself (be cheated) by those
 * *laisser vous*⁵⁴ *tromper* (bb)
 people. Take care that those people do not cheat you.
²²⁹ ²²⁹ *tromper* .

194. The verb which follows *Empêcher*, to HINDER, to PREVENT,
suivre , to HINDER, to PREVENT,
 may be expressed two ways ; either by the subjunctive preceded by
¹⁷⁸ - (ii) N.B. *de deux manières* ; ou *par* *précédé* ²⁰⁰
ne, or by the infinitive without this particle ; I will hinder him from
 , *par* (bb) *particule* ;
 (going out). That will not prevent me from seeing him. I can hin-
*sortir*¹⁵⁴ (bb) ¹⁵⁴
 der you both²²² from going out, and from seeing each other, if I choose.
 N.B. , *vous voir* ¹²¹ , *vouloir*.

195. The verbs *craindre*, *Avoir peur*, *Appréhender*, to FEAR, to be
 , to FEAR, to be
 AFRAID ; the conjunctions *de peur que*, *de crainte que*, LEST, FOR FEAR
 AFRAID ; , LEST, FOR FEAR
 that, require *ne* before the verb which follows them, if we⁹⁰ fear
 that, *demande* , N.B. *craindre*
 that the action expressed by that verb will happen¹⁴⁶ ; then the verb
*exprimer*¹⁵⁷ *arriver* ; † *alors*
 has no⁹ negation in english ; I (am afraid) somebody has seen us⁵⁵.
 N.B. *en* ; *craindre* ²²¹ ⁹⁵ ¹⁴⁶ *vu* ¹⁵⁹
 Let us not stay here for fear some misfortune should happen to us.
 - - *rester* ²¹⁸ *quelque* ¹⁴⁸ ⁵⁴
 Go with that lady lest²¹⁸ she should (lose her way). She is afraid
Aller *de peur que* *s'égarer* ¹⁴⁹
 that her mother should find her here. But observe that *ne* is left out, if
¹⁴⁶ ¹⁴⁸ *observer* - *s'ometre*,

* *Prendre garde*, in this sense, meaning to *Guard from* or *against*, if the negative NOT were expressed in french, it would be the same as if you said in english ; *Guard from not spoiling it*. As for the *Ne* which is used after *Prendre garde*, *Empêcher*, *Craindre*, *Avoir peur*, &c. when we put the following verb in the subjunctive, it seems to be the *Ne* or *Quin* which the Latins used in similar instances, and which, without any apparent reason for it, has been introduced into the french language.

† We fear that an action *will happen*, when we *do not wish* for that action ; and we *fear* that it *will not happen*, when we *wish* for it ; so when I say ;

I am afraid it will rain, I mean that I do not wish for rain.

I am afraid it will not rain, I mean that I wish that there should be rain

REMARKS ON THE NEGATIVE ADVERBS.

the verb which follows *craindre*, *avoir peur*, &c. is in the infinitive ;
 , , &c. à ;

as, I was afraid of hurting¹⁵⁴ you. I did not do it, for fear of dis-
 , ¹⁴⁰ *bless* ¹³⁶ *faire* , *de peur de dé-*

pleasing¹⁵⁴ your mother. We were afraid of doing wrong.
plaire ²⁰² *mal*.

If we⁹⁰ fear that the action expressed by the verb will not happen¹⁴³,
 N.B. *exprimer* ¹⁵⁷ see note † p. 372.

the english verb is attended by a negation which must be expressed
anglais ³² *accompagné de* *il faut - exprimer*

by the corresponding³² negation in french ; I am afraid nobody will
qui y correspond *en* ; ²²¹ ⁹⁷

come. I am afraid they have not seen us. Let us not go further⁴¹,
¹⁴⁶ ²²¹ ¹⁴⁶ ⁵⁵ - - *loin*,

for fear we should not have time to (come back) for dinner.
²¹⁸ - ¹⁴⁸ ⁷ *revenir*.

N.B. The verbs *nier*, to DENY, and *douter*, to DOUBT, attended
 , to DENY, , to DOUBT,

by a negation, the conjunction *à moins que*, UNLESS ; and *si* in the
de , , UNLESS ;

sense of *à moins que*, require also *ne* before the verb which follows
 , *demand* ²⁰⁶ *suivre*

them ; I do not deny that I have been there sometimes. He does not
 ; ¹⁴⁵ *y* ⁵⁵ *quelquefois*.

deny that he has asked your cousin. He does not doubt but he will
¹⁴⁵ *cousin*. *que*

obtain her. I have no⁹ doubt but they will be married²⁶¹ soon. I will
obtenir ¹⁴⁵ N.B. *doute que* ¹⁴⁵ N.B. ¹³⁵

not (go out) unless²¹⁰ it be fine. I will not go, unless you come with me.
sortir *à moins que* ²¹⁰ ⁷⁰ , ²¹⁸ ⁵⁸

196. *Il y a que*, IT IS SINCE ; *depuis que*, SINCE, require *ne* before
 , *IT IS SINCE* ; , *SINCE*, ²⁰⁶

the verb which follows them, when we⁹⁰ wish to denote that there
 , N.B. *vouloir* ¹⁷² *désigner*

has not been any⁹ action since the period (which we mention) ; It is
eu N.B. *depuis* *période* *dont on fait mention* ; *

long since I have met you. It is more than three months since I
 † *rencontrer* ⁵⁵ *plus* ⁴⁸ *mois* †

saw you. How have you been²⁴¹ since I had the pleasure to see you ?
¹³⁶ ⁵⁵ , ¹⁸⁵ ²³⁷ *se porter* ¹³⁶ *plaisir*

But we⁹⁰ should not use *Ne*, if we⁹⁰ wished to denote that there has
 N.B. *employer* , N.B. *vouloir* ²⁴⁶

* The reason of this difference is that the English speak with reference to the *last action* that passed, the French, on the contrary, speak with reference to the time in which there has not been any action, and the idea is the same as the English would express by these words ; *I have not met you for this long time. I have not seen you for more than three months.*

† Observe that *Since* after *Il y a*, is expressed by *Que* only, not by *Depuis que*,

REMARKS ON THE NEGATIVE ADVERBS

been an action; as, It is a month since he is gone. Have you seen
eu * ; , ²⁴⁶ *mois* † *partir*.

him since he is returned? He has been at home this fortnight. †
²⁶⁵ *au logis* ²⁴⁶ *quinze jours*.

197. We⁹⁰ also use the negative participle *ne* before the verb which
^{N.B.} *employer* ³² *particule*
 follows *autre*, OTHER; *autrement*, OTHERWISE; These things are quite
 , OTHER; , OTHERWISE; ¹³ ¹⁸⁹
 different from what you say. Do you never speak otherwise than
autres - *que*
 you think? I know people who often act otherwise than they say.
²²⁹ *agir*

N.B. *ne* is also used after the comparative adjective *meilleur*, and
 - *s'employer* *comparatif*³²
 the adverbs *plus*, *moins*, *mieux*, see rule 47; and with several other
 , , , *règle* ; *plusieurs*
 words mentioned under their respective heads, viz. *personne*,
dont il est fait mention *respectifs* ³² *chapitre*, à savoir ,
qui que ce soit, rule 97; *rien*, *quoi que ce soit*, rule 99; *aucun*,
 , *règle* ; , ; ,
 rule 100; *nul*, *pas un*, rule 101; *ni l'un ni l'autre*, rule 124.
 ; , , ; , .

198. BUT used in the sense of the adverb ONLY, is expressed by
BUT *employé* *sens* ONLY, - *s'exprimer* *par*
ne before the verb, and by *que* after it; We were but six people,
²⁰⁶ ⁻⁸⁴ ; ¹⁴⁰ ,
 or only six people²²⁹ at table. We drank but four bottles, or only
personnes
 four bottles of wine. We were but a few miles, or only a few miles
bouteille ¹⁴⁰ , *à quelques milles*
 from (the place). We met nobody but a woman, or only a woman.
là *rencontrer* ,

199. BUT is sometimes used in the sense of a relative pronoun,
BUT - *s'employer* *relatif*³² ,
 and is then expressed by *qui ne*, which require the following verb
 - *alors il s'exprime* ,
 (in the) subjunctive; as, (There is) no body but derives, or who does
au ; , ²⁴⁶ ⁹⁷ *retirer*,
 not derive some advantage from study. I have not found a man
quelque avantage *étude*. *trouver*
 but thinks so, or who does not think so. There is no man but
 , *de même*. ²⁴³ *personne*
 regrets the loss of time, or who does not regret the loss of time.
⁷ , *regretter* *perte* *tems*.

* See compound tenses of *Il y a*, page 173.

† See note †, page 373.

‡ Turn; *It is a fortnight since he is at home*; see note * page 369.

ADVERB.

RECAPITULATORY *exercice on the foregoing rules.**

Now, I am ready. Let us (set out) immediately. Let us walk
à présent, prêt. - - partir tout à l'heure. 283

gently. (What is the use) of walking¹⁵⁴ so fast? I came¹³⁶ here to
doucement. Pourquoi † - - marcher vite? 233 170

enjoy a pleasant walk, not to tire myself. I have no more⁶ desire
avoir 202 agréable 32, 191 fatiguer me 54 † N.B. envie

to tire myself than you have; only I (am afraid) that we shall
me 54 47; craindre (bb) N.B.

be¹⁴⁵ there too late. We are never there in time. We generally come
arriver trop y 54 à tems. arriver

either too soon or too late. It⁶² is very unpleasant to keep people
- tôt ou N.B. désagréable de faire 229

waiting ‡ (in that way.) Do they live still in that house where
attendre ainsi 183 N.B. demeurer encore 213

we saw them last? No, they have removed to another house
la dernière fois? 238 aller demeurer

a little further in the country. How far shall we go? How far
un peu plus loin 230

is it from our house²⁰⁹? How long shall we stay? How you like to
N.B. rester

ask useless³² questions! Do you not know it as well as I do? Take
faire inutile 9 savoir 43 43 52 -

care not to fall into this ditch. Take care lest this post falls upon
tomber fossé. que poteau

you. Do not go (so near) lest²¹⁸ somebody should see you.
approcher tant de peur que 95 148

I only (am afraid) that something⁶⁸ bad should happen to you. Will
craindre (cc) mal 148 arriver 148 54

your cousin be there? I do not think he will¹⁴⁵. He dares not
134 y 54 221 y 70 soit. oser

come near the house. He fears that they⁹⁰ would turn him out.
(approcher de) 146 N.B. mettre à la porte.

It is near two years since they⁹⁰ have (heard²⁷⁵ from him.) Is he not
246 près de 233 que N.B. reçu de ses nouvelles.

returned yet from his journey? No, he is not⁷⁰. It is feared that
265 encore voyage? 91

some misfortune has¹⁴⁶ happened to him. I (am afraid) he will never
quelque 228 arriver 55 craindre 221

return²⁶⁵. I fear the report of his death will (prove true.) Never
146 221 bruit se vérifier 146

* See note *, p. 281.

† Turn; *Why to walk so fast?*

‡ *No more*, meaning *No longer*, is expressed by *Ne* before the verb, and by *Plus* after; but when *More* is used as an adverb of quantity, meaning *Greater*, the negative *Pas* must be added to the sentence, and we say *Pas plus*.

§ Turn; *To keep waiting in that way people*, because *Keep* and *Waiting* expressing together only *one idea*, they can not be separated

ADVERB.

RECAPITULATORY *exercice on the foregoing rules.*

believe such reports. I (dare say)²²¹ he is²⁴¹ well enough. I do not
croire de tels bruit je ne doute pas 145

doubt but he will be here (very soon.) If you will come with me,
douter qu' 145 bientôt. 144

we shall go and meet him. Go that way, and I will go this,
(nn) 273 par là, par ici,

for fear²¹⁸ we should miss¹⁴⁸ him on the road. I long to see him.
de peur que perdre en - chemin. see p. 175.

It is long since I have seen him. I told you right. There he is²⁴⁷.
246 que 136 bien. N.B.

So¹⁸⁴ you are returned (at last). How happy I am to see you again!
Donc 265 enfin. ravi revoir -

How have you been since I saw you? We (were afraid) you
237 241 depuis que 136 craindre 221

were lost. I began to fear that we should never see¹⁴⁶ you again.
146 perdre. 138 149

Why did you not write to us? Why did you not let us know²⁴⁸ where
136 136 N.B. où

you were, and how you were? I (was afraid²²¹) you would be offended
241 140 146 fâché

at me. What! offended at you? How could you think so? How
300 83 ! pouvoir le 54

often have I told you how glad we were to see you, or to hear²⁷⁵
de fois † 55 entendre

from you? We were every day talking of you. We never met
de vos nouvelles? - tous les jours 155 58 139

with a traveller, without enquiring¹⁵⁴ after you. You certainly have
201 voyageur, s'informer 209

always been (very kind) to me, and I sincerely thank you (for it.)
eu bien des bontés pour 58, en 54

How long is it since you left this country? How long have you
246 † 135 230

been absent? How far have you been? How long do you intend
absent? avoir dessein

to stop? I have only been absent about two years, and I have not
rester? environ

been so far as you imagine. How fast the time goes! Methinks²²
loin 42 s'imaginer. vite passer Il me semble

it is only the other day that we were at R. together. Are you going
ce 140

to leave us already? Can not you stay a little longer? It is so
quitter déjà rester plus long tems? 246

long since we have had the pleasure of your company. I should lik
que

* See note * page 368.

† Turn; *How many times &c.*

‡ See note † page 369.

ADVERB.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

to stay (very much), but I am afraid my horse will not stand still.
beaucoup, ²²¹ *rester* ¹⁴⁶ *tranquille*.

(Take hold of) the bridle, lest²¹⁸ it should go¹⁴⁸. Take care not
Tenir - *bride*, *de peur que* *s'en aller*.* *garde*

to go (too near.) Take care that it does not kick you. Do not
en approcher trop. (*bb*)^{N.B.} *frapper*.

go (so near,) lest it should bite you. Would it not be better
approcher tant, ²¹³ *mordre* *valoir mieux*

to put it into the stable? It is not worth while. I can not stop.
²¹³ *écurie*? *Cela* - *en valoir la peine*. *rester*.

Our friends want to go to the play to-night, and they will not go,
²⁰⁹ *comédie* † ²³⁵ , †

unless I go with them. You perhaps can come with us. I would
²¹³ ⁵⁹ *peut-être* ⁵³

go, if I was not afraid that it will be too late, when the play is over.
 †, ¹⁴³ , ¹⁴² *finie*.

You need not stay till the end of the play. You may go as
avoir besoin de *rester jusqu'à* *fin* ¹⁷⁸ *s'en aller** ⁴³

soon as you like¹⁴². Come; (make up your mind); for, unless we
⁴³ *vouloir*. *Allons*; *se déterminer*; *imp.* *car*, ²¹⁸

go immediately, I am almost sure we shall be too late to see the
partir tout à l'heure, *presque* ²²¹ *arriver* ¹⁷⁰

beginning of the play. Go; I will follow you. Take care not to
commencement ; || *suivre*

stop. Take care that he does not stop. We are just in time. Now,
s'arrêter. *à* ,

what do you think of the players? They are better than I thought.
comédien? (b) p. 72.

They have acted better than I expected. I hope you will come
jouer (b) p. 72. ²²¹ *y revenir*

again soon. I do not think I shall⁷⁰. I have but a short time to stay,
 - *bientôt*. ¹⁴⁵ ^{N.B.} - *peu de* ¹⁶⁹ *rester*,

and have a (great many⁸) things to do. How impatient you seem
⁵³ - *beaucoup* ^{N.B.} ¹⁶⁹

to go! Can not you stay (a few days longer?) No, I can not. Now,
*s'en aller** *encore quelques jours*? , ⁷⁰ ;

I want to find my sister, and I do not know where to look for her.
²⁰⁰ , *où* ²⁰¹

I am afraid she is gone¹⁵⁸. I am afraid she has not seen me. If you
²²¹ ¹⁴⁶ *partir*. ²²¹ ¹⁴⁶ ⁵⁵

go (that way,) I do not doubt but you will find her. There are few⁸
par là, *que* ²¹⁶ *peu* ^{N.B.}

people here but know her. I think I see her. Yes; here²⁴⁷ she is.
²²⁹ ¹⁵³ ²²¹ ; ^{N.B.}

* See N. B. p. 115.

† See note * p. 303.

‡ See note † p. 354.

|| See note † p. 312.

PREPOSITION.

200. The greatest difficulty attending the prepositions, is, that
 44 *qui accompagne*, *c'est*,
 they are not always expressed by the words which correspond to each
 62 - *s'exprimer* *par* *se correspondre*
 other in²¹³ both languages; *i. e.* OF, FROM, the corresponding
 121 *les deux*; *c'est à dire*, OF, FROM, *correspondant*³²
 preposition of which is *de*, are sometimes expressed by *à*; AT, TO,
 * 75 , - 183 *s'exprimer*; AT, TO,
 the corresponding preposition of which is *à*, are sometimes expressed
 75 * , - (ii) N.B.
 by *de*; BY, FOR, sometimes expressed by *de*, and sometimes by *à*, &c.
 ; BY, FOR, 183 *exprimés*, &c.
 which no rule can sufficiently explain; therefore, see a list of these
ce que aucune † ; *ainsi*, *liste*
 words with the examples (annexed to them,) p. 247 and following.
exemples *qui y sont joints*, *suivante*.

201. (There are) some verbs in english which require a preposition,
 246 *quelques* † *en* *démander*,
 though the verbs which represent them in french do not admit²⁰¹ of
 218 *représenter* *en* *admettre*
 any; such are, LOOK AT, *regarder*; ASK FOR, *démander*; ADMIT OF,
 en⁵⁴; *tels*, LOOK AT, ; ASK FOR, ; ADMIT OF,
Admettre, &c. see a list of these verbs and the examples, page 250.
 , &c.

202. In other instances, it⁶² is the reverse, and (some french verbs)
d'autres cas, N.B. *contraire*, *il y a des verbes français qui*
 will have¹⁷⁴ a preposition, though the english verbs will not admit
vouloir - , 218 32 -
 of any; such are, *Abuser de*, TO ABUSE; *s'Appercevoir de*, TO PERCEIVE;
 201 (P); , , TO ABUSE; , TO PERCEIVE;
Attenter à, TO ATTEMPT, &c. see the examples, p. 250, and following.
 , TO ATTEMPT, &c. , , *suivante*.

203. In some instances, the preposition may (be placed) in english,
 † , 178 (*se placer*) ,
 either²²³ before or after the substantive which it governs; but in french
 ou 206 ' *substantif* 62 *régir*;
 the preposition must always (be placed) before its object; Whom does
devoir *son objet*; 77
 this house belong to? What house are you speaking of? That house
 134 *appartenir* 82 - 155
 which we just²⁴⁴ passed by. It belongs to that gentleman's father
 76 *venir de passer* 207 62 *monsieur* 25
 whom we are going to dine with. I know whom it belongs to.
 76 - 155 172 *dîner*. 76 62

* Turn; Of which the corresponding preposition is, &c.

† *Aucun* requires *ne* before the following verb.

‡ See note † page 232.

PREPOSITION.

204. The prepositions must be repeated before every word which
devoir - se répéter (ii) N.B. ¹⁰⁴

they govern; Mr. A. has invited me to take a walk and dine with him.
⁸² *régir*; *inviter* ⁵⁵ ²⁶³ *N.B.* ⁵⁸

We shall walk into his park and gardens. We are going to France
²¹³ ³ ¹⁵⁵ ⁶

and Germany. Do not go without calling¹⁵⁴ on me, or writing to me.
Allemagne. *partir* ²⁶⁶ , (o)

REMARKS ON THE PREPOSITIONS.

205. FOR. Before a period of time, FOR is expressed by *depuis*,
For. *période* ⁸ , *FOR - s'exprimer (ii) N.B.* ,

when we⁹⁰ wish to denote the beginning of the period, by *pendant*
N.B. vouloir ¹⁷² *désigner* ,

or *durant*, when we⁹⁰ wish to denote the duration, and by *pour*, when
^{N.B.} *durée* ,

we⁹⁰ wish to denote the end; What dreadful⁸² weather it has been²⁴⁰
N.B. * ; ⁸² *affreux* *tems* *il* *fait*

for some time past. We have not had a (fine day) for these
quelque tems - (*jour de beau tems*) -

three weeks. It has rained for two whole³² days. If this weather
semaine. *plu* *entier* ²⁹

lasts, we⁹⁰ shall not (be able) to get provisions for the winter.
durer, ^{N.B.} *pouvoir* ¹⁷² *se procurer* ⁹ ² *'hiver.*

206. BEFORE. If BEFORE is used to denote time or order⁷,
BEFORE *BEFORE - s'employer (ii) N.B.* ¹⁶⁹ ⁷ *ordre,*

it is expressed by *avant*, which is the opposite of *après*, AFTER;
 - *s'exprimer (ii) N.B.* , *opposé* , *AFTER* ;

If BEFORE is used to denote place, or in presence, it (is expressed) by
BEFORE ^{lieu,} *en* , ^{(ii) N.B.}

devant, the opposite (of which⁷⁵) is *derrière*, BEHIND; as, You shall
 , *opposé* *dont* ^{N.B. †} , *BEHIND* ; ,

not (go out) before dinner, because you have spoken before your turn.
^{sortir} , ^{tour}

Do not walk²⁶³ before me, stay behind. I want to arrive before you.
marcher , *rester* ²⁶⁰

(Walk in) or (go away), and do not stay so before the door.
Entrer *s'en aller,* *ainsi*

207. BY. BY used in the sense of NEAR, is expressed by *près de*
By. *By employé* *NEAR, - (ii) N.B.*

or *à côté de*; as, Come and sit by me. I would rather stand
 ; , ^{(n) vous asseoir} ⁵⁰ *aimer* *mieux me tenir*

by the door. How can you sit by the fire (in such weather as this?)
^{rester} ^{feu} ^{du tems qu'il fait ?}

* Observe that when FOR comes between two sentences, it cannot be expressed by any of the above words, as it is not a preposition; it is then a *conjunction*, and is expressed by *Car*; as, I can not go with you, *for* I am very busy; *Je ne puis pas aller avec vous, car je suis très affairé.* See 217 rule.

† Turn; *Of which the opposite is, &c.*

REMARKS ON THE PREPOSITIONS.

N. B. **By** is often followed (by the) words **MYSELF, THYSELF, HIM-SELF, HERSELF, &c.** to denote **ALONE**; these words are then¹⁸³ expressed in french by the adjective *Seul*; as, I was by myself all the morning. Are you fond of being by yourself? What a pleasure (it is) to be by oneself. My sister can not¹⁹² be a moment by herself.

By ^{des} *MYSELF, THYSELF, HIM-SELF, HERSELF, &c.* ¹⁷⁰ *ALONE*; ^{alors} *s'expressé* in french by the adjective *Seul*; as, I was by myself all the morning. ²³⁴ *Are you fond of being by yourself?* ¹³⁶ *What a pleasure* ²⁰ *plaisir* (it is) to be by oneself. *My sister can not¹⁹² be a moment by herself.*

208. **At, to.** With verbs denoting being at or going to a person's²⁵ house, **AT, TO,** are expressed by *chez*, and the word **HOUSE,** if expressed in english, is (left out) in french; Will you come with me to my mother's? She is not at home; She is at your sister's house.

AT, TO. ⁷ *qui désignent* ¹⁵⁴ *à* ^{* 154} *à* person's²⁵ house, *AT, TO,* are expressed by *chez*, and the word *HOUSE,* if expressed in english, is (left out) in french; *Will you come with me* ⁵⁸ *to my mother's?* *She is not at home; She is at your sister's house.*

(Then I must) go to my sister's, for I must see her. Perhaps she is not there now, for she had to call at a friend's house.

(Then I must) ¹⁸¹ *go to my sister's,* ¹⁸¹ *for I must see her.* *Perhaps* ¹⁸¹ *she is not there now,* ²⁶⁶ *for she had to call at a friend's house.*

N. B. If the word **HOUSE,** instead of being attended by a noun, is attended by one of the possessive pronominal³² articles **MY, THY, HIS, HER, OUR, YOUR, THEIR,** the word **HOUSE** is also¹⁸³ (left out,) and the pronominal³² article is changed into a personal³² pronoun, viz. into *moi, toi, soi, lui, elle, nous, vous, eux, elles*; Come to my house. I will not go to your house. I will go to his. Let us go to her house. She is not at home. She is at our house or at theirs.

HOUSE, ^{au lieu} ¹⁵⁴ *accompagné de* , is attended by one of the possessive pronominal³² articles *MY, THY, HIS, HER, OUR, YOUR, THEIR,* the word *HOUSE* is also¹⁸³ (left out,) and the pronominal³² article is changed into a personal³² pronoun, *viz.* into *moi, toi, soi, lui, elle, nous, vous, eux, elles*; *Come to my house. I will not go to your house. I will go to his. Let us go to her house. She is not at home. She is at our house or at theirs.*

209. **Of, from.** With verbs denoting going or coming from a person's²⁵ house, **OF, FROM,** are expressed by *de chez*, and the word **HOUSE** is (left out) in french; I come from my sister's. You did not find your mother there, for I saw her (going¹⁵⁴ out) of your

OF, FROM. ⁷ *qui désignent* ¹⁵⁴ ¹⁵⁴ *de* person's²⁵ house, *OF, FROM,* are expressed by *de chez*, and the word *HOUSE* is (left out) in french; *I come from my sister's. You did not find your mother there, for I saw her (going¹⁵⁴ out) of your*

* Put this verb in the infinitive.

† See note * page 143.

‡ See note * page 379.

REMARKS ON THE PREPOSITIONS.

brother's house. I met¹³³ her coming from my grandmother's.
rencontrer ¹⁵³ N. B. *grand'mère.*

N. B. If the word **HOUSE**, instead of being attended by a noun, is
HOUSE, au lieu ¹⁵⁴ *accompagné de* ,
 attended by the possessive pronominal article **MY, THY, HIS, HER, &c.**
possessif pronominal MY, THY, HIS, HER, &c.

The word **HOUSE** is also omitted, and the article is changed into a
HOUSE - ¹⁸³ *s'omettre,* *- se changer en -*

personal pronoun, as above; What do you want here? (Get out)
personnel , *comme ci dessus;* *chercher* *Sortir*

of my house. You come from our house, and I come from yours.
 , (n)

I met your father (coming¹⁵³ out) of his house, and going¹⁵³ to ours.
¹³⁶ *sortir* N. B. , ^{N. B.}

210. **FROM**, with the verbs to **GO**, to **COME**, not from the house of
FROM, *to GO, to COME, non* *maison*

a person, but from the person himself, is expressed by *de la part*;
personne, même - s'exprimer par ,

Whom do you come from? I come from your mother. Go from me
⁷⁷ *venir*

to my sister's, and tell her that I will come and drink tea at her house.
 , (f) p. 79. ²⁶⁴ (nn) * *thé?*

211. **IN, INTO**. Before the proper names of persons and places,
IN, INTO. *propre nom* *personne* ²⁰⁴ *lieu,*

IN, INTO, are expressed by *dans*; There are great beauties in Thom-
IN, INTO, - (ii) N. B. ; ²⁴⁶ ¹⁰ *beauté*

son. Are there (as many⁶) inhabitants in Paris as in London?
²⁴⁶ *autant* N. B. *'habitants* *que* *Londres?*

N. B. **IN**, before the proper name of a place, after a verb denoting resi-
IN, , *qui désigne* *'de-*

dence is expressed by *à*; My brother is in Paris, and my sister in London.
meure - s'exprimer ;

212. Before the proper names of countries after verbs which denote
propre *pays* ⁷

going or residing, **IN, INTO**, are expressed by *en*; My father is in
aller † *demeurer, †* *IN, INTO, -* (ii) N. B. ;

Russia, my brother in Switzerland, and my sister in France.
Russie, *Suisse,*

N. B. In other instances, **IN, INTO**, before these names may¹⁷⁶ be
les autres cas, *IN, INTO,* *pouvoir -*

expressed by *dans*, with the article, or by *en*, without an article;
s'exprimer *par* , , , - ;

Are there as many⁸ people²²⁹ in France as in Germany?
²⁴⁶ *autant* N. B. *mon.le* *que* *Allemagne?*

• See note § page 355.

† This verb must be in the infinitive in french.

REMARKS ON THE PREPOSITIONS.

213. Before common names used¹⁵⁷ in a limited sense, i. e. which
commun 7 *employé* *limité* *sens*,
 require any of the signs called article, IN, INTO are expressed by *dans* ;
⁹⁶ *signes* , IN, INTO - *s'exprimer* ;
 Put this wine in a bottle. If you will be diligent, we will take
Mettre *bouteille.* ¹⁴⁴ , *prendre*
 you in our partnership. Put these papers into that parcel. Put them
société. *papier* (*bb*) *paquet.*
 in the same order in which you found them. I never saw my papers
même *ordre* ⁷⁶ ¹³⁶ ¹³⁶
 in such a confusion before. Let every thing be in the state it ought
telle ³⁸ - ²⁴⁸ ¹⁰⁷ *état (s)* *devoir*
 to be. (There must be) some order and economy in a house.
¹⁷² *Il faut* ²*économie*

214. But before the same common names used in a vague sense,
même *vague* ,
 in which sense they generally¹⁸⁴ do not require any⁸ article, IN, INTO,
ce *ordinairement* *N.B.* IN, INTO,
 are expressed by EN ; I must put this wine into bottles ; (i. e. *bottle it.*)
 - (*ii*) *N.B.* ; ¹⁸¹ *mettre* ;
 I am going to enter into partnership with my uncle. I will put these
¹⁵⁵ ¹⁷² *entrer* *société* *oncle.*
 papers in parcels. Every thing here is in confusion. I will put
paquet. ¹⁰⁷ ¹⁸⁴
 every thing in order, if you will not put yourself in a passion.
¹⁰⁷ , ¹⁴⁴ *vous* ⁵⁴ - *colère.*

215. Speaking of time, IN is expressed by *dans*, to denote the
En parlant 7 , IN - *s'exprimer* , ¹⁷⁰ *désigner*
 time after which an action will be performed, and by EN, to denote
 - ⁷⁶ *se faire,* ¹⁷⁰
 the time that will be employed in performing it ; as, Do you think
⁹² *employer* *à faire* ⁶² ;
 that I can learn french in six months? You may¹⁷⁸ learn it in
¹⁴⁵ *français* *mois ?* *pouvoir*
 less ⁸ time. I intend to begin in a month. I shall be with
moins *N.B.* *avoir* *desssein* ¹⁶⁸
 you in an hour. I can walk there in less than half an hour.
heure. *aller* *y* ⁵⁴ ⁴⁸ *demi* ³⁸

216. Before nouns denoting any part of the day, IN is not ex-
⁷ *qui désignent quelque partie* *jour,* IN -
 pressed in french, (nor is) ON, before the days of the week ; I wil
 , *non plus que* ON, *semaine* ;
 come and see you on sunday or monday. Will you come in the morn
 (*nn*) *dimanche* *lundi* *matin*
 ing or in the afternoon? I will come on monday in the afternoon.
après midi ?

PREPOSITION.

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.*

I am very uneasy ABOUT thi business. Have you enquired ABOUT
inquiet ²⁰⁰ *affaire.* ²³⁷ *s'informer*

what people⁸⁰ say (of it)? Your friends are very angry AT you. They
⁸⁴ *N.B.* *en* ⁵⁴ *fâché* ⁵⁸

laughed¹³³ AT what you desired¹³⁰ me to tell them. I do not wonder
⁸² *moquer*²³⁷ ⁸⁴ ²⁵² (f) p. 79. *s'étonner*

AT that. They laugh AT every thing. They blame you FOR your
(bb) *se moquer* ¹⁰⁷ *blâmer*

rashness. They will not believe that you are sorry FOR what you
témérité. ¹⁷³ ¹⁴⁵ *fâché* ⁸⁴

have done. They will get nothing BY that. I neither care
gagner ⁹³ *(bb)* ²²⁴ *s2 soucier*

FOR them, nor FOR what they say. I will punish them FOR their
⁵⁸ ⁸¹ *punir*

ingratitude. I will take my property (FROM them). I do not depend
^{ôter} *bien* † *leur* ⁵⁴ *dépendre*

UPON them. I need²⁰² nothing. I am abundantly provided WITH
⁵⁸ *avoir besoin* ⁹⁹ *abondamment* *pourvu*

every thing. I congratulate you UPON your (good fortune.) I
¹⁰⁷ *féliciter* *bonheur.*

think you have reason to be contented WITH your lot. Look²⁰¹ AT
²²¹ *lieu* *content* *sort.* *Regarder*

that woman. See how she laughs AT us. She is waiting¹⁵³ FOR us.
(bb) *comme* *se rire* ⁵⁸ - *attendre* ²⁰¹

Do not look AT her. I am angry WITH her. I do not approve
²⁰¹ *fâché* *approuver*

OF her behaviour. She imposes UPON her friends, and she slanders
conduite. *en imposer* *médire*²⁰²

every body she knows. She has met WITH several misfortunes,
touts *ceux que* *éprouver* *plusieurs disgrâce,*

but she has not profited (BY them.) I think she delights IN mischief.
profiter † *en* ⁵⁵ ²²¹ *se plaire* *faire le mal.*

She tyrannizes OVER all her house, and does not mind²⁰² what the
tyranniser *s'embarrasser*

world says. She is very much like²⁰² her mother; a haughty, im-
- *ressembler* ; *hautain,* im-

perious woman whom nobody could please. I wonder how you
périer^(g) ⁷⁶ ⁹⁷ *pouvoir plaire* ^{202.} *s'étonner* *que*

trust²⁰² her brother. He is not fit FOR (any thing). He has inherit-
se fier *propre* ⁹⁹ *hériter*

ed a large estate, but that will not (be sufficient) FOR his expences.
²⁰² *gros* *bien,* *suffire* *dépense.*

Do you remember what I told you one day? No, what is it?
*se souvenir*²⁰² , *(y)*

* See note * page 281.

† The preposition is implied in this pronoun.

PREPOSITION.

RECAPITULATORY exercise on the foregoing rules.

That he would abuse²⁰² his fortune, and perish some day WITH misery
 (bb) N.B. abuser , périr quelque misère,
 unless¹⁹⁵ somebody would provide¹⁴⁹ FOR his wants. He will never
²¹⁸ N.B. ⁹⁵ pouvoir besoin.
 give up²⁰² gaming and drinking. He is surrounded WITH flatterers
 renoncer jeu⁷ boisson⁷. entouré flatteur
 who do nothing but sport WITH his credulity. He had promised
 faire * se jouer crédulité. ¹⁴⁰ promettre²⁰¹
 his father that he would (give up) the company which displeases him,
 renoncer²⁰² déplaître²⁰² lui,†
 but there is no trusting his promises. He never keeps them. He
 se fier † ²⁰² tenir
 knows he is despised by every body, but he does not care FOR
²²¹ mépriser ¹⁶⁷ ¹⁰⁶ , se soucier
 that. He does not care FOR any body. Tell him¹⁶² that if he does
 (bb) ⁹⁷ (f) p. 79.
 not alter²⁰² his conduct soon ¹⁸³, he will be punished FOR his obstinacy.
 changer - conduite bientôt N.B., opiniâtré.
 What a difference between him and your brother. This⁶⁸ is a young
²⁰ entre ⁵⁸ N.B.
 man who pleases every body. Every body wishes him¹⁶² well, and
²⁰² ¹⁰⁶ (f) p. 79. du bien,
 rejoices AT his prosperity. All who know him, wish FOR his com-
 se rejouir Tous ceux ,
 pany. I met WITH him the other day at a friend's of mine, and I was
⁸⁷ , ¹³⁷
 delighted WITH his conversation. I was struck WITH astonishment AT
 charmer frapper
 seeing so young a man enjoying¹⁵⁴ his reputation with (so much)⁶
¹³⁴ ³⁸ jouir²⁰² tant N.B.
 modesty; sensible OF praises, without seeming¹⁵⁴ to wish FOR them,
 ; louange, paraître ¹⁷² désirer ,
 and satisfied WITH the pleasure of having done his duty. His
 satisfaire ¹⁵⁴ devoir.
 friends were transported WITH joy AT seeing him covered WITH glory,
 transporté¹⁵⁸ ¹⁵⁴ couvrir ,
 and animated WITH the desire of pleasing¹⁵⁴ them. He is a young
 animer ²⁰² leur,† ⁶³
 man for whom I feel a particular esteem. (Young as) he is, I would
 particulier³² Tout jeune que ,
 trust²⁰² him sooner than any body that I know. I would answer FOR
 se fier (o) tout autre répondre
 him as FOR myself. I am much obliged to you FOR the good opinion
 comme (n) N.B. bien (o) (s)

* Express Nothing but by Ne before the verb, and Que after.

† The preposition is implied in this pronoun.

‡ Turn, One can not trust, &c.

PREPOSITION

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

you have of him, and I thank you (FOR it.) Look AT those flowers.
 , remercier * 54 en fleur.

How beautiful they are! Do not touch²⁰² them⁶³. They are not
¹⁸⁵ belle ⁶² toucher y.* ⁶²

mine. If you wish FOR one, ask that gentleman FOR it. No, indeed;
⁸⁵ , monsieur † , vraiment;

I will not ask him FOR any. I would rather look FOR one myself.
 (f) p. 79. (p) aimer mieux en⁷⁰ chercher (m) N.B.

I do not like to ask FOR flowers from a stranger. If he offered you
¹⁶⁹ 9 à étranger. †

one, would you not accept of it? Perhaps I might⁷⁰. I do not care
 eu⁷⁰ , N.B. se soucier

FOR flowers. I do not know what I was thinking OF, when I men-
 83 135 , parler de

tioned flowers. I beg OF you, Madam, that you will accept OF this⁹⁶.
¹³⁶ prier , § N.B.

Sir, you are very kind. I am much obliged TO you (FOR it.) This
 , avoir bieu de la bouté. bieu ¹⁵⁸ (o) * 55 eu.

gentleman has asked your sister a question, and she has not answered
 || faire ¹⁶² ¹⁶³ , répondre²⁰²

him. Sister, why do not you answer that gentleman? I beg the
 lui.* ¹⁹ , ²⁰² || demander

gentleman's pardon. I did not know that you were talking ABOUT
²⁵ ¶ ¹⁵⁵

me. I was thinking OF something that (just occurred to my mind.)
¹⁵⁵ ⁹⁶ vient de me veuir à - l'esprit.

What does he want OF me? I do not know; ask him. He seems
⁸³ vouloir - 54 ; ** (f) p. 79.

(very much) taken up WITH you. I think he is (in love) WITH
 très occupé - ²²¹ amoureux

you. What! in love WITH me? You surely¹⁸⁴ do not mind what
⁸³ certainement penser à ⁸⁴

you say. I only said so in joke. He wants to know if you can
¹⁸⁴ ¹³⁶ cela pour rire. ²⁶⁰

spare²⁰² the book which you have promised him¹⁰². I can not spare it
 se passer (f) p. 79. ²⁰² eu *

now. I am using¹⁵⁵ it myself. When I have done (WITH it,) (he shall
 se servir²⁰² en ⁵⁹ * (m) N.B. ¹⁴² * 55 eu, il

be very welcome to it.) What does he want to do WITH that
 l'aura, s'il le veut. †† ⁸³ ²⁶⁰

* The preposition is implied in this pronoun.

† See note || page 296.

‡ Note † page 337.

§ That you will accept, turn; to accept.

|| Note † page 307.

¶ Turn; I beg pardon to monsieur.

•• Add here the pronoun *Le* in french.

†† We say in french *Etre bien venu*, to be welcome, i. e. well received, but we do not say, *Etre bien venu*: à une chose, to be welcome to a thing.

PREPOSITION.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

book? It is not good FOR any thing. It is not fit FOR the use to
 92 99 propre usage
 which it is intended. I did not think OF that, (or else) I would not
 76 92 destiner. , autrement
 have asked you FOR it. Since you have (such a desire) (FOR it,) you
 Puisque si grande envie * 54 en,
 may have it, if you will accept OF it. No, I thank you. I do not
 173 , 144 ,
 want²⁰⁰ it now. It⁹² was not for me; it⁹² was for my sister who
 avoir besoin en⁵⁴ N.B. 140 ; N.B.
 wanted¹⁴⁰ to see it, and I (was afraid) OF displeasing her, if I did not
 avoir envie 168 , craindre 154 202 lui,* †
 ask you FOR it. I was afraid²²¹ she would think¹⁴⁹ that I had not thought
 221 146 140
 OF her, or that I was angry WITH her. I do not think she cares
 , 140 fâché 221 se soucier
 much (FOR it.) When do you (set out) UPON your journey? I do not
 * en partir pour voyage?
 know yet. I intend to set out in about a month or six weeks.
 encore. avoir dessein environ mois semaine.
 What country do you go to? I (am ignorant) OF it yet. They⁹⁰ want
 92 230 ignorer N.B. 260
 to persuade my father to send me to Russia, but I will not go, if
 persuader²⁰² envoyer 6 Russie,
 I can help it. I would rather remain here, than live in a country,
 éviter aimer mieux rester , (ll) demeurer 230 ,
 and amongst a people whose manners do not suit²⁰² mine. I should
 parmi 236 manière convenir 85
 like to go first to France, to see my brother who is in Paris;
 160 premièrement 6 , 172 ;
 then to go to Switzerland, from Switzerland to Italy and Greece, from
 puis Suisse, Italie Grèce,
 Greece to pass into Spain and Portugal, and then to return to
 passer Espagne , alors 265
 England. You could not do that in less than two years. I think
 pouvoir (bb) moins 48 221
 I could do it in (twelve months.) I do not think you could¹⁴⁵. Do
 un an. † 221 70 150
 not you think that I can¹⁴⁵ go to Paris in four days? I think you
 N.B. 221 le 70
 may¹⁷⁸. I shall be there before you, for I shall set out either on Mon-
 pouvoir. y 54 , || - Lun-
 day or Tuesday. Will you set out in the morning or in the evening.
 di Mardi. 334 234

* The preposition is implied in this pronoun. † Note † p. 337. ‡ Note § p. 262. || Note * p. 379

PREPOSITION.

RECAPITULATORY *exercise on the foregoing rules.*

I intend to (set out) about twelve o'clock. I wish I could go
avoir dessein ¹⁶³ *partir* *vers* ²³⁵ ¹⁸⁰ (*nn*)
with you. I wish you⁷⁰ could. I shall drink tea at your sister's
²²¹ ¹⁴⁶ *
this afternoon. Shall you be there? No, I am engaged at Mrs. B.'s.
après midi. ^y ⁵⁴ ,
(There is) a ball at your aunt's on Friday¹⁸⁸. Will not you go? I do
⁹⁴⁵ *tante* *Vendredi.* *N.B.* † ⁷⁰
not think²²¹ I shall⁷⁰; I have been ill for several days. I did not
¹⁴⁵ *N.B.* ; *malade* ¹³⁶
rest for three days and three nights. Come and sit by the fire
reposer (*nn*) *vous asseoir* *feu.*
Do not stand by the door. As it is cold, and you are not well, you
se tenir ²⁴⁰ , ²¹⁹ ²⁴¹ ,
would be in danger of (catching cold.) I called at your house on
vous enrhumér. ²⁶⁶
Wednesday in the morning, but (there was) nobody in. I was not
Mercredi , ²⁴⁶ ⁹⁷ - ¹⁴⁰
(far off.) I was at my uncle's. I had been by myself all the morn-
loin. *oncle.* ¹⁴⁰ ²³⁴
ing. I went into the fields to take a walk²⁶³ before dinner, and in
¹⁷² *N.B.* *diné,* *en*
coming home, I called at my uncle's. He had some company at
revenir. *au logis,* ²⁶⁶
dinner, and he prevailed upon me to stay with him. After dinner
, *engager* - *rester*
we played different games. Some played at cards, some at chess,
jouer à † *jeux.* ⁹⁴ † *carte,* *échecs,*
some at draughts, and some at (backgammon.) After tea we made
⁹⁴ *dames,* *triacrac.* *thé* †
a little concert. I played on the flute, my (brother-in-law) played on
petit *jouer de †* , *beau-frère*
the violin, my sister played on the harpsicord, and my cousin on the
violon, *clavecin,* *cousine*
harp; and some ladies and gentlemen entertained us with several good
harpe; || *régaler* *de*
songs. We parted at (twelve o'clock,) (very well) pleased with the
chanson. *se séparer* ²⁹⁶ , *très content*
manner (in which) we had spent the evening. We shall meet
manière *dont* ¹⁴⁰ ²⁷¹ ²³⁴ *s'assembler*
again on Saturday evening²³⁴, at our house, and have another concert.
encore *Samedi* *au soir* , , ⁵³

* See note § p. 355.

† See note † p. 241.

‡ The verb *Play*, speaking of *games*, requires *à* before the noun which follows it; speaking of *instru-ments*, it requires *de*.

|| See note † page 282.

CONJUNCTION.

220. When *si*, **IF**, governs two verbs, instead of repeating *si* before
 , *IF*, *régir* , , 154
 the second verb, we⁹⁰ use *que* (with the subjunctive after it,) though
 , *N.B. employer* , *suivi du subjonctif* ,
 the verb which follows *si* is in the indicative; If you walk so fast,
 218 *à* ; *marcher vite*,
 and will not wait for us, we will go back. If you go back, and
 173 201 , *s'en retourner.* ,
 find nobody at home what will you do? If the doors are locked,¹⁵⁸
 97 *au logis*, *fermé à clef*,
 and I can not (get in), I will go to the play. You might follow us, if
entrer , , 178 ,
 you would walk a little faster, and you did not look so often behind you.
 144 *peu* , *derrière*

221. The conjunction **THAT** is often omitted in english; as, *I think*
THAT ; , *I think*
he will come; for, *I think THAT he will come*; but the corresponding³²
he will come; , *I think THAT he will come*; *qui y correspond*
 conjunction must always be expressed in french; Do you think we
devoir - *s'exprimer (ii) N.B.* ;
 shall arrive in time to-day? I (am afraid) it will be rather late.
 145 *à* *aujourd'hui?* *craindre* 146 195 *un peu tard.*

REMARKS ON THE CONJUNCTIONS.

222. **BOTH**, a conjunction of emphasis, is expressed by *Et*, when it
BOTH, 22 *emphase*, - *(ii) N.B. par* ,
 is followed by an adjective, and by *Et* or *tant*, when it is followed by a
suivi 200 , *par* , 200
 substantive; Our general is both prudent and courageous. Both in the
 ; *courageux.*
 cabinet and in the field. We shall beat our enemies both by sea and land.
armée. *battre ennemi par* 204
 This conjunction is generally¹⁸³ omitted in french, in the familiar style.
 - *ordinairement s'omettre (ii) N.B.* , *familier³² style.*

223. **EITHER**, **OR**, are generally expressed by *ou*; Either that is
EITHER, OR, - 183 *(ii) N.B.* ; 89
 true or it is not. I will see you either in going or in (coming back.)
 70 *en* *revenir.*

N. B. **EITHER**, followed by a noun, may also be expressed by
EITHER, 200 179 - *(ii) N.B.*
soit; as, Either through fear or respect, he remained silent.
 ; , *par* 204 *garder* 7*silence.*

224. **NEITHER**, **NOR**, followed by a verb in the indicative or (in the)
NEITHER, NOR, 200 *à* *au*
 subjunctive, are expressed **NEITHER** by *ne*, and **NOR** by *ni ne*; I neither
 , - *s'exprimer (ii) N.B.* , *NOR* ;

REMARKS ON THE CONJUNCTIONS.

know that man, nor want²⁶⁰ to¹⁶⁸ know him. I neither love nor esteem
 , avoir envie

him. I neither care for him, nor for all that he can say or do.
⁶⁸ se soucier de ⁵⁸ , ²⁰⁰ ce que

If after NEITHER, NOR, there is a verb in the infinitive, an adjective,
 NEITHER, NOR, à , ,
 a noun or a pronoun, NEITHER is expressed by *ne* before the verb, and
 , NEITHER - *s'exprimer* (ii) N.B. par ,

by *ni* after, and NOR by *ni*; as, He can neither read nor write. He
 , NOR ; ,

is neither rich nor poor. He is useful neither to himself nor to others.
 utile (m) N.B. aux autres.

225. WHETHER used in the sense of IF, is expressed by *si*, with
 WHETHER employé IF, (ii) N.B. ,

the following verb in the indicative; Do you know whether we shall
 qui suit⁸² à ;

have peace or war? I want to know whether that news is true or
 7 7 ²⁶⁰ nouvelle vrai

not. I must go and inquire whether there has been any news to-day.
 non. ¹⁸¹ (nn) s'informer ²⁴⁶ eu ⁹

WHETHER used in the sense of LET, is expressed by *que*, or *soit que*,
 WHETHER LET, - (ii) N.B. , ,

with the following verb (in the) subjunctive; Whether, or, let that news
³² au ; ,

be true or not, I do not care. Whether we have peace or war, I will
 non, s'en soucier. 7 7 ,

go to France. I will go, whether you come with me or not.
 6 non.

226. THOUGH, ALTHOUGH, IF EVEN, followed by a conditional tense
 THOUGH, ALTHOUGH, IF EVEN, suivis ²⁰⁰ ³²

are expressed by *quand*; Though that news were true, I would go.
 - (ii) N.B. ; serait , ⁷⁰

We would go, though we were sure that we should never¹⁹⁰ return. If
⁷⁰ , serions ²⁹ (nn) N.B. ²⁶⁵

even I had said so, you ought not to have (taken advantage of it.)
 , aurais dit cela, ¹⁷⁷ vous en prévaloir.

227 BUT FOR, IF IT WERE NOT FOR, IF IT HAD NOT BEEN FOR,
 BUT FOR, IF IT WERE NOT FOR, IF IT HAD NOT BEEN FOR,

HAD IT NOT BEEN FOR, are generally expressed by *sans*; But for your
 HAD IT NOT BEEN FOR, - ¹⁸³ (ii) N.B. ;

father, or if it had not been for your father, I should have lost my
 , perdre

(law suit.) Had it not been for him, I should have been ruined. If
 procès. , ruiner.

it had not been for this gentleman, we should have been all lost¹²⁸.
 monsieur, perdre.

CONJUNCTIONS.

RECAPITULATORY *exercice on the foregoing rules.**

As it is late, and you are not ready, I will go. Since they are
tard, *prêt,* *vais † m'en aller.* Puisque
 all gone, and you will not stop any longer, I will go too. Stay
partir ¹³⁸, *rester plus long tems,* † *aussi.* Attendre
 till²¹⁸ I am ready, that we may go together. You know we have a long
que *, afin que* ¹⁷⁸ *ensemble.*
 way to go before we can stop. I do not think I can go with you
chemin à faire, *nous arrêter.* ¹⁴⁵
 now; it is too late. I shall not go, unless¹⁹⁵ you come with me. I have
 ; *tard.* †, *N.B.*
 neither horse nor money to go. I can not go before my father has
¹⁷⁰ † ²⁶⁸
 returned. If you have a mind to go, and you want²⁵⁰ a horse, I
²⁶⁵ ²⁴ *envie* ¹⁶⁸ †, *avoir besoin de* ,
 will lend you mine. If you want money, and your father is not at
²⁶⁰ ,
 home, I will let you have whatever money (*s*) you want. You will
 , *donner* - *tout l' dont* ²⁶⁰
 be too late, unless¹⁹⁵ you go immediately, and make all the haste (*s*)
arriver , *N.B.* *partir tout à l'heure,* *diligence*
 you can. If your cousin is there, and you have an opportunity to
¹⁴² *cousine* *y* ⁵⁴, ²⁴ *occasion*
 speak to her, remember me to her. Is she not very handsome? Yes;
 (*o*) , *rappeler* ⁵⁶ *à son souvenir.* *belle ?* ;
 she is both rich and handsome; but I neither value beauty nor riches; I
 ; *estimer* ⁷ ⁷ ;
 only value the qualities of the heart. Though she is amiable, and has a
¹⁸⁴ *aimable,*
 handsome fortune, I do not hear that any body proposes to marry
beau bien, *apprendre* *personne se proposer* ²⁶¹
 her. There is no⁸ time lost yet. ¹⁸³ Shall you (come back) this way, if
²⁴⁶ *N.B.* *encore. N.B.* *revenir par ici,*
 it is fine, and it is not too late? I will call, if nothing detains
²⁴⁰ *beau tems,* ²⁶⁵ , ⁹⁹ *retenir*
 me, and you will promise to come and sup with me. But if it was
 , - *souper*
 too late, and I could¹⁴⁹ not come, what must I do? Will you go,
 , *pouvoir* , ⁸³ ¹⁸¹ †,
 whether I call or not? I do not know yet. Either you intend ¹⁶⁸to
passer *encore.* *avoir dessein*
 go, or you do not. If you will (walk in) till the rain is over, and
 †, || ¹⁴¹ *entrer* *pluie passée,*
 the weather is clear, I will tell you whether I can go or not.
tems *éclairci,* † *non.*

* See note * page 231.

† Note † page 312.

‡ Note ‡ page 354.

|| Turn; Either you have intention to go there, or you have not it.

CONJUNCTION.

RECAPITULATORY *exerc. se on the foregoing rules.*

I will wait as long⁴³ as you please¹⁴², provided you come and bring²⁵⁶
long tems vouloir, pourvu que

your sister with you. If you go^{partir} now, and ride gently, I think we
partir , aller doucement,

shall (be able) to overtake you. Do not set out before I call, or you
pouvoir atteindre partir 266,

hear²⁷⁵ from me, for I shall not go unless¹⁹⁵ the weather is fine, and
apprendre de mes nouvelles, * † N.B. 240,

my cousin comes with us. Do not you know whether he intends¹⁶⁰ to
avoir dessein

go or not? No, I do⁷⁰ not, but I will send to inquire. If it had not
† , N.B. , ‡ m'en informer.

been for him, we should have been back before now. What is it to
de retour ce tems. (y)

us whether he comes or not? Though he should not come with us, that
226 , (bb)

would not prevent us going¹⁵⁴. But if he should¹⁴⁴ call, and you were
empêcher † N.B. 266,

not at home, what must I say to him? Tell him that if he does not
au logis, 83 181 (o) (f) p. 79.

keep his word better¹⁸³, and he disappoints people so, ¹⁸³ nobody
tenir parole N.B., tromper 229 ainsi, N.B. 97

will trust²⁰² him. Do you know whether Mr. A. will be at²⁰⁸ your
se fier N.B.

house? I dare say he will⁷⁰. He is a strange man. Whether he
|| 221 y sera. N.B. 65 drôle de

wins or loses, he is always the same. I wanted to speak to him the
gagner perdre, 260 (o)

other night, but he (went away) without my seeing¹⁵⁶ him. If it
235 , s'en aller sans que 218 **

had not been for him, I should have won the game. Speak low for
gagner partie. bas

fear somebody should hear¹⁴⁸ us, and they might report it to him.
135 on entendre , 90 - 195 rapporter (o)

Unless¹⁹⁵ you are very attentive, and take your measures well¹⁸³, you will
N.B. attentif, 195 mesure N.B.,

never succeed. You should watch both²²² your cards and ²⁰⁴ those of
réussir 176 veiller sur N.B. carte sur (bb) des

other people. Neither grandeur nor riches can make men happy.
autres - 39 7 7 richesses 249 7 heureux.

I would not have that place, though it were offered to me.
174 - , 226 92 (o)

* Note * page 379.

† Note † page 354.

‡ Note ‡ page 312.

|| Dare say. *Dare* in this sense cannot be rendered by *Oser*, which expresses *boldness, audacity*; *I dare say* must be expressed by *Je pense, Je m'imagine, Je puis dire, Sans doute, je ne doute pas* or some similar expression.

** Turn, *If without that I should see him.*

IDIOMS.

Promiscuous EXERCISE on the IDIOMS.

Good morning²³⁴, sir. This is²⁴⁰ a fine morning. How do you do this
N.B. * 183 241

morning? I hope you are very well. Very well, sir, I thank you. How
255 241 ; †

does all your family do? How are your wife and children? They are
241 211 3 241

better, I thank you. And you; how do you do? Tolerably well for
(b) p. 72. , † ; 241 Possablement

an (old man). Do not talk of being old yet¹⁶³; it will be time enough
vieillard. parler vieux déjà N.B.; §

twenty years hence. How old do you think I am²³⁰? I should
dans d'ici. 221 N.B.

take you to be²⁰⁹ between thirty and forty. I am²³⁹ near fifty. You
pour N.B. entre ans. ¶ en⁷⁰ N.B. près de

do not look so old. You look very well for your age. I am very glad you
233 âgé. 253 221

think so. You have been in the country, (I understand.) Yes, I have⁷⁰,
146 le⁵⁴ à 290 , à ce que j'entends. N.B.,

(i.e. been there). I am just returned thence. How do you like it? I like
244 205 (e) p. 74. 185 268 62

it (very much). It is a beautiful country; and the people are uncom-
beaucoup. 65 290 ; 229 ex-

monly civil and obliging. I am fond of industrious people. I like
trémement obligeant. ¶ 229

those good country people. They look so cheerful and happy. I
25 gai 40

am going there to-night; will you come with me? How long do
y⁵⁴ 235 ; 106

you intend¹⁶⁸ to stop? I will sleep there, and return in the morn-
avoir dessein rester? ** y⁵⁴ (e) p. 74, 265 216 291

ing. But you have no occasion to return so soon. You may¹⁷⁸
besoin 168 265 pouvoir

stay there all the morning. You may stay till twelve o'clock.
rester 234 178 jusqu'à 236

Nay¹⁸⁴, you may spend the whole day there, if you like. Our
même, 271 233 y⁵⁴, vouloir.

people will be glad of your company. We will endeavour to make
229 bien aise tâcher 249

you as happy as we can. What time do you (go to bed)? We
43 43 142 à 92 heure se coucher

* Turn; *It is fine this morning.* † See note * page 261.

‡ As we have several words in french for this expression, we vary them as often as we can; see note * , page 261. § Turn; *Enough time*; see note * page 368.

¶ We always add *An* to the number in french. ¶ See note † page 326.

** The verb SLEEP, so often used in english in the sense of LIE, is not expressed in french by *Dormir* but by *Coucher*; because a person may LIE abed, and not SLEEP.

IDIOMS.

Promiscuous EXERCISE on the IDIOMS.

generally go about twelve o'clock. If you do not like to
ordinairement se coucher vers ²³⁶

stop, you may¹⁷⁸ return at night. It will be moon²⁵ light, and the
rester, pouvoir ²⁶⁵ *le* ²³⁵ *faire lune clair,*

roads are very good. The weather is so fine, that it⁶² is a pity
chemin ²⁴⁰ , *N.B. - dommage*

to remain (shut up) in a town. How does the country look? It
¹⁶⁸ *rester renfermé* ²⁵³ ⁰²

looks²⁵³ very well, indeed. I never saw it look²⁵³ better. Are the
^{*} , ¹⁹⁶ †

crops¹³⁴ promising¹⁵⁶? Very. If this weather lasts, there will be
récolte promettre *Beaucoup.* *durer,* ²⁴⁶

abundance of (every thing). I should like to go (very well)¹⁸³, but
¹⁶⁷ ‡ *fort, § N.B.* ,

it is rather too far for a walk. You have no occasion to walk; you
²⁴⁶ *un peu* *pour* || *besoin* || ;

may¹⁷⁸ ride, if you will. You will ride²⁶² my horse, I will ride that
pouvoir || , *N.B.* , ⁰⁸

of my servant and he will walk. If you would rather ride²⁶² in the
domestique, || *aimer mieux* *N.B.*

carriage, it will be here (by and by); you may ride²⁶² in it⁶⁴.
voiture, ⁶² *tantôt;* ¹⁷⁸ *N.B. dedans* -

No, I would rather ride on horseback. Come; the country air
^{*} *aimer mieux* ²⁵² ; ²⁵

will do you good. I hope it will⁷⁰; for I am not well. What
^{9bien.} ²²¹ (i e. do me some;) ²⁴¹

is the matter with you? You look very well. I do not know
²⁸¹ ²⁶⁵

how I look, but I am not well. I am always cold. My feet are
quelle mine j'ai, ²⁴¹ ²³⁹ *froid.* ²³⁹

always cold. The weather is so bad that I (am afraid) of going
²¹⁰ *craindre* ¹⁵⁴

out for fear of (catching cold). The weather has been very bad
de peur de m'enrhumer. ²⁴⁰

lately. Is²⁴⁰ the weather always so bad in this country? Is it
depuis quelque tems. ²³⁰ ²⁴⁰

always so damp and so cold? It is never very warm. However,
humide ²⁴⁰ *chaud.* *Cependant,*

(it is to be expected) that it will be finer in a short time. The
il faut ¹⁷² *espérer* ²⁴⁰ - *peu de*

weather ought to be fine at this season; it is near midsummer.
devoir ²⁴⁰ ; ¶ *pres de la Saint Jean.*

* Turn; *It has a very fine appearance.* † Turn; *I have never seen it finer.*

‡ See note † page 354. § See note † page 241.

¶ When WALK is used by opposition to RIDE, it is expressed by *Aller à pied*, and RIDE by *Aller à cheval*.¶¶ Turn; *We are near &c.*

IDIOMS.

Promiscuous EXERCISE on the IDIOMS.

Our spring generally¹⁸⁴ comes late. We never have it here so early
printems ordinairement tard. 190 de si (bonne

as you have it in your own country. (How many⁹) years have
heure) que - 230 Combien N.B. 233
 you been in this country? I have been about two years. I did
 * † *environ*

not think it was¹⁴⁵ so long. Do you like it? I like the people well
 140 246 *long tems. 268 226 assez*

enough¹⁸⁹, but I do not like the climate. It does not agree with me ;
bien, † N.B., climat. convenir - 54 ;

the weather is so cold and so changeable. If I can not accustom myself
variable. accoutumer me 54

to it this year, I will not stay another year. You should walk out
 63 233 , *rester 233 176 253 à l'air*

oftener than you do. I can not walk. I have hurt my foot. I am
 47 *faire. 237 se blesser 15 pied.*

afraid I have put my¹⁵ ancle out of joint. Come; do not afflict
 (nn) *237 se démettre cheville. - - § Allons ;*

yourself; I dare say²²¹ you will be well in (a few) days. Here is Mr. B.
 57 ; See || p. 392. 241 *quelques 247*

How long have you been in town? I am just come. I have just
 186 || *en 244 arriver. 244*

alighted from my horse. Are you come to stop any time? No,
descendre - venir 170 rester quelque

I shall (go back) to-night. (How many⁹) times a week do you
s'en retourner 235 N.B. 232 13

come to town? Sometimes twice, sometimes three times. You
 7 *deux fois, 232*

should come oftener. You should come every day. You should
 176 *y 70 41 y 70 tous les jours.*

bring your wife with you. I wish I could bring her; but we
 256 (nn) ;

can not well leave the house both (at the) same time. Sir, you are
quitter 122 en 93

wanted²⁶⁰. Who wants²⁶⁰ me? A gentleman is in the street who
 N.B. N.B. See †, p. 307. ¶

wants to speak to you. Tell him to (walk in). He says he can
 260 (o) 54 (f) p. 79. *entrer. 221*

not stop. Tell him that I will go and speak to him. Will you
*s'arrêter. * * - (o) 54*

* Turn, *How many years is it since*²⁴⁶ *you are* &c. see note * page 369.

† Turn, *It is*²¹⁶ *about two years*; see note * page 369. † See note * page 368.

§ The words *Out of joint*, are all expressed by the verb *Démètre*.

|| Turn, *How long is it since you are* &c. see note * page 369.

¶ Turn, *There is*²⁴⁶ *in the street a gentleman who*⁷⁵ &c.

** See note † page 312.

IDIOMS.

Promiscuous EXERCISE on the IDIOMS.

excuse me whilst I go and see what that gentleman wants? I am
pendant que (nm) 84 200

going to leave you. No; Sit down; Do not go yet; do not go
155 quitter ; s'asseoir ; * encore ; s'en aller*

before I return. I hope²²¹ you do not intend to leave us so soon.
218 † 265 255 avoir dessein 168 tôt.

Yes, I must go; but I will (call again) before I leave town. Take
, 181 s'en aller* ; repasser avant de (nm) 256

this letter to my sister. Take the children with you. If you can
256 256 53

not bring my sister, bring me the book which she has promised me.

Why did you not bring my sister? Why did you not bring me the
136 136

book which I desired¹⁰⁰ you to bring? I could not bring it; she is
292 106 ;

using¹⁵⁵ it herself. My sister used¹⁴⁰ to be very fond of reading. She
257 (m) N.B. 257 † 109 154

did not use to be so long in reading a book. I think she does not
257 long tems 109 154 221

use me well. I do not like to be used so. I suppose she has not
257 92 ainsi. 254 221

had time. I want to see my father. Where is he? I want money.
7 260

I want a wife. I want to be married. You want (so many⁸) things
251 tant N.B.

at once, that I (am afraid)²²¹ you will not get¹⁴⁶ one half (of them.)
à la fois, craindre 195 avoir la moitié en 54

You are yet too young to marry. You should get a little⁸ money
encore 170 261 176 270 un peu N.B.

first. ¹⁸³ You do not know what it costs to keep a house.
premièrement. N.B. 84 il en coûter à 269 -

I suppose²²¹ you would like to keep a horse too. I dare say you
254 269 aussi. §

(would have no objection) to have a ride now and then I do not
ne seriez pas fâché || de 252 de tems en tems.

* See N. B. under *Aller*, page 116.† Turn; *Before I have*²³⁸ returned.

‡ See note || page 326.

§ See note || page 392.

‡ The word *Objection*, so frequently used in English to denote that a person does or does not assent to what another person proposes, can not be expressed in French by *Objection* which means a *difficulty* which we oppose to an *argument* or a *proposition* in order to refute it. You must use some other equivalent expression, agreeably to the idea which you wish to denote; such as, *Vouloir, Aimer, Etre fâché, se Soucier, Avoir à redire, Trouver à redire*, or such like; as,

Have you any objection to take a walk? *Voulez-vous faire, or Aimeriez-vous à faire, ne seriez-vous [bien aise de faire une promenade?*

No; I have no objection to it; oui; Je le veux bien, or Je ne m'en soucie pas, or Comme vous voudrez, &c.

What objection have you to that? *Qu'avez-vous à redire, or Que trouvez-vous à redire à ceci?*
 I have no objection to it: *Je n'ai rien à y redire, or Je n'y trouve rien à redire.*

IDIOMS

Promiscuous EXERCISE on the IDIOMS.

mind riding¹⁵⁴. I would sooner walk than ride. I can easily walk
se soucier ²⁶³ *aimer mieux* ²⁶³ ²⁶²

twenty miles a-day, without being tired. Since you are such a
¹² ¹⁵⁴ *fatiguer. Puisque* ^{si *}

great walker, I wonder²²¹ you do not come to see us oftener than
marcheur, s'étonner ¹⁷² ⁴¹

you do. Every morning when the weather is fine, you should walk
⁴⁷ *Tous les* ^{que} ²⁴⁰ ¹⁷⁶ ²⁶³

(as far as) our²⁰⁸ house; we will give you some breakfast, and after
jusque ^{N.B.} ; *à* , *aprèsque*

you have¹⁴² rested yourself, you may either walk back or ride in our
²³⁷ ^{N.B.} *reposer vous* ⁵⁵ , ¹⁴² - [†] -

carriage, as (you like best). I intend to come and see you soon.¹⁸³
voiture, comme il vous plaira. ²⁶⁴ (*un*) *bientôt.* [†] ^{N.B.}

Does your brother return to the university this year? I suppose²²¹ he
²⁶⁵ ²³³ ²⁵⁴

will⁷⁰; but I do not think he will go⁷⁰ for some time, for he is just
[§] ^{N.B.;} ²²¹ ¹⁴⁵ *de quelque* , || ²¹⁴

returned thence. Has he returned²⁶⁵ you the money which you had
²⁶⁵ *en* ⁵⁴ (e) p. 74. ^{N.B.}

lent him¹⁶²? Yes, he has⁷⁰. I am glad (of it); for I
 (f) p. 79. , ^{N.B.} i. e. returned it me. *bien aise* *en* ⁵⁴ ; ||

(was afraid)²²¹ he would never return²¹⁵ it you. He is so forgetful.
craindre ¹⁴⁶ ^{N.B.} *sujet à oublier.*

I heard that your sister was to¹⁷² be married. She is married¹⁵⁸. She
¹³⁶ ²⁴² ²⁴³ *se marier.* ²⁶¹

was married last week. She has married¹⁵⁹ Mr. Goodhusband. They
¹³⁷ ¹⁵⁸ ²⁶¹

were married at our church. It⁶² was my brother who married them.
¹³⁷ *à* *église.* ^{N.B.}

How old is²³⁹ she? She is²³⁹ two and twenty. How old is²³⁹ Mr. G.?
^{N.B.} ^{N.B.} ¶ ^{• •} ^{N.B.}

He is²³⁹ about thirty. They are a young couple. I hope²²¹ they are
^{N.B.} *environ* ^{• •} ⁶⁵ *est* ²⁵⁵

happy. I hope they will be so long. She desired¹³⁶ me to give her
²²¹ *le* ⁵⁴ *long tems.* ²⁵² *faire ses*

love to you. Please to¹⁶⁸ let her know²⁴⁸ that I will call and
amitiés (o) ⁵⁴ *Avoir la bonté* *lui* ^{N.B.} ²⁰⁶ (*un*)

pay my respects to her at the first opportunity. How far is their²⁰⁸
pour rendre (o) ⁵⁴ *à* *occasion.* ²⁴⁶ ^{N.B.}

* Put *Si* after the article *à*, because *si* being here an adverb, can not be separated from the adjective which it modifies.

† Walk back, *Revenir à pied*, or *Retourner à pied*, see 265 rule. ‡ See note ‡ page 241.

§ Instead of repeating the verb agreeably to the 70 rule, you may express *He will* by *Qu'oui*.

|| Note * page 379.

¶ Say *twenty two*; the French always put the highest number first.

•• In speaking of age, we always add *Ans* to the number in French.

IDIOMS.

Promiscuous EXERCISE on the IDIOMS.

house from here? About seven or eight miles. It⁶² is a (long way).
 * Environ N. B. † loin.

Yes, it⁶² is rather far. I suppose²²¹ they keep a coach. No, they have
 , N. B. † un peu loin. 254 269 191,

no⁸ coach. They keep horses. (How⁸ many) servants do they keep?
 N. B. 269 N. B. domestiques 269

Let me see. There is the butler, a footman, a groom, a gardener,
 Attendez que je voie. 246 maître d'hôtel, laquais, palefrenier,
 a cook, and a chamber²⁶ maid. These are many servants for such a
 cuisinière, chambre † fille. Ce (e) si §
 small family. They hope that in time it⁶² will encrease. Was not
 avec le tems augmenter. 140
 your country²⁵ house advertised to be sold? No; my father had
 134 afficher 158 à 243 140
 some thought of selling it, but he has altered his mind. He is going
 quelque envie 154 62, changer - d'idée. 155
 to let his town²⁵ house, and live in the country (altogether¹⁸³)
 louer à la ville , demeurer à entièrement. N. B.
 Trade⁷ is so bad now, that he says he spends more than he gets.
 Commerce mauvais , 221 271 47 270

How do you spend your time in the country? We generally¹⁸⁴ spend
 185 271 || à ordinairement 271
 the mornings in¹⁶⁹ walking¹⁵⁴ and ²⁰⁴practising¹⁵⁴ music, and we spend the
 234 268 étudier , 271
 evenings in reading and in amusing ourselves. (That is the way)
 234 169 154 amuser nous 54 C' est ainsi que
 we generally spend ours. Does Mr. A. often call upon you? Some-
 184 271 85 134 184 268
 times, not often. Here²⁴⁷ he is. How do you do? I hope you are
 , pas N. B. 241 255 241
 (very well). Very well, I thank you. What is the matter with your
 bien. Très , ¶ 281 à la
 hand? It is all bloody²⁹. I was¹³⁶ near breaking my neck in coming
 62 sanglant. 245 se casser 15 cou en
 here. How so? My horse stumbled¹³⁶, and had like to have fallen
 185 cela ? faire un faux pas, 245 - tomber
 into a pit. I see it has ²²⁷hurt its¹⁵ mouth. I hope²²¹ you have not⁸
 fosse. 221 se faire mal 231 255 237 N. B.
 been hurt. Not much; I was¹³⁶ more⁸ frightened than hurt. I
 se faire mal. Pas beaucoup; 339 N. B. peur de mal**
 hope²²¹ you will do us the favour to dine with us. At what time do
 255 grâce 168 82 heure

* Turn; How far is it from here to their house?

† You may express it is, by c'est, or il y a.

‡ See Note * page 197.

§ See note * page 397.

|| Use Le here instead of votre because use vous sufficiently denotes whose time it is.

¶ See note * page 261.

** Turn; I have had more fright than hurt.

IDIOMS.

Promiscuous EXERCISE on the IDIOMS.

- you dine? We generally dine about four o'clock. I will avail myself of
 184 vers heures. profiter
- your invitation to enjoy the pleasure of your company a little longer.
 170 jouir 203 peu 41
- Have you any objection to take²⁵³ a short walk before dinner? No,
 N.B. 205 Oui,†
- none at all. Let us walk along this lane. Let us rather¹⁶⁴ go into
 † le veut bien.† - - 263 le long de ruelle. - - plutôt
- that path. The late²⁹ rains we have had have made the fields very
 sentier. dernier (s) 159 249
- pleasant. Yes, the country looks quite beautiful now. I do not
 agréable. , 253 tout à fait belle
- recollect having ever seen it finer. We must not go much further.
 se rappeler 154 181 loin⁴¹.
- It is near our dinner time. We must walk towards home. Let us
 près de l' 25 heure. 181 263 vers la maison.
- make haste. Our people do not like to be (kept¹⁴⁵ waiting). I see somebody
 se dépêcher. 229 92 faire attendre.
- coming¹⁵³ to meet us. Sir, the cloth is laid. The dinner is (on the table).
 N.B. 275 , couvert mis. servi.
- Come, ladies and gentlemen, (walk in.) Sit down at table. Now, my
 Allons, mesdames , entrer. se mettre à à présent,
- pretty neighbour, what do you choose to¹⁷² eat? Shall I help you
 jolie voisine, souhaiter 258
- to a little soup? It looks very good. I will thank you for two or three
 a peu de soupe? † 62 253 †
- (spoonfuls) of it. And you, madam, what will you eat? A bit of
 cuillerée en⁵⁴ , morceau
- that fowl. What part do you like best? A little of the breast. Shall
 (bb) volaille. partie le mieux? estomac.
- I add some sauce (to⁶⁸ it?) A little, if you please, and a little of the
 ajouter y⁵⁴ , § ,
- cauliflower You, sir, what shall I help you to? A bit of the sirloin.
 chou-fleur , , 258 aloyau.
- With some gravy to it? Yes, a little, and a potato. Will you have
 jus? - - , , pomme de terre.
- the goodness to pass the mustard (this way?) (Give me⁵⁵ leave) to
 bonté passer moutarde par ici? Permettre
- help you to a bit of this loin of veal. A very small bit. Do you like
 258 longe veau. petit
- fat⁷ or lean? A little of both. I will trouble you for a wing of that
 gras ?maigre? 122 peine || aile (bb)

* See note || page 396.

† The word *objection* being changed in the question, you must also change the words of the answer.

‡ I will thank you for, &c. turn; I beg you to give me two or three, &c.

§ Turn; If it pleases you, because *Plaire* in this sense is always impersonal in french.

|| I will trouble you for, &c. turn; Will you take the trouble to give me, &c.

IDIOMS.

Promiscuous EXERCISE on the IDIOMS.

chicken. Shall I send you a little ham (with it?) No, no⁸ ham; I will
poulet. *envoyer* *jambon* *aussi* ^{64?} , *pas* *N.B.* ; *

eat a little⁸ salad. It looks so nice. Pass the salad to that gentleman.
peu *N.B.* ⁶² ²⁵³ *bon* ²⁹ (bb)

(Here is) an excellent hare; I would advise you to taste it. I thank you;
²⁴⁷ *lièvre* ; *conseiller* *goûter* ;

I will eat no⁸ hare. I will eat one half of this partridge. And I will eat
N.B. * *la moitié* (m) *

a bit of the pheasant. Let me⁵⁵ send you a little of this pie. No, no
faisan. *Permettre* (kk) *pâté.* , *pas*

more; I can not eat (any more). (Take away), and bring the dessert.
davantage † ; † *Desservir,* ²⁵⁶ *dessert.*

Now, what say you to a glass of wine? I will take a glass with you.
 , ⁸³ *de* * ⁷⁰ *prendre*

Will you have red or white? White, if you please. And I will
¹⁷⁴ *du rouge* *du blanc?* , † (m) *

drink a glass of red. Ladies and gentlemen, your good health. We
 , *à* - *santé.*

thank you, sir. Come, gentlemen, help the ladies; help yourselves
 , *Allons,* § ²⁵⁸ ; *vous vous-mêmes*

and pass the bottle. How do you like this wine? It is very good indeed.
¹⁸⁵ ²⁶⁸ ⁶²

Since you like it, I hope you will make free (with it). It⁰² is what
Puisque , ²²¹ *boire librement* *en* ⁵⁴ *N.B.* ⁸⁴

we intend¹⁰⁸ to do. (Here is) very fine fruit too. Have these fruits
avoir dessein ²¹⁷ ¹⁰ *aussi.* ²³⁸ ¹³¹

grown in your garden? In the garden and in the houses. These
venir ¹³⁸ *serre.*

apricots are beautiful. What think you of the peaches and nectarines
abricot , *très beau.* ⁸³ *brugnon?*

They are the finest I have⁵⁰ seen this year. Taste the pears and
Ce (s) ¹⁵⁹ ²³³ *Goûter*

apples; they look very nice. These grapes are delicious. (Here is
 ; ⁶² ²⁵³ *bon* ²⁹ *délicieux.* ²⁴⁷

a (pine apple) which is excellent. Permit me to help you to a slice
ananas ²⁵⁸ *tranche*

(of it). I will thank you (for it), for I am very fond of pine apples.
en ⁵⁴ *être obligé* ⁵⁴ *en* ⁵⁹ , || ¶

Bring the sugar and some spoons. Come, gentlemen, (fill up) your
 § , *remplir*

glasses; I will give you a toast. Let us drink the health of all good
 ; * *un toast.* - - *boire à* *santé*

* See note † page 312.

† More, Any more, at the end of a sentence, are expressed by *Davantage*.

‡ See § p. 399.

§ When *Come* is used as it is here, to encourage, it is a kind of *interjection* and is then expressed by *Allons*.

¶ See note * page 379.

¶ See note || page 326.

IDIOMS.

Promiscuous EXERCISE on the IDIOMS.

people of whatever country, colour, or religion they are. With all my heart.
²²⁹ ¹¹⁷ ²³⁰
couleur, *De.* *cœur.*

An everlasting peace between all men. What a pity that all men do not
*étternelle*³² *paix* *entre* ⁷ ²⁰ *dommage*

think so. They would spare themselves many afflictions. We will drink
ainsi. *épargner se* ⁵⁴ *(e)* *chagrin.* see † p. 312.

this toast, to shew you that we join with you in your wishes,
toste, m. ¹⁷⁰ *faire voir* *joindre* * *souhait,*

but I hope you will excuse us from drinking any more. Since you will
²²¹ *excuser* ¹⁵⁴ † *Puisque*

not drink, would you like to take an excursion on the water? We have
, faire tour

a fine river (close by)¹⁸³, with good boats and good boatmen. I should
rivière tout près N.B., ¹⁰ *bateau* ¹⁰ *batelier.*

like it (very much). And I too. Well, since you all like it, we will
beaucoup. ⁵² *aussi.* *Eh bien,* †

go. Which do you like best sailing¹⁵⁴ or rowing? I think²²¹
⁷⁰ ⁸⁶ *le mieux aller à la voile, aller à la rame?*

sailing is the most pleasant. They make such a noise with their oars.
¹⁵⁴ *agréable.* *tant de bruit* *rame.*

Boatman, what do you ask an¹⁸ hour for your boat? We generally
Batelier, combien *par heure* ¹⁸⁴

charge three shillings an hour. That is (too much.) I will give you
²⁷² ¹² *Ce.* *trop.* -

half a crown. That is too little. I will not give you more. Well,
un petit ³⁸ *écu.* *Ce* *peu.* † *Eh bien,*

come, I will not cheapen with you. Where shall we go? I do not
 see § p. 400. *marchander* *Où*

mind; (please yourself.) (It is all the same to us.) Are you fond
s'en soucier; où vous voudrez. § *Cela nous est égal.* ¶

of bathing¹⁵⁴? Yes, very. The sea is not far off here. (It is) not
à se baigner? *, beaucoup.* *mer* *loin d'ici.* ²⁴⁶

above a mile and a half. If you wish to bathe, we will go⁷⁰. Can you
plus de - *demi.* *se baigner,* ••

swim? I can swim a little, but I do not like to (go out of my depth.)
nager? *, perdre fond.*

As for you, I know you can swim like a fish. Not quite; but
Quant à ²²¹ *comme poisson.* *Pas tout à fait;*

I can swim pretty well. It begins to be late. I (am afraid) the
assez *se faire tard.* *craindre* ²²¹

ladies will (catch cold¹⁴⁶). We will (go back,) if you please. Yes,
¹⁹⁵ *s'enrhumer.* *s'en retourner,* *vouloir.* ,

* *We join with you in your wishes*, turn; *We join our wishes to yours.* † See note † page 400.
 † Put this adjective *after* the verb in french. § Not, *Plaisez-vous*, which would express quite a
 different idea. ¶ Not, *Il est le même à nous*, which is not a french expression.

¶ See note || page 326.

•• See note † page 354.

IDIOMS.

Promiscuous EXERCISE on the IDIOMS.

I think it is time. We had a very agreeable sail, had we
²²¹ *il en* ⁷⁰ *est* ¹³⁶ ³² *promenade en bateau,* ²⁸³
 not? Very agreeable indeed. I will procure you that diversion as often
procurer *amusement* ⁴³
 as you will favour me with your company. We are (very much)
⁴³ *accorder le plaisir* *de* *bien* -
 obliged to you, sir; and we wish you a good night²³⁴. Good night,
¹⁵⁸ *(o)* ⁵⁵ ; *le* *N.B.* ,
 ladies; I wish you a pleasant walk. Mr. M. you used to be very
¹⁸ ; *agréable* ²⁵⁷ *fort*
 fond of music; do you ever (make use) of your violin now? I use
musique; *jamais se servir* *violin* ²⁵⁷
 it sometimes; very seldom. Since you do not use it, I will be obliged
 ; *rarement. Puisque* ²⁵⁷ ,
 to you, if you will let me have it, till²¹⁸ I have got one made. I
^(o) , *prêter* - , *jusqu' à ce que* ²⁵¹
 do not think you will (be able¹⁴⁵) to use it; the strings are all broken.
²²¹ *pouvoir* ²⁵⁷ *en* ⁵⁴ ; *corde* ²⁶⁷
 I will get them mended. I will get new ones put (to it). Who
²⁵⁰ *raccommoder.* ²⁵⁰ *de neuves en* ⁵⁹ , *mettre* *y* ⁵⁴
 made it you? A (man of the name) of Fiddle. When you see¹⁴² him, I
¹³⁶ ⁵⁵ ⁵⁹ *Un nommé* - *N.B.* ,
 beg you will desire him to make me⁵⁴ one (like it.) (How much) did
 † ²⁵² *m'en* ⁷⁰ *un semblable.* *Combien* ¹³⁶
 he charge you (for it?) He charged¹³⁶ me twenty guineas. He charged
²⁷² *en* ²⁷² ²⁷²
 you (too much.) He did not use me well. If I were in your place, I
trop. - ¹³⁶ ²⁵⁷ † *à* ,
 would get one made in Paris. You would get it better and cheaper.
²⁵¹ *à* *avoir* (b) p. 72. *à meilleur marché.*
 I suppose²²¹ you do not intend to¹⁶⁸ return home to night. Yes, I
²⁵⁴ *avoir dessein* ²⁶⁵ *chez vous* ²⁶⁵ ,
 do⁷⁰. You will drink a cup of tea before you go. I
N.B. i. e. intend to return. § || *s'en aller.*
 can not stay. Our people will be waiting for me. They will be anxious
reste. ²²⁹ ¹⁵⁵ ²⁰¹ ⁵⁴ *inquiet*
 to hear from me. I long to see how they are. I have not heard from
²⁷⁵ † *see LONG p. 175.* ²⁴¹ ²⁷⁵
 them for these three days. The tea will be ready just now. Get the
 ¶ *tout de suite. Apprêter*
 tea ready as fast as you can¹⁴². Come near the table. Shall I bring the
 * * ⁴³ ⁴³ *N.B.* ²⁷⁴ ²⁷⁴

* Note || page 326.

† I beg you will desire him, turn; I beg you to desire him, &c.

‡ See note † page 337.

§ See note § page 355.

|| Before may be expressed by *Avant de* with the following verb in the infinitive, or by *Avant que* with the subjunctive; but here the two verbs having the same nominative, Before should be expressed by *Avant de*. See note (nn).¶ For these three days, may be expressed two ways; *je n'ai pas appris de leurs nouvelles depuis* ²⁰⁵ *trois jours*; or *Il y a* ²⁴⁶ *trois jours que je n'ai appris, &c.* ** Ready is implied in the verb *Apprêter*

Promiscuous EXERCISE on the IDIOMS.

table nearer to you? It will do very well where it is. Bring the
 41 de 62 - est 62 256

tea, and take²⁵⁶ these children out of the room. Is there no coffee?
 , emmener hors 246

Yes; there is both²²² tea and coffee. Which will you have? I will
 ; 246 N.B. 9 9 Duquel 174 .. *

drink a cup of coffee. Eat a little⁸ bread and butter. Is your coffee
 † N.B. 134

sweet enough? Yes, it is very pleasant. You will drink another cup;
 sacré see * p. 368. , 62 agréable. † ;

will you not? No, no more, I thank you. Now I must go.
 282 , pas davantage, à présent 181 see N.B. p. 116.

If you will come with me, I will take it kindly of you. Yes, I will⁷⁰.
 144 , † 279 , §

Bring me my horse. Bring me my whip and ³spurs. (There is) your
 256 256 fouet éperons. 247

whip, and (here are) your spurs. They are not right. What is the
 , 247 bien.

matter with them? You find fault with (every thing.) Can not you
 284 278 107

do without spurs? No, I can not. I want to return as fast as I can¹⁴²,
 280 , 70 260 265 43 43 N.B.

to go and meet a friend of mine who is coming to spend (a few) days
 -70 (nn) 273 87 155 172 271 quelques

at²⁰⁸ our house. It will be too late; will it not? I am afraid it will⁷⁰.
 N.B. ; 252 ¶ N.B.

I never can (get ready) in time. In vain I tell these people to keep
 s'apprêter à 277 dire à 229 tenir

always ready the things which I want, they will not do it. Whatever
 prêt 29 dont 260 , vouloir 277

I may say or do, they will⁷⁴ have every thing their (own way.) They
 , vouloir faire 107 à leur tête.

make me very unhappy. If I were¹⁴⁰ you, I would turn them
 249 ¶ que de vous, mettre

away. What will you have⁷⁴ one do? One can not do without
 à la porte. N.B. 90 faire? 90 280

somebody, and it is very unpleasant to be always changing¹⁵⁵ people.
 85 , désagréable - changer de 229

True; but I would not keep people who would not attend to my
 Cela est vrai ; garder 259

orders. Come; do not mind them. They are all alike.
 Allons ; faire attention à 58 - * * se ressembler

Happy they who can do without them.
 Heureux 68 280 en.

* See note † page 312.

† See note § page 355.

‡ See note * page 334.

§ Instead of repeating the verb here, you might say, *oui, je le veux bien.*¶ Instead of repeating *I am afraid it will be too late*; you may say: *je le crains*, or *je crains qu'out.*

¶ See note † page 337.

** Put this adjective after the verb in french.

Promiscuous EXERCISE on ALL the RULES.

It having been represented to the author that the utility of this work might be increased by lengthening the exercise, he, in consequence, has added the following amusing little novel, which is full of the most essential rules, especially on the NOUNS, PRONOUNS, and VERBS.

BATHMENDI, an Eastern Tale.

Under the reign of a king of Persia whose⁷⁵ name I have forgotten,
 a merchant of Balsora was ruined by bad speculations. He collected
 the wreck of his fortunè, and retired to the (remotest part) of the
 province of Kousistan. There he bought a small country house and
 a field which he cultivated very badly, because he was always think-
 ing of the time when he had something more pleasant to (attend to.)
 Grief shortened the days of this merchant: feeling himself near his
 end, he called to him four sons that he had, and addressed them
 (in these words); My dear children, I have no other property to leave
 you but this house, and the knowledge of a secret which I was
 not to reveal to you till now. In the time of my opulence, I had
 for a friend the genie Alzim. He promised me to take care of you
 when I should be no more, and to divide a treasure amongst you.
 This genie lives a few miles hence, in the great forest of Kom. Go
 to him, ask him for that treasure, but (take care) not to believe . . .
 Death did not allow him to finish. The four sons of the merchant,
 after having bewailed and buried their father, went to the forest of Kom.
 They inquired for the residence of the genie Alzim. They had no trouble

* See note † page 281. † Express *No, Not*, by *Ne* only, because *Que* which comes after the verb supplies the place of *Pas*. ‡ *When I should be no more*, may be expressed by *après moi*.
 § Leave out this preposition in french. ¶ Express to by the verb *trouver*. ¶ See note # page 296

Promiscuous EXERCISE on ALL the RULES.

to find it. Alzim was known to the whole country: he received¹³²
 189 62 140 de 38 tout 230 : accueillir

kindly all those who came to see him, he listened to their complaints,
 avec bonté 172 , écouter - plainte,

consoled them, lent them money, when they (were in want) (of it); but
 139 , 162 , avoir besoin en 44;

these favours were on a condition; (they were) to follow blindly the advice
 bienfait à ; il fallait 172 conseil

which he gave them; this was his whim; No one was admitted into
 - ; ce manie; Nul 101 recevoir

his palace till he had taken an oath (of it). This oath did not
 avant de (nn) avoir fait le serment en 55.

alarm the three eldest sons of the merchant; the fourth, whose (name
 effrayer aîné 32 ; , qui se nom-

was) Taï, found this ceremony ridiculous. However he wished to
 mer , Cependant vouloir

(go in) and receive the treasure: he then¹⁸⁴ swore like his brothers; but
 entrer : donc comme ;

reflecting (on the) dangerous consequences of this indiscreet oath, (calling
 aux * , se rap-

to mind) that his father, who was in the habit of visiting this palace,
 peler avoir - - coutume 154 ,

had passed his life in committing blunders, he wished without being
 169 faire des sottises, 154

a perjurer, to secure himself from all danger; and whilst they⁹⁰ were
 - , mettre à l'abri 54 de ; N.B.

conducting them to the genie, he stopped his ears with scented
 conduire 155 vers , boucher odoriférante 92

wax. (Having taken) this precaution, he prostrated himself before the
 9 Muni de , prosterner 54 206

throne of Alzim. Alzim bid the four sons of his ancient friend to
 faire † ancien * -

rise, embraced them, and ordered a large chest filled with daricks to
 relever † , faire † grand coffre de darique § -

(be brought). Here, said he, is the treasure which I have designed for
 apporter † 247 , 247 destiner -

you. I am going to divide it amongst you, and then I will tell each
 55 partager - 54 , ensuite dire à 103

of you the road he must follow to be perfectly happy. Taï did not
 (s) devoir prendre 170

hear what the genie said, but he observed him attentively, and saw
 || , || , || , ||

* Put this adjective *before* the noun. See note (i) page 199.

† The two verbs *faire* and *relever* must come together, because *faire* here means to *cause*; he did not *cause* the four sons, but he *caused* to rise.

‡ *Faire* and *apporter* must come together; see note † above.

§ Small pieces of gold.

¶ The action not being momentary, but having been continued, this verb should be in the *imperfect*.

Promiscuous EXERCISE ON ALL the RULES.

in his eyes, and on his countenance an air of cunning and of malignity which gave him much uneasiness. However he received with gratitude his share of the treasure. Alzim, after having thus enriched them, assumed an affectionate tone, and said to them; my dear children, your good or bad destiny depends upon your meeting sooner or later with a certain being called Bathmendi, of whom every body speaks, but whom very few people know. The wretched mortals seek him all (in the dark). I, who love you, will whisper to each of you where he will (be able) to find him. At these words, Alzim took aside Bekir the eldest of the four brothers. My son, said he to him, you are born with courage, and have (a great deal) of ability for war; the king of Persia has just sent an army against the Turks; join that army; it is in the camp of the Persians that you will find Bathmendi. Bekir thanked the genie, and (was quite impatient) to (set out.) Alzim beckoned to the second son to (come near); it was Mesrou. You have sense, said he to him, some address and great aptness for lying; take the road to Ispahan; it is at court that you must look for Bathmendi. He then called the third brother who (was named) Sad-der: You, said he to him, were gifted with a lively and fertile imagination; You see objects not as they are, but as you wish them to be; You have often genius, and not always common sense;

* Put this adjective *before* the noun.

† See note † page 312.

‡ *L'aîné* not *le plus aîné*, because *aîné* means *eldest*.§ In *familiar tales* and in *familiar conversation*, the French generally use the *second person singular* instead of the *second person plural*.|| Put this verb in the *present* tense. The French often use the *present* instead of the *perfect* in narrations, to show the *suddenness* of the action, or to call the attention of the hearer or reader more particularly to it.

Promiscuous EXERCISE ON ALL THE RULES.

You will be a poet. Take the way to Agra; it is amongst the wits
 23 *chemin de* ; *ce* *beaux esprits*
 and the fine ladies of that city, that you will find Bathmendi. Taï
 (bb) ,
 advanced in his turn; and thanks to the wax²⁵ balls, he did not hear
s'avancer à ; *grâce* *boule*,
 a word of what Alzim said to him. It has been known since that
 (o) ⁹¹ *savoir*
 he had advised him to turn dervis. The four brothers, after having
*lui*⁵⁵ *se faire derviche*, ¹⁵⁴ ,
 thanked the beneficent genie, returned to their home. The three eldest
bienfaisant *demeure*.
 thought of nothing but Bathmendi. Taï unstopped his ears, heard them
réver à ¹⁹⁸ *déboucher*
 arranging their departure, and proposing to sell their small house to the
¹⁵⁴ ¹⁵⁴
 first (person that should offer), (in order to) divide the amount (of it.)
offrant , ¹⁷⁰ *partager* *prix* *en*⁵⁴
 Taï asked to be the purchaser. He got²⁵⁰ the house and field valued,
acquéreur. *faire* † *estimer* †
 paid with his gold the share that came to each of his brothers, wished
de *part* ⁷⁴ *revenir* ¹⁰³ ,
 them every prosperity, embraced them tenderly, and remained alone
toutes sortes de , *rester* *tout seul*
 in the paternal house. It was then that he (set about) executing a project
²⁹ ³² *Ce* ¹³⁷ *alors* *s'occuper de* ¹⁵⁴
 which had for a long while been the object of his thoughts. He was
auquel il pensait depuis - *tems* †
 (in love) with the young Amine, the daughter of a neighbouring farmer.
amoureux de , ²² *son voisin* ³² *laboureur*.
 Amine was handsome and prudent. She had the management of her
sage. *sou*
 father's house, and asked of God only two things; the first was that her
²³ *ménage*, *à* ; -
 father should¹⁴⁶ live long; the second that she might become the wife of
¹⁴⁹ *long tems*; - - - *de* § *femme*
 Taï. Her wishes were granted. Taï asked for her and obtained her hand.
¹³⁷ *exaucer*. ²⁰¹
 The father of Amine came to live with his (son in law), and taught
demeurer chez *gendre* , *apprendre*
 him the art of making the earth yield all that it can give to those
¹⁶² *faire* || *à la* *rendre* || *ce que* ⁶²

• Express *Nothing* by *Ne* only, because *que* which comes after, expresses *nothing but*.

† The two verbs *faire* and *estimer* must come together.

‡ *Had been the object of his thoughts* is all expressed by the verb *penser*.

§ Put this verb in the infinitive. || *Faire* and *rendre* must come together before *à la terre*; for he did not *make* the earth, but he *made* or *caused* to yield

Promiscuous EXERCISE on ALL the RULES.

who cultivate it. The field doubled in value; and as he was laborious,
⁶² *de valeur;* *comme* ,
and his wife economical, each year encreased their revenue. Amine
économe, ¹⁰² *augmenter*
had many⁶ children. Children who ruin the rich idle people of towns,
¹³⁷ * *N.B.* ⁷ *oisif* ³⁹ ⁷ ,
enrich the (husbandman). At the end of twelve years, Taï, the
laboureur. *bout* ²² ,
father of ten pretty children, the husband of a good and virtuous
³³ , ²² *époux* ³⁴
wife, master of several slaves, and possessor of two flocks, was the
plusieurs ,
happiest farmer in Kousistan. Meanwhile his three brothers were
⁴⁹ *m.* *Cependant*
running after Bathmendi. Bekir had⁴⁹ arrived at the camp of the
¹⁵⁵ ²³³
Persians. He presented himself to the grand vizier, and asked to
Perse. ⁵⁴ *vizir,*
serve in the corps that was the most exposed. His appearance, his
⁹² *figure,*
willingness pleased the vizier who admitted him into a troop of horse.
bonne volonté ²⁰² *cavalerie.*
A few⁸ days after, a bloody battle (was fought.) Bekir performed¹
N.B. *sanglant* *se donner.* *faire*
wonders, saved the life of his general, and took with his own hand
prodige, *à* , *de* -
the general of the enemy. The praises of Bekir resounded every where,
celui † *retentir* † ,
and the vizier (out of gratitude) raised his deliverer to the rank of a
reconnaissant, *élever* *libérateur* *grade* -
general officer. Alzim was right, said Bekir to himself; it is here
³² ²³⁹ , ¹³⁹ - *se* ⁵⁴; *ce*
that fortune awaited me; every thing shews that I am going to meet
⁷ *attendre* ¹³³ ; ¹⁰⁷ *annoncer*
with Bathmendi. The glory of Bekir, and especially his preferment,
²⁰¹ , *surtout* *élévation,*
excited the envy and the murmurs of all the satraps. Bekir unhappy
§
by his very success, lived alone, always on his guard, and exposed
même || , , || ,
every moment to receive an affront. He regretted the time when he
à tout *outrage.* *où*
was only a common soldier, and was waiting with impatience for the
¶ - *simple* , ²⁰¹

* See note * page 226.

† Instead of repeating the noun, the French would here use a *pronoun*.‡ *Les louanges de Bekir retentirent partout* would be french; but, *Tout retentit des louanges de Bekir* would be better.

§ Persian nobleman.

|| Make this word *plural* in french.

¶ See note * page 275.

Promiscuous EXERCISE on ALL the RULES.

end of the war, when the Turks reinforced by fresh¹⁰ troops and led¹⁷
 , *quand* ¹⁵⁷ *nouvelle* * *guider*
 by a new general, came and attacked the division which Bekir
nouveau * , (*nn*) (*ce**)
 commanded. This was an opportunity which the satraps of the army
Ce *occasion*
 (had long been waiting¹⁵⁵ for.) They used a hundred times more⁸
 - *attendaient* ¹⁴⁰ *depuis long tems.* *employer* ²¹ *N.B.*
 skill to get their commander beaten, than they had showed in all their
²⁵⁰ † *chef* *battre* † *en* ⁷⁰
 lives to (avoid being) beaten themselves. The brave Bekir forsaken,
 † *pour n'être pas* ¹⁵⁸ *eux-mêmes.* *abandonner*,
 covered with wounds, overpowered by numbers, was taken by the
²⁰⁰ , *accabler* *sous le nombre,* ¹³⁷
 janissaries, and sent to Constantinople, where he was thrown into a
janissaire, , *jetter*
 dungeon. Alas! exclaimed he, in his prison; I begin to think that
cachol. *Hélas! s'écrier* ¹³⁹ , ;
 Alzim has deceived me, for I can not expect to meet with Bathmendi
 , *espérer* ²⁰¹
 here.¹⁸³ The war lasted fifteen years, and the satraps always prevented
N.B. , ¹⁸⁴ *empêcher*
 the exchange of Bekir. His prison was not opened (till peace was made).
 § *qu' à la paix.*
 He ran immediately to Ispahan to seek the vizier his protector, whose
aussitôt *chercher* , *à qui*
 life he had saved. (Three weeks elapsed) before he could speak to
 || *Il fut trois semaines sans* * * - *pouvoir* (*o*)
 him. (At the) end of that time, he obtained an audience. Fifteen years
⁵⁴ *Au* *bout* , ²³³
 imprisonment alter a little the figure of a handsome young man. Bekir
de prison *changer*
 (could hardly be said to be the same); so the vizier did not know
était à peine reconnaissable; *aussi* *reconnaître*
 him again. However, by dint of (calling to mind) the different epochs of
 - , *à force* *se rappeler* ¹⁵⁴ *
 his glorious life, he recollected that Bekir had formerly done him a little
 * , *se souvenir* *rendre* ¹⁶²
 service. Yes, yes, my friend, said he to him, I remember you; you
 , , , (*o*) ⁵⁴ , *remettre* ;
 are a brave man; but the state is much encumbered; a long war and
 * ; *bien obéré;* *

* Put this adjective before the noun. † *Faire* and *battre* must come together before *chef*.

‡ This word must be singular in french, because it implies the life of each person individually, not of them collectively.

§ Express *Not* by *Ne* only, as *Que* which comes after supplies the place of *Pas*.

|| Turn; to whom he had saved the life. ** This preposition governs the infinitive in french.

Promiscuous EXERCISE on ALL the RULES.

great festivals have exhausted our finances; however come to me again
*fête épuiser ; revenir voir*ⁿ

I will try, I will see. . . Ah! my lord, I have no^s bread, and for
tâcher, Eh! , N.B. , depuis

this fortnight that I have been waiting for an opportunity to speak to
que - - † 201 le moment 168

your lordship, I should have perished with misery, but for a soldier of
grandeur, 238 mourir de , 227

the guard, my ancient companion, who has shared his pay with me.
, vieux camarade,

That is very well of that soldier, replied the vizier; it is truly noble
Ce à , répondre ; cela vraiment

and affecting; I will mention it to the king. Call upon me again;
*touchant ; parler en 54 Revenir voir 54 * ;*

you know I (have a regard for) you. . . . In saying these words, he
221 aimer 54 ,

turned his back (upon him). Bekir called again the (next day), but he
*15 lui 54 revenir * lendemain,*

(was denied admittance). Overwhelmed with despair, he left the palace
trouva la porte fermée. Accabler 200 , sortir du

and the city, resolved never to enter it again. He threw himself at
*de la , 190 rentrer y 54 * jeter 54*

the foot of a tree on the bank of the river Zenderou. There he
bord fleuve Là

reflected on the ingratitude of viziers, on all the misfortunes which he
à 7 , à

had experienced, on those which still⁸⁴ threatened him, and (unable
140 éprouver, 159 à (bb) encore , pouvant

any¹⁹⁰ longer) to support these melancholy ideas, he rose to throw
ne plus 172 soutenir triste , se lever 170 précipiter

himself into the river; . . . but he felt himself embraced by a beggar
54 , 54 || mendiant

who bathed his face with tears, and exclaimed sobbing; it⁶² is my
138 visage 200 , 136 en sanglotant ; N.B.

brother, it⁶² is my brother Bekir! Bekir looks, and recognises Mes-
, N.B. , reconnaître

rou. Every man feels pleasure no doubt in meeting again with a
*104 avoir 9 sans doute 169 retrouver * 201*

brother he has not seen for a long time; but an unfortunate man
(s) depuis - ; 39

without resource, without a friend, who is going to (put an end to)
, † , 172 finir

* The adverb *again* is expressed by the preposition *re* prefixed to the verb.

† He having been waiting till the moment he was speaking, the French would put the verb *wait* in the present, and leave out *have* and *been*. || Put this verb in the *infinitive*.

‡ After the preposition *Sans*, the noun is generally used without an article, because the preposition and the noun are considered either as an *adjective* or as an *adverbial* expression.

Promiscuous EXERCISE on ALL the RULES.

his existence in despair, thinks he sees an angel from heaven, in
jours de , croire (nn) 7 , en
 finding again a brother whom he loves. Such was the sentiment
retrouver - Ce 137
 which Bekir and Mesrou felt at the same time. They mutually
éprouver à - fois. 184
 pressed (each other) in their arms, they mingled their tears, and after
** se 54 , confondre * larme, 184*
 the first moments given to tenderness, they looked at (each other) with
*157 , * 201 se 54*
 eyes full of surprise and affliction. Art thou then also unfortunate?
† - surpris affligé. Tu es donc
 exclaimed Bekir. This, answered Mesrou, is the first moment of
s'écrier 247 , 247
 happiness which I have enjoyed since we ¹³⁶ parted²³⁷. At these words,
dont se quitter.
 the two unfortunate men embraced (each other) again; they leaned
*39 * se 54 encore ; s'appuyer **
 on each other; and Mesrou seated near to Bekir, thus¹⁸⁴ began his
contre 121 ; assis près de , ainsi
 history. You remember the fatal day when we went to Alzim's.
202 32 où 208
 That perfidious genie told me I might find at court that Bathmendi
perfade † 221 7
 whom we wished (so much) to meet. I followed his pernicious advice,
140 tant funeste † conseil,
 and soon arrived at Ispahan. I became acquainted with a young female
184 53 à faire connaissance une - 39
 slave who belonged to the mistress of the first secretary of the grand
140
 vizier. This slave conceived an affection for me, and introduced me to
de l' 58 ,
 her mistress, who made me pass for her youngest brother. Soon the
, petit
 youngest brother was presented to the vizier, and a few days after, he
137 , - quelques ,
 obtained an employment in the palace. The Sultana distinguished me,
emploi Sultane ,
 and took me into an intimate friendship. From that moment, honours and
213 32 Dès , 7
 riches began to shower upon me. The monarch himself shewed some
§ pleuvoir 58 témoigner
 regard for me. He liked to converse with me, because I flattered him
affection - 54 140 causer 139

* To show the *quickness* in which the action was done, the french would put this verb in the *present* tense.

† Leave out this adjective, and make *surprise* and *affliction* into *adjectives*.

‡ Put this adjective *before* the noun.

§ Make this word *plural* in french.

Promiscuous EXERCISE on ALL the RULES.

with address, and always advised him to do what he had a mind to do.
 , 219 53 conseiller 163 - - 84 .40 24 envie .68 -

This was the way to make him soon do what I should wish.
 Ce 140 moyen 168 * lui 54 faire * vouloir.

That failed not to happen. (At the) end of three years, I saw myself
 (bb) manquer 168 Au bout , 54

at once prime minister, favourite of the king, (having in my power)
 à la fois , maître

to appoint and to remove the viziers, deciding every thing by my
 de nommer déplaçer , 107

influence, and receiving every morning the great men of the empire,
 crédit, tous les matins : 39 ,

who came to wait (till I awoke) to obtain from me a smile of protection.
 139 mon réveil 170 de 58

(In the) midst of my glory and of my fortune, I (was astonished) that
 Au s'étonner 140 -

I did not¹⁹⁰ meet with the Bathmendi I was seeking. (I feel no
 (nm) N.B. 201 (s) Rien ne me

want of any kind), said I to myself; why (do I still want Bathmendi)?
 manque , 139 - me 54; Bathmendi me manque-t-il?

This idea and the constraint (in which) I spent my life, poisoned all
 gêne où (v) 271 ,

my pleasures. The passion of the king for a young Mingrelienne
 amour

came to (fill up) my misfortune. The whole court cast their eyes to
 combler 2 infortune. 38 tourner les 15 de

that side, in hope that the mistress would (turn out) the minister. I
 , 7 espoir chasser

parried the blow by connecting myself with the Mingrelienne, and
 parer (hh) lier me 54 ,

flattering the passion of the king: but that passion became so violent,
 204 :

that the monarch, determined to marry his mistress, asked me for²⁰¹
 , décider à 261 , †

my advice. I wavered for some days. The Sultan's mother, who
 avis. tergiverser - Sultane mère, ||

was afraid of losing her influence if her son should¹⁴⁴ marry, came
 crédit N.B. se marier,

to declare to me that, if I did not break off that match, she would
 172 (o) , rompre - mariage,

have me assassinated on the very³² day of the ceremony. An hour after,
 230 - même

the Mingrelienne came and assured me that, if I did not get her
 (nm) 54 , § 250

* Make do, *Faire faire*, must come together in french.

† See note || page 296.

‡ *Mère* being here considered as an *adjective*, must come after *Sultane*.

§ See note † page 387.

Promiscuous EXERCISE on ALL the RULES.

married to the king (the very next day), I should be strangled the day
²⁰¹ par ^{dès le lendemain,}
 after. My situation was embarrassing; I had to choose (between the)
 d'après. ^{position} il fallait ¹⁷² du *
 dagger, ²⁰⁴ the rope or ²⁰⁴ flight. I chose¹³⁶ the last. I disguised myself
 , du cordon de la prendre dernier parti. ¹³⁶ ²³⁷ ⁵⁴
 as you see, and have escaped from the palace with some diamonds
 , ²³⁷ s'échapper †
 in my pockets, which will support me with you in some corner of
 , faire vivre quelque
 Indoustan, far from the Sultanas, the Mingreliennes and the court.
⁵ , loin ²⁰⁴ ²⁰⁴
 After this recital, Bekir related his adventures to Mesrou. They both
 récit, ¹²² †
 agreed that they would have done just as well not¹⁹⁰ to have (rambled
 convenir tout aussi N.B. - courir
 about) the world, as they had done, and that the wisest thing they
 - , comme ¹⁴⁰ , meilleur (s)
 could do, was to return into Kousistan, to their brother Tai, where
⁵⁰ , ¹⁴⁰ de ⁵ , auprès de ,
 the diamonds of Mesrou would enable them to lead a sweet and easy²⁹
 mettre en état ¹⁶⁸ meurer ³² aisé
 life. After this resolution, they (set out on their journey), and travelled
 , se mettre en route marcher
 for several days without meeting with any adventure. As they were
²⁰⁵ - - § ¹⁵⁵
 crossing the province of Farsistan, they arrived towards dusk at a
 traverser , vers le soir
 small village where they intended to spend the night. It was a holy
 compter ²⁷¹ ¹⁴⁰ fête
 day. On entering the village, they saw several peasants' children
²⁵ En entrer dans || ²⁵
 returning¹⁵³ from walking, attended by a kind of (school-master) badly
¹⁸⁰ N.B. , ⁷ promenade, conduit ¹⁵⁷ espèce magister mal
 clad, walking with his head down, and having the appearance of (being
 vêtu, marcher - la ¹⁵ basse, air
 absorbed in) (melancholy thoughts). The two brothers approached this
 rêver ¶ tristement. ²⁷⁴ * *
 school-master, looked at him attentively... What was their surprise! it⁶² was
 , * * ²⁰¹ ⁵² * * N.B. * *
 Sadder, it⁶² was their brother Sadder whom they embraced. What⁹³! my
 , N.B. * * * * Eh quoi!

* The preposition *between* is here expressed like *of*.

† See note † page 282.

‡ Put this pronoun *after* the verb.

§ All these words may be left out in French.

|| The French do not say *entrer un endroit*, to enter a place; they say *entrer dans un endroit*, to enter into a place.

¶ Express the words *being absorbed in* by the verb *rêver*.

** To express the *suddenness* of the action, the French would here use the *present* tense.

Promiscuous EXERCISE on ALL the RULES.

friend, said Bekir to him, is this (the way) in which genius is rewarded?
 , (o) , ce ainsi - que ⁷ ⁹²

You see, replied Sadder, that it is treated much (in the same way as)
 , , ⁹² à peu près ⁹² comme

valour is; but philosophy finds (in it) abundant food for reflection
⁷ - ; y ⁵⁴ un grand sujet de

and that (is no small consolation). In saying these words, he bid ²⁰²
 (bb) console beaucoup. En , ordonner à

all the children go (to their homes), took Bekir and Mesrou to his
¹⁶⁸ , ²⁰⁸ , conduire

little cottage, dressed himself a little⁹ rice for their supper, and after
 cabane, apprêter (m) N.B. N.B. ,

having¹⁵⁴ (asked them for) their histories, he told them his own in these
 s'être ²³⁷ fait raconter , dire ¹⁶² ⁸⁵ - en

words: The genie Alzim, whom I suspect much of delighting in
 mot : , aimer ¹⁵⁴ -

(other people's) afflictions, advised me to seek that (not to be found)
 autrui ²⁵ mal • , introuvable

Bathmendi in the great city of Agra, amongst the wits and the
 , beaux esprits

fine ladies of that city. I arrived at Agra; and before I mixed
 ; avant de (nn) me repandre

with the world, I wished¹⁹⁷ to (make myself known) by some
 dans , vouloir m'annoncer quelque

striking work. (At the) end of a month, my work appeared:
 d'éclat ⁹². Au bout :

it was a complete course of all human sciences, in a small volume
⁶⁵ ³² cours ³² ⁷ , en

divided into chapters. Each chapter was a tale, and each tale taught
 par ¹⁰² ¹⁴⁰

a science thoroughly¹⁸³. My book and I soon¹⁸⁴ became fashionable
 parfaitement N.B. ¹²⁷ bientôt à la mode.

I was invited to all the societies that pretended to have any sense;
⁹² ⁷⁴ se piquer ¹⁴⁰ un peu d'esprit ;

(there was no talk) but of me, and the favourite Sultana wrote to
 On ne parlait que de ⁵³ , ³² (o)

me with her own hand a note (badly spelled), to ask me to come
 de - billet sans orthographe, ¹⁷⁰ prier

to court. Well! I said to myself, Alzim has not deceived me:
⁷ Courage! (ee) ¹³⁹ - me ⁵⁴ , :

my glory is (at its) height; I will sustain it by surer⁴¹ means
 au comble ; soutenir ⁶² ⁵² ⁹

than those of intrigue; I will please, and I shall find Bathmendi.
⁸³ ⁷ ; ,

• Put this word in the singular in french.

Promiscuous EXERCISE on ALL the RULES.

I was (most agreeably) received in the palace of the grand Mogul: The
¹³⁷ *parfaitement* *accueillir*
 favourite Sultana declared herself openly my protectress, presented me
³² ⁵⁴ *hautement*
 to the emperor, bespoke verses from me, gave me pensions, admit-
^{commander} ⁹ ⁵⁴ ⁹
 ted me to her private suppers, and swore to me, a hundred times a
^{petit} ^(o) ²¹ ¹²
 day, a friendship (that would stand any test). I thought¹⁴⁰ I was
^{à toute épreuve.} ^{croire} ^{(nn) toucher}
 (on the) point of meeting with Bathmendi, when my protectress
^{au} ^{moment} ²¹
 quarrelled with the vizier about the government of a province which
^{se brouiller} ^{vizir} ^{pour} ^{un}
 the latter refused to the son of the confectioner of the favourite. The
^{celui-ci} ^{confiseur}
 Sultana exasperated at this audacity, asked the emperor to dismiss the
^{outré} ¹⁵⁷ ^{de} ^{chasser}
 insolent minister; but the emperor liked his vizier, and refused the
¹⁴⁰
 favourite. Then it (became necessary) to (set on foot) a regular³² intrigue
^{Alors il} ^{fallut} ¹⁷² ^{établir} ^{en règle}
 to ruin the patronized vizier. I entered (into the) plot, and (was¹³⁷
¹⁷⁰ ^{perdre} ^{soutenu} ³² ^{être} ¹³⁷ ^{du} ^{complot,} ⁵³ ^{recevoir}
 desired) to compose against the minister a cutting³² satire, and to spread
^{ordre} ¹⁶³ ^{sanglant} ^{répandre}
 it amongst the public. The vizier soon discovered that I was the author
⁶² ^{dans} ^{bientôt}
 (of it). He went to the favourite, brought her the commission which he
^{en} ⁵⁴ ^{aller} ^{trouver} ¹⁶² ^{brévet}
 had refused (at first), an order for a hundred thousand daricks on the
¹⁴⁰ ^{d'abord,} ^{ordonnance} ^{de} ²¹
 royal treasury, and only asked her¹⁶² (in return) to permit him¹⁶² to
³² ^{lui} ^{pour} ^{recompense} ^{de} ^{lui}
 throw me into a dungeon. That is a trifle, answered the favourite, and
^{cachot.} ^{Ce} ^{misère,}
 I am very fortunate in (having it in my power) to do something that
^{heureux} ^(g) ^{de} ^{pouvoir} ¹⁷² ⁷¹
 may be acceptable to you. I will send immediately for that wretch
^{agréable} ^(o) [†] ^{envoyer} ^{tout} ^à ^{l'heure} ^{chercher} [‡] ^{misérable}
 who has dared to insult you (in spite of) my express orders, and
¹⁷² ^{malgré} ³² ^{défense,}
 deliver him into your hands. Luckily for me a slave of the favourite
^{remettre} ^{entre} ^{Heureusement}

* See note * page 275.

† See note † page 312.

‡ The preposition *For* after the verbs *Go* and *Send*, is not expressed by *Pour*, but by the verb *Chercher*

Promiscuous EXERCISE on ALL the RULES.

who was present, came to relate their conversation to me; I had only
raconter (o) ⁵⁴; ¹³⁷ .

time to escape. Since that time, I have (wandered all over) Indoustan,
se sauver. Depuis époque, parcourir tout ⁵ ,

hardly¹⁸⁴ gaining my livelihood by writing novels, and making verses.
à peine vie à ¹⁵⁴ *romans,* ²⁰⁴ ¹⁵⁴ ⁹ .

(As long as) I had money, my works had been master-pieces; as soon as
Tant que avais eu ⁹ , *chef-d'œuvres; sitôt que*

I was in misery, (all that I wrote was nonsense). (At last) disgusted
¹³⁷ ⁷ , *je ne fis plus que des sottises. Enfin*

with instructing the world, I have preferred to¹⁷² teach peasants to
²⁰⁰ ¹⁵⁴ *univers, mieux aimé apprendre à* ⁹ †

read, and have²³⁷ turned school-master in this little village where I live
⁵³ *se faire* *où*

upon brown bread, and where I do not expect ever to see Bathmendi.
²⁰⁰ *bis* ³² , *espérer* ¹⁸⁴

(You may leave it if you like), said Mesrou to him, and (go back)
Il ne tient qu' ‡ à vous de le quitter, (o) ⁵⁴ , ²⁰⁴ *retourner*

with us into Kousistan, where some diamonds which I take with me,
⁵ , † *emporter* - - ,

assure us a sweet and easy³² life. He had not much difficulty to deter-
³² *tranquille* ¹³⁷ *peine à*

mine Sadder. (The very next day) the three brothers (set out) from the
Dès le lendemain *sortir*

village before (daybreak), and took the road to Kousistan. They⁷⁰ were
le jour, *du* *en* ¹⁴⁰

on their last (day's journey), and (at no great) distance from the
journée, *près de arriver à*

small house of Taï. This idea consoled them; but their hope was
¹⁴⁰ ; *espoir* ¹⁴⁰

mingled with fear. Shall we find our brother? they said: we left him
mêler de (ee) ; ¹³⁶

very poor; he will not have met with Bathmendi, since he has not
²⁰¹ ,

(been able) to (go in search of) him. My dear friends, said Sadder to
pu ¹⁷² *chercher* ⁵⁴ , (o)

them, I have meditated a (good deal) on this Bathmendi of whom Alzim
¹ , *réfléchir - beaucoup* ¹⁸³ *à* ⁷⁴

has spoken to us. To (tell you the truth), I believe that the genie
(o) *à parler franchement,*

has (made game) of us. Bathmendi does not exist, and has never
²³⁷ *se moquer* ,

existed; for since my brother Bekir did not meet him, when he
²¹⁷ § ¹³⁶ ,

* See note * page 275.

† Turn; to teach to read to peasants.

‡ *Il ne tient que* is a very common expression, but it can not be expressed literally in english.

§ See note † page 282.

§ See note * page 373.

Promiscuous EXERCISE on ALL the RULES.

commanded half of the persian³² army; since Mesrou did not
a moitié persanne ; 217 136
 (hear his name mentioned), when he was the favourite of the great
en 55 entendre parler , lorsque
 king; since I myself could not even guess what it was at a time
; 136 même 84 ce dans le
 when I was loaded (with the) favours of glory and fortune; it⁶³ is
que combler des 7 204 7 ; N.B.
 clear that Bathmendi is an imaginary being, an illusion, a chimera after
32 être, ,
 which all men run, because they like chimeras, and (rambling about).
76 7 , à courir.
 He was going to prove that Bathmendi did not exist in this world, when
172 habiter , 217
 a band of robbers rushed from behind the rocks which lined¹⁴⁰ the road,
*troupe sortir * border ,*
 surrounded the three travellers, and ordered them¹⁶² to strip. Bekir
*entourer * , * leur se dépouiller.*
 wished¹²⁷ to resist, but he was soon disarmed. After this ceremony which
vouloir , 137
 was the business of a moment, the captain of the robbers wished them
instant, chef 162
 a good journey, and left them quite naked (in the) midst of the high-
voyage, 189 23 au grand
 way. This comes in support of my proposition, said Sadder, looking
chemin. à l'appui , en
 at his brothers. Ah! the cowards! exclaimed Bekir in a rage; they
201 Ah! lâche 139 en - fureur ;
 have taken my sword from me! Oh! my diamonds! my poor dia-
arracher - 55 Eh!
 monds! replied Mesrou weeping. It was dark; The three unfortu-
répondre en pleurant. faire nuit ;
 nate men (made haste) to reach the house of their brother Taï. They
39 se hâter gagner
 (at length) reached it, and the sight of that house caused their tears
enfin 184 arriver y 54 , vue faire †
 to flow. They stopped at the door; they dared not knock; all their
- couler. † ; ;
 fears, all their doubts (were renewed). Whilst they were wavering
, incertitude recommencer. balancer
 thus, Bekir rolled a large stone, got upon it, and finding a cleft in the
*, gros 29 , monter * 64, fente*
 window shutter, he looked and perceived in a neat, plainly furnished
25 contrevent, . . 32 , simplement meublé 32

* To show the *quickness* of the action, the French would here use the *present* tense; but the *perfect* may also be used. † Turn; caused to *flow* their tears; the two verbs *faire* and *couler* must come together in french, for it did not *cause* their tears, but it *caused* to *flow* tears.

Promiscuous EXERCISE on ALL the RULES.

room, his brother Taï at table, (in the) midst of ten children who were
 , à , au
 eating, laughing and chattering all (at once). Taï had on his right his
 155 , 135 babiller à la fois. 140 à
 wife Amine who was feeding her youngest child, and on his left was
 155 faire manger dernier , à
 a little (old man) with a sweet²⁰ and cheerful countenance, who was
 vieillard de 32 gai 32 physionomie,
 (pouring out) drink for Taï. At this sight Bekir rushed into the arms
 verser à boire à se précipiter *
 of his brothers, and knocked at the door with all his might. A servant
 , frapper * de forces. valet
 came to open it, and screamed with fright, at seeing three men completely
 * 172 , jeter * des cris de frayeur, en tout
 naked. Taï ran to the door. The strangers fall (on his¹⁵) neck, they⁹⁰
 29 * - On † lui saute au N.B. cou, N.B.
 call him brother; they⁹⁰ bathe him with tears. He was confused (at first),
 * 18 ; N.B. * 200 * troubler d'abord,
 but he soon recollects Bekir, Mesrou, Sadder. He presses them in his
 184 reconnaître , , serrer
 arms, he can not embrace them sufficiently. All the children ran
 , suffire à leurs embrassements. accourir
 to see what it was. Amine also came, but she (drew back) with her
 172 84 il y avait. 184 , se retirer
 daughters at the sight of the three naked brothers. (The little old man
 aspect 32 Il n' y eut que
 was the only one) who did not quit the table. Taï gave clothes to his
 le petit vieillard 9
 brothers, presented them to his wife, and made them kiss his chil-
 , , 162 (kk)
 dren. Alas! said Bekir affected at this sight; thy happy lot consoles
 Hélas! attendri spectacle; sort
 us for all that we have suffered. Since the moment (we parted),
 200 ce que Depuis instant de notre séparation,
 our life has been only a series of misfortunes, and we have not
 enchaînement infortune ;
 even (had a glimpse) of that Bathmendi after which we have all
 seulement entrevu - 76
 been running. I readily believe it, said the little (old man) then¹⁸³ who
 - 155 bien 184 54, vieillard alors N.B. 75
 remained (all this time) at table; I have not stirred hence. How!
 140 toujours ; bouger Comment !
 exclaimed Mesrou, you are. . . I am Bathmendi, replied the (old man);
 s'écrier , , reprendre

* To shew the quickness of the action, the French would here use the present tense, but the perfect may be used too.

† This noun would be expressed better in french by the indefinite pronoun On.

Promiscuous EXERCISE on ALL the RULES.

it is quite natural that you should not know me, since you have never
 189 simple * † , 217
 seen me; but ask of Taï, ask of the good Amine, and of all these little
 ; 200 , 200 , 204
 children, there is not one (of them) but knows my name. The three
 , 246 en 54 199 †
 brothers who could not (keep their eyes off) this little (old man), wished
 140 se laisser de considérer , vouloir
 to embrace him. Gently, said he to them; I do not like these great
 172 Doucement, (o) ;
 raptures. (People¹⁹¹ should) be friends before they (make so free). It
 mouvements. Il n.B. faut être avant de (nn) se caresser.
 you wish that we should ever become so, be not (too much) (taken up)
 146 le 54, - trop s'occuper
 with me. In saying these words, he (got up), kissed every one of the
 200 , se lever, 105
 children, made a gentle bow to the three brothers, gave a smile to
 , petit salut , -
 Amine and to Taï, and went to wait for them in their bed²⁵ chamber.
 , 201 coucher 25
 Taï (sat again) at table with his brothers, and ordered beds to be got
 se remettre , faire † - - apprê-
 ready for them. Next day he showed them his fields, his flocks, and
 ter † - leur 54 Le lendemain 162 , ,
 gave them a detail of all the pleasures (s) he enjoyed. Bekir would¹³⁷
 faire 162 dont 140 vouloir
 (work in the fields) (that very day); so he was the first that became
 labourer le jour même; aussi 137 74
 the friend of Bathmendi. Mesrou who had been prime minister, was
 140 , 137
 head shepherd of the farm, and the poet (took upon himself) to go and
 premier , se charger 168 -
 sell in town, the corn, the wool, and the milk which was sent to market;
 à 7 , , 92 139 7 ;
 his eloquence brought customers, and he was as useful as the others
 attirer chaland, 140 43 43
 (At the) end of six months, Bathmendi (was pleased) with them, and
 Au bout , se plaire 137 58 ,
 their numerous⁹² and quiet days (glided on) gently (in the) bosom
 nombreux 92 couler 137 doucement au
 of happiness. It⁶² is perhaps unnecessary to say that BATHMENDI
 7 N.B. inutile de
 (in the Persian language) means HAPPINESS.
 en Persan signifier 7

* This adjective requires the following verb in the *subjunctive*.† See note * page 140, the difference between *Savoir* and *Connaitre*.

‡ Turn 'ordered to get ready beds, &c. for he did not order the beds but he ordered to get ready.

COMPENDIUM

OF

THE PRINCIPAL RULES.

CONTAINED IN THIS TREATISE.*

What are the words commonly called¹⁵⁷ the PARTS of SPEECH, of which
⁸² *appeler* *partie* ⁷ *discours*,
 the french language is composed?
³² *langue* *composer* ¹⁵⁸ ?

(What is) a NOUN?
Qu'est-ce que (y) nom?

(How many⁸) sorts of nouns do we⁹⁰ distinguish in grammar?
Combien ^{N.B.} *distinguer* ^{N.B.} *en grammaire?*

(How⁸ many) genders (are there) in french?
^{N.B.} ²⁴⁶

How do we⁹⁰ know the gender of the names of the beings without
¹⁸⁵ ^{N.B.} *connaître* *nom* *être*
 life, which are commonly called⁹² things?
 , *appeler*

(How⁸ many) numbers (are there)?—How do you make the plural
^{N.B.} ²⁴⁶ ¹⁸⁵ *former* *pluriers*

number of nouns?
 -

Has this rule any exceptions?—What are they?
¹³⁴ ⁹ ⁸² ⁶²

(What is) an ARTICLE?
 (y)

What are the words which are commonly called ARTICLE in french?
⁸² ⁹²

What agreement does the article require with the noun?
accord *demander*

What sign do we use, when the noun which follows the article
signe *employer*,

is (in the) singular, and begins with a vowel, or an *h* mute?
au *par* *voyelle*, *muette?*

When several nouns which require the article meet in the same
plusieurs *demander* *se rencontrer*

* The learner must translate these questions into french, as he has done the foregoing exercises; and he must also write in french an answer to every question, with an explanation of the rule, and two or three appropriate examples from his own imagination. This exercise would perhaps be useless to young persons who have read the rules with attention, but I think it will be particularly useful to all young learners.

of the PRINCIPAL RULES contained in this treatise.

sentence, is it necessary to repeat the article before each noun?
phrase, 102

Do the names¹³⁴ of persons and of towns require the article?
nom demander

Do the names of countries require the article?
¹³⁴ pays

Has not this rule some exceptions?—What are they?
¹³⁴ * ⁸² ⁸²

(Is there) not a small number of words which are never excepted,
²⁴⁵ ⁸

i. e. which always require the article?—Name them.
¹⁸⁴ Nommer

What article do common names require, when they are used
⁸² commun ¹³⁴ demander, - s'employer

in a general or in a particular sense?
particulier sens

How is OF expressed before a noun used in a general sense,
¹⁸⁵ - s'exprimer (ii) N.B.
preceded by a noun used in a partitive sense?

What article do common names require, when we⁸⁰ use them in a
¹³⁴ N.B. employer
partitive sense, *i. e.* to denote only a portion of the thing (spoken of?)
à désigner dont on parle?

What sign do we⁸⁰ put before a noun used in a partitive sense, when
signe N.B. partitif
it is attended by an adjective which must be placed before that noun?
accompagné de devoir - se placer

(Are not there) some adverbs in french which require the preposi-
²⁴⁵ *
tion *de*, when the words which represent them in english do not re-
representer

quire any⁸ preposition?—What are they?
N.B. ⁸²

How is the numeral article A, AN expressed?
¹⁸⁵ - (ii) N.B.

How are A, AN expressed before nouns of measure, weight, number,
- ⁸ ²⁰⁴ poids, ²⁰⁴
and periods of time used in a collective sense?
²⁰⁴ ¹⁵⁷ collectif³²

What are the words which are called demonstrative article?
⁸² - ⁸² démonstratif

How do we⁸⁰ make in french that local³² distinction which is made
N.B. de lieu - se faire
in english by means of the words THIS, THESE; THAT, THOSE?
au moyen

* See note † page 282.

† See note • page 192.

of the PRINCIPAL RULES contained in this treatise.

What are the words which we⁹⁰ call possessive article?
82 N.B. possessif³²

Is not the possessive article MY, THY, HIS, HER, OUR, YOUR, THEIR,
134

sometimes expressed by the definite article *Le, La, Les*?
184 s'exprimer (ii) N.B.

Are not the possessive words MY, THY, HIS, HER, OUR, YOUR, THEIR,
134

sometimes expressed by *AU, à La, AUX*?
(ii) N.B.

Do not the French sometimes use *MON, MA, MES*, before a noun,
134 184 employer

when the corresponding³² signs are not used in english?
qui y correspondent (ii) N.B.

In what instances are the signs called article (left out) in french?
cas 134 s'omettre

When two nouns govern each other, which of the two nouns is to
se régir 121 242

be placed the first in french?
243 se placer (ii) N.B. premier

By what preposition are these nouns united together?
134 s'unir ensemble?

How is OF expressed before the proper names of countries?
185 (ii) N.B. nom

Do not the French sometimes use the name of a country, when
134 184 employer
 the English use the adjective derived from that name?
dérivé

What is an ADJECTIVE?
(y) adjectif?

What agreement does the adjective require with the noun?
accord 134 demande

How is the feminine gender of an adjective formed?
se former (ii) N.B.

(Are there) any exceptions to this rule, and what are they?
246 9 82 62

How is the plural number of adjectives formed?

When an adjective qualifies two nouns, of what gender and number
qualifier
 must that adjective be?
devoir

Are adjectives placed in french before or after the noun?
134 se placer (ii) N.B.

* Repeat here *Of what* before number.

of the PRINCIPAL RULES contained in this treatise.

Has not this rule some exceptions?

134

What place do the adjectives of number keep with the noun?

place

134

tenir

How are the adjectives of number expressed and where are they

s'exprimer, (ii) N.B.

où

placed, when they are used to distinguish some personage?

se placer,

s'employer

personnage?

How are the adjectives of measure and dimension long, broad,

204

long, large,

high, deep, &c. placed with the number in french?

haut, profond, &c. se placer (ii) N.B.

Do not the French often use the substantive of dimension instead of

134

184

substantif

the adjective?—Is the same verb used with the substantive of

92

dimension as with the adjective?

que

Can the adjective be separated from the noun by an article in french

134

as it⁶² sometimes is in english?

comme

184

70

May¹⁷⁸ not the adjective be sometimes used as a substantive?

Pouvoir †

134

(ii) N.B.

How is an adjective made comparative?—How is it made superlative?

92

comparatif?

92

superlatif?

When the comparison is made, not between two substantives,

— se faire, (ii) N.B.

entre

but between two parts of a sentence; as, THE MORE DIFFICULT A

partie

phrase;

THING IS, THE MORE MERIT THERE IS IN DOING IT; what difference

(is there) in the arrangement of the words in french?

246

Are the adverbial particles¹³⁴ which serve to form the comparative

32

particule

servir

and superlative repeated in french?

3

se répéter (ii) N.B.

Do not some⁹³ of the comparative adjectives and adverbs require

134

32

3

demander

ne before the verb which follows them?

How are BY and THAN expressed after a comparative?

185

(ii) N.B.

* See note • page 232.

† See note • page 138.

of the PRINCIPAL RULES contained in this treatise.

How is IN expressed after a superlative?
¹⁸⁵ - s'exprimer (ii) N.B.

What mood does the superlative require, when it is followed by a
⁸² mode demander, ⁶² de

relative pronoun?
relatif

What is a PRONOUN?
 (y) *pronom*?

How many⁸ sorts of pronouns do we⁹⁰ distinguish?
 N.B. ⁸ N.B. *distinguer*?

How do you express the pronouns I, THOU, HE, SHE, IT, WE, YOU,
 THEY, when they are the nominative of a verb?
nominatif

How do you express the same words I, THOU, HE, SHE, WE, YOU,
 THEY, when they are joined¹⁵⁸ to another substantive for the nomina-
 , *joindre* *substantif* -
 tive of the same verb, or when the verb is understood?
 , *sous-entendre* ?

How do you express the pronouns ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER,
 IT, THEM, when they are the object of a verb?
 , *objet*

What place do the pronouns objects of the verb keep with the
place ¹³⁴ *tenir*
 verb, when the tense is simple?
 , *tems* *simple*?

What place do these pronouns require when the tense is compounded
¹³⁴ *demander* *composé*
 of the auxiliary⁸² verb *avoir* or *être*, and of a past⁸² participle?
auxiliaire , *passé* *participe* ?

Where are the pronouns objects of the verb placed, when the
Où - *se placer*, (ii) N.B.
 verb commands, and how are ME and THEE expressed?
commander, ¹⁸⁵ - (ii) N.B.

How are ME, THEE, US, YOU, HIM, HER, THEM expressed, and where
¹⁸⁵ - (ii) N.B.,
 are they placed, when they are governed by a preposition?
 - (ii) N.B., *régir* *par*

Is not the preposition *À* in french, like the preposition TO in english,
¹³⁴
 often implied in the pronoun?—When is *À*¹³⁴ to be expressed?
renfermée ²⁴³ *s'exprimer* ?

When several pronouns of different persons are the object of the
plusieurs

of the PRINCIPAL RULES contained in this treatise.

How is WHICH expressed after a preposition, when it relates
 185 - s'exprimer (ii) N.B. , se rapporter
 to the word THING?

How is WHICH expressed after a preposition, when it relates to a place?
 - (ii) N.B. , lieu?

How is WHICH interrogative expressed?
 - interrogatif (ii) N.B.

Explain the different ways of expressing the pronoun WHAT.
 Expliquer manière 154

How do we⁹⁰ express the possessive pronouns MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS,
 N.B. possessif³²
 OURS, YOURS, THEIRS, when they relate to a noun (mentioned before)?
 , dont on a fait mention?

How are the possessive pronouns MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS, OURS, &C
 -³²
 expressed, when they are used instead of the personal pronouns ME,
 N.B., - s'employer
 THERE, US, YOU, HIM, HER, THEM; as, THIS BOOK is MINE?
 ; , THIS BOOK is MINE?

How are the possessive pronouns MINE, THINE, HIS, HERS, &c. ex-
 -
 pressed, when they are joined by the preposition OF to the noun to
 (ii) N.B., OF
 which they relate; as, A BOOK of MINE, &c.?
 ; , A BOOK of MINE, &c.?

How are the demonstrative pronouns THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE,
 - démonstratif³²
 expressed?—How is the distinction made between these words in french?
 (ii) N.B. -⁹² entre

How are THIS, THAT expressed, when they relate to the word
 - (ii) N.B., se rapporter
 THING understood?

Explain the different properties of THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE.*
 propriété

How do we⁹⁰ express the words ONE, WE, THEY, PEOPLE, when they
 N.B.,
 do not refer to any particular³² person?
 se rapporter aucune en particulier personne

How are the indefinite expressions such as these; IT is THOUGHT,
 - indéfini³² 134 telles que⁸⁸ ;
 IT is SAID, expressed in french?
 , (ii) N.B.

How are these other indefinite expressions I HAVE BEEN TOLD, I
 - autre³²

* See note (bb) page 217.

of the PRINCIPAL RULES contained in this treatise.

WAS ADVISED, &c. expressed in french?

(ii) N.B.

What is a VERB?

(y) verbe?

What agreement does the verb require with its nominative?

⁸² accord demander son nominatif?

When two substantives of different persons are the nominative of

substantif*

the same verb, of what number and person must the verb be?

⁸² † devoir

Of what person is the verb, when it has *qui* for its nominative?

Of what person must the verb be, when *qui* relates to two sub-

devoir se rapporter

stantives of different persons?

*

Of what number must the verb be, after the collective substantives

collectif³²

La plupart, infinité, nombre, quantité, troupe, multitude?

Of what number is the verb, after *Le quart, Le tiers, La moitié?*

What is the place of the nominative with the verb, in an interro-

⁸² place

gative sentence, when the nominative is a personal pronoun?

phrase,

³²

What is the place of the nominative, in an interrogative sentence, when

that nominative is a noun, or any other word but a personal pronoun?

, tout autre que

When is the present of the indicative used⁹²?

employer

When do we⁹⁰ use the compound of the present?

N.B. composé

When do we⁹⁰ make use of the perfect tense of the verb?

N.B. usage parfait -

Explain the different uses of the imperfect.

Expliquer usage

When is the future used?—Is not the present sometimes used

- futur ⁹² - ¹³⁴

for the future?—Does not the french language require the future,

¹³⁴ demander

in some instances (in which) the English use the present?

† cas où

How are WILL, WOULD expressed after the conjunction IF?

¹⁸⁵ - s'exprimer IF?

• See note page 205. † Of what must be repeated before person. ‡ See note † page 282.

of the PRINCIPAL RULES contained in this treatise.

Mention the different instances in which the subjunctive is used.
Rapporter ^{cas} ⁷⁶ *subjunctif* — ⁹⁸

When is the present of the subjunctive used?
 — ⁹²

When is the perfect of the subjunctive used?
 — ⁹³

Does the present participle agree with the words that attend it?
⁵³ *participe s'accorder* *accompagner*

How is the english participle in ING expressed, after a preposition?
 — ³² *s'exprimer*,

How is the english present participle expressed, when it is joined
 — ^{(ii) N.B.},

to the auxiliary verb BE?
 — *BE?* ⁹²

Does the past participle agree with the noun to which it is joined
³² ¹³⁴ ⁷⁶ *joindre?*

When a past participle comes after the auxiliary verb *être*, to BE,
 does it require any agreement, and with what word does it agree?
quelque accord, *s'accorder*

When a past participle comes after the auxiliary verb *avoir*, to HAVE,
 does it require any agreement, and with what word does it agree?

Does the past participle agree after *avoir*, when it is followed by
 another verb in the infinitive?—*Expliquer* this rule.
^à *Expliquer*

How is TO, the sign of the infinitive in english, expressed in french?
 — ¹³⁴, ²² *signe* ^{(ii) N.B.} *

(Are not there) some instances in which this preposition is left out
²⁴⁶ [†] ^{cas} ⁷⁶ — *s'omettre*
 in french?—Name them.
Nommer

Is WILL¹³⁴ always the sign of the future, and WOULD the sign of
^{WILL} ^{WOULD}
 the conditional of the verb which follows it?
conditionnel

How are WILL HAVE, WOULD HAVE expressed?—*Expliquer* these words.
 — ^{(ii) N.B.}

How do we⁹⁰ express SHOULD;—SHOULD HAVE, OUGHT TO HAVE?
^{N.B.}

How do we⁹⁰ express MAY, MIGHT;—COULD HAVE, MIGHT HAVE?
^{N.B.}

* See, pages 236, 237, 238, the different ways of expressing TO before an infinitive, and peruse often the list of those verbs.

† See note † page 282.

of the PRINCIPAL RULES contained in this treatise.

How is WISH expressed when it is followed by another verb
 185 - s'exprimer (ii) N.B. 200

(in the) imperfect, or (in the) conditional?
 à l' imparfait, au conditionnel ?

How is MUST expressed, and what mood does it govern?
 - (ii) N.B., mode régir

How must¹⁸¹ we express MUST HAVE in the sense of BEING in NEED?
 N.B. sens

What is an ADVERB?
 (y) adverbe ?

What place do the adverbs keep with the verb?
 place 134 tenir

Which are the words that we⁹⁰ call negative adverbs?
 79 N.B. négatif³²

How are the negative adverbs placed with the verb?
 - se placer (ii) N.B.

How are they placed, when the verb is in the infinitive?
 - (ii) N.B. à

Are not PAS, POINT sometimes left out?
 - 134 184 s'omettre (ii) N.B.

How are NO, NOT expressed without a verb?
 - (ii) N.B.

How is NOT expressed with the verb TAKE CARE, prendre garde?
 (ii) N.B.

(Are there) not in french some words which require NE, when
 240 * demander

(there is) no negation in english?—Which are these words?
 240 79

How do we⁹⁰ express BUT in the sense of the adverb ONLY?
 N.B. BUT ONLY ?

How is BUT expressed in the sense of a relative pronoun?
 - BUT (ii) N.B.

What is a PREPOSITION?
 (y) préposition ?

Are the prepositions always expressed by the words which generally
 - 134 184

correspond to one another in both languages?—Mention the words
 se correspondre 121 les deux Rapporter

the most frequently used¹⁵⁷ with which the prepositions differ?
 184 employer 76 différer ?

Do not some verbs require a preposition in english, when the
 • demander

corresponding³² words do not require any in french?—Name them.
 qui y correspondent (p) Nommer

* See note † page 282. † See, pages 247, 248, 249, 250 251, a list of the words with which the prepositions differ, and peruse it often.

of the PRINCIPAL RULES contained in this treatise.

(Are there) not (on the) contrary some verbs which require a pre-
²⁴⁶ au ^{contraire} *
 position in french, when the corresponding³² words do not require
 qui y correspondent
 any in english?—Name them.

(p)
 † ¹³⁴ - se placer (ii) N.B. ⁶² ¹⁸⁴ -
 May the prepositions be placed in french, as they sometimes are
 placed in english, either before or after the words which they govern?
 (ii) N.B. ²²³ ⁶² régir?

Are the prepositions repeated before all the words which they govern?
 - ¹³⁴ se répéter ⁶²

Explain the following³² prepositions: FOR.—BEFORE.—BY.
 Expliquer suivant²⁹

Explain AT, TO, FROM with verbs denoting being¹⁵⁴ at, going¹⁵⁴,
⁷ qui désignent être à, aller ,
 or coming to, going or coming from a person's²⁵ house?
 venir à, de - quelqu'un

Explain the different properties of IN, INTO.—IN, before the dif-
 ferent parts of the day; and ON before the days of the week.
 propriété IN, INTO. IN,
 partie ; ON

What is a CONJUNCTION?
 (y) conjonction?

Which are the conjunctions that govern the indicative mood?
⁷⁹ régir ^{indicatif?} -

Which are the conjunctions that govern the subjunctive?
⁷⁹ ⁷⁴ ^{subjunctif?}

When a conjunction governs several verbs, is it⁶² necessary to re-
 plusieurs , N.B. ¹⁶⁸
 peat it before each verb?
⁶² ¹⁰²

(Is there) not something to be remarked about the conjunction *si*, IF?
²⁴⁶ ²⁴³ au sujet de ,

May not some conjunctions (be left out) in english, when the con-
 † * ¹³⁴ s'omettre ,
 junctions which represent them can not (be left out) in french?

Explain the conjunctions BOTH.—EITHER, OR.—NEITHER, NOR.

Explain the conjunctions WHETHER.—THOUGH, ALTHOUGH, IF EVEN.

—BUT FOR, IF IT WERE NOT FOR, IF IT HAD NOT BEEN FOR, &c.

* See note † page 232.

† See note * page 132.

of the PRINCIPAL RULES contained in this treatise.

IDIOMS

Explain the different ways of expressing the word PEOPLE.
Expliquer *manière* ¹⁵⁴

Explain the different meanings of the words COUNTRY.—TIME.
signification

What difference between AN, ANNÉE ; — JOUR, JOURNÉE ; — MATIN
entre

MATINÉE ; — SOIR, SOIRÉE ; — NUIT, SOIR ; — MIDI, MINUIT ?

When is the auxiliary verb HAVE expressed by the auxiliary *Etre* ?
 — ¹³⁴ *s'exprimer* *par*

When is the auxiliary verb BE expressed by the auxiliary *Avoir* ?
 — (ii) ^{N.B.}

When is BE expressed by *faire* ? — When is BE expressed by
¹³⁴ *se porter* ? — When is BE expressed by *devoir* ?
 —

Is not the verb BE sometimes left out ?
 — ¹³⁴ ¹⁸⁴ *s'omettre*

How do we⁹⁰ express TO BE JUST, TO HAVE JUST ?
¹⁸⁵ ^{N.B.}

How do we⁹⁰ express WAS NEAR, WERE NEAR, HAD LIKE ?
^{N.B.}

How do we⁹⁰ express THERE IS, THERE ARE ; IT IS FAR, IT IS LONG
^{N.B.}
 AGO : IT IS SINCE ; and THIS, THESE, (pointing out) a period of time ?
désignant

How do we⁹⁰ express HERE IS, HERE ARE ; THIS IS, THESE ARE ;
^{N.B.}
 — THERE IS, THERE ARE ; THAT IS, THOSE ARE, when they serve
 to (point out) an object ?
¹⁸⁹ *désigner*

Explain the different meanings of the word LET.—LET KNOW.
signification

Explain the different meanings of the verb MAKE.

Explain TO CAUSE, TO HAVE, TO GET.—TO CAUSE TO BE DONE
 OF MADE ; TO HAVE OF GET DONE OF MADE ; TO ORDER, TO BESPEAK.

Explain the verbs TO ASK, TO DESIRE.—TO LOOK.

Explain the different meanings of the verbs TO SUPPOSE.—TO HOPE.

of the PRINCIPAL RULES contained in this treatise.

Explain the different meanings of the verbs TO TAKE.—TO BRING.
signification

—TO USE.—TO HELP.—TO ATTEND.—TO WANT.


Explain the verbs TO MARRY.—TO RIDE.—TO WALK.—TO
COME.—TO RETURN.—TO CALL.

Explain the verbs TO BREAK.—TO LIKE.—TO KEEP.—TO GET.
—TO SPEND.—TO CHARGE.

How do we⁰⁰ express TO GO TO MEET.—TO BRING NEAR, TO GO
185 N.B.
NEAR, TO COME NEAR.—TO HEAR?

How do we⁰⁰ express IT IS WITH.—WHATEVER, IN VAIN, TO
N.B.
NO PURPOSE.—TO FIND FAULT WITH.—TO TAKE IT KINDLY.—
TO TAKE IT UNKINDLY?

How do we⁰⁰ express TO DO WITHOUT, TO BE EASY WITHOUT.—
N.B.
WHAT IS THE MATTER, WHAT IS IT ABOUT, WHAT IS IT.—IS IT, IS
IT NOT; DOES IT, DOES IT NOT; HAVE I, HAVE I NOT?

 The learner having gone through the Syntax, and being able to answer the foregoing questions, with appropriate examples to each of them, there can be no doubt but he understands the rules well; he should now try to write something of his own composition in french, such as letters, dialogues, short histories, or anecdotes, either that he has read or heard, or from his own imagination. This he will perhaps find difficult at first; but if he will persevere in it for a few days, he will find it easier and more profitable than translating from a book; for unless he has read a great deal of french, he will be apt to commit many anglicisms, owing to the difference in the idiom of the two languages, i. e. he will put together a number of french words which separately have a meaning, but which, when put together, have hardly any meaning at all. His attention should be called entirely to recollect the french words which he has seen to express the same ideas, and even the english dictionary should be used as seldom as possible. If he finds himself deficient in some of the rules, he must write over again the recapitulatory exercise on those parts of speech which are not familiar to him, and there is little doubt that after a second attentive perusal, he will be sufficiently acquainted with them.

THE END

London: Printed by W. Clowes and Sons, Stamford-street.

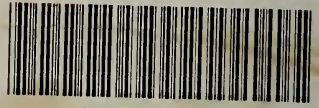
59
4099







LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 117 916 6

